344

~~2.402.12~~
2.402.14

TRANSMITTAL OF GEOTECHNICAL SAMPLING AND TESTING PLAN FOR ON-SITE CLAY BORROW AREAS, OFF-SITE MATERIAL SOURCES AND OPERABLE UNIT 2 WAST UNITS, AND ASSOCIATED CHANGE PAGES

01/16/96

DOE-1122-96
DOE-FN EPAS
500
WORK PLAN

Department of Energy

Ohio Field Office
Fernald Area Office
P. O. Box 538705
Cincinnati, Ohio 45253-8705
(513) 648-3155

JUL 16 1996

DOE-1122-96

Mr. James A. Saric, Remedial Project Director
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Region V - SRF-5J
77 West Jackson Boulevard
Chicago, Illinois 60604-3590

Mr. Tom Schneider, Project Manager
Ohio Environmental Protection Agency
401 East 5th Street
Dayton, Ohio 45402-2911

Dear Mr. Saric and Mr. Schneider:

TRANSMITTAL OF GEOTECHNICAL SAMPLING AND TESTING PLAN FOR ON-SITE CLAY BORROW AREAS, OFF-SITE MATERIAL SOURCES AND OPERABLE UNIT 2 WASTE UNITS, AND ASSOCIATED CHANGE PAGES

Enclosed is a copy of the "Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan (GSTP) for On-Site Clay Borrow Areas, Off-Site Material Sources and Operable Unit 2 Waste Units," Rev. 2, dated June 1996.

Please note the Department of Energy, Fernald Environmental Management Project (DOE-FEMP) performed an additional 26 remolded permeability tests to further define relative compaction and moisture characteristics of compacted soil. The confining pressures were also varied to facilitate comparison of test pad compaction (2 psi) with the On-Site Disposal Facility (OSDF) cap (5 psi). In addition, chemical and radiological analyses were performed to document characteristics of the permeant used for selected permeability tests (see Appendix M). Change pages are also provided (see front cover sleeve), which show modifications to the test, reflecting the supplemental tests described above.

Special tests were also performed on proposed drainage layer material to determine the suitability of using locally available carbonate aggregate (see Ohio EPA's Division of, "Solid and Infectious Waste Management Interpretation [Carbonate Content of Drainage Layer," dated August 18, 1994]). The details of the special tests will be provided on a separate white paper, and the corresponding testing results will be included in the Final Geotechnical Report for Off-Site Material Sources.

Recycled and Recyclable

If you have any questions, please contact Rod Warner at (513) 648-3156.

Sincerely,

Johnny Reising

Johnny W. Reising
Fernald Remedial Action
Project Manager

FN:Warner

Enclosure: As Stated

cc w/enc:

R. L. Nace, EM-423/GTN
G. Jablonowski, USEPA-V, 5HRE-8J
R. Beaumier, TPSS/DERR, OEPA-Columbus
F. Bell, ATSDR
D. S. Ward, GeoTrans
R. Vandegrift, ODOH
S. McLellan, PRC
T. Hagen, FERMCO/65-2
J. Harmon, FERMCO/90
AR Coordinator/78

cc w/o enc:

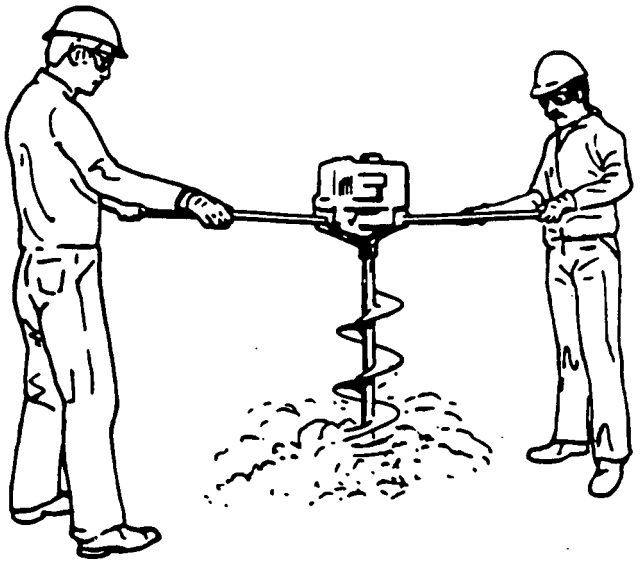
J. Reising, DOE-FN
R. Warner, DOE-FN
S. Garland, FERMCO, MS52-2
M. Hickey, FERMCO, MS52-2
A. Hunt, FERMCO, MS7
C. Little, FERMCO, MS2
A. Snider, FERMCO, MS52-2

34 4
EDC

GEOTECHNICAL SAMPLING AND TESTING PLAN FOR ON-SITE CLAY BORROW AREAS, OFF-SITE MATERIAL SOURCES AND OPERABLE UNIT 2 WASTE UNITS

REVISION 2

JUNE 1996



Prepared by

Fernald Environmental Restoration Management Corporation

Prepared for

U. S. Department of Energy
Fernald Field Office

Under Contract DE-AC05-92OR21972

GEOTECHNICAL SAMPLING AND TESTING PLAN FOR ON-SITE CLAY BORROW AREAS, OFF-SITE MATERIAL SOURCES, AND OPERABLE UNIT 2 WASTE UNITS

REVISION 2

APPROVALS:

for Nancy S. Weatherup — 25 June 1996
CERCLA/RCRA Integration — Date

for Arlen Hunt — 25 June 1996
Project Manager, Soil Characterization & Excavation Project — Date

Mike Hickey — 06/25/96
Project Manager, On-Site Disposal Facility — Date

Steve T. Garland — 25 JUN 96
Engineering Manager, Soil Remediation Project — Date

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	TITLE	PAGE
1.0	Introduction	1-1
1.1	Objective	1-1
1.2	Background	1-1
2.0	Summary of Previous Investigations	2-1
3.0	Organization and Responsibilities	3-1
3.1	Organization	3-1
3.2	Responsibilities	3-1
3.3	Sample Team Organization	3-3
3.3.1	Organizational Structure	3-3
3.3.2	Responsibilities of Team Members	3-4
3.3.3	Responsibility Matrix	3-5
3.3.4	Sampling Schedule	3-6
4.0	Health and Safety	4-1
4.1	Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan	4-1
4.2	Radiological Monitoring and Control	4-2
4.3	Non-Radiological Monitoring and Control	4-3
5.0	Quality Assurance and Quality Control	5-1
5.1	Accuracy, Precision, and Sensitivity	5-1
5.2	Completeness and Comparability	5-2
5.3	Training	5-2
5.4	Performance and System Audits	5-3
5.5	Field Changes to the GSTP	5-3
6.0	Field Activity Guidelines	6-1
6.1	Field Activity Requirements	6-1
6.2	Field Operations Procedures	6-1

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	TITLE	PAGE
7.0	Field Sampling Plan	7-1
7.1	General	7-1
7.2	On-Site Borrow Source Field Program	7-1
	7.2.1 Purpose	7-1
	7.2.2 Soil Borings	7-2
	7.2.3 Sampling From Shallow Soil Boring Locations	7-12
	7.2.4 Waste Handling/Disposal	7-24
	7.2.5 Equipment Decontamination	7-24
	7.2.6 PPE Requirements	7-25
7.3	Field Program for Waste Unit Areas	7-25
	7.3.1 Purpose	7-25
	7.3.2 Soil Borings	7-25
	7.3.3 Sampling from Shallow Soil Boring Locations	7-27
	7.3.4 Waste Handling/Disposal	7-35
	7.3.5 Equipment Decontamination	7-40
	7.3.5.1 Inactive Flyash Pile/South Field Areas	7-40
	7.3.5.2 Active Flyash Pile	7-40
	7.3.6 PPE Requirement	7-40
7.4	Off-Site Material Source Field Program	7-40
	7.4.1 Purpose	7-40
	7.4.2 Off-Site Sampling	7-40
	7.4.3 Waste Handling/Disposal	7-46
	7.4.4 Equipment Decontamination	7-46
	7.4.5 PPE Requirements	7-46
7.5	Project Surveying	7-47
7.6	General Sampling Requirements	7-47
	7.6.1 Field QC Samples	7-47
	7.6.2 Alternate Sampling Procedures	7-47
	7.6.3 Sample Equipment and Materials	7-48
	7.6.4 Sample Volume, Containers, and Preservation	7-48
	7.6.5 Sample Collection Documentation	7-49
	7.6.6 Sample Collection Reports	7-49
	7.6.7 Data Management	7-49
7.7	Sample Management	7-50
	7.7.1 Sample Identification and Labeling	7-50

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	TITLE	PAGE
	7.7.2 Sample Chain of Custody Records and Field Data Documentation	7-50
7.8	Field Equipment Methods	7-50
	7.8.1 Calibration of Field Equipment	7-50
	7.8.2 Documentation of Calibration	7-51
7.9	Laboratory Methods	7-51
7.10	Sample Testing	7-51

000007

LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
1-1	Investigation Area	1-2
1-2	Location of On-Site Disposal Facility, Borrow Areas, and OU2 Subunits	1-4
1-3	Location for On-Site Disposal Facility	1-5
1-4	Location of East Field Borrow Area	1-6
1-5	Conceptual Post-Excavation Topography for East Field Borrow Area (Case A -- Continuous Slope with South Access Road)	1-8
1-6	Conceptual Post-Excavation Topography for East Field Borrow Area (Case B -- Continuous Slope without South Access Road)	1-9
1-7	Conceptual Post-Excavation Topography for East Field Borrow Area (Case C -- Extended Drainage)	1-10
1-8	Geological Cross Sections East Field Borrow Area (Case A -- Continuous Slope with South Access Road)	1-11
1-9	Geological Cross Sections East Field Borrow Area (Case B -- Continuous Slope without South Access Road)	1-12
1-10	Geologic Cross Sections East Field Borrow Area (Case C -- Extended Drainage)	1-13
1-11	Location of South Field Borrow Area	1-14
1-12	Geological Cross Sections South Field Borrow Area	1-15
1-13	Location of Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile	1-17
2-1	Boring, Well, and Cone Penetrometer Locations in the East Field Borrow Area	2-13
2-2	Boring and Well Locations in South Field Borrow Area	2-14
2-3	Boring and Well Locations in Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field and Active Flyash Pile Areas	2-15

000008

LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
2-4	Depth of Uranium Contaminated Soil in Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile Area	2-16
2-5	Lead Contained in FEMP Trap Range Surface Soils, 0-0.5 Foot	2-18
2-6	Lead Contained in FEMP Trap Range Surface Soils, 0.5-1.0 Feet	2-19
3-1	Final Geotechnical Investigation Organizational Structure	3-2
7-1	Sampling Locations for East Field Borrow Area (Cases A and B)	7-3
7-2	Sampling Locations for East Field Borrow Area (Case C)	7-4
7-3	Sampling Locations for South Field Borrow Area	7-5
7-4	Sampling Locations for the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile Areas	7-26
7-5	Location Map for Off-Site Material Vendors	7-45

000009

LIST OF TABLES

TABLE	TITLE	PAGE
2-1	Summary of Reports Reviewed for East Field Borrow Source	2-1
2-2	Summary of Reports Reviewed for South Field Borrow Source	2-1
2-3	Summary of Reports Reviewed for Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile	2-2
2-4	Summary of Geotechnical Testing (East Field Borrow Source)	2-4
2-5	Summary of Geotechnical Testing (South Field Borrow Source)	2-5
2-6	Summary of Geotechnical Testing (Inactive Flyash Pile/South Field/Active Flyash Pile)	2-6
2-7	Summary of Geotechnical Testing (Off-Site Pea Gravel Sources)	2-7
2-8	Summary of Geotechnical Testing (Off-Site Riprap Sources)	2-8
2-9	Summary of Geotechnical Testing (Off-Site Fine Aggregate Sources)	2-9
2-10	Summary of Geotechnical Testing (Off-Site Coarse Aggregate Sources)	2-10
6-1	Reference Guidelines	6-3
6-2	Soil Sampling Procedures	6-4
6-3	Summary of ASTM Procedures	6-5
7-1	Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program On-Site Borrow Areas (Soil Borings)	7-6
7-2	Sample Volume, Containers, and Preservation - Soil Samples	7-13
7-3	Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program On-Site Borrow Source Areas (Shallow Borings/Excavations)	7-15
7-4	Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile (Soil Borings)	7-28
7-5	Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, Active Flyash Pile (Shallow Borings/Excavations)	7-36

7-6 Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program Fine Aggregate Sources 7-42

7-7 Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program Coarse Aggregate Sources 7-43

7-8 Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program Pea Gravel Sources 7-43

7-9 Geotechnical Laboratory Testing Program Riprap Sources 7-44

APPENDIX

ATTACHMENT	TITLE
A	Final Geotechnical Investigation Specific Data Quality Objectives
B	SSOP-1070, "Unexpected Discovery of Cultural Resources"
C	Example Field Forms
D	Equipment List
E	Till/Fill Thickness
F	Denison Sampling
G	Schedule
H	Methodology for Using Hollow-Stem Auger as a Temporary Casing in Zones of Subsurface Uranium Contamination
I	ASTM Standards
J	OEPA Approved Policy for Management of Aqueous Investigation Derived Waste
K	Material Testing Methods
L	Waste Unit Geological Cross Sections
M	Scope for Collection and Analyses of Uranium Contaminated Perched Groundwater
N	Modal Diameter Testing
O	Interface Friction Shear Testing
P	Data Quality Objectives Addendum

000012

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Objective

The objective of this Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan (GSTP) is to obtain engineering and geotechnical data on materials used to construct the disposal facility liner, cap, and perimeter berm systems, and to determine the engineering properties of the Operable Unit 2 waste fill materials. The data obtained through this investigation will support engineering analyses for the disposal facility design including remolded permeabilities, settlement, strength, slope stability, and other design parameters. The Data Quality Objectives are identified in Appendix A.

1.2 Background

The preferred remedial alternative for Operable Unit 2 includes on-site disposal of waste. The design of a disposal facility is required as part of Operable Unit 2 remediation implementation plan as documented in the Record of Decision. Also, the design will include on-site disposal of waste materials generated from other Operable Units.

A predesign field investigation was initiated to define the most suitable on-site location for the disposal facility and was performed in the Identified Best Area located on the east side of the FEMP (see Figure 1-1).

This Predesign investigation was performed in a phased approach. The first phase included preliminary cone penetrometer testing (CPT) and water level measurements of existing wells. This information was used to obtain an enhanced understanding of the existing lithology and to optimize the sampling locations during the second phase. The second phase included the installation and sampling of wells, borings, and lysimeters. Data obtained and analyzed from the second phase was used to confirm the thickness of the underlying gray clay, rule out the presence of extensive interbedded course granular materials, verify the protectiveness of human health and environment, and obtain preliminary geotechnical information for the design of the disposal facility. The third phase of the investigation included the installation and sampling of wells and shallow and deep borings. The objective of the Phase III field investigation is to obtain engineering and geotechnical data from soil borings and monitoring well necessary for the design of the disposal facility. Phase III geotechnical testing is currently underway.

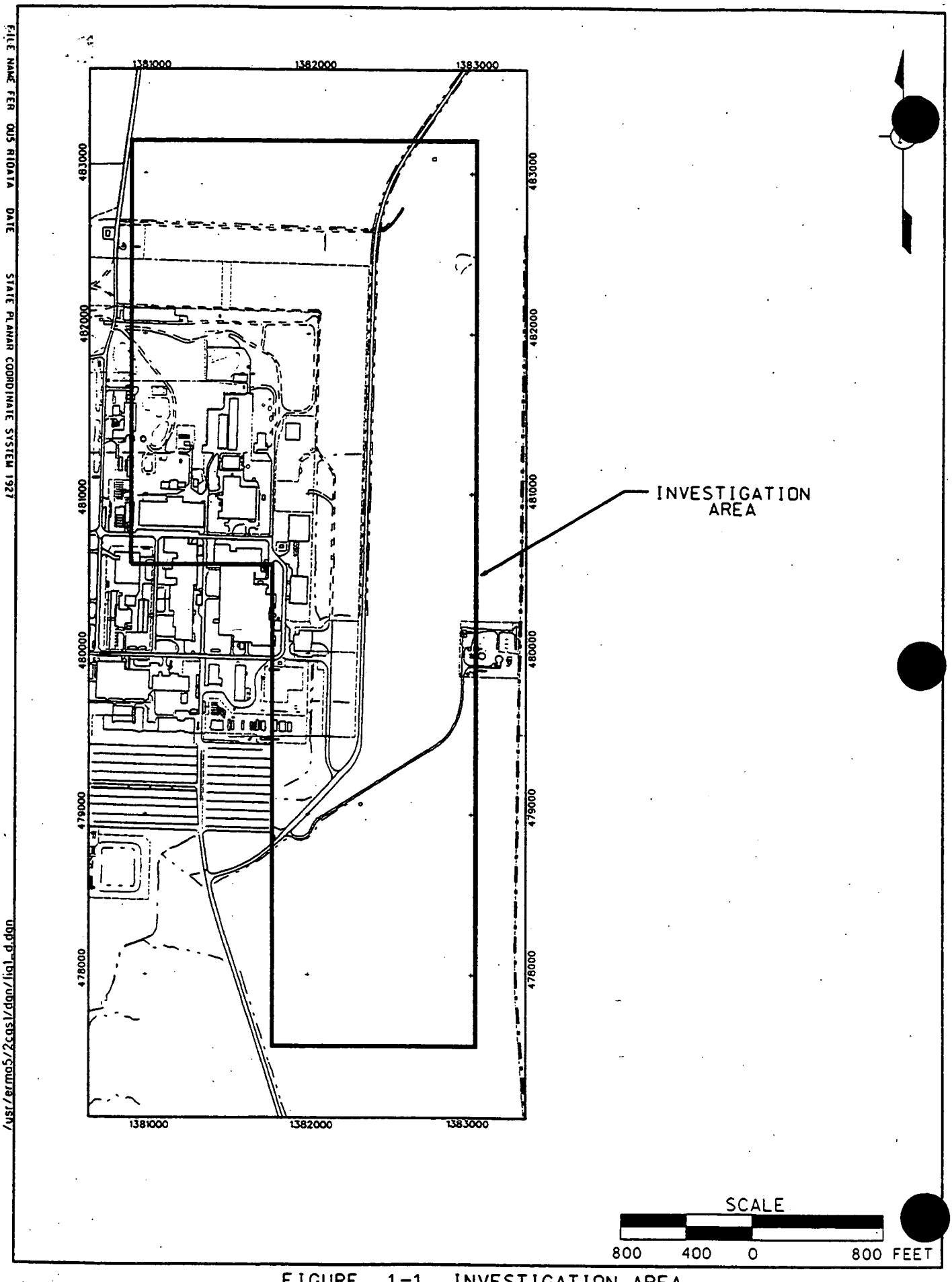


FIGURE 1-1. INVESTIGATION AREA

000014

Based on information obtained from the predesign field investigation, estimates of waste volumes for on-site disposal, and preliminary disposal facility design, the proposed location of the on-site disposal facility has been identified in the "Predesign Investigation and Site Selection Report for the On-Site Disposal Facility (Volumes 1 through 3), DOE June 1995," and is shown in Figures 1-2 and 1-3. The proposed location measures approximately 800 feet by 4300 feet, is on the eastern portion of the FEMP property, and provides suitable space for the disposal of the anticipated volume of 2.5 million cubic yards of waste material.

In support of the design and construction of the on-site disposal facility, geotechnical investigations are required to obtain engineering and geotechnical data on soils from the potential borrow sources and on soils designated for use in berm construction.

Based on conceptual design estimates, approximately 1,300,000 cubic yards of soil (mostly in the form of clay) will be needed for the construction of the on-site disposal facility. Of this volume, approximately 450,000 to 550,000 cubic yards of clay within the footprint of the disposal facility will be excavated for liner construction; however, an additional 750,000 to 850,000 cubic yards of soil is estimated to be needed for the construction of the cap and berm. In addition, approximately 60,000 cubic yards of soil will be needed for use as backfill at the Solid Waste Landfill, and Lime Sludge Ponds (see Figure 1-2) after the waste materials have been removed for disposal.

Therefore, approximately 810,000 to 910,000 cubic yards of soil will be borrowed from areas located outside the disposal facility footprint for the construction of the on-site disposal facility, and for the restoration of the five Operable Unit 2 waste units.

A primary location for the clay borrow area (known as the East Field Borrow Area) has been identified (see Figures 1-2 and 1-4). The location of the East Field Borrow Source was chosen based on the following:

- Proximity to the On-Site Disposal Facility
- Availability of Large Volumes of Non-Contaminated Clays
- Availability of Existing Geotechnical Data
- Convertibility of Existing Roads to Haul Roads
- Ability to Gravity Drain Surface Waters Without Ponding (During and After Construction)

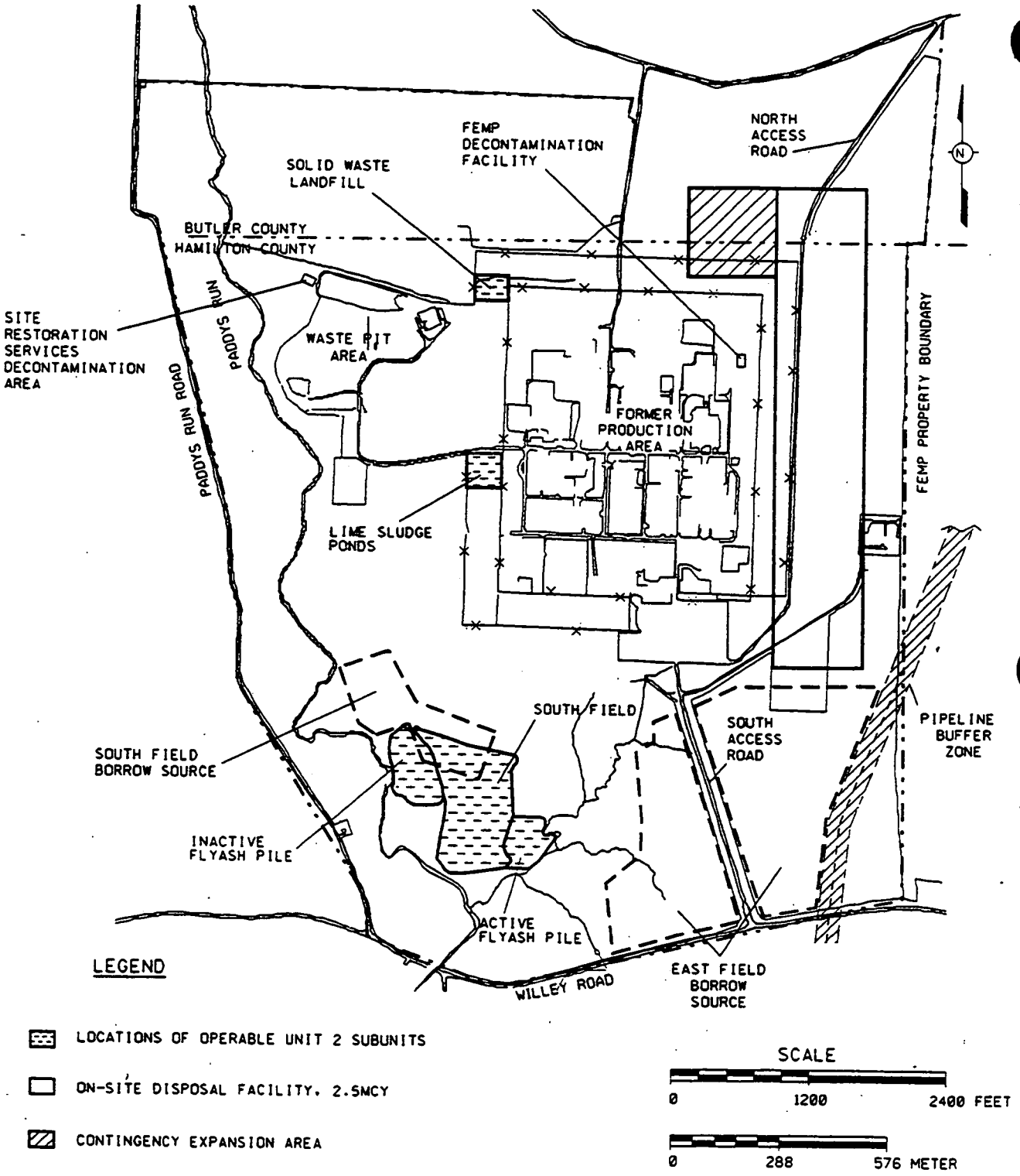


FIGURE 1-2
LOCATION OF ON-SITE DISPOSAL FACILITY,
BORROW AREAS, AND
OU2 SUBUNITS

/usr/ermo5/ gn/fig1_a.dgn

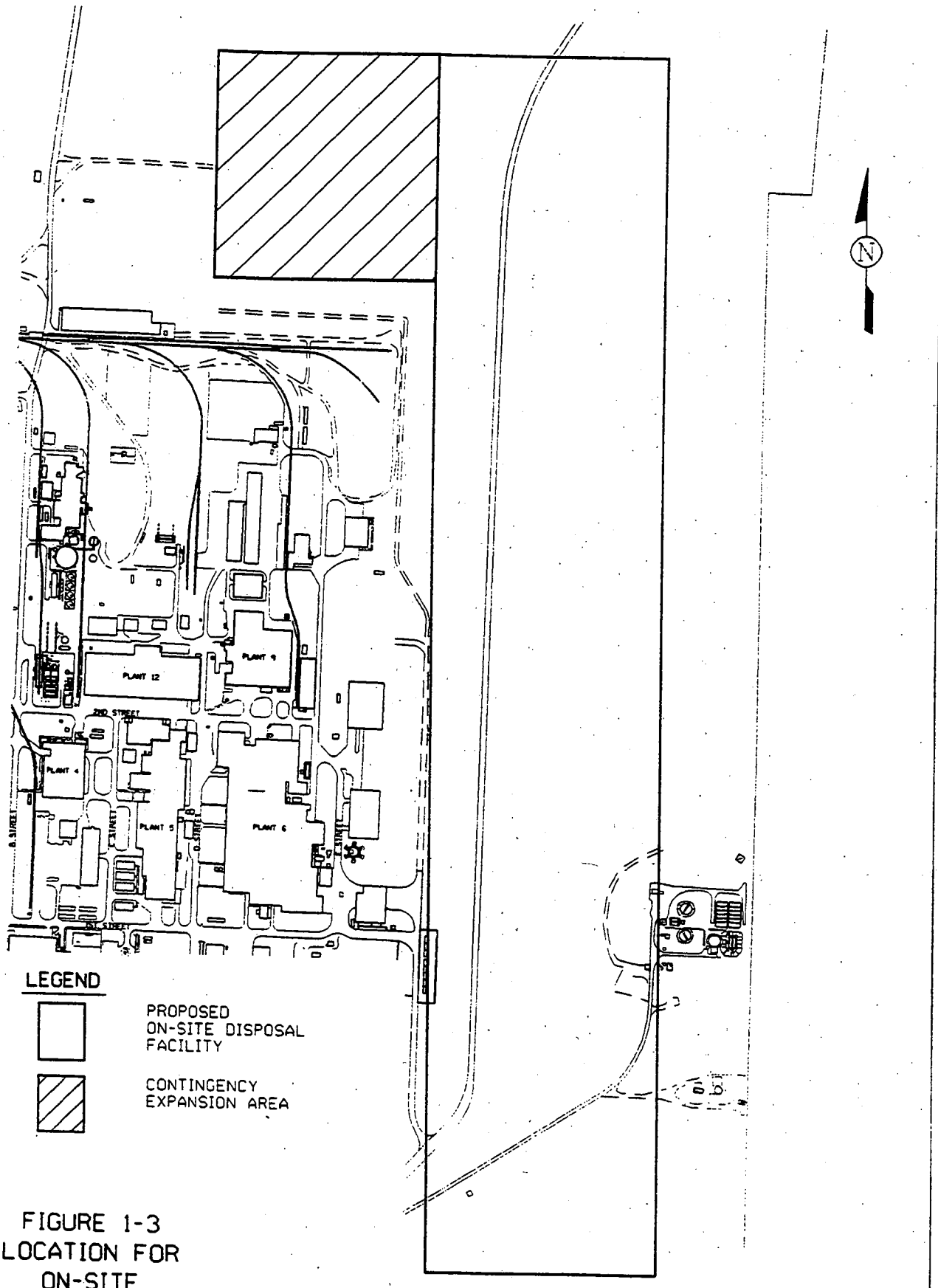
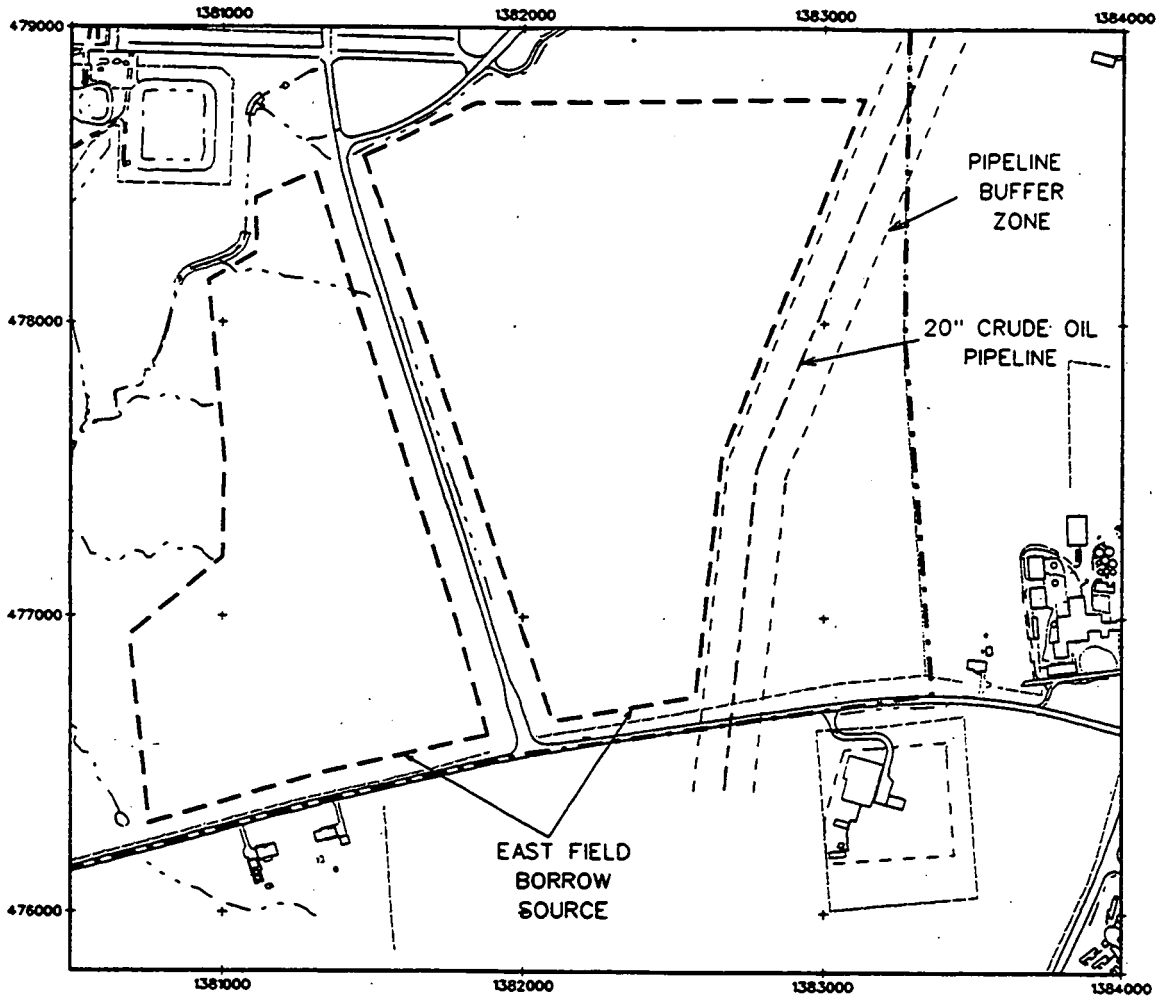


FIGURE 1-3
LOCATION FOR
ON-SITE
DISPOSAL FACILITY

/usr/ermo/dgn/pspl_2.dgn 02/27/95

000017



FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

LOCATION OF EAST FIELD BORROW AREA

DATE

DRAWN

FIGURE 1-4

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_c.dgn

000018

For purposes of this investigation, three conceptual excavation cases have been developed for the East Field Borrow Area.

Note, these cases are conceptual only. Actual proposals for excavation of borrow areas will be submitted in a future design package.

In Case A, soils are excavated on both sides of the South Access Road so that drainage slopes continuously towards the Stormwater Retention Basin Outfall (see Figure 1-5). The South Access Road remains in service for Case A. In Case B, soils are excavated on both sides and under the South Access Road so that drainage slopes continuously towards the Stormwater Retention Basin Outfall (see Figure 1-6). The South Access Road will be taken out of service and the underlying soils removed for Case B. In Case C, soils are excavated east of the South Access Road, and extended drainage is provided to the Stormwater Retention Basin Outfall (see Figure 1-7). The South Access Road remains in service for Case C. Figures 1-8, 1-9, and 1-10 show the geologic cross sections of the East Field Borrow Area for Cases A, B,and C, respectively.

The estimated quantities of soil that can be excavated for the three cases are as follows:

Case A = approximately 960,000 cubic yards of soil
Case B = approximately 1,100,000 cubic yards of soil
Case C = approximately 1,230,000 cubic yards of soil

A secondary or contingent clay borrow area with a potential to provide an estimated 220,000 cubic yards of usable soils (including a 50,000 cubic yard reserve) has been identified adjacent to and underneath the Inactive Flyash Pile and near the South Field Waste Unit areas. This secondary clay borrow area, hereinafter called the South Field Borrow Area, is shown on Figures 1-2 and 1-11. Clay material from this area would be used for the construction of the Disposal Facility cap and/or berm in the event that additional waste (i.e., greater than 2.5 million cubic yards) is designated for on-site disposal. This area would be used for borrow only after all waste is removed from the South Field and Inactive Flyash Pile subunits and the area is clean closed (i.e., meets FRLs). This area could also be used to obtain fill material for final site restoration of the Operable Unit 1 Waste Pits, Lime Sludge Ponds, and Solid Waste Landfill areas. Figure 1-12 shows geologic cross sections of the South Field Borrow Area. The location of the South Field Borrow Area was chosen based on the following:

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

N

SCALE IN FEET

0 200 400 800

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

000021

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

CONCEPTUAL POST-EXCAVATION TOPOGRAPHY FOR EAST FIELD BORROW AREA CASE A--CONTINUOUS SLOPE WITH SOUTH ACCESS ROAD

DATE

DRAWN

FIGURE 1-5

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_e5.dgn

N

SCALE IN FEET

0 200 400 800

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

000022

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

ERMC Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

CONCEPTUAL POST-EXCAVATION TOPOGRAPHY FOR EAST FIELD BORROW AREA CASE B--CONTINUOUS SLOPE WITHOUT SOUTH ACCESS ROAD

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-6

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_e6.dgn

SCALE IN FEET

0 200 400 800

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

000023

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO Fernald Environmental Management Project

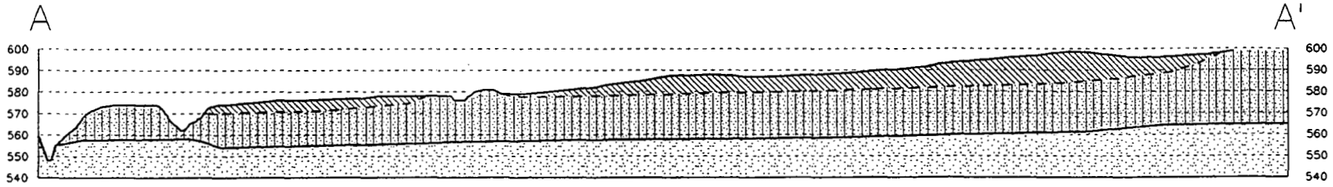
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

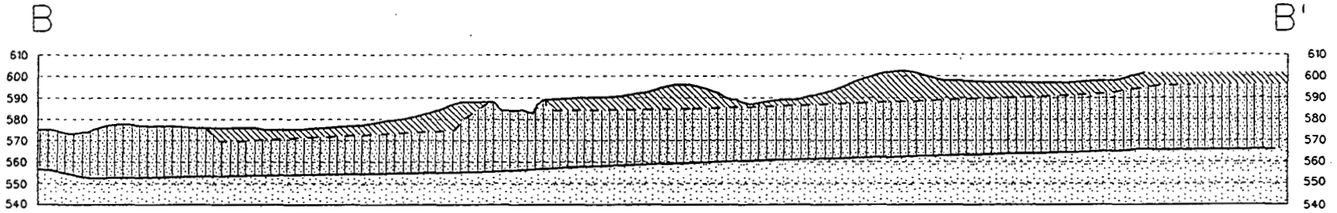
CONCEPTUAL POST-EXCAVATION TOPOGRAPHY FOR EAST FIELD BORROW AREA CASE C--EXTENDED DRAINAGE

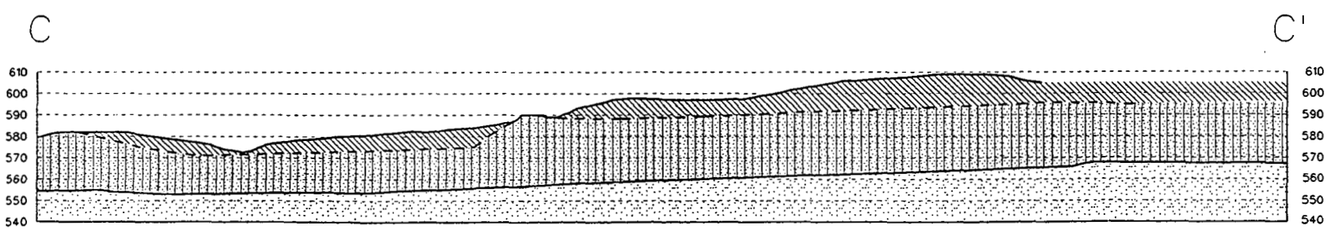
DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-7

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_e.dgn







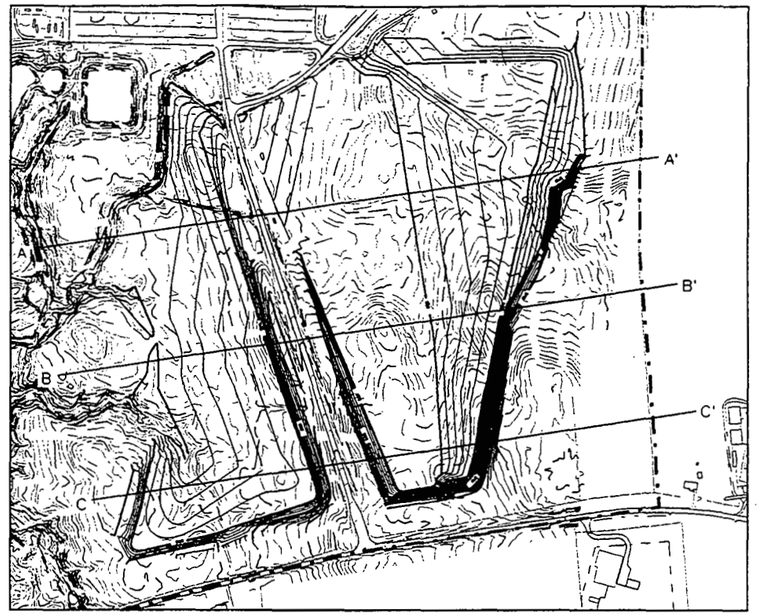
SECTIONS - SCALE IN FEET

HORIZONTAL: 0 175 350 700

SOIL TO BE REMOVED

GLACIAL OVERBURDEN

GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER



LOCATION PLAN - SCALE IN FEET

0 350 700 1400

000024

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO

Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

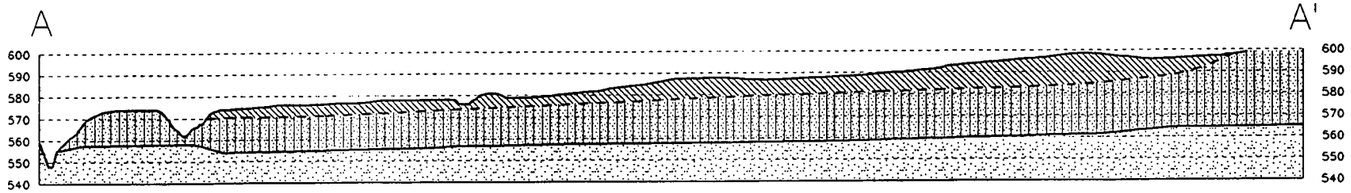
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
EAST FIELD BORROW AREA
CASE A--CONTINUOUS SLOPE
WITH SOUTH ACCESS ROAD

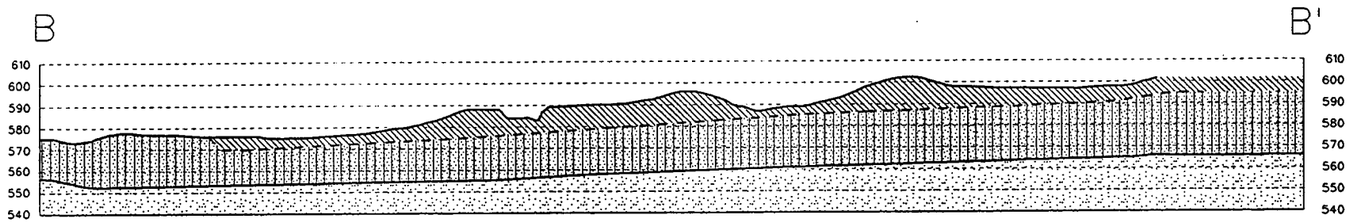
DATE

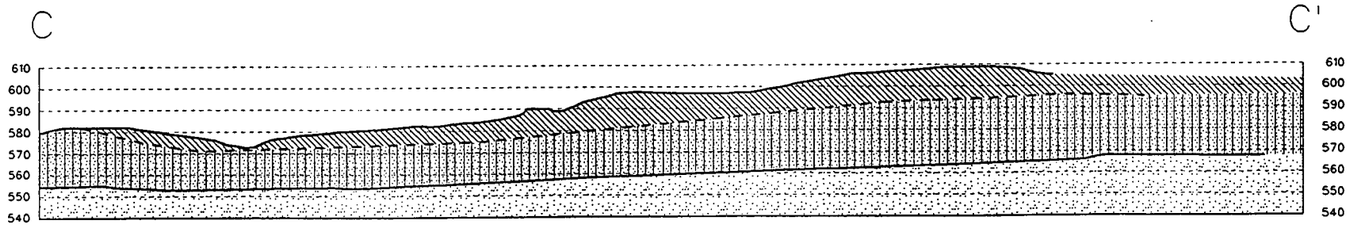
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-8

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_wc.dgn







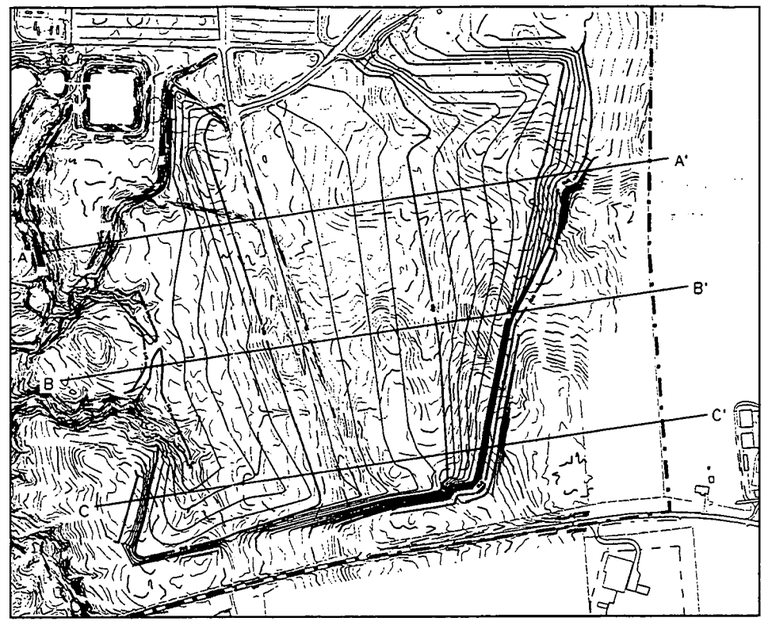
SECTIONS - SCALE IN FEET

HORIZONTAL: 0 175 350 700

SOIL TO BE REMOVED

GLACIAL OVERBURDEN

GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER



LOCATION PLAN - SCALE IN FEET

0 350 700 1400

000025

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO

Fernald Environmental Management Project

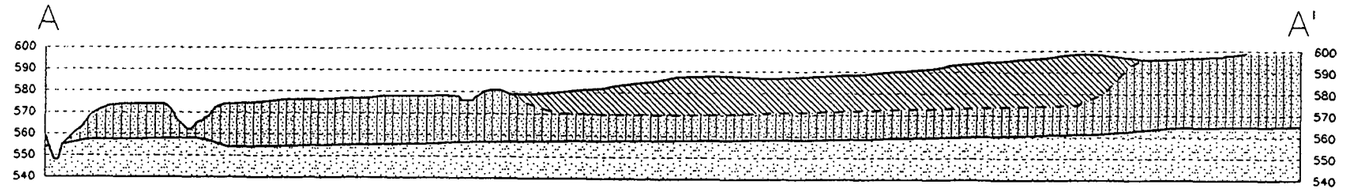
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

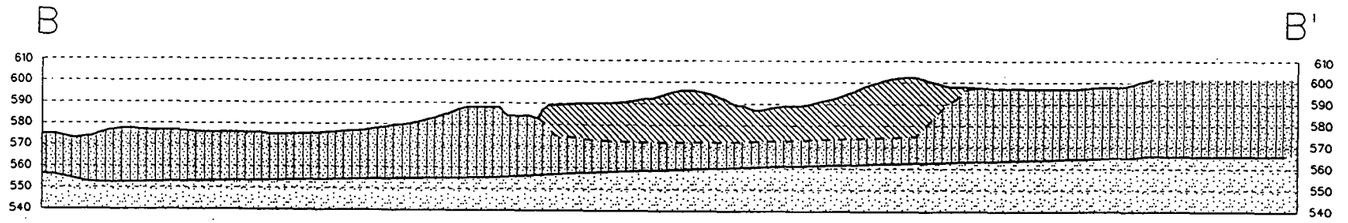
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
EAST FIELD BORROW AREA
CASE B--CONTINUOUS SLOPE
WITHOUT SOUTH ACCESS ROAD

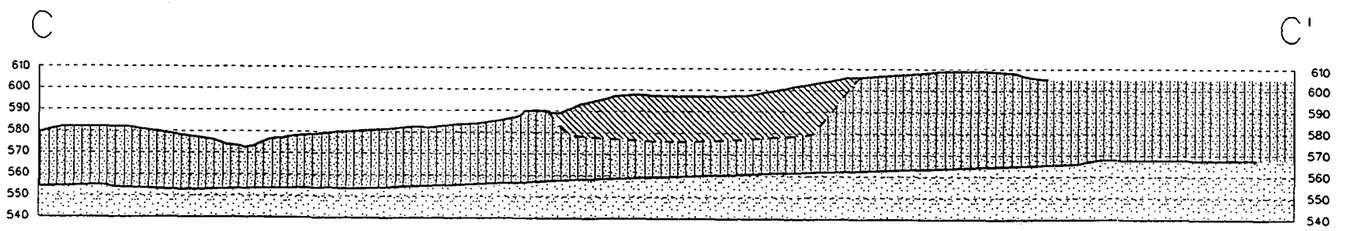
DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-9

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_wd.dgn







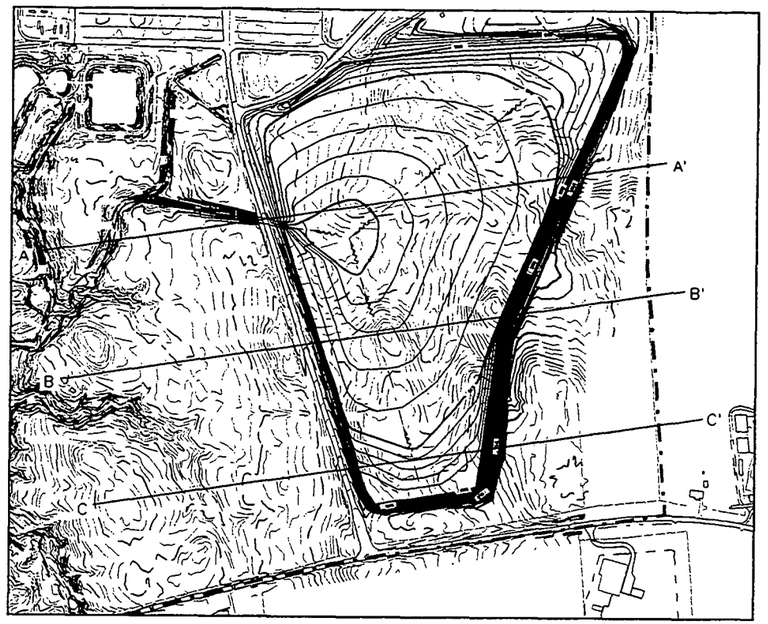
SECTIONS - SCALE IN FEET

HORIZONTAL: 0 175 350 700

SOIL TO BE REMOVED

GLACIAL OVERBURDEN

GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER



LOCATION PLAN - SCALE IN FEET

0 350 700 1400

000026

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO

Fernald Environmental Management Project

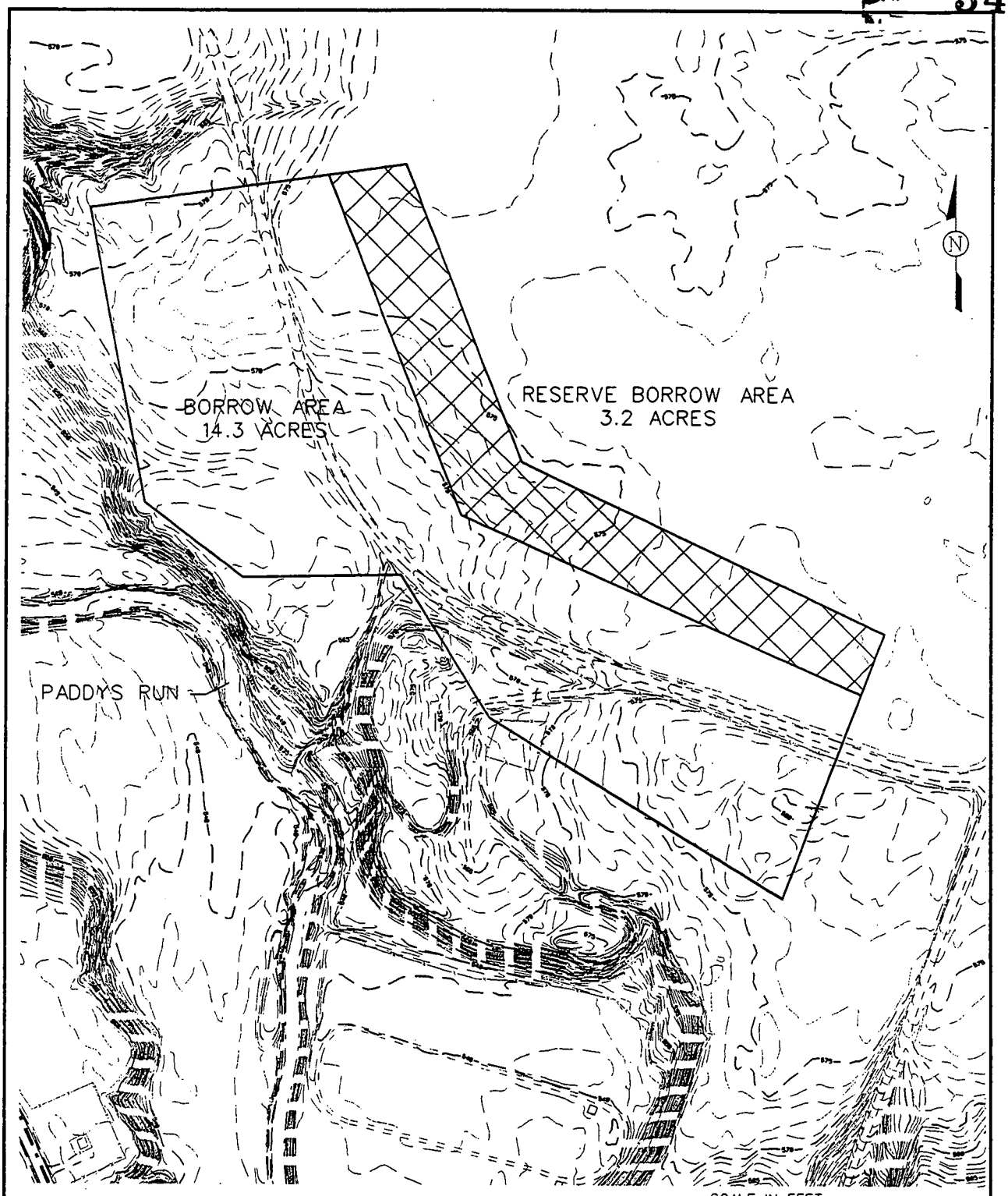
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
EAST FIELD BORROW AREA
CASE C--EXTENDED DRAINAGE

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-10

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_wb.dgn



NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

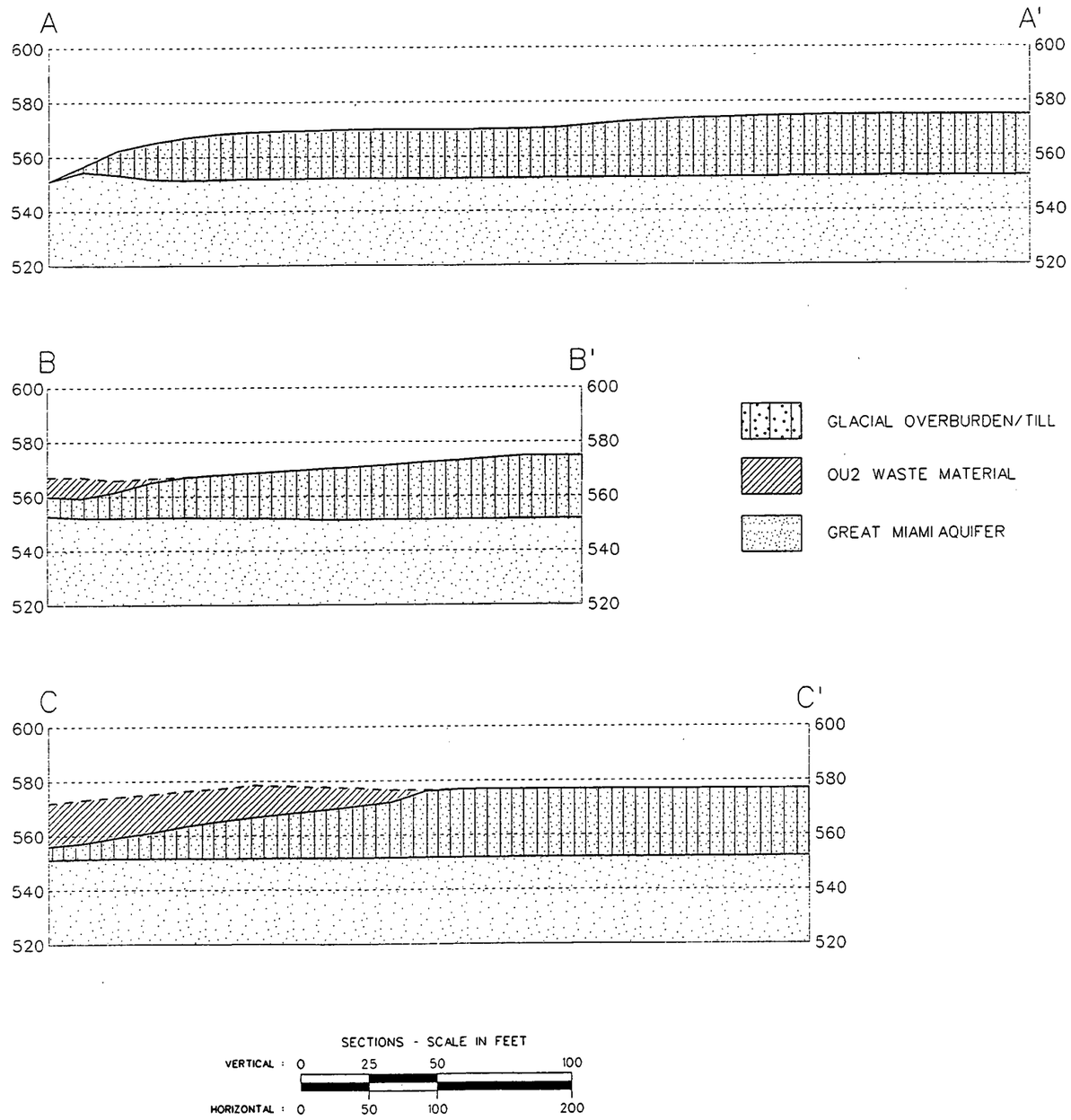
LOCATION OF SOUTH FIELD BORROW AREA

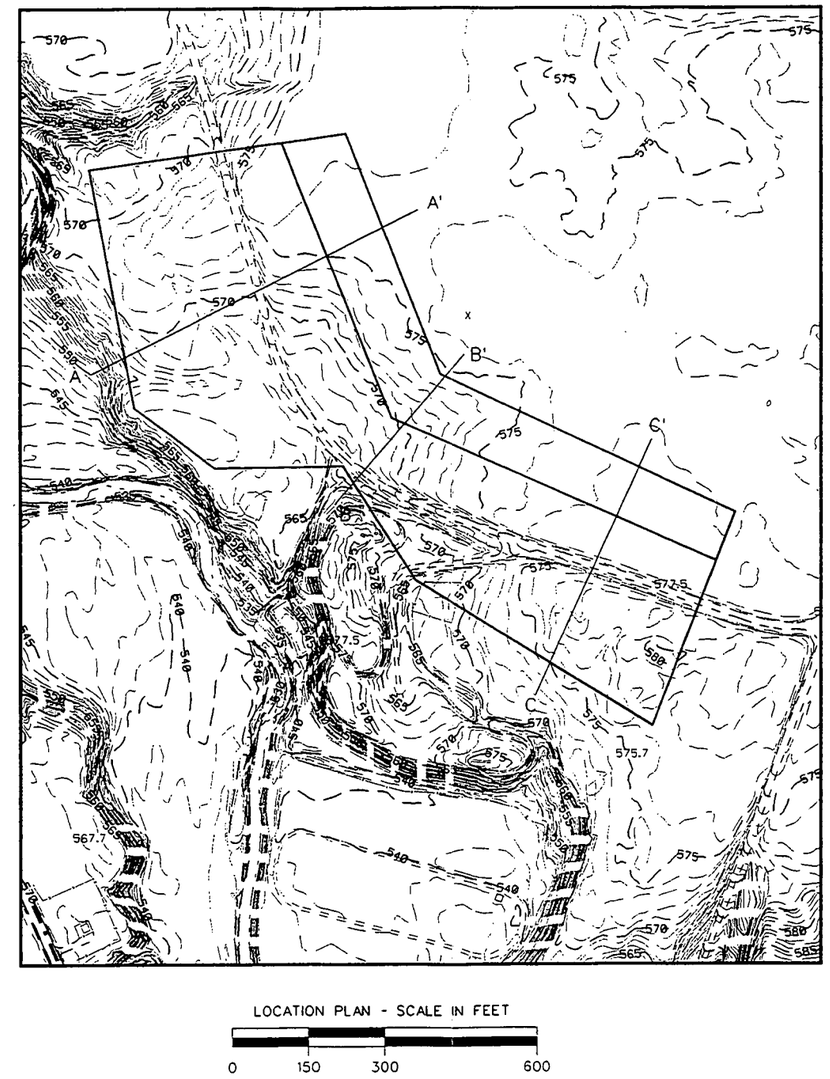
000027

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-11

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_f.dgn





000028

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
SOUTH FIELD BORROW AREA

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-12

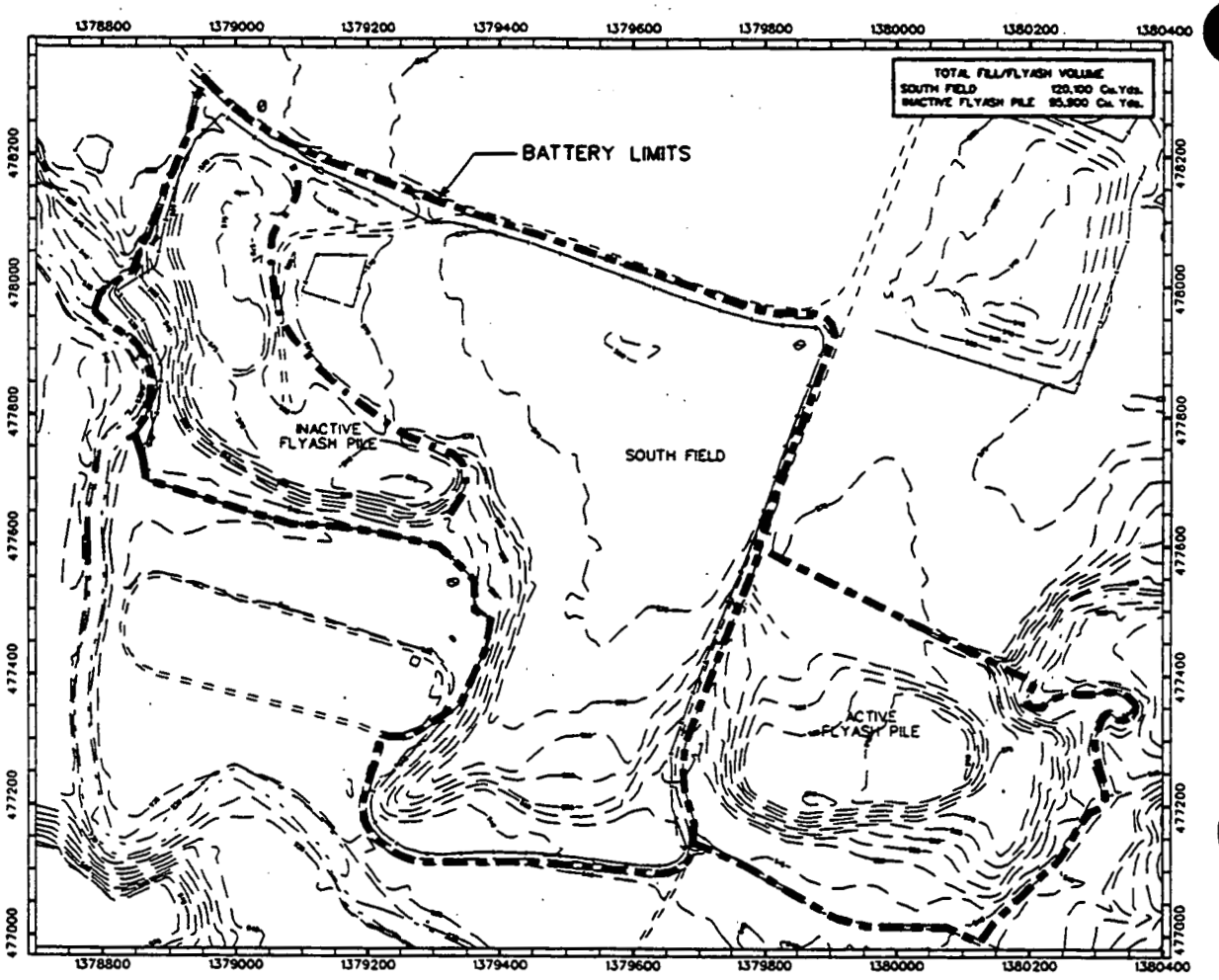
FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/agn/fig1_y.dgn

- Proximity to Lime Sludge Ponds, Solid Waste Landfill, and Operable Unit 1 Waste Pits
- Availability of Large Volumes of Non-Contaminated Clay
- Some Geotechnical Data in Vicinity
- East Terrace Face Adjacent to Paddy's Run Would be Excavated Leaving a Similar Landscape
- The Bottom of the Excavation Would be Above the 100 and 500 Year Flood Plains

Figure 1-13 shows the geotechnical investigation area related to the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile. Figures L-1, L-2, and L-3 (see Appendix L) shows geological cross sections of the Inactive Flyash Pile. Figures L-4, L-5, L-6, L-7, and L-8 show geological cross sections of the South Field. Figures L-9, and L-10 show geological cross sections of the Active Flyash Pile.

In addition to on-site clay borrow areas, off-site surveys will be performed on other bulk materials required to construct the on-site disposal facility. Based on conceptual design estimates, approximately 350,000 cubic yards of riprap; 350,000 cubic yards of pea gravel; 60,000 cubic yards of sand; and 5,000 cubic yards of coarse aggregate will be needed for the construction of the on-site disposal facility. Details of off-site material testing are given in section 7.4.

The proposed location and depth for geotechnical borings have been based on an examination of existing geotechnical information within and near the proposed investigative areas, and estimated till/fill thicknesses. The Scope of Work included in this GSTP is based on the current understanding of site conditions. Revisions to the borrow source and waste unit fieldwork may be necessary to ensure that the objectives are satisfied as the investigation proceed. Investigative findings which could materially affect either the location of the borrow sources or the suitability of the borrow material will be discussed with the agencies prior to modification or expansion of the fieldwork associated with this GSTP.



LEGEND

- ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- BATTERY LIMITS
- FENCE

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE (FT)
0 150 300

SCALE (METER)
0 36 72

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

LOCATION OF INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 1-13

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_3.dgn

2.0 SUMMARY OF PREVIOUS INVESTIGATIONS

Existing FEMP reports were reviewed to obtain information that would be useful in locating the borrow sources and/or in planning this geotechnical investigation. The reports reviewed are listed in Tables 2-1, 2-2, and 2-3.

TABLE 2-1

SUMMARY OF REPORTS REVIEWED FOR EAST FIELD BORROW SOURCE

Author	Date	Report
Parsons	March 1992	"Conceptual Design Report for the Engineered Waste Management Facility"
Parsons	March 1994	"On-Site Waste Disposal Cell Pre-Design Activities Engineering Report"
Parsons	July 1994	"On-Site Waste Disposal Cell Pre-Design Activities Engineering Supplement Report"
U.S. Department of Energy	March 1995	"Final Remedial Investigation report for Operable Unit 5, Fernald Environmental Management Project"
U.S. Department of Energy	June 1995	Predesign Investigation and Site Selection Report for the On-Site Disposal Facility*

* Phase I CPT data only

TABLE 2-2

SUMMARY OF REPORTS REVIEWED FOR SOUTH FIELD BORROW SOURCE

Author	Date	Report
U.S. Department of Energy	January 21, 1995	"Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project"
U.S. Department of Energy	March 1995	"Final Feasibility Study Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project"
U. Department of Energy	March 1995	"Final Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 5, Fernald Environmental Management Project"

TABLE 2-3

SUMMARY OF REPORTS REVIEWED FOR INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE

Author	Date	Report
U.S. Department of Energy	January 21, 1995	"Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project"
U.S. Department of Energy	March 1995	"Final Feasibility Study Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project"

The "Conceptual Design Report for the Engineered Waste Management Facility" performed geotechnical testing of soils mainly from the northern and eastern side of the site.

The "On-Site Waste Disposal Cell Pre-Design Activities Engineering Report" and "...Supplemental Report" (Parsons, 1994) focused on geological testing from the southeastern corner of the site.

The "Final Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 5, Fernald Environmental Management Project" (DOE, 1995) contained interpretations of stratigraphy and boring/well log data that was used in preparation of the GSTP.

The "Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project" (DOE, 1995) contained geotechnical data and stratigraphy and boring/well log data within the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile areas.

The "Final Feasibility Study for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project" (DOE 1995) contained geological cross-section of the Operable Unit 2 waste units.

The study "Phases I and II of the Operable Unit 2 Pre-Design Field Investigation" performed geological and geotechnical testing of soils within the Identified Best Area shown in Figure 1-1. Phase I comprised of CPT. Phase II comprised of soil borings and geotechnical testing. Phase I and II sample results are documented in the report entitled, "Predesign Investigation and Site Selection Report for the On-Site Disposal Facility (DOE 1995)."

000032

A summary of the types and number of existing and proposed geotechnical tests related to the waste units and proposed on-site clay borrow areas are listed in Tables 2-4, 2-5, and 2-6.

Moisture content, unit weight, grain size, specific gravity, and Atterberg limits are primarily used for soil identification and classification purposes. Consolidation tests are performed to develop parameters needed for estimating the settlement of the disposal facility. Triaxial tests are performed to develop strength parameters needed for bearing capacity and stability evaluation of the stability of the on-site disposal facility. Standard proctor tests are performed to develop parameters needed for preparation of reconstituted samples as well as compaction control during the construction. Remolded hydraulic conductivity tests are performed to define the permeability characteristics of the potential liner and/or cap materials.

Organic matter tests are performed to estimate organic content of the topsoil to aid in assessing the potential settlement of the wasted topsoil due to its decomposition.

A summary of the types and number of existing and proposed geotechnical tests related to the proposed off-site material sources are listed in Tables 2-7, 2-8, 2-9, and 2-10.

Six representative samples will be collected from each off-site test site per material type, in accordance with ASTM D-75 and D-420, and the guidelines provided in "Technical Approach Document, Revision II, UMTRA-DOE/AL 050425, dated December 1989".

TABLE 2-4
SUMMARY OF GEOTECHNICAL TESTING
(EAST FIELD BORROW SOURCE)

TEST	EWMF*	OU2 DISPOSAL FACILITY GEOTECHNICAL REPORT INCLUDING SUPPLEMENT REPORT	ON-SITE BORROW SOURCE GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION (Proposed)	TOTAL
Moisture Content	33	32	115	180
Unit Weight	---	17	---	17
Grain Size/ Hydrometer	33	39	64	136
Specific Gravity	33	39	6	78
Atterberg Limits	29	37	95	161
Consolidation (Undisturbed)	3	3	---	6
Consolidation (Remolded)	---	---	4	4
UU Triaxial (Undisturbed)	---	---	5	5
UU Triaxial (Remolded)	---	---	7	7
CU Triaxial (Undisturbed)	3	8	3	14
CU Triaxial (Remolded)	---	2	---	2
Hydraulic Conductivity (Undisturbed)	3	4	---	7
Hydraulic Conductivity (Remolded)	---	8	60	68
Standard Proctor	---	6	23	29
Modified Proctor	---	1	---	1
Organic Content	---	---	64	64
Modal Diameter	---	---	14	14
Sulfate	---	---	16	16
Chloride	---	---	16	16

* As presented in the H. C. Nutting Report (includes only sample locations either within or adjacent to the borrow source area)

TABLE 2-5
SUMMARY OF GEOTECHNICAL TESTING
(SOUTH FIELD BORROW SOURCE)

TEST	EXISTING GEOTECHNICAL DATA*	ON-SITE SOUTH FIELD BORROW SOURCE GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION (Proposed)	TOTAL
Moisture Content	—	46	46
Grain Size/ Hydrometer	—	30	30
Atterberg Limits	—	34	34
UU Triaxial (Undisturbed)	—	1	1
CU Triaxial (Undisturbed)	—	1	1
Hydraulic Conductivity (Remolded)	—	8	8
Standard Proctor	—	5	5
Organic Content	—	18	18
Modal Diameter	—	6	6
Sulfate	—	9	9
Chloride	—	9	9

* Geotechnical data located within the Inactive Flyash Pile and South Field battery limits is not included in Table 2-5 (see Table 2-6).

TABLE 2-6
SUMMARY OF GEOTECHNICAL TESTING
(INACTIVE FLYASH PILE/SOUTH FIELD/ACTIVE FLYASH PILE)

TEST	REMEDIAL INVESTIGATION REPORT OPERABLE UNIT 2	WASTE FILL AREA INVESTIGATION (Proposed)	TOTAL
Moisture Content	41	149	190
Unit Weight	21	—	21
Grain Size/ Hydrometer	37	70	107
Specific Gravity	27	7	34
Atterberg Limits	18	69	87
Consolidation (Remolded)	—	20	20
UU Triaxial (Remolded)	—	5	5
CU Triaxial (Remolded)	—	4	4
Consolidated Drained Triaxial (Undisturbed)	1	—	1
Hydraulic Conductivity (Undisturbed)	3	—	3
Hydraulic Conductivity (Remolded)	—	19	19
Standard Proctor	—	18	18
Direct Shear Strength	2	—	2
Modal Diameter	—	6	6

TABLE 2-7

SUMMARY OF GEOTECHNICAL TESTING (OFF-SITE PEA GRAVEL SOURCES)

TEST	EXISTING GEOTECHNICAL DATA	OFF-SITE PEA GRAVEL MATERIAL SOURCES (Proposed)	TOTAL
Petrographic Examination*	---	TBD	TBD
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	---	18	18
Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate	---	18	18
Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine	---	18	18
Particle Size Analysis for Soils	---	18	18
Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions	---	18	18

* Six prescreening Petrographic Examinations will be performed at each potential off-site material source. Material identified as being of poor quality with respect to their intended use shall be eliminated from further testing. Number of Petrographic Examinations performed will be dependent on the number of off-site material sources examined; therefore, the number of petrographic examinations performed will be determined during field investigations.

TABLE 2-8
SUMMARY OF GEOTECHNICAL TESTING
(OFF-SITE RIPRAP SOURCES)

TEST	EXISTING GEOTECHNICAL DATA	OFF-SITE RIPRAP MATERIAL SOURCES (Proposed)	NUMBER OF TESTS
Petrographic Examination*	---	TBD	TBD
Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate	---	18	18
Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine	---	18	18
Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete	---	18	18
Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)	---	18	18
Splitting Tensile Strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens	---	18	18
Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control	---	18	18
Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	---	18	18
Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions	---	18	18
Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions	---	18	18

* Six prescreening Petrographic Examinations will be performed at each potential off-site material source. Material identified as being of poor quality with respect to their intended use shall be eliminated from further testing. Number of Petrographic Examinations performed will be dependent on the number of off-site material sources examined; therefore, the number of petrographic examinations performed will be determined during field investigations.

TABLE 2-9

SUMMARY OF GEOTECHNICAL TESTING (OFF-SITE FINE AGGREGATE SOURCES)

TEST	EXISTING GEOTECHNICAL DATA	OFF-SITE FINE AGGREGATE MATERIAL SOURCES (Proposed)	NUMBER OF TESTS
Petrographic Examination*	---	TBD	TBD
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	---	18	18
Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate	---	18	18
Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine	---	18	18
Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)	---	18	18
Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)	---	18	18
Particle Size Analysis for Soils	---	18	18

* Six prescreening Petrographic Examinations will be performed at each potential off-site material source. Material identified as being of poor quality with respect to their intended use shall be eliminated from further testing. Number of Petrographic Examinations performed will be dependent on the number of off-site material sources examined; therefore, the number of petrographic examinations performed will be determined during field investigations.

TABLE 2-10

SUMMARY OF GEOTECHNICAL TESTING (OFF-SITE COARSE AGGREGATE SOURCES)

TEST	EXISTING GEOTECHNICAL DATA	OFF-SITE FINE AGGREGATE MATERIAL SOURCES (Proposed)	NUMBER OF TESTS
Petrographic Examination*	---	TBD	TBD
Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	---	18	18
Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate	---	18	18
Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine	---	18	18
Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)	---	18	18
Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)	---	18	18
Particle Size Analysis for Soils	---	18	18

* Six prescreening Petrographic Examinations will be performed at each potential off-site material source. Material identified as being of poor quality with respect to their intended use shall be eliminated from further testing. Number of Petrographic Examinations performed will be dependent on the number of off-site material sources examined; therefore, the number of petrographic examinations performed will be determined during field investigations.

The following tests shall be performed to determine the soundness, durability, and chemical reactivity of pea gravel:

- Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
- Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
- Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
- Particle Size Analysis for Soils
- Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions

The following tests shall be performed to determine the soundness, durability, and chemical reactivity of riprap:

- Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
- Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine
- Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete
- Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)
- Splitting Tensile Strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens
- Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control
- Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
- Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions
- Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions

Testing to determine the durability of rock to freeze and thaw conditions will be performed for exposed riprap only. Freeze/Thaw durability testing will not be performed to evaluate the durability

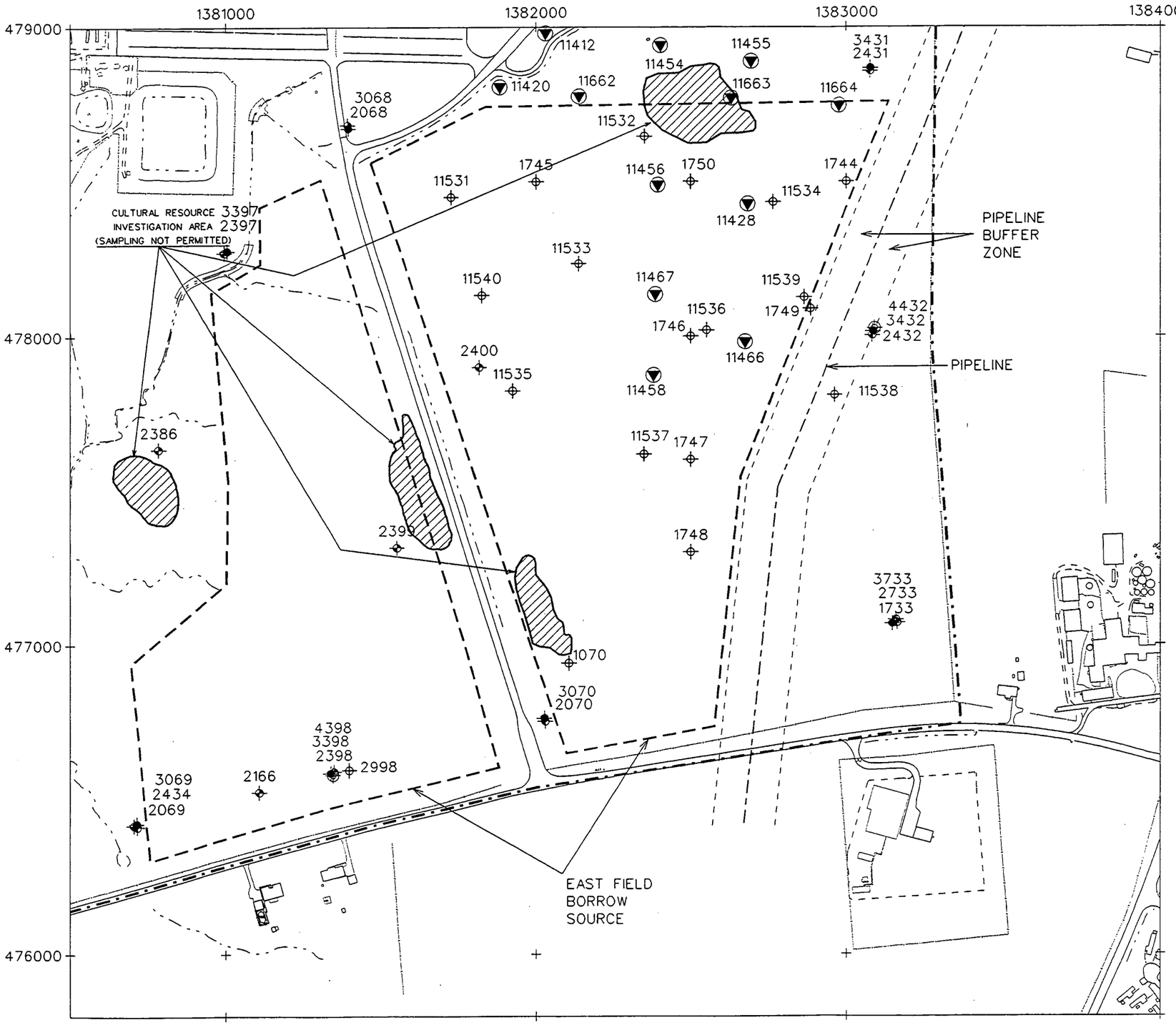
of riprap used in the construction of the biotic barrier, since the biotic barrier will be protected from exposure by approximately 33-inches of overburden (the vegetative and filter layers).

The following tests shall be performed to determine the soundness, durability, and chemical reactivity of fine and coarse portland cement aggregates (sands and gravels).

- Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
- Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate (Sands Only)
- Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate (Gravels Only)
- Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
- Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)
- Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)
- Particle Size Analysis for Soils

Figure E-1 (see Appendix E) indicates the total thickness of till in the East Field Borrow Source Area. Figure E-2 indicates the total thickness of till in the South Field Borrow Source Area. Figure E-3 indicates the thickness of till and Figure E-4 indicates the total thickness of fill in the Inactive Flyash Pile/South Field/Active Flyash Pile Areas. Approximate depths of till and fill have been developed from information obtained from borings, wells, lysimeters, and cone penetrometer testings that have been performed either within are adjacent to the borrow source areas and the waste fill areas (see Figures 2-1, 2-2, and 2-3).

Figures 2-4 shows the approximate depths in the Inactive Flyash, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile areas required to penetrate soils contaminated with uranium at levels above the Operable Unit 5 Proposed Final Remediation Level for non-leachable uranium from on-site soils (80 mg/kg) as reported in the November 1994 Draft Proposed Plan for Operable Unit 5. Computer modeling indicates that there are no areas within either the East Field Borrow Area or the South Field Borrow Area (after subunit waste removal) that contain total uranium concentrations exceeding 80 mg/kg.



- 1000 SERIES WELL
- 2000 SERIES WELL
- 3000 SERIES WELL
- 4000 SERIES WELL
- SOIL BORING
- CONE PENETRATIONS

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

SCALE IN FEET

0 175 350 700

000043

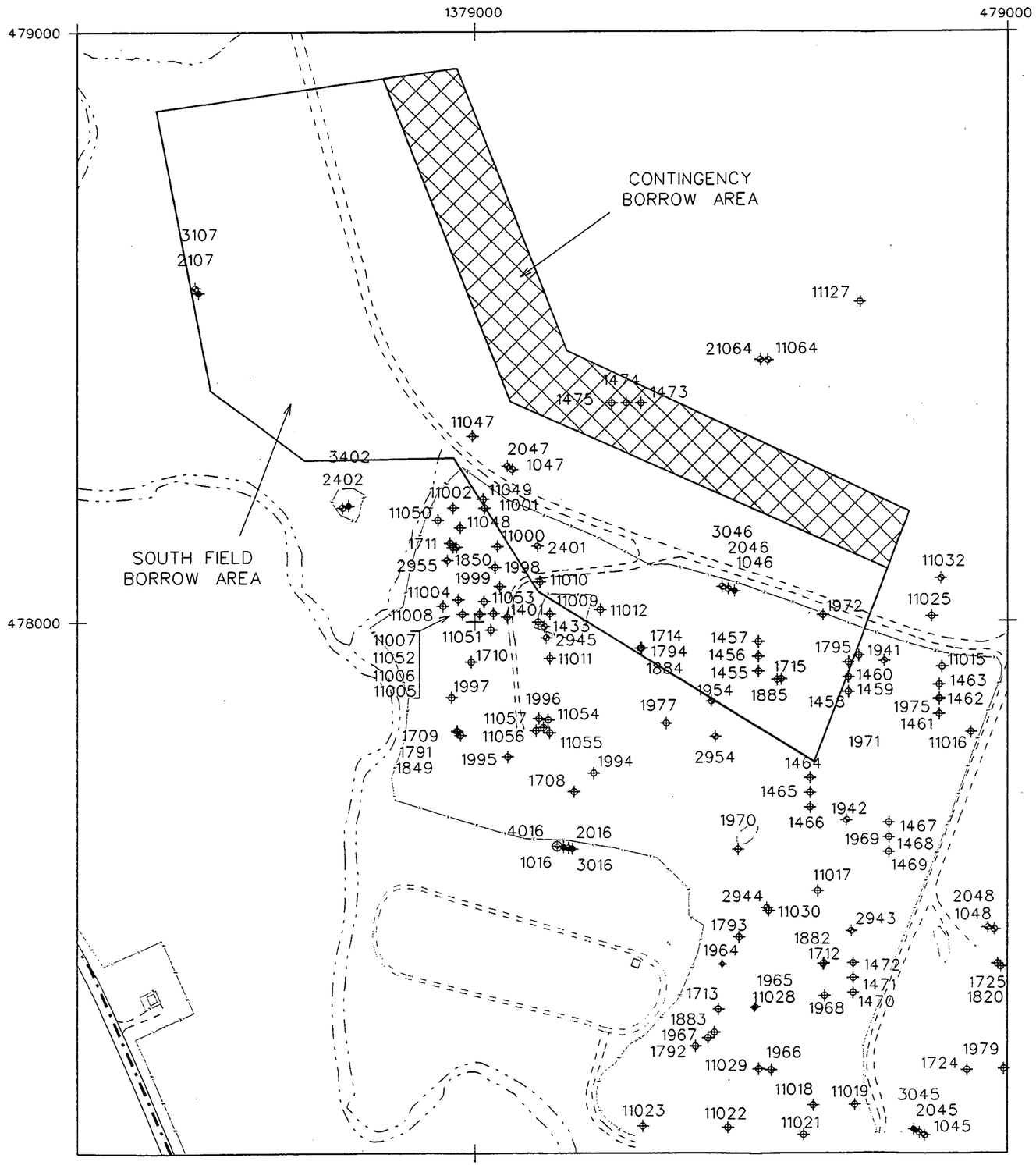
FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

BORING, WELL, AND CONE PENETROMETER LOCATIONS IN EAST FIELD BORROW AREA

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 2-1

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_d.dgn



- 1000 SERIES WELL
- 2000 SERIES WELL
- 3000 SERIES WELL
- 4000 SERIES WELL
- SOIL BORING

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN NAD 27
BORING 1749 LOCATION IS
FROM THE SED

SCALE IN FEET

0 100 200 400

000044

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL
RESTORATION MANAGEMENT
CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

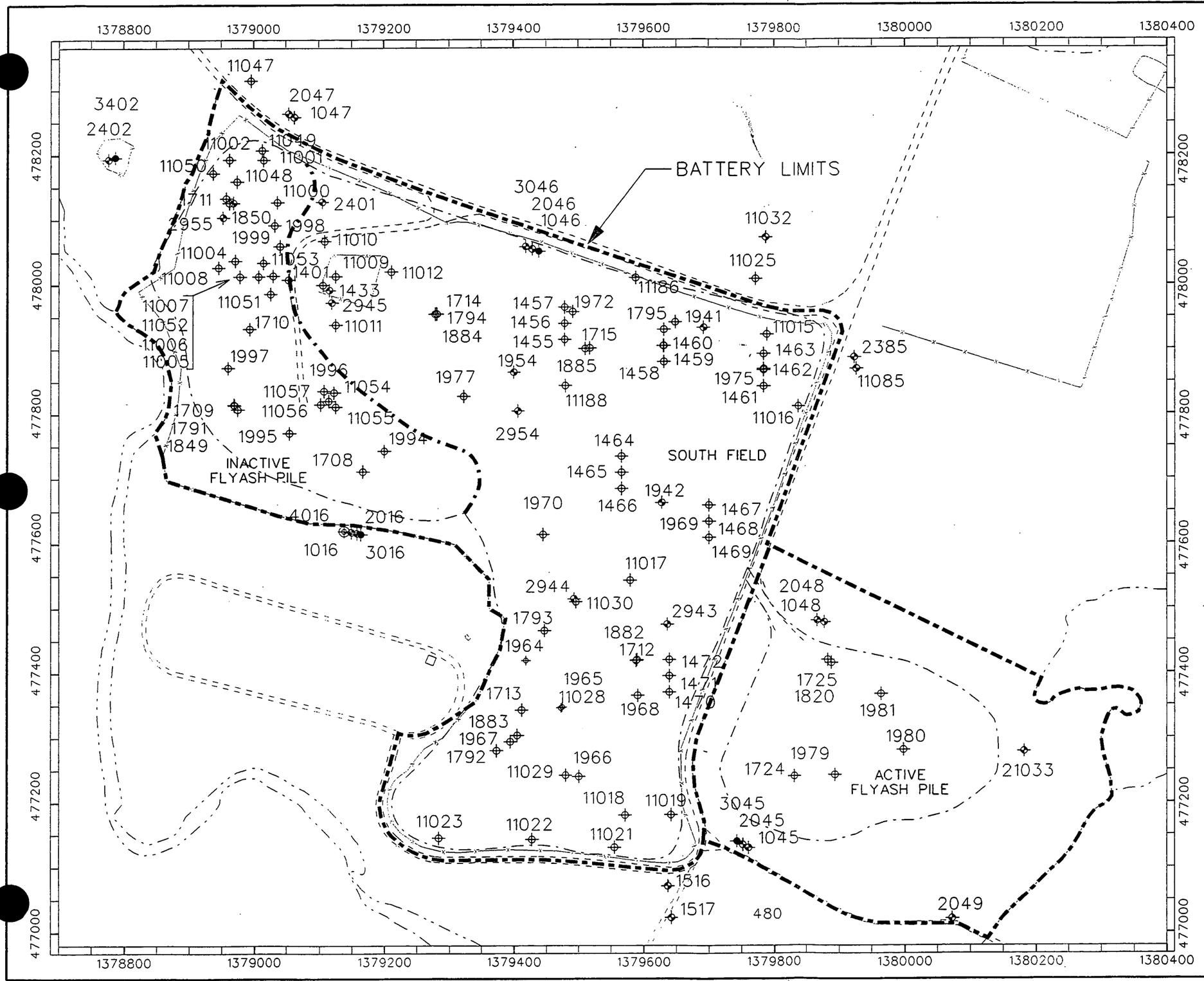
BORING AND WELL LOCATIONS IN SOUTH FIELD BORROW AREA

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 2-2

480

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_e.dgn



- 1000 SERIES WELLS
- 2000 SERIES WELLS
- 3000 SERIES WELLS
- 4000 SERIES WELLS
- SOIL BORING

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE IN FEET

0 75 150 300

000045

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

BORING AND WELL LOCATIONS IN INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE AREAS

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 2-3

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_1.dgn

NOTE:
EXCAVATION DEPTHS TO 20mg/kg
U-TOTAL BASED ON CRU2 FS MODEL

SCALE IN FEET

0 100 200 400

000046

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

DEPTH OF URANIUM CONTAMINATED SOIL IN INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE AREA

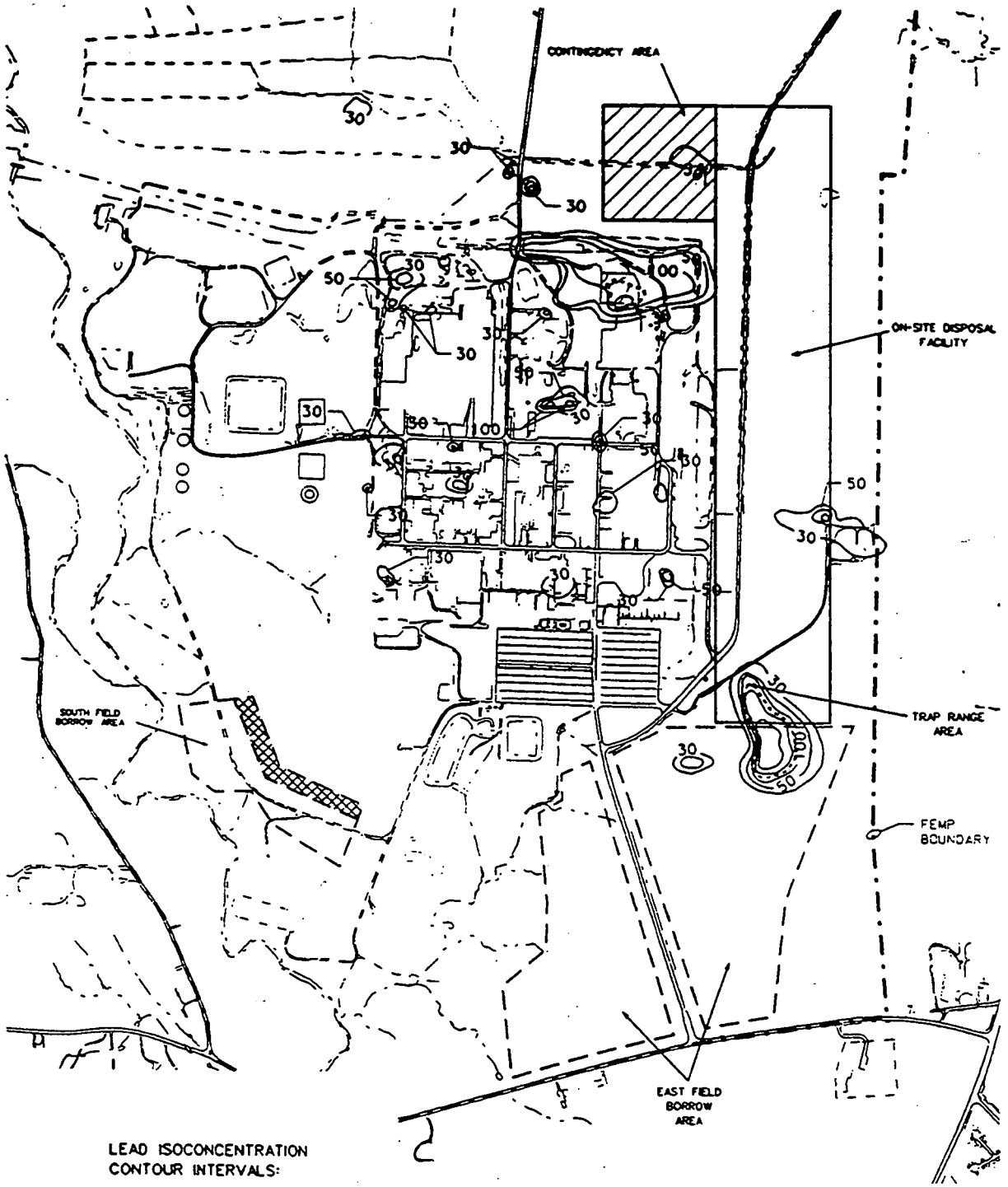
DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 2-4

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/map/hor/dpth/sf exc20.dgn

Special precautions will be required in areas containing soils (at depth) with uranium levels in excess of 80 mg/kg to assure protection of the groundwater (See Appendix H for the Methodology for Using a Hollow-Stem Auger as a Temporary Casing in Zones of Subsurface Uranium Contamination).

As defined in Operable Unit 5's Remedial Investigation Report (dated March 1995), Figure 2-5 shows the area of lead contamination in surface soils (0.0 to 0.5 feet in depth) exceeding 200 mg/kg associated with the FEMP trap range. This lead contamination is in the form of shotgun pellets and lead-based paint from trap fragments located at or near the ground surface on the FEMP trap range. Portions of this lead contamination are located within both the East Field Borrow Area and the proposed location for the On-Site Disposal Facility. According to Operable Unit 5's Remedial Investigation Report (March 1995), lead contamination associated with the FEMP trap range was not found at depths greater than 0.5 feet (see Figure 2-6). Surface soil (0.0 to 0.5 feet in depth) associated with the FEMP trap range and contaminated with lead above 400 mg/kg will be remediated under Operable Unit 5 and will not be used as source material for the construction of the On-Site Disposal Facility (see the Operable Unit 5 Feasibility Study for further information related to trap range lead contamination in surface soil).



FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO

Fernald

Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

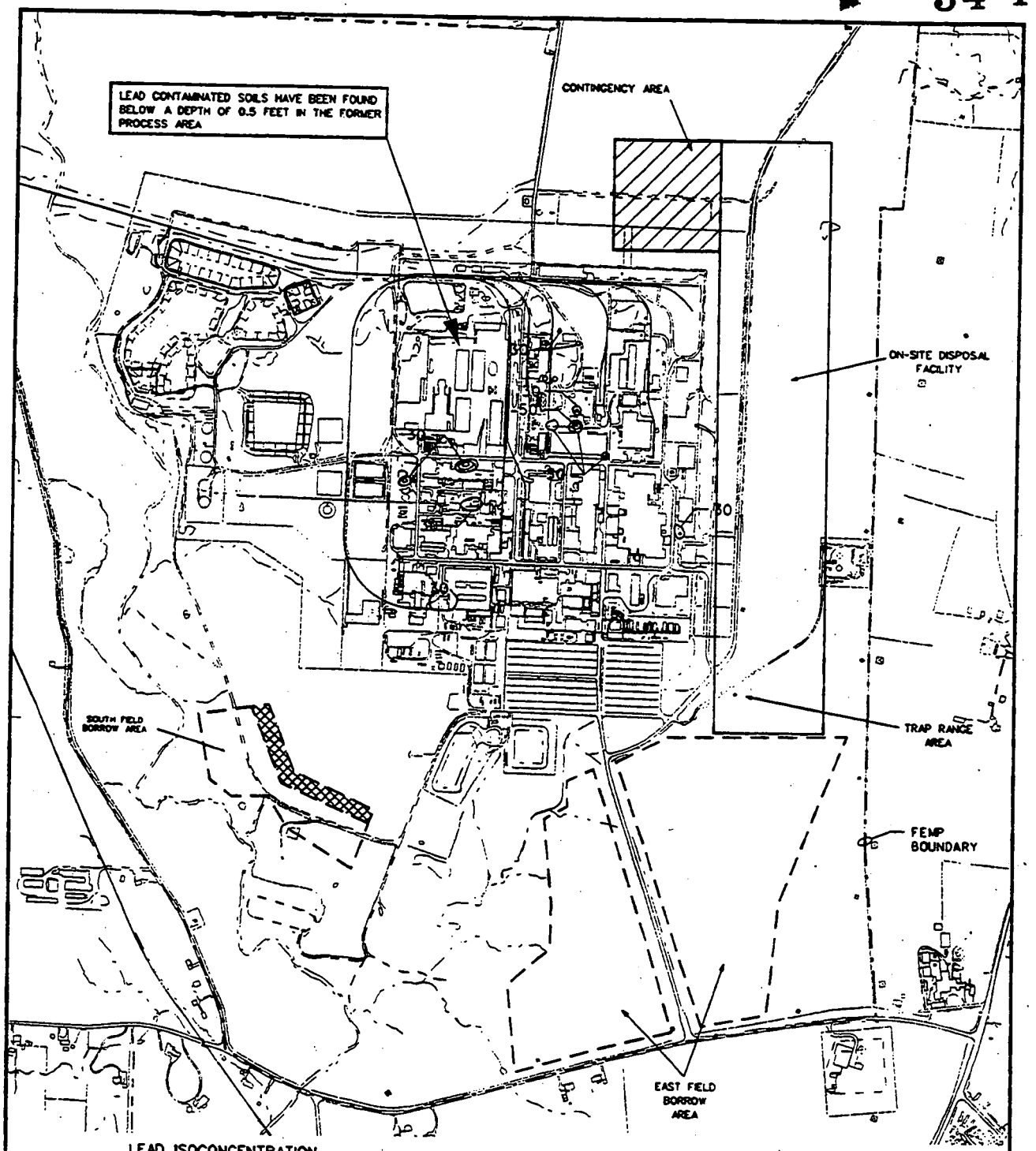
LEAD CONTAINED IN FEMP TRAP RANGE SURFACE SOILS, 0-0.5 FOOT

DATE

FIGURE 2-5

FILE NAME: /usr/ermc5/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_g.dgn

000048



FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

LEAD CONTAINED IN FEMP TRAP RANGE SURFACE SOILS, 0.5-1.0 FEET

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 2-6

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_h.dgn

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

3.0 ORGANIZATION AND RESPONSIBILITIES

3.1 ORGANIZATION

This section describes the organizational and management structure to be used in implementing the Operable Unit 2 Predesign Work Plan at the FEMP. An Environmental Restoration Management Contract (ERMC) has been implemented at the FEMP site to manage the restoration activities, with Fernald Environmental Restoration Management Corporation (FERMCO). FERMCO reports directly to the Department of Energy-Fernald Area Office and acts as the main contractor for FEMP activities and coordinator of technical support and remediation subcontractors. Under the current FERMCO organizational structure, Operable Unit 2 activities will be the responsibility of Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act/Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (CERCLA/RCRA) Unit 2 (CRU2), with such activities being conducted by individuals of various disciplines matrixed to CRU2 from other FERMCO departments (see Figure 3-1).

3.2 RESPONSIBILITIES

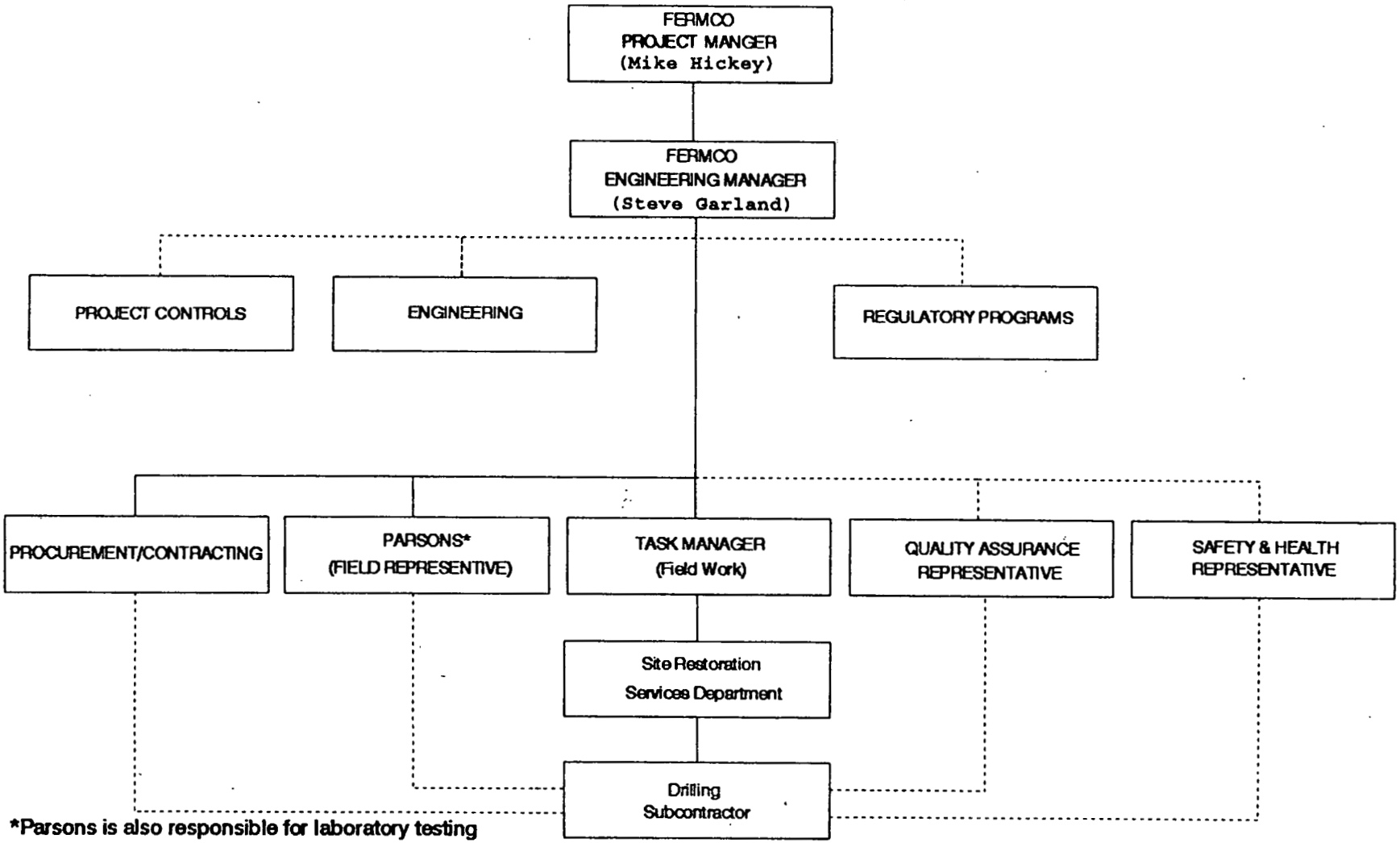
The major tasks that constitute the Operable Unit 2 Predesign Investigation organizational responsibilities to carry out those tasks are identified here. Primary responsibilities for implementing the Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan will rest with Operable Unit 2 of the FERMCO organization, with additional necessary support provided through matrixing from other FERMCO departments and through subcontracts as appropriate to ensure quality and timeliness. Task-specific responsibilities will be implemented as follows:

1. Complete overall planning, integration, execution, and support of the Operable Unit 2 pre-design program. Implementation of these activities is the responsibility of the Engineering Section matrixed to CRU2.

2. Prepare and obtain approval of Operable Unit 2 sampling and analytical procedures. Development of any new procedures will be the responsibility of the Planning Group within the Engineering Section of CRU2. New procedures will be submitted to EPA and OEPA for approval, as exceptions or addenda to the SCQ.

3. Prepare a Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan (GSTP) per CERCLA guidance for conducting field investigations, sampling, and analytical tasks. Each GSTP will be provided to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the Ohio Environmental Protection Agency (OEPA) for their review and approval before sampling activities are initiated.

FIGURE 3-1
FINAL GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION
ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE



*Parsons is also responsible for laboratory testing

4. Conduct the field program in accordance with the SCQ, established procedures, and the GSTP. All drilling, sampling, sample shipment, grouting, survey support, etc. shall be in accordance with procedures in the SCQ. In the event that the approved GSTP and the SCQ are not in agreement, the GSTP shall take precedence. FERMCO's Site Restoration Services (SRS) will provide the necessary matrixed support to CRU2 to ensure completion of these tasks. Parsons will provide technical oversight and perform the geotechnical testing for geotechnical sample selection, analysis, and interpretation.

5. Review and validation of chemical data collected during field sampling/field characterization program will be conducted by the Data Quality Management Department of the Environmental Division. These tasks will be performed in accordance with the approved SCQ data validation procedures. Validated data will be entered into the FEMP SED.

6. Assess and evaluate the field data to the requirements of the DQO and the GSTP. Various facets of this task will be the responsibility of the Engineering Section of CRU2.

3.3 SAMPLE TEAM ORGANIZATION

3.3.1 Organizational Structure

Sampling for this project will be performed directly by both a drilling subcontractor and personnel from the Site Restoration Services (SRS) Department of FERMCO. A schematic presentation of the organization is provided in Figure 3-1. Due to the nature, objectives, and programmatic requirements of this project, actual sampling locations and analysis parameter selection have been designated by OU2/PARSONS personnel.

PARSONS geotechnical personnel will be responsible for selecting geotechnical samples and producing the subsequent field boring logs. FERMCO personnel will be responsible for assisting in soil sample collection, and shipping of samples to the analytical lab.

Additional sampling custodian staff may be utilized to provide an interface between the sampling crews and the FEMP or contract laboratory to be used for sample testing.

3.3.2 Responsibilities of Team Members

Overall project management will be provided by Steve Garland, P.E. who is matrixed into CRU2. Reporting to him are the following functional groups:

- Regulatory Programs - responsible for assuring that the regulatory basis for the design is met by the proposed data collection
- Procurement/Contracting - Responsible for obtaining the required subcontract services
- Project Controls - Responsible for tracking costs and scheduling data
- Final Geotechnical Investigation Task Manager - Responsible for implementing program objectives and reviewing data
- Engineering - Responsible for geotechnical testing and geotechnical data interpretation
- Quality Assurance - Independent investigation activities and responsible for assuring field activities follow the identified procedures/GSTP. Provide QA oversight of subcontractor activities.
- Safety and Health - Responsible for assuring the safe conduct of on-site investigation field activities and for the overall health of site workers.

Field sampling personnel from SRS are responsible for the collection and transportation of the samples in accordance with the approved GSTP.

The FERMCO geologists/field technicians are responsible for documenting all activities associated with drilling/sampling on the appropriate Field Activity Logs (FALs), ensuring that the proper sampling equipment is available and in serviceable condition, and assuring that sampling equipment has been properly decontaminated between each sampling point.

The sampling custodian personnel (part of the SRS Department) who interfaces with the FEMP or contract laboratory shall be responsible for ensuring that proper sampling containers are available and in serviceable condition, logging samples, and completing the associated Site-Wide Analysis Request/Custody Record (SWAR/CR) Form. In addition, sampling custodian personnel are responsible for labeling, handling, and storing samples prior to sample delivery/shipment.

The drilling subcontractors are responsible for their equipment and for proper execution of drilling and sampling activities in accordance with the approved GSTP.

3.3.3 Responsibility Matrix

The following is a responsibility breakdown of the geotechnical field investigation tasks.

1. Procurement	
a. Drilling	FERMCO
b. CPTs	FERMCO
c. Location Surveying	FERMCO
d. Laboratory Testing	A-E Contracted Laboratory
2. Access	
a. On-Site Access Coordination	FERMCO
b. Vehicle/Equipment Inspection	FERMCO
c. Site Access Training	FERMCO
d. Health & Safety Training	FERMCO
e. Identify Local Off-Site Borrow Sources for Aggregate, Drainage Layer, and Riprap Material	A-E
f. Off-Site Access Coordination	A-E
3. Permits & Approvals	
a. Site Penetration Permits	FERMCO
b. Other Site Permits/Approvals	FERMCO
4. QA/QC Activities	
a. Overall QA/QC Management	A-E+FERMCO
b. Field Activities QA/QC	A-E
c. Laboratory QA/QC	A-E
5. Field Investigation Program	
a. Scope & Commercial Direction of Field Program	FERMCO
b. Specify Sample Depth, Type, Quantity	A-E
c. Document Sampling Methods are in accordance with ASTM Standards	A-E+FERMCO
d. Coordinating Movement of Equipment On-Site	FERMCO
e. Coordinating Movement & Release of Samples	FERMCO
f. Preparing Field Notes and Other	

	Documents	FERMCO
g.	Preparing Boring Logs	A-E
h.	Health & Safety Management/Oversight	FERMCO
i.	Field Health & Safety	A-E+FERMCO

6. Interpretation of Results

a.	Characterize and define the soundness, erosion and durability properties of the aggregate, drainage layer and riprap material available from the potential off-site borrow sources	A-E
b.	Characterize and define the geotechnical properties of the clay material available from the on-site borrow areas	A-E
c.	Characterize and define the geotechnical properties of the waste material	A-E
d.	Develop excavation, grading and site restoration recommendations for on-site borrow source areas	A-E
e.	Develop design slopes for excavation of wastes within the Waste Unit Areas	A-E
f.	Develop parameters for fill placement during site restoration	A-E
g.	Develop grading and site restoration recommendations for areas affected by waste removal	A-E

3.3.4 Sampling Schedule

Sampling will be accomplished according to the schedule contained in Appendix G of the approved GSTP. In general, sampling will be performed concurrent with other investigative activities such as soil borings.

4.0 HEALTH AND SAFETY

The most successful methodology for providing an effective health and safety program for any activity is to ensure that involved personnel have received adequate training prior to implementation of the fieldwork. Employee awareness of all physical, radiological, and chemical hazards which may be encountered will be accomplished by training throughout the planning and execution of this project.

All FEMP employee and subcontractor personnel who will be performing fieldwork during this project will be required to have participated in all Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)-mandated 1910.120 Hazardous Waste Site Worker training. In addition, all applicable annual refresher training will have been taken by the individuals.

DOE Order 5700.6C (Quality Assurance) require a series of site-specific training courses for workers at the FEMP. These courses are designed to augment OSHA required training and provide additional training specific to the hazards which exist at the FEMP.

Field personnel participating in the performance of this project will be briefed on the requirements of the SCQ, the FEMP and Project Specific Health and Safety Plans, and the GSTP.

In summary, employee awareness and clearly delineated lines of authority and responsibility have been designed to provide for effective health and safety related knowledge specific to each activity.

4.1 GEOTECHNICAL SAMPLING AND TESTING PLAN

All aspects of this GSTP will be performed in accordance with all existing applicable U.S. DOE, U.S. EPA, OSHA, and State of Ohio Health and Safety Regulations. Additionally, all practices will be managed in accordance with commonly accepted practices used in the hazardous waste industry.

An FEMP Work Permit will be obtained prior to performing any fieldwork. This FEMP Work Permit will either include or reference a Penetration Permit that must be issued for each sample location prior to drilling, trenching, or soil boring activities may begin. Before a Penetration Permit is obtained, the area of concern is investigated and compared against the site database for

underground utilities in the area. No drilling, trenching or soil borings will be performed without a valid Penetration Permit being obtained prior to actual performance of the fieldwork.

Field activities require a health and safety plan. A health and safety plan has been prepared in accordance with the FEMP Site Health and Safety Plan. For each project task and subtask, health and safety technician coverage is provided by the assignment of a technician to monitor the activities of the field crew. Health and safety plans provide for the hazards typically encountered by personnel when performing the specified fieldwork.

Proper equipment to be used for health and safety monitoring and personnel protection will be specified in the Project Specific Health and Safety Plan (Attachment B -- Personnel Environmental Monitoring Action Levels). Criteria for the selection of monitoring equipment and protective clothing will also be detailed in the Project Specific Health and Safety Plan (Attachment A -- Project-Specific Health and Safety Requirements Matrix) and may be further augmented during the issuance of FEMP Work Permits.

Personnel associated with the task are required to read and understand the Project Specific Health and Safety Plan prior to either performing fieldwork, or entering the immediate work zone.

4.2 RADIOLOGICAL MONITORING AND CONTROL

Radiological monitoring for this work plan will be achieved using existing institutional controls commonly utilized at the FEMP. For those areas of the FEMP which are under existing institutional radiological controls, any employee who will be entering such areas is required to possess and wear a Thermoluminescent Dosimeter (TLD) to monitor for exposure to radiation. In addition, each employee is required to participate in a regularly scheduled urinalysis program which is designed to monitor for internal uranium contamination. In addition, each employee performing work in the former production area or in any radiologically controlled area must attend and pass appropriate on-site radiological training.

Monitoring results, which exceed FEMP-determined exposure guidelines, will be further evaluated as to the possible source(s). Measures necessary to reduce personnel exposure to radiation will be implemented. Such measures may include, but are not limited to, personnel training,

000058

decontamination, employee exposure monitoring, increased personnel monitoring, personnel protective equipment, and sampling of suspect materials encountered.

If the responsible radiological technician assigned to the field activities identifies a real or potential condition which could or will result in an unsafe condition, then that person has the responsibility to cease field operations until such time as the unsafe condition has been corrected.

4.3 NON-RADIOLOGICAL MONITORING AND CONTROL

Monitoring of potential health and safety problems associated with non-radiological hazards are evaluated by a health and safety technician. Also, all field crews are responsible for hazard awareness and recognition. Task-specific training is designed to enhance the performance of all fieldwork using good and safe work practices.

Evaluating the potential for personnel exposure to organic contaminants will be achieved mainly through the use of a Photoionization Detector. Other equipment which could potentially be used includes oxygen meters, and combustible gas indicators. Appropriate PPE levels will be determined and governed by the radiological, and health and safety technicians prior to the execution of field activities.

If the responsible industrial hygiene technician assigned to the field activities identifies a real or potential condition which could or will result in an unsafe condition, then that person has the responsibility to cease field operations until such time as the unsafe condition has been corrected.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

5.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE AND QUALITY CONTROL

The primary objectives of the QA/QC sections of this plan relate to the collection of engineering/geotechnical information needed to support the design of an on-site disposal facility with an approximately 2.5 million cubic yard capacity. Specific objectives of this field sampling effort will be designed, organized, and implemented in a manner which will optimize the collection of information which meets predetermined DQOs. To ensure that information is gathered in such a manner that DQOs are met, QC measures will be used to determine conformance with overall program objectives.

The fundamental mechanisms used to achieve these project quality goals can be categorized as prevention, assessment, and correction. These components are further described as follows:

1. Prevention of defects in the data quality through planning and design, documented instructions and procedures, and careful selection and training of skilled, qualified personnel.
2. Quality assessment through a program of regular audits and surveillances to supplement continual informal review.
3. Permanent correction of conditions adverse to quality objectives through a close-looped corrective action system.

5.1 ACCURACY, PRECISION, AND SENSITIVITY

For the purposes of this GSTP, accuracy, precision, and sensitivity are defined in the following manner:

Accuracy and Precision

Accuracy is defined as degree of conformity to the true value, and is achieved by using recognized calibration standards. Precision is defined as degree to which measurements of replicates agree to one another, being free from bias or drift in the measurement data.

Accurate and precise data will be achieved through the use of sampling and analysis procedures that minimize biases, through the use of standard procedures, through the meticulous calibration of field

and testing equipment, and by implementing corrective action whenever measured accuracy and precision deviate from pre-established limits.

Sensitivity

Sensitivity is defined as the capability of indicating minute differences. The sensitivity of field measurements (eg., penetrometer measurements) will be estimated.

Refer to Section 4.2 of the SCQ for additional detail.

5.2 COMPLETENESS AND COMPARABILITY

For the purposes of this GSTP, Completeness, and Comparability are defined in the following manner:

Completeness

A sufficient number of successful measurements, at least 90 percent, must be obtained to characterize the extent and nature of soil, subsoil, within the proposed clay borrow areas, and proposed off-site material sources.

Comparability

Comparability is the extent to which comparisons among separate measurements will yield valid conclusions. Comparability among measurements in the final geotechnical investigation will be achieved through the use of rigorous standard field installation, sampling, document control, data reporting, and analytical procedures. Refer to Section 4.3 of the SCQ for additional detail.

5.3 TRAINING

All FEMP employees and subcontractors assigned to this project will be required to participate in a series of regularly scheduled training sessions which are designed to enhance employee awareness of each one's responsibilities and duties in the project. Field staff will receive comprehensive project and task specific training. Project daily "Tailgate Safety Meetings" will augment health and safety and project objectives training prior to the project start. Refer to Section 4.4 of the SCQ for additional details.

000062

5.4 PERFORMANCE AND SYSTEM AUDITS

To verify compliance with the SCQ and project-specific requirements, the FEMP project manager and designated FEMP QA organization shall be responsible for scheduling and conducting QA audits and surveillance. Audit results of activities covered by the SCQ are available to the EPA upon request to DOE/FN. EPA may conduct external audits of FEMP activities covered by the 1991 Amended Consent Agreement as required.

As a minimum, audits shall consist of evaluation of the QA program and procedures, effectiveness of the implementation, and review of associated project documentation. Audits shall cover applicable laboratory activities, field operations and documentation, and final reports. Auditing shall be performed in accordance with DOE guidelines, the SCQ and applicable GSTPs.

Planned QA oversight of Parsons and Geotechnical subcontractor testing will be conducted by FEMP QA.

As a minimum, surveillance shall consist of monitoring/observing ongoing project activity and work areas to verify item and activity conformance to specified requirements. Surveillance shall be scheduled, planned, and documented. Refer to Section 12 of the SCQ for additional details.

5.5 FIELD CHANGES TO THE GSTP

Field or laboratory changes to this investigative effort are at the discretion of the architect-engineering subcontractor's representative, field geologist, sampling technician, and/or the Task Manager. Prior to implementation of changes in scope, the Task Manager shall be informed of the proposed changes and the circumstances requiring the changes. Investigative findings which could materially affect either the location of the borrow sources or the suitability of the borrow material will be discussed with the agencies prior to modification or expansion of the fieldwork associated with this GSTP.

Changes to any field or laboratory activities that directly affect the scope specified in either the GSTP or the DQO must have the verbal approval of the Task Manager and Quality Assurance representative prior to implementation, and be documented on the applicable Variance/Field Change Notice Form and marked as a Variance (see Appendix C) within 24-hours of verbal approval. Changes to any field or laboratory activities that do not directly affect the scope specified in either the GSTP or the DQOs

but are related to this investigative effort, shall be documented on the applicable Variance/Field Change Notice Form and marked as a Field Change (see Appendix C). Subcontractor's questions related to field or sampling activities shall be documented on the Clarification Request Form (see Appendix C). Note, Clarification Request Forms will not be used to make scope changes, but will be used, to document FERMCO responses to subcontract questions. Specific DQOs for this GSTP were developed and are presented in Appendix A.

000064

6.0 FIELD ACTIVITY GUIDELINES

6.1 FIELD ACTIVITY REQUIREMENTS

This section presents a generalized description of the field activities proposed to complete the Geotechnical Investigations for the proposed on-site clay borrow sources and material surveys for proposed rock, gravel and sand material to be incorporated into the Disposal Facility and Ancillary Systems. Field activities will consist of geotechnical sampling of subsurface soils using auger techniques and obtaining representative samples, primarily from existing stockpiles, at the various off-site material sources.

Procedures to be used during the performance of the field operations are derived from several FEMP program plans, procedures, ASTM guidance, and EPA sources. FEMP program plans, specifically the SCQ and FEMP SC/DM Department Standard Operating Procedures will be used as guidance documents. U.S. EPA procedure reference sources include the "Compendium of Superfund Field Operations Methods" and "Hazardous Waste Site Disposal Operations." Guidance for field activities is presented in Section 6.2 below.

For those field activities for which adequate procedures do not exist, activity-specific procedures are presented. These procedures will be in accordance with commonly accepted investigative techniques and recognized industry practices.

Because there is a possibility that the FEMP and surrounding area may contain archaeological sites, which are protected under Federal law, procedures have been developed to properly protect these sites. If any material is encountered during this investigation which may be a cultural or archaeological resource, work will stop immediately and the appropriate people notified. Appendix B outlines this procedure in greater detail.

6.2 FIELD OPERATIONS PROCEDURES

Tables 6-1 through 6-2 provide references for administrative, field, and sample handling/laboratory procedures for various activities in the Geotechnical Investigation for the On-site Borrow Source and OU2 Waste Fill Areas. These activities are:

- Soil sampling for geotechnical soil properties
- Soil sampling for chloride and sulfate ion concentrations to select appropriate cement type for concrete.
- Rock, gravel, and sand sampling to evaluate durability and anticipated service life.

000066

TABLE 6-1

REFERENCE GUIDELINES

Administrative Procedures	Reference Documents
QA/QC	SCQ Sections 4, 5, 10, and 11; Appendix A/Table 2-2; Appendix D; Appendix J
Chain of Custody	SCQ Volume I, Section 7.1; RI/FS Fernald Project Policy and Procedures Manual, FPP-401, Section 5.1.12
Corrective Action	SCQ Volume I, Section 15.2; RI/FS Fernald Project Policy and Procedures Manual, FPP-210
Daily Logs	SCQ Appendix J, Subsection J.4.1
Variances	SCQ Volume I, Section 15.4.1; RI/FS Fernald Project Policy and Procedures Manual, FPP-203
Document Change Request	SCQ Volume I, Section 4.4.3.2; RI/FS Fernald Project Policy and Procedures Manual, FPP-200

Field Procedures	Reference Documents
General Drilling Practices	SCQ Section 5.2.1; Appendix J, Subsection J.4.2
Abandonment	ASTM D5299-42 "Standard Guide for Decommissioning of Groundwater Wells, Vadose Zone Monitoring Devices, Boreholes and Other Devices for Environmental Activities" OAC 3745-9-10 "Abandonment of Test Holes and Wells" ASTM C150-92 "Standard Specification for Portland Cement"
Field Screening of Samples for Radioactive Contamination	SCQ Appendix K, Subsection K.5.3.2; RI/FS Fernald Project Policy and Procedures Manual, FPP-600
Decontamination	SCQ Appendix K, Subsection K.11

Sample Handling/ Laboratory Procedures	Reference Documents
Classification, Transportation, and Shipment of FEMP RI/FS Samples	RI/FS Fernald Project Policy and Procedures Manual, FPP-601; SCQ Appendix K, Subsection K.10; Volume I, Subsection 6.7; Compendium of Superfund Field Operations Methods, Section 6.0

TABLE 6-2

SOIL SAMPLING PROCEDURES

Administrative Procedures	Reference Documents
See Table 6-1	See Table 6-1

Field Procedures	Reference Documents
General Drilling Practices	See Table 6-1
Subsurface Sampling	SCQ Appendix K, Section K.5.3 MUNSELL Soil Color Chart
Surface Sampling	SCQ Appendix K, Section K.5.1
Field Screening of Samples for Radioactive Contamination	SCQ Appendix K, Section K.11; RI/FS Fernald Project Policy and Procedures Manual, FPP-600
Decontamination	See Table 6-1

Sample Handling/Laboratory Procedures	Reference Documents
Classification, Transportation, and Shipment of FEMP RI/FS Samples	See Table 6-1
Material Testing	EPA Method 9038 Sulfate (Turbidimetric) EPA Method 9251 Chloride (Colorimetric, Automated Ferricyanide AAII) American Society of Agronomy Method -- Procedure 10-2.3.2: Extracts at Soil/Water Ratios 1:1 to 1:5 from "Method of Soil Analysis, 2nd Edition 1982" - Part 2: Chemical and Microbiological Properties [#9 (Part 2) in the Agronomy series]. [See Appendix K for Material Testing Methods]
Geotechnical Testing Methods	ASTM reference methods as shown on Table 6-3 (see Appendix I for Copies of ASTM Reference Methods) Water Content-Density Criteria for Compacted Soil Liners, by David Daniels, and Craig Benson (ASCE Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol. 116, No. 12, December 1990, pp. 1811-1829).

000068

TABLE 6-3

SUMMARY OF ASTM PROCEDURES

TEST NO.	TITLE
C33	Specification for Concrete Aggregates
C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
C127	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
C128	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine
C227	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)
C289	Potential Reactivity of Aggregate (Chemical Method)
C295	Petrographic Examination of Aggregates
C535	Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine
C586	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)
C805	Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete
C1164	Evaluation of Limestone or Lime Uniformity From a Single Source
D75	Practice for Sampling Aggregates
D420	Standard Guide for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock
D421	Standard Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis Determination of Soil Constants
D422	Standard Method for Particle Size Analysis for Soils
D698	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort
D854	Standard Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils
D1452	Standard Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings
D1586	Standard Test Method for Penetrometer Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils
D1587	Standard Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils
D2216	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures
D2217	Standard Practice for Wet Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants.
D2435	Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soil

TABLE 6-3
(Continued)

TEST NO.	TITLE	
D2487	Standard Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes	1
D2488	Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils	2
D2573	Standard Test Method for Field Vane Shear Test in Cohesive Soil	3
D2844	Standard Test Method for Resistance R-Value and Expansion Pressure of Compacted Soils	4
D2850	Standard Test Method for Unconsolidated, Undrained Compressive Strength of Cohesive Soils in Triaxial Compression	5
D2974	Standard Test Method for Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils	6
D3080	Standard Test Method for Direct Shear Test of Soils Under Consolidated Drained Conditions	7
D3550	Standard Practice for Ring-Lines Barrel Sampling of Soils	8
D3967	Standard for Splitting Tensile strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens	9
D4186	Standard Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation properties of Soils Using Controlled-Strain Loading	10
D4220	Standard Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples	11
D4318	Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils	12
D4546	Standard Test Methods for One-Dimensional Swell or Settlement Potential of Cohesive Soils	13
D4643	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil by the Microwave Oven Method	14
D4767	Test Method for Consolidated-Undrained Triaxial Compressive Test on Cohesive Soils	15
D4992	Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control	16
D5084	Standard Test Method for Measurement of Hydraulic Conductivity of Standard Porous Materials Using a Flexible Wall Parameter	17
D5240	Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	18
D5299	Decommissioning of Ground Water Wells, Vadose Zone Monitoring Devices, Boreholes, and Other Devices for Environmental Activities	19
D5312	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions	20
D5313	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions	

000070

7.0 FIELD SAMPLING PLAN

7.1 GENERAL

The information generated by this geotechnical investigation study is necessary in determining the geotechnical properties of the source materials use in the construction of the proposed area of the on-site disposal facility. This information is necessary in order to perform the detailed design including the stability and anticipated performance evaluation of the subject disposal facility.

As part of this geotechnical investigation study, geotechnical sampling will be conducted to determine the geotechnical properties of source materials. Three different areas of geotechnical investigations are currently planned: on-site clay borrow areas, on-site waste unit areas, and off-site pea gravel, riprap, and fine and coarse concrete aggregate borrow areas. The following sections discuss the sample collection methods, field and analytical methods, procedures, and types of geotechnical sampling.

Changes to the sampling plan made in the field to conform with sampling and geological conditions will be documented in accordance with section 5.5. Sampling locations, may be modified in the field by the A-E to reflect encountered conditions.

For purposes of discussion, borings for both the on-site clay borrow areas and the Operable unit 2 Waste Units, will be divided into deep borings (greater than 10 feet in depth) and shallow borings (equal to or less than 10 feet in depth) (see Sections 7.2.2, 7.2.3, 7.3.2, and 7.3.3). The deeper borings will be made using truck-mounted hollow-stem auger drill rigs and the shallow borings will be made using either a hand-operated power auger or a van-mounted geoprobe.

7.2 ON-SITE BORROW SOURCE FIELD PROGRAM

7.2.1 Purpose

The purpose for the geotechnical study within the proposed on-site borrow source areas is to characterize and define the geotechnical properties of the clay material available on-site for use as part of the lining and capping material, and develop excavation, grading, and site restoration recommendations for the on-site clay borrow source areas.

In general, the laboratory testing of samples in the on-site borrow source areas are intended to provide strength, compressibility, permeability and density properties of the remolded clay materials proposed for construction of lining and capping materials. For purposes of individual tests, See Appendix A (Data Quality Objectives). Additionally, some undisturbed samples are also planned for strength testing to provide basis for recommendations and long term performance evaluation of the regraded areas.

7.2.2 Soil Borings

Truck-mounted hollow-stem auger drill rigs will be used to drill 6 geotechnical soil borings in the East Field Borrow Area (see Figure 7-1 and 7-2) and 4 geotechnical soil borings in the South Field Borrow Area (see Figures 7-3). Split-spoon, Shelby tube, or Denison samplers will be used to collect soil samples from the 10 borings (See Appendix F for Denison Sampling Method). Penetration/resistance testing (blows/6") performed in the field will be used to correlate settlement, strength, bearing capacity, consistency of soil, and liquefaction parameters for soils underlying the Waste Units. Geotechnical testing required to determine specific gravity, soil characterization, moisture content, consolidated and unconsolidated compressibility, and remolded permeability will be performed on samples taken from glacial till.

Sampling will be conducted in advance of the hollow-stem auger described above, from six inches below surface to planned total depth. A Parson's geologist/engineer will describe the soil in accordance with ASTM D2487 or ASTM D2488, as appropriate and record classifications on the lithologic log (See Appendix C). A FERMCO geologist/engineer will direct the drill rig operator throughout drilling operations and record activities on a Field Activity Log (see Appendix C). All samples will be field screened with beta/gamma and Photoionization detectors (PID), and values recorded.

Planned boring depths, type and depth of samples, and corresponding geotechnical testing required for each sample are identified in Table 7-1. Samples will be collected approximately at intervals of every 2.5 feet in depth. Spilt spoon samplers shall be used to collect disturbed samples and Shelby tubes

1381000 1382000 1383000

479000 478000 477000

CULTURAL RESOURCE INVESTIGATION AREA (SAMPLING NOT PERMITTED)

G2-SB-70 G2-SB-69 G2-SB-68 G2-SB-67 G2-SB-66 G2-SB-64 G2-SB-65 G2-SB-63 G2-SB-62 G2-SB-61 G2-SB-59 G2-149 G2-SB-58 G2-SB-60 G2-SB-57 G2-SB-56 G2-153 G2-SB-55 G2-SB-54 G2-SB-53 G2-152 G2-SB-52 G2-SB-51 G2-148 G2-150 G2-151 G2-SB-50 G2-SB-81 G2-SB-80 G2-SB-79 G2-SB-78 G2-SB-77 G2-156 G2-SB-76 G2-SB-75 G2-SB-74 G2-SB-73 G2-SB-72 G2-154 G2-SB-71

PIPELINE BUFFER ZONE

PIPELINE

EAST FIELD BORROW AREA

N

● BORINGS

■ SHALLOW BORINGS

SCALE IN FEET

0 150 300 600

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

000073

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

SAMPLING LOCATIONS FOR EAST FIELD BORROW AREA CASES A AND B

DATE DRAWN

FIGURE 7-1

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig7_c.dgn

1381000 1382000 1383000

479000 478000 477000

CULTURAL RESOURCE INVESTIGATION AREA (SAMPLING NOT PERMITTED)

PROPOSED INV. ELE 564

PROPOSED INV. ELE 569

PROPOSED TWIN PIPES

PIPELINE BUFFER ZONE

PIPELINE

EAST FIELD BORROW AREA

G2-SB-70 G2-SB-69 G2-SB-68 G2-SB-67 G2-SB-66 G2-SB-65 G2-SB-64 G2-SB-63 G2-SB-62 G2-SB-61 G2-SB-60 G2-SB-59 G2-SB-58 G2-SB-57 G2-SB-56 G2-SB-55 G2-SB-54 G2-SB-53 G2-SB-52 G2-SB-51 G2-SB-50 G2-SB-81 G2-SB-80 G2-SB-79 G2-SB-78 G2-SB-77 G2-SB-76 G2-SB-75 G2-SB-74 G2-SB-73 G2-SB-72 G2-SB-71

G2-149 G2-153 G2-155 G2-152 G2-148 G2-150 G2-151 G2-154

- BORINGS
- SHALLOW BORINGS

SCALE IN FEET

0 150 300 600

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

000024

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO Fernald Environmental Management Project

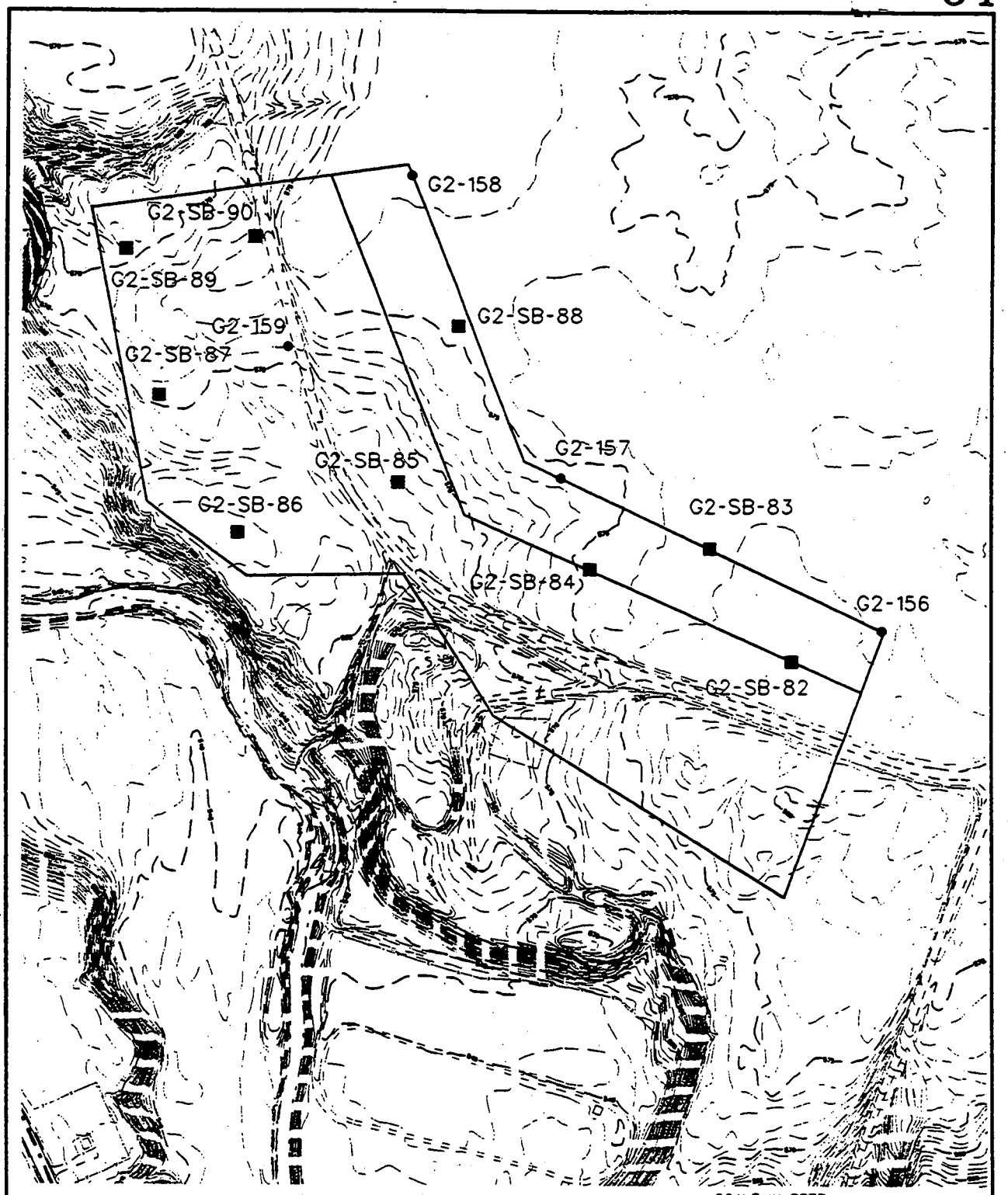
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

SAMPLING LOCATIONS FOR EAST FIELD BORROW AREA CASE C

DATE DRAWN

FIGURE 7-2

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig7_c2.dgn



FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO

Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

SAMPLE LOCATIONS FOR SOUTH FIELD BORROW AREA

DATE

DRAWN

FIGURE 7-3

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig1_g.dgn

000075

TABLE 7-1

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM ON-SITE BORROW AREAS (SOIL BORINGS)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-148	16.5	Till	2.5-4	--	MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	CU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-12	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	Drill Cuttings of Gray Clay	--	$SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+UU_{r90}+GS+AL+MC$
G2-149	16.5	Till	2.5-4		AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5		MC
		Till	7.5-9.0		GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-12		MC
		Till	12.5-14		GS+AL+MC
		Till	15-16.5		AL+MC
		Till	Drill Cuttings of Gray Clay	--	$SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+GS+UU_{r90}+AL+MC$

000076

TABLE 7-1
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-150	25	Till	2.5-4	--	AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	GS+AL+MC+SG
		Till	--	10-12	CU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	13-15	GS+AL+MC
		Till		15-17	UU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	GS+MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	MC
		Till	23.5-25		MC+AL
G2-151 (MD_3)	20	Till	2.5-4	--	MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	CU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	10-12	GS+AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	18.5-20	--	MC
G2-152 (MD_3)	19	Till	2.5-4	--	AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	--	12.5-14.5	GS+AL+MC+SG
		Till	15-16.5	--	MC
		Till	18.5-20	--	GS+AL+MC

000077

TABLE 7-1
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-153 (MD_3)	20	Till	2.5-4	--	MC
		Till	--	5-7	UU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	15.-16.5	--	AL+MC
		Till	--	18.0-20.0	UU+GS+AL+MC
G2-154	12	Till	2.5-4	--	AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	AL+MC
		Till	--	10-12	UU+GS+AL+MC
G2-155 (MD_3)	16	Till	2.5-4	--	AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	UU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	14.5-16	--	GS+AL+MC
G2-156	20	Till	2.5-4	--	MC
		Till	--	5-7	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	CU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	18.5-20	--	MC

000078

TABLE 7-1
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-157	20	Till	2.5-4	--	MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	UU+GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	10-12	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	18.2-20	--	MC
G2-158 (MD_3)	20	Till	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	MC
		Till	18.5-20	--	GS+AL+MC
G2-159 (MD_3)	20	Till	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	MC
		Till	18.5-20	--	GS+AL+MC

Notes:

1. The definitions of the geotechnical laboratory testing* are as follows:

   MC = Moisture Content, ASTM D2216.

   GS = Grain Size/Hydrometer, ASTM D422.

000079

TABLE 7-1
(Continued)

SG = Specific Gravity, ASTM D854.

AL = Atterberg Limits, ASTM D4318.

UU = Unconsolidated, Undrained Triaxial Compression, ASTM D2850, undisturbed sample.

P_r = Permeability, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with 97% relative compaction at moisture content wet 4% above optimum with effective confining pressures of 2 psi and 5 psi in accordance with ASTM D698.

P_{rl} = Permeability, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with 97% relative compaction at moisture content wet 4% above optimum with an effective confining pressure of 5 psi in accordance with ASTM D698. This test shall be performed with leachate provided by FERMCO.

P_{r5} = Five Permeability Tests, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with effective confining pressures of 2 psi and 5 psi and with relative compactions and moisture contents in accordance with ASTM D698 as shown:

Test	Percent of Optimum Moisture Content	Percent of Standard Proctor Density
1	+0	100
2	+2	97
3	+2	99
4	+4	95
5	+4	97

MD_3 = Modal Diameter Testing (see Appendix N, Modal Diameter Testing)
Collect three 1-gallon samples from drill cuttings from the following approximate depths: 2'-6', 6'-10', 10'-14'.

UU_{r90} = Unconsolidated, Undrained Triaxial Compresssion Test (ASTM D2850), remolded sample with 90% relative compaction at 4% wet of optium moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698.

SP = Standard Proctor, ASTM D698.

CU = Consolidated Undrained Triaxial Compression with pore pressure measurements, ASTM D4767, undisturbed sample. Three samples to be used at three different confining pressures. If Three samples are not available, perform a stage test on one sample.

000080

TABLE 7-1
(Continued)

*For the purpose each type of test, See Appendix A, (Data Quality Objectives)

2. In order to obtain more soil material, the SPT samples may be driven for a total length of 2 feet instead of 1.5 feet if judged necessary and provided that the sampler is of adequate length.

3. In case of no sample recovery, the hole should be cleaned and new attempt should be made prior to advancing to the next sample level. Then the next sample level shall be adjusted to minimize any deviation from the above specified levels.

shall be used to collect undisturbed samples in accordance with Table 7-1. Denison samplers may be substituted in place of Shelby tubes for the collection of undisturbed samples in soils having a standard penetration resistance higher than 20 blows/feet or at the recommendation of the FERMCO geologist/engineer. Preservation methods, sample volumes, and container types are listed in Table 7-2.

Thin-walled Shelby tube samples and Denison samplers will be shipped "upright" in 55 or 85-gallon drums. The sample tubes will be packed with vermiculite or similar packing material. Denison sample tubes will be overpacked prior to being placed in the shipment drum. All applicable shipping requirements including chain of custody will be followed.

After drilling and sampling is completed at each sample location, borings in the East and South Field Borrow Areas will be plugged with a volclay grout from the bottom to surface. Plugging will be performed through the hollow stem auger or via a tremie pipe; after grout has hydrated, a minimum of a 12-inch cement plug will be placed in the hole.

7.2.3 Sampling From Shallow Soil Boring Locations

Either a hand-operated power auger or van-mounted geoprobe will be used to drill 32 shallow borings in the East Field Borrow Area and 9 shallow borings in the South Field Borrow Area (see Figures 7-1 and 7-2). Disturbed soil samples will be collected by hand using either a shovel, hand auger, or scoop.

To represent potential chemical conditions within the disposal facility, some of the permeability tests will be performed using a permeant liquid consisting of uranium contaminated leachate. this uranium contaminated leachate will be collected from on-site uranium contaminated perched groundwater sources (see Appendix M for the Scope of Work and the DQOs related to the collection of the uranium contaminated perched groundwater and the subsequent chemical and radiological analyses of the permeant liquid).

Geotechnical testing required to determine soil characterization, moisture content, standard proctor densities, remolded permeability, and remolded consolidation will be performed on samples of till. Topsoil (top 18-inches) will be tested to determine ash and organic matter content. A FERMCO

TABLE 7-2

SAMPLE VOLUME, CONTAINERS, AND PRESERVATION - SOIL SAMPLES

Parameter	Container	Preservation
Gross Alpha/Beta[1]	4 ounces	None
Specific Gravity, Moisture Content, Atterberg Limit, Grain Size/Hydrometer Analysis	1 x 500 ml glass wide mouth or (1) 3 (O.D.) x 30 in. Shelby tube*	None
Dry Unit Weight, Undisturbed Hydraulic Conductivity (Permeability), Unconfined UU Triaxial Compressions, Undisturbed Consolidation	(1) 3 (O.D.) x 30 in. Shelby tube*	None
Undisturbed Consolidated Undrained Triaxial, with pore pressure measurement	(1) 3 (O.D.) x 30 in. Shelby tube*	None
Remolded Hydraulic Conductivity (Permeability), Remolded Unconfined Undrained Triaxial Compressions, Remolded Consolidation	5-gallons (45 kg) (field weight -- taken from (1) 3 (O.D.) x 30 in. Shelby tube*, shallow excavation, or shallow auger cuttings)	None
Remolded Consolidated Undrained Triaxial, with pore pressure measurement	5-gallons (45 kg) (field weight -- taken from (1) 3 (O.D.) x 30 in. Shelby tube*, shallow excavation, or shallow auger cuttings)	None

TABLE 7-2
(Continued)

Parameter	Container	Preservation
Total Uranium/Isotopic Uranium	500 ml	None
Ash and Organic Matter Content	250 ml	None
Chloride	1 x 500 ml polyethylene with polyethylene or polyethylene-lined closure	None
Sulfate	1 x 500 ml polyethylene with polyethylene or polyethylene-lined closure	None
Soundness	5-gallons (45 kg) (field weight -- sampled from stockpiled stone)	None
Bulk Specific Gravity	5-gallons (45 kg) (field weight -- sampled from stockpiled stone)	None
Resistance R-Value	1-gallon (6 kg) (field weight)	None
Standard Proctor	5-gallons (45 kg) (field weight -- taken from auger cuttings or shallow excavations)	None

*ASTM D1587 Suitable Tube
[1]Only required for soils collected within the restricted area fence of the FEMP or in areas of known contamination.

TABLE 7-3

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM ON-SITE BORROW AREAS (SHALLOW BORINGS/EXCAVATIONS)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-50	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-51	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-52	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-53	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-54	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-55	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_r+SG
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC+SU+CL
G2-SB-56	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-57	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-58	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-59	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+UU_{r90}+GS+AL+MC+CON_r+SG
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-60	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing	
G2-SB-61	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC	1
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC+SU+CL	
G2-SB-62 (MD)	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	2
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC	3
		Till	5.0-10.0	GS+MC	
G2-SB-63	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC	4
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC	
G2-SB-64	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL	5
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC	
G2-SB-65	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC	6
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC+SU+CL	
G2-SB-66	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{r1}+UU_{r90}+GS+AL+MC	7
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC	

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-67	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-68	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+UU_{r90}+GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{r1}+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-69 (MD)	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-70	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-71	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-72	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing	
G2-SB-73	6	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	1
		Till	1.5-6.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL	
G2-SB-74	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+UU_{r90}+GS+AL+MC+CON_r+SG	2
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC	
G2-SB-75	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL	3
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC	
G2-SB-76	6	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	4
		Till	1.5-6.0	SP+GS+AL+MC	
G2-SB-77	6	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	5
		Till	1.5-6.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL	
G2-SB-78	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+GS+AL+MC	6
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC	
G2-SB-79	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC	
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC	
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL	7
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC	

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-80	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-81	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_{r5}+P_{rl}+UU_{r90}+GS+AL+MC+CON_r+SG+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-82	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
G2-SB-83	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-84	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
G2-SB-85	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-86	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
G2-SB-87	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC+SU+CL
G2-SB-88	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-89	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	AL+MC
G2-SB-90	10	Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	GS+AL+MC+SU+CL
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC

Notes:

1. The definitions of the geotechnical laboratory testing* are as follows:

   MC = Moisture Content, ASTM D2216.

   GS = Grain Size/Hydrometer, ASTM D422.

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

SG = Specific Gravity, ASTM D854.

AL = Atterberg Limits, ASTM D4318.

CON_r = Consolidation with time readings, ASTM D2435, remolded sample with 95% relative compaction at moisture content wet of optimum in accordance with ASTM D698.

SP = Standard Proctor, ASTM D698.

P_r = Permeability, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with 97% relative compaction at moisture content wet 4% above optimum with effective confining pressures of 2 psi and 5 psi in accordance with ASTM D698.

P_{rl} = Permeability, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with 97% relative compaction at moisture content wet 4% above optimum with an effective confining pressure of 5 psi in accordance with ASTM D698. This test shall be performed with leachate provided by FERMCO.

P_{r5} = Five Permeability Tests, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with effective confining pressures of 2 psi and 5 psi and with relative compactions and moisture contents in accordance with ASTM D698 as shown:

Test	Percent of Optimum Moisture Content	Percent of Standard Proctor Density
1	+0	100
2	+2	97
3	+2	99
4	+4	95
5	+4	97

MD = Modal Diameter Testing (see Appendix N, Modal Diameter Testing)
Collect one 1-gallon sample from drill cuttings from the depth of approximate 1.5'-5.0'.

UU_{r90} = Unconsolidated, Undrained Triaxial Compresssion Test (ASTM D2850), remolded sample with 90% relative compaction at 4% wet of optium moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698.

OC = Organic Content, ASTM D2974.

SU = Sulfate (Turbidimetric) EPA Method 9038.

000092

TABLE 7-3
(Continued)

CL = Chloride (Titrimetric, Silver Nitrate) EPA Method 9251.

* For the purpose each type of test, see Appendix A, (Data Quality Objectives).

geologist/engineer will direct the drill rig/excavation equipment operator throughout drilling/excavating operations and record activities on a Field Activity Log. All samples will be field screened with beta/gamma and photoionization detectors (PID), and values recorded.

The planned depths, type and depth of samples, and corresponding geotechnical testing required for each sample are identified in Table 7-3. Sample volumes, containers, and preservation methods are listed in Table 7-2. All applicable shipping requirements including chain of custody will be followed.

After drilling and sampling is completed at each sample location, borings in the East and South Field Borrow Areas will be plugged with a volclay grout from the bottom to surface. Plugging will be performed through the hollow stem auger or via a tremie pipe; after grout has hydrated, a minimum of a 12-inch cement plug will be placed in the hole.

7.2.4 Waste Handling/Disposal

During drilling activities within the potential borrow sources, drill cuttings from both auger rigs and from hand-operated power augers or van-mounted augers will be stockpiled on plastic near the borings as they come to the surface. Drill cuttings will be radiologically field screened after drilling is completed to assure that the cuttings are not radiologically contaminated. After stockpiled soils have been determined not to be radiologically contaminated, the drill cuttings will be spread on the ground in the general area of the boring. The radiological monitoring results will be recorded. No radiological contamination is expected in the area of investigation within the potential borrow sources.

Investigation derived wastewater (IDW) generated from the decontamination of drilling and sampling equipment will be handled in accordance with the OEPA approved Policy for Management of Aqueous Investigation Derived Waste (see Appendix J, OEPA Approved Policy for Management of Aqueous Investigation Derived Waste).

7.2.5 Equipment Decontamination

For work performed in the borrow source areas, all drilling equipment will be decontaminated to Level I and media sampling equipment will be decontaminated to Level II in accordance with Appendix K of the SCQ specifications.

7.2.6 PPE Requirements

All work performed within the East and South Field Borrow Areas (exclusive of controlled areas shall be performed in Level D Personal Protective Equipment (PPE).

7.3 FIELD PROGRAM FOR WASTE UNIT AREAS

7.3.1 Purpose

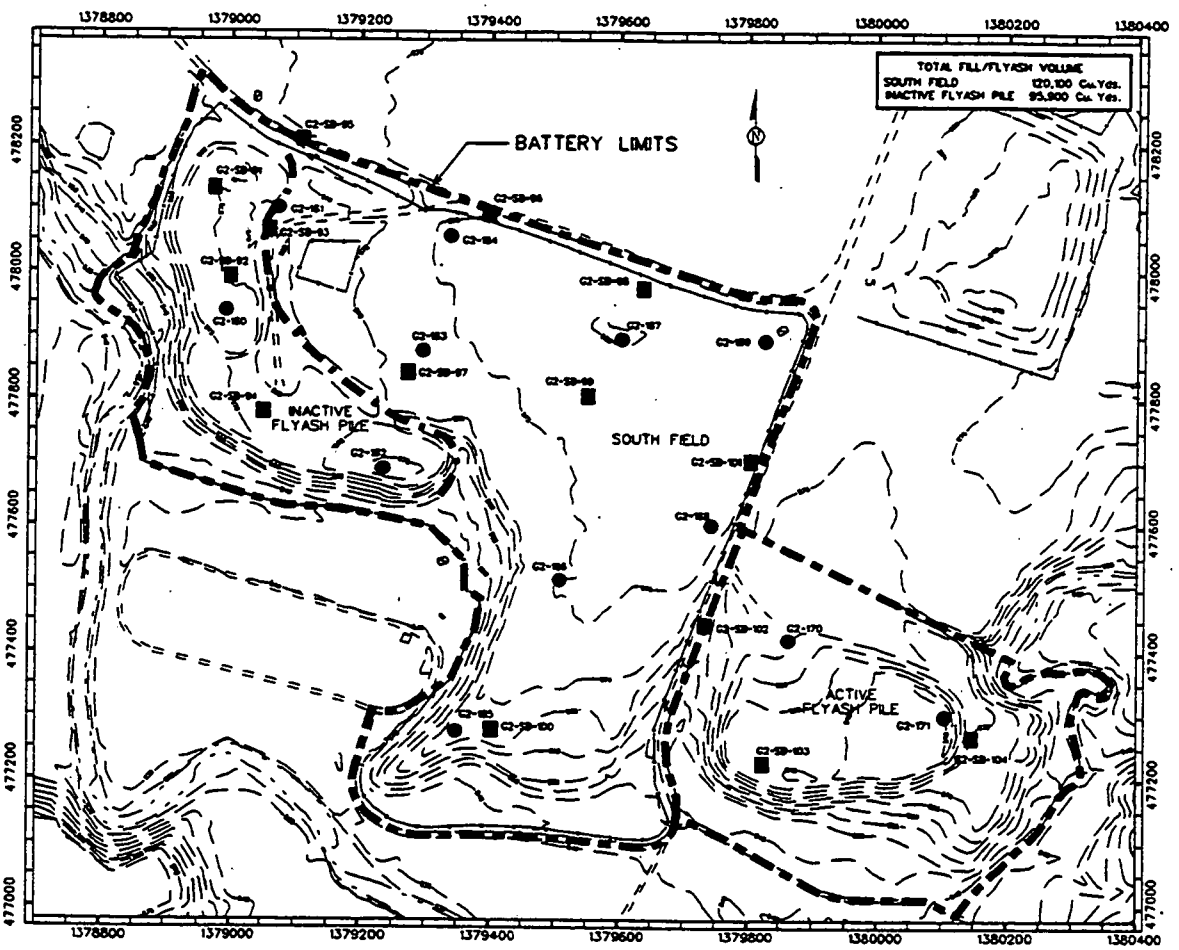
The purpose for the geotechnical study within the proposed Inactive Flyash Pile/South Field/Active Flyash Pile area is to characterize and define geotechnical properties of the waste material to support the disposal facility design, develop excavation recommendations for the waste materials, and develop grading and site restoration recommendations for areas affected by waste removal.

The laboratory tests of samples from the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile are intended to provide compressibility and strength properties of the remolded waste materials for evaluation of their performance after they are placed in the disposal facility. For the purpose of individual tests, See Appendix A (Data Quality Objectives). Additionally, clayey soils immediately below the waste materials will also be sampled and tested to evaluate their strength, compressibility, and permeability properties. These underlying soils may be utilized for the construction of the On-Site Disposal Facility's dikes, lining, or caps.

7.3.2 Soil Borings

Truck-mounted hollow-stem auger drill rigs will be used to drill 12 geotechnical soil borings from Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile areas (see Figure 7-4). Split-spoon or Shelby tube, or Denison samplers will be used to collect soil samples from the 12 borings (See Appendix F for Denison Sampling Method). Penetration/resistance testing (blows/6") performed in the field will be used to correlate settlement, strength, bearing capacity, consistency of soil, and liquefaction parameters. Geotechnical testing required to determine soil characterization, moisture content, standard proctor density, remolded compressibility, remolded consolidation, and remolded hydraulic conductivity will be performed on samples taken from both the till and the fill materials.

Sampling will be conducted in advance of the hollow-stem auger described above, from six inches below surface to planned total depth. A Parson's geologist/engineer will describe the soil in



LEGEND

- ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- BATTERY LIMITS
- FENCE
- FILL/FLYASH THICKNESS CONTOUR 5 FT INTERVALS
- BORINGS
- SHALLOW BORINGS

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE IN FEET

0 150 300 600

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

SAMPLING LOCATIONS FOR THE INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE AREAS

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 7-4

FILE NAME: /usr/ermo5/2cgs1/dgn/fig7_b.dgn

accordance with ASTM D2487 or ASTM 2488, as appropriate, and record classifications on the lithologic log (See Appendix C). A Ralph M. Parsons geologist/engineer will direct the drill rig operator throughout drilling operations and record activities on a Field Activity Log. All samples will be field screened with beta/gamma and photoionization detectors (PID), and values recorded. Planned boring depths, type and depth of samples, and corresponding geotechnical testing required for each sample are identified in Table 7-4. Samples will be collected approximately at intervals of every 2.5 feet in depth. Spilt spoon samplers shall be used to collect disturbed samples and Shelby tubes shall be used to collect undisturbed samples in accordance with Table 7-4. Only Spilt spoon samples will be collected in the Great Miami Aquifer (the soils immediately below the glacial till). Denison samplers may be substituted in place of Shelby tubes for the collection of undisturbed samples in soils having a standard penetration resistance higher than 20 blows/ft or under the recommendation of the FERMCO geologist/engineer. Preservation Methods, sample volumes, and container types are listed in Table 7-2.

Thin-walled Shelby tube samples and Denison samplers will be shipped "upright" in 85-gallon drums. The sample tubes will be packed with vermiculite or similar packing material. All applicable shipping requirements including chain of custody will be followed.

After drilling and sampling is complete, each boring will be plugged with volclay grout from the bottom of the boring to surface through the hollow stem auger or via a tremie pipe; after grout has been allowed to hydrate, a minimum of a 12-inch cement plug will be placed in the hole.

7.3.3 Sampling From Shallow Soil Boring Locations

Either a hand-operated power auger or a van-mounted geoprobe will be used to collect disturbed soil samples from 14 shallow borings (less than 10 feet in depth) from the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile areas. Disturbed soil samples will be collected by hand using either a shovel, hand auger, or scoop.

Geotechnical testing required to determine soil characterization, moisture content, and standard proctor densities testing, and remolded permeability, triaxial compression, and consolidation testing will be performed on samples of fill. Topsoil (top 18-inches) will be tested to determine ash and organic matter content. A FERMCO geologist/engineer will direct the drill rig/excavation equipment

TABLE 7-4

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE
(SOIL BORINGS)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil[2] Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-160	39	Flyash	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+SG
		Flyash	5-6.5	--	MC
		Flyash	7.5-9	--	GS+AL+MC
		Flyash	10-11.5	--	MC
		Flyash	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC
		Flyash	15-16.5	--	MC
		Flyash	17.5-19	--	MC
		Fill	20-21.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Fill	22.5-24	--	MC
		Fill	25-26.5	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Fill	27.5-29	--	MC
		Till	30-31.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		GMA	32.5-34	--	MC
		GMA	33.5-35	--	MC
		GMA	37.5-39	--	MC
G2-161	21	Flyash	2.5-4	--	MC
		Flyash	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	12.5-14.5	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	MC
		GMA	19.5-21	--	MC

TABLE 7-4
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil[2] Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-162	39	Flyash	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC
		Flyash	5-6.5	--	MC
		Flyash	7.5-9	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Flyash	10-11.5	--	MC
		Flyash	12.5-14	--	MC
		Fill	15-16.5	--	MC
		Fill	17.5-19	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Fill	20-21.5	--	MC
		Fill	25-26.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Fill	27.5-29	--	MC
		Fill	30-31.5	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Fill	32.5-34	--	MC
		GMA	35-36.5	--	MC
		GMA	37.5-39	--	MC
G2-163	24	Fill	2.5-4	--	MC
		Fill	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Fill	7.5-9	--	MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	15-17	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		GMA	22.5-24	--	MC

TABLE 7-4
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil[2] Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-164 (MD_3)	24	Fill	2.5-4	--	MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	MC
		Till	--	10-12	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	MC
		Till	22.5-24	--	MC
G2-165	29	Fill	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC
		Fill	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Fill	7.5-9	--	MC
		Fill	10-11.5	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Fill	12.5-14	--	MC
		Fill	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Fill	17.5-19	--	MC
		Fill	20-21.5	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Fill	22.5-24	--	MC
		Fill	25-26.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		GMA	27.5-29	--	MC

000100

TABLE 7-4
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil[2] Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-166	24	Fill	2.5-4	--	MC
		Fill	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	7.5-9	--	MC
		Till	--	10-12	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	--	15-17	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		GMA	22.5-24	--	MC
G2-167	24	Fill	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	MC
		GMA	22.5-24	--	MC

TABLE 7-4
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil[2] Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-168	24	Fill	0.5-2	--	MC
		Till	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	MC
		GMA	22.5-24	--	MC
G2-169 (MD_3)	26	Fill	0.5-2	--	MC
		Till	2.5-4	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	5-6.5	--	MC
		Till	--	7.5-9.5	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	MC
		Till	15-16.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	MC
		Till	22.5-24	--	MC
		GMA	24.5-26	--	MC

TABLE 7-4
(Continued)

Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil[2] Type	SPT Depth(ft)	Shelby Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-170	25	Flyash	2.5-4	--	MC
		Flyash	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Flyash	7.5-9	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	10-11.5	--	MC
		Till	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	--	15-17	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	17.5-19	--	MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	MC
		GMA	23.5-25	--	MC
G2-171	44	Flyash	2.5-4	--	MC
		Flyash	5-6.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Flyash	7.5-9	--	MC
		Flyash	10-11.5	--	MC
		Flyash	12.5-14	--	GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}
		Flyash	15-16.5	--	MC
		Flyash	17.5-19	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	20-21.5	--	MC
		Till	--	22.5-24.5	P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	25-27.5	--	MC
		Till	30-31.5	--	GS+AL+MC
		Till	32.5-34	--	MC
		Till	35-36.5	--	MC
		Till	37.5-39	--	MC
		Till	40-41.5	--	MC
		GMA	42.5-44	--	MC

TABLE 7-4
(Continued)

Notes:

1. The definitions of the geotechnical laboratory testing* are as follows:

   MC = Moisture Content, ASTM D2216.

   GS = Grain Size/Hydrometer, ASTM D422.

   SG = Specific Gravity, ASTM D854.

   AL = Atterberg Limits, ASTM D4318.

   CON_{r85} = Consolidation with time readings, ASTM D2435, remolded sample with 85% relative compaction at optimum moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698.

   UU_{r85} = Unconsolidated, Undrained Triaxial Compression, ASTM D2850, remolded sample with 85% relative compaction at optimum moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698.

   CU_{r85} = Consolidated Undrained Triaxial Compression with pore pressure measurements, ASTM D4767, remolded sample with 85% relative compaction at optimum moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698. Three samples to be used at three different confining pressures. If Three samples are not available, perform an stage test on one sample.

   SP = Standard Proctor, ASTM D698.

   P_r = Permeability, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with 97% relative compaction at moisture content wet 4% above optimum with effective confining pressures of 2 psi and 5 psi in accordance with ASTM D698.

   MD_3 = Modal Diameter Testing (see Appendix N, Modal Diameter Testing)
   Collect three 1-gallon samples from drill cuttings from the following approximate depths: 2'-6', 6'-10', 10'-14'.

   *For the purpose each type of test, see Appendix A, (Data Quality Objectives).

2. General soil type information are based on the available information extracted from the existing adjacent borings.

3. In order to obtain more soil material, the SPT samples may be driven for a total length of 2 feet instead of 1.5 feet if judged necessary and provided that the sampler is of adequate length.

4. In case of no sample recovery, the hole should be cleaned and new attempt should be made prior to advancing to the next sample level. Then the next sample level shall be adjusted to minimize any deviation from the above specified levels.

operator throughout drilling/excavating operations and record activities on a Field Activity Log. All samples will be field screened with beta/gamma and photoionization detectors (PID), and values recorded.

The planned depths, type and depth of samples, and corresponding geotechnical testing required for each sample are identified in Table 7-5. Two composite samples will be prepared by combining samples taken from designated locations.

Preservation Methods, sample volumes, and container types are listed in Table 7-2. All applicable shipping requirements including chain of custody will be followed.

After drilling and sampling is complete, each boring will be plugged with volclay grout from the bottom of the boring to surface through the hollow stem auger or via a tremie pipe; after grout has been allowed to hydrate, a minimum of a 12-inch cement plug will be placed in the hole.

7.3.4 Waste Handling/Disposal

During drilling activities within the Inactive Flyash Pile, and South Field, and Active Flyash Pile areas, drill cuttings from both auger rigs and from hand operated power augers or van-mounted geoprobe will be generated and will as follows:

Inactive Flyash Pile:

Soil and ash cuttings shall be drummed as generated then transported and placed in a near surface pit at the top of the pile without fully penetrating the soil cover.

South Field:

Cuttings will be drummed as generated then transported and placed in a near surface pit located in an identified low level contaminated area in the South Field.

Active Flyash Pile:

Ash and soil cuttings from within the Active Flyash Pile area, will be placed on plastic prior to disposition. Ash cuttings will be segregated to the extent possible and incorporated in the continued maintenance operation associated with the regrading and reapplication of the surface

TABLE 7-5

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, ACTIVE FLYASH PILE
(SHALLOW BORINGS/EXCAVATIONS)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-91	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Flyash	1.5-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+SG+CU_{r85}
G2-SB-92	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Flyash	1.5-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+UU_{r85}+CU_{r85}
G2-SB-93	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Fill	1.5-7.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+SG
		Till	7.0-10.0	GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-94	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Fill	1.5-7.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+SG+UU_{r85}
		Flyash	7.0-10.0	GS+MC
G2-SB-95	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	GS+AL+MC

TABLE 7-5
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-96	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-5.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-97	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Fill	1.5-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+UU_{r85}+CU_{r85}
G2-SB-98	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-99	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Fill	1.5-5.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+SG+CU_{r85}
		Till	5.0-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-100	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Fill	1.5-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+SG+UU_{r85}

TABLE 7-5
(Continued)

Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth(ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth(ft)	Geotechnical Testing
G2-SB-101	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-102	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-103	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Flyash	1.5-10.0	SP+GS+AL+MC+CON_{r85}+SG+UU_{r85}
		Till	1.5-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-104	10	Topsoil	0.0-0.5	OC
		Topsoil	0.5-1.0	OC
		Topsoil	1.0-1.5	OC
		Till	1.5-10.0	SP+P_r+GS+AL+MC
G2-SB-91+				
G2-SB-92+				
G2-SB-93+				
G2-SB-94[2]	10	Topsoil	0.0-1.5	SP+CON_{r85}
G2-SB-96+				
G2-SB-99+				
G2-SB-100+				
G2-SB-102[2]	10	Topsoil	0.0-1.5	SP+CON_{r85}

TABLE 7-5
(Continued)

Notes:

1. The definitions of the geotechnical laboratory testing are as follows:

   MC = Moisture Content, ASTM D2216.

   GS = Grain Size/Hydrometer, ASTM D422.

   SG = Specific Gravity, ASTM D854.

   AL = Atterberg Limits, ASTM D4318.

   CON_{r85} = Consolidation with time readings, ASTM D2435, remolded sample with 85% relative compaction at optimum moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698.

   UU_{r85} = Unconsolidated, Undrained Triaxial Compression, ASTM D2850, remolded sample with 85% relative compaction at optimum moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698.

   CU_{r85} = Consolidated Undrained Triaxial Compression with pore pressure measurements, ASTM D4767, remolded sample with 85% relative compaction at optimum moisture content in accordance with ASTM D698. Three samples to be used at three different confining pressures. If Three samples are not available, perform an stage test on one sample.

   SP = Standard Proctor, ASTM D698.

   P_r = Permeability, ASTM D5084, remolded sample with 97% relative compaction at moisture content wet 4% above optimum with effective confining pressures of 2 psi and 5 psi in accordance with ASTM D698.

   OC = Organic Content, ASTM D2974.

   *For the purpose each type of test, see Appendix A, (Data Quality Objectives).

2. Composite sample prepared by combining samples taken from the designated locations.

sealant. Soil cuttings or mixed soil/ash material will be placed in a near surface pit immediately exterior of the toe of the Active Flyash Pile but within the silt fence surrounding the pile.

Investigation derived wastewater (IDW) generated from the decontamination of drilling and sampling equipment soiled from work performed in the potential borrow source areas will be handled in accordance with the OEPA approved Policy for Management of Aqueous Investigation Derived Waste (see Appendix J, OEPA Approved Policy for Management of Aqueous Investigation Derived Waste).

7.3.5 Equipment Decontamination

7.3.5.1 Inactive Flyash Pile/South Field Areas

Drill rigs and other mobile equipment will be driven to each boring location within the IFP and SF on plastic sheeting to minimize the potential for contaminating equipment tires. Upon exiting each controlled area, a radiological control technician will survey the drill rig for contamination. If the rig exhibits levels above reasonable limits on the tires or other parts of the rig, decontamination will be performed to Level II in accordance Appendix K of the SCQ specifications at either the FEMP Decontamination Facility or at the Site Restoration Services Decontamination Area (see Figure 1-2). The radiological control technician will determine the location for decontamination. If no contamination is evident during the Inactive Flyash Pile or South Field controlled area exit survey, then the radiological control technician will determine if any decontamination is required.

All sampling equipment (excluding Shelby tubes and Denison sampler liners) penetrating the ground within either the Inactive Flyash Pile or South Field areas will be decontaminated to Level II in accordance with Appendix K of the SCQ specifications prior to reuse. This decontamination will be performed at the FEMP Decontamination Facility, the Site Restoration Services Decontamination Area (see Figure 1-2) or at a remote location located near the drilling activities. The radiological control technician will determine where the equipment will be decontaminated. Sampling equipment decontaminated outside the Inactive Flyash Pile/South Field Area shall be containerized in plastic prior to being transported to the FEMP Decontamination Facility.

000110

Above ground equipment may be moved directly between boring locations within the Inactive Flyash Pile and South Field areas without being decontaminated.

7.3.5.2 Active Flyash Pile

For work performed in the Active Flyash Pile area, all drilling equipment will be decontaminated to Level I and media sampling equipment will be decontaminated to Level II in accordance with Appendix K of the SCQ specifications.

7.3.6 PPE Requirements

All work performed within the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, an Active Flyash Pile areas shall be performed in Level C (PPE).

7.4 OFF-SITE MATERIAL SOURCE FIELD PROGRAM

7.4.1 Purpose

The purpose for the geotechnical study at the off-site material sources is as follows:

- To determine typical soundness and durability of locally available rock (hereinafter called riprap) to be used in the construction of the biointrusion layer
- To determine typical soundness and durability of locally available pea gravel to be used in the construction of the drainage layer
- To determine the potential chemical reactivity of locally available fine and coarse portland cement aggregates (sands and gravels). This data will be used to determine the design life of concrete components used in the construction of the On-Site Disposal Facility

For purposes of individual tests, see Appendix A (Data Quality Objectives).

7.4.2 Off-Site Sampling

Sampling will be performed at a minimum of three off-site material source locations. Pea gravel, concrete aggregates, and riprap samples will be collected to obtain design parameters to design of the On-Site Disposal Facility.

For samples obtained from the Off-Site Material Source areas, Parsons geotechnical laboratory shall perform a petrographic examination (ASTM C295) of the samples before running a complete suite of laboratory tests. Potential off-site materials identified as being of poor quality with respect to their intended use shall be eliminated from further testing and alternate source locations may be provided by as a substitute. Samples judged as being of good quality shall be subject to further testing as indicated in Table 7-6, 7-7, 7-8, and 7-9. At least six tests will be performed on representative samples.

Six representative samples will be collected from each off-site test site per material type, in accordance with ASTM D-75 and D-420, and the guidelines provided in "Technical Approach Document, Revision II, UMTRA-DOE/AL 050425, dated December 1989". Sampled material will be containerized and labeled at the off-site material sources. In addition samples will be shipped directly from the off-site material sources to the testing laboratory.

TABLE 7-6

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
FINE AGGREGATE SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST	NUMBER OF TESTS
C88	Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	18
C128	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate	18
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine	18
C227	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)	18
C289	Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)	18
D422	Particle Size Analysis for Soils	18

000112

TABLE 7-7

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
COARSE AGGREGATE SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST	NUMBER OF TESTS
C88	Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	18
C127	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate	18
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine	18
C227	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)	18
C289	Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)	18
D422	Particle Size Analysis for Soils	18

TABLE 7-8

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
PEA GRAVEL SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST	NUMBER OF TESTS
C88	Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	18
C127	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate	18
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine	18
D422	Particle Size Analysis for Soils	18
D5313	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions	18

TABLE 7-9

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM RIPRAP SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST	NUMBER OF TESTS
C127	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate	18
C535	Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine	18
C586	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)	18
C805	Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete	18
D3967	Splitting Tensile Strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens	18
D4992	Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control	18
D5240	Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	18
D5312	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions	18
D5313	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions	18

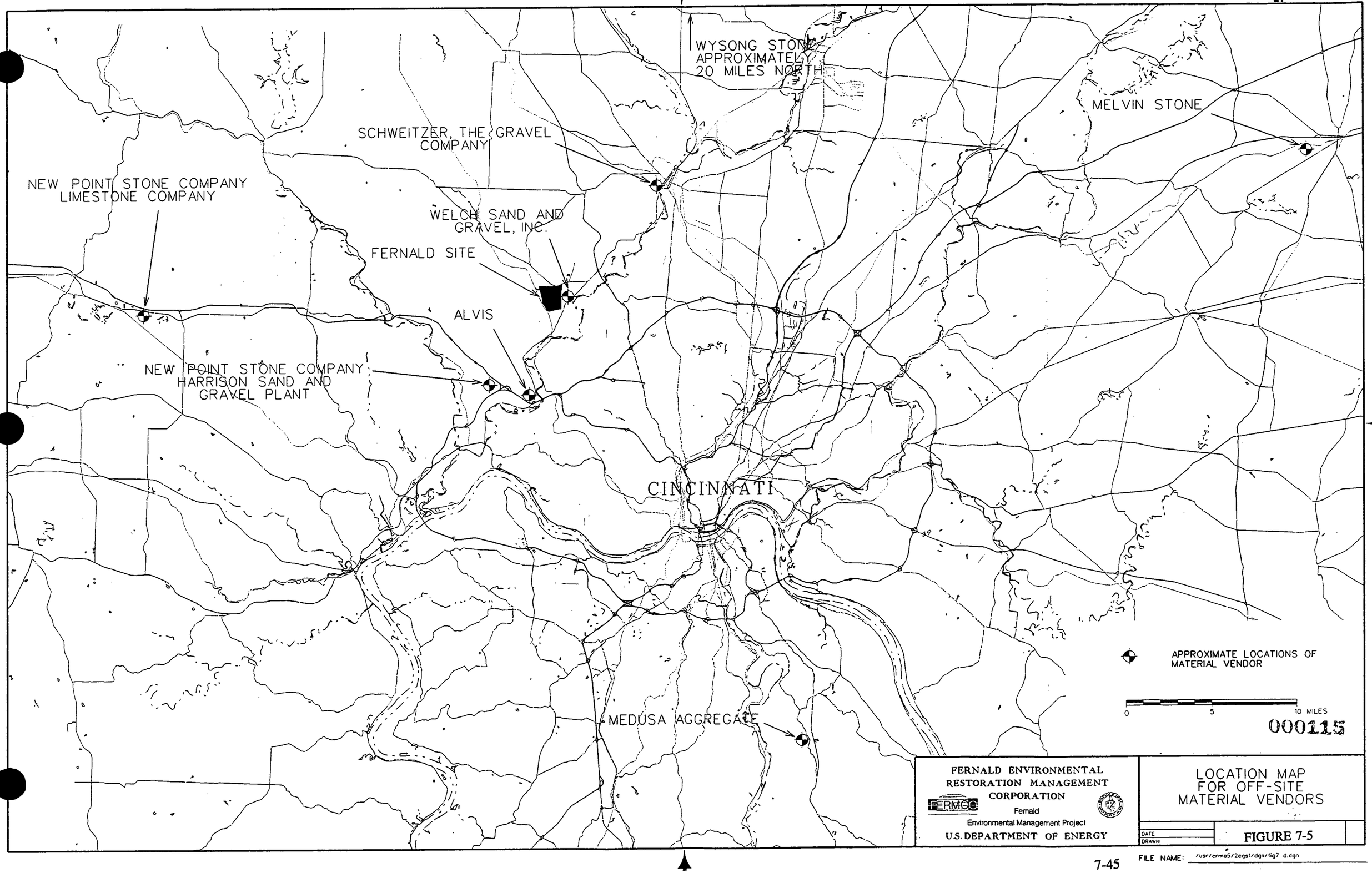
During the sampling visit, the size and limit of the off-site material area shall be confirmed and each material source will be photographed.

The following are examples of Off-Site Material Sources identified for potential sample collection (see Figure 7-5 for approximate location of these material vendors).

Fine Concrete Aggregates (Sand) Sites

- Welch Sand and Gravel
- New Point Stone
- Alvis
- Schweitzer - The Gravel Company

000114



000115

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

LOCATION MAP FOR OFF-SITE MATERIAL VENDORS

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE 7-5

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig7 d.dgn

Course Concrete Aggregates (Gravel) Sites

- Medusa Aggregate
- New Point Stone
- Wysong Stone
- Melvin Stone

Pea Gravel Sites

- Welch Sand and Gravel
- Schweitzer - The Gravel Company
- New Point Stone
- Alvis

Riprap Sites

- Medusa Aggregate
- New Point Stone
- Wysong Stone
- Melvin Stone

7.4.3 Waste Handling/Disposal

Any waste generated at the off-site test sites from sampling activities will be handled and disposed in accordance with the vendors' methods and procedures for waste handling and disposition.

7.4.4 Equipment Decontamination

Any reusable FEMP sampling equipment used to sample off-site test site materials will be brought back to the FEMP and decontaminated to Level II in accordance with Appendix K of the SCQ specifications prior to reuse.

7.4.5 PPE Requirements

All work performed at off-site material sources shall be performed in Level D PPE unless specified otherwise.

7.5 PROJECT SURVEYING

Land surveying will be performed at all on-site drilling, and excavation locations using the 1983 NAD coordinate system. Surveying results will be approved and certified by a State of Ohio Registered Professional Land Surveyor. All surveyed locations will be accurate to the nearest 0.01 feet elevation accuracy. Survey points will be located to within 0.5 feet accuracy and integrated into the existing FEMP Geographic Information System (GIS), and incorporated into the site Geotechnical Data Base being developed by Parsons and into the Site-wide Environmental Database.

Off-site sample locations will not be surveyed; although, a field sketch will be prepared showing the approximate location of sample locations in relationship to the off-site test sites.

7.6 GENERAL SAMPLING REQUIREMENTS

7.6.1 Field QC Samples

Since no environmental sampling will be taken, field QC samples will not be collected during the Operable Unit 2 Final Geotechnical Investigation. The rationale for this selection is as follows:

- No duplicate soil samples will be collected due to the lack of an effective field composite technique which would produce meaningful data where discrepancies are considered a laboratory precision problem.
- Container blanks will not be collected because containers used for sampling activities are pre-cleaned by the manufacturer and have a certificate of analysis for each lot of containers.

7.6.2 Alternate Sampling Procedures

The implementation of alternate sampling procedures could be necessary if any unanticipated problem developed during the field investigative effort. Alternate sampling procedures, or deviations, consist of either GSTP plan variances or GSTP non-conformances.

If it becomes necessary to deviate from a sampling standard operating procedure, such a deviation will be handled in the following manner:

1. The field sampling technician or geologist will identify the need to deviate from the sampling plan or procedure.

000117

2. The technician will bring the problem to the attention of field crew management and make recommendations about how to best proceed with sample collection with minimal impact to the existing sampling procedures and project DQOs.

3. Possible solutions and the impacts of the solutions on the project DQOs will be determined.

4. A Variance Request Form (example in Appendix C) will be implemented which describes the nature of the variance, the need for the variance, and how variation from the GSTP will minimize or have no impacts to the project DQOs.

5. QA will evaluate and approve the Variance Request. Verbal approval from QA will be received prior to implementation of the variance.

6. The approved Variance Request Form will become a part of the overall project historical file, and will be reported in the final project report.

GSTP non-conformances are defined as field or laboratory activities which have been completed, but are subsequently found not to have been performed according to the GSTP. A non-conformance may have a significant impact on the usability of field- or laboratory-derived investigation results. Resolution of a project non-conformance will be the responsibility of the Program Manager.

7.6.3 Sample Equipment and Materials

All environmental media samples will be collected with equipment which is functional, designed for the specific purposes of the sampling event, and properly decontaminated. Sampling will be accomplished with equipment which is constructed of nonreactive materials.

Sampling containers will be composed of materials which are commonly used for the type of media to be sampled. All sample containers will be of the volume necessary for laboratory analysis purposes. Appendix D lists equipment typically used per type of sampling activity.

7.6.4 Sample Volume, Containers, and Preservation

Sample containers will be pre-cleaned by the manufacturer and will be accompanied by a certificate of analysis. The sample container types and preservative requirements are specified in the FEMP SCQ and are summarized in Tables 7-2. Sample volumes will be consistent with the contract laboratory requirements.

7.6.5 Sample Collection Documentation

The collection of soil and subsoil materials are documented on the following forms:

- Lithologic Log
- Sample Collection Log
- Site-Wide Analysis Request/Custody Records

Examples of these forms are shown in Appendix C.

In addition to these forms, daily field activities are recorded on the Field Activity Log form. This form is included in Appendix C of this report.

Plugging of borings are documented on Well Completion Log forms. This form is included in Appendix C of this report.

7.6.6 Sample Collection Reports

No specific sample collection field reports are proposed for this project. Rather, the information contained in the field forms specified in Section 7.4.6 of this report serve as the basis for documenting all significant aspects of the sample collection activities.

7.6.7 Data Management

Data management will be implemented so that information collected during the investigation will be properly managed following completion of field activities. As specified in Section 5.1 of the SCQ, sampling teams shall describe daily activities on FAL forms sufficient for the sampling team to reconstruct a particular situation without reliance on memory. Sample Collection Logs shall be completed according to instructions specified in Appendix B of the SCQ. To assure proper documentation has been completed during field activities and that documentation has been completed correctly, field documentation shall be validated as described in the SCQ, Section D.5 by SRS personnel.

Geotechnical and testing data will be verified by CRU2 and PARSONS personnel. Laboratory data and field documentation will be entered into the Site-wide Environmental Database. Hard-copy documentation will be entered into the Site-wide Environmental Database. Hard-copy documents are

000119

kept in permanent storage in the project files. Electronic databases may also be permanently archived in a neutral ASCII file format.

Copies of all field data packages will be forwarded to CRU2 upon completion of field records verification.

7.7 SAMPLE MANAGEMENT

7.7.1 Sample Identification and Labeling

A unique six-digit sample number will be assigned to each sample collected by SRS. Each sample container will also be affixed with a sample label containing, at a minimum, the information specified on Form 7-2, Appendix B of the FEMP SCQ.

7.7.2 Sample Chain of Custody Records and Field Data Documentation

Sample custody procedures as outlined in the FEMP SCQ will be observed throughout the sample handling process from field collection to shipment or delivery of the samples to the laboratory. The Site-Wide Analysis Request/Custody Record (SWAR/CR) will be completed for all samples delivered to the on-site sample processing laboratory.

In addition to the custody records, a Sample Collection Log will be completed which summarizes all samples collected from a single borehole. A lithologic log will be completed for soil borings when appropriate. Furthermore, all field investigation work is documented in detail on a daily basis using the Field Activity Log (see Appendix C).

7.8 FIELD EQUIPMENT METHODS

7.8.1 Calibration of Field Equipment

Field equipment to be used during this investigation is divided into the categories of health and safety monitoring and field screening and monitoring. At a minimum, all equipment will be operated and calibrated according to the equipment manufacturer's specifications. All instruments are calibrated to manufacturers' specifications. Written logs of equipment calibration are maintained by the appropriate personnel in charge of performing the instrument calibrations.

7.8.2 Documentation of Calibration

Separate logbooks are kept for each type of instrumentation. The logbooks contain a history not only of the instrument calibration but also of any unusual or irregular problems noted during the use of that particular instrument. Two separate documents are used to record calibration of instruments. Appendix C contains examples of the calibration documentation.

The forms are labeled as follows:

- Instrument Calibration Log
- Field Activity Log

7.9 LABORATORY METHODS

Geotechnical testing performance requirements shall be used as guidelines for evaluating laboratory capability to provide specific analytical services to the FEMP. Audits shall be performed to verify laboratory performance using the performance evaluation sample results specified in Appendix E of the SCQ.

7.10 SAMPLE TESTING

Sample testing will be performed in accordance with the guidance and requirements contained in the this GSTP. This task consists of sample management; quality control; and data reduction and reporting. These subjects are discussed in detail in the SCQ. Geotechnical samples will not be validated by the ETS division but will comply with the standards referenced in Table 6-2.

All testing of samples taken from the South Field Borrow Area and Waste Units shall be performed by an NRC licensed laboratory. All other testing shall be performed by a standard laboratory.

All remolded permeability testing shall assume that minimalization of permeability is a higher priority than maximization of density. Therefore, moisture contents of samples in remolded permeability testing shall be based on the engineering concepts presented in "Water Content-Density Criteria for Compacted Soil Liners" by David Daniels, and Craig Benson (ASCE Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol. 116, No. 12, December 1990, pp.1811-1829).

Sample management and control will be in accordance with this GSTP and Section 7 (*Analytical Laboratory Sample Custody*) of the SCQ. Sample custody will be maintained and documented from the time of collection through analysis. Appropriate records will be maintained in the chain-of-custody process for sample tracking and control during shipment.

Data reduction and reporting for each ASL will be in accordance with Section 2.3.3 (DQOs) of the SCQ. Numerical analysis, including manual calculations, mapping, and computer modeling, will be documented and subjected to peer review.

Once the samples are collected and sent to the appropriate laboratory for analysis, field information will be received by SRS to verify that all required field information is complete and accurate, and the information will be forwarded to Data Quality Management if the analyses generated for the task are either ASLs C, D, and/or E. Field records generated for ASL B analyses will be forwarded to Quality Assurance as a second level of field records verification following review by SRS.

The laboratory will then analyze the samples per the requirements set forth in the GSTP. After the laboratory has analyzed the samples and verified that the quality of the data meets the requirements of the analytical method, and that all deliverables are included, the data will be delivered to Parson's representatives to perform the following tasks:

- Verify that all required deliverables have been received;
- Verify that contract performance requirements have been met. These contract performance requirements will be identified in the GSTP;
- Enter data into the SED;
- Copy data packages and deliver them to Data Quality Management personnel. The original of the data packages will be stored in a secure location;
- Confirm with an initial screening that the appropriate information is present;
- Log the package into a tracking database;
- Ensure that all QC information required to qualify data is present with supporting documents which can impact qualification of data from the laboratory.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX A

FINAL GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION

SPECIFIC DATA QUALITY OBJECTIVES

Fernald Environmental Management Project

Data Quality Objectives

NON-CONTROLLED COPY

Title:	**Data Quality Objective Logic Flow Geotechnical Investigation On-Site Disposal Facility**
Number:	**SL-021**
Revision:	**0**
Effective Date:	**July 25, 1995**
Contact Name:	**Tony Snider**

Approval: Richard Fiehler **Date:** 7/25/95
DQO Coordinator

Rev. #	0				
Date	07/25/95				

1.A. Task/Description: CRU #: 2 344

GEOTECHNICAL SAMPLING AND TESTING FOR ON-SITE CLAY BORROW AREAS, OFF-SITE MATERIAL SOURCES, AND OPERABLE UNIT 2 WASTE UNITS

1.B. Project Phase: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

RI ☐ FS ☐ RD ☐ RA ☐ R,A ☐ OTHER ☒ Specify: Geotechnical Investigation

1.C. DQO No.:_____ DQO Reference No.: _____

---

2. Media Characterization: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

Air ☐ Biological ☐ Groundwater ☐ Sediment ☐
Soil ☒ Waste ☐ Wastewater ☐ Surface water ☐
Other (specify)

---

3. Data Use with Analytical Support Level (A-E): (Put an X in the appropriate Analytical Support Level selection(s) beside each applicable Data Use.)

Site Characterization
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Risk Assessment
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Evaluation of Alternatives
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Engineering Design
A ☐ B ☒ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Monitoring during remediation activities
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Other (Explain)
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

4.A. Drivers:

"Conceptual Design Report for the Engineered Waste Management Facility", "On-Site Waste Disposal Cell Pre-Design Activities Engineering Report and Supplemental Report", "Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project", Final Feasibility Study Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project", "Final Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 5, Fernald Environmental Management Project", and "Predesign Investigation and Site Selection Report for the On-Site Disposal Facility".

4.B.Objective:

The information generated by the geotechnical investigation study along with the available data will be used to perform the detailed design including the stability and anticipated performance evaluation of the subject clay borrow areas and off-site material sources which are pivotal to the construction of the On-Site Diposal Facility.

---

5. Site Information (Description):

The soil sampling will occur in the following areas:

- Three on-site waste units (Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile) that contain soils that are designated for use as fill material in the construction of the On-Site Disposal Facility.

- An on-site clay borrow area at the southeastern corner of the FEMP that covers an area of approximately 80 acres. The site is relatively flat and covered with grass. The FEMP South Access Road runs through the center of this area.

- An on-site clay borrow area adjacent to and underlying the Inactive Flyash Pile and South Field waste units that covers an area of approximately 17.5 acres.

- Off-site material sources for fine and coarse concrete aggregates, pea gravel, and riprap.

DQO Number: _____

6.A. Data Types with appropriate Analytical Support Level Equipment Selection and SCQ Reference: (Place an "X" to the right of the appropriate box or boxes selecting the type of analysis or analyses required. Then select the type of equipment to perform the analysis if appropriate. Please include a reference to the SCQ Section.)

1. pH	☐	2. Uranium	☐	3. BTX	☐
Temperature	☐	Full Radiologic	☐	TPH	☐
Specific Conductance	☐	Metals	☐		
Oil/Grease	☐				
Dissolved Oxygen	☐	Cyanide	☐		
Silica	☐				
4. Cations	☐	5. VOA	☐	6. Other (specify)	
Anions	☐	ABN	☐	Geotechnical; See Attachment	
TOC	☐	Pesticides	☐		
TCLP	☐	PCB	☐		
CEC	☐				
COD	☐				

6.B. Equipment Selection and SCQ Reference:

Equipment Selection		Refer to SCQ Section
ASL A	_____	SCQ Section: _____
ASL B	See GSTP	SCQ Section: 5.3.3
ASL C	_____	SCQ Section: _____
ASL D	_____	SCQ Section: _____
ASL E	_____	SCQ Section: _____

7.A. Sampling Methods: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

Biased	X	Composite	☐	Environmental	☐	Grab	☐
Grid	☐	Intrusive	X	Non-Intrusive	☐	Phased	☐
Source	☐						

Other (specify): _____

DQO Number: _____

7.B. Sample Work Plan Reference: (List the samples required. Reference Draft Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan for On-Site Clay Borrow Areas, Off-Site Material Sources, and Operable Unit 2 Waste Units)

Background samples: Samples have been previously collected from the on-site area.

7.C. Sample Collection Reference: (Please provide a specific reference to the SCQ Section and subsection guiding sampling collection procedures.)

Sample Collection Reference: Appendix K

---

8. Quality Control Samples: (Place an "X" in the appropriate selection box.)

8.A. Field Quality Control Samples:

Trip Blanks	☐	Container Blanks	☐
Field Blanks	☐	Duplicate Samples	☐
Equipment Rinsate Samples	☐	Split Samples	☐
Preservative Blanks	☐	Performance Evaluation Samples	☐

Other (specify) _____

8.B. Laboratory Quality Control Samples:

Method Blank	☐	Matrix Duplicate/Replicate	☐
Matrix Spike	☐	Surrogate Spikes	☐

Other (specify) _____

9. Other: Please provide any other germane information that may impact the data quality or gathering of this particular objective, task or data use.

DATA QUALITY OBJECTIVE LOGIC FLOW
GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION
ON-SITE DISPOSAL FACILITY

1 Problem Statement

The preferred remedial alternative for Operable Unit 2 includes on-site disposal of remediation material. The design of a disposal facility is required as part of Operable Unit 2 remediation action plans and the Record of Decision. Also, the design will include accepting waste materials generated from other on-site remediation.

A predesign field investigation was initiated to define the most suitable on-site location for the disposal facility and was performed in the Identified Best Area located on the east side of the FEMP.

This Predesign investigation was performed in a phased approach. The first phase included preliminary cone penetrometer testing (CPT) and water level measurements of existing wells. This information was used to obtain an enhanced understanding of the existing lithology and to optimize the sampling locations during the second phase. The second phase included the installation and sampling of wells, borings, and lysimeters. Data obtained and analyzed from the second phase was used to confirm the thickness of the underlying gray clay, rule out the presence of extensive interbedded course granular materials, verify the protectiveness of human health and environment, and obtain preliminary geotechnical information for the design of the disposal facility. The third phase of the investigation included the installation and sampling of wells, and shallow and deep borings. The objective of the Phase III field investigation is to obtain engineering and geotechnical data from soil borings and monitoring well necessary for the design of the disposal facility. Phase III geotechnical testing is currently underway.

Based on information obtained from the predesign field investigation, estimates of waste volumes for on-site disposal, and preliminary disposal facility design, the proposed location of the on-site disposal facility has been identified in the "Predesign Investigation and Site Selection Report for the On-Site Disposal Facility (Volumes 1 through 3), DOE June 1995." The proposed location measures approximately 800 feet by 4300 feet, is on the eastern portion of the FEMP property, and provides suitable space for the disposal of the anticipated volume of 2.5 million cubic yards of waste material.

In support of the design and construction of the on-site disposal facility, geotechnical investigations are required to obtain engineering and geotechnical data on soils from the potential borrow sources and on soils designated for use in berm construction.

Based on conceptual design estimates, approximately 1,300,000 cubic yards of soil (mostly in the form of clay) will be needed for the construction of the on-site disposal facility. Of this volume, approximately 450,000 to 550,000 cubic yards of clay within the footprint of the disposal facility will be excavated for liner construction; however, an additional 750,000 to 850,000 cubic yards of soil is estimated to be needed for the construction of the cap and berm. In addition, approximately 60,000 cubic yards of soil will be needed for use as backfill at the Solid Waste Landfill, and Lime Sludge Ponds after the waste materials have been removed for disposal.

Therefore, approximately 810,000 to 910,000 cubic yards of soil will be borrowed from areas located outside the disposal facility footprint for the construction of the on-site disposal facility, and for the restoration of the Lime Sludge Ponds and the Solid Waste Landfill.

A primary location for the clay borrow area (known as the East Field Borrow Area) with a potential to provide an estimated 960,000 cubic yards of usable soils has been identified. The location of the East Field Borrow Source was chosen based on the following:

- Proximity to the On-Site Disposal Facility
- Availability of Large Volumes of Non-Contaminated Clays
- Availability of Existing Geotechnical Data
- Convertibility of Existing Roads to Haul Roads
- Ability to Gravity Drain Surface Waters Without Ponding (During and After Construction)

Approximately 140,000 cubic yards of additional clays exist under the South Access Road should the removal of the road be consistant with furture land use plans.

A secondary or contingent clay borrow source with a potential to provide an estimated 220,000 cubic yards of usable soils (including a 50,000 cubic yard reserve) has been identified near the South Field Area. This area, hereinafter called the South Field Borrow Area. Clay material from this area would be used for the construction of the Disposal Facility cap and/or berm in the event that additional waste (i.e., greater than 2.5 million cubic yards) is designated for on-site disposal. This area could also be used to obtain fill material for final site restoration of the Operable Unit 1 Waste Pits, Lime Sludge Ponds, and Solid Waste Landfill areas. The location of the South Field Borrow Area was chosen based on the following:

- Proximity to Lime Sludge Ponds, Solid Waste Landfill, and Operable Unit 1 Waste Pits
- Availability of Large Volumes of Non-Contaminated Clay
- Some Geotechnical Data in Vicinity
- East Terrace Face Adjacent to Paddy's Run Would be Excavated Leaving a Similar Landscape
- The Bottom of the Excavation Would be Above the 100 and 500 Year Flood Plains

In addition to on-site clay borrow areas, off-site surveys will be performed on other bulk materials required to construct the on-site disposal facility. Based on conceptual design estimates, approximately 350,000 cubic yards of riprap; 350,000 cubic yards of pea gravel; 60,000 cubic yards of sand; and 5,000 cubic yards of coarse aggregate will be needed for the construction of the on-site disposal facility.

2 Identification of a Decision that Addresses the Problem

The information generated by the geotechnical investigation study along with the available data are essential in determining the geotechnical properties (including the strength, compressibility, and hydraulic conductivity) on materials used to construct the disposal facility liner, cap, and perimeter berm systems, and to determine the engineering properties of the Operable Unit 2 waste fill materials. The data obtained through this investigation will support engineering analyses for the disposal facility design including remolded permeabilities, settlement, strength, slope stability and other design parameters.

3 Identification of Inputs that Affect the Decision

To develop design parameters, and evaluate stability and anticipated level of performance of the disposal facility, the geotechnical properties of borrowed and waste fill materials need to be known. Based on review of existing geotechnical data, known variability of geotechnical parameters, and engineering judgement, it has been determined that a total of 10 soil borings, and 41 shallow borings/excavations are needed in the on-site borrow areas; 12 soil borings, and 14 shallow borings/excavations are needed in Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile waste units; and 18 grab samples for each of type of off-site source material (fine concrete aggregate, coarse concrete aggregate, pea gravel, riprap).

These additional samples are needed in order to develop the required geotechnical data for design. This number of soil borings will provide sufficient information, when used in conjunction with existing information, to adequately determine geotechnical properties of the borrow and waste fill materials for the detailed design purposes.

The soil borings are intended to provide undisturbed and disturbed samples for log preparation and laboratory testing. Additionally, as part of the soil borings, Standard Penetration Test (SPT) blow counts will also be collected in both cohesive and granular soils. SPT values in cohesive soils will provide a measure of the soil consistency and strength values. In granular soils, SPT blow counts will provide a measure of the soil density and strength values. SPT values in granular soils will also be used in estimating the liquefaction potential of the saturated zones. The planned depth of each of the geotechnical borings along with

tentative sampling type and depths are provided in the attached GSTP. For on-site boring, samples will be collected at intervals of every 2.5 feet depth. Split spoon samplers shall be used to collect disturbed samples and Shelby tube samples will be used to collect undisturbed samples in accordance with the attached GSTP. Denison samplers may be substituted in place of Shelby Tubes for the collection of undisturbed samples in soils having a standard penetration resistance higher than 20 blows/foot or at the recommendation of the FERMCO field geologist/engineer.

The shallow borings/excavations are intended to provide bulk samples of topsoil (upper 18 inches) as well as the subsurface soils (from 1.5. to about 10 feet) which are intended to be used as material to construct the on-site disposal facility cap, berm, and or liner systems.

The planned depth of each shallow borings/excavations along with tentative sampling depths and laboratory tests are provided in the GSTP.

For the borrow areas, the topsoil samples will be used for organic content tests while the soil samples below the topsoil will be used for remolded permeability, remolded strength, engineering soil classification, and moisture density relationship testing.

For the waste fill areas, the topsoil samples will be used for organic content while the soil samples below the topsoil will be used for remolded permeability, remolded strength, engineering soil classification, moisture density relationship, and in-situ strength testing.

For off-site materials source locations, sampling will be performed to determine the following:

- The typical soundness and durability of locally available riprap to be used in the construction of the biointrusion layer.
- The typical soundness and durability of locally available pea gravel to be used in the construction of drainage layers.
- The potential chemical reactivity of locally available fine and coarse portland cement aggregates (sands and gravels). This data will be used to determine the design life of concrete components used in the construction of the On-Site Disposal Facility.

The following is a summary of the types of the laboratory tests to be performed during the geotechnical investigation from on-site soil samples:

-Moisture Content, MC	ASTM D2216
-Grain Size/Hydrometer, GS	ASTM D422
-Specific Gravity, SG	ASTM D854
-Atterberg Limits, AL	ASTM D4318
-Consolidation with time readings:	ASTM D2435
Remolded, 85% relative compaction, CON_{r85}	
-UU Triaxial:	ASTM D2850
Undisturbed sample, UU	
Remolded, 85% relative compaction, UU_{r85}	
-CU Triaxial (w/pp):	ASTM D4767
Remolded, 85% relative compaction, CU_{r85}	
-Standard Proctor, SP	ASTM D698
-Hydraulic Conductivity:	ASTM D5084
Remolded sample, P_r	
-Organic Matter, OC	ASTM D2974

In addition, Petrographic Examination (ASTM C295) will be performed on off-site source materials. From those materials determined to be of good quailty, three site will be choosen for further testing. The following tables show the addtional tests to be performed on off-site source materials:

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
FINE AGGREGATE SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST
C88	Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
C128	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
C227	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)
C289	Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)
C586	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)
D422	Particle Size Analysis for Soils

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
COARSE AGGREGATE SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST
C88	Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
C128	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
C227	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)
C289	Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)
C586	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)
D422	Particle Size Analysis for Soils

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
PEA GRAVEL SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST
C88	Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
C128	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
D422	Particle Size Analysis for Soils
D5312	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions
D5313	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
RIPRAP SOURCES

ASTM METHOD	TEST
C127	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
C535	Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine
C805	Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete
D3967	Splitting Tensile Strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens
D4992	Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control
D5240	Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
D5312	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions
D5313	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions

Six representative samples will be collected from each off-site test site per material type, in accordance with ASTM D-75 and D-420, and the guidelines provided in "Technical Approach Document, Revision II, UMTRA-DOE/AL 050425, dated December 1989". Sampled material will be containerized and labeled at the off-site test site, then brought back to the FEMP for preparation and execution of sample shipment to the testing laboratory.

Moisture content, unit weight, grain size, specific gravity, and Atterberg limits are primarily used for soil identification and classification purposes. Consolidation tests are performed to develop parameters needed for estimating the settlement of the disposal facility. Triaxial tests are performed to develop strength parameters needed for bearing capacity and stability evaluation of the stability of the on-site disposal facility. Standard proctor tests are performed to develop parameters needed for preparation of reconstituted samples as well as compaction control during the construction. Remolded hydraulic conductivity tests are performed to define the permeability characteristics of the potential liner and/or cap materials.

Organic matter tests are performed to estimate organic content of the topsoil to aid in assessing the potential settlement of the wasted topsoil due to its decomposition.

The following tests shall be performed to determine the soundness, durability, and chemical reactivity of pea gravel

- Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate

- Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
- Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
- Particle Size Analysis for Soils
- Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions
- Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions

The following tests shall be performed to determine the soundness, durability, and chemical reactivity of riprap:

- Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
- Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine
- Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete
- Splitting Tensile Strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens
- Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control
- Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
- Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions
- Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions

The following tests shall be performed to determine the soundness, durability, and chemical reactivity of fine and coarse portland cement aggregates (sands and gravels).

- Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
- Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
- Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
- Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)
- Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)
- Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)
- Particle Size Analysis for Soils

4 Specification of the Domain of the Decision

The soil sampling will occur in the East and South Field Borrow Areas; and in the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile areas.

5 Development of Logic Statements

The result of the geotechnical sampling and testing will be summarized in the geotechnical investigation report. The information obtained from this investigation will assist CRU2 in detailed design of the subject disposal facility. The primary objectives of the in-situ testing, and geotechnical sampling and testing are as follows:

- Define the geotechnical properties of subsurface soils at the Disposal Facility site and provide geotechnical design parameters. These parameters will be used for subsequent bearing capacity, settlement, and stability analyses of the native soils under the Disposal Facility area.
- Provide geotechnical properties and parameters for reconstituted clay samples intended for construction of the lining material and the perimeter dikes for overall stability and settlement evaluation of the Disposal Facility.
- Provide geotechnical properties and parameters for subsurface native granular soils for potential liquefaction evaluation of materials below the Disposal Facility footprint.
- Provide geotechnical properties and parameters for the topsoil and materials similar to the intended waste materials for overall settlement evaluation of the Disposal Facility contents.
- Provide information regarding the hydraulic conductivity of the native clay soils below the Disposal Facility footprint.
- Provide information regarding the hydraulic conductivity of the reconstituted clay samples intended for use as lining materials.
- Report on any relevant geotechnical findings or observations made during execution of the work that may affect the geotechnical aspects of the design, construction and performance.

6 Establishment of Constraints on Uncertainty

The purpose of this step is to define possible decision errors based on study findings. A false positive error would indicate that the subsurface materials have properties more

conducive for cell construction. This would have an impact on location selection and design parameters. This could result from laboratory or analytical testing errors, misclassification of soil in the field or by missing a significant granular pathway during the field investigation. The consequences would be that a false positive would be discovered during construction or post-construction monitoring. This would result in a reduced factor of safety or a design upgrade.

A false negative would indicate that the soil has unacceptable properties; therefore, creating the need for using off-site material, over designing the disposal cell, or eliminating the possibility for an on-site disposal facility.

The impacts of a false positive or negative (in order of importance):

1.) cost
2.) credibility
3.) social
4.) ecological

To minimize the possibility of errors, all of the procedures will be conducted by qualified personnel. The analysis shall adhere to the appropriate FEMP ASLs of quality control criteria as specified in the Site-Wide CERCLA Quality Assurance Project Plan (SCQ). The required ASLs for this study are level B.

In the event that a boring cannot be completed, a new boring will be started a minimum of five feet from the previous unsuccessful boring. If a boring cannot be successfully completed, it is likely that results from other sampling locations will serve as an effective substitute.

7 Development of a Cost-Effective Design for Obtaining Data

Geotechnical sampling and analysis will be performed in accordance to ASTM standards under a quality program which meets NQA1, QL3 requirements to assure quality results for design of the disposal facility. The ASL for all geotechnical testing will be ASL B. All data will be checked by the engineer in accordance with approved design procedures and SCQ requirements.

Records documenting geotechnical laboratory equipment calibration will be maintained and included in the project records. Observed variability of results may result in a raise in the factor of safety in accordance with engineering practices. Any sample which retrieves an adequate quantity and acceptable configuration of material will be considered a successful sampling event.

8 Summary

The primary objective of this sampling and analytical effort is to facilitate the selection of location and design of an on-site disposal facility.

The geotechnical tests of concern are listed in the table in Section 3. The samples will be collected and tested in accordance with engineering procedures which meet the requirements of the SCQ and NQA1,QL3 protocols. All geotechnical testing will be ASL B.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX B

SSOP - 1070,

"UNEXPECTED DISCOVERY OF CULTURAL RESOURCES"

CONTROL NUMBER 5.- 344
SITE STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE
DOCUMENT NO. SSOP-1070
REVISION NO. 1

UNEXPECTED DISCOVERY OF CULTURAL RESOURCES

SSOP-1070

Effective Date: 02-10-95

AUTHORIZED BY: _____ 2/4/95
T. Hagen, Environmental Compliance — Date

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROJECT

Fernald Environmental Restoration Management Corporation
P. O. Box 538704
Cincinnati, Ohio 45253-8704

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	TITLE	PAGE
1.0	PURPOSE	3
2.0	SCOPE	3
3.0	DEFINITIONS	3
4.0	RESPONSIBILITIES	4
5.0	GENERAL	4
6.0	PREREQUISITES	5
7.0	PROCEDURE	5
8.0	APPLICABLE DOCUMENTS	8
8.1	DRIVERS	8
8.2	REFERENCES	8

LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE	TITLE	PAGE
1	UNEXPECTED CULTURAL RESOURCES DISCOVERY FORM	6

LIST OF ATTACHMENTS

ATTACHMENT	TITLE	PAGE
A	PREHISTORIC/HISTORIC ASSESSMENT REPORT FORMAT	A-1

RECORD OF ISSUE/REVISIONS

DATE	REV. NO	DESCRIPTION AND AUTHORITY
03-31-94	0	New procedure for handling the discovery of cultural resources at the FEMP, per Request No. S94-003, initiated by J. Homer.
02-10-95	1	Minor revision to document per Request No. S94-135, initiated by J. Homer. This document supersedes SSOP-1070, dated 03-31-94, Rev. 0.

The latest changes to this document are indicated by a "change bar" (▌) in the right margin. changes are also shaded in the text when needed to help identify changes. Note: Change bars and shading from the previous revision are removed only changes for the latest revision are shown.

1.0 PURPOSE

This procedure provides the method by which Fernald Environmental Restoration Management Corporation (FERMCO) personnel, sub-contractor personnel and any other persons working or assisting with the conduct of a project, shall notify the FERMCO Cultural Resource Coordinator (CRC) of the Natural Resource Management Department of the Environmental Compliance Division, of the unexpected discovery of cultural resources, during drilling or any other ground disturbing activities, at the Fernald Environmental Management Project (FEMP) or beyond its boundaries.

2.0 SCOPE

This procedure applies to all FERMCO personnel, subcontractor personnel, and any other persons working or assisting with the conduct of a project. This procedure addresses all ground disturbing activities in process at the FEMP.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Cultural Resource Coordinator (CRC) - The FERMCO employee designated by the Natural Resource Management Department (or successor) as the principal contact for cultural resource management at the FEMP site.

Cultural Resources - See definition for Historic Properties.

Ground Disturbing Activity - Any activity that disturbs the ground either on the FEMP site or at any other property where FEMP conducted operations are occurring. Examples of ground disturbance include, but are not limited to, stripping of topsoil, drilling wells, and road improvements.

Field Personnel - FERMCO or Subcontractor employees who are conducting ground disturbing activities.

Historic Properties - Any prehistoric or historic district, site, building, structure, or object included in, or eligible for inclusion in, the National Register of Historic Places. This includes artifacts, records, and remains that are related to such a district, site, building, structure, or object.

Responsible Field Representative - The FERMCO or subcontractor employee designated by the project manager with responsibility for field activities pertaining to the project.

State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO) - The state authority responsible for enforcement of the National Historical Preservation Act.

Unexpected Discovery - Obtaining knowledge of the existence of an Historic Property.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

DOE-FN Cultural Resources Point of Contact

- Notifies SHPO of unexpected cultural resource discovery.
- Negotiates mitigation.
- Notifies FERMCO of authorization to proceed with work.

Natural Resource Management Department Manager

- Notifies DOE-FN of unexpected cultural resource discovery.
- Coordinates mitigation.
- Signs Prehistoric/Historic Assessment Report.

Cultural Resource Coordinator (CRC)

- Coordinates Cultural Resource Management Program.
- Notifies Natural Resource Management Department Manager of unexpected cultural resource discovery.
- Completes and signs Prehistoric/Historic Assessment Report.
- Assists in completion and signs unexpected cultural resource discovery form.
- Coordinates mitigation.

Responsible Field Representative

- Stops work upon discovery of a cultural resource.
- Notifies CRC upon discovery of a cultural resource.
- Completes and signs Unexpected Cultural Resource Discovery form.

5.0 GENERAL

Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act requires Federal agencies to take into account the effects of their actions on properties that are on, or eligible for inclusion on, the National Register of Historic Places. This list includes undiscovered resources as well as districts, sites, buildings, structures, or objects.

5.0 GENERAL (cont.)

To comply with Section 106 and because of the large number of historic and archaeological resources existing in the area, consultation was requested by the Department of Energy (DOE) from the SHPO concerning proposed remedial activities at the FEMP. This consultation resulted in an agreement that any planned surface disturbance activities in non-controlled areas at the FEMP must be preceded by a cultural resources survey to determine the existence of potentially significant historic or archeological resources.

Any records resulting from following this procedure shall be archived with the CRC program and made available on a "need to know" basis as specified in public law (PL) 96-95.

6.0 PREREQUISITES

None

7.0 PROCEDURE

FIELD PERSONNEL

1. Upon the unexpected discovery of any historic, prehistoric, or archaeological site, feature, or object, immediately cease all ground disturbing activity and contact the responsible Field Representative.

RESPONSIBLE FIELD REPRESENTATIVE

2. Immediately report the discovery to the CRC and the responsible CRU Director or Division Manager.

3. Complete the Unexpected Cultural Resources Discovery Form (Figure 1) and log it into the Field Activity Daily Log.

   NOTE: Proper Document Control Procedures must be followed.

4. Submit the Discovery form and a copy of the Field Activity Daily Log to the CRC.

CULTURAL RESOURCE COORDINATOR

5. Verbally report the discovery to the Natural Resource Management Department Manager.

6. Complete and sign a Prehistoric/Historic Assessment Report using the format provided (Attachment A).

ENVIRONMENTAL COMPLIANCE/ENVIRONMENTAL PLANNING UNEXPECTED CULTURAL RESOURCES DISCOVERY FORM	Date/Time of Discovery: Construction Engineer:
PROJECT TITLE: PROJECT LOCATION:	Contact with Construction Contract Manager and Time:
Location of Discovery (include sketch map):	
Description of Discovery (include any damage to discovery, additional discovery observed, etc. Use additional sheets, if necessary):	
Method of Discovery:	
Additional Comments:	

National Resource Management Department Manager:	Date:
CRU Director/Division Manager:	Date:
Responsible Field Representative:	Date:
Cultural Resource Coordinator Signature:	Date:

FS-F-3780 (Rev. 03/08/94)

Figure 1 - Unexpected Cultural Resources Discovery Form

Fernald Environmental FERMCO Restoration Management Corporation	Title: UNEXPECTED DISCOVERY OF CULTURAL RESOURCES	
	DOCUMENT NO: SSOP-1070 REVISION NO: 1	
	Effective Date: Draft: 02-10-95	Page 7 of 8

7.0 PROCEDURE (cont.)

CULTURAL RESOURCE COORDINATOR

7. Determine whether an on-call Cultural Resources Subcontractor will be used.

8. Submit the completed Prehistoric/Historic Assessment Report and the Unexpected Cultural Resources Discovery Form to the Natural Resource Management Department Manager.

NATURAL RESOURCE MANAGEMENT DEPARTMENT MANAGER

9. Sign the Prehistoric/Historic Assessment Report and the Unexpected Cultural Resources Discovery Form.

10. Verbally contact the DOE Cultural Resource Point of Contact and forward the signed Prehistoric/Historic Assessment Report. Include a copy of the completed Unexpected Cultural Resources Discovery Form.

DOE CULTURAL RESOURCE POINT OF CONTACT

11. Contact the SHPO and obtain concurrence for the mitigation procedure to be followed, if any. At the same time, notify the private property owner(s), if applicable.

CULTURAL RESOURCE COORDINATOR

12. Secure the cultural resource area until notified by DOE.

13. If necessary, in compliance with 36 CFR 800 and through consultation with Legal Affairs and other necessary divisions/departments, formulate a draft recovery plan based on the Prehistoric/Historic Assessment Report and/or SHPO comments.

14. If necessary, prepare a private property deed of gift for signature by DOE and the private property owner(s).

15. Upon execution of an assessment by all parties and the recording of any deed of gift in the county court, if necessary, coordinate mitigation efforts through an on-call Subcontractor or through the Natural Resource Management Department.

RESPONSIBLE FIELD REPRESENTATIVE

16. After receipt of notification from the DOE, direct field personnel to proceed with ground disturbing activities in the affected area.

8.0 APPLICABLE DOCUMENTS

8.1 DRIVERS

- Antiquities Act: For the Preservation of American Antiquities, approved June 8, 1906 (Public Law 59-209; 34 STAT 225: 16USC 431-433).

- Historic Sites, Buildings, and Antiquities Act - Provides for the Preservation of Historic American Sites, buildings, objects, and antiquities of national significance, approved August 21, 1935, (Public Law 74-292; 49 STAT 666; 16USC 461-467)

  NOTE: Reviewers note - § = Section.

- National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended - Establishes a Program for the Preservation of historic properties throughout the Nation. (16 U.S.C. § 470)

- Archeological Resources Protection Act of 1979 - Protects archeological resources on public, federal, and Indian lands. (16 U.S.C. § 470aa - 470cc)

- The American Indian Religious Freedom Act - Requires federal agencies to ensure that none of their actions interfere with the inherent rights of individual Native Americans. (42 U.S.C. § 1996)

- The Native American Graves and Protection and Repatriation Act of 1990 - Curatorship of federally owned and administered archeological collections. (25 U.S.C. § 3001 *et seq*)

8.2 REFERENCES

- 36 CFR 800, "Protection of Historic Properties"

- "Secretary of the Interior Standards and Guidelines for Archaeology and Historic Preservation"

Prehistoric/Historic
Assessment Report Format

1.0 Introduction and Project Description

2.0 Environmental Setting

3.0 Cultural Setting
- 3.1 Historic
- 3.2 Prehistoric
- 3.3 Recorded Cultural Resources within Project Area

4.0 Research Methods
- 4.1 Archival Research
- 4.2 Field Methods
  - 4.2.1 Site Mapping
  - 4.2.2 Photographs

5.0 Results of Investigation
- 5.1 Site Description
- 5.2 Feature Description
- 5.3 Soil Stratigraphy

6.0 Curatorship

7.0 Impact Assessment

8.0 Conclusion & Recommendations (including mitigation)

9.0 Signatures (CRC, Responsible Field Representative, Natural Resources Management Department Manager, CRU Director/Division Manager)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX C

EXAMPLE FIELD FORMS

544

WELL NUMBER:

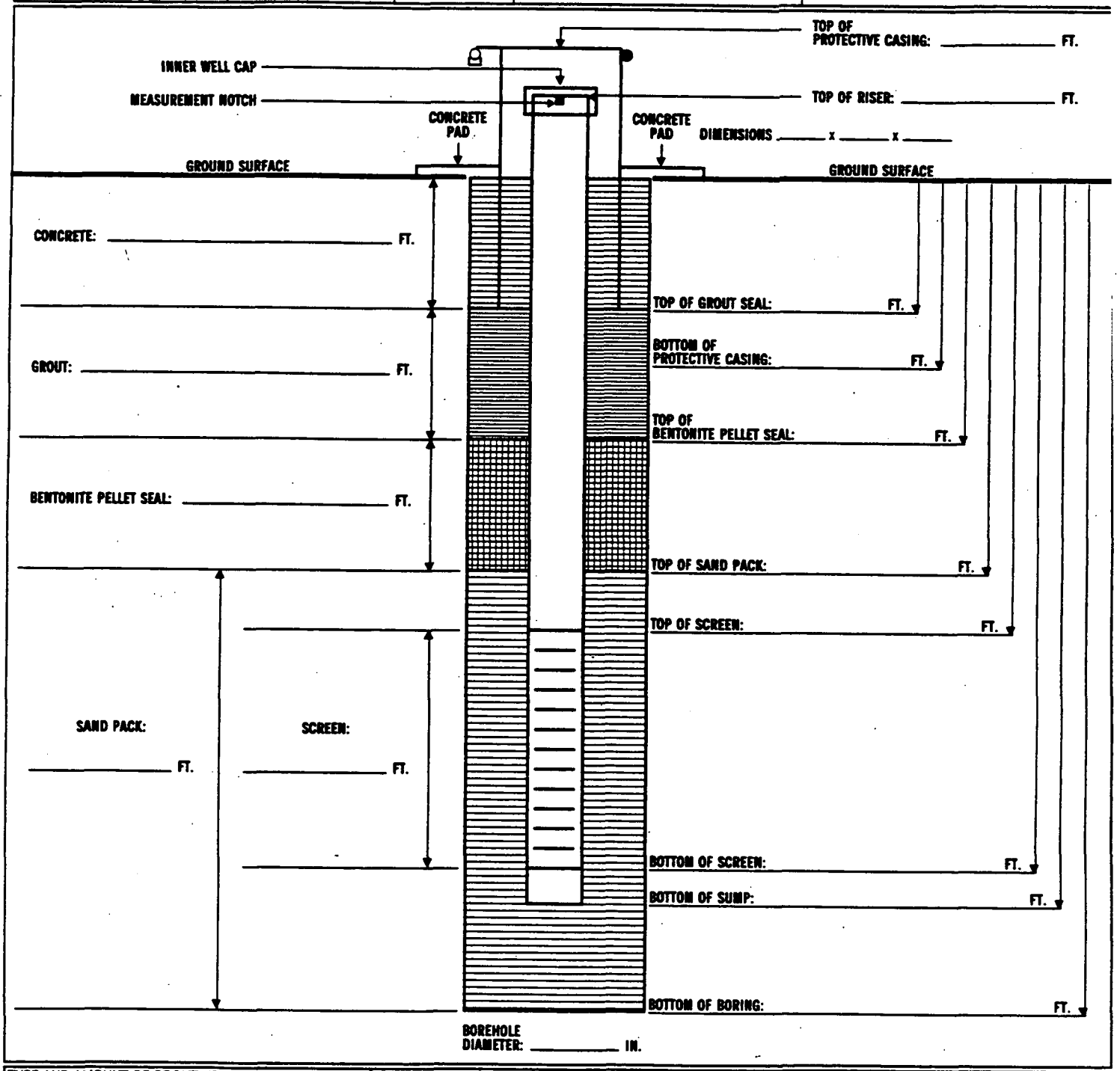
FEMP
WELL COMPLETION LOG

CONTROL NUMBER:

PROJECT NAME: | PROJECT NUMBER:

GEOLOGIST: | DRILLING METHOD:

DATES OF INSTALLATION: | WATER LEVEL (ft.): | DATE: | RELATED FAL NUMBERS: | CHECKED BY:



TYPE AND AMOUNT OF GROUT USED: | BENTONITE PELLETS (5-GALLON BUCKETS): | DEEPEST TEMPORARY DRILLING CASING PENETRATION: FT.

VOLUME OF WATER USED DURING DRILLING: GAL. | RISER MATERIAL: | VOLUME OF WATER USED FOR GROUT HYDRATION: GAL.

RISER WALL THICKNESS: | TYPE OF SAND PACK: | SCREEN MATERIAL: | DRILLING CASING DIAMETER: IN.

RISER/SCREEN DIAMETER: IN. | SCREEN SLOT SIZE: IN. | SCREEN TYPE: | DEPTH OF CENTRALIZER(S): FT.

FS-F-3684 (9/10/93)

000155

000153

FEMP

SAMPLE COLLECTION LOG

CONTROL NUMBER:

PAGE _____ OF _____

PREPARED BY:	BADGE NO.:	DATE:	REVIEWED BY:	BADGE NO.:	DATE:

SAMPLE LOCATION:	PROJECT NAME:	PROJECT NUMBER:

SAMPLE TEAM LEADER:	BADGE NO.:	SAMPLE TEAM NAME(S) / BADGE NO(S):

CUSTOMER NUMBER / FACTS ID (CUSTOMER # / FACTS ID)	SAMPLE TYPE CODE	SAMPLE SCREEN RESULTS (PID)	SAMPLE SCREEN RESULTS (RAD)	COLLECTION START		COLLECTION STOP		SAMPLE DEPTH — INTERVAL ( ) UNITS	PRESERVATIVE	NUMBER OF CONTAINERS	SAMPLE CONTAINER TYPE & SIZE	ANALYTICAL PARAMETERS (OR TARGET ANALYTE LIST)	VISUAL DESCRIPTION OF SAMPLE	DUPLICATE OF SAMPLE NUMBER	QA / QC SAMPLE DESIGNATION
				DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME								
								—							
								—							
								—							
								—							
								—							
								—							
								—							
								—							
								—							
								—							

REMARKS:

FEMP SAMPLE COLLECTION LOG - SAMPLE CODES

SAMPLE TYPE CODE		PRESERVATIVE CODE		QA/QC SAMPLE DESIGNATION CODE	
M103	Soil	P00	None Required	Q01	Preservation Blank
M104	Sediment	P01	Cool, 4°C	Q02	Container Blank
M111	Sludge	P02	Freeze, < 0°C	Q03	Temperature Blank
M112	Air Filter	P03	Filter on site	Q04	Trip Blank
M118	Miscellaneous (Specific description addressed in remark field)	P04	Filter on site/HNO_3 to pH < 2	Q05	Field Blank
M300	Tank Contents (Water)	P05	Filter on site/Cool, 4°C	Q06	Rinsate
M301	Tank Contents (Organic)	P06	Filter on site/Cool, 4°C/H_2SO_4 to pH < 2	Q07	Duplicate Sample
M302	Tank Contents (Unknown)	P07	H_2SO_4 to pH < 2	Q08	Split Sample
M305	Concrete	P08	H_2SO_4 to pH < 2/Cool, 4°C	Q09	Deionized Water Blank
M310	Liquid (Unknown)	P09	HCl to pH < 2	Q10	Matrix Spike
M314	Oils	P10	HCl to 1%	Q11	Matrix Spike/Matrix Spike Duplicate
M317	Rocks/Bricks	P11	HNO_3 to pH < 2		
M322	Solid (Unknown)	P12	HNO_3 to 1%		
M333	Deionized Water	P13	HNO_3 to pH < 2/Cool, 4°C		
M334	Drill Cuttings	P14	NaOH to pH > 12/Cool, 4°C		
		P15	$Na_2S_2O_3$ (10% soln) to 1%		
		P16	$Na_2S_2O_3$ 100 mg/L		
		P17	Cool, 4°C/2mL ZnOAc + NaOH to pH > 9		

000157

FEMP

FIELD ACTIVITY LOG

CONTROL NO.:	PROJECT NO. / RI/FS WBS NO.:	PAGE ____ OF ____
PREPARED BY (NAME):	BADGE NO.:	DATE:

FIELD ACTIVITY SUBJECT:	GENERAL LOCATION / FACILITY DESCRIPTION:	
WEATHER CONDITIONS:	AIR TEMPERATURE:	BAROMETRIC PRESSURE (in Hg):

TIME	DESCRIPTION OF ACTIVITY

METER CALIBRATION

WATER QUALITY METER

MFR. NAME:	SERIAL NO.:	INITIALS:	DATE:	TIME:	STD. SOLN. MFR.:	STD. SOLN. LOT NO.:	STD. SOLN. EXP. DATE:

PHOTOIONIZATION DETECTOR

MFR. NAME:	SERIAL NO.:	INITIALS:	DATE:	TIME:	CAL. GAS MFR.:	CAL. GAS TYPE:	CAL. GAS CONC.:	ppm:	PROBE eV:

ALPHA METER		BETA GAMMA METER		CALIBRATION PROBLEMS:
MFR. NAME:	SERIAL NO.:	MFR. NAME:	SERIAL NO.:	

VISITORS		TIME	
NAME(S)	ORGANIZATION(S)	ARRIVED	DEPART

000158

FEMP

FIELD ACTIVITY LOG

(CONTINUATION PAGE)

CONTROL NO.:	PROJECT NAME / NO.:	PAGE ____ OF ____
PREPARED BY (NAME):	BADGE NO.:	DATE: 3 4 4

FIELD ACTIVITY SUBJECT:	GENERAL LOCATION / FACILITY DESCRIPTION:

TIME	DESCRIPTION OF ACTIVITY

FEMP

LITHOLOGIC LOG

CONTROL NO.:	PAGE _____ OF _____

PROJECT NAME:	PROJECT NO.:

BORING NUMBER:	COORDINATES:	DRILLING CONTRACTOR:	DRILLER / HELPER:

SURFACE ELEVATION:	GROUNDWATER LEVEL:	DATE:	TIME:	DATE STARTED:
GEOLOGIST:	GROUNDWATER LEVEL:	DATE:	TIME:	DATE COMPLETED:

WATER USED DURING DRILLING: GAL.	WATER RECOVERED DURING DRILLING: GAL.	DRILLING EQUIPMENT:

DEPTH (FEET)	SAMPLE TIME, DATE, AND NUMBER	BLOWS (per 6 inch)	RECOVERY (inches)	DESCRIPTION (Colors identified per Munsell Color Chart)	USCS SYMBOL	MEASURED CONSISTENCY (TSF)	REMARKS

INSTRUMENT	BACKGROUND	DATE	TIME
PID			
ALPHA			
BETA / GAMMA			

NOTES:

* SAMPLES COLLECTED PER ASTM STANDARD PENETRATION TEST.

FS-F-3681

000160

G: / WPSC / 95-0037.DRW (2-15-95)

VARIANCE / FIELD CHANGE NOTICE

V/F No. _____

Page 344

WBS NO.:	[ ] VARIANCE
PROJECT TITLE:	[ ] FIELD CHANGE

Date: _____

SCOPE CHANGE

JUSTIFICATION

REQUESTED BY: _____ Date: _____

X IF REQD	VARIANCE/FCN APPROVAL	DATE	X IF REQD	VARIANCE/FCN APPROVAL	DATE
	QUALITY ASSURANCE			PROJECT MANAGER	
	DATA QUALITY MANAGEMENT			ENGINEERING MANAGER	
	SAFETY/HEALTH REPRESENTATIVE			TASK MANAGER	
	OTHER			FERMCO GEOLOGIST	
	OTHER			PARSONS GEOLOGIST	
	OTHER			OU2 ENVIR. TASK MANAGER	

VARIANCE/FCN APPROVED [ ]YES [ ]NO

REVISION REQUIRED: [ ]YES [ ]NO

DISTRIBUTION

PROJECT MANAGER:	DOCUMENT CONTROL:	OTHER:
QUALITY ASSURANCE:	OTHER:	OTHER:
FIELD MANAGER:	OTHER:	OTHER:

CLARIFICATION REQUEST FORM

C.R. No. _____

WBS NO.:

Page ___ of __

PROJECT TITLE:

Date: _____

CLARIFICATION REQUEST [ ] see Page ___ for Continuation

REQUESTED BY: _____ Date: _____

CLARIFICATION [ ] see Page ___ for Continuation

CLARIFIED BY: _____ Date: _____

DISTRIBUTION

PROJECT MANAGER:	DOCUMENT CONTROL:	OTHER:
QUALITY ASSURANCE:	REQUESTOR:	OTHER:
TASK MANAGER: 000162	OTHER:	OTHER:

CLARIFICATION REQUEST FORM	C.R. No. ____ Page 34 of 4
WBS NO.:	
PROJECT TITLE:	Date: _____

(CONTINUATION)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX D

EQUIPMENT LIST

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PROJECT EQUIPMENT LIST

REQUIRED DOCUMENTS AND SUPPLIES (To be performed by FERMCO)

Penetration Permit
Project Specific Health and Safety Plan
FEMP Work Permit
Flame Permit
Radiological Worker Permit
Training Certification Card
Radiological Survey Report
Equipment Inspection Station
Project-Specific Plan
Chemical Hazardous Materials Work Permit

MISCELLANEOUS TOOLS (To be supplied by Driller)

DECONTAMINATION SUPPLIES
Brushes (High pressure/steam) Sprayer Unit
Clear Plastic Sheeting

GENERAL DRILL RIG TOOL SUPPLY
Screwdriver
Hammer
Box Knife
Tape Measure/Yardstick
Carpenters Level

IDW SUPPLIES
Clear Plastic Trash Bags

PERSONAL PROTECTION EQUIPMENT
Cotton Coveralls
Hard Hat
Steel-Toed Boots
Safety Glasses
Dosimeter
Latex Gloves
Cotton Glove Liners
Leather Work Gloves
Ear Plugs

TAPES & PLASTICS
Roll of Clear Plastic

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX E

TILL/FILL THICKNESSES

APPENDIX E
LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE	TITLE
E-1	Total Thickness of Till in East Field Borrow Area
E-2	Total Thickness of Till in South Field Borrow Area
E-3	Till Thickness in the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile
E-4	Fill Thickness in the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile

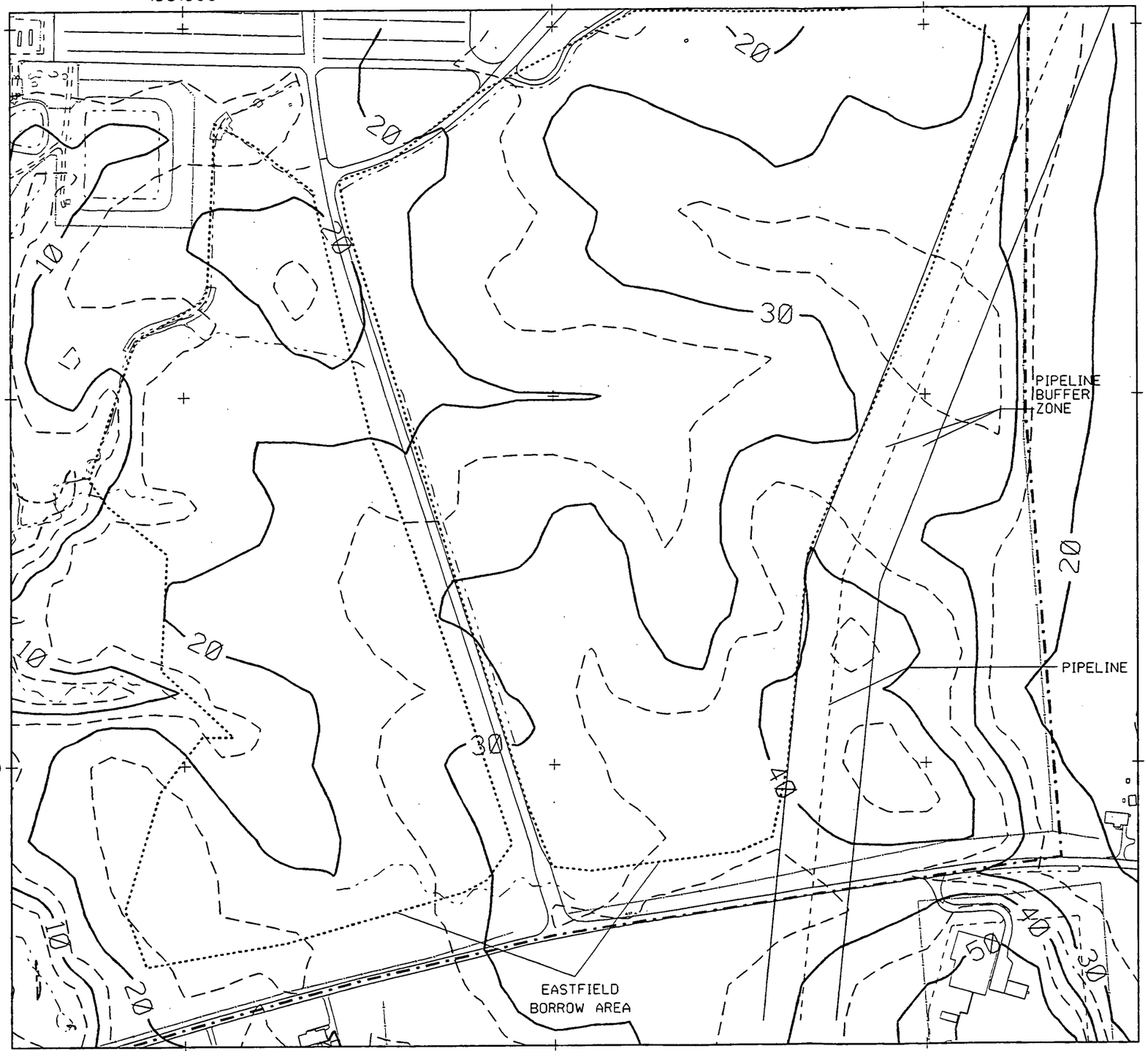
000170

1381000 1382000 1383000

479000

478000

477000



1381000 1382000 1383000

N

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

SCALE IN FEET

0 150 300 600

000171

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO Fernald Environmental Management Project

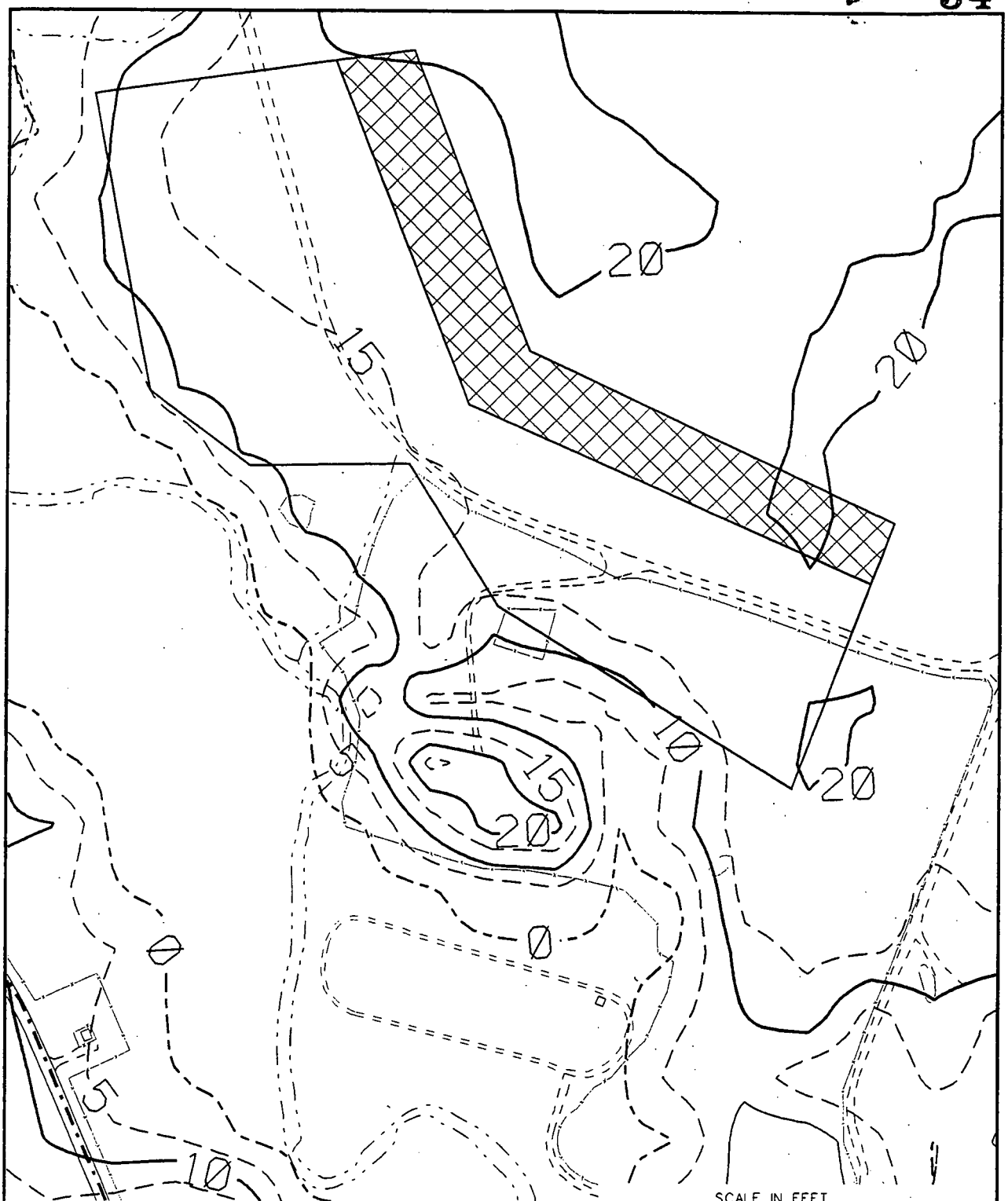
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

TOTAL THICKNESS OF TILL IN EAST FIELD BORROW AREA

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE E-1

FILE NAME: /usr/erm05/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_c.dgn



FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

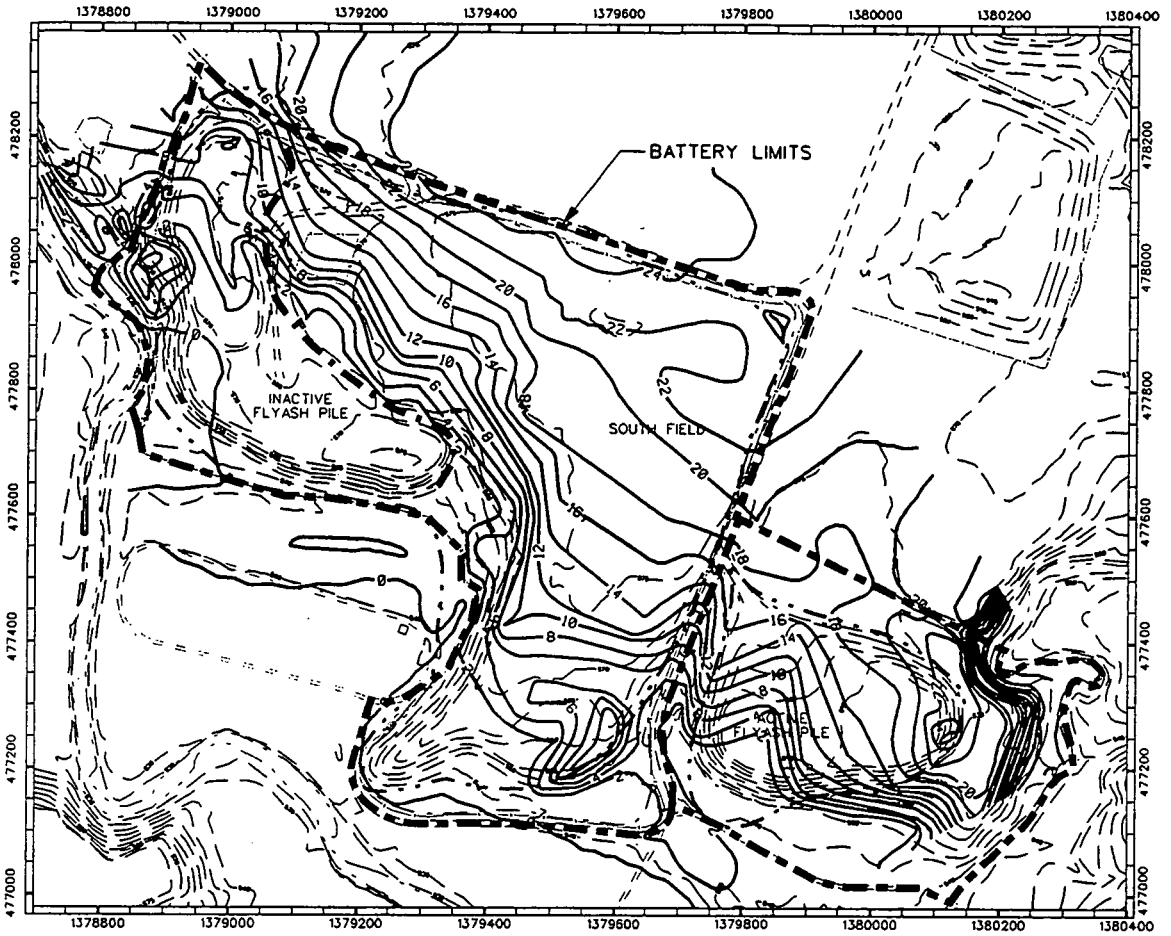
TOTAL THICKNESS OF TILL IN SOUTH FIELD BORROW AREA

000172

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE E-2

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_x.dgn



LEGEND

- ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- DRAINAGE
- FENCE
- THICKNESS OF TILL CONTOUR

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE IN FEET

0 150 300 600

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

000173

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO Fernald Environmental Management Project

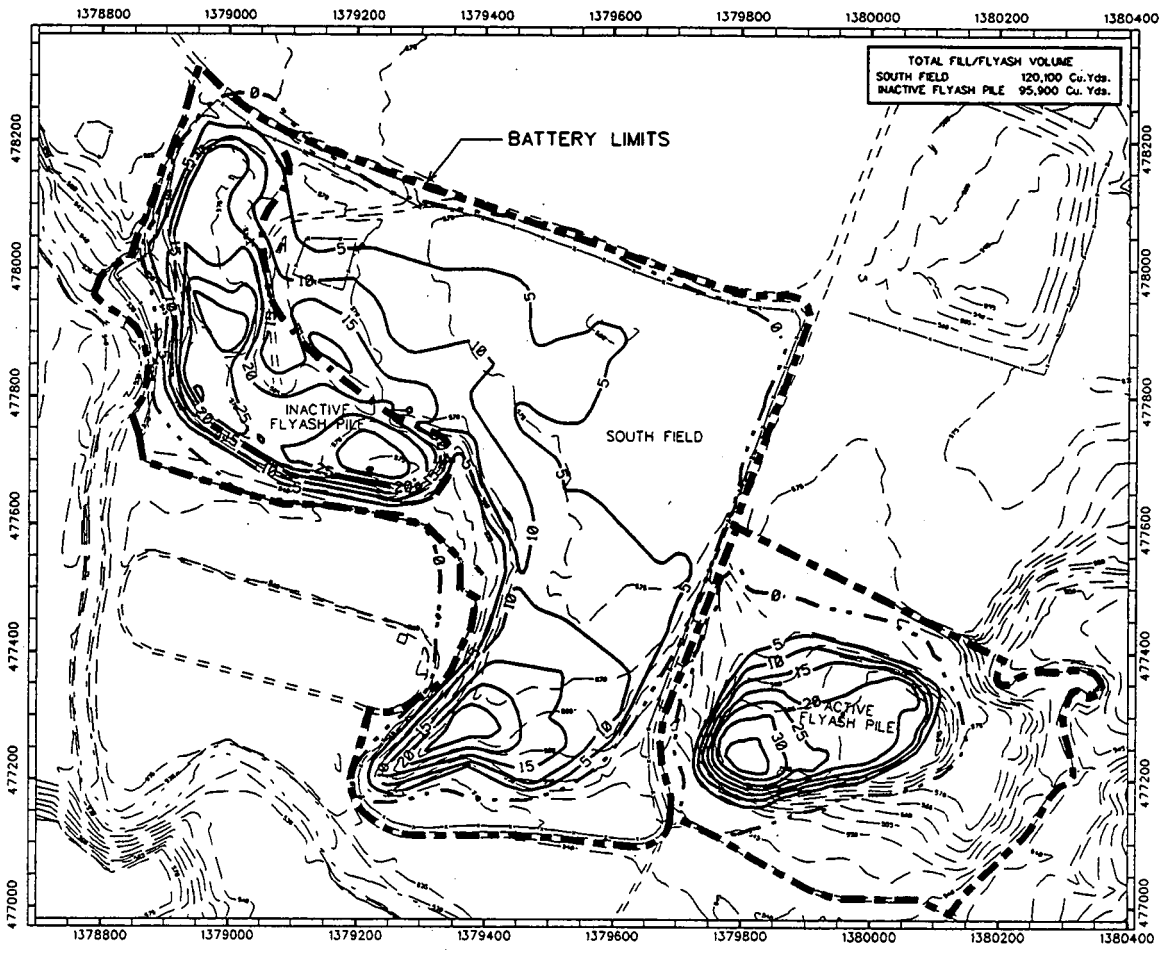
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

TILL THICKNESS IN THE INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE

DATE
DRAWN

FIGURE E-3

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig2_a.dgn



LEGEND

- ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- BATTERY LIMITS
- FENCE
- FILL/FLYASH THICKNESS CONTOUR 5 FT INTERVALS

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE IN FEET

0 150 300 600

000174

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO

Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

FILL THICKNESS IN THE INACTIVE FLYASH PILE, SOUTH FIELD, AND ACTIVE FLYASH PILE

DATE

DRAWN

FIGURE E-4

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/fig2_b.dgn

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX F

DENISON SAMPLING

Denison Samples

Denison samples shall generally be taken in soils having a standard penetration resistance higher than 20 blows/ft, as directed by the Engineers.

Borings utilizing the Denison sampler shall be taken in order to obtain soil samples for laboratory testing. Samples shall be taken with a 4 inch O. D. Denison sampler capable of recovering two foot long samples. Plastic liners shall be used. Each sample shall be taken carefully so that the soil will remain as nearly as possible in an undisturbed state. The extension of the inner barrel shoe beyond the outer barrel cutting teeth shall be the least amount which results in a full inner barrel of soil, and which will not cause undercutting or contamination of the sample by drilling fluid. Sampling shall proceed to obtain a continuous vertical specimen. After the hold has been thoroughly cleaned, the sampler shall be lowered carefully into the hole. The sampler shall be placed in contact with the bottom of the hole. The driller shall make sure that the truck jacks are carrying the load of the truck so that the truck will not be lifted on the springs and tires when load is applied to the sampler. The sample tube shall then be forced into the ground in a continuous drive and at a rate of penetration equal to the rate at which the outer barrel is able to cut. The speed of rotation shall be limited to that which will not rupture the soil sample. After the tube has been inserted to its full length into the soil, the driller shall wait approximately five minutes before beginning to withdraw. The tube shall then be withdrawn from the bottom of the hole in a smooth constant motion using hydraulic pressure to pull the tube at a rate of about one inch per second. Turning of the rods with a wrench to break the friction of the sample shall not be allowed unless all other methods have been attempted first and shall not be resorted to unless approved by the Engineers. After the sample has pulled free from the bottom of the hole by a clearance of about one to two feet, removal shall stop momentarily to allow the drilling fluid to flow around the bottom of the tube (about 30 seconds). Removal shall then continue at a slow and uniform withdrawal rate not to exceed 0.5 feet per second. Breaking the pipe joints during withdraw shall be done carefully and in sections as large as can be practically handled; so as not to disturb the sample.

Once the Denison Samplers has been removed from the auger flights, the plastic sampling tube (inserted in the Denison Sampler and containing the sample) will be removed from the Denison Sampler. The ends of the tube are to be capped, tapped with duct tape and sealed with molten wax. Once the wax has cooled, the sampling tube is to be overpacked in sections of 4 to 6-inch PVC casing (or other appropriate containers) with vermiculite used as a packing material. PVC casings containing samples will be overpacked in either 55 or 85 gallon drums for shipment to the geotechnical laboratory. Vermiculite will be used as a packing material inside the 55 or 85 gallon drums.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX G

SCHEDULE

APPENDIX G

SCHEDULE FOR FINAL GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION

Activity	Date
Parsons Begin Fieldwork	August 30, 1995
Parsons Complete Fieldwork	October 3, 1995
Parsons Begins Laboratory Testing	September 7, 1995
Parsons Completes Laboratory Testing	November 13, 1995
Parsons Issues 90% Geotechnical Investigation Report and Recommendations, Rev. A	November 28, 1995
Parsons Issues Final Geotechnical Report and Recommendations, Rev. 0*	December 8, 1995

* This date does not include submittal to DOE. Parsons Final Geotechnical Report and recommendations will be submitted to DOE during the 60% design review at the on-site Disposal Facility Title I/II design (tentatively scheduled for DOE submittal on April 10, 1996).

000180

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX H

METHODOLOGY FOR USING HOLLOW-STEM AUGER AS A TEMPORARY CASING IN ZONES OF SUBSURFACE URANIUM CONTAMINATION

Methodology for Using Hollow-Stem Auger as a Temporary Casing in Zones of Subsurface Uranium Contamination

Using an 8.25-inch ID/14-inch OD hollow-stem auger, drill through the zone of contamination to a depth four feet below the estimated depth of contamination as determined from Operable Unit 5's subsurface uranium contamination modeling. Raise the auger string approximately one foot to vacate the bottom of the boring. Pump a bentonite-based sealer (Hole-Seal) into the bottom of the boring to form an approximately 3-foot thick column of sealer. Allow the sealer to hydrate for at least one-hour. After the sealer has hydrated, the 8.25-inch ID/14-inch OD hollow-stem auger can be used as a temporary casing for the contaminated section of the boring. Prior to placing the bentonite-based sealer in the bottom of the boring, depth to bottom should be measured to confirm that the bore hole has not collapsed.

A 3.25-inch ID/6.625-inch OD hollow-stem auger string will be used to drill inside the 8.25-inch ID/14-inch OD hollow-stem auger and the through the column of sealer to the full depth of the boring (see Figure H-1 for a schematic showing the steps involved in using a hollow-stem auger as a temporary casing).

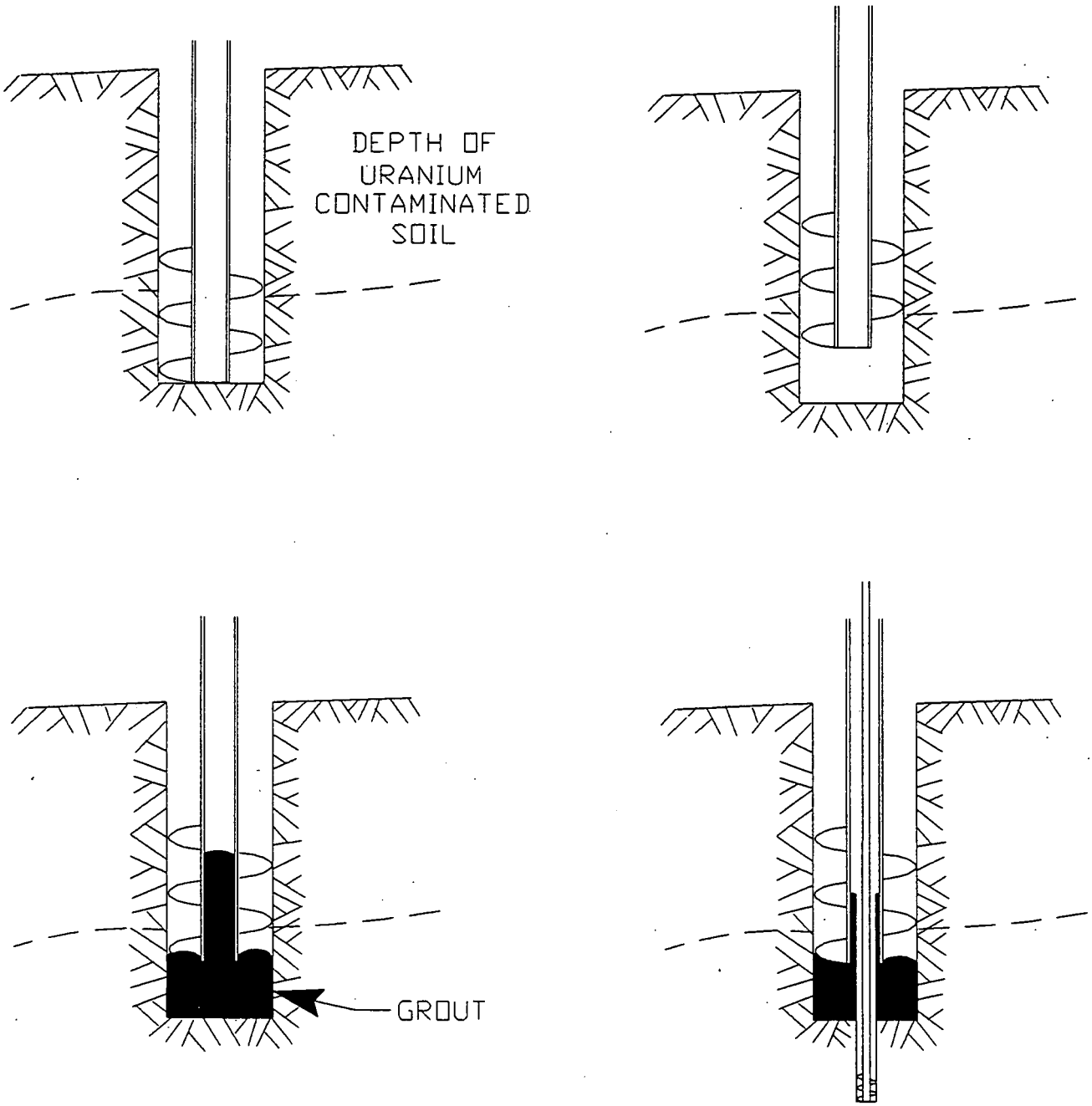
After all drilling and sampling efforts have been completed for the boring, the 3.25-inch ID/6.625-inch OD hollow-stem auger string will pulled from the boring as the resulting hole will be plugged with volclay grout. Once the 6.625-inch diameter boring hole has been fully grouted and the 3.25-inch ID/6.625-inch OD hollow-stem auger string has been pulled from the boring, the 8.25-inch ID/14-inch OD hollow-stem auger string will be pulled as the resulting 14-inch diameter boring hole will be plugged with volclay K grout.

Grouting will be performed under pressure through a tremie pipe. After grout has hydrated, a minimum of a 12-inch cement plug will be placed in the hole.

Note: This methodology is only to be used at locations where subsurface uranium contamination is greater than 3 feet in depth.

FIGURE H-1

HOLLOW-STEM AUGER AS TEMPORARY CASING SCHEMATIC



APPENDIX I

ASTM STANDARDS

SUMMARY OF ASTM PROCEDURES

TEST NO.	TITLE
C33	Specification for Concrete Aggregates
C88	Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
C127	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate
C128	Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate
C131	Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine
C227	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar Bar Method)
C289	Potential Reactivity of Aggregate (Chemical Method)
C295	Petrographic Examination of Aggregates
C535	Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in Los Angeles Machine
C586	Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)
C805	Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete
C1164	Evaluation of Limestone or Lime Uniformity From a Single Source
D75	Practice for Sampling Aggregates
D420	Standard Guide for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock
D421	Standard Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis Determination of Soil Constants
D422	Standard Method for Particle Size Analysis for Soils
D698	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort
D854	Standard Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils
D1452	Standard Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings
D1586	Standard Test Method for Penetrometer Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils
D1587	Standard Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils
D2216	Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures
D2217	Standard Practice for Wet Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants.
D2435	Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soil

(Continued)

TEST NO.	TITLE	
D2487	Standard Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes	1
D2488	Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils	2
D2573	Standard Test Method for Field Vane Shear Test in Cohesive Soil	3
D2844	Standard Test Method for Resistance R-Value and Expansion Pressure of Compacted Soils	4
D2850	Standard Test Method for Unconsolidated, Undrained Compressive Strength of Cohesive Soils in Triaxial Compression	5
D2974	Standard Test Method for Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils	6
D3080	Standard Test Method for Direct Shear Test of Soils Under Consolidated Drained Conditions	7
D3550	Standard Practice for Ring-Lines Barrel Sampling of Soils	8
D3967	Standard for Splitting Tensile strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens	9
D4186	Standard Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation properties of Soils Using Controlled-Strain Loading	10
D4220	Standard Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples	11
D4318	Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils	12
D4546	Standard Test Methods for One-Dimensional Swell or Settlement Potential of Cohesive Soils	13
D4643	Standard Test Method for Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil by the Microwave Oven Method	14
D4767	Test Method for Consolidated-Undrained Triaxial Compressive Test on Cohesive Soils	15
D4992	Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control	16
D5084	Standard Test Method for Measurement of Hydraulic Conductivity of Standard Porous Materials Using a Flexible Wall Parameter	17
D5240	Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	18
D5299	Decommissioning of Ground Water Wells, Vadose Zone Monitoring Devices, Boreholes, and Other Devices for Environmental Activities	19
D5312	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions	20
D5313	Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions	21

Designation: C 33 – 92a

Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 33; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This specification has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This specification defines the requirements for grading and quality of fine and coarse aggregate (other than lightweight or heavyweight aggregate) for use in concrete.[2]

1.2 The information in this specification may be used by a specifier (designer, architect, engineer, etc.) to define the quality and grading of the aggregate to be used in the concrete in the structure. The specification may be also used by a contractor, concrete supplier, or other purchaser as a purchase document describing the material to be furnished by the aggregate producer.

NOTE 1—This specification is regarded as adequate to ensure satisfactory materials for most concrete. It is recognized that, for certain work or in certain regions, it may be either more or less restrictive than needed. For example, where aesthetics are important, more restrictive limits may be considered regarding impurities that would stain the concrete surface. The specifier should ascertain that aggregates specified are or can be made available in the area of the work, with regard to grading, physical, or chemical properties, or combination thereof.

1.3 *Units of Measurement:*

1.3.1 With regard to sieve sizes and the size of aggregate as determined by the use of testing sieves, the values in inch-pound units are shown for the convenience of the user; however, the standard sieve designation shown in parentheses is the standard value as stated in Specification E 11.

1.3.2 With regard to other units of measure, the values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as standard.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 29/C 29M Test Method for Unit Weight and Voids in Aggregate[3]
C 40 Test Method for Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregates for Concrete[3]
C 87 Test Method for Effect of Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregate on Strength of Mortar[3]
C 88 Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate[3]
C 117 Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing[3]
C 123 Test Method for Lightweight Pieces in Aggregate[3]
C 125 Terminology Relating to Concrete and Concrete Aggregates[3]
C 131 Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine[3]
C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[3]
C 142 Test Method for Clay Lumps and Friable Particles in Aggregates[3]
C 227 Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar-Bar Method)[3]
C 289 Test Method for Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)[3]
C 295 Guide for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete[3]
C 330 Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete[3]
C 331 Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Concrete Masonry Units[3]
C 332 Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Insulating Concrete[3]
C 342 Test Method for Potential Volume Change of Cement-Aggregate Combinations[3]
C 535 Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine[3]
C 586 Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)[3]
C 637 Specification for Aggregates for Radiation-Shielding Concrete[3]
C 638 Descriptive Nomenclature of Constituents of Aggregates for Radiation-Shielding Concrete[3]
C 666 Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing[3]
D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[3]
D 3665 Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials[4]
E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

3. Terminology

3.1 For definitions of terms used in this standard, refer to Terminology C 125.

---

[1] This specification is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.20 on Normal Weight Aggregates.

Current edition approved Nov. 15, 1992. Published January 1993. Originally published as C 33 – 21 T. Last previous edition C 33 – 92. Changes from the previous edition include the expansion of Note 1 and the addition of paragraph 3 on Terminology.

[2] For lightweight aggregates, see Specifications C 331, C 332, and C 330; for heavyweight aggregates see Specification C 637 and Descriptive Nomenclature C 638.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.03.

000188

4. Ordering Information

4.1 The purchaser shall include the following information in the purchase order when applicable:

4.1.1 Reference to this specification, C 33, and date of issue,

4.1.2 Whether the order is for fine aggregate or for coarse aggregate,

4.1.3 Quantity, in tons or metric tons (Note 2),

4.1.4 When the order is for fine aggregate (Note 3):

4.1.4.1 Whether the optional grading in 6.2 applies,

4.1.4.2 Whether the restriction on reactive materials in 7.3 applies,

4.1.4.3 In the case of the sulfate soundness test (8.1) which salt is to be used (If none is stated, either salt may be used),

4.1.4.4 The appropriate limit for material finer than No. 200 sieve (Table 1) (If not stated, the 3.0 % limit shall apply),

4.1.4.5 The appropriate limit for coal and lignite (Table 1) (If not stated, the 1.0 % limit shall apply),

4.1.5 When the order is for coarse aggregate (Note 3):

4.1.5.1 The grading (size number) (10.1 and Table 2),

4.1.5.2 The class designation (11.1 and Table 3),

4.1.5.3 Whether the restriction on reactive materials in 11.2 applies,

4.1.5.4 In the case of the sulfate soundness test (Table 3), which salt is to be used. If none is stated, either salt may be used.

4.1.6 Any exceptions or additions to this specification (see Notes 1 and 3).

NOTE 2—The weight should be determined as loaded in the hauling unit, including any natural moisture present. No water should be added at the time of loading.

NOTE 3—The specifier (architect, engineer, etc.) should include in the contract documents his requirements as to the items listed in 4.1.4, 4.1.5, and 4.1.6. Otherwise, any grading or quality described in this specification which is furnished may be deemed to be acceptable, even though it may later prove to be unsatisfactory in service.

FINE AGGREGATE

5. General Characteristics

5.1 Fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination thereof.

6. Grading

6.1 *Sieve Analysis*—Fine aggregate, except as provided in 6.2, 6.3, and 6.4, shall be graded within the following limits:

TABLE 1 Limits for Deleterious Substances in Fine Aggregate for Concrete

Item	Weight Percent of Total Sample, max
Clay lumps and friable particles	3.0
Material finer than No. 200 (75-μm) sieve:	
Concrete subject to abrasion	3.0[A]
All other concrete	5.0[A]
Coal and lignite:	
Where surface appearance of concrete is of importance	0.5
All other concrete	1.0

[A] In the case of manufactured sand, if the material finer than the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve consists of the dust of fracture, essentially free of clay or shale, these limits may be increased to 5 and 7 %, respectively.

Sieve (Specification E 11)	Percent Passing
⅜-in. (9.5 mm)	100
No. 4 (4.75-mm)	95 to 100
No. 8 (2.36-mm)	80 to 100
No. 16 (1.18-mm)	50 to 85
No. 30 (600-μm)	25 to 60
No. 50 (300-μm)	10 to 30
No. 100 (150-μm)	2 to 10

6.2 The minimum percent shown above for material passing the No. 50 (300-μm) and No. 100 (150-μm) sieves may be reduced to 5 and 0, respectively, if the aggregate is to be used in air-entrained concrete containing more than 400 lb of cement per cubic yard (237 kg/m^3) or in nonair-entrained concrete containing more than 500 lb of cement per cubic yard (297 kg/m^3) or if an approved mineral admixture is used to supply the deficiency in percent passing these sieves. Air-entrained concrete is here considered to be concrete containing air-entraining cement or an air-entraining agent and having an air content of more than 3 %.

6.3 The fine aggregate shall have not more than 45 % passing any sieve and retained on the next consecutive sieve of those shown in 6.1, and its fineness modulus shall be not less than 2.3 nor more than 3.1.

6.4 Fine aggregate failing to meet the sieve analysis and fineness modulus requirements of 6.1, 6.2, or 6.3, may be accepted provided that concrete made with similar fine aggregate from the same source has an acceptable performance record in similar concrete construction; or, in the absence of a demonstrable service record, provided that it is demonstrated that concrete of the class specified, made with the fine aggregate under consideration, will have relevant properties at least equal to those of concrete made with the same ingredients, with the exception that a reference fine aggregate be used which is selected from a source having an acceptable performance record in similar concrete construction.

NOTE 4—Fine aggregate that conforms to the grading requirements of a specification, prepared by another organization such as a state transportation agency, which is in general use in the area, should be considered as having a satisfactory service record with regard to those concrete properties affected by grading.

NOTE 5—Relevant properties are those properties of the concrete which are important to the particular application being considered. STP 169B[5] provides a discussion of important concrete properties.

6.5 For continuing shipments of fine aggregate from a given source, the fineness modulus shall not vary more than 0.20 from the base fineness modulus. The base fineness modulus shall be that value that is typical of the source. If necessary, the base fineness modulus may be changed when approved by the purchaser.

NOTE 6—The base fineness modulus should be determined from previous tests, or if no previous tests exist, from the average of the fineness modulus values for the first ten samples (or all preceding samples if less than ten) on the order. The proportioning of a concrete mixture may be dependent on the base fineness modulus of the fine aggregate to be used. Therefore, when it appears that the base fineness modulus is considerably different from the value used in the concrete mixture, a suitable adjustment in the mixture may be necessary.

[5] *Significance of Tests and Properties of Concrete and Concrete Making Materials, STP 169B*, ASTM, 1978.

000189

TABLE 2 Grading Requirements for Coarse Aggregates

Size Number	Nominal Size (Sieves with Square Openings)	Amounts Finer than Each Laboratory Sieve (Square-Openings), Weight Percent												
		4 in. (100 mm)	3½ in. (90 mm)	3 in. (75 mm)	2½ in. (63 mm)	2 in. (50 mm)	1½ in. (37.5 mm)	1 in. (25.0 mm)	¾ in. (19.0 mm)	½ in. (12.5 mm)	⅜ in. (9.5 mm)	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	No. 8 (2.36 mm)	No. 16 (1.18 mm)
1	3½ to 1½ in. (90 to 37.5 mm)	100	90 to 100	...	25 to 60	...	0 to 15	...	0 to 5	...	...	...	...	...
2	2½ to 1½ in. (63 to 37.5 mm)	...	...	100	90 to 100	35 to 70	0 to 15	...	0 to 5	...	...	...	...	...
3	2 to 1 in. (50 to 25.0 mm)	...	...	...	100	90 to 100	35 to 70	0 to 15	...	0 to 5	...	...	...	...
357	2 in. to No. 4 (50 to 4.75 mm)	...	...	...	100	95 to 100	...	35 to 70	...	10 to 30	...	0 to 5	...	...
4	1½ to ¾ in. (37.5 to 19.0 mm)	...	...	...	...	100	90 to 100	20 to 55	0 to 15	...	0 to 5	...	...	...
467	1½ in. to No. 4 (37.5 to 4.75 mm)	...	...	...	...	100	95 to 100	...	35 to 70	...	10 to 30	0 to 5	...	...
5	1 to ½ in. (25.0 to 12.5 mm)	...	...	...	...	...	100	90 to 100	20 to 55	0 to 10	0 to 5	...	...	...
56	1 to ⅜ in. (25.0 to 9.5 mm)	...	...	...	...	...	100	90 to 100	40 to 85	10 to 40	0 to 15	0 to 5	...	...
57	1 in. to No. 4 (25.0 to 4.75 mm)	...	...	...	...	...	100	95 to 100	...	25 to 60	...	0 to 10	0 to 5	...
6	¾ to ⅜ in. (19.0 to 9.5 mm)	...	...	...	...	...	...	100	90 to 100	20 to 55	0 to 15	0 to 5	...	...
67	¾ in. to No. 4 (19.0 to 4.75 mm)	...	...	...	...	...	...	100	90 to 100	...	20 to 55	0 to 10	0 to 5	...
7	½ in. to No. 4 (12.5 to 4.75 mm)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	100	90 to 100	40 to 70	0 to 15	0 to 5	...
8	⅜ in. to No. 8 (9.5 to 2.36 mm)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	100	85 to 100	10 to 30	0 to 10	0 to 5

7. Deleterious Substances

7.1 The amount of deleterious substances in fine aggregate shall not exceed the limits prescribed in Table 1.

7.2 *Organic Impurities:*

7.2.1 Fine aggregate shall be free of injurious amounts of organic impurities. Except as herein provided, aggregates subjected to the test for organic impurities and producing a color darker than the standard shall be rejected.

7.2.2 A fine aggregate failing in the test may be used, provided that the discoloration is due principally to the presence of small quantities of coal, lignite, or similar discrete particles.

7.2.3 A fine aggregate failing in the test may be used, provided that, when tested for the effect of organic impurities on strength of mortar, the relative strength at 7 days, calculated in accordance with Test Method C 87, is not less than 95 %.

7.3 Fine aggregate for use in concrete that will be subject to wetting, extended exposure to humid atmosphere, or contact with moist ground shall not contain any materials that are deleteriously reactive with the alkalies in the cement in an amount sufficient to cause excessive expansion of mortar or concrete, except that if such materials are present in injurious amounts, the fine aggregate may be used with a cement containing less than 0.60 % alkalies calculated as sodium oxide equivalent ($Na_2O + 0.658K_2O$) or with the addition of a material that has been shown to prevent harmful expansion due to the alkali-aggregate reaction. (See Appendix X1.)

8. Soundness

8.1 Except as provided in 8.2 and 8.3, fine aggregate subjected to five cycles of the soundness test shall have a weighted average loss not greater than 10 % when sodium sulfate is used or 15 % when magnesium sulfate is used.

8.2 Fine aggregate failing to meet the requirements of 8.1 may be accepted, provided that concrete of comparable properties, made from similar aggregate from the same source, has given satisfactory service when exposed to weathering similar to that to be encountered.

8.3 Fine aggregate not having a demonstrable service record and failing to meet the requirements of 8.1 may be accepted, provided it gives satisfactory results in concrete subjected to freezing and thawing tests (see Test Method C 666).

COARSE AGGREGATE

9. General Characteristics

9.1 Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, air-cooled blast furnace slag, or crushed hydraulic-cement concrete, or a combination thereof, conforming to the requirements of this specification.

NOTE 7—Although crushed hydraulic-cement concrete has been used as an aggregate with reported satisfactory results, its use may require some additional precautions. Mixing water requirements may be increased because of the harshness of the aggregate. Partially deteriorated concrete, used as aggregate, may reduce freeze-thaw resistance, affect air void properties or degrade during handling, mixing, or placing. Crushed concrete may have constituents that would be susceptible to alkali-aggregate reactivity or sulfate attack in the new concrete or may bring sulfates, chlorides, or organic material to the new concrete in its pore structure.

10. Grading

10.1 Coarse aggregates shall conform to the requirements prescribed in Table 2 for the size number specified.

NOTE 8—The ranges shown in Table 2 are by necessity very wide in order to accommodate nationwide conditions. For quality control of any specific operation, a producer should develop an average gradation

000190

TABLE 3 Limits for Deleterious Substances and Physical Property Requirements of Coarse Aggregate for Concrete

NOTE—See Fig. 1 for the location of the weathering regions and Note 10 for guidance in using the map. The weathering regions are defined as follows:
(S) Severe Weathering Region—A cold climate where concrete is exposed to deicing chemicals or other aggressive agents, or where concrete may become saturated by continued contact with moisture or free water prior to repeated freezing and thawing.
(M) Moderate Weathering Region—A climate where occasional freezing is expected, but where concrete in outdoor service will not be continually exposed to freezing and thawing in the presence of moisture or to deicing chemicals.
(N) Negligible Weathering Region—A climate where concrete is rarely exposed to freezing in the presence of moisture.

Class Designation	Type or Location of Concrete Construction	Maximum Allowable, %						
		Clay Lumps and Friable Particles	Chert[C] (Less Than 2.40 sp gr SSD)	Sum of Clay Lumps, Friable Particles, and Chert (Less Than 2.40 sp gr SSD)[C]	Material Finer Than No. 200 (75-μm) Sieve	Coal and Lignite	Abrasion[A]	Magnesium Sulfate Soundness (5 cycles)[B]
		Severe Weathering Regions						
1S	Footings, foundations, columns and beams not exposed to the weather, interior floor slabs to be given coverings	10.0	...	...	1.0[D]	1.0	50	...
2S	Interior floors without coverings	5.0	...	...	1.0[D]	0.5	50	...
3S	Foundation walls above grade, retaining walls, abutments, piers, girders, and beams exposed to the weather	5.0	5.0	7.0	1.0[D]	0.5	50	18
4S	Pavements, bridge decks, driveways and curbs, walks, patios, garage floors, exposed floors and porches, or waterfront structures, subject to frequent wetting	3.0	5.0	5.0	1.0[D]	0.5	50	18
5S	Exposed architectural concrete	2.0	3.0	3.0	1.0[D]	0.5	50	18
		Moderate Weathering Regions						
1M	Footings, foundations, columns, and beams not exposed to the weather, interior floor slabs to be given coverings	10.0	...	...	1.0[D]	1.0	50	...
2M	Interior floors without coverings	5.0	...	...	1.0[D]	0.5	50	...
3M	Foundation walls above grade, retaining walls, abutments, piers, girders, and beams exposed to the weather	5.0	8.0	10.0	1.0[D]	0.5	50	18
4M	Pavements, bridge decks, driveways and curbs, walks, patios, garage floors, exposed floors and porches, or waterfront structures subject to frequent wetting	5.0	5.0	7.0	1.0[D]	0.5	50	18
5M	Exposed architectural concrete	3.0	3.0	5.0	1.0[D]	0.5	50	18
		Negligible Weathering Regions						
1N	Slabs subject to traffic abrasion, bridge decks, floors, sidewalks, pavements	5.0	...	...	1.0[D]	0.5	50	...
2N	All other classes of concrete	10.0	...	...	1.0[D]	1.0	50	...

[A] Crushed air-cooled blast-furnace slag is excluded from the abrasion requirements. The rodded or jigged unit weight of crushed air-cooled blast-furnace slag shall be not less than 70 lb/ft^3 (1120 kg/m^3). The grading of slag used in the unit weight test shall conform to the grading to be used in the concrete. Abrasion loss of gravel, crushed gravel, or crushed stone shall be determined on the test size or sizes most nearly corresponding to the grading or gradings to be used in the concrete. When more than one grading is to be used, the limit on abrasion loss shall apply to each.

[B] The allowable limits for soundness shall be 12 % if sodium sulfate is used.

[C] These limitations apply only to aggregates in which chert appears as an impurity. They are not applicable to gravels that are predominantly chert. Limitations on soundness of such aggregates must be based on service records in the environment in which they are used.

[D] This percentage may be increased under either of the following conditions: (1) if the material finer than the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve is essentially free of clay or shale the percentage may be increased to 1.5; or (2) if the source of the fine aggregate to be used in the concrete is known to contain less than the specified maximum amount passing the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve (Table 1) the percentage limit (L) on the amount in the coarse aggregate may be increased to $L = 1 + [(P)/(100 - P)] (T - A)$, where P = percentage of sand in the concrete as a percent of total aggregate, T = the Table 1 limit for the amount permitted in the fine aggregate, and A = the actual amount in the fine aggregate. (This provides a weighted calculation designed to limit the maximum mass of material passing the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve in the concrete to that which would be obtained if both the fine and coarse aggregate were supplied at the maximum tabulated percentage for each of these ingredients.)

for the particular source and production facilities, and control the gradation within reasonable tolerances from this average. Where coarse aggregate sizes numbers 357 or 467 are used, the aggregate should be furnished in at least two separate sizes.

11. Deleterious Substances

11.1 Except for the provisions of 11.3, the limits given in Table 3 shall apply for the class of coarse aggregate designated in the purchase order or other document (Notes 9 and 10). If the class is not specified, the requirements for Class 3S, 3M, or 1N shall apply in the severe, moderate, and negligible weathering regions, respectively (see Table 3 and Fig. 1).

NOTE 9—The specifier of the aggregate should designate the class of coarse aggregate to be used in the work, based on weathering severity, abrasion, and other factors of exposure. (See Table 3 and Fig. 1.) The limits for coarse aggregate corresponding to each class designation are expected to ensure satisfactory performance in concrete for the respective type and location of construction. Selecting a class with unduly restrictive limits may result in unnecessary cost if materials meeting those requirements are not locally available. Selecting a class with lenient limits may result in unsatisfactory performance and premature deterioration of the concrete. While concrete in different parts of a single

000191

P- 344

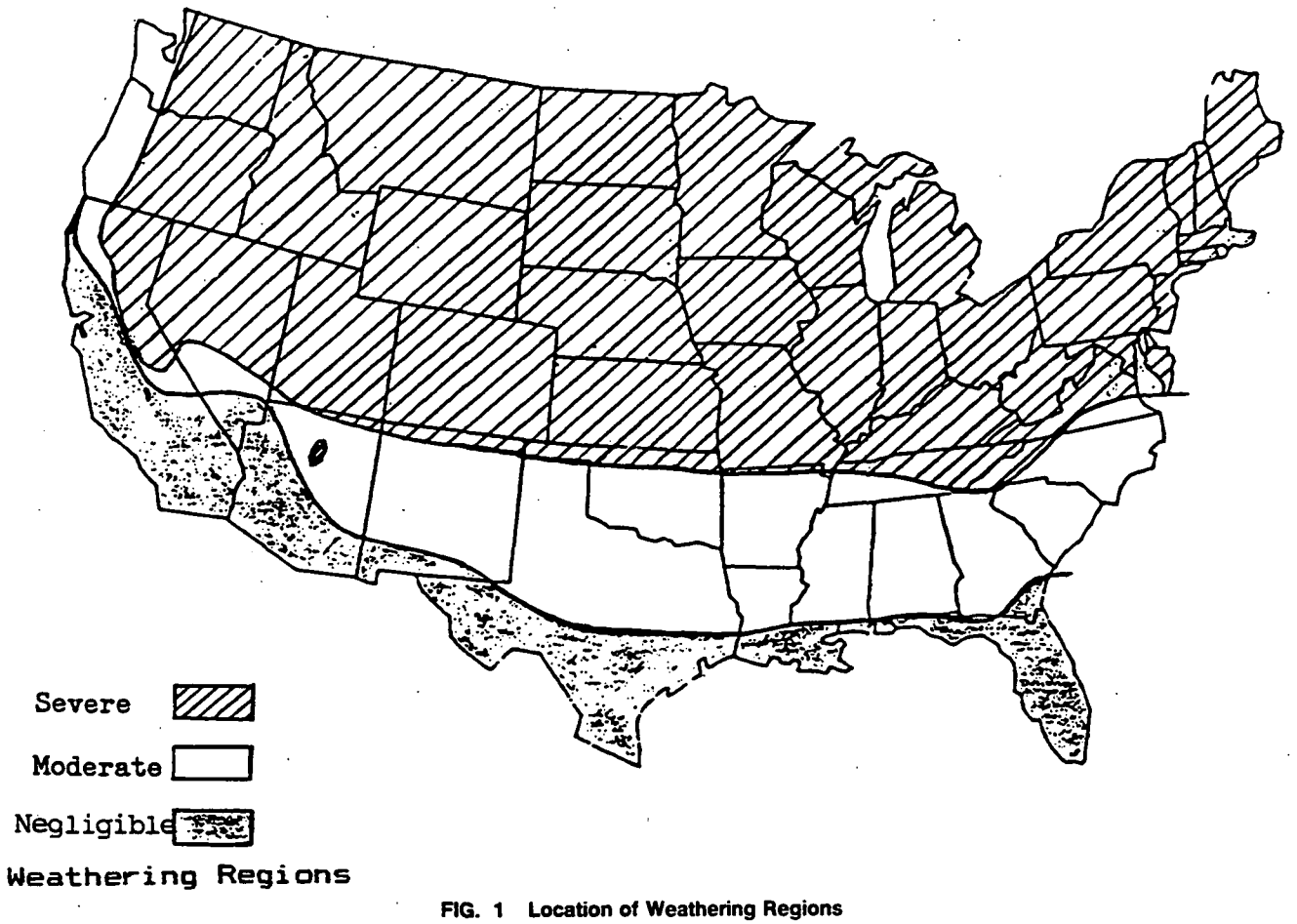


FIG. 1 Location of Weathering Regions

structure may be adequately made with different classes of coarse aggregate, the specifier may wish to require the coarse aggregate for all concrete to conform to the same more restrictive class to reduce the chance of furnishing concrete with the wrong class of aggregate, especially on smaller projects.

NOTE 10—For coarse aggregate in concrete exposed to weathering, the map with the weathering regions shown in Fig. 1 is intended to serve only as a guide to probable weathering severity. Those undertaking construction, especially near the boundaries of weathering regions, should consult local weather bureau records for amount of winter precipitation and number of freeze-thaw cycles to be expected, for determining the weathering severity for establishing test requirements of the coarse aggregate. For construction at altitudes exceeding 5000 ft (1520 m) above sea level, the likelihood of more severe weathering than indicated by the map should be considered. In arid areas, severity of weathering may be less than that indicated. In either case, the definitions of weathering severity in Table 3 would govern. If there is doubt in choosing between two regions, select the more severe weathering region.

11.2 Coarse aggregate for use in concrete that will be subject to wetting, extended exposure to humid atmosphere, or contact with moist ground shall not contain any materials that are deleteriously reactive with the alkalies in the cement in an amount sufficient to cause excessive expansion of mortar or concrete except that if such materials are present in injurious amounts, the coarse aggregate may be used with a cement containing less than 0.60 % alkalies calculated as sodium oxide equivalent ($Na_2O + 0.658K_2O$) or with the addition of a material that has been shown to prevent harmful expansion due to the alkali-aggregate reaction. (See Appendix X1.).

11.3 Coarse aggregate having test results exceeding the limits specified in Table 3 may be accepted provided that concrete made with similar aggregate from the same source has given satisfactory service when exposed in a similar manner to that to be encountered; or, in the absence of a demonstrable service record, provided that the aggregate produces concrete having satisfactory relevant properties (see Note 5).

METHODS OF SAMPLING AND TESTING

12. Methods of Sampling and Testing

12.1 Sample and test the aggregates in accordance with the following methods, except as otherwise provided in this specification. Make the required tests on test specimens that comply with requirements of the designated test methods. The same test specimen may be used for sieve analysis and for determination of material finer than the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve. Separated sizes from the sieve analysis may be used in preparation of samples for soundness or abrasion tests. For determination of all other tests and for evaluation of potential alkali reactivity where required, use independent test specimens.

12.1.1 *Sampling*—Practice D 75 and Practice D 3665.

12.1.2 *Grading and Fineness Modulus*—Method C 136.

000192

12.1.3 *Amount of Material Finer than No. 200 (75-μm) Sieve*—Test Method C 117.

12.1.4 *Organic Impurities*—Test Method C 40.

12.1.5 *Effect of Organic Impurities on Strength*—Test Method C 87.

12.1.6 *Soundness*—Test Method C 88.

12.1.7 *Clay Lumps and Friable Particles*—Test Method C 142.

12.1.8 *Coal and Lignite*—Test Method C 123, using a liquid of 2.0 specific gravity to remove the particles of coal and lignite. Only material that is brownish-black, or black, shall be considered coal or lignite. Coke shall not be classed as coal or lignite.

12.1.9 *Weight of Slag*—Test Method C 29.

12.1.10 *Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate*—Test Method C 131 or Test Method C 535.

12.1.11 *Reactive Aggregates*—See Appendix X1.

12.1.12 *Freezing and Thawing*—Procedures for making freezing and thawing tests of concrete are described in Test Method C 666.

12.1.13 *Chert*—Test Method C 123 is used to identify particles in a sample of coarse aggregate lighter than 2.40 specific gravity, and Practice C 295 to identify which of the particles in the light fraction are chert.

13. Keywords

13.1 aggregates; coarse aggregate; concrete aggregates; fine aggregate

APPENDIX

(Nonmandatory Information)

XI. METHODS FOR EVALUATING POTENTIAL REACTIVITY OF AN AGGREGATE

X1.1 A number of methods for detecting potential reactivity have been proposed. However, they do not provide quantitative information on the degree of reactivity to be expected or tolerated in service. Therefore, evaluation of potential reactivity of an aggregate should be based upon judgment and on the interpretation of test data and examination of concrete structures containing a combination of fine and coarse aggregates and cements for use in the new work. Results of the following tests may assist in making the evaluation:

X1.1.1 *Practice C 295*—Certain materials are known to be reactive with the alkalies in cements. These include the following forms of silica: opal, chalcedony, tridymite, and cristobalite; intermediate to acid (silica-rich) volcanic glass such as is likely to occur in rhyolite, andesite, or dacite; certain zeolites such as heulandite; and certain constituents of some phyllites. Determination of the presence and quantities of these materials by petrographic examination is helpful in evaluating potential alkali reactivity. Some of these materials render an aggregate deleteriously reactive when present in quantities as little as 1.0 % or even less.

X1.1.2 *Test Method C 289*—In this test method, aggregates represented by points lying to the right of the solid line of Fig. 2 of Test Method C 289 usually should be considered potentially reactive.

X1.1.2.1 If R_c exceeds 70, the aggregate is considered potentially reactive if S_c is greater than R_c.

X1.1.2.2 If R_c is less than 70, the aggregate is considered potentially reactive if S_c is greater than $35 + (R_c/2)$.

X1.1.2.3 These criteria conform to the solid line curve given in Fig. 2 of Test Method C 289. The test can be made quickly and, while not completely reliable in all cases, provides helpful information, especially where results of the more time-consuming tests are not available.

X1.1.3 *Test Method C 227*—The results of this test method when made with a high-alkali cement, furnish information on the likelihood of harmful reactions occurring. The alkali content of the cement should be substantially above 0.6 %, and preferably above 0.8 %, expressed as sodium oxide. Combinations of aggregate and cement that have produced excessive expansions in this test usually should be considered potentially reactive. While the line of demarcation between nonreactive and reactive combinations is not clearly defined, expansion is generally considered to be excessive if it exceeds 0.05 % at 3 months or 0.10 % at 6 months. Expansions greater than 0.05 % at 3 months should not be considered excessive where the 6-month expansion remains below 0.10 %. Data for the 3-month tests should be considered only when 6-month results are not available.

X1.1.4 *Test Method C 342*—This test method is intended primarily for research concerning the potential expansion of cement-aggregate combinations subjected to variations of temperature and water saturation during storage under prescribed conditions of test. Its use is mainly by those interested in research on aggregates that are found in parts of Kansas, Nebraska, Iowa and possibly other adjoining areas.

X1.1.4.1 In addition to its usefulness in research, this test method has been found useful in the selection of aggregates of the so-called "sand-gravel" type found mainly in some parts of Kansas, Nebraska and Iowa, which contain very little coarse material; generally 5 to 15 % retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve. Much work has been done on the problems of using these aggregates successfully in concrete and is reported in summary in the "Final Report of Cooperative Tests of Proposed Tentative Method of Test for Potential Volume Change of Cement-Aggregate Combinations," Appendix to Committee C-9 Report, Proceedings, ASTM, Volume 54, 1954, p. 356. It indicates that cement-aggregate combinations tested by this procedure in which expansion equals or exceeds 0.200 % at an age of 1 year may be considered unsatisfactory for use in concrete exposed to wide variations of temperature and degree of saturation with water. In that geographical region, the problem has been reduced through the use of partial replacement of the "sand-gravel" with limestone coarse aggregate.

X1.1.5 *Potential Reactivity of Carbonate Aggregates*—

000193

reaction of the dolomite in certain carbonate rocks with alkalies in portland cement paste has been found to be associated with deleterious expansion of concrete containing such rocks as coarse aggregate. Carbonate rocks capable of such reaction possess a characteristic texture and composition. The characteristic texture is that in which relatively large crystals of dolomite are scattered in a finer-grained matrix of calcite and clay. The characteristic composition is that in which the carbonate portion consists of substantial amounts of both dolomite and calcite, and the acid-insoluble residue contains a significant amount of clay. Except in certain areas, such rocks are of relatively infrequent occurrence and seldom make up a significant proportion of the material present in a deposit of rock being considered for use in making aggregate for concrete. Test Method C 586 has been successfully used in (*1*) research and (*2*) preliminary screening of aggregate sources to indicate the presence of material with a potential for deleterious expansions when used in concrete.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000194

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: C 88 – 90

Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 88; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This test method has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the testing of aggregates to estimate their soundness when subjected to weathering action in concrete or other applications. This is accomplished by repeated immersion in saturated solutions of sodium or magnesium sulfate followed by oven drying to partially or completely dehydrate the salt precipitated in permeable pore spaces. The internal expansive force, derived from the rehydration of the salt upon re-immersion, simulates the expansion of water on freezing. This test method furnishes information helpful in judging the soundness of aggregates when adequate information is not available from service records of the material exposed to actual weathering conditions.

1.2 The values given in parentheses are provided for information purposes only.

1.3 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 33 Specification for Concrete Aggregates[2]

C 136 Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[2]

C 670 Practice for Preparing Precision and Bias Statements for Test Methods for Construction Materials[2]

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[2]

D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[3]

D 3665 Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials[3]

E 11 Specification for Wire Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[4]

E 100 Specification for ASTM Hydrometers[5]

E 323 Specification for Perforated-Plate Sieves for Testing Purposes[4]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 This test method provides a procedure for making a preliminary estimate of the soundness of aggregates for use in concrete and other purposes. The values obtained may be compared with specifications, for example Specification C 33, that are designed to indicate the suitability of aggregate proposed for use. Since the precision of this test method is poor (Section 12), it may not be suitable for outright rejection of aggregates without confirmation from other tests more closely related to the specific service intended.

3.2 Values for the permitted-loss percentage by this test method are usually different for fine and coarse aggregates, and attention is called to the fact that test results by use of the two salts differ considerably and care must be exercised in fixing proper limits in any specifications that include requirements for these tests. The test is usually more severe when magnesium sulfate is used; accordingly, limits for percent loss allowed when magnesium sulfate is used are normally higher than limits when sodium sulfate is used.

NOTE 1—Refer to the appropriate sections in Specification C 33 establishing conditions for acceptance of coarse and fine aggregates which fail to meet requirements based on this test.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Sieves*—With square openings of the following sizes conforming to Specifications E 11 or E 323, for sieving the samples in accordance with Sections 6, 7, and 9:

150 μm (No. 100)	8.0 mm (5/16 in.)
	9.5 mm (3/8 in.)
300 μm (No. 50)	12.5 mm (1/2 in.)
	16.0 mm (5/8 in.)
600 μm (No. 30)	19.0 mm (3/4 in.)
	25.0 mm (1 in.)
1.18 mm (No. 16)	31.5 mm (1 1/4 in.)
2.36 mm (No. 8)	37.5 mm (1 1/2 in.)
	50 mm (2 in.)
4.00 mm (No. 5)	63 mm (2 1/2 in.)
	larger sizes by
4.75 mm (No. 4)	12.5-mm (1/2-in.)
	spread

4.2 *Containers*—Containers for immersing the samples of aggregate in the solution, in accordance with the procedure described in this test method, shall be perforated in such a manner as to permit free access of the solution to the sample and drainage of the solution from the sample without loss of aggregate.

NOTE 2—Baskets made of suitable wire mesh or sieves with suitable openings are satisfactory containers for the samples.

4.3 *Temperature Regulation*—Suitable means for regu-

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.20 on Normal Weight Aggregates.

Current edition approved Oct. 26, 1990. Published December 1990. Originally published as C 88 – 31 T. Last previous edition C 88 – 83.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[3] *Annual Book of ATSM Standards*, Vol 04.03.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.03.

000196

ing the temperature of the samples during immersion in e sodium sulfate or magnesium sulfate solution shall be provided.

4.4 *Balances*—For fine aggregate, a balance or scale accurate within 0.1 g over the range required for this test; for coarse aggregate, a balance or scale accurate within 0.1 % or 1 g, whichever is greater, over the range required for this test.

4.5 *Drying Oven*—The oven shall be capable of being heated continuously at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C) and the rate of evaporation, at this range of temperature, shall be at least 25 g/h for 4 h, during which period the doors of the oven shall be kept closed. This rate shall be determined by the loss of water from 1-L Griffin low-form beakers, each initially containing 500 g of water at a temperature of 70 ± 3°F (21 ± 2°C), placed at each corner and the center of each shelf of the oven. The evaporation requirement is to apply to all test locations when the oven is empty except for the beakers of water.

4.6 *Specific Gravity Measurement*—Hydrometers conforming to the requirements of Specification E 100, or a suitable combination of graduated glassware and balance, capable of measuring the solution specific gravity within ±0.001.

5. Special Solutions Required

5.1 Prepare the solution for immersion of test samples from either sodium or magnesium sulfate in accordance with 5.1.1 or 5.1.2 (Note 3). The volume of the solution shall be at least five times the solid volume of all samples immersed at any one time.

NOTE 3—Some aggregates containing carbonates of calcium or magnesium are attacked chemically by fresh sulfate solution, resulting in erroneously high measured losses. If this condition is encountered or is suspected, repeat the test using a filtered solution that has been used previously to test the same type of carbonate rock, provided that the solution meets the requirements of 5.1.1 and 5.1.2 for specific gravity.

5.1.1 *Sodium Sulfate Solution*—Prepare a saturated solution of sodium sulfate by dissolving a USP or equal grade of the salt in water at a temperature of 77 to 86°F (25 to 30°C). Add sufficient salt (Note 4), of either the anhydrous (Na_2SO_4) or the crystalline ($Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10H_2O$) form,[6] to ensure not only saturation but also the presence of excess crystals when the solution is ready for use in the tests. Thoroughly stir the mixture during the addition of the salt and stir the solution at frequent intervals until used. To reduce evaporation and prevent contamination, keep the solution covered at all times when access is not needed. Allow the solution to cool to 70 ± 2°F (21 ± 1°C). Again stir, and allow the solution to remain at the designated temperature for at least 48 h before use. Prior to each use, break up the salt cake, if any, in the container, stir the solution thoroughly, and determine the specific gravity of the solution. When used, the solution shall have a specific gravity not less than 1.151 nor more than 1.174. Discard a discolored solution, or filter it and check for specific gravity.

NOTE 4—For the solution, 215 g of anhydrous salt or 700 g of the decahydrate per litre of water are sufficient for saturation at 71.6°F (22°C). However, since these salts are not completely stable and since it is desirable that an excess of crystals be present, the use of not less than 350 g of the anhydrous salt or 750 g of the decahydrate salt per litre of water is recommended.

5.1.2 *Magnesium Sulfate Solution*—Prepare a saturated solution of magnesium sulfate by dissolving a USP or equal grade of the salt in water at a temperature of 77 to 86°F (25 to 30°C). Add sufficient salt (Note 5), of either the anhydrous ($MgSO_4$) or the crystalline ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$) (Epsom salt) form, to ensure saturation and the presence of excess crystals when the solution is ready for use in the tests. Thoroughly stir the mixture during the addition of the salt and stir the solution at frequent intervals until used. To reduce evaporation and prevent contamination, keep the solution covered at all times when access is not needed. Allow the solution to cool to 70 ± 2°F (21 ± 1°C). Again stir, and allow the solution to remain at the designated temperature for at least 48 h before use. Prior to each use, break up the salt cake, if any, in the container, stir the solution thoroughly, and determine the specific gravity of the solution. When used, the solution shall have a specific gravity not less than 1.295 nor more than 1.308. Discard a discolored solution, or filter it and check for specific gravity.

NOTE 5—For the solution, 350 g of anhydrous salt or 1230 g of the heptahydrate per litre of water are sufficient for saturation at 73.4°F (23°C). However, since these salts are not completely stable, with the hydrous salt being the more stable of the two, and since it is desirable that an excess of crystals be present, it is recommended that the heptahydrate salt be used and in an amount of not less than 1400 g/litre of water.

6. Samples

6.1 The sample shall be obtained in general accordance with Practice D 75 and reduced to test portion size in accordance with Practice C 702.

6.2 *Fine Aggregate*—Fine aggregate for the test shall be passed through a 9.5-mm (3/8-in.) sieve. The sample shall be of such size that it will yield not less than 100 g of each of the following sizes, which shall be available in amounts of 5 % or more, expressed in terms of the following sieves:

Passing Sieve	Retained on Sieve
600 µg (No. 30)	300 µm (No. 50)
1.18 mm (No. 16)	600 µm (No. 30)
2.36 mm (No. 8)	1.18 mm (No. 16)
4.75 mm (No. 4)	2.36 mm (No. 8)
9.5 mm (3/8 in.)	4.75 mm (No. 4)

6.3 *Coarse Aggregate*—Coarse aggregate for the test shall consist of material from which the sizes finer than the No. 4 sieve have been removed. The sample shall be of such a size that it will yield the following amounts of the indicated sizes that are available in amounts of 5 % or more:

Size (Square-Opening Sieves)	Weight, g
9.5 mm (3/8 in.) to 4.75 mm (No. 4)	300 ± 5
19.0 mm (3/4 in.) to 9.5 mm (3/8 in.)	1000 ± 10
Consisting of:	
12.5-mm (1/2-in.) to 9.5-mm (3/8-in.) material	330 ± 5
19.0-mm (3/4-in.) to 12.5-mm (1/2-in.) material	670 ± 10
37.5-mm (1 1/2-in.) to 19.0-mm (3/4 in.)	1500 ± 50
Consisting of:	
25.0-mm (1-in.) to 19.0-mm (3/4-in.) material	500 ± 30
37.5-mm (1 1/2-in.) to 25.0-mm (1-in.) material	1000 ± 50
63-mm (2 1/2 in.) to 37.5-mm (1 1/2 in.)	5000 ± 300
Consisting of:	
50-mm (2 in.) to 37.5-mm (1 1/2-in.) material	2000 ± 200
63-mm (2 1/2-in.) to 50-mm (2-in.) material	3000 ± 300
Larger sizes by 25-mm (1-in.) spread in sieve size, each fraction	7000 ± 1000

[6] Experience with the test method indicates that a grade of sodium sulfate designated by the trade as dried powder, which may be considered as approximately anhydrous, is the most practical for use. That grade is more economically available than the anhydrous form. The decahydrate sodium sulfate presents difficulties in compounding the required solution on account of its cooling effect on the solution.

000197

6.4 When an aggregate to be tested contains appreciable amounts of both fine and coarse material, having a grading with more than 10 weight % coarser than the 9.5-mm (3/8-in.) sieve and, also, more than 10 weight % finer than the 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve, test separate samples of the minus No. 4 fraction and the plus No. 4 fraction in accordance with the procedures for fine aggregate and coarse aggregate, respectively. Report the results separately for the fine-aggregate fraction and the coarse-aggregate fraction, giving the percentages of the coarse- and fine-size fractions in the initial grading.

7. Preparation of Test Sample

7.1 *Fine Aggregate*—Thoroughly wash the sample of fine aggregate on a 300-μm (No. 50) sieve, dry to constant weight at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C), and separate into the different sizes by sieving, as follows: Make a rough separation of the graded sample by means of a nest of the standard sieves specified in 6.2. From the fractions obtained in this manner, select samples of sufficient size to yield 100 g after sieving to refusal. (In general, a 110-g sample will be sufficient.) Do not use fine aggregate sticking in the meshes of the sieves in preparing the samples. Weigh samples consisting of 100 ± 0.1 g out of each of the separated fractions after final sieving and place in separate containers for the test.

7.2 *Coarse Aggregate*—Thoroughly wash and dry the sample of coarse aggregate to constant weight at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C) and separate it into the different sizes shown in 6.3 by sieving to refusal. Weigh out quantities of the different sizes within the tolerances of 6.3 and, where the test portion consists of two sizes, combine them to the designated total weight. Record the weights of the test samples and their fractional components. In the case of sizes larger than 19.0 mm (3/4 in.), record the number of particles in the test samples.

8. Procedure

8.1 *Storage of Samples in Solution*—Immerse the samples in the prepared solution of sodium sulfate or magnesium sulfate for not less than 16 h nor more than 18 h in such a manner that the solution covers them to a depth of at least 1/2 in. (Note 6). Cover the containers to reduce evaporation and prevent the accidental addition of extraneous substances. Maintain the samples immersed in the solution at a temperature of 70 ± 2°F (21 ± 1°C) for the immersion period.

NOTE 6—Suitably weighted wire grids placed over the sample in the containers will permit this coverage to be achieved with very lightweight aggregates.

8.2 *Drying Samples After Immersion*—After the immersion period, remove the aggregate sample from the solution, permit it to drain for 15 ± 5 min, and place in the drying oven. The temperature of the oven shall have been brought previously to 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C). Dry the samples at the specified temperature until constant weight has been achieved. Establish the time required to attain constant weight as follows: with the oven containing the maximum sample load expected, check the weight losses of test samples by removing and weighing them, without cooling, at intervals of 2 to 4 h; make enough checks to establish required drying time for the least favorable oven location (see 4.5) and sample condition (Note 7). Constant weight will be considered to have been achieved when weight loss is less than 0.1 % of sample weight in 4 h of drying. After constant weight has been achieved, allow the samples to cool to room temperature, when they shall again be immersed in the prepared solution as described in 8.1.

NOTE 7—Drying time required to reach constant weight may vary considerably for several reasons. Efficiency of drying will be reduced as cycles accumulate because of salt adhering to particles and, in some cases, because of increase in surface area due to breakdown. The different size fractions of aggregate will have differing drying rates. The smaller sizes will tend to dry more slowly because of their larger surface area and restricted interparticle voids, but this tendency may be altered by the effects of container size and shape.

8.3 *Number of Cycles*—Repeat the process of alternate immersion and drying until the required number of cycles is obtained.

9. Quantitative Examination

9.1 Make the quantitative examination as follows:

9.1.1 After the completion of the final cycle and after the sample has cooled, wash the sample free from the sodium sulfate or magnesium sulfate as determined by the reaction of the wash water with barium chloride ($BaCl_2$). Wash by circulating water at 110 ± 10°F (43 ± 6°C) through the samples in their containers. This may be done by placing them in a tank into which the hot water can be introduced near the bottom and allowed to overflow. In the washing operation, the samples shall not be subjected to impact or abrasion that may tend to break up particles.

9.1.2 After the sodium sulfate or magnesium sulfate has been removed, dry each fraction of the sample to constant weight at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C). Sieve the fine aggregate over the same sieve on which it was retained before the test, and sieve the coarse aggregate over the sieve shown below for the appropriate size of particle. For fine aggregate, the method and duration of sieving shall be the same as were used in preparing the test samples. For coarse aggregate, sieving shall be by hand, with agitation sufficient only to assure that all undersize material passes the designated sieve. No extra manipulation shall be employed to break up particles or cause them to pass the sieves. Weigh the material retained on each sieve and record each amount. The difference between each of these amounts and the initial weight of the fraction of the sample tested is the loss in the test and is to be expressed as a percentage of the initial weight for use in Table 1.

Size of Aggregate	Sieve Used to Determine Loss
63 mm (2½ in.) to 37.5 mm (1½ in.)	31.5 mm (1¼ in.)
37.5 mm (1½ in.) to 19.0 mm (¾ in.)	16.0 mm (⅝ in.)
19 mm (¾ in.) to 9.5 mm (⅜ in.)	8.0 mm (5/16 in.)
9.5 mm (⅜ in.) to 4.75 mm (No. 4)	4.0 mm (No. 5)

10. Qualitative Examination

10.1 Make a qualitative examination of test samples coarser than 19.0 mm (3/4 in.) as follows (Note 8):

10.1.1 Separate the particles of each test sample into groups according to the action produced by the test (Note 8).

10.1.2 Record the number of particles showing each type of distress.

NOTE 8—Many types of action may be expected. In general, they may be classified as disintegration, splitting, crumbling, cracking,

000198

TABLE 1 Suggested Form for Recording Test Data (with Illustrative Test Values)

Sieve Size			Grading of Original Sample, %	Weight of Test Fractions Before Test, g	Percentage Passing Designated Sieve After Test	Weighted Percentage Loss
Soundness Test of Fine Aggregate						
Minus 150 μm (No. 100)			6	...	...	...
300 μm (No. 50) to No. 100			11	...	...	...
600 μm (No. 30) to No. 50			26	100	4.2	1.1
1.18 mm (No. 16) to No. 30			25	100	4.8	1.2
2.36 mm (No. 8) to No. 16			17	100	8.0	1.4
4.75 mm (No. 4) to No. 8			11	100	11.2	1.2
9.5 mm (⅜ in.) to No. 4			4	...	11.2[A]	0.4
Totals			100.0	...	...	5
Soundness Test of Coarse Aggregate						
63 mm (2½ in.) to 50 mm (2 in.)	2825 g	2½ to 1½ in.	20	4783	4.8	1.0
50 mm (2 in.) to 37.5 mm (1½ in.)	1958 g					
37.5 mm (1½ in.) to 25.0 mm (1 in.)	1012 g	1½ to ¾ in.	45	1525	8.0	3.6
25 mm (1 in.) to 19.0 mm (¾ in.)	513 g					
19.0 mm (¾ in.) to 12.5 mm (½ in.)	675 g	¾ to ⅜ in.	23	1008	9.6	2.2
12.5 mm (½ in.) to 9.5 mm (⅜ in.)	333 g					
9.5 mm (⅜ in.) to 4.75 mm (No. 4)	298 g		12	298	11.2	1.3
Totals			100	...	...	8

[A] The percentage loss (11.2 %) of the next smaller size is used as the percentage loss for this size, since this size contains less than 5 % of the original sample as received. See 11.1.3.4.

flaking, etc. While only particles larger than ¾ in. in size are required to be examined qualitatively, it is recommended that examination of the smaller sizes be made in order to determine whether there is any evidence of excessive splitting.

11. Report

11.1 Report the following data (Note 9):

11.1.1 Weight of each fraction of each sample before test,

11.1.2 Material from each fraction of the sample finer than the sieve designated in 9.1.2 for sieving after test, expressed as a percentage of the original weight of the fraction,

11.1.3 Weighted average calculated in accordance with Test Method C 136 from the percentage of loss for each fraction, based on the grading of the sample as received for examination or, preferably, on the average grading of the material from that portion of the supply of which the sample is representative except that:

11.1.3.1 For fine aggregates (with less than 10 % coarser than the 9.5-mm (⅜-in.) sieve), assume sizes finer than the 300-μm (No. 50) sieve to have 0 % loss and sizes coarser than the 9.5-mm (⅜-in.) sieve to have the same loss as the next smaller size for which test data are available.

11.1.3.2 For coarse aggregate (with less than 10 % finer than the 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve), assume sizes finer than the 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve to have the same loss as the next larger size for which test data are available.

11.1.3.3 For an aggregate containing appreciable amounts of both fine and coarse material tested as two separate samples as required in 6.4, compute the weighted average losses separately for the minus No. 4 and plus No. 4 fractions based on recomputed gradings considering the fine fraction as 100 % and the coarse fraction as 100 %. Report the results separately giving the percentage of the minus No. 4 and plus No. 4 material in the initial grading.

11.1.3.4 For the purpose of calculating the weighted average, consider any sizes in 6.2 or 6.3 that contain less than 5 % of the sample to have the same loss as the average of the next smaller and the next larger size, or if one of these sizes is absent, to have the same loss as the next larger or next smaller size, whichever is present.

11.1.4 Report the weighted percentage loss to the nearest whole number,

11.1.5 In the case of particles coarser than 19.0 mm (¾ in.) before test: (*1*) The number of particles in each fraction before test, and (*2*) the number of particles affected, classified as to number disintegrating, splitting, crumbling, cracking, flaking, etc., as shown in Table 2, and

11.1.6 Kind of solution (sodium or magnesium sulfate) and whether the solution was freshly prepared or previously used.

NOTE 9—Table 1, shown with test values inserted for purpose of illustration, is a suggested form for recording test data. The test values shown might be appropriate for either salt, depending on the quality of the aggregate.

12. Precision

12.1 *Precision*—For coarse aggregate with weighted average sulfate soundness losses in the ranges of 6 to 16 % for sodium and 9 to 20 % for magnesium, the precision indexes are as follows:

	Coefficient of Variation (1S %), %[A]	Difference Between Two Tests (D2S %), % of Average[A]
Multilaboratory:		
Sodium sulfate	41	116
Magnesium sulfate	25	71
Single-Operator:		
Sodium sulfate	24	68
Magnesium sulfate	11	31

[A] These numbers represent, respectively, the (1S %) and (D2S %) limits as described in Practice C 670.

12.2 *Bias*—Since there is no accepted reference material suitable for determining the bias for this procedure, no statement on bias is being made.

000199

344

TABLE 2 Suggested Form for Qualitative Examination (with Illustrative Test Values)

Sieve Size	Qualitative Examination of Coarse Sizes								
	Particles Exhibiting Distress								
	Splitting		Crumbling		Cracking		Flaking		Total No. of Particles Before Test
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	
63 mm (2½ in.) to 37.5 mm (1½ in.)	2	7	...	...	2	7	...	...	29
37.5 mm (1½ in.) to 19.0 mm (¾ in.)	5	10	1	2	4	8	...	...	50

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000200

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Test Method for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 127; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This test method has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of specific gravity and absorption of coarse aggregate. The specific gravity may be expressed as bulk specific gravity, bulk specific gravity (SSD) (saturated-surface-dry), or apparent specific gravity. The bulk specific gravity (SSD) and absorption are based on aggregate after 24 h soaking in water. This test method is not intended to be used with lightweight aggregates.

1.2 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 29/C 29M Test Method for Unit Weight and Voids in Aggregate[2]

C 125 Terminology Relating to Concrete and Concrete Aggregates[2]

C 128 Test Method for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate[2]

C 136 Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[2]

C 566 Test Method for Total Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying[3]

C 670 Practice for Preparing Precision and Bias Statements for Test Methods for Construction Materials[2]

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[3]

D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[2]

D 448 Classification for Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction[2]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[4]

E 12 Terminology Relating to Density and Specific Gravity of Solids, Liquids, and Gases[5]

2.2 *AASHTO Standard:*

AASHTO No. T 85 Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate[6]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 *absorption*—the increase in the weight of aggregate due to water in the pores of the material, but not including water adhering to the outside surface of the particles, expressed as a percentage of the dry weight. The aggregate is considered "dry" when it has been maintained at a temperature of 110 ± 5°C for sufficient time to remove all uncombined water.

3.1.2 *specific gravity*—the ratio of the mass (or weight in air) of a unit volume of a material to the mass of the same volume of water at stated temperatures. Values are dimensionless.

3.1.2.1 *apparent specific gravity*—the ratio of the weight in air of a unit volume of the impermeable portion of aggregate at a stated temperature to the weight in air of an equal volume of gas-free distilled water at a stated temperature.

3.1.2.2 *bulk specific gravity*—the ratio of the weight in air of a unit volume of aggregate (including the permeable and impermeable voids in the particles, but not including the voids between particles) at a stated temperature to the weight in air of an equal volume of gas-free distilled water at a stated temperature.

3.1.2.3 *bulk specific gravity (SSD)*—the ratio of the weight in air of a unit volume of aggregate, including the weight of water within the voids filled to the extent achieved by submerging in water for approximately 24 h (but not including the voids between particles) at a stated temperature, compared to the weight in air of an equal volume of gas-free distilled water at a stated temperature.

NOTE 1—The terminology for specific gravity is based on terms in Terminology E 12, and that for absorption is based on that term in Terminology C 125.

4. Summary of Test Method

4.1 A sample of aggregate is immersed in water for approximately 24 h to essentially fill the pores. It is then removed from the water, the water dried from the surface of

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.20 on Normal Weight Aggregates.

Current edition approved Oct. 31, 1988. Published December 1988. Originally published as C 127 – 36 T. Last previous edition C 127 – 84.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 04.02 and 04.03.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 04.02, 15.05.

[6] Available from American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, 444 North Capitol St. N.W., Suite 225, Washington, DC 20001.

the particles, and weighed. Subsequently the sample is weighed while submerged in water. Finally the sample is oven-dried and weighed a third time. Using the weights thus obtained and formulas in this test method, it is possible to calculate three types of specific gravity and absorption.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 Bulk specific gravity is the characteristic generally used for calculation of the volume occupied by the aggregate in various mixtures containing aggregate, including portland cement concrete, bituminous concrete, and other mixtures that are proportioned or analyzed on an absolute volume basis. Bulk specific gravity is also used in the computation of voids in aggregate in Test Method C 29. Bulk specific gravity (SSD) is used if the aggregate is wet, that is, if its absorption has been satisfied. Conversely, the bulk specific gravity (oven-dry) is used for computations when the aggregate is dry or assumed to be dry.

5.2 Apparent specific gravity pertains to the relative density of the solid material making up the constituent particles not including the pore space within the particles which is accessible to water.

5.3 Absorption values are used to calculate the change in the weight of an aggregate due to water absorbed in the pore spaces within the constituent particles, compared to the dry condition, when it is deemed that the aggregate has been in contact with water long enough to satisfy most of the absorption potential. The laboratory standard for absorption is that obtained after submerging dry aggregate for approximately 24 h in water. Aggregates mined from below the water table may have a higher absorption, when used, if not allowed to dry. Conversely, some aggregates when used may contain an amount of absorbed moisture less than the 24-h soaked condition. For an aggregate that has been in contact with water and that has free moisture on the particle surfaces, the percentage of free moisture can be determined by deducting the absorption from the total moisture content determined by Test Method C 566.

5.4 The general procedures described in this test method are suitable for determining the absorption of aggregates that have had conditioning other than the 24-h soak, such as boiling water or vacuum saturation. The values obtained for absorption by other test methods will be different than the values obtained by the prescribed 24-h soak, as will the bulk specific gravity (SSD).

5.5 The pores in lightweight aggregates may or may not become essentially filled with water after immersion for 24 h. In fact, many such aggregates can remain immersed in water for several days without satisfying most of the aggregates' absorption potential. Therefore, this test method is not intended for use with lightweight aggregate.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Balance*—A weighing device that is sensitive, readable, and accurate to 0.05 % of the sample weight at any point within the range used for this test, or 0.5 g, whichever is greater. The balance shall be equipped with suitable apparatus for suspending the sample container in water from the center of the weighing platform or pan of the weighing device.

6.2 *Sample Container*—A wire basket of 3.35 mm (No. 6) or finer mesh, or a bucket of approximately equal breadth and height, with a capacity of 4 to 7 L for 37.5-mm (1½-in.) nominal maximum size aggregate or smaller, and a larger container as needed for testing larger maximum size aggregate. The container shall be constructed so as to prevent trapping air when the container is submerged.

6.3 *Water Tank*—A watertight tank into which the sample container may be placed while suspended below the balance.

6.4 *Sieves*—A 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve or other sizes as needed (see 7.2, 7.3, and 7.4), conforming to Specification E 11.

7. Sampling

7.1 Sample the aggregate in accordance with Practice D 75.

7.2 Thoroughly mix the sample of aggregate and reduce it to the approximate quantity needed using the applicable procedures in Methods C 702. Reject all material passing a 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve by dry sieving and thoroughly washing to remove dust or other coatings from the surface. If the coarse aggregate contains a substantial quantity of material finer than the 4.75-mm sieve (such as for Size No. 8 and 9 aggregates in Classification D 448), use the 2.36-mm (No. 8) sieve in place of the 4.75-mm sieve. Alternatively, separate the material finer than the 4.75-mm sieve and test the finer material according to Test Method C 128.

7.3 The minimum weight of test sample to be used is given below. In many instances it may be desirable to test a coarse aggregate in several separate size fractions; and if the sample contains more than 15 % retained on the 37.5-mm (1½-in.) sieve, test the material larger than 37.5 mm in one or more size fractions separately from the smaller size fractions. When an aggregate is tested in separate size fractions, the minimum weight of test sample for each fraction shall be the difference between the weights prescribed for the maximum and minimum sizes of the fraction.

Nominal Maximum Size, mm (in.)	Minimum Weight of Test Sample, kg (lb)
12.5 (½) or less	2 (4.4)
19.0 (¾)	3 (6.6)
25.0 (1)	4 (8.8)
37.5 (1½)	5 (11)
50 (2)	8 (18)
63 (2½)	12 (26)
75 (3)	18 (40)
90 (3½)	25 (55)
100 (4)	40 (88)
112 (4½)	50 (110)
125 (5)	75 (165)
150 (6)	125 (276)

7.4 If the sample is tested in two or more size fractions, determine the grading of the sample in accordance with Test Method C 136, including the sieves used for separating the size fractions for the determinations in this method. In calculating the percentage of material in each size fraction, ignore the quantity of material finer than the 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve (or 2.36-mm (No. 8) sieve when that sieve is used in accordance with 7.2).

8. Procedure

8.1 Dry the test sample to constant weight at a tempera-

000203

ture of 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F), cool in air at room temperature for 1 to 3 h for test samples of 37.5-mm (1½-in.) nominal maximum size, or longer for larger sizes until the aggregate has cooled to a temperature that is comfortable to handle (approximately 50°C). Subsequently immerse the aggregate in water at room temperature for a period of 24 ± 4 h.

NOTE 2—When testing coarse aggregate of large nominal maximum size requiring large test samples, it may be more convenient to perform the test on two or more subsamples, and the values obtained combined for the computations described in Section 9.

8.2 Where the absorption and specific gravity values are to be used in proportioning concrete mixtures in which the aggregates will be in their naturally moist condition, the requirement for initial drying to constant weight may be eliminated, and, if the surfaces of the particles in the sample have been kept continuously wet until test, the 24-h soaking may also be eliminated.

NOTE 3—Values for absorption and bulk specific gravity (SSD) may be significantly higher for aggregate not oven dried before soaking than for the same aggregate treated in accordance with 8.1. This is especially true of particles larger than 75 mm (3 in.) since the water may not be able to penetrate the pores to the center of the particle in the prescribed soaking period.

8.3 Remove the test sample from the water and roll it in a large absorbent cloth until all visible films of water are removed. Wipe the larger particles individually. A moving stream of air may be used to assist in the drying operation. Take care to avoid evaporation of water from aggregate pores during the operation of surface-drying. Weigh the test sample in the saturated surface-dry condition. Record this and all subsequent weights to the nearest 0.5 g or 0.05 % of the sample weight, whichever is greater.

8.4 After weighing, immediately place the saturated-surface-dry test sample in the sample container and determine its weight in water at 23 ± 1.7°C (73.4 ± 3°F), having a density of 997 ± 2 kg/m³. Take care to remove all entrapped air before weighing by shaking the container while immersed.

NOTE 4—The container should be immersed to a depth sufficient to cover it and the test sample during weighing. Wire suspending the container should be of the smallest practical size to minimize any possible effects of a variable immersed length.

8.5 Dry the test sample to constant weight at a temperature of 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F), cool in air at room temperature 1 to 3 h, or until the aggregate has cooled to a temperature that is comfortable to handle (approximately 50°C), and weigh.

9. Calculations

9.1 *Specific Gravity:*

9.1.1 *Bulk Specific Gravity*—Calculate the bulk specific gravity, 23/23°C (73.4/73.4°F), as follows:

$$\text{Bulk sp gr} = A/(B - C)$$

where:

A = weight of oven-dry test sample in air, g,
B = weight of saturated-surface-dry test sample in air, g, and
C = weight of saturated test sample in water, g.

9.1.2 *Bulk Specific Gravity (Saturated-Surface-Dry)*—Calculate the bulk specific gravity, 23/23°C (73.4/73.4°F), on the basis of weight of saturated-surface-dry aggregate as follows:

$$\text{Bulk sp gr (saturated-surface-dry)} = B/(B - C)$$

9.1.3 *Apparent Specific Gravity*—Calculate the apparent specific gravity, 23/23°C (73.4/73.4°F), as follows:

$$\text{Apparent sp gr} = A/(A - C)$$

9.2 *Average Specific Gravity Values*—When the sample is tested in separate size fractions the average value for bulk specific gravity, bulk specific gravity (SSD), or apparent specific gravity can be computed as the weighted average of the values as computed in accordance with 9.1 using the following equation:

$$G = \frac{1}{\frac{P_1}{100\,G_1} + \frac{P_2}{100\,G_2} + \ldots \frac{P_n}{100\,G_n}} \quad \text{(see Appendix X1)}$$

where:

G = average specific gravity. All forms of expression of specific gravity can be averaged in this manner.
$G_1, G_2 \ldots G_n$ = appropriate specific gravity values for each size fraction depending on the type of specific gravity being averaged.
$P_1, P_2, \ldots P_n$ = weight percentages of each size fraction present in the original sample.

NOTE 5—Some users of this test method may wish to express the results in terms of density. Density may be determined by multiplying the bulk specific gravity, bulk specific gravity (SSD), or apparent specific gravity by the weight of water (997.5 kg/m³ or 0.9975 Mg/m³ or 62.27 lb/ft³ at 23°C). Some authorities recommend using the density of water at 4°C (1000 kg/m³ or 1.000 Mg/m³ or 62.43 lb/ft³) as being sufficiently accurate. Results should be expressed to three significant figures. The density terminology corresponding to bulk specific gravity, bulk specific gravity (SSD), and apparent specific gravity has not been standardized.

9.3 *Absorption*—Calculate the percentage of absorption, as follows:

$$\text{Absorption, \%} = [(B - A)/A] \times 100$$

9.4 *Average Absorption Value*—When the sample is tested in separate size fractions, the average absorption value is the average of the values as computed in 9.3, weighted in proportion to the weight percentages of the size fractions in the original sample as follows:

$$A = (P_1A_1/100) + (P_2A_2/100) + \ldots (P_nA_n/100)$$

where:

A = average absorption, %,
$A_1, A_2 \ldots A_n$ = absorption percentages for each size fraction, and
$P_1, P_2, \ldots P_n$ = weight percentages of each size fraction present in the original sample.

10. Report

10.1 Report specific gravity results to the nearest 0.01, and indicate the type of specific gravity, whether bulk, bulk (saturated-surface-dry), or apparent.

10.2 Report the absorption result to the nearest 0.1 %.

000204

10.3 If the specific gravity and absorption values were determined without first drying the aggregate, as permitted in 8.2, it shall be noted in the report.

11. Precision and Bias

11.1 The estimates of precision of this test method listed in Table 1 are based on results from the AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory Reference Sample Program, with testing conducted by this test method and AASHTO Method T 85. The significant difference between the methods is that Test Method C 127 requires a saturation period of 24 ± 4 h, while Method T 85 requires a saturation period of 15 h minimum. This difference has been found to have an insignificant effect on the precision indices. The data are based on the analyses of more than 100 paired test results from 40 to 100 laboratories.

11.1 *Bias*—Since there is no accepted reference material for determining the bias for the procedure in this test method, no statement on bias is being made.

TABLE 1 Precision

	Standard Deviation (1S)[A]	Acceptable Range of Two Results (D2S)[A]
Single-Operator Precision:		
Bulk specific gravity (dry)	0.009	0.025
Bulk specific gravity (SSD)	0.007	0.020
Apparent specific gravity	0.007	0.020
Absorption[B], %	0.088	0.25
Multilaboratory Precision:		
Bulk specific gravity (dry)	0.013	0.038
Bulk specific gravity (SSD)	0.011	0.032
Apparent specific gravity	0.011	0.032
Absorption[B], %	0.145	0.41

[A] These numbers represent, respectively, the (1S) and (D2S) limits as described in Practice C 670. The precision estimates were obtained from the analysis of combined AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory reference sample data from laboratories using 15 h minimum saturation times and other laboratories using 24 ± 4 h saturation times. Testing was performed on normal-weight aggregates, and started with aggregates in the oven-dry condition.

[B] Precision estimates are based on aggregates with absorptions of less than 2 %.

APPENDIXES

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. DEVELOPMENT OF EQUATIONS

X1.1 The derivation of the equation is apparent from the following simplified cases using two solids. Solid 1 has a weight W_1 in grams and a volume V_1 in millilitres; its specific gravity (G_1) is therefore W_1/V_1. Solid 2 has a weight W_2 and volume V_2, and $G_2 = W_2/V_2$. If the two solids are considered together, the specific gravity of the combination is the total weight in grams divided by the total volume in millilitres:

$$G = (W_1 + W_2) / (V_1 + V_2)$$

Manipulation of this equation yields the following:

$$G = \frac{1}{\frac{V_1 + V_2}{W_1 + W_2}} = \frac{1}{\frac{V_1}{V_1 + W_2} + \frac{V_2}{W_1}}$$

$$G = \frac{1}{\frac{W_1}{W_1 + W_2}\left(\frac{V_1}{W_1}\right) + \frac{W_2}{W_1 + W_2}\left(\frac{V_2}{W_2}\right)}$$

However, the weight fractions of the two solids are:

$$W_1/(W_1 + W_2) = P_1/100 \text{ and } W_2/(W_1 + W_2) = P_2/100$$

and,

$$1/G_1 = V_1/W_1 \text{ and } 1/G_2 = V_2/W_2$$

Therefore,

$$G = 1/[(P_1/100)(1/G_1) + (P_2/100)(1/G_2)]$$

An example of the computation is given in Table X1.1.

TABLE X1.1 Example of Calculation of Average Values of Specific Gravity and Absorption for a Coarse Aggregate Tested in Separate Sizes

Size Fraction, mm (in.)	% in Original Sample	Sample Weight Used in Test, g	Bulk Specific Gravity (SSD)	Absorption, %
4.75 to 12.5 (No. 4 to ½)	44	2213.0	2.72	0.4
12.5 to 37.5 (½ to 1½)	35	5462.5	2.56	2.5
37.5 to 63 (1½ to 2½)	21	12593.0	2.54	3.0

Average Specific Gravity (SSD)

$$G_{SSD} = \frac{1}{\frac{0.44}{2.72} + \frac{0.35}{2.56} + \frac{0.21}{2.54}} = 2.62$$

Average Absorption

$$A = (0.44)(0.4) + (0.35)(2.5) + (0.21)(3.0) = 1.7\ \%$$

000205

X2. INTERRELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN SPECIFIC GRAVITIES AND ABSORPTION AS DEFINED IN TEST METHODS C 127 AND C 128

X2.1 Let:

S_d = bulk specific gravity (dry basis),
S_s = bulk specific gravity (SSD basis),
S_a = apparent specific gravity, and
A = absorption in %.

X2.2 Then,

$$S_s = (1 + A/100)S_d \quad (1)$$

$$S_a = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{S_d} - \frac{A}{100}} = \frac{S_d}{1 - \frac{AS_d}{100}} \quad (2)$$

$$S_a = \frac{1}{\frac{1 + A/100}{S_s} - \frac{A}{100}} = \frac{S_s}{1 - \left[\frac{A}{100}(S_s - 1)\right]} \quad (2a)$$

$$A = \left(\frac{S_s}{S_d} - 1\right) 100 \quad (3)$$

$$A = \left(\frac{S_a - S_s}{S_a (S_s - 1)}\right) 100 \quad (4)$$

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000206

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: C 128 – 93

Standard Test Method for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregate[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 128; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of bulk and apparent specific gravity, 23/23°C (73.4/73.4°F), and absorption of fine aggregate.

1.2 This test method determines (after 24 h in water) the bulk specific gravity and the apparent specific gravity as defined in Terminology E 12, the bulk specific gravity on the basis of weight of saturated surface-dry aggregate, and the absorption as defined in Definitions C 125.

NOTE 1—The subcommittee is considering revising Test Methods C 127 and C 128 to use the term "density" instead of "specific gravity" for coarse and fine aggregate, respectively.

1.3 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.4 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 29/C 29M Test Method for Unit Weight and Voids in Aggregate[2,3]

C 70 Test Method for Surface Moisture in Fine Aggregate[2]

C 125 Terminology Relating to Concrete and Concrete Aggregates[2,3]

C 127 Test Method for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate[2,3]

C 188 Test Method for Density of Hydraulic Cement[4]

C 566 Test Method for Total Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying[2]

C 670 Practice for Preparing Precision and Bias Statements for Test Methods for Construction Materials[2,3,4]

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[2]

D 75 Practices for Sampling Aggregates[2,3]

E 12 Terminology Relating to Density and Specific Gravity of Solids, Liquids, and Gases[2,5]

E 380 Practice for Use of the International System of Units (SI) (the Modernized Metric System)[6]

2.2 *AASHTO Standard:*

AASHTO No. T 84 Specific Gravity and Absorption of Fine Aggregates[7]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Bulk specific gravity is the characteristic generally used for calculation of the volume occupied by the aggregate in various mixtures containing aggregate including portland cement concrete, bituminous concrete, and other mixtures that are proportioned or analyzed on an absolute volume basis. Bulk specific gravity is also used in the computation of voids in aggregate in Test Method C 29 and the determination of moisture in aggregate by displacement in water in Test Method C 70. Bulk specific gravity determined on the saturated surface-dry basis is used if the aggregate is wet, that is, if its absorption has been satisfied. Conversely, the bulk specific gravity determined on the oven-dry basis is used for computations when the aggregate is dry or assumed to be dry.

3.2 Apparent specific gravity pertains to the relative density of the solid material making up the constituent particles not including the pore space within the particles that is accessible to water. This value is not widely used in construction aggregate technology.

3.3 Absorption values are used to calculate the change in the weight of an aggregate due to water absorbed in the pore spaces within the constituent particles, compared to the dry condition, when it is deemed that the aggregate has been in contact with water long enough to satisfy most of the absorption potential. The laboratory standard for absorption is that obtained after submerging dry aggregate for approximately 24 h in water. Aggregates mined from below the water table may have a higher absorption when used, if not allowed to dry. Conversely, some aggregates when used may contain an amount of absorbed moisture less than the 24 h-soaked condition. For an aggregate that has been in contact with water and that has free moisture on the particle surfaces, the percentage of free moisture can be determined by deducting the absorption from the total moisture content determined by Test Method C 566 by drying.

---

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.20 on Normal Weight Aggregates.

Current edition approved April 15, 1993. Published June 1993. Originally published as C 128 – 36. Last previous edition C 128 – 88.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.03.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.01.

[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 15.05.

[6] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02. Excerpts in all volumes.

[7] Available from American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, 444 North Capitol St. N.W., Suite 225, Washington, DC 20001.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Balance*—A balance or scale having a capacity of 1 kg or more, sensitive to 0.1 g or less, and accurate within 0.1 % of the test load at any point within the range of use for this test. Within any 100-g range of test load, a difference between readings shall be accurate within 0.1 g.

4.2 *Pycnometer*—A flask or other suitable container into which the fine aggregate test sample can be readily introduced and in which the volume content can be reproduced within ±0.1 cm^3. The volume of the container filled to mark shall be at least 50 % greater than the space required to accommodate the test sample. A volumetric flask of 500 cm^3 capacity or a fruit jar fitted with a pycnometer top is satisfactory for a 500-g test sample of most fine aggregates. A Le Chatelier flask as described in Test Method C 188 is satisfactory for an approximately 55-g test sample.

4.3 *Mold*—A metal mold in the form of a frustum of a cone with dimensions as follows: 40 ± 3 mm inside diameter at the top, 90 ± 3 mm inside diameter at the bottom, and 75 ± 3 mm in height, with the metal having a minimum thickness of 0.8 mm.

4.4 *Tamper*—A metal tamper weighing 340 ± 15 g and having a flat circular tamping face 25 ± 3 mm in diameter.

5. Sampling

5.1 Sampling shall be accomplished in general accordance with Practice D 75.

6. Preparation of Test Specimen

6.1 Obtain approximately 1 kg of the fine aggregate from the sample using the applicable procedures described in Practice C 702.

6.1.1 Dry the test specimen in a suitable pan or vessel to constant weight at a temperature of 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F). Allow it to cool to comfortable handling temperature, cover with water, either by immersion or by the addition of at least 6 % moisture to the fine aggregate, and permit to stand for 24 ± 4 h.

6.1.2 As an alternative to 6.1.1, where the absorption and specific gravity values are to be used in proportioning concrete mixtures with aggregates used in their naturally moist condition, the requirement for initial drying to constant weight may be eliminated and, if the surfaces of the particles have been kept wet, the 24-h soaking may also be eliminated.

NOTE 2—Values for absorption and for specific gravity in the saturated surface-dry condition may be significantly higher for aggregate not oven dried before soaking than for the same aggregate treated in accordance with 6.1.1.

6.2 Decant excess water with care to avoid loss of fines, spread the sample on a flat nonabsorbent surface exposed to a gently moving current of warm air, and stir frequently to secure homogeneous drying. If desired, mechanical aids such as tumbling or stirring may be employed to assist in achieving the saturated surface-dry condition. Continue this operation until the test specimen approaches a free-flowing condition. Follow the procedure in 6.2.1 to determine whether or not surface moisture is present on the constituent fine aggregate particles. It is intended that the first trial of the cone test will be made with some surface water in the specimen. Continue drying with constant stirring and test at frequent intervals until the test indicates that the specimen has reached a surface-dry condition. If the first trial of the surface moisture test indicates that moisture is not present on the surface, it has been dried past the saturated surface-dry condition. In this case thoroughly mix a few millilitres of water with the fine aggregate and permit the specimen to stand in a covered container for 30 min. Then resume the process of drying and testing at frequent intervals for the onset of the surface-dry condition.

6.2.1 *Cone Test for Surface Moisture*—Hold the mold firmly on a smooth nonabsorbent surface with the large diameter down. Place a portion of the partially dried fine aggregate loosely in the mold by filling it to overflowing and heaping additional material above the top of the mold by holding it with the cupped fingers of the hand holding the mold. Lightly tamp the fine aggregate into the mold with 25 light drops of the tamper. Each drop should start about 5 mm (0.2 in.) above the top surface of the fine aggregate. Permit the tamper to fall freely under gravitational attraction on each drop. Adjust the starting height to the new surface elevation after each drop and distribute the drops over the surface. Remove loose sand from the base and lift the mold vertically. If surface moisture is still present, the fine aggregate will retain the molded shape. When the fine aggregate slumps slightly it indicates that it has reached a surface-dry condition. Some angular fine aggregate or material with a high proportion of fines may not slump in the cone test upon reaching a surface-dry condition. This may be the case if fines become airborne upon dropping a handful of the sand from the cone test 100 to 150 mm onto a surface. For these materials the saturated surface-dry condition should be considered as the point that one side of the fine aggregate slumps slightly upon removing the mold.

NOTE 3—The following criteria have also been used on materials that do not readily slump:

(1) *Provisional Cone Test*—Fill the cone mold as described in 6.2.1 except only use 10 drops of the tamper. Add more fine aggregate and use 10 drops of the tamper again. Then add material two more times using 3 and 2 drops of the tamper, respectively. Level off the material even with the top of the mold, remove loose material from the base; and lift the mold vertically.

(2) *Provisional Surface Test*—If airborne fines are noted when the fine aggregate is such that it will not slump when it is at a moisture condition, add more moisture to the sand, and at the onset of the surface-dry condition, with the hand lightly pat approximately 100 g of the material on a flat, dry, clean, dark or dull nonabsorbent surface such as a sheet of rubber, a worn oxidized, galvanized, or steel surface, or a black-painted metal surface. After 1 to 3 s remove the fine aggregate. If noticeable moisture shows on the test surface for more than 1 to 2 s then surface moisture is considered to be present on the fine aggregate.

(3) Colorimetric procedures described by Kandhal and Lee, Highway Research Record No. 307, p. 44.

(4) For reaching the saturated surface-dry condition on a single size material that slumps when wet, hard-finish paper towels can be used to surface dry the material until the point is just reached where the paper towel does not appear to be picking up moisture from the surfaces of the fine aggregate particles.

7. Procedure

7.1 Make and record all weight determinations to 0.1 g.

7.2 Partially fill the pycnometer with water. Immediately introduce into the pycnometer 500 ± 10 g of saturated surface-dry fine aggregate prepared as described in Section 6, and fill with additional water to approximately 90 % of

capacity. Roll, invert, and agitate the pycnometer to eliminate all air bubbles (Note 4). Adjust its temperature to 23 ± 1.7°C (73.4 ± 3°F), if necessary by immersion in circulating water, and bring the water level in the pycnometer to its calibrated capacity. Determine the total weight of the pycnometer, specimen, and water.

NOTE 4—It normally takes about 15 to 20 min to eliminate air bubbles. Dipping the tip of a paper towel into the pycnometer has been found to be useful in dispersing the foam that sometimes builds up when eliminating the air bubbles. Optionally, a small amount of isopropyl alcohol may be used to disperse the foam. Do *not* use either of these procedures when using the alternate method described in 7.2.1.

7.2.1 *Alternative to Weighing in 7.2*—The quantity of added water necessary to fill the pycnometer at the required temperature may be determined volumetrically using a buret accurate to 0.15 mL. Compute the total weight of the pycnometer, specimen, and water as follows:

$$C = 0.9975\ V_a + S + W \quad (1)$$

where:

C = weight of pycnometer with specimen and water to calibration mark, g,
V_a = volume of water added to pycnometer, mL,
S = weight of the saturated surface-dry specimen, and
W = weight of the empty pycnometer, g.

7.2.2 *Alternative to the Procedure in 7.2*—Use a Le Chatelier flask initially filled with water to a point on the stem between the 0 and the 1-mL mark. Record this initial reading with the flask and contents within the temperature range of 23 ± 1.7°C (73.4 ± 3°F). Add 55 ± 5 g of fine aggregate in the saturated surface-dry condition (or other weight as necessary to result in raising the water level to some point on the upper series of gradation). After all fine aggregate has been introduced, place the stopper in the flask and roll the flask in an inclined position, or gently whirl it in a horizontal circle so as to dislodge all entrapped air, continuing until no further bubbles rise to the surface (Note 5). Take a final reading with the flask and contents within 1°C (1.8°F) of the original temperature.

NOTE 5—When using the Le Chatelier flask method, the operator may use a small measured amount (not to exceed 1 mL) of isopropyl alcohol to eliminate foam appearing on the water surface. The volume of alcohol used must be subtracted from the final reading (R_2).

7.3 Remove the fine aggregate from the pycnometer, dry to constant weight at a temperature of 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F), cool in air at room temperature for 1 ± ½ h, and weigh.

7.3.1 If the Le Chatelier flask method is used, a separate sample portion is needed for the determination of absorption. Weigh a separate 500 ± 10-g portion of the saturated surface-dry fine aggregate, dry to constant weight, and reweigh.

7.4 Determine the weight of the pycnometer filled to its calibration capacity with water at 23 ± 1.7°C (73.4 ± 3°F).

7.4.1 *Alternative to Weighing in 7.4*—The quantity of water necessary to fill the empty pycnometer at the required temperature may be determined volumetrically using a buret accurate to 0.15 mL. Calculate the weight of the pycnometer filled with water as follows:

$$B = 0.9975\ V + W \quad (2)$$

where:

B = weight of flask filled with water, g,
V = volume of flask, mL, and
W = weight of the flask empty, g.

8. Bulk Specific Gravity

8.1 Calculate the bulk specific gravity, 23/23°C (73.4/73.4°F), as defined in Terminology E 12, as follows:

$$\text{Bulk sp gr} = A/(B + S - C) \quad (3)$$

where:

A = weight of oven-dry specimen in air, g,
B = weight of pycnometer filled with water, g,
S = weight of the saturated surface-dry specimen, and
C = weight of pycnometer with specimen and water to calibration mark, g.

8.1.1 If the Le Chatelier flask method was used, calculate the bulk specific gravity, 23/23°C, as follows:

$$\text{Bulk sp gr} = \frac{S_1(A/S)}{0.9975\ (R_2 - R_1)} \quad (4)$$

where:

S_1 = weight of saturated surface-dry specimen used in Le Chatelier flask, g,
R_1 = initial reading of water level in Le Chatelier flask, and
R_2 = final reading of water level in Le Chatelier flask.

9. Bulk Specific Gravity (Saturated Surface-Dry Basis)

9.1 Calculate the bulk specific gravity, 23/23°C (73.4/73.4°F), on the basis of weight of saturated surface-dry aggregate as follows:

$$\text{Bulk sp gr (saturated surface-dry basis)} = S/(B + S - C) \quad (5)$$

9.1.1 If the Le Chatelier flask method was used, calculate the bulk specific gravity, 23/23°C, on the basis of saturated surface-dry aggregate as follows:

$$\text{Bulk sp gr (saturated surface-dry basis)} = \frac{S_1}{0.9975\ (R_2 - R_1)} \quad (6)$$

10. Apparent Specific Gravity

10.1 Calculate the apparent specific gravity, 23/23°C (73.4/73.4°F), as defined in Terminology E 12, as follows:

$$\text{Apparent sp gr} = A/(B + A - C) \quad (7)$$

11. Absorption

11.1 Calculate the percentage of absorption, as defined in Terminology C 125, as follows:

$$\text{Absorption, \%} = [(S - A)/A] \times 100 \quad (8)$$

12. Report

12.1 Report specific gravity results to the nearest 0.01 and absorption to the nearest 0.1 %. The Appendix gives mathematical interrelationships among the three types of specific gravities and absorption. These may be useful in checking the consistency of reported data or calculating a value that was not reported by using other reported data.

12.2 If the fine aggregate was tested in a naturally moist condition other than the oven dried and 24 h-soaked condition, report the source of the sample and the procedures used to prevent drying prior to testing.

000210

TABLE 1 Precision

	Standard Deviation (1S)[A]	Acceptable Range of Two Results (D2S)[A]
Single-Operator Precision:		
Bulk specific gravity (dry)	0.011	0.032
Bulk specific gravity (SSD)	0.0095	0.027
Apparent specific gravity	0.0095	0.027
Absorption[B], %	0.11	0.31
Multilaboratory Precision:		
Bulk specific gravity (dry)	0.023	0.066
Bulk specific gravity (SSD)	0.020	0.056
Apparent specific gravity	0.020	0.056
Absorption[B], %	0.23	0.66

[A] These numbers represent, respectively, the (1S) and (D2S) limits as described in Practice C 670. The precision estimates were obtained from the analysis of combined AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory proficiency sample data from laboratories using 15 to 19 h saturation times and other laboratories using 24 ± 4 h saturation time. Testing was performed on normal weight aggregates, and started with aggregates in the oven-dry condition.

[B] Precision estimates are based on aggregates with absorptions of less than 1 % and may differ for manufactured fine aggregates and fine aggregates having absorption values greater than 1 %.

13. Precision and Bias

13.1 *Precision*—The estimates of precision of this test method (listed in Table 1) are based on results from the AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory Proficiency Sample Program, with testing conducted by this test method and AASHTO Method T 84. The significant difference between the methods is that Test Method C 128 requires a saturation period of 24 ± 4 h, and Method T 84 requires a saturation period of 15 to 19 h. This difference has been found to have an insignificant effect on the precision indices. The data are based on the analyses of more than 100 paired test results from 40 to 100 laboratories.

13.2 *Bias*—Since there is no accepted reference material suitable for determining the bias for this test method, no statement on bias is being made.

14. Keywords

14.1 absorption; aggregate; fine aggregate; specific gravity

APPENDIX

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. INTERRELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN SPECIFIC GRAVITIES AND ABSORPTION AS DEFINED IN TEST METHODS C 127 AND C 128

X1.1 Let:
S_d = bulk specific gravity (dry-basis),
S_s = bulk specific gravity (SSD-basis),
S_a = apparent specific gravity, and
A = absorption in %.

Then:

(1) $$S_s = (1 + A/100)S_d$$

(2) $$S_a = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{S_d} - \frac{A}{100}} = \frac{S_d}{1 - \frac{AS_d}{100}}$$

(2a) $$\text{or } S_a = \frac{1}{\frac{1 + A/100}{S_s} - \frac{A}{100}} = \frac{S_s}{1 - \frac{A}{100}(S_s - 1)}$$

(3) $$A = \left(\frac{S_s}{S_d} - 1\right) 100$$

(4) $$A = \left(\frac{S_a - S_s}{S_a(S_s - 1)}\right) 100$$

000211

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

1. Sc

1.1
coars
tance

Nc
(19 m

2. R

2.
C

C

C

C

D
E

3. S

3
mir
con
imp
spe
upc
she
the
the
the
act
Afi
ren
to

Cor
C0S
(
put

000212

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: C 131 – 89

Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 131; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers a procedure for testing sizes of coarse aggregate smaller than 1½ in. (37.5 mm) for resistance to degradation using the Los Angeles testing machine.

NOTE 1—A procedure for testing coarse aggregate larger than ¾ in. (19 mm) is covered in Test Method C 535.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 136 Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[2]

C 535 Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine[2]

C 670 Practice for Preparing Precision and Bias Statements for Test Methods for Construction Materials[2]

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[2]

D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[2]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

3. Summary of Test Method

3.1 The Los Angeles test is a measure of degradation of mineral aggregates of standard gradings resulting from a combination of actions including abrasion or attrition, impact, and grinding in a rotating steel drum containing a specified number of steel spheres, the number depending upon the grading of the test sample. As the drum rotates, a shelf plate picks up the sample and the steel spheres, carrying them around until they are dropped to the opposite side of the drum, creating an impact-crushing effect. The contents then roll within the drum with an abrading and grinding action until the shelf plate impacts and the cycle is repeated. After the prescribed number of revolutions, the contents are removed from the drum and the aggregate portion is sieved to measure the degradation as percent loss.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 The Los Angeles test has been widely used as an indicator of the relative quality or competence of various sources of aggregate having similar mineral compositions. The results do not automatically permit valid comparisons to be made between sources distinctly different in origin, composition, or structure. Specification limits based on this test should be assigned with extreme care in consideration of available aggregate types and their performance history in specific end uses.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Los Angeles Machine*—The Los Angeles testing machine, conforming in all its essential characteristics to the design shown in Fig. 1, shall be used. The machine shall consist of a hollow steel cylinder, closed at both ends, having an inside diameter of 28 ± 0.2 in. (711 ± 5 mm), and an inside length of 20 ± 0.2 in. (508 ± 5 mm). The cylinder shall be mounted on stub shafts attached to the ends of the cylinder but not entering it, and shall be mounted in such a manner that it may be rotated with the axis in a horizontal position within a tolerance in slope of 1 in 100. An opening in the cylinder shall be provided for the introduction of the test sample. A suitable, dust-tight cover shall be provided for the opening with means for bolting the cover in place. The cover shall be so designed as to maintain the cylindrical contour of the interior surface unless the shelf is so located that the charge will not fall on the cover, or come in contact with it during the test. A removable steel shelf extending the full length of the cylinder and projecting inward 3.5 ± 0.1 in. (89 ± 2 mm) shall be mounted on the interior cylindrical surface of the cylinder, in such a way that a plane centered between the large faces coincides with an axial plane. The shelf shall be of such thickness and so mounted, by bolts or other suitable means, as to be firm and rigid. The position of the shelf shall be such that the distance from the shelf to the opening, measured along the outside circumference of the cylinder in the direction of rotation, shall be not less than 50 in. (1.27 m).

NOTE 2—The use of a shelf of wear-resistant steel, rectangular in cross section and mounted independently of the cover, is preferred. However, a shelf consisting of a section of rolled angle, properly mounted on the inside of the cover plate, may be used provided the direction of rotation is such that the charge will be caught on the outside face of the angle. If the shelf becomes distorted from its original shape to such an extent that the requirements given in X1.2 of the Appendix to this method are not met, the shelf shall either be repaired or replaced before additional tests are made.

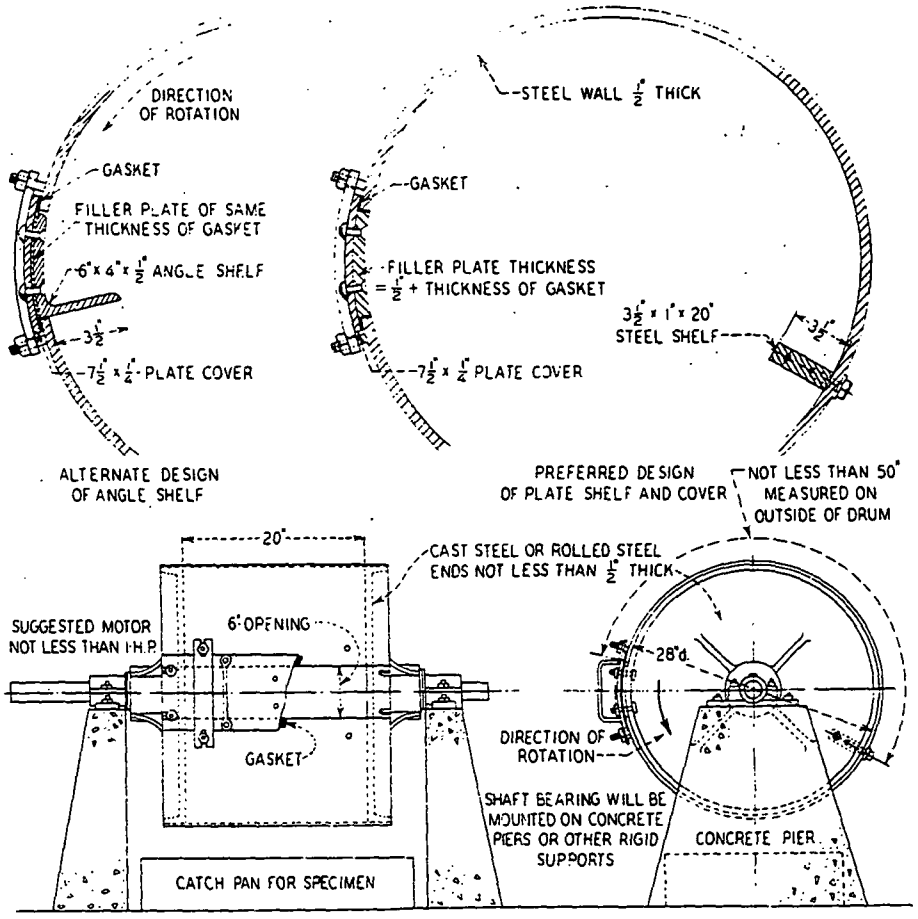
[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.20 on Normal Weight Aggregates.

Current edition approved June 15, 1989. Published June 1989. Originally published as C 131 – 37 T. Last previous edition C 131 – 81(1987).

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 04.02 and 04.03.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

000214



Metric Equivalents

in.	1/4	1/2	1	3 1/2	4	6	7 1/2	20	28	50
mm	6.4	12.7	25.4	89	102	152	190	508	711	1270

FIG. 1 Los Angeles Testing Machine

5.1.1 The machine shall be so driven and so counterbalanced as to maintain a substantially uniform peripheral speed (Note 3). If an angle is used as the shelf, the direction of rotation shall be such that the charge is caught on the outside surface of the angle.

NOTE 3—Back-lash or slip in the driving mechanism is very likely to furnish test results which are not duplicated by other Los Angeles machines producing constant peripheral speed.

5.2 *Sieves*, conforming to Specification E 11.

5.3 *Balance*—A balance or scale accurate within 0.1 % of test load over the range required for this test.

5.4 *Charge*—The charge shall consist of steel spheres averaging approximately 1 27/32 in. (46.8 mm) in diameter and each weighing between 390 and 445 g.

5.4.1 The charge, depending upon the grading of the test sample as described in Section 7, shall be as follows:

Grading	Number of Spheres	Weight of Charge, g
A	12	5000 ± 25
B	11	4584 ± 25
C	8	3330 ± 20
D	6	2500 ± 15

NOTE 4—Steel ball bearings 1 13/16 in. (46.0 mm) and 1 7/8 in. (47.6 mm) in diameter, weighing approximately 400 and 440 g each, respectively, are readily available. Steel spheres 1 27/32 in. (46.8 mm) in diameter weighing approximately 420 g may also be obtainable. The charge may consist of a mixture of these sizes conforming to the weight tolerances of 5.4 and 5.4.1.

6. Sampling

6.1 The field sample shall be obtained in accordance with Practice D 75 and reduced to test portion size in accordance with Methods C 702.

7. Test Sample

7.1 The test sample shall be washed and oven-dried at 221 to 230°F (105 to 110°C) to substantially constant weight (Note 5), separated into individual size fractions, and recombined to the grading of Table 1 most nearly corresponding to the range of sizes in the aggregate as furnished for the work. The weight of the sample prior to test shall be recorded to the nearest 1 g.

8. Procedure

8.1 Place the test sample and the charge in the Angeles testing machine and rotate the machine at a spe 30 to 33 rpm for 500 revolutions. After the prescri number of revolutions, discharge the material from the

000215

TABLE 1 Gradings of Test Samples

Sieve Size (Square Openings)		Weight of Indicated Sizes, g			
Passing	Retained on	Grading			
		A	B	C	D
37.5 mm (1½ in.)	25.0 mm (1 in.)	1 250 ± 25	...	...	...
25.0 mm (1 in.)	19.0 mm (¾ in.)	1 250 ± 25	...	...	...
19.0 mm (¾ in.)	12.5 mm (½ in.)	1 250 ± 10	2 500 ± 10	...	...
12.5 mm (½ in.)	9.5 mm (⅜ in.)	1 250 ± 10	2 500 ± 10	...	...
9.5 mm (⅜ in.)	6.3 mm (¼ in.)	...	...	2 500 ± 10	...
6.3 mm (¼ in.)	4.75-mm (No. 4)	...	...	2 500 ± 10	...
4.75-mm (No. 4)	2.36-mm (No. 8)	...	...	...	5 000 ± 10
Total		5 000 ± 10	5 000 ± 10	5 000 ± 10	5 000 ± 10

machine and make a preliminary separation of the sample on a sieve coarser than the 1.70-mm (No. 12). Sieve the finer portion on a 1.70-mm sieve in a manner conforming to Test Method C 136. Wash the material coarser than the 1.70-mm sieve (Note 5), oven-dry at 221 to 230°F (105 to 110°C) to substantially constant weight, and weigh to the nearest 1 g (Note 6).

NOTE 5—If the aggregate is essentially free of adherent coatings and dust, the requirement for washing before and after test may be waived. Elimination of washing after test will seldom reduce the measured loss by more than about 0.2 % of the original sample weight.

NOTE 6—Valuable information concerning the uniformity of the sample under test may be obtained by determining the loss after 100 revolutions. This loss should be determined without washing the material coarser than the 1.70-mm sieve. The ratio of the loss after 100 revolutions to the loss after 500 revolutions should not greatly exceed 0.20 for material of uniform hardness. When this determination is made, take care to avoid losing any part of the sample; return the entire sample, including the dust of fracture, to the testing machine for the final 400 revolutions required to complete the test.

9. Calculation

9.1 Express the loss (difference between the original weight and the final weight of the test sample) as a percentage of the original weight of the test sample. Report this value as the percent loss.

NOTE 7—The percent loss determined by this method has no known consistent relationship to the percent loss for the same material when tested by Test Method C 535.

10. Precision

10.1 For nominal 19.0-mm (¾-in.) maximum size coarse aggregate with percent losses in the range of 10 to 45 %, the multilaboratory coefficient of variation has been found to be 4.5 %.[4] Therefore, results of two properly conducted tests from two different laboratories on samples of the same coarse aggregates should not differ from each other by more than 12.7 %[4] of their average. The single-operator coefficient of variation has been found to be 2.0 %.[4] Therefore, results of two properly conducted tests by the same operator on the same coarse aggregate should not differ from each other by more than 5.7 % of their average.[4]

10.2 *Bias*—Since there is no accepted reference material suitable for determining the bias for this procedure, no statement on bias is being made.

[4] These numbers represent, respectively, the (1S%) and (D2S%) limits as described in Practice C 670.

000216

APPENDIX

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. MAINTENANCE OF SHELF

X1.1 The shelf of the Los Angeles machine is subject to severe surface wear and impact. With use, the working surface of the shelf is peened by the balls and tends to develop a ridge of metal parallel to and about 1¼ in. (32 mm) from the junction of the shelf and the inner surface of the cylinder. If the shelf is made from a section of rolled angle, not only may this ridge develop but the shelf itself may be bent longitudinally or transversely from its proper position.

X1.2 The shelf should be inspected periodically to determine that it is not bent either lengthwise or from its normal radial position with respect to the cylinder. If either condition is found, the shelf should be repaired or replaced before further tests are made. The influence on the test result of the ridge developed by peening of the working face of the shelf is not known. However, for uniform test conditions, it is recommended that the ridge be ground off if its height exceeds 0.1 in. (2 mm).

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000217

Designation: C 227 – 90

Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar-Bar Method)[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 227; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This method has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the susceptibility of cement-aggregate combinations to expansive reactions involving hydroxyl ions associated with the alkalies (sodium and potassium) by measurement of the increase (or decrease) in length of mortar bars containing the combination during storage under prescribed conditions of test.

1.2 Alkalies participating in the expansive reactions usually are derived from the cement; under some circumstances they may be derived from other constituents of the concrete or from external sources. Two types of alkali reactivity of aggregates are recognized: *(1)* an alkali-silica reaction involving certain siliceous rocks, minerals, and natural or artificial glasses and *(2)* an alkali-carbonate reaction involving dolomite in certain calcitic dolomites and dolomitic limestones. The method is not recommended as a means to detect the latter reaction because expansions produced in the mortar-bar test by the alkali-carbonate reaction (see Test Method C 586) are generally much less than those produced by the alkali-silica reaction for combinations having equally harmful effects in service.

1.3 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 33 Specification for Concrete Aggregates[2]

C 109 Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or 50-mm Cube Specimens)[3]

C 289 Test Method for Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)[2]

C 305 Practice for Mechanical Mixing of Hydraulic Cement Pastes and Mortars of Plastic Consistency[3]

C 490 Practice for Use of Apparatus for the Determination of Length Change of Hardened Cement Paste, Mortar, and Concrete[2,3]

C 511 Specification for Moist Cabinets, Moist Rooms, and Water Storage Tanks Used in Testing of Hydraulic Cements and Concretes[2,3]

C 586 Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)[2]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[2,3]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Data correlating the results of tests performed using this test method with performance of cement-aggregate combinations in concrete in service, results of petrographic examination of aggregates, and results of tests for potential reactivity of aggregates by chemical methods have been published in Test Method C 289 and should be consulted in connection with the use of results of tests performed using this test method as the basis for conclusions and recommendations concerning the use of cement-aggregate combinations in concrete.

3.2 The results of tests performed using this method furnish information on the likelihood that a cement-aggregate combination is potentially capable of harmful alkali-silica reactivity with consequent deleterious expansion of concrete. Criteria to determine potential deleterious alkali-silica reactivity of cement-aggregate combinations from the results of this test method have been given in the Appendix of Specification C 33.

3.3 Insignificant expansion may result when potentially deleteriously reactive siliceous rocks are present in comparatively high proportion even when a high-alkali cement is used, probably because the alkali-silica reaction products are characterized by an alkali to silica ratio that is so low as to minimize uptake of water and swelling. Dolomitic aggregates that are deleteriously affected by the alkali-carbonate reaction when employed as course aggregate in concrete may not produce notable expansion in this test method. Also, significant expansion may occur rarely in the test for reasons other than alkali-aggregate reaction, particularly the presence of sulfates in the aggregate that produce a sulfate attack upon the cement paste, ferrous sulfides (pyrite, marcasite, or pyrrhotite) that oxidize and hydrate with the release of sulfate, and materials such as free lime (CaO) or free magnesia (MgO) in the cement or aggregate that progressively hydrate and carbonate.

3.4 When expansions in excess of those given in the Appendix of Specification C 33 are shown in results of tests

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.26 on Chemical Reactions of Materials.

Current edition approved June 21, 1990. Published August 1990. Originally published as C 227 – 50 T. Last previous edition C 227 – 87.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.01.

000218

performed using this test method, it is strongly recommended that supplementary information be developed to confirm that the expansion is actually due to alkali reactivity. Sources of such supplementary information include: *(1)* petrographic examination of the aggregate to determine if known reactive constituents are present; *(2)* examination of the specimens after tests to identify the products of alkali reactivity; and *(3)* tests of the aggregate for potential reactivity by chemical methods (Test Method C 289).

3.5 When it has been concluded from the results of tests performed using this test method and supplementary information as outlined that a given cement-aggregate combination should be considered potentially deleteriously reactive, additional studies may be appropriate to develop information on the potential reactivity of other combinations containing the same cement with other aggregates, the same aggregate with other cements, or the same cement-aggregate combination with a mineral admixture.

4. Apparatus

4.1 The apparatus shall conform to Specification C 490, except as follows:

4.2 *Sieves*—Square hole, woven-wire cloth sieves, shall conform to Specification E 11.

4.3 *Mixer, Paddle, and Mixing Bowl*—Mixer, paddle, and mixing bowl shall conform to the requirements of Method C 305, except that the clearance between the lower end of the paddle and the bottom of the bowl shall be 0.20 ± 0.01 in. (5.1 ± 0.3 mm).

4.4 *Tamper and Trowel*—The tamper and trowel shall conform to Test Method C 109.

4.5 *Containers*—Covered containers for storing the test specimens shall be constructed of material that is resistant to corrosion under the test conditions. The wall thickness of the container and cover shall be less than 6 mm (3/16 in.) to reduce the insulating effect and provide a rapid heat transfer for the initial 14-day test period. The cover shall be constructed in a manner to maintain a tight seal between the cover and top of the container wall (Note 1). The container shall be arranged to provide every surface of each specimen with approximately an equal exposure to an absorbent wicking material. The specimens shall not be in direct contact with the wicking material but every surface shall be within 30 mm (1¼ in.) or less of the the wicking. A typical arrangement of such a container is shown in Fig. 1 (Note 2). The inner sides and the center core of the containers are to be lined with an absorbent material, such as blotting paper or filter paper, to act as a wick and to ensure that the atmosphere in the container is quickly saturated with water vapor when it is sealed after the specimens are placed therein (Note 2). The wicking liners will extend into the top of the water in the bottom of the container and above the tops of the specimens. Provisions are made to support the bars in a vertical position with the lower end of the bars approximately 25 mm (1 in.) above the surface of the water in the containers. The weight of the specimens shall not be supported on the metal gage studs. A supporting rack shall be provided to ensure that the specimens do not touch the wicking material or each other. The supporting rack shall be constructed of brass wire or other material that is resistant to corrosion under the test conditions and shall not act as a vapor barrier but provide free movement of vapors within the container. Provisions shall be made to prevent water from splashing and dripping onto the specimens (Note 3). If required to prevent the growth of mold on the wicking, a suitable fungicide may be added to the water in the container. The container size and internal arrangement of the specimens and wicking may be varied at the users discretion, providing expansion data for all specimens can be shown to be equivalent to that developed with the container herein described.

NOTE 1—This seal may be achieved by a double wrap of vinyl tape 38 mm (1½ in.) or greater in width, overlaying the lid and container wall along its full circumference.

NOTE 2—A covered container that has been found acceptable for this purpose is sold by the United States Plastic Corp., 1390 Neubrecht Rd., Lima, OH 45801, as a PVC plating, photo, and chemical tank, stock No. 10062, 6-in. diameter x 17 in. high, with cover.

NOTE 3—The shape and spacing of the center wicking material may be maintained during the test by the use of rubber bands or hardware cloth.

NOTE 4—If concern exists for adequately preventing dripping or splashing, the water should be tested for pH and alkali content.

NOTE 5—The container described in 4.5 and in Fig. 1 has been shown to produce large and reproducible expansions with cement-aggregate combinations such as borosilicate glass: high-alkali cement combination called for by ASTM C 441. However, recent work, at a few laboratories, suggests that the same factors that are responsible for the success with the C 441 mixtures, that is, high, constant, uniform internal relative humidity, will, under certain testing regimes, permitted by this test method, promote leaching of alkali from the specimens and result in little or no expansion from some known deleteriously alkali-reactive aggregate: high-alkali cement combinations. Each laboratory should evaluate its containers with a known deleteriously alkali-reactive aggregate (not borosilicate glass which releases alkali) and a high-alkali cement, to establish that the expected level of expansion is obtained. If not, try removing the wicking to reduce the condensation and leaching. Minimizing the temperature variation within the storage room and the room in which the bars are read may also reduce condensation on and leaching from the bars.

5. Temperature and Humidity

5.1 The temperature of the molding room and dry materials shall be maintained at not less than 68°F (20°C) and not more than 81.5°F (27.5°C). The temperature of the mixing water, of the moist closet or moist room, and of the room in which the measurements are made shall not vary from 73.4°F (23°C) by more than 3°F (1.7°C).

5.2 The relative humidity of the molding room shall be not less than 50 %. The moist closet or room shall conform to Specification C 511.

5.3 The storage room in which the specimens in containers are stored shall be maintained at a temperature that shall not vary from 100°F (37.8°C) by more than 3°F (1.7°C).

6. Selection and Preparation of Materials

6.1 *Selection of Aggregate*—Materials proposed for use as fine aggregate in concrete shall be processed as described in 6.2 with a minimum of crushing. Materials proposed for use as coarse aggregate in concrete shall be processed by crushing to produce as nearly as practical a graded product from which a sample can be obtained. The sample shall have the grading as prescribed in 6.2 and be representative of the composition of the coarse aggregate as proposed for use.

6.1.1 When a given quarried material is proposed for use, both as coarse and as fine aggregate, it will be tested only by

000219

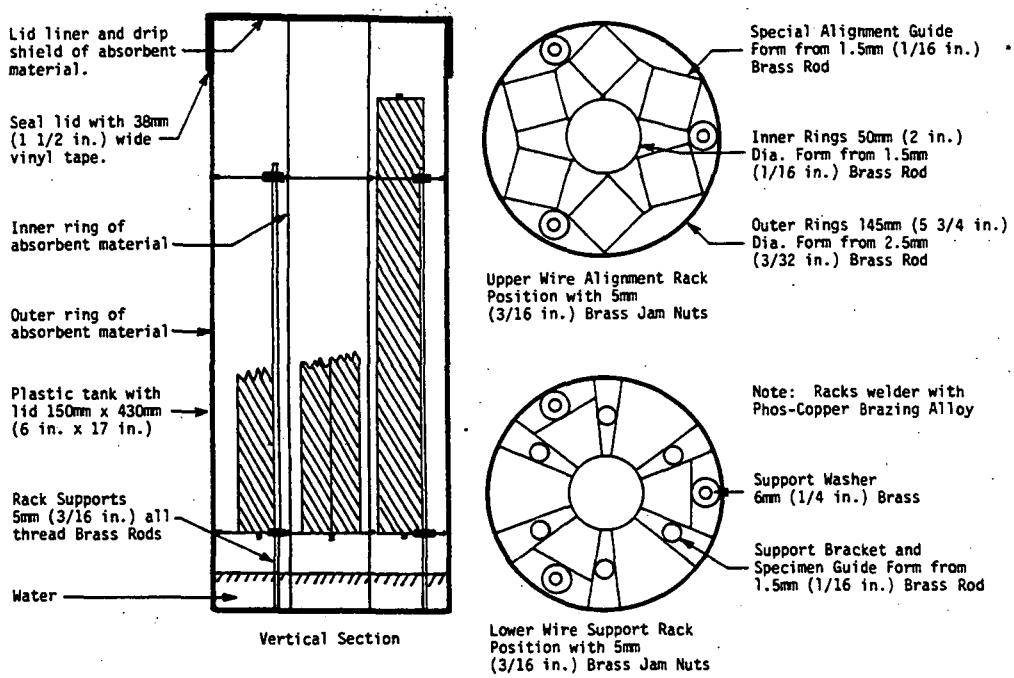


FIG. 1 Diagram of an Acceptable Assembled Container

selection of an appropriate sample crushed to the fine aggregate sizes, unless there is reason to expect that the coarser size fractions have a different composition than the finer sizes and that these differences might significantly affect expansion due to reaction with the alkalies in cement. In this case the coarser size fractions should be tested in a manner similar to that employed in testing the fine aggregate sizes.

6.1.2 Coarse aggregate crushed to sand size may give increased expansion, owing to the increased surface exposed upon crushing. Therefore, if coarse aggregate tested by this method produces an excessive amount of expansion, the material shall not be classed as objectionably reactive with alkali unless tests of concrete specimens confirm the findings of the tests of the mortar.

6.2 *Preparation of Aggregate*—Fine aggregate shall be tested in a grading meeting the requirements of the specifications for the project except that any material retained on the 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve shall be removed. Fine aggregates being tested for reasons other than to determine compliance with individual specifications, and all coarse aggregates to which this method is applied shall be graded in accordance with the requirements prescribed in Table 1. Aggregates in which sufficient quantities of the sizes specified in Table 1 do not exist shall be crushed until the required material has been produced. In the case of aggregates containing insufficient amounts of one or more of the larger sizes listed in Table 1, and if no larger material is available for crushing, the first size in which sufficient material is available shall contain the cumulative percentage of material down to that size as determined from the grading specified in Table 1. When such procedures are required, special note shall be made thereof in the test report. After the aggregate has been separated into the various sieve sizes, each size shall be washed with a water spray over the sieve to remove adhering dust and fine particles from the aggregate. The portions

TABLE 1 Grading Requirements

Sieve Size		Weight %
Passing	Retained on	
4.75-mm (No. 4)	2.36-mm (No. 8)	10
2.36-mm (No. 8)	1.18-mm (No. 16)	25
1.18-mm (No. 16)	600-μm (No. 30)	25
600-μm (No. 30)	300-μm (No. 50)	25
300-μm (No. 50)	150-μm (No. 100)	15

retained on the various sieves shall then be dried and, unless used immediately, each such portion shall be stored individually in a clean container provided with a tight-fitting cover.

6.3 *Selection and Preparation of Cement:*

6.3.1 *Job Cement*—When it is desired to evaluate a particular cement-aggregate combination for use in particular work, the cement or cements used shall meet the requirements for the work and shall be from the source or sources expected to be used in the work. If several cements may be used in the work, tests desirably should be made using each of these; in any case, the cement or cements whose alkali content exceeds 0.60 %, calculated as Na_2O, should be used.

6.3.2 *Reference Cements*—When it is desired to evaluate aggregates for general use or to compare aggregates for investigational purposes, the cement used shall be of the highest alkali content representative of the general use intended, or available to the laboratory making the tests. The cement or cements selected should comply with applicable specifications. Additional information of value may be obtained by conducting tests in parallel with cements of different alkali content, different Na_2O:K_2O ratio, or using pozzolans.

6.3.3 *Preparation of Cement*—Cement for use in this test

000220

shall be passed through a 850-μm (No. 20) sieve to remove lump before use.

7. Procedure

7.1 *Preparation of Test Specimens*:

7.1.1 *Number of Specimens*—Make at least four test specimens, two from each of two batches, for each cement-aggregate combinations.

7.1.2 *Preparation of Molds*—Prepare the molds in accordance with the requirements of Specification C 490.

7.1.3 *Proportioning of Mortar*—Proportion the dry materials for the test mortar using 1 part of cement to 2.25 parts of graded aggregate by weight. The quantities of dry materials to be mixed at one time in the batch of mortar for making two specimens shall be 300 g of cement and 675 g of aggregate made up by recombining the portions retained on the various sieves (see 6.2) in the grading prescribed in Table 1 or of aggregate in a grading meeting the requirements of the specifications for the project. Use an amount of mixing water such as to produce a flow of 105 to 120 (as determined in accordance with Test Method C 109) except that the flow table shall be given ten ½-in. (13-mm) drops in approximately 6 s instead of twenty-five ½-in. drops in 15 s. The amount of mixing water used shall be expressed as a weight percent of the cement.

7.1.4 *Mixing of Mortar*— Mix the mortar in accordance with the requirements of Method C 305.

7.1.5 *Molding of Test Specimens*— Immediately following completion of the flow test return the mortar from the flow table to the mixing bowl. Mix the entire batch for a period of 15 s. Start molding specimens with a total elapsed time of not more than 2 min and 15 s after completion of the original mixing of the mortar batch. Fill the molds with two approximately equal layers, each layer being compacted with the tamper. Work the mortar into the corners, around the gage studs, and along the surfaces of the mold with the tamper until a homogeneous specimen is obtained. After the top layer has been compacted, cut off the mortar flush with the top of the mold and smooth the surface with a few strokes of the trowel.

7.1.5.1 When a duplicate batch of mortar is to be made immediately for additional specimens, the flow test may be omitted and the mortar allowed to stand in the mixing bowl for 90 s and then remixed for 15 s before starting the molding of the specimens.

7.1.6 *Sequence of Making Batches of Mortar*—When more than one cement-aggregate combination is to be tested as part of a single investigation, make the total number of batches of mortar (two per cement-aggregate combination) in random order, except that in no case shall the two batches representing a single cement-aggregate combination be made consecutively. When the making of all of the specimens for a single investigation requires that batches be made on 2 working days, each cement-aggregate combination shall be represented by one batch made on each day, and the order in which the combinations are represented by batches shall be different on the 2 days. When more than 2 days are required, one cement-aggregate combination shall be represented by a batch made on each of the working days.

7.2. *Storage and Measurement of Test Specimens*:

7.2.1 *Initial Storage and Measurement*—After each mold has been filled, place the mold immediately in the moist cabinet or room. The specimens shall remain in the molds for 24 ± 2 h. Then remove them from the molds and, while being protected from loss of moisture, properly identify and measure for initial length. The initial and all subsequent measurements shall be made and recorded to the nearest 0.0001 in. (0.002 mm).

7.2.2 *Subsequent Storage and Measurement*—Stand the specimens on end over, but not in contact with, water in the storage container. Seal and place the container for 12 days in a cabinet or room maintained at a temperature of 100 ± 3°F (37.8 ± 1.7°C). When the specimens are 14 days old measure their length after removal of the container and contents from the storage room or cabinet, and after the container and contents have been stored at 73.4 ± 3°F (23 ± 1.7°C) for at least 16 h before opening the container and making the 14-day measurement. Additional measurements shall be made at later ages as required.

7.2.3 Additional information of value may often be obtained by returning the specimens to the 100°F (37.8°C) storage after the 14-day test and making additional measurements at later ages. Measurements at ages of 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, and 12 months and, if necessary, at least every 6 months thereafter are suggested.

7.2.4 After each length measurement specimens may be examined, in the same manner described in Section 10, to provide supplemental information on their condition.

7.2.5 All specimens placed in a given container after the initial length measurement at 24 ± 2 h shall have been made on the same day and shall be placed in the container at the same time so that all specimens in a given container shall be due for measurement at the same time. Each time length measurements are made, clean the container and change the water.

7.2.6 Always place the specimens in the comparator with the same end uppermost and after measurement replace the specimens in the container in inverted position as compared with the previous period.

8. Calculation

8.1 Calculate the difference between the initial length of the specimen and the length at each period of measurement to the nearest 0.001 % of the effective gage length and record as the expansion of the specimen for that period. Report the average of the expansion of the four specimens of a given cement-aggregate combination to the nearest 0.01 % as the expansion for the combination for a given period.

9. Examination at End of Test

9.1 After the final length change measurements have been made, each specimen shall be tested for warping and shall be examined.

9.1.1 *Warping*—The warping, if any, that each specimen has manifested during the test period, shall be determined by placing the specimen on a plane surface and measuring the maximum separation between the specimen and the surface. The specimen shall be placed so that its ends curve down to the reference surface and the measurement made to the nearest 0.01 in. (0.3 mm).

9.1.2 *Examination*—Items to be noted in the examination include:

000221

9.1.2.1 Presence, location, and type of pattern of cracking,
9.1.2.2 Appearance of surfaces, surface mottling, and
9.1.2.3 Surficial deposits or exudations, their nature, thickness and continuity.

9.1.2.4 When it is believed that additional features of noteworthy importance are likely to be revealed thereby, a further examination of the interior of the specimen may be made, preferably by a petrographer. In such cases, the presence of gel-filled pores and fissures, evidence of reaction with aggregate particles of specific types and the nature of such evidence and the properties of the reaction products are among the items to be noted.

10. Report

10.1 Report the following information:

10.1.1 Type and source of aggregate,

10.1.2 Type and source of portland cement,

10.1.3 Alkali content of cement as percent potassium oxide (K_2O), sodium oxide (Na_2O), and calculated sodium oxide (Na_2O) equivalent,

10.1.4 Average length change in percent at each reading of the specimens,

10.1.5 Any relevant information concerning the preparation of aggregates, including the grading of the aggregate when it differs from that given in 6.2,

10.1.6 Any significant features revealed by examination of the specimens during and after test,

10.1.7 Amount of mixing water expressed as weight percent to cement, and

10.1.8 Type, source, proportions, and chemical analyses, including Na_2O and K_2O, of any pozzolans employed in the tests.

11. Precision and Bias

11.1 Precision shall be considered satisfactory if the differences in the value for percentage expansion of any given specimen in a group from the average value for percentage expansion of the group does not exceed 0.003, except that, if the average expansion exceeds 0.020 %, the repeatability shall be considered satisfactory if the percentage expansion of each specimen molded from the same cement-aggregate combination is within 15 % of the average.

11.2 Interlaboratory test data for the determination of revisions to this section in accordance with Practice C 670 are being evaluated by Subcommittee C09.02.02 and will be included in a later revision of this test method.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000222

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Test Method for Potential Reactivity of Aggregates (Chemical Method)[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 289; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This method has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense and for listing in the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers chemical determination of the potential reactivity of an aggregate with alkalies in portland cement concrete as indicated by the amount of reaction during 24 h at 80°C between 1 *N* sodium hydroxide solution and aggregate that has been crushed and sieved to pass a 300-μm (No. 50) sieve and be retained on a 150-μm (No. 100) sieve.

1.2 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.* A specific precautionary statement is given in 5.7.1.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 109 Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or 50-mm Cube Specimens)[2]

C 114 Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of Hydraulic Cement[2]

C 227 Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Cement-Aggregate Combinations (Mortar-Bar Method)[3]

C 295 Guide for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete[3]

D 1248 Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials[4]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[2,3]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 This test method may be used in combination with other methods to evaluate the potential reactivity of siliceous aggregate with alkalies in portland cement concrete. Reactions between a sodium hydroxide solution and siliceous aggregate have been shown to correlate with the performance of the aggregate in concrete structures and should be used where new aggregate sources are being evaluated or alkali-silica reactivity is anticipated.

3.2 The results from this test method can be obtained quickly, and, while not completely reliable in all cases, they provide useful data that may show the need for obtaining additional information through Test Methods C 227 and C 295.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Scales*—The scales and weights used for weighing materials shall conform to the requirements prescribed in Test Method C 109.

4.2 *Balances*—The analytical balance and weights used for determining dissolved silica by the gravimetric method shall conform to the requirements prescribed in Methods C 114.

4.3 *Crushing and Grinding Equipment*—A small jaw crusher and disk pulverizer or other suitable equipment capable of crushing and grinding approximately 4 kg of aggregate to pass a 300-μm (No. 50) sieve.

4.4 *Sieves*—300-μm (No. 50) and 150-μm (No. 100) square-hold, woven wire cloth sieves conforming to Specification E 11.

4.5 *Containers*—Reaction containers of 50 to 75-mL capacity, made of stainless steel or other corrosion-resistant material, and fitted with airtight covers. A container that has been found suitable is shown in Fig. 1. Other containers, made of nonreactive material such as polyethylene, may be suitable. Such suitability can be demonstrated by a change in the alkalinity of the sodium hydroxide solution (R_c, Section 14) when used alone as a blank in the container in question, of less than 10 mmol/L.

4.6 *Constant-Temperature Bath*—A liquid bath capable of maintaining a temperature of 80 ± 1°C for 24 h.

4.7 *Spectrophotometer or Photometer*—A spectrophotometer or photoelectric photometer capable of measuring the transmission of light at a constant wavelength of approximately 410 nm.[5]

5. Reagents

5.1 *Purity of Reagents*—Reagent grade chemicals shall be used in all tests. Unless otherwise indicated, it is intended that all reagents shall conform to the specifications of the Committee on Analytical Reagents of the American Chem-

---

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.26 on Chemical Reactions of Materials.

Current edition approved March 27, 1987. Published May 1987. Originally published as C 289 – 52. Last previous edition C 289 – 86.

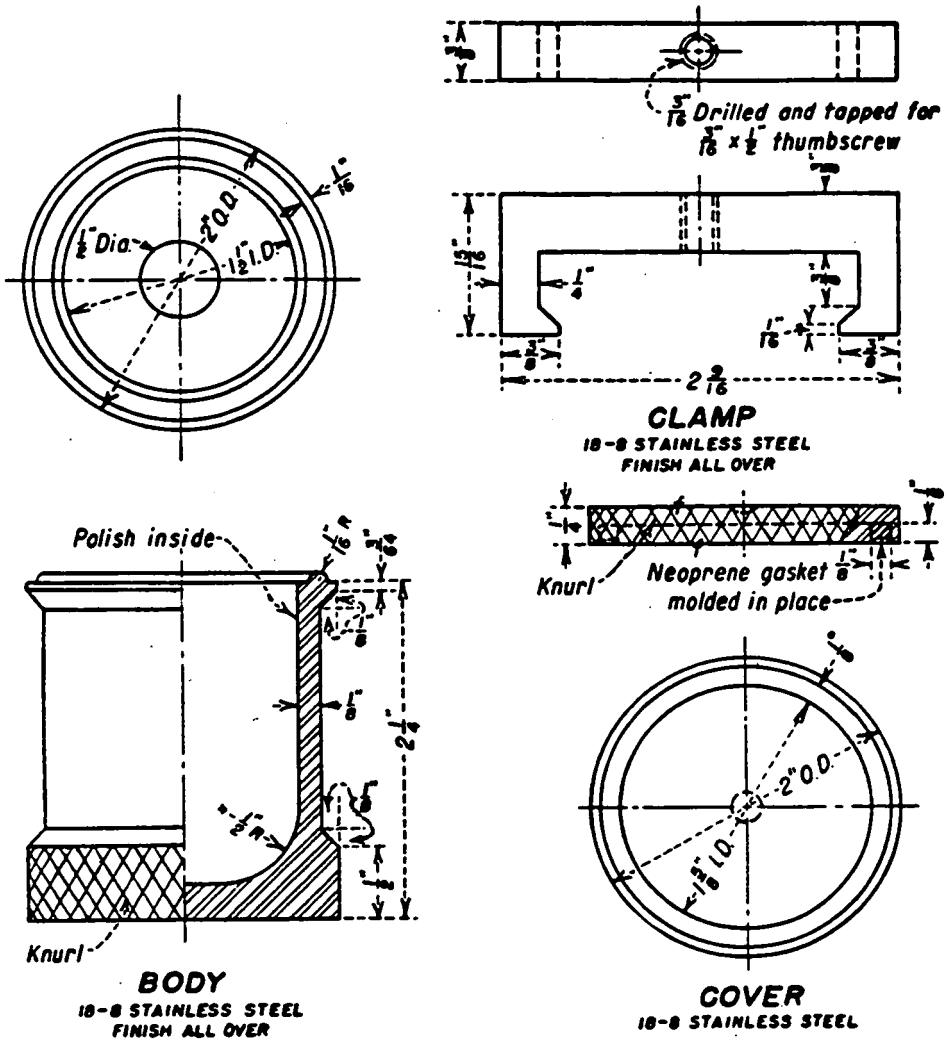
[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.01.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 08.01.

[5] For information on photometers and photometric practice, reference may be made to ASTM Practice E 60, for Photometric Methods for Chemical Analysis of Metals, *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 03.05.

000224



U.S. Customary Units, in.	Metric Equivalents, mm	U.S. Customary Units, in.	Metric Equivalents, mm
3/64	1.2	1/2	12.7
1/16	1.6	15/16	23.8
1/8	3.2	1 1/2	38.1
3/16	4.8	2	50.8
1/4	6.4	2 1/4	57.2
3/8	9.5	2 9/16	65.1

FIG. 1 Reaction Container

000225

ical Society, where such specifications are available.[6] Other grades may be used, provided it is first ascertained that the reagent is of sufficiently high purity to permit its use without lessening the accuracy of the determination.

5.2 *Purity of Water*—Unless otherwise indicated, references to water shall be understood to mean distilled water or other water of equal purity.

5.3 *Ammonium Molybdate Solution*—Dissolve 10 g of ammonium molybdate ($(NH_4)_6\ Mo_7O_{24}\cdot 4H_2O$) in 100 mL of water. If the solution is not clear, filter through a fine-texture paper. Store the solution in a polyethylene container.

NOTE 1—In selecting the container, take care to ensure that the reagent will not be modified by reaction with the material composing the container, including pigments or other additives, or by transpiration of phases through the walls of the container. Containers with wall thickness not less than 0.020 in. (0.51 mm) and composed of high-density polyethylene meeting the requirements of Specification D 1248, for materials of Type III, Class A, are suitable.

5.4 *Hydrochloric Acid* (sp gr 1.19)—Concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl). Store the solution in a chemically resistant glass or suitable plastic container (Note 1).

5.5 *Hydrochloric Acid, Standard* (0.05 *N*)—Prepare approximately 0.05 *N* HCl and standardize to ±0.0001 *N*. Store the solution in a chemically resistant glass or suitable plastic container (Note 1).

5.6 *Hydrochloric Acid* (1 + 1)—Mix equal volumes of concentrated HCl (sp gr 1.19) and water. Store the solution in a chemically resistant glass or suitable plastic container (Note 1).

5.7 *Hydrofluoric Acid* (approximately 50 % HF)—Concentrated hydrofluoric acid. Store in a polyethylene bottle.

5.7.1 **Precaution**—Before using HF review (*1*) the safety precautions for using HF, (*2*) first aid for burns, and (*3*) the emergency response to spills, as described in the manufacturer's Material Safety Data Sheet or other reliable safety literature. HF can cause very severe burns and injury to unprotected skin and eyes. Suitable personal protective equipment should always be used. These should include full-face shields, rubber aprons, and gloves impervious to HF. Gloves should be checked periodically for pin holes.

5.8 *Oxalic Acid Solution*—Dissolve 10 g of oxalic acid dihydrate in 100 mL of water. Store the solution in a chemically resistant glass or suitable plastic container (Note 1).

5.9 *Phenolphthalein Indicator Solution*—Dissolve 1 g of phenolphthalein in 100 mL of ethanol (1 + 1). Store the solution in a chemically resistant glass or suitable plastic container (Note 1).

5.10 *Silica Standard Solution*—Prepare a standard silica solution containing approximately 10 mmol of silica (SiO_2)/L by dissolving sodium meta-silicate in water. Store the solution in a polyethylene bottle. Use a 100-mL aliquot of the solution to determine its SiO_2 content by the procedure described in 9.1.1 to 9.2.1. Do not use a standard silica solution older than 1 year, since dissolved ionic silica in such a solution slowly polymerizes, causing spuriously low photometric readings.

5.11 *Sodium Hydroxide, Standard Solution* (1.000 ± 0.010 *N*)—Prepare a 1.000 ± 0.010 *N* sodium hydroxide (NaOH) solution and standardize to ±0.001 *N*.

5.11.1 Store the solution in a polyethylene bottle (Note 1). Protect the dry reagent and solution from contamination by carbon dioxide.

5.12 *Sulfuric Acid* (sp gr 1.84)—Concentrated sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4). Store the solution in a chemically resistant glass container.

6. Glassware

6.1 All glass apparatus and vessels should be carefully selected to meet the particular requirements for each operation. Standard volumetric flasks, burets, and pipets should be of precision grade.

7. Selection and Preparation of Test Samples

7.1 The test can be used for either fine or coarse aggregate, and when the fine and coarse aggregate are of the same material it can be used for the total aggregate.

7.2 The test sample shall be prepared from a representative portion of the aggregate by crushing so as to pass a 300-μm (No. 50) sieve, according to the following procedure (Note 2): Reduce the coarse aggregate to pass a 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve by means of a small jaw crusher. Sieve the crushed coarse aggregate and likewise the sand to recover the 150-μm (No. 50 to No. 100) particles. Discard the material passing the 150-μm sieve. Reduce the material retained on the 300-μm sieve by repeated passes through a disk-type pulverizer, with sieving after each pass. The separation of the plates shall be about ⅛ in. (3 mm) for the first pass and shall be progressively diminished until all the material passes the 300-μm sieve. Every effort shall be made to reduce as much as possible the proportion of fines passing the No. 100 sieve.

NOTE 2—It is recommended that each size fraction of coarse aggregate be separately processed according to 7.2, and that the 300-μm (No. 50) to 150-μm (No. 100) material obtained from each size fraction be combined in the proportions in which those fractions are to be used in the concrete. It is recommended that, wherever possible, the sand be screened and the several size fractions recombined in the proportions to be used in the concrete, prior to processing according to 7.2.

7.3 To ensure that all material finer than the 150-μm (No. 100) sieve has been removed, wash the sample over a 150-μm sieve. Do not wash more than 100 g over an 203-mm (8-in.) sieve at one time. Dry the washed sample at 105 ± 5°C for 20 ± 4 h. Cool the sample and again sieve on the 150-μm sieve. If inspection of the sample indicates the presence of silty or clayey coatings on particles, repeat the washing and drying procedure, and sieve as before over the 150-μm sieve. Reserve the portion retained on the 150-μm sieve for the test sample.

8. Reaction Procedure

8.1 Weigh out three representative 25.00 ± 0.05-g portions of the dry 300-μm (No. 50) to 150-μm (No. 100) test sample prepared in accordance with Section 7. Place one portion in each of the three of the reaction containers, and add by means of a pipet, 25 mL of the 1.000 *N* NaOH

[6] "Reagent Chemicals, American Chemical Society Specifications," Am. Chemical Soc., Washington, DC. For suggestions on the testing of reagents not listed by the American Chemical Society, see "Reagent Chemicals and Standards," by Joseph Rosin, D. Van Nostrand Co., Inc., New York, NY, and the "United States Pharmacopeia."

000226

solution. To a fourth reaction container, by means of a pipet, add 25 mL of the same NaOH solution to serve as a blank. Seal the four containers and gently swirl them to liberate trapped air.

8.2 Immediately after the containers have been sealed, place them in a liquid bath maintained at 80 ± 1.0°C. After 24 ± ¼ h, remove the containers from the bath and cool them, for 15 ± 2 min, under running tap water having a temperature below 30°C.

8.3 Immediately after the containers have been cooled, open them and filter the solution from the aggregate residue. Use a porcelain Gooch crucible[7] with a disk of rapid, analytical grade filter paper cut to fit the bottom of the crucible, setting the crucible in a rubber crucible holder in a funnel. Place a dry test tube, 35 to 50-mL capacity, in the filter flask to collect the filtrate, and seat the funnel in the neck of the filter flask. With the aspirator in operation or the vacuum line open, decant a small quantity of the solution onto the filter paper so it will seat properly in the crucible. Without stirring the contents of the container, decant the remaining free liquid into the crucible. When the decantation of the liquid has been completed, discontinue the vacuum and transfer the solids remaining in the container to the crucible and pack in place with the aid of a stainless steel spatula. Then apply and adjust the vacuum to approximately 15 in. Hg (51 kPa). Continue the filtration until further filtration yields filtrate at the approximate rate of 1 drop every 10 s; reserve the filtrate for further tests. Record the total amount of time during which the vacuum is applied as the filtration time; make every effort to achieve an equal filtration time for all samples in a set, by uniformity of procedure in the assembly of the filtration apparatus and the packing of the solids in the crucible.

8.4 Filter the blank according to the procedure described in 8.3. Apply the vacuum for a length of time equal to the average filtration time for the three specimens.

8.5 Immediately following the completion of filtration, stir the filtrate to assure homogeneity, then take by pipet an aliquot of 10 mL of the filtrate and dilute with water to 200 mL in a volumetric flask. Reserve this diluted solution for the determination of the dissolved SiO_2 and the reduction in alkalinity.

8.6 If the diluted filtrate is not to be analyzed within 4 h following completion of the filtration, transfer the solution to a clean, dry polyethylene container and close the container by means of a stopper or tight-fitting cap or lid.

9. Dissolved Silica by the Gravimetric Method

9.1 *Procedure*:

9.1.1 Transfer by pipet 100 mL of the dilute solution (8.5) to an evaporating dish, preferably of platinum for the sake of celerity in evaporation, add 5 to 10 mL of HCl (sp gr 1.19), and evaporate to dryness on a steam bath. Without heating the residue further, treat it with 5 to 10 mL of HCl (sp gr 1.19) and then an equal amount of water, or at once pour 10 to 20 mL of HCl (1 + 1) upon the residue. Cover the dish and digest for 10 min on the steam bath or a hot plate. Dilute the solution with an equal volume of hot water, filter immediately through quantitative grade, low-ash filter paper, and wash the separated silica (SiO_2) thoroughly with hot water (Note 3) and reserve the residue.

NOTE 3—The washing of the SiO_2 precipitates can be made more effective by using hot HCl (1 + 99) and then completing the washing with hot water.

9.1.2 Again evaporate the filtrate to dryness, baking the residue in an oven for 1 h at 105 to 110°C. Take up the residue with 10 to 15 mL of HCl (1 + 1) and heat on the bath or hot plate. Dilute the solution with an equal volume of hot water and catch and wash the small amount of SiO_2 it contains on another filter paper. This second evaporation is necessary only when determining the concentration of the standard sodium metasilicate solution in 5.10. For the other test solutions, it can be eliminated.

9.1.3 Transfer the papers containing the residue (9.1.1 and 9.1.2) to a platinum crucible (Note 4). Dry and ignite the papers, first at a low heat until the carbon of the filter paper is completely consumed without inflaming, and finally at 1100 to 1200°C until the weight remains constant.

NOTE 4—The empty crucible may be weighed if one wishes to know, for his own information, the magnitude of impurities in the residue of SiO_2.

9.1.4 Treat the SiO_2 thus obtained, which will contain small amounts of impurities, in the crucible with a few drops of water, about 10 mL of HF, and one drop of H_2SO_4, and evaporate cautiously to dryness on the steam bath. Finally, heat the small residue at 1050 to 1100°C for 1 to 2 min, cool and weigh. The difference between this weight and the weight previously obtained represents the amount of SiO_2.

9.2 *Calculation*:

9.2.1 Calculate the SiO_2 concentration of the NaOH solution filtered from the aggregate material, as follows:

$$S_c = 3330 \times W$$

where:

S_c = concentration of SiO_2 in millimoles per litre in the original filtrate, and

W = grams of SiO_2 found in 100 mL of the dilute solution.

10. Dissolved Silica by the Photometric Method

10.1 *Application*:

10.1.1 This method is applicable to the determination of crystalloidal (noncolloidal) silica in all aqueous solutions except those with excessive color interferences (tannin, etc.), but it will not determine total silica. The method is particularly applicable to rapid control analysis of crystalloidal silica below 10 ppm.

NOTE 5—Crystalloidal (noncolloidal) silica reacts with molybdate ion in acid solution (optimum pH 1.2 to 1.5) to form a greenish yellow silico-molybdate color complex the intensity of which is approximately proportional to the silica concentration of the solution, but does not follow Beer's law perfectly.

11. Preparation of Calibration Curve

11.1 Prepare a series of solutions of known silica concentration varying from 0.0 to 0.5 mmol/L by diluting portions of the stock solution of sodium silicate (5.10). Transfer the portions of sodium silicate solution to 100-mL volumetric

[7] Coors Size No. 4 Gooch crucibles, or equivalent, have been found satisfactory for this purpose.

000227

flasks about half filled with water.

11.2 Add 2 mL of the ammonium molybdate solution and 1 mL of HCl (1+1), and agitate by swirling the flask. Allow the solution to stand for 15 min at room temperature. Add 1.5 ± 0.2 mL of the oxalic acid solution, fill the flask to the mark with water, and mix thoroughly. Allow the solution to stand for 5.0 ± 0.1 min. Read the transmittance of the various solutions on the photometer at 410 nm, in comparison with that of water.

11.3 Prepare a calibration curve by plotting the percent transmittance or absorbance readings against the known concentrations of silica in each solution.

12. Determination of Dissolved Silica

12.1 Transfer by pipet a 10-mL aliquot of the dilute solution (7.5) to a 100-mL volumetric flask half filled with water and proceed as directed in 11.2 and 11.3. Read the concentration of silica in the solution directly from the previously prepared calibration curve correlating transmission of light of this wave length with silica concentration. If the transmittance is below 30 % or above 50 %, a smaller or larger aliquot of the diluted solution shall be used.

13. Calculation

13.1 Calculate the SiO_2 concentration of the NaOH solution filtered from the aggregate material, as follows:

$$S_c = 20 \times (100/V) \times C$$

where:

S_c = concentration of SiO_2, millimoles per litre in the original filtrate,
C = concentration of silica in the solution measured in the photometer, millimoles per litre, and
V = millilitres of dilute solution used from 8.5.

14. Reduction in Alkalinity

14.1 *Procedure*:

14.1.1 Transfer by pipet a 20-mL aliquot of the dilute solution (8.5) to a 125-mL Erlenmeyer flask, add 2 or 3 drops of phenolphthalein solution, and titrate with 0.05 N HCl to the phenolphthalein end point.

14.2 *Calculation*:

14.2.1 Calculate the reduction in alkalinity as follows:

$$R_c = (20N/V_1)(V_3 - V_2) \times 1000$$

where:

R_c = the reduction in alkalinity, mmol/L,
N = normality of the HCl used for the titration,
V_1 = millilitres of dilute solution used from 8.5,
V_2 = millilitres of HCl used to attain the phenolphthalein end point in the test sample, and
V_3 = millilitres of HCl used to attain the phenolphthalein end point in the blank.

14.3 *Repeatability*:

14.3.1 The test results shall be considered satisfactory if none of the three values of R_c (and of S_c) differs from the average of the three by more than the following amounts: (*1*) when the average is 100 mmol or less, 12 mmol/L, and (*2*) when the average is more than 100 mmol/L, 12 %.

14.4 *Interpretation of Results*:

14.4.1 Correlations between data obtained by this method, expansion of mortar bars containing high alkali cement, petrographic examinations of aggregates, and performance of aggregates in concrete structures have been published (**1–7**).[8] On the basis of these data, the solid curve shown in Fig. 2 has been established. A potentially deleterious degree of alkali reactivity is indicated if any of the three R_c, S_c points lie on the deleterious side of the curve in Fig. 2. However, potentially deleterious aggregates represented by points lying above the dashed line in Fig. 2 may give relatively low expansions in mortar or concrete even though they are extremely reactive with alkalies. These aggregates should be considered to indicate a potentially deleterious degree of reactivity until the innocuous character of the aggregate is demonstrated by service records or by supplementary tests in accordance with Test Method C 227, using several mixtures of the test aggregate and an essentially inert aggregate such as properly graded quartz or chert-free limestone. The mixtures should represent a series of proportions of the test aggregate and essentially inert aggregate ranging from about 5:95 to 50:50 by weight.

14.4.2 Results of the test may not be correct for aggregates containing carbonates of calcium, magnesium or ferrous iron, such as calcite, dolomite, magnesite or siderite; or silicates of magnesium such as antigorite (serpentine) (**6, 7**). The error introduced by calcium carbonate is not significant unless S_c and R_c values indicate the potential reactivity is marginal. Examinations of the aggregate in accordance with Practice C 295, can be used to determine the presence of minerals of this type. In order to evaluate these possible effects, testing in accordance with Method C 227 is recommended.

14.4.3 It is recommended that interpretations based upon this method be correlated with Practice C 295 and service records of the aggregate.

15. Precision and Bias

15.1 Information concerning the precision and bias of this test method is being investigated and will be published when the proper data have been obtained and analyzed as prescribed in Practice C 670.

[8] The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to the references appearing at the end of this test method.

000228

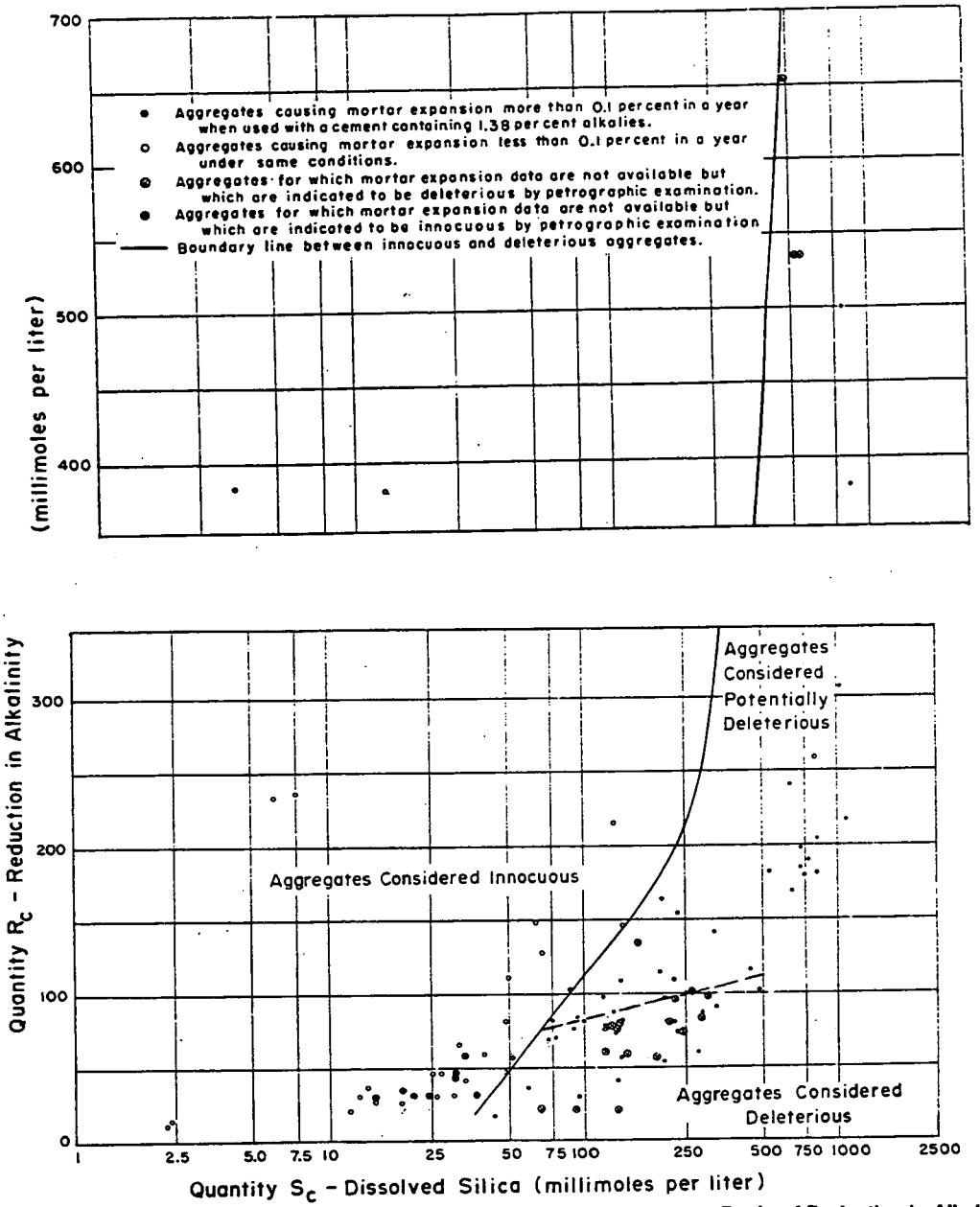


FIG. 2 Illustration of Division Between Innocuous and Deleterious Aggregates on Basis of Reduction in Alkalinity Test

000229

REFERENCES

(1) Mielenz, R. C., and Witt, L. P., "Tests Used by the Bureau of Reclamation for Identifying Reactive Concrete Aggregates," *Proceedings*, ASTM, ASTEA, Vol 48, 1948, p. 1071 and discussion, p. 1105.

(2) Mielenz, R. C., Greene, K. T., and Benton, E. J., "Chemical Test for Reactivity of Aggregates with Cement Alkalies: Chemical Processes in Cement-Aggregate Reaction," *Proceedings*, Am. Concrete Inst., Vol 44, 1948, p. 193.

(3) Lerch, Wm., "Studies of Some Methods of Avoiding Expansion and Pattern Cracking Associated with the Alkali-Aggregate Reaction," *Symposium on Use of Pozzolanic Materials in Mortars and Concretes*, ASTM STP 99, ASTM, 1950, p. 153.

(4) Slate, F. O., "Chemical Reactions of Indiana Aggregates in Disintegration of Concrete," *Proceedings*, ASTM, Vol 49, 1949, p. 954.

(5) Lerch, Wm., "Chemical Reactions of Concrete Aggregates," *ASTM STP 169*, ASTM, 1956, p. 334.

(6) Mielenz, R. C., and Benton, E. J., "Evaluation of the Quick Chemical Test for Alkali Reactivity of Concrete Aggregate," *Bulletin 171*, Highway Research Board, 1958, p. 1.

(7) Chaiken, Bernard, and Halstead, W. J., "Correlation Between Chemical and Mortar Bar Tests for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Concrete Aggregates," *Public Roads*, Vol 30, 1959, p. 177.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000230

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Guide for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 295; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This guide[2] outlines procedures for the petrographic examination of samples representative of materials proposed for use as aggregates in concrete.

1.2 This guide outlines the extent to which petrographic techniques should be used, the selection of properties that should be looked for, and the manner in which such techniques may be employed in the examination of samples of aggregates for concrete.

1.3 This guide does not attempt to describe the techniques of petrographic work since it is assumed that the guide will be used by persons who are qualified by education and experience to employ such techniques for the recognition of the characteristic properties of rocks and minerals and to describe and classify the constituents of an aggregate sample.

1.4 The rock and mineral names given in Descriptive Nomenclature C 294 should be used insofar as they are appropriate in reports prepared according to this guide.

1.5 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

1.6 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 33 Specification for Concrete Aggregates[3]

C 117 Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing[3]

C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[3]

C 294 Descriptive Nomenclature of Constituents of Natural Mineral Aggregates[3]

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[3]

D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[3]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

E 883 Guide for Metallographic Photomicrography[4]

3. Summary of Method

3.1 The specific procedures employed in the petrographic examination of any sample will depend to a large extent on the purpose of the examination and the nature of the sample. In most cases the examination will require the use of optical microscopy. Complete petrographic examinations for particular purposes and to investigate particular problems may require examination of aggregates or of selected constituents by means of additional procedures, such as X-ray diffraction analysis, differential thermal analysis, infrared spectroscopy, or others; in some instances, such procedures are more rapid and more definitive than are microscopical methods.

3.2 Identification of the constituents of a sample is usually a necessary step towards recognition of the properties that may be expected to influence the behavior of the material in its intended use, but identification is not an end in itself. The value of any petrographic examination will depend to a large extent on the representativeness of the samples examined, the completeness and accuracy of the information provided to the petrographer concerning the source and proposed use of the material, and the petrographer's ability to correlate these data with the findings of the examination.

3.3 It is assumed that the examination will be made by persons qualified by education and experience to operate the equipment used and to record and interpret the results obtained. In some cases, the petrographer will have had experience adequate to provide detailed interpretation of the materials' performance with respect to engineering and other consequences of the observations. In others, the interpretation will be made in part by engineers, scientists, or others qualified to relate the observations to the questions to be answered.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 Petrographic examinations are made for the following purposes:

4.1.1 To determine the physical and chemical characteristics of the material that may be observed by petrographic methods and that have a bearing on the performance of the material in its intended use.

4.1.2 To describe and classify the constituents of the sample,

4.1.3 To determine the relative amounts of the constituents of the sample, which are essential for proper evaluation

---

[1] This guide is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.65 on Petrography of Concrete and Aggregates.

Current edition approved Oct. 26, 1990. Published December 1990. Originally published as C 295 – 54. Last previous edition C 295 – 85.

[2] This guide is based on the "Method of Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete," by Katharine Mather and Bryant Mather, *Proceedings*, ASTM, ASTEA, Vol 50, 1950, pp. 1288–1312.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 03.01.

000232

of the sample, when the constituents differ significantly in properties that have a bearing on the performance of the material in its intended use, and

4.1.4 To compare samples of aggregate from new sources with samples of aggregate from one or more sources, for which test data or performance records are available.

4.2 This guide may be used by a petrographer employed directly by those for whom the examination is made. The employer should tell the petrographer, in as much detail as necessary, the purposes and objectives of the examination, the kind of information needed, and the extent of examination desired. Pertinent background information, including results of prior testing, should be made available. The petrographer's advice and judgment should be sought regarding the extent of the examination.

4.3 This guide may form the basis for establishing arrangements between a purchaser of consulting petrographic service and the petrographer. In such a case, the purchaser and the consultant should together determine the kind, extent, and objectives of the examination and analyses to be made, and should record their agreement in writing. The agreement may stipulate specific determinations to be made, observations to be reported, funds to be obligated, or a combination of these or other conditions.

4.4 Petrographic examination of aggregate considered for use in hydraulic cement concrete is one aspect of the evaluation of aggregate, but petrographic examination is also used for many other purposes. Petrographic examinations provide identification of types and varieties of rocks present in potential aggregates. However, as noted above, identification of every rock and mineral present in an aggregate source is not required.

4.5 The petrographic examination should establish whether the aggregate contains chemically unstable minerals such as soluble sulfates, unstable sulfides that may form sulfuric acid or create distress in concrete exposed to high temperatures during service, or volumetrically unstable materials such as smectites (also known as the montmorillonite-saponite group of minerals or swelling clays). Specifications may limit the quartz content of aggregates for use in concrete that may be subject to high temperature (purposefully or accidentally) because of the conversion to beta-quartz at 573°C (1063°F), with accompanying volume increase.

4.6 Petrographic examination should identify the portion of each coarse aggregate that is composed of weathered or otherwise altered particles and the extent of that weathering or alteration, whether it is severe, moderate, or slight, and should determine the proportion of each rock type in each condition. If the concrete in which the aggregate may be used will be exposed to freezing and thawing in a critically saturated condition, finely porous and highly weathered or otherwise altered rocks should be discriminated because they will be especially susceptible to damage by freezing and thawing and will cause the aggregate portion of the concrete to fail in freezing and thawing. This will ultimately destroy the concrete because such aggregates cannot be protected by adequately air-entrained sound mortar. Finely porous aggregates near the concrete surface are also likely to form popouts, which are blemishes on pavements and walls.

4.7 Petrographic examinations may also be used to determine the proportions of cubic, spherical, ellipsoidal, pyramidal, tabular, flat, and elongated particles in an aggregate sample or samples. Flat, elongated, and thin chip particles in aggregate increase the mixing water require and decrease concrete strength.

4.8 Petrographic examination should identify and call attention to potentially alkali-silica reactive and alkali-carbonate reactive constituents, determine such constituents quantitatively, and recommend additional tests to confirm or refute the presence in significant amounts of aggregate constituents capable of alkali reaction in concrete. This guide is referred to in the Appendix of Specification C 33. Alkali-silica reactive constituents found in aggregates include: opal, cristobalite, tridymite, siliceous and some intermediate volcanic glass, chert, glassy to cryptocrystalline acid volcanic rocks, synthetic siliceous glasses, some argillites, phyllites, metamorphic graywackes, rocks containing highly metamorphic quartz such as graywackes, phyllites, schists, gneisses, gneissic granites, vein quartz, quartzite, and sandstone. Criteria are available in the mineralogic literature for identifying the minerals in the list above by optical properties or X-ray diffraction, or both, and in petrographic and petrologic literature for identifying the rocks in the list by mineral composition and texture in thin section, sometimes assisted by X-ray diffraction for mineral composition. Potentially deleterious alkali-carbonate reactive rocks are usually calcareous dolomites or dolomitic limestones with clayey insoluble residues. Some dolomites essentially free of clay and some very fine-grained limestones free of clay and with minor insoluble residue, mostly quartz, are also capable of some alkali-carbonate reactions, however, such reactions have not yet been found deleterious.

4.9 Petrographic examination may be directed specifically at the possible presence of contaminants in aggregates, such as synthetic glass, cinders, clinker, or coal ash, magnesium oxide, calcium oxide, or both, soil, hydrocarbons, chemicals that may affect the setting behavior of concrete or the properties of the aggregate, animal excrement, plants or rotten vegetation, and any other contaminant that may prove undesirable in concrete.

4.10 These objectives for which this guide was prepared will have been attained if those involved with the evaluation of aggregate materials for use in concrete construction have reasonable assurance that the petrographic examination results wherever and whenever obtained, as corrected, may confidently be compared.

5. Apparatus and Supplies

5.1 The apparatus and supplies listed below comprise a selection that will permit the use of all of the procedures described in this guide. All specific items listed have been used, in connection with the performance of petrographic examinations, by the procedures described herein; it is not, however, intended to imply that other items cannot be substituted to serve similar functions. Whenever possible the selection of particular apparatus and supplies should be left to the judgment of the petrographer who is to perform the work so that the items obtained will be those with the use of which he has the greatest experience and familiarity. The minimum equipment regarded as essential to the making of petrographic examinations of aggregate samples are those items, or equivalent apparatus or supplies that will serve the

same purpose, that are indicated by asterisks in the lists given below.

5.1.1 *Apparatus and Supplies for Preparation of Specimens*:

5.1.1.1 *Rock-Cutting Saw*,* preferably with 350-mm or larger diamond blade, and automatic feed.

5.1.1.2 *Horizontal Grinding Wheel*,* preferably 400 mm in diameter.

5.1.1.3 *Polishing Wheel*, preferably 200 to 300 mm in diameter.

5.1.1.4 *Abrasives*[5]—*Silicon carbide grit No. 100 (122 μm), 220 (63 μm), 320 (31 μm), 600 (16 μm), and 800 (12 μm); alumina M-305 (5 μm).

5.1.1.5 *Geologist's Pick or Hammer.*

5.1.1.6 *Microscope Slides*,* clear, noncorrosive, 25 by 45 mm in size.

5.1.1.7 *Canada Balsam*,* neutral, in xylene, or suitable low-viscosity epoxies, or Lakeside 70.

5.1.1.8 *Xylene.**

5.1.1.9 *Mounting Medium*,* suitable for mounting rock slices for thin sections.

5.1.1.10 *Laboratory Oven.**

5.1.1.11 *Plate-Glass Squares*,* about 300 mm on an edge for thin-section grinding.

5.1.1.12 *Sample Splitter* with pans.*

5.1.1.13 *Micro Cover Glasses*,* noncorrosive, square, 12 to 18 mm, 25 mm, etc.

5.1.1.14 *Plattner Mortar.*

5.1.2 *Apparatus and Supplies for Examination of Specimens*:

5.1.2.1 *Polarizing Microscope*,* with mechanical stage; low-, medium-, high-power objectives, and objective-centering devices; eyepieces of various powers; full- and quarter-wave compensators; quartz wedge.

5.1.2.2 *Microscope Lamps** (preferably including a sodium arc lamp).

5.1.2.3 *Stereoscopic Microscope*,* with objectives and oculars to give final magnifications from about 6× to about 150×.

5.1.2.4 *Magnet*,* preferably Alnico, or an electromagnet.

5.1.2.5 *Needleholder and Points.**

5.1.2.6 *Dropping Bottle*, 60-mL capacity.

5.1.2.7 *Petri Culture Dishes.*

5.1.2.8 *Forceps*, smooth, straightpointed.

5.1.2.9 *Lens Paper.**

5.1.2.10 *Immersion Media*,* $n = 1.410$ to $n = 1.785$ in steps of 0.005.

5.1.2.11 *Counter.*

5.1.2.12 *Photomicrographic Camera* and accessories.

5.2 The items under Apparatus and Supplies include those used to make thin sections. Semiautomatic thin section machines are now available, and there are several thin-section makers who advertise in *Geotimes*, the *American Mineralogist*, and other mineralogical or geological journals. Laboratories may find it reasonable to buy a thin-section machine or use a commercial thin-section maker. Remotely located laboratories have more need to be able to make their own thin sections.

5.3 It is necessary that facilities be available to the petrographer to check the index of refraction of the immersion media. If accurate identification of materials is to be attempted, as for example the differentiation of quartz and chalcedony, or the differentiation of basic from intermediate volcanic glass, the indices of refraction of the media need to be known with accuracy. Media will not be stable for very long periods of time and are subject to considerable variation due to temperature change. In laboratories not provided with close temperature control, it is often necessary to recalibrate immersion media several times during the course of a single day when accurate identifications are required. The equipment needed for checking immersion media consists of an Abbé refractometer. The refractometer should be equipped with compensating prisms to read indices for sodium light from white light, or it should be used with a sodium arc lamp.

5.4 A laboratory that undertakes any considerable amount of petrographic work should be provided with facilities to make photomicrographic records of such features as cannot adequately be described in words. Photomicrographs can be taken using standard microscope lamps for illumination; however, it is recommended that whenever possible a zirconium arc lamp be provided for this purpose. For illustrations of typical apparatus, reference may be made to the paper by Mather and Mather,[2] and manufacturers of microscopes equipped with cameras and photomacrographic equipment may be consulted. Much useful guidance regarding photomicrography, especially using reflected light, is found in Guide E 883.

6. Sampling

6.1 Samples for petrographic examination should be taken by or under the direct supervision of a geologist familiar with the requirements for random sampling of aggregates for concrete and in general following the requirements of Practice D 75. The exact location from which the sample was taken, the geology of the site, and other pertinent data should be submitted with the sample. The amount of material actually studied in the petrographic examination will be determined by the nature of the examination to be made and the nature of the material to be examined, as discussed below.

6.1.1 *Undeveloped quarries* should be sampled by means of cores drilled through the entire depth expected to be exploited. Drilling of such cores should be in a direction that is essentially perpendicular to the dominant structural feature of the rock. Massive material may be sampled by "NX" (53-mm (2⅛-in.) diameter) cores. Thinly bedded or complex material should be represented by cores not less than 100 mm (4 in.) in diameter. There should be an adequate number of cores to cover the limits of the deposit proposed for the project. The entire footage of the recovered core should be included in the sample and accurate data given as to elevations, depths, and core losses.

6.1.2 *Operating quarries and operating sand and gravel deposits*, in which stock piles of the material produced are available, should be represented by not less than 45 kg (100 lb) or 300 pieces, whichever is larger, of each size of material

[5] The values given in micrometres are the approximate average grain size of commercial silicon carbide grit in the designated size classification.

000234

TABLE 1 Minimum Sizes for Samples from Undeveloped Sand and Gravel Deposits

Sieve Size	Quantity		
	kg	(lb)	Pieces
Larger than 150-mm (6-in.)	...	...	[A]
75 to 150-mm (3 to 6-in.)	...	...	300[A]
37.5 to 75-mm (1½ to 3-in.)	180	(400)	...
19.0 to 37.5-mm (¾ to 1½-in.)	90	(200)	...
4.75 to 19.0-mm (No. 4 to ¾-in.)	45	(100)	...
Finer than 4.75-mm (No. 4)[B]	23	(50)	...

[A] Not less than one piece from each apparent type of rock.
[B] Fine aggregate.

to be examined. Samples from stock piles should be composed of representative portions of larger samples collected with due consideration given to segregation in the piles.

6.1.3 *Exposed faces of nonproducing quarries*, where stock piles of processed material are not available, should be represented by not less than 2 kg (4 lb) from each distinctive stratum or bed, with no piece weighing less than 0.5 kg (1 lb), or by a drilled core as described above.

6.1.4 *Undeveloped sand and gravel deposits* should be sampled by means of test pits dug to the anticipated depth of future economic production. Samples should consist of not less than the quantities of material indicated in Table 1, selected so as to be representative of the deposits.

NATURAL GRAVEL AND SAND

7. Procedure

7.1 *Selection of Samples for Examination*—Samples of gravel and natural sand for petrographic examination should be dry sieved in accordance with Method C 136 to provide samples of each sieve size. In the case of sands an additional portion should then be tested in accordance with Test Method C 117, with the wash water being saved and removed by drying in order to provide a sample of the material passing the 75-μm (No. 200) sieve. The results of the sieve analysis of each sample made in accordance with Method C 136 should be provided to the petrographer making the examination and used in calculating results of the petrographic examination. Each sieve fraction should be examined separately, starting with the largest size available. Rocks are more easily recognized in larger pieces; the breakdown of a heterogeneous type present in the larger sizes may have provided particles of several apparently different types in the smaller sizes. Some important and easily confused types may be recognizable using the stereoscopic microscope if they are first recognized and separated in the larger sizes, but may require examination using the petrographic microscope if they are first encountered in the smaller sizes.

7.2 The number of particles of each sieve fraction to be examined will be fixed by the required precision of determination of the less abundant constituents. Assuming that the field sampling and laboratory sampling procedures are accurate and reliable, the number of particles examined, identified, and counted in each sieve fraction will depend on the required accuracy of the estimate of constituents present in small quantities. The numbers given in this method are minimal. They are based on experience and on statistical considerations.[6] It is believed that at least 150 par each sieve fraction should be identified and coun to obtain reliable results. Precise determinatio quantities of an important constituent will require co larger numbers of particles. If the sample of a sieve f contains many more particles than need to be identifi sample shall be reduced in accordance with one procedures in Practice C 702, so as to contain a number of particles for examination.

8. Procedure for Examination of Natural Gravel

8.1 *Coatings*—The pebbles should be examined to lish whether exterior coatings are present. If they should be determined whether the coatings consist of rials likely to be deleterious in concrete (opal, gypsum, soluble salts, organic matter). It should also be determ qualitatively how firmly the coatings are bonded to pebbles.

8.2 *Rock Types*—The sieve fraction should be sorted rock types by visual examination. If all or most of the gr present are types easily identifiable in hand specimen examination of a natural or broken surface, and by scra and acid tests, no further identification may be nec Fine-grained rocks that cannot be identified macroscopic or that may consist of or contain constituents known t deleterious in concrete should be checked by examina with the stereoscopic microscope. If they cannot be ident by that means, they should be examined by means of petrographic microscope. The amount of work done identifying fine-grained rocks should be adapt information needed about the particular sampl examination of one size of a sample, or study of informa from previous examination of samples from the same sou will usually reveal the amount of additional detailed mi scopical work required to obtain information adequate the purpose. In some instances, petrographic methods o than microscopy, such as X-ray diffraction, may be requ or might most rapidly serve to identify fine-grained r materials.

8.3 *Condition*—The separated groups belonging to e rock type should be examined to determine whethe further separation by physical condition is necessary. If a the particles of a rock type are in a comparable condit that fact should be noted. More frequently, particles several degrees of weathering will be found in a group. T should be sorted into categories based on condition and the expectation of comparable behavior in concrete. types of categories intended are: (*1*) fresh, dense; (*2*) mo ately weathered; (*3*) very weathered; or (*1*) dense; (*2*) por (or porous and friable). It usually is not practicable recognize more than three conditions per rock type, and or two may be sufficient. An important constituent pres in larger quantities may sometimes require separation i four groups by condition. The conspicuous example is cl when it is the major constituent of a gravel sample. It may

[6] Simpson, G. G., and Rowe, A., *Quantitative Zoology*, McGraw New York, NY, 1939, pp. 182–185.
Dryden, A. L., Jr., "Accuracy in Percentage Representation of Heavy Mi Frequencies," *Proceedings*, U. S. Nat. Academy Sciences, Vol 17, No. 5, 1931, pp. 233–238.

present as dense, unfractured chert; as vuggy chert; as porous chert; and as dense but highly fractured chert. The determination of which of these four conditions characterizes a particle may be expected to have an important influence on prediction of the behavior of the particle in concrete.

8.4 *Record:*

8.4.1 Notes should be taken during the examination. Each rock type should be described; the relevant features may include the following:

8.4.1.1 Particle shape,

8.4.1.2 Particle surface, texture,

8.4.1.3 Grain size,

8.4.1.4 Internal structure, including observations of pore space, packing of grains, cementation of grains,

8.4.1.5 Color,

8.4.1.6 Mineral composition,

8.4.1.7 Significant heterogeneities,

8.4.1.8 General physical condition of the rock type in the sample,

8.4.1.9 Coatings or incrustations, and

8.4.1.10 Presence of constituents known to cause deleterious chemical reaction in concrete.

8.4.2 Particle counts should be recorded so that tables can be made for inclusion in the report. When the examination has been completed, the notes should contain enough information to permit the preparation of tables and descriptions. Tables should be prepared showing the composition and condition of the samples by sieve fractions, and the weighted average composition, based on the grading of the sample as received and on the distribution of constituents by sieve fractions. Descriptions of constituent groups should be prepared containing the relevant features among those enumerated in the preceding list.

9. Procedure for Examination of Natural Sand

9.1 The procedure for the examination of natural sand is similar to that for the examination of gravel, with the modifications necessitated by the differences in particle size.

9.1.1 *Sizes Coarser than 600 μm (No. 30)*—Each sieve fraction present that is coarser than the 600-μm (No. 30) sieve should be reduced in accordance with one of the procedures in Practice C 702 until a split or splits containing at least 150 particles are obtained. The reduced sample of each sieve fraction should be examined, and its constituents identified and counted, using the stereoscopic microscope. It is convenient to spread out the sample in a flat-bottom glass dish such as a Petri dish and manipulate the grains with a forceps and dissecting needle. The identification of grains in the coarser sand sizes is often easier when the grains are just submerged in water. The submergence lessens reflection from the outer surfaces and may show diagnostic features that cannot be seen when the grains are dry. There are exceptions to this generalization. Where identification is difficult, the examination includes examination of the natural surface (dry and wet), examination of a broken surface (dry and wet), and scratch and acid tests. Only after all of these steps have been taken and the grain is still unidentified should the petrographer resort to the petrographic microscope. Grains that cannot be identified using the stereoscopic microscope, or that are suspected of consisting of or containing substances known to react deleteriously in concrete, should be set aside to be examined with the petrographic microscope. If the question of reaction with the alkalies (sodium and potassium) of portland cement paste is important in the examination of the sample, certain additions to the procedure are indicated. If the coarser sand sizes contain fine-grained, possibly glassy igneous rocks, several typical particles of each variety of such rocks should be selected for a more thorough examination. The petrographer should determine the presence or absence of glass by crushing typical grains and examining them in immersion media, using the petrographic microscope. In difficult or especially important cases, it may be necessary to break suspected grains and to make immersion mounts of part of the grain and a thin section of another part. Where the sand contains chert and the potential reactivity of the chert is an important consideration, a number of chert particles from the fractions retained on the 600-μm (No. 30) sieve should be set aside for determinations of the index of refraction. Methylene blue staining techniques may be useful in identifying the presence of smectite.[7]

9.1.2 *Sizes Finer than 600 μm (No. 30)*—The sieve fractions finer than the 600-μm (No. 30) sieve should each be reduced in a sample splitter or by quartering to about 4 or 5 g. The volume will usually be less than a level teaspoonful. In some gradings the fractions retained on the 150-μm (No. 100) and 75-μm (No. 200) sieves may be present in such small amounts that reduction is unnecessary. These splits should be further reduced on a miniature sample splitter or by coning and quartering with a spatula on a clean sheet of paper. The examination may be conducted as in 9.1.1. As required, the petrographic microscope should be used. For this purpose, a representative portion of each reduced split should be mounted in immersion oil on a clean glass slide and covered with a clean cover glass. No entirely satisfactory method of reducing a split to a predetermined number of grains is known. The reduced split can be sampled by spreading it in a thin layer on glass or clean paper, dragging the end of a dissecting needle moistened in immersion oil through the sample and transferring the grains that adhere to the needle to a drop of immersion oil on a clean slide. If this is done carefully, a fairly representative sample will be obtained. If the dissecting needle is made of magnetized steel, a concentration of magnetic minerals may result. It is usually necessary to make several mounts of the 300-μm (No. 50) and 150-μm (No. 100) sieve fractions to obtain at least 150 grains of each. The index of the immersion oil should be selected to make the identification of the important constituents as easy and as definite as possible. The use of an immersion oil with an index of or just below the lower index of quartz (1.544) is recommended. The slide should be mounted on a petrographic microscope equipped with a mechanical stage. Several traverses should be made, and each grain that passes under the cross hair should be identified and counted. Care should be taken to move the slide on the north-south adjustment between traverses so that no grain will be counted twice. Each sieve fraction passing the 600-μm (No. 30) and retained on the 75-μm (No. 200) sieve

[7] Higgs, Nelson B., "Preliminary Studies of Methylene Blue Adsorption as a Method of Evaluating Degradable Smectite-Bearing Concrete Aggregate Sands," *Cement and Concrete Research*, Vol. 16, 1986, pp. 528–534.

000236

should be examined. Ordinarily, the material passing the 75-μm (No. 200) sieve is mounted on a slide following the procedure described above, examined by means of the petrographic microscope, and its composition estimated. If an unusually large amount of this size is present, or if it contains constituents that may be expected to have an important effect on the suitability of the aggregate for the intended use, it should be counted. In this event, it is suggested that the fraction passing the 75-μm (No. 200) sieve be washed over the 45-μm (No. 325) sieve before being counted.

9.1.3 Grain thin sections using an epoxy as mounting medium also may be useful in classifying particles passing the 300-μm (No. 50) sieve.

DRILLED CORE, LEDGE ROCK, CRUSHED STONE, AND MANUFACTURED SAND

10. Procedure for Examination of Drilled Core

10.1 Each core should be examined and a log prepared showing footage of core recovered, core loss and location; location and spacing of fractures and parting planes; lithologic type or types; alternation of types; physical condition and variations in condition; toughness, hardness[8], coherence; obvious porosity; grain size, texture, variations in grain size and texture; type or types of breakage; and presence of constituents capable of deleterious reaction in concrete. If the size of the core permits, the probability that the rock will make aggregate of the required maximum size should be considered. If the surface of the core being examined is wetted, it is usually easier to recognize significant features and changes in lithology. Most of the information usually required can be obtained by careful visual examination, scratch and acid tests, and hitting the core with a hammer. In the case of fine-grained rocks, it may be necessary to examine parts of the core, using the stereoscopic microscope, or to prepare thin sections of selected portions. Some considerations and procedures are more applicable to particular rock types than to others. Ordinarily, the layered rocks considered for concrete aggregate will be limestone, and occasionally metamorphic rocks, such as phyllite, gneiss, or schist. One of the most important questions arising in the examination of limestone is that of the presence, type, and distribution of argillaceous impurities. Limestones that contain intercalated thin beds of soft shale may make suitable sources of aggregate if the shale is so distributed that it does not prevent manufacture of the required maximum size, and if the shale can be eliminated or reduced in processing. Where argillaceous impurities are present, it should be determined whether they actually consist of clay minerals or of other minerals in clay sizes. If they do consist of clay minerals, it should be established whether the clay minerals include swelling clays (that is, smectites, also known as the montmorillonite-saponite group of minerals).[9] X-ray diffraction analysis is especially valuable in identification and quantitative determination of clay minerals. Methylene blue staining techniques are useful in identifying smectite. In the examination of fine-grained igneous rocks, particular attention should be directed to the nature of the ground-mass. This examination should include determination of the presence or absence of opal, chalcedony, natural glass, and swelling clays; if any of these are found the amount should be estimated; if natural glass is found the type should be determined.

11. Procedure for Examination of Ledge Rock

11.1 The procedure used in examination should be the same as for core samples to the extent that the spacing of samples and size of the individual pieces allow. If the sample consists of a relatively large quantity of broken stone produced by blasting, it is desirable to inspect the whole sample, estimate the relative abundance of rock types or varieties present, and sample each type before further processing. Subsequent procedure should be the same as given below for crushed stone.

12. Procedure for Examination of Crushed Stone

12.1 The procedure for examination of crushed stone should be similar to that for core, except that necessary quantitative data should be obtained by particle counts of the separated sieve fractions obtained as described in the section on Natural Gravel and Sand.

13. Procedure for Examination of Manufactured Sand

13.1 The examination procedure should be similar to that for natural sand, with particular emphasis on the amou and extent of fracturing and the amount and nature of rc dust developed by the milling operations. If a sample of the rock from which the sand was produced is available, examination of it will provide useful information.

CALCULATION AND REPORT

14. Calculation

14.1 Calculate the composition of each sieve fraction of a heterogeneous sample and the weighted average composition of the whole sample as follows:

14.1.1 Express the composition of each sieve fraction by summing the total number of particles of that fraction counted, and calculating each constituent in each condition as a percentage of the total amount (as number of particles in percent, in each sieve fraction). It is convenient to calculate and record the percentages to tenths at this stage. An example of these calculations is given in the upper half of Table 2.

14.1.2 Obtain the weight percent of the sieve fraction in the whole sample (individual percentages retained on consecutive sieves) from the grading of the sample as determined by Method C 136.

14.1.3 By multiplying the percentage of the constituent in the sieve fraction, determined as described above by the percentage of the sieve fraction in the whole sample, obtained as described above, calculate the percentage in the whole sample of that constituent in that size (wei percentage of constituents in sieve fraction, Table 2). convenient to calculate and record these percentages to tenths.

[8] Woolf, D. O., "Methods for the Determination of Soft Pieces in Aggregate," *Proceedings*, ASTM, Vol 47, 1947, p. 967.

[9] Carroll, Dorothy, "Clay Minerals: A Guide to Their X-ray Identification", *The Geological Society of America*, Special Paper 126, 1970.

000237

TABLE 2 Calculation of Results of Particle Counts[A]

Individual Percentage Retained on Sieve	Composition of Fractions Retained on Sieves Shown Below							
	19.0-mm (¾-in.)		12.5-mm (½-in.)		9.5-mm (⅜-in.)		4.75-mm (No. 4)	
	17.4		32.6		29.5		20.5	
Constituents[B]	Number of Particles	%	Number of Particles	%	Number of Particles	%	Number of Particles	%
A_1	250	50.0	200	40.0	150	30.0	50	10.0
A_2	50	10.0	100	20.0	125	25.0	100	20.0
A_3	10	2.0	50	10.0	75	15.0	100	20.0
B_1	107	21.4	70	14.0	62	12.4	32	6.4
B_2	76	15.2	53	10.6	19	3.8	87	17.4
B_3	...	...	20	4.0	43	8.6	96	19.2
C_1	5	1.0	5	1.0	20	4.0	20	4.0
C_2	2	0.4	2	0.4	6	1.2	10	2.0
C_3	...	...	...	...	...	...	5	1.0
Totals	500[C]	100	500[C]	100	500[C]	100	500[C]	100

	Weighted Percentages of Constituents in Each Sieve Fraction				Weighted Composition of Sample
	19.0-mm (¾-in.)	12.5-mm (½-in.)	9.5-mm (⅜-in.)	4.75-mm (No. 4)	
A_1	8.7	13.0	8.9	2.1	32.7 64.6 (Total A)
A_2	1.7	6.5	7.4	4.1	19.7
A_3	0.4	3.3	4.4	4.1	12.2
B_1	3.7	4.6	3.7	1.3	13.3 31.8 (Total B)
B_2	2.6	3.5	1.1	3.6	10.8
B_3	...	1.3	2.5	3.9	7.7
C_1	0.2	0.3	1.2	0.8	2.5 3.6 (Total C)
C_2	0.1	0.1	0.3	0.4	0.9
C_3	...	...	...	0.2	0.2
Total in sieve fraction	17.4	32.6	29.5	20.5	
Total in sample, condition 1					48.5
Total in sample, condition 2					31.4
Total in sample, condition 3					20.1

[A] This table indicates a convenient method of setting up a work sheet for recording results and calculations. The results developed here are entered in the form indicated by Table 3. Table 3 is included in the petrographic report. Table 2 is not.

[B] Letters (A, B, C) refer to the various constituents found, subscript numbers (1, 2, 3) refer to the various conditions in which each constituent has been found, such as relative degree of weathering.

[C] The recommendation concerning the number of particles to be counted has been met; the selection of 500 particles per fraction for the example is to illustrate the calculation; it is not intended to suggest that a predetermined number of particles per fraction should be selected.

TABLE 3 Composition and Condition of an Aggregate Sample (Table Constructed from Calculations Shown in Table 2)[C]

Constituents	Amount, as Number of Particles in Percent							
	In Fractions Retained on Sieves Shown Below[A]				In Whole Sample[B]			
	19.0-mm (¾-in.)	12.5-mm (½-in.)	9.5-mm (⅜-in.)	4.75-mm (No. 4)	Condition 1	Condition 2	Condition 3	Totals
A	62	70	70	50	33	20	12	65
B	37	29	25	43	13	11	8	32
C	1	1	5	7	2	1	tr	3
Total	100	100	100	100	...	...	...	100
Weighted average, condition 1					48	...	...	...
Weighted average, condition 2					...	32	...	...
Weighted average, condition 3					...	...	20	...

[A] Based on count of 500 particles in each sieve fraction. (The number of particles of each sieve fraction counted should be shown in the report and this may conveniently be done as a footnote to the table.)

[B] Based on grading of the sample as received, and on the distribution of constituents by sieve fractions shown at the left above. (If the petrographic report forms part of a complete investigation of the sample, including a report of the grading, the grading need not be shown. If the petrographic report is to be submitted alone, the grading of the sample should be included with it.)

[C] For other forms of presentation of results of petrographic analysis, see Tables 1–4 in Mielenz, R. C., "Petrographic Examination of Concrete Aggregates," Chapter 33, *Significance of Tests and Properties of Concrete and Concrete-Making Materials*, *ASTM STP 169 B*, p. 197.

14.1.4 By adding the weighted percentages of each constituent in each sieve fraction, obtain the weighted percentage of each constituent in the whole sample (see under weighted composition of sample in Table 2).

14.1.5 Construct a table to show the composition of each sieve fraction and the weighted composition of the whole sample. Report values to the nearest whole number. Report constituents amounting to 0.5 % or less of a sieve fraction or of the whole sample as traces. Table 3 is an example constructed from the data obtained in Table 2. As a convention, the total in each sieve fraction and the total in the whole sample shall each be 100 % without the traces. Difficulties in abiding by this convention can usually be avoided by grouping minor constituents of little engineering

000238

importance. It is preferable to tabulate constituents known to react deleteriously in concrete so that their distribution will be apparent from inspection of the table, even though the amount in the whole sample or in any fraction is very small.

15. Report

15.1 The report of the petrographic examination should summarize the essential data needed to identify the sample as to source and proposed use, and include a description giving the essential data on composition and properties of the material as revealed by the examination. The report should record the test procedures employed, and give a description of the nature and features of each important constituent of the sample, accompanied by such tables and photographs as may be required. The findings and conclusions should be expressed in terms likely to be intelligible to those who must make decisions as to the suitability of a material for use as concrete aggregate.

15.2 When the sample has been found to possess properties or constituents that are known to have specific unfavorable effects in concrete, those properties or constituents should be described qualitatively and, to the extent practicable, quantitatively. The unfavorable effects that may be expected to ensue in concrete should be mentioned. When appropriate, it should be stated that a given sample was not found to contain any undesirable features. When such is the case it may also be appropriate, especially if the report of the petrographic examination is not accompanied by reports of results of physical and chemical tests for which numerical limits may be applicable, to add that the material appears acceptable for use provided the applicable acceptance tests are made and the results are within the appropriate limits. The report should not, however, contain conclusions other than those based upon the finding of the examination unless the additional data to support such conclusions are included in or with the petrographic report and the petrographer has been authorized to analyze the other relevant nonpetrographic data.

15.3 The petrographic report should include recommendations regarding any additional petrographic, chemical, physical, or geological investigations that may be required to evaluate adverse properties that are indicated by the petrographic examination that has been performed. Supplementary petrographic investigations might include qualitative or quantitative analysis of the aggregate or of selected portions thereof by X-ray diffraction, differential thermal methods, or other procedures that are directed to identification and description of the constituents of the aggregate.

16. Precision and Bias

16.1 Those test methods that are used in connection with this guide that have been standardized in ASTM are subject to having precision and bias sections. Those that have not been standardized will each be provided with such a section, if and when standardized. None of the nonstandardized procedures mentioned for optional use in this practice are used in ways that lend themselves to the preparation of precision and bias statements.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000239

Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 535; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This method has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers testing sizes of coarse aggregate larger than 3/4 in. (19 mm) for resistance to degradation using the Los Angeles testing machine.

NOTE 1—A procedure for testing coarse aggregate smaller than 1½ in. (37.5 mm) is covered in Method C 131.

1.2 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 131 Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine[2]

C 136 Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[2]

C 670 Practice for Preparing Precision and Bias Statements for Test Methods for Construction Materials[2]

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[3]

D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[2]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[4]

3. Summary of Method

3.1 The Los Angeles test is a measure of degradation of mineral aggregates of standard gradings resulting from a combination of actions including abrasion or attrition, impact, and grinding in a rotating steel drum containing a specified number of steel spheres, the number depending upon the grading of the test sample. As the drum rotates, a shelf plate picks up the sample and the steel spheres, carrying them around until they are dropped to the opposite side of the drum, creating an impact-crushing effect. The contents then roll within the drum with an abrading and grinding action until the shelf plate impacts and the cycle is repeated. After the prescribed number of revolutions, the contents are removed from the drum and the aggregate portion is sieved to measure the degradation as percent loss.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 The Los Angeles test has been widely used as an indicator of the relative quality or competence of various sources of aggregate having similar mineral compositions. The results do not automatically permit valid comparisons to be made between sources distinctly different in origin, composition, or structure. Specification limits based on this test should be assigned with extreme care in consideration of available aggregate types and their performance history in specific end uses.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Los Angeles Machine* conforming to the requirements of Test Method C 131.

5.1.1 The machine shall be so driven and so counterbalanced as to maintain a substantially uniform peripheral speed (Note 2). If an angle is used as the shelf, the direction of rotation shall be such that the charge is caught on the outside surface of the angle.

NOTE 2—Backlash or slip in the driving mechanism is very likely to furnish test results that are not duplicated by other Los Angeles machines producing constant peripheral speed.

5.2 *Sieves*, conforming to Specification E 11.

5.3 *Balance*—A balance or scale accurate within 0.1 % of test load over the range required for this test

5.4 *Charge*—The charge shall consist of 12 steel spheres averaging approximately 1 27/32 in. (46.8 mm) in diameter, each weighing between 390 and 445 g, and having a total weight of 5000 ± 25 g.

NOTE 3—Steel ball bearings 1 13/16 in. (46.038 mm) and 1 7/8 in. (47.625 mm) in diameter, weighing approximately 400 and 440 g each, respectively, are readily available. Steel spheres 1 27/32 in. (46.8 mm) in diameter weighing approximately 420 g may also be obtainable. The charge may consist of a mixture of these sizes.

6. Sampling

6.1 The field sample shall be obtained in accordance with Practice D 75 and reduced to test portion in accordance with Practice C 702.

---

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.20 on Normal Weight Aggregates.

Current edition approved April 28, 1989. Published June 1989. Originally published as C 535 – 64 T. Last previous edition C 535 – 81 (1987).

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 04.02 and 04.03.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

000240

TABLE 1 Gradings of Test Samples

Sieve Size, mm (in.) (Square Openings)		Weights of Indicated Sizes, g		
		Grading[A]		
Passing	Retained on	1	2	3
75 (3)	63 (2½)	2 500 ± 50	...	...
63 (2½)	50 (2)	2 500 ± 50	...	...
50 (2)	37.5 (1½)	5 000 ± 50	5 000 ± 50	...
37.5 (1½)	25.0 (1)	...	5 000 ± 25	5 000 ± 25
25.0 (1)	19.0 (¾)	...	...	5 000 ± 25
	Total	10 000 ± 100	10 000 ± 75	10 000 ± 50

[A] Gradings 1, 2, and 3 correspond, respectively, in their size distribution to Gradings, E, F, and G in the superseded ASTM Method C 131 – 55, Test for Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate by Use of the Los Angeles Machine, which appears in the 1961 *Book of ASTM Standards*, Part 4.

7. Test Sample

7.1 The test sample shall be washed and oven-dried at 221 to 230°F (105 to 110°C) to substantially constant weight (Note 4), separated into individual size fractions, and recombined to the grading of Table 1 most nearly corresponding to the range of sizes in the aggregate as furnished for the work. The weight of the sample prior to test shall be recorded to the nearest 1 g.

NOTE 4—If the aggregate is essentially free of adherent coatings and dust, the requirement for washing before and after test may be waived. Elimination of washing after test will seldom reduce the measured loss by more than about 0.2 % of the original sample weight.

8. Procedure

8.1 Place the test sample and charge in the Los Angeles testing machine and rotate the machine at 30 to 33 r/min for 000 revolutions. After the prescribed number of revolutions, discharge the material from the machine and make a preliminary separation of the sample on a sieve coarser than the 1.70-mm (No. 12). The finer portion shall then be sieved on a 1.70-mm sieve in a manner conforming to Method C 136. The material coarser than the 1.70-mm sieve shall be washed (Note 4), oven-dried at 221 to 230°F (105 to 110°C) to substantially constant weight, and weighed to the nearest 5 g (Note 5).

NOTE 5—Valuable information concerning the uniformity of the sample under test may be obtained by determining the loss after 200 revolutions. This loss should be determined without washing the material coarser than the 1.70-mm (No. 12) sieve. The ratio of the loss after 200 revolutions to the loss after 1000 revolutions should not greatly exceed 0.20 for material of uniform hardness. When this determination is made, take care to avoid losing any part of the sample; return the entire sample, including the dust of fracture, to the testing machine for the final 800 revolutions required to complete the test.

9. Calculation

9.1 Express the loss (difference between the original weight and the final weight of the test sample) as a percentage of the original weight of the test sample. Report this value as the percent loss.

NOTE 6—The percent loss determined by this method has no known consistent relationship to the percent loss for the same material when tested by Test Method C 131.

10. Precision

10.1 *Precision*—The precision of this test method has not been determined. It is expected to be comparable to that of Test Method C 131.

10.2 *Bias*—No statement is being made about the bias of this Test Method since there is no accepted reference material suitable for determining the bias of this procedure.

X1.
severe
surfac
develo
mm) f
the cy
angle,
be ber
tion.

000241

APPENDIX

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. MAINTENANCE OF SHELF

X1.1 The shelf of the Los Angeles machine is subject to severe surface wear and impact. With use, the working surface of the shelf is peened by the balls and tends to develop a ridge of metal parallel to and about 1¼ in. (32 mm) from the junction of the shelf and the inner surface of the cylinder. If the shelf is made from a section of rolled angle, not only may this ridge develop but the shelf itself may be bent longitudinally or transversely from its proper position.

X1.2 The shelf should be inspected periodically to determine that it is not bent either lengthwise or from its normal radial position with respect to the cylinder. If either condition is found, the shelf should be repaired or replaced before further tests are made. The influence on the test result of the ridge developed by peening of the working face of the shelf is not known. However, for uniform test conditions, it is recommended that the ridge be ground off if its height exceeds 0.1 in. (2 mm).

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000242

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Carbonate Rocks for Concrete Aggregates (Rock Cylinder Method)[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 586; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the expansive characteristics of carbonate rocks while immersed in a solution of sodium hydroxide (NaOH) at room temperature. The length changes occurring during such immersion indicate the general level of reactivity of rocks and whether tests should be made to determine the effect of aggregate prepared from the rocks upon the volume change in concrete.

1.2 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 295 Guide for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete[5]

C 1105 Test Method for Length Change of Concrete Due to Alkali-Carbonate Rock Reaction[5]

D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[2]

D 1248 Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials[3]

E 177 Practice for Use of The Terms Precision and Bias in ASTM Test Methods[4]

3. Summary of Test Method

3.1 Small rock cylinders are continuously immersed in a solution of NaOH. The length change of each specimen is periodically determined.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 This test method is intended to give a relatively rapid indication of the potential expansive reactivity of certain carbonate rocks that may be used as concrete aggregates. The test method has been successfully used in (*1*) research and (*2*) preliminary screening of aggregate sources to indicate the presence of material with a potential for deleterious expansions when used in concrete.

4.2 The test method is intended as a research screening method rather than for specification enforcement. It is intended to supplement data from field service records, petrographic examinations according to Guide C 295, and tests of aggregate in concrete according to Test Method C 1105.

4.3 Alkalies participating in the expansive reactions with aggregate constituents usually are derived from cement; under certain circumstances they may be derived from other constituents of concrete or from external sources. Two types of alkali reactivity of aggregates are recognized: (*1*) an alkali-silica reaction involving certain siliceous rocks, minerals, and artificial glasses, and (*2*) an alkali carbonate reaction involving dolomite in certain calcitic dolomites and dolomitic limestones. This test method is not recommended as a means to detect the first of these reaction types.

5. Apparatus and Reagents

5.1 *1 N Sodium Hydroxide Solution*—Dissolve 40 ± 1 g of reagent grade sodium hydroxide (NaOH) in distilled water, dilute to 1 L and store in a polyethylene bottle.

5.2 *Sawing, Drilling, and Grinding Equipment*, suitable for preparing test specimens of the dimensions given in Section 7. This will require one or more rock saws, depending upon the size of the original sample, a drill press equipped with a small diamond core barrel for removing the cylindrical core, and a lap, grinder, or suitable modified lathe for shaping the ends of the specimens.

5.3 *Storage Bottles*, approximately 50 to 100-mL capacity with caps and openings of sufficient size to facilitate removal of specimens. The polyethylene bottle shall be selected to ensure that the solution will not be modified by reaction with the material composing the container, including pigments or other additives or by transpiration of phases through the walls of the container. Bottles with wall thickness not less than 0.020 in. (0.50 mm) and composed of high density polyethylene meeting the requirements of Specification D 1248 for materials of Type III, Class A, are suitable.

5.4 *Length Comparator*, for convenient and rapid measurement of lengths of specimens, the comparator shall be of such design as to provide, permit, or include the following characteristics. One type of comparator which has been found satisfactory is shown in Fig. 1.

5.4.1 A positive means of contact with the conical ends of the specimen to ensure reproducible measurement of length. A variety of contact points have been used successfully. Care should be exercised to ensure that when using specimens with conical ends as described in 7.3, contact is made on the end along a circle which is concentric about the long axis of the specimen. If the measuring device is a barrel micrometer,

---

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C 09.26 on Chemical Reactions of Materials.

Current edition approved April 15, 1992. Published June 1992. Originally published as C 586 – 66 T. Last previous edition C 586 – 69 (1986).

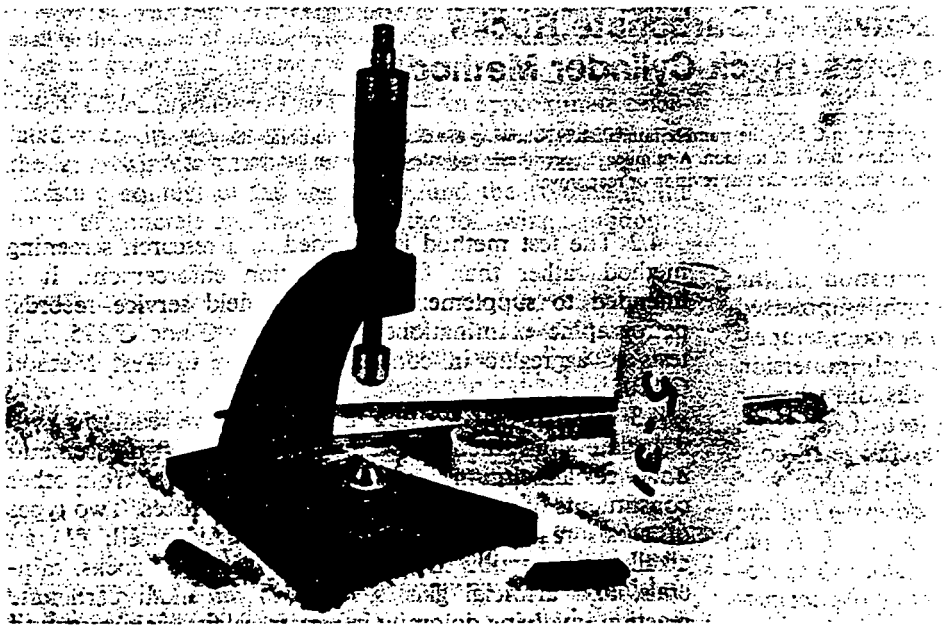
[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.03.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 08.01.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

000244



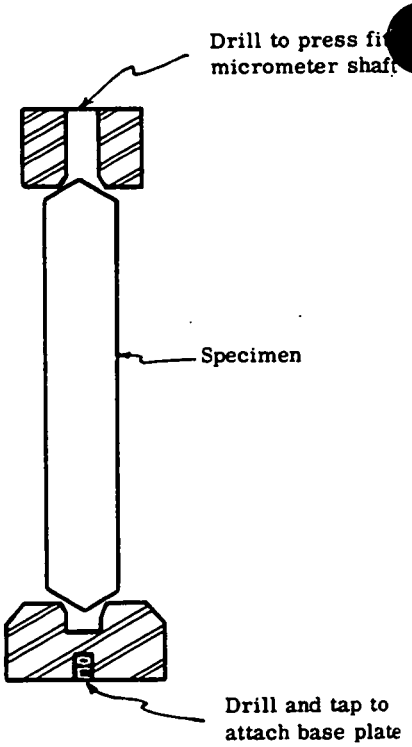


FIG. 1 A Typical Length Comparator

it shall have a ratchet stop to produce a constant pressure on the specimen,

5.4.2 A high-grade barrel or dial micrometer graduated to read in 0.0001-in. (0.0025-mm) units, and accurate within 0.0001 in. (0.0025 mm) in any 0.0010-in. (0.025-mm) range and within 0.0002 (0.0050 mm) in any 0.0100-in. (0.25-mm) range. The measuring device should be calibrated throughout its range to determine both periodic and cumulative errors for proper correction of observed data,

5.4.3 A sufficient range to allow for small differences among gage lengths of various specimens. If care is taken in the fabrication of the specimens, a measuring device with a travel of not less than 0.3 in. (7.5 mm) provides ample range in the instrument, and

5.4.4 A standard or reference shall be used for checking the measuring device at regular intervals. The bar that serves as a reference for the length comparator shall have an over-all length of 1.38 ± 0.08 in. (35 ± 2 mm). The bar shall be fused silica or a steel alloy having a coefficient of thermal expansion not greater than 1.0×10^{-6}/°C. Each end shall be machined to the same shape as that of the rock specimens. If a steel alloy is used, it shall be heat treated, hardened, and then polished. The reference bar shall be placed in the instrument in the same position each time a length measurement is made. The micrometer setting of the measuring device shall be checked by use of the reference bar at least at the beginning and end of the readings made within a half day when the apparatus is kept in a room maintained at constant temperature. It shall be checked more often when kept in a room where temperature is not constant.

6. Sampling

6.1 This method is applicable to a sample of rock secured in accordance with the applicable requirements of Practice D 75.

6.2 Sampling should be under the direction of an individual capable of distinguishing differences in lithology, and the sample of rock should be taken to represent only the particular lithology under consideration bearing in mind the limitations and significance of this method as stated in Section 4. Each sample of rock should be in one piece of sufficient size for preparing the necessary test specimens.

6.3 One test specimen will sufficiently represent the sample of rock unless shale seams or other discontinuities are present or the bedding is not discernible. In these cases, it may be desirable to prepare and test 3 mutually perpendicular specimens. Of such three specimens that one showing the greatest length change after 28 days of immersion in alkali solution as determined in 8.7 shall be used. The remaining two may then be discarded.

7. Test Specimens

7.1 Test specimens shall be in the form of right circular cylinders with conical ends, unless otherwise specified. Square prismatic specimens may be used provided the over-all dimensions of length and distance between parallel faces approximate the corresponding dimensions for the test specimen.

7.2 The specimen shall have an over-all length of 1.38 ± 0.20 in. (35 ± 5 mm) and a diameter of 0.35 ± 0.04 in. (9 ± 1 mm). Care shall be exercised in the preparation of the specimens to avoid alteration of the cylindrical surface by polishing or with materials which will affect the rate of entry of alkali solution into the rock.

7.3 The included angle of the conical ends shall be

000245

approximately 120°. Flat end faces may be used in place of conical ends provided precautions are taken to ensure that the end faces are parallel to each other and perpendicular to the major axis of the specimen and providing that the requirements set forth in 5.4 are met.

8. Procedure

8.1 Place a position mark on the specimen to permit placing the specimen in the comparator in the same position during subsequent measurements.

8.2 Measure the length of the test specimen.

8.3 Immerse the specimen in distilled water at room temperature.

8.4 At intervals, remove the specimen, blot to remove excess surface water and measure until the change in length during a 24-h water immersion period does not exceed 0.02 % as calculated in 9.1. The length when this condition is obtained is taken as the reference length. The reference length is usually achieved after 1 to 4 days of immersion.

8.5 Immerse the water-saturated specimens in a bottle containing a minimum of 35 mL of 1*N* NaOH solution per specimen at room temperature and seal. Immerse no more than two specimens in a bottle.

8.6 Measure the length of the specimens after 7, 14, 21, and 28 days of immersion in NaOH solution and at 4-week intervals thereafter. If the tests continue beyond 1 year, make measurements at 12-week intervals.

8.7 When measurements are made, remove the specimen from the bottle, rinse with distilled water, blot to remove excess surface water and determine its length in the same position as during the initial measurement.

8.8 After measurement, immediately return the specimen to the bottle and reseal.

8.9 Replace the solution every 6 months during the testing period.

9. Calculation

9.1 Calculate the length change to the nearest 0.01 % of the reference length as follows:

$$\Delta l = [(l_1 - l_0)/l_0] \times 100$$

where:

Δl = % length change at test age,
l_1 = length in in. (mm) at test age, and
l_0 = reference length after equilibrium in water, as outlined in 8.4.

10. Interpretation of Results

10.1 Since the expansion caused by reactions between cement alkalies and carbonate aggregates is sensitive to subtle changes in aggregate lithology, the results of measurements should be interpreted with full recognition of the variables which would affect the results obtained. The acceptance or rejection of aggregate sources based solely on the results of this test is not recommended since, in commercial production, expansive and nonexpansive materials may occur in close proximity and the securing of samples adequately representative of the variability of the production source is a difficult task and requires the efforts of an individual trained to distinguish differences in lithology.

10.2 The relationship of the test results to the behavior of large quantities of rock from a given source will depend upon the degree to which the petrographic and chemical properties of the rock vary within the source.

10.3 Research results have indicated that the expansive behavior of aggregate in concrete is qualitatively predicted by the results of the rock cylinder test. Quantitative prediction of the expansion of concrete containing reactive aggregate depends upon (*1*) the degree of aggregate reactivity, (*2*) the amount of reactive constituent, (*3*) the alkali content of the cement, and (*4*) the environment. Appreciable expansion should indicate the need for further testing. In the light of current knowledge, it appears that expansions in excess of 0.10 % are indicative of chemical reaction and should warrant additional testing, preferably in concrete using Test Method C 1105. Usually expansive tendencies are evident after 28 days of immersion in alkali, however, exceptions to this have been noted. Deleterious expansion of concrete appears to depend upon the magnitude and rate of aggregate expansion and the time at which it begins. However, quantitative predictions of concrete expansion in service solely from results of this test method are not yet possible.

11. Report

11.1 Report the following:

11.1.1 Identification number,

11.1.2 Type and source of rock,

11.1.3 Specimen shape and dimensions if other than right circular cylinder,

11.1.4 Length change in percent to the nearest 0.01 % at each time of measurement. Where no times of measurement are specifically requested, data should be presented for at least the following ages: 1, 4, 8, and 16 weeks and the age at the final measurement.

11.1.5 Significant features revealed by examination of specimen during and after storage in alkali solution, such as cracking, warping, splitting, etc., and

11.1.6 Other significant information as deemed necessary, such as petrographic and chemical analyses.

12. Precision and Bias

12.1 If the results of replicate specimens measured by the same operator and which presumably represent the same material, differ by more than 0.10 percentage point for expansions less than 1.0 %, it is highly probable that the specimens represent rocks that are significantly different in chemical composition, texture, or both.

12.2 The single-operator, single-comparator, single-specimen precision has been found to be ±0.02 percentage point (3S) as defined in Practice E 177.

12.3 The multi-operator, single-comparator, single-specimen precision has been found to be ±0.03 percentage point (3S) as defined in Practice E 177.

12.4 The multi-operator, multi-comparator, single-specimen precision has been found to be ±0.05 percentage point (3S) as defined in Practice E 177.

13. Keywords

13.1 aggregate; alkali reactivity; carbonate rocks; concrete; deleterious expansion

000246

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

1. Sco
1.1
draulic
using
portla
1.2
regard
first f
where
the SI

2. Re
2.1
C 1

000247

Designation: C 805 – 85

Standard Test Method for Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 805; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of a rebound number of hardened concrete using a spring-driven steel hammer.

1.2 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of whoever uses this standard to consult and establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standard:*

E 177 Practice for Use of the Terms Precision and Bias in ASTM Test Methods[2]

3. Summary of Method

3.1 A steel hammer impacts with a predetermined amount of energy, a steel plunger in contact with a surface of concrete, and the distance that the hammer rebounds is measured.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 The rebound number determined by this method may be used to assess the uniformity of concrete in situ, to delineate zones or regions (areas) of poor quality or deteriorated concrete in structures, and to indicate changes with time in characteristics of concrete such as those caused by the hydration of cement so that it provides useful information in determining when forms and shoring may be removed.

4.2 This test method is not intended as an alternative for strength determination of concrete.

4.3 Optimally, rebound numbers should be correlated with core testing information. Due to the difficulty of acquiring the appropriate correlation data in a given instance, the rebound hammer is most useful for rapidly surveying large areas of similar concretes in the construction under consideration.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Rebound Hammer,*[3] consisting of a spring-loaded steel hammer which when released strikes a steel plunger in contact with the concrete surface. The spring-loaded hammer must travel with a fixed and reproducible velocity. The rebound distance of the steel hammer from the steel plunger is measured in a linear scale attached to the frame of the instrument.

NOTE 1—Several types and sizes of rebound hammers are commercially available to accommodate testing of various sizes and types of concrete construction.

5.2 *Abrasive Stone,* consisting of medium-grain texture silicon carbide or equivalent material.

6. Test Area

6.1 *Selection of Test Surface*—Concrete members to be tested shall be at least 100 mm (4 in.) thick and fixed within a structure. Smaller specimens must be rigidly supported. Areas exhibiting honeycombing, scaling, rough texture, or high porosity should be avoided. Concretes should be approximately the same age and moisture condition in order to be compared. Dry concretes give higher rebound numbers than wet concrete, and the surface layer of concrete may be carbonated, yielding higher rebound numbers.[4] The form material against which the concrete was placed should be similar (Note 2). Troweled surfaces generally exhibit higher rebound numbers than screened or formed finishes. If possible, structural slabs should be tested from the underside to avoid finished surfaces.

NOTE 2—Where formed surfaces were ground, overall increases in rebound numbers of 2.1 for plywood formed members and 0.4 for high-density plywood formed surfaces have been noted.[5]

6.2 *Preparation of Test Surface*—A test area shall be at least 150 mm (6 in.) in diameter. Heavily textured, soft, or surfaces with loose mortar shall be ground smooth with the abrasive stone described in 5.2. Smooth-formed or troweled surfaces shall be tested without grinding. The effects of drying and carbonation can be minimized by thoroughly wetting the surfaces for 24 h prior to testing. Concretes over 6 months old may require grinding to a depth of 5 mm (¼ in.) if they are to be compared to markedly younger concretes. Grinding to this depth is not feasible without

---

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-9 on Concrete and Concrete Aggregates and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C09.64 on Nondestructive Testing of Concrete.

Current edition approved Sept. 27, 1985. Published December 1985. Originally published as C 805 – 75 T. Last previous edition C 805 – 79.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards,* Vol 14.02.

[3] Available from Schmidt Test Hammers, Inc., 502 North Tacoma Ave., Tacoma, WA 98403.

[4] Zoldners, N. G., "Calibration and Use of Impact Test Hammer," *Proceedings,* American Concrete Institute, Vol 54, August 1957, pp. 161–165.

[5] Gaynor, R. D., "In-Place Strength of Concrete—A Comparison of Two Test Systems," and "Appendix to Series 193," National Ready Mixed Concrete Assn., TIL No. 272, November 1969.

000248

power equipment. Ground and unground surfaces should not be compared.

6.3 Other factors that may affect the results of the test are follows:

6.3.1 Concrete at 0°C (32°F) or less may exhibit very high rebound values. Concrete should be tested only after it has thawed.

6.3.2 The temperatures of the rebound hammer itself may affect the rebound number.

NOTE 3—Rebound hammers at −18°C (0°F) may exhibit rebound numbers reduced by as much as 2 or 3.[6]

6.3.3 For readings to be compared the direction of impact, horizontal, downward, upward, etc., must be the same.

6.3.4 Different hammers of the same nominal design may give rebound numbers differing from 1 to 3 units and therefore, tests should be made with the same hammer in order to compare results. If more than one hammer is to be used, a sufficient number of tests must be made on typical concrete surfaces so as to determine the magnitude of the differences to be expected.

NOTE 4—Rebound hammers require periodic servicing and verification: semiannually for hammers in heavy use, annually in less frequent use, and whenever there is reason to question their proper operation. Metal anvils are available for verification and are recommended. However, verification on an anvil will not guarantee that different hammers will yield the same results at other points on the rebound scale. Some users compare several hammers on concrete surfaces encompassing the usual range of rebound values encountered in the field.

7. Procedure

7.1 Firmly hold the instrument in a position that allows the plunger to strike perpendicularly to the surface tested. Gradually increase the pressure on the plunger until the hammer impacts. After impact, record the rebound number to two significant figures. Take ten readings from each test area. No two impact tests shall be closer together than 25 mm (1 in.). Examine the impression made on the surface after impact, and disregard the reading if the impact crushes or breaks through a near-surface air void.

8. Calculation

8.1 Discard readings differing from the average of 10 readings by more than 7 units and determine the average of the remaining readings. If more than 2 readings differ from the average by 7 units, discard the entire set of readings.

9. Precision and Bias

9.1 The single-specimen, single-operator, machine, day precision is 2.5 units (1S) as defined in Recommended Practice E 177.

10. Report

10.1 The report shall include the following information for each test area:

10.1.1 Structure identification.

10.1.2 Location of test area in structure, for example, 3 m from bottom of Column 2, Bent 3; or 1 m from the north end, 2 m from the left curb of span 2,

10.1.3 Description of test area, for example, wood-floated surface, dry, ground with abrasion stone.

10.1.4 Description of concrete:

10.1.4.1 Composition, if known: aggregates, cement content, water-cement ratio, air content, admixtures used, etc.,

10.1.4.2 Design strength,

10.1.4.3 Age,

10.1.4.4 Curing conditions and any unusual conditions related to the test area, and

10.1.4.5 Type of forms used for the test area if known or discernible.

10.1.5 Average rebound number for each test area,

10.1.6 Values and locations of discarded rebound numbers, and

10.1.7 Hammer type and serial number.

[6] National Ready Mixed Concrete Assn., TIL No. 260, April 1968.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000249

Standard Practice for Evaluation of Limestone or Lime Uniformity From a Single Source[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation C 1164; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice is intended for use in instances where the purchaser desires information on the uniformity of limestone or lime produced at a single source. It is intended that this test method normally be used for the predominant material manufactured at a plant. Guidelines for sampling, testing and presentation of results (Table 1) are given.

1.2 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 25 Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of Limestone, Quicklime, and Hydrated Lime[2]

C 50 Methods of Sampling, Inspection, Packing, and Marking of Lime and Limestone Products[2]

C 51 Terminology Relating to Lime and Limestone (As Used by the Industry)[2]

C 110 Test Methods for Physical Testing of Quicklime, Hydrated Lime, and Limestone[2]

C 141 Specification for Hydraulic Hydrated Lime for Structural Purposes[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 For definitions of terms relating to this practice refer to Terminology C 51.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 This practice is designed to present in a standardized format information on the variability of limestone or lime from a single source over a period of time. It can be applied to all materials covered in Test Methods C 25 and C 110, and Specification C 141.

5. Sampling

5.1 The sampling shall be done in accordance with Methods C 50.

5.2 All sampling shall be performed by personnel qualified by specific training for this purpose.

5.3 Data points shall be an average of three or more separate determinations relative to a specified unit of time. For example: (*1*) *n* determinations for daily average, (*2*) daily determinations for weekly average.

5.4 The samples shall be identified by the date or dates that the represented material was obtained.

6. Procedure

6.1 The minimum amount of testing (see 5.3) and the type of test(s) to be performed should be agreed upon by the purchaser and producer.

NOTE 1—A single daily analysis does not necessarily characterize a product. A minimum of three analyses is more reasonable.

6.2 It is desirable that all tests used in a single evaluation be performed in the same laboratory, preferably by the same person, in order for the results to be comparable.

NOTE 2—In order to obtain comparable results when exchanging samples between laboratories, methods used in preparation, handling and storage of those samples must be uniform.

6.2.1 When separate evaluations of a single source are made by two or more laboratories, additional tests of a standard material or exchanged portions of the same sample may be necessary to determine differences in testing that are likely to be obtained in the different laboratories. Three or more batches may be necessary to obtain comparison between laboratories.

6.2.2 Where a within-laboratory testing standard deviation history has not been established, duplicate tests made from a single sample are required to determine the effect of testing variation on the uniformity of results made in a single laboratory.

7. Test Method

7.1 The chemical analysis of quicklime, hydrated lime, and limestone shall be determined in accordance with Test Methods C 25.

7.2 The physical analysis of quicklime, hydrated lime, and limestone shall be determined in accordance with Test Methods C 110.

7.3 The analysis of hydraulic hydrated lime shall be determined in accordance with Specification C 141.

8. Calculation

8.1 Average $\bar{X}$:

$$\bar{X} = \frac{(X_1 + X_2 + \ldots + X_n)}{n}$$

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee C-7 on Lime and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee C07.06 on Physical Tests.

Current edition approved Feb. 15, 1992. Published April 1992. Originally published as C 1164 – 90. Last previous edition C 1164 – 91.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.01.

000250

where:

$X_2, \ldots, X_n$ = the individual test results in accordance with Test Methods C 25 or C 110, or Specification C 141, and

n = the number of individual samples.

8.2 Total Standard Deviation:

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{(X_1 - \bar{X})^2 + (X_2 - \bar{X})^2 + \ldots + (X_n - \bar{X})^2}{(n-1)}}$$

9. Report

9.1 Report the following information. Sufficient information shall be provided to identify the sample including:

9.1.1 Name of manufacturer and location,

9.1.2 Type of material or other identification,

9.1.3 All sampling and analytical practices used are to be noted (see Note 3), and

9.1.4 Period of time represented by the report.

9.2 The report shall not cover a period of time greater than one year.

NOTE 3—Laboratory designations are lost or are meaningless when averaging a number of determinations on individual samples. The purchaser needs to know the sampling and analytical practices used in generating a report to properly evaluate the information they receive concerning a specific product.

TABLE 1 High Calcium Quicklime January 1989

NOTE—This data is presented only as a sample of the correct method for presentation. Other tests can be substituted and others omitted.

Day	Test			
	Acid Insoluble	% CaO	% MgO	Available CaO
1	0.66	95.85	2.27	94.90
2	0.84	95.03	2.87	94.08
3	1.24	95.85	1.57	94.90
4	1.22	96.67	1.49	95.71
5	1.22	96.26	1.32	95.31
8	0.68	95.85	2.06	94.69
9	0.96	95.54	2.27	94.89
10	1.26	96.15	1.74	95.20
11	1.04	96.04	2.00	95.11
13	1.26	96.26	1.51	95.31
15	1.34	95.23	2.09	94.28
16	1.28	95.44	2.34	94.69
19	0.68	96.15	1.46	95.20
20	1.42	95.85	1.27	94.90
22	1.06	95.85	1.86	94.90
23	0.58	96.15	2.09	95.31
24	0.84	95.03	2.61	94.08
26	1.28	95.64	1.39	94.69
27	1.48	95.54	1.58	94.39
29	0.98	94.82	2.71	93.67
30	1.24	94.41	3.42	93.67
Avg	1.07	95.70	2.00	94.76
Range	0.90	2.26	2.15	2.04
Std Dev	0.26	0.54	0.56	0.54

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000251

Designation: D 75 – 87 (Reapproved 1992)ε1

American Association State Highway and Transportation Officials Standard AASHTO No.: T2

Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 75; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This practice has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

ε1 NOTE—Editorial changes were made throughout in September 1992.

1. Scope*

1.1 This practice covers sampling of coarse and fine aggregates for the following purposes:

1.1.1 Preliminary investigation of the potential source of supply,

1.1.2 Control of the product at the source of supply,

1.1.3 Control of the operations at the site of use, and

1.1.4 Acceptance or rejection of the materials.

NOTE 1—Sampling plans and acceptance and control tests vary with the type of construction in which the material is used. Attention is directed to Practices E 105 and D 3665.

1.2 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[2]

D 2234 Test Method for Collection of a Gross Sample of Coal[3]

D 3665 Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials[4]

E 105 Practice for Probability Sampling of Materials[5]

E 122 Practice for Choice of Sample Size to Estimate the Average Quality of a Lot or Process[5]

E 141 Practice for Acceptance of Evidence Based on the Results of Probability Sampling[5]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Sampling is equally as important as the testing, and the sampler shall use every precaution to obtain samples that will show the nature and condition of the materials which they represent.

3.2 Samples for preliminary investigation tests are obtained by the party responsible for development of the potential source (Note 2). Samples of materials for control of the production at the source or control of the work at the site of use are obtained by the manufacturer, contractor, or other parties responsible for accomplishing the work. Samples for tests to be used in acceptance or rejection decisions by the purchaser are obtained by the purchaser or his authorized representative.

NOTE 2—The preliminary investigation and sampling of potential aggregate sources and types occupies a very important place in determining the availability and suitability of the largest single constituent entering into the construction. It influences the type of construction from the standpoint of economics and governs the necessary material control to ensure durability of the resulting structure, from the aggregate standpoint. This investigation should be done only by a responsible trained and experienced person. For more comprehensive guidance, see the Appendix.

4. Securing Samples

4.1 *General*—Where practicable, samples to be tested for quality shall be obtained from the finished product. Samples from the finished product to be tested for abrasion loss shall not be subject to further crushing or manual reduction in particle size in preparation for the abrasion test unless the size of the finished product is such that it requires further reduction for testing purposes.

4.2 *Inspection*—The material shall be inspected to determine discernible variations. The seller shall provide suitable equipment needed for proper inspection and sampling.

4.3 *Procedure:*

4.3.1 *Sampling from a Flowing Aggregate Stream (Bins or Belt Discharge)*—Select units to be sampled by a random method, such as Practice D 3665, from the production. Obtain at least three approximately equal increments, selected at random from the unit being sampled, and combine to form a field sample whose mass equals or exceeds the minimum recommended in 4.4.2. Take each increment from the entire cross section of the material as it is being

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-4 on Road and Paving Materials and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D04.30 on Methods of Sampling.

Current edition approved Oct. 30, 1987. Published December 1987. Originally published as D 75 – 20 T. Last previous edition D 75 – 82.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 05.05.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.03.

[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

* A Summary of Changes section appears at the end of this practice.

000252

discharged. It is usually necessary to have a special device constructed for use at each particular plant. This device consists of a pan of sufficient size to intercept the entire cross section of the discharge stream and hold the required quantity of material without overflowing. A set of rails may be necessary to support the pan as it is passed under the discharge stream. Insofar as is possible, keep bins continuously full or nearly full to reduce segregation.

NOTE 3—Sampling the initial discharge or the final few tons from a bin or conveyor belt increases the chances of obtaining segregated material and should be avoided.

4.3.2 *Sampling from the Conveyor Belt*—Select units to be sampled by a random method, such as Practice D 3665, from the production. Obtain at least three approximately equal increments, selected at random, from the unit being sampled and combine to form a field sample whose mass equals or exceeds the minimum recommended in 4.4.2. Stop the conveyor belt while the sample increments are being obtained. Insert two templates, the shape of which conforms to the shape of the belt in the aggregate stream on the belt, and space them such that the material contained between them will yield an increment of the required weight. Carefully scoop all material between the templates into a suitable container and collect the fines on the belt with a brush and dust pan and add to the container.

4.3.3 *Sampling from Stockpiles or Transportation Units*—Avoid sampling coarse aggregate or mixed coarse and fine aggregate from stockpiles or transportation units whenever possible, particularly when the sampling is done for the purpose of determining aggregate properties that may be dependent upon the grading of the sample. If circumstances make it necessary to obtain samples from a stockpile of coarse aggregate or a stockpile of combined coarse and fine aggregate, design a sampling plan for the specific case under consideration. This approach will allow the sampling agency to use a sampling plan that will give a confidence in results obtained therefrom that is agreed upon by all parties concerned to be acceptable for the particular situation. The sampling plan shall define the number of samples necessary to represent lots and sublots of specific sizes. General principles for sampling from stockpiles are applicable to sampling from trucks, rail cars, barges or other transportation units. For general guidance in sampling from stockpiles, see the Appendix.

4.3.4 *Sampling from Roadway (Bases and Subbases)*—Sample units selected by a random method, such as Practice D 3665, from the construction. Obtain at least three approximately equal increments, selected at random from the unit being sampled, and combine to form a field sample whose mass equals or exceeds the minimum recommended in 4.4.2. Take all increments from the roadway for the full depth of the material, taking care to exclude any underlying material. Clearly mark the specific areas from which each increment is to be removed: a metal template placed over the area is a definite aid in securing approximately equal increment weights.

4.4 *Number and Masses of Field Samples:*

TABLE 1 Size of Samples

Maximum Nominal Size of Aggregates[A]	Approximate Minimum Mass of Field Samples, lb (kg)[B]
Fine Aggregate	
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	25 (10)
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	25 (10)
Coarse Aggregate	
⅜ in. (9.5 mm)	25 (10)
½ in. (12.5 mm)	35 (15)
¾ in. (19.0 mm)	55 (25)
1 in. (25.0 mm)	110 (50)
1½ in. (37.5 mm)	165 (75)
2 in. (50 mm)	220 (100)
2½ in. (63 mm)	275 (125)
3 in. (75 mm)	330 (150)
3½ in. (90 mm)	385 (175)

[A] For processed aggregate the nominal maximum size of particles is the largest sieve size listed in the applicable specification, upon which any material is permitted to be retained.

[B] For combined coarse and fine aggregates (for example, base or subbase) minimum weight shall be coarse aggregate minimum plus 25 lb (10 kg).

4.4.1 The number of field samples (obtained by one of the methods described in 4.3) required depends on the criticality of, and variation in, the properties to be measured. Designate each unit from which a field sample is to be obtained prior to sampling. The number of field samples from the production should be sufficient to give the desired confidence in test results.

NOTE 4—Guidance for determining the number of samples required to obtain the desired level of confidence in test results may be found in Test Method D 2234, Practice E 105, Practice E 122, and Practice E 141.

4.4.2 The field sample masses cited are tentative. The masses must be predicated on the type and number of tests to which the material is to be subjected and sufficient material obtained to provide for the proper execution of these tests. Standard acceptance and control tests are covered by ASTM standards and specify the portion of the field sample required for each specific test. Generally speaking, the amounts specified in Table 1 will provide adequate material for routine grading and quality analysis. Extract test portions from the field sample according to Practice C 702 or as required by other applicable test methods.

5. Shipping Samples

5.1 Transport aggregates in bags or other containers so constructed as to preclude loss or contamination of any part of the sample, or damage to the contents from mishandling during shipment.

5.2 Shipping containers for aggregate samples shall have suitable individual identification attached and enclosed so that field reporting, laboratory logging, and test reporting may be facilitated.

6. Keywords

6.1 aggregates, exploration of potential sources; aggregates, number and sizes needed to estimate character; aggregates, sampling

000253

APPENDIXES

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. SAMPLING AGGREGATE FROM STOCKPILES OR TRANSPORTATION UNITS

X1.1 Scope

X1.1.1 In some situations it is mandatory to sample aggregates that have been stored in stockpiles or loaded into rail cars, barges, or trucks. In such cases the procedure should ensure that segregation does not introduce a serious bias in the results.

X1.2 Sampling from Stockpiles

X1.2.1 In sampling material from stockpiles it is very difficult to ensure unbiased samples, due to the segregation which often occurs when material is stockpiled, with coarser particles rolling to the outside base of the pile. For coarse or mixed coarse and fine aggregate, every effort should be made to enlist the services of power equipment to develop a separate, small sampling pile composed of materials drawn from various levels and locations in the main pile after which several increments may be combined to compose the field sample. If necessary to indicate the degree of variability existing within the main pile, separate samples should be drawn from separate areas of the pile.

X1.2.2 Where power equipment is not available, samples from stockpiles should be made up of at least three increments taken from the top third, at the mid-point, and at the bottom third of the volume of the pile. A board shoved vertically into the pile just above the sampling point aids in preventing further segregation. In sampling stockpiles of fine aggregate the outer layer, which may have become segregated, should be removed and the sample taken from the material beneath. Sampling tubes approximately 1¼-in. (30-mm) min by 6 ft (2-m) min in length may be inserted into the pile at random locations to extract a minimum of five increments of material to form the sample.

X1.3 Sampling from Transportation Units

X1.3.1 In sampling coarse aggregates from railroad cars or barges, effort should be made to enlist the services of power equipment capable of exposing the material at various levels and random locations. Where power equipment is not available, a common procedure requires excavation of three or more trenches across the unit at points that will, from visual appearance, give a reasonable estimate of the characteristics of the load. The trench bottom should be approximately level, at least 1 ft (0.3 m) in width and in depth below the surface. A minimum of three increments from approximately equally spaced points along each trench should be taken by pushing a shovel downward into the material. Coarse aggregate in trucks should be sampled in essentially the same manner as for rail cars or barges, except for adjusting the number of increments according to the size of the truck. For fine aggregate in transportation units, sampling tubes as described in X1.2 may be used to extract an appropriate number of increments to form the sample.

X2. EXPLORATION OF POTENTIAL AGGREGATE SOURCES

X2.1 Scope

X2.1.1 Sampling for evaluation of potential aggregate sources should be performed by a responsible trained and experienced person. Because of the wide variety of conditions under which sampling may have to be done it is not possible to describe detailed procedures applicable to all circumstances. This appendix is intended to provide general guidance and list more comprehensive references.

X2.2 Sampling Stone from Quarries or Ledges

X2.2.1 *Inspection*—The ledge or quarry face should be inspected to determine discernible variations or strata. Differences in color and structure should be recorded.

X2.2.2 *Sampling and Size of Sample*—Separate samples having a mass of at least 50 lb (approximately 25 kg) should be obtained from each discernible stratum. The sample should not include material weathered to such an extent that it is no longer suitable for the purpose intended. One or more pieces in each sample should be at least 6 by 6 by 4 in. (150 by 150 by 100 mm) in size with the bedding plane plainly marked, and this piece should be free of seams or fractures.

X2.2.3 *Record*—In addition to the general information accompanying all samples the following information should accompany samples taken from ledges or quarry faces:

X2.2.3.1 Approximate quantity available. (If quantity is very large this may be recorded as practically unlimited.)

X2.2.3.2 Quantity and character of overburden.

X2.2.3.3 A detailed record showing boundaries and location of material represented by each sample.

NOTE X2.1—A sketch, plan, and elevation, showing the thickness and location of the different layers is recommended for this purpose.

X2.3 Sampling Roadside or Bank Run Sand and Gravel Deposits

X2.3.1 *Inspection*—Potential sources of bank run sand and gravel may include previously worked pits from which there is an exposed face or potential deposits discovered through air-photo interpretation, geophysical exploration, or other types of terrain investigation.

X2.3.2 *Sampling*—Samples should be so chosen from each different stratum in the deposit discernible to the sampler. An estimate of the quantity of the different materials should be made. If the deposit is worked as an open-face bank or pit, samples should be taken by channeling the face

000254

vertically, bottom to top, so as to represent the materials proposed for use. Overburdened or disturbed material should not be included in the sample. Test holes should be excavated or drilled at numerous locations in the deposit to determine the quality of the material and the extent of the deposit beyond the exposed face, if any. The number and depth of test holes will depend upon the quantity of the material needed, topography of the area, nature of the deposit, character of the material, and potential value of the material in the deposit. If visual inspection indicates that there is considerable variation in the material, individual samples should be selected from the material in each well defined stratum. Each sample should be thoroughly mixed and quartered if necessary so that the field sample thus obtained will be at least 25 lb (12 kg) for sand and 75 lb (35 kg) if the deposit contains an appreciable amount of coa aggregate.

X2.3.3 *Record*—In addition to the general i ati accompanying all samples the following information shou accompany samples of bank run sand and gravel:

X2.3.3.1 Location of supply.

X2.3.3.2 Estimate of approximate quantity available.

X2.3.3.3 Quantity and character of overburden.

X2.3.3.4 Length of haul to proposed site of work.

X2.3.3.5 Character of haul (kind of road, maximu grades, etc.)

X2.3.3.6 Details as to extent and location of materi represented by each sample.

NOTE X2.2—A sketch of plans and elevations, showing the thickne and location of different layers, is recommended for this purpose.

X3. NUMBER AND SIZE OF INCREMENTS NEEDED TO ESTIMATE CHARACTER OF UNIT SAMPLED

X3.1 Scope

X3.1.1 This appendix presents the rationale used by the responsible committee in the development of this practice.

X3.2 Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard

X3.2.1 *field sample*—a quantity of the material to be tested of sufficient size to provide an acceptable estimate of the average quality of a unit.

X3.2.2 *lot*—a sizable isolated quantity of bulk material from a single source, assumed to have been produced by the same process (for example, a day's production or a specific mass or volume).

X3.2.3 *test portion*—a quantity of the material of sufficient size extracted from the larger field sample by a procedure designed to ensure accurate representation of the field sample, and thus of the unit sampled.

X3.2.4 *unit*—a batch or finite subdivision of a lot of bulk material (for example, a truck load or a specific area covered).

X3.3 Test Unit, Size, and Variability

X3.3.1 The unit to be represented by a single field sampl should neither be so large as to mask the effects of significar variability within the unit nor be so small as to be affected b the inherent variability between small portions of any bul material.

X3.3.2 A unit of bulk material composed of grade aggregate or aggregate mixtures might consist of a ful truckload. If it were possible, the entire load might be tested as a practical matter, a field sample is composed of o more increments chosen at random from the mater i loaded or unloaded from the truck. Research has shown tha such a procedure permits an acceptable estimate to be mad of the average gradation that might be measured from 15 o 20 increments from the truck.

X3.3.3 Significant variability with a lot of material, where it might exist, should be indicated by statistical measures such as the standard deviation between units selected a random from within the lot.

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

This section identifies the location of selected changes to this practice that have been incorporated since the last issue. For the convenience of the user, Committee D-4 has highlighted those changes that may impact the use of this practice. This section may also include descriptions of the changes or reasons for the changes, or both.

(1) Appendix X3 was added.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000255

Designation: D 420 – 87

344

Standard Guide for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 420; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

INTRODUCTION

Investigation, sampling, and identification of subsurface materials involve complex techniques accomplished by many different procedures and interpretations. These are frequently site specific and are influenced by geological and geographical conditions; purpose of the investigation; design requirements; and the background, training, and experience of the investigator.

This guide for soil, rock, and ground water investigation and sampling, based on standard procedures, will lessen inconsistency and will encourage rational methods of site evaluation. An acceptable and consistent investigation and sampling program will help to determine the influence of geologic and geographic environment on subsurface conditions.

1. Scope

1.1 This guide identifies recognized methods by which soil, rock, and ground water conditions may be determined. The objective of the investigation should be to identify and locate, both horizontally and vertically, significant soil and rock types and ground water conditions present within a given site area and to establish the characteristics of the subsurface materials by sampling and in situ testing. Laboratory testing of soil and rock samples is governed by other ASTM standards.

1.2 *Key Words:*

1.2.1 *Site Investigations (see Practice D 3584):*

UF Reconnaissance Surveys
Subsurface Investigations
Geological Investigations
Field Investigations
BT Explorations
Feasibility Studies
NT *Hydrologic Investigations*
Foundation Investigations
Geophysical Investigation
RT Soil Surveys
Maps
Preliminary Investigations
Sampling

1.3 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 119 Definitions of Terms Relating to Dimension Stone[2]
C 294 Descriptive Nomenclature of Constituents of Natural Mineral Aggregates[3]
C 851 Practice for Estimating Scratch Hardness of Coarse Aggregate Particles[3]
D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[2]
D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]
D 1194 Test Method for Bearing Capacity of Soil for Static Load on Spread Footings[2]
D 1452 Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings[2]
D 1586 Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]
D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]
D 2113 Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation[2]
D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]
D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]
D 2573 Test Method for Field Vane Shear Test in Cohesive Soil[2]
D 2607 Classification of Peats, Mosses, Humus, and Related Products[2]
D 2937 Test Method for Density of Soil In Place by the Drive-Cylinder Method[2]
D 3282 Practice for Classification of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures for Highway Construction Purposes[2]
D 3385 Test Method for Infiltration Rate of Soils in Field Using Double-Ring Infiltrometers[2]
D 3397 Methods for Triaxial Classification of Base Materials, Soils, and Soil Mixtures[4]
D 3441 Test Method for Deep, Quasi-Static, Cone and Friction-Cone Penetration Tests of Soil[2]
D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

[1] This guide is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.01 on Surface and Subsurface Reconnaissance.

Current edition approved Aug. 19, 1987. Published October 1987. Originally published as D 420 – 65 T. Last previous edition D 420 – 69 (1979)[ε1].

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.03.

000256

D 3584 Practice for Indexing Papers and Reports on Soil and Rock for Engineering Purposes[2]
D 3740 Practice for the Evaluation of Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction[2]
D 4083 Practice for Description of Frozen Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]
D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]
D 4427 Classification of Peat Samples by Laboratory Testing[2]
G 51 Test Method for pH of Soil for Use in Corrosion Testing[2]
G 57 Method for Field Measurement of Soil Resistivity Using the Wenner Four-Electrode Method[2]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 An adequate soil, rock, and ground water investigation provides pertinent information for decision making on one or more of the following subjects:

3.1.1 Location of the proposed construction both vertically and horizontally.

3.1.2 Location and preliminary evaluation of suitable borrow and other local sources of construction material.

3.1.3 Need for special excavating and dewatering techniques.

3.1.4 Investigations of slope stability in natural slopes, cuts, and embankments.

3.1.5 Conceptual selection of embankment types, foundations for structures, and hydraulic barrier requirements.

3.1.6 Ground water resource planning and development of detailed investigations.

3.1.7 Identification of ground water contamination and development of detailed monitoring studies.

3.1.8 Development of additional detailed subsurface investigations for specific structures or facilities.

3.2 A subsurface soil, rock, and ground water investigation should provide sufficiently large soil and rock samples of such quality as to allow adequate testing to determine the soil or rock classification or mineralogic type, or both, and the engineering properties pertinent to the proposed design.

3.3 This guide is not meant to be an inflexible description of investigation requirements; other techniques may be applied as appropriate.

4. Apparatus

4.1 The type of equipment required for a subsurface investigation depends upon various factors including the type of subsurface material, the depth of exploration, the nature of the terrain, and the intended use of the data.

4.2 *Hand Augers, Hole Diggers, Shovels, and Push Tube Samplers*, suitable for exploration of surficial soils to depths of 3 to 9 ft (1 to 3 m).

4.3 *Earth Excavation Equipment*, such as backhoes, draglines, and drilled pier augers (screw or bucket) to allow in situ examination of soil deposits and sampling of materials containing very large particles.

5. Techniques

5.1 Geophysical or remote sensing techniques may be used for mapping of the areal extent of geological formations and for evaluating variations in soil and rock properties.

5.1.1 Satellite and aircraft spectral mapping tools, such as LANDSAT, may be used to find and map the areal extent of subsurface materials and geologic structure. Interpretation of aircraft photographs and satellite imagery may locate and identify significant geologic features that may be indicative of faults and fractures. Some ground control is generally required to verify information derived from remote sensing data. Table 13.8 of Ref. (1)[5] is a useful summary of remote sensing capabilities.

5.1.2 Seismic refraction/reflection and ground penetrating radar techniques may be used to map soil horizons and depth profiles, water tables, and depth to bedrock in many situations, with depth penetration and resolution varying with local conditions. Electromagnetic induction, electrical resistivity, and induced polarization (or complex resistivity) techniques may be used to map variations in water content and quality, clay horizons, stratification, and depth to aquifer/bedrock. Other geophysical techniques such as gravity and magnetic methods may be useful under certain specific conditions. Crosshole shear wave velocity measurements may provide soil and rock parameters for dynamic analyses.

5.4 Currently available ASTM standards on boring and sampling are:

5.4.1 Practice D 1452 on auger boring.
5.4.2 Method D 1586 on standard penetration test.
5.4.3 Practice D 1587 on thin walled tube sampling.
5.4.4 Practice D 2113 on diamond core drilling.
5.4.5 Test Method D 2573 on field vane shear test.
5.4.6 Test Method D 3385 on double ring infiltrometer.
5.4.7 Method D 3441 on cone penetration tests.
5.4.8 Practice D 3550 on ring-lined barrel sampling.

6. Exploration Plan

6.1 The project design and performance requirements must be established prior to final development of the exploration plan. A complete soil, rock, and ground water investigation should encompass the following activities:

6.1.1 Review of available information on the geologic history, rock, soil, and ground water conditions occurring at the proposed location and in the immediate vicinity of the site.

6.1.2 Interpretation of air-photo and other remote sensing data.

6.1.3 Field reconnaissance for identification of surficial geologic conditions, mapping of stratigraphic exposures and outcrops, and examination of the performance of existing structures.

6.1.4 On site investigation of the surface and subsurface materials by geophysical surveys, borings, or test pits.

6.1.5 Recovery of representative disturbed samples for laboratory classification tests of soil, rock, and local construction material. These should be supplemented by undisturbed specimens suitable for the determination of those engineering properties pertinent to the investigation.

6.1.6 Determination of the position of the ground water table, or water tables if there is perched or artesian ground

[5] The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to the list of references at the end of this standard.

000257

water, and of the variability of that position in both short and long time frames.

6.1.7 Determination of the location of suitable foundation material, either bedrock or satisfactory load-bearing soils.

6.1.8 Field identification of soil and rock types with the depth of their occurrence and the locations of their structural discontinuities.

6.1.9 Evaluation of the performance of existing installations, relative to their foundation material and environment in the immediate vicinity of the proposed site.

7. Reconnaissance of Project Area

7.1 Technical data should be reviewed before any field program is started. This includes, but is not limited to, topographic maps, airphotos, satellite imagery, geologic maps, statewide or county soil surveys and mineral resource surveys, and engineering soil maps covering the proposed project area. Reports of subsurface investigations of nearby or adjacent projects should be studied.

NOTE 1—While certain of the older maps and reports may be obsolete and of limited value in the light of current knowledge, a comparison of the old with the new will often reveal valuable unexpected information.

7.1.1 The United States Geological Survey and the geological surveys of the various states are the principal sources of geologic maps and reports on mineral resources and ground water.

7.1.2 United States Department of Agriculture Soil Conservation Service soil survey reports, where available and of recent date, should enable the engineer to estimate the range in soil profile characteristics to depths of 5 or 6 ft (1.5 or 2 m) for each soil mapped.

NOTE 2—Each soil type has a distinctive soil profile due to age, parent material, relief, climatic condition, and vegetative cover. These properties can assist in identifying the various soil types, each requiring special engineering considerations and treatment. Similar engineering soil properties are often found where similar soil profile characteristics exist. Changes in soil properties in adjacent areas often indicate changes in parent material or relief.

7.2 In areas where descriptive data are limited by inadequate geologic or soils maps, the soil and rock in open cuts in the vicinity of the proposed project should be studied and various soil and rock profiles noted. Field notes of such studies should include data outlined in 8.4.

7.3 Where a preliminary map covering the area of the project is desired, it can be prepared on maps compiled from airphotos showing the ground conditions. The distribution of the predominant soil and rock deposits likely to be encountered during the investigation may be shown using data obtained from geologic maps and limited ground reconnaissance. Experienced airphoto interpreters can deduce much subsurface data from a study of black and white, color, and infrared photographs because similar soil or rock conditions, or both, usually have similar airphoto patterns in regions of similar climate or vegetation.

7.4 In areas where documentary information is insufficient, some knowledge of subsurface conditions can be obtained from land owners and local well drillers and construction people.

NOTE 3—This preliminary map may be expanded into a detailed engineering map by locating all test holes, pits, and sampling stations and by revising boundaries as determined from the detailed subsurface survey.

8. Determination of Subsurface Conditions

8.1 Subsurface conditions are positively defined only at the individual test pit, hole, boring, or open cut examined. A stratigraphic profile can be developed by detailed investigations only where determinations of a continuous relationship of the depths and locations of various types of soil and rock can be made. This phase of the investigation may be implemented by plotting logs of soil and rock exposures in walls of excavations or cut areas or by plotting logs of the test borings, or both, and then interpolating between these logs. The spacing of these investigations will depend on the geologic complexity of the project area and on the importance of soil and rock continuity to the project design. Exploration should be deep enough to identify all strata that might be significantly affected by the proposed use of the site and to develop the engineering data required to allow analysis of the items listed in Section 3 for each project.

8.2 Geophysical survey methods may be used to supplement borehole and outcrop data and to interpolate between holes. Seismic, ground penetrating radar, and electrical resistivity methods can be particularly valuable when distinct differences in the properties of contiguous subsurface materials are indicated.

8.2.1 The seismic refraction method is especially useful in determining depth to, or rippability of, rock in locations where successively denser strata are encountered.

8.2.2 The seismic reflection method is useful in delineating geological units at depths below 10 ft (3 m). It is not constrained by layers of low seismic velocity and is especially useful in areas of rapid stratigraphic change.

8.2.3 The electrical resistivity method is similarly useful in determining depth to rock and anomalies in the stratigraphic profile, in evaluating stratified formations where a denser stratum overlies a less dense stratum, and in investigation of prospective sand-gravel or other sources of borrow material. Resistivity parameters also are required for the design of grounding systems and cathodic protection for buried structures.

8.2.4 The ground penetrating radar method is useful in defining soil and rock layers and manmade structures in the depth range of 1 to 30 ft (⅓ to 10 m).

NOTE 4—Geophysical investigations can be a useful guide in determining boring or test hole locations. The interpretation of geophysical studies should be verified by borings or test excavations.

8.3 The depth of exploratory borings or test pits for roadbeds, airport paving, or vehicle parking areas should be to at least 5 ft (1.5 m) below the proposed subgrade elevation. Special circumstances may increase this depth. Borings for structures or embankments should extend below the level of significant influence of the proposed load as determined by a subsurface stress analysis.

8.3.1 When drainage may be influenced by either pervious water-bearing materials or impervious materials that can block internal drainage, borings should extend down into these materials sufficiently to determine those engineering and geologic properties relevant to the project design.

000258

8.3.2 In all borrow areas the borings or test pits should be sufficient in number and depth to outline the required quantities of material meeting the specified quality requirements.

8.3.3 Where frost penetration must be considered in the behavior of soil and rock, borings should extend significantly below the depth of maximum frost penetration.

8.4 Exploration records shall be kept in a systematic manner for each project. Such records shall include:

8.4.1 Description of each site or area investigated. Each test hole, boring, test pit, or geophysical test site shall be clearly located (horizontally and vertically) with reference to some established coordinate system, datum, or permanent monument.

8.4.2 Logs of each test hole, boring, test pit, or cut surface exposure in which the field description and location of each material encountered is clearly shown either by symbol or word description.

NOTE 5—Color photographs of rock cores, soil samples, and exposed strata may be of considerable value. Each photograph should include an identifying number or symbol, a date, and a scale.

8.4.3 Identification of all soils based on Practice D 2488, Classification D 2607, or Practice D 4083. Identification of rock materials based on Definitions of Terms C 119, Descriptive Nomenclature C 294, or Practice C 851. Classification of soil materials is discussed in Section 10.

8.4.4 Seepage and water-bearing zones and piezometric elevations found in each test hole, boring, or test pit.

8.4.5 In situ test results, where required, such as the penetration resistance or vane shear tests discussed in 9.3, plate load tests, or other in situ tests for engineering properties of soils or rock.

8.4.6 Percentage of core recovery and rock quality designation in core drilling as outlined in 9.3.5.

8.4.7 Graphical presentation of field and laboratory data and its interpretation facilitates comprehensive understanding of subsurface conditions.

9. Sampling and In Situ Testing

9.1 Obtain representative samples of each subsurface material that is significant to the project design and construction. The size and type of sample required is dependent upon the tests to be performed and the percentage of coarse particles in the sample.

NOTE 6—The size of disturbed or bulk samples for routine tests may vary at the discretion of the geotechnical investigator, but the following quantities are suggested as suitable for most materials: (*a*) Visual classification—50 to 500 g (2 oz to 1 lb); (*b*) Soil constants and particle size analysis of non-gravelly soil—500 g to 2.5 kg (1 to 5 lb); (*c*) Soil compaction tests and sieve analysis of gravelly soils—20 to 40 kg (40 to 80 lb); (*d*) Aggregate manufacture or aggregate properties tests—50 to 200 kg (100 to 400 lb).

9.2 Accurately identify each sample with the boring, test hole, or testpit number and depth below reference ground surface from which it was taken. Place a waterproof identification tag inside the container, securely close the container, protect it to withstand rough handling, and mark it with proper identification on the outside. Keep samples for natural moisture determination in sealed containers to prevent moisture loss. When drying of samples may affect classification or engineering properties test results, protect them to minimize moisture loss. Practices D 4220 address the transportation of samples from field to laboratory

9.3 Recommended ASTM procedures for in situ sampling and testing are as follows:

9.3.1 Practice D 75 describes the sampling of coarse and fine aggregates for the preliminary investigation of a potential source of supply.

9.3.2 Test Method D 1194 describes the estimation of the bearing capacity of soil in place by means of field loading tests. The results can be useful for design of spread footings based on static loading conditions. The load test should be performed in conjunction with other field tests, generally in accordance with Method D 1586 or Method D 3441, to allow a determination of the applicability of the results.

9.3.3 Practice D 1452 describes the use of augers in soil investigations and sampling where disturbed soil samples can be used. This procedure is also valuable in connection with ground water exploration. Depths of auger investigations are limited by ground water conditions, soil characteristics, and equipment used.

9.3.4 Method D 1586 describes a procedure to obtain representative soil samples for identification and classification laboratory tests and to measure the resistance of the soil to penetration by a standardized sampler.

9.3.5 Practice D 1587 describes a procedure to recover relatively undisturbed soil samples suitable for laboratory testing.

9.3.6 Practice D 2113 describes a procedure to recover intact samples of rock and certain soils too hard to sample by Method D 1586 or Practice D 1587.

9.3.7 Practice D 3550 describes a procedure to recover moderately disturbed, representative samples of soil for classification testing and in some cases shear or consolidation testing.

9.3.8 Test Method D 2573 describes a procedure to measure the in situ unit shear resistance of cohesive soils by rotation of a four-bladed vane in a horizontal plane.

9.3.9 Test Method D 2937 describes a procedure for pushing a thin-wall tube 4 to 6 in. (100 to 150 mm) into a soil mass to recover a relatively undisturbed sample of known volume allowing the measurement of wet or total density and natural moisture content.

9.3.10 Test Method D 3385 describes a procedure for field measurement of the infiltration rate of soils. Water under a constant head is allowed to seep into the top surface of a fixed soil area and the volume rate of inflow into a known volume of soil is measured.

9.3.11 Method D 3441 describes the determination of the end bearing and side friction components of the resistance to penetration of a conical penetrometer into a soil mass.

9.3.12 Method G 57 describes the measurement of the electrical resistivity of a soil mass. A Wenner four-electrode configuration is used.

NOTE 7—Other in situ test procedures are being prepared by ASTM Committee D-18.

10. Classification of Earth Materials

10.1 Identify samples of soil and rock after submission to the laboratory for identification and classification tests in accordance with one or more of the following standards or applicable references **(2 through 11)**, or both.

000259

10.1.1 Descriptive Nomenclature 294.
10.1.2 Test Method D 2487.
10.1.3 Practice D 3282.
10.1.4 Method D 3397.
10.1.5 Practice D 2488.
10.1.6 Practice D 4083.
10.1.7 Classification D 4427.

11. Subsurface Profile

11.1 Delineate subsurface profiles only from actual geophysical, test-hole, test-pit, or cut-surface data. Interpolation between locations should be made on the basis of available geologic knowledge of the area and should be clearly identified. The use of geophysical techniques as discussed in 8.2 is a valuable aid in such interpolation. Geophysical survey data should be identified separately from sample data or in situ test data.

12. Interpretation of Results

12.1 Interpret the results of an investigation in terms of actual findings and make every effort to collect and include all field and laboratory data from previous investigations in the same area. Extrapolation of data into local areas not surveyed and tested should be made only for conceptual studies. Such extrapolation can be done only where geologically uniform subsurface disposition of soil and rock is known to exist on the basis of other data. Engineering properties of the soil and rock encountered on important projects should not be predicted solely on field identification or classification but should be verified by laboratory tests made on samples collected in accordance with Section 9 or by in situ testing, or both.

12.2 The recommendations for design parameters can be made only by professional engineers or geologists specializing in the field of geotechnical engineering and familiar with the purpose, conditions, and requirements of the study. Soil mechanics, rock mechanics, and geomorphological concepts must be combined with a knowledge of geotechnical engineering or hydrogeology to make a complete application of the results of the soil, rock, and ground water investigation. Complete design recommendations may require a more detailed study than that envisioned by this guide.

13. Report

13.1 The report of a subsurface investigation shall include:

13.1.1 Location of the area investigated in terms pertinent to the project. This may include sketch maps or aerial photos on which the test pits, bore holes, and sample areas are located, as well as geomorphological data relevant to the determination of the various soil and rock types. Such data includes elevation contours, streambeds, sink holes, cliffs, and the like. Where feasible, include in the report a geologic map or an agronomic soils map, or both, of the area investigated.

13.1.2 Describe the investigation procedures and include copies of all borings and testhole logs, all laboratory test results, and graphical interpretations of the geophysical measurements.

13.1.3 Include cross sections delineating the extent of the stratigraphic units and note anomalies or otherwise significant conditions.

13.1.4 Describe and relate the findings obtained under Sections 7, 8, and 12, using the subhead titles for the respective sections.

14. Precision and Bias

14.1 This guide provides qualitative data only; therefore, a precision and bias statement is not applicable.

REFERENCES

(1) Reeves, R. G., Anson, A., and Landen, D., eds., *Manual of Remote Sensing*, 2nd Ed., American Society of Photogrametry, Falls Church, VA.
(2) Hvorslev, M. J., "Subsurface Exploration and Sampling of Soils," Engineering Foundation, New York, 1948.
(3) "Classification of Rocks," Colorado School of Mines, Vol. 50, No. 1, 1955.
(4) Higgins, M. W., "Cataclastic Rocks," U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 687, 1971.
(5) Howell, J. V., and Weller, J. M., eds., "Glossary of Geology," American Geological Institute, Washington, DC, 1972.
(6) Wahls, H. E., ed., "In Situ Measurement of Soil Properties," *Proc. Specialty Conference of the Geotechnical Engineering Division*, ASCE, NC State Univ., Raleigh, NC, 1975.
(7) ASCE Manual No. 56, "Subsurface Investigation for Design and Construction of Foundations of Buildings," American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY, 1976.
(8) Dowding, C. H., ed., "Site Characterization and Exploration," *Proc. Specialty Workshop*, ASCE, Northwestern Univ., Evanston, IL, 1978.
(9) Mori, H., ed., "State of the Art on Current Practice of Soil Sampling," *Proc. International Symposium of Soil Sampling*, Int. Soc. Soil Mech. and Foundation Engineering, New York, NY, 1979.
(10) Alsud, S. A., "Engineering Geophysics," Bul. AEG, Vol. XIX, No. 2, 1982.
(11) Trautman, C. H., and Kulhawy, F. H., "Data Sources for Engineering Geologic Studies," Bul. AEG, Vol. XX, No. 4, 1983.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000260

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 421 – 85

Standard Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 421; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers the dry preparation of soil samples as received from the field for particle-size analysis and the determination of the soil constants.

1.2 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of whoever uses this standard to consult and establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 2217 Practice for Wet Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[2]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 This practice can be used to prepare samples for particle-size and plasticity tests where it is desired to determine test values on air-dried samples, or where it is known that air drying does not have an effect on test results relative to samples prepared in accordance with Practice D 2217.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Balance*, sensitive to 0.1 g.

4.2 *Mortar and Rubber-Covered Pestle*, suitable for breaking up the aggregations of soil particles.

4.3 *Sieves*—A series of sieves, of square mesh woven wire cloth, conforming to Specification E 11. The sieves required are as follows:

No. 4 (4.75-mm)
No. 10 (2.00-mm)
No. 40 (425-μm)

4.4 *Sampler*—A riffle sampler or sample splitter, for quartering the samples.

5. Sampling

5.1 Expose the soil sample as received from the field to the air at room temperature until dried thoroughly. Break up the aggregations thoroughly in the mortar with a rubber-covered pestle. Select a representative sample of the amount required to perform the desired tests by the method of quartering or by the use of a sampler. The amounts of material required to perform the individual tests are as follows:

5.1.1 *Particle-Size Analysis*—For the particle-size analysis, material passing a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve is required in amounts equal to 115 g of sandy soils and 65 g of either silt or clay soils.

5.1.2 *Tests for Soil Constants*—For the tests for soil constants, material passing the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve is required in total amount of 220 g, allocated as follows:

Test	Grams
Liquid limit	100
Plastic limit	15
Centrifuge moisture equivalent	10
Volumetric shrinkage	30
Check tests	65

6. Preparation of Test Sample

6.1 Select that portion of the air-dried sample selected for purpose of tests and record the mass as the mass of the total test sample uncorrected for hygroscopic moisture. Separate the test sample by sieving with a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve. Grind that fraction retained on the No. 10 sieve in a mortar with a rubber-covered pestle until the aggregations of soil particles are broken up into the separate grains. Then separate the ground soil into two fractions by sieving with a No. 10 sieve.

6.2 Wash that fraction retained after the second sieving free of all fine material, dry, and weigh. Record this mass as the mass of coarse material. Sieve the coarse material, after being washed and dried, on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and record the mass retained on the No. 4 sieve.

7. Test Sample for Particle-Size Analysis

7.1 Thoroughly mix together the fractions passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve in both sieving operations, and by the method of quartering or the use of a sampler, select a portion weighing approximately 115 g for sandy soils and approximately 65 g for silt and clay soil for particle-size analysis.

8. Test Sample for Soil Constants

8.1 Separate the remaining portion of the material passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve into two parts by means of a No. 40 (425-μm) sieve. Discard the fraction retained on the No. 40 sieve. Use the fraction passing the No. 40 sieve for the determination of the soil constants.

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.03 on Texture, Plasticity, and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved July 26, 1985. Published September 1985. Originally published as D 421 – 35 T. Last previous edition D 421 – 58 (1978)[ε1].

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

000262

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000263

Designation: D 422 – 63 (Reapproved 1990)ε1

344

Standard Test Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 422; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

ε1 NOTE—Section 19 was added editorially in September 1990.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the quantitative determination of the distribution of particle sizes in soils. The distribution of particle sizes larger than 75 μm (retained on the No. 200 sieve) is determined by sieving, while the distribution of particle sizes smaller than 75 μm is determined by a sedimentation process, using a hydrometer to secure the necessary data (Notes 1 and 2).

NOTE 1—Separation may be made on the No. 4 (4.75-mm), No. 40 (425-μm), or No. 200 (75-μm) sieve instead of the No. 10. For whatever sieve used, the size shall be indicated in the report.

NOTE 2—Two types of dispersion devices are provided: (*1*) a high-speed mechanical stirrer, and (*2*) air dispersion. Extensive investigations indicate that air-dispersion devices produce a more positive dispersion of plastic soils below the 20-μm size and appreciably less degradation on all sizes when used with sandy soils. Because of the definite advantages favoring air dispersion, its use is recommended. The results from the two types of devices differ in magnitude, depending upon soil type, leading to marked differences in particle size distribution, especially for sizes finer than 20 μm.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 421 Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[2]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

E 100 Specification for ASTM Hydrometers[4]

3. Apparatus

3.1 *Balances*—A balance sensitive to 0.01 g for weighing the material passing a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve, and a balance sensitive to 0.1 % of the mass of the sample to be weighed for weighing the material retained on a No. 10 sieve.

3.2 *Stirring Apparatus*—Either apparatus A or B may be used.

3.2.1 Apparatus A shall consist of a mechanically operated stirring device in which a suitably mounted electric motor turns a vertical shaft at a speed of not less than 10 000 rpm without load. The shaft shall be equipped with a replaceable stirring paddle made of metal, plastic, or hard rubber, as shown in Fig. 1. The shaft shall be of such length that the stirring paddle will operate not less than ¾ in. (19.0 mm) nor more than 1½ in. (38.1 mm) above the bottom of the dispersion cup. A special dispersion cup conforming to either of the designs shown in Fig. 2 shall be provided to hold the sample while it is being dispersed.

3.2.2 Apparatus B shall consist of an air-jet dispersion cup[5] (Note 3) conforming to the general details shown in Fig. 3 (Notes 4 and 5).

NOTE 3—The amount of air required by an air-jet dispersion cup is of the order of 2 ft^3/min; some small air compressors are not capable of supplying sufficient air to operate a cup.

NOTE 4—Another air-type dispersion device, known as a dispersion tube, developed by Chu and Davidson at Iowa State College, has been shown to give results equivalent to those secured by the air-jet dispersion cups. When it is used, soaking of the sample can be done in the sedimentation cylinder, thus eliminating the need for transferring the slurry. When the air-dispersion tube is used, it shall be so indicated in the report.

NOTE 5—Water may condense in air lines when not in use. This water must be removed, either by using a water trap on the air line, or by blowing the water out of the line before using any of the air for dispersion purposes.

3.3 *Hydrometer*—An ASTM hydrometer, graduated to read in either specific gravity of the suspension or grams per litre of suspension, and conforming to the requirements for hydrometers 151H or 152H in Specifications E 100. Dimensions of both hydrometers are the same, the scale being the only item of difference.

3.4 *Sedimentation Cylinder*—A glass cylinder essentially 18 in. (457 mm) in height and 2½ in. (63.5 mm) in diameter, and marked for a volume of 1000 mL. The inside diameter shall be such that the 1000-mL mark is 36 ± 2 cm from the bottom on the inside.

3.5 *Thermometer*—A thermometer accurate to 1°F (0.5°C).

3.6 *Sieves*—A series of sieves, of square-mesh woven-wire cloth, conforming to the requirements of Specification E 11. A full set of sieves includes the following (Note 6):

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.03 on Texture, Plasticity, and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved Nov. 21, 1963. Originally published 1935. Replaces D 422 – 62.

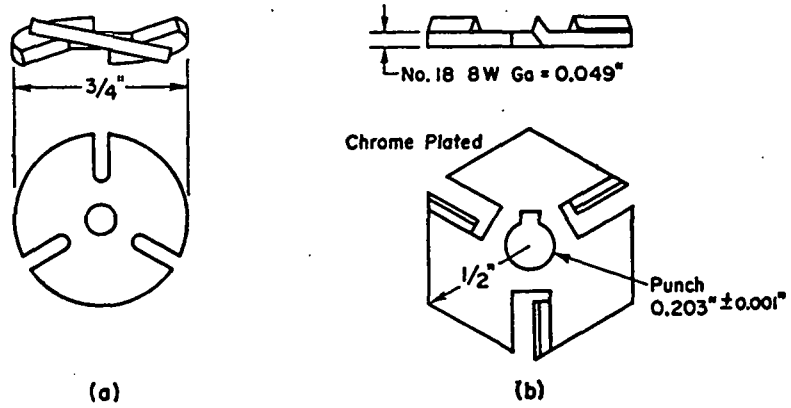
[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.03.

[5] Detailed working drawings for this cup are available at a nominal cost from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103. Order Adjunct No. 12-404220-00.

000264



Metric Equivalents					
in.	0.001	0.049	0.203	½	¾
mm	0.03	1.24	5.16	12.7	19.0

FIG. 1 Detail of Stirring Paddles

3-in. (75-mm)	No. 10 (2.00-mm)
2-in. (50-mm)	No. 20 (850-μm)
1½-in. (37.5-mm)	No. 40 (425-μm)
1-in. (25.0-mm)	No. 60 (250-μm)
¾-in. (19.0-mm)	No. 140 (106-μm)
⅜-in. (9.5-mm)	No. 200 (75-μm)
No. 4 (4.75-mm)	

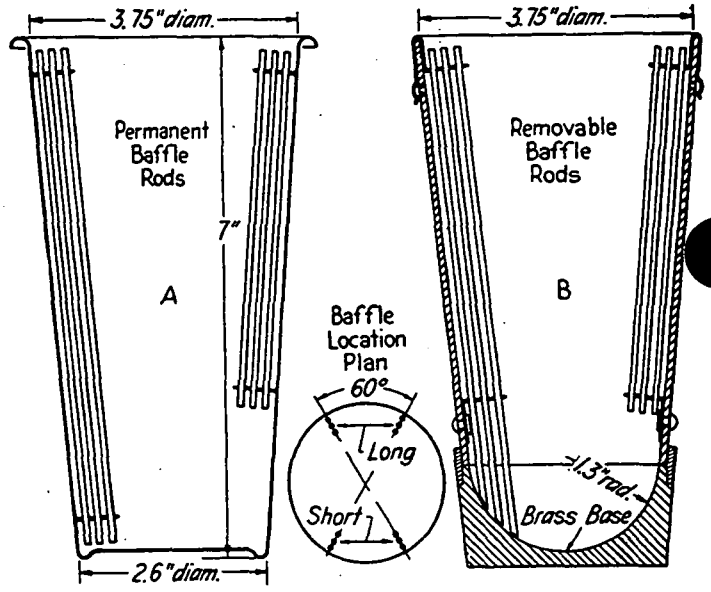
NOTE 6—A set of sieves giving uniform spacing of points for the graph, as required in Section 17, may be used if desired. This set consists of the following sieves:

3-in. (75-mm)	No. 16 (1.18-mm)
1½-in. (37.5-mm)	No. 30 (600-μm)
¾-in. (19.0-mm)	No. 50 (300-μm)
⅜-in. (9.5-mm)	No. 100 (150-μm)
No. 4 (4.75-mm)	No. 200 (75-μm)
No. 8 (2.36-mm)	

3.7 *Water Bath or Constant-Temperature Room*—A water bath or constant-temperature room for maintaining the soil suspension at a constant temperature during the hydrometer analysis. A satisfactory water tank is an insulated tank that maintains the temperature of the suspension at a convenient constant temperature at or near 68°F (20°C). Such a device is illustrated in Fig. 4. In cases where the work is performed in a room at an automatically controlled constant temperature, the water bath is not necessary.

3.8 *Beaker*—A beaker of 250-mL capacity.

3.9 *Timing Device*—A watch or clock with a second hand.



Metric Equivalents			
in.	1.3	2.6	3.75
mm	33	66	95.2

FIG. 2 Dispersion Cups of Apparatus

4. Dispersing Agent

4.1 A solution of sodium hexametaphosphate (sometimes called sodium metaphosphate) shall be used in distilled or demineralized water, at the rate of 40 g of sodium hexametaphosphate/litre of solution (Note 7).

NOTE 7—Solutions of this salt, if acidic, slowly revert or hydrolyze back to the orthophosphate form with a resultant decrease in dispersive action. Solutions should be prepared frequently (at least once a month) or adjusted to pH of 8 or 9 by means of sodium carbonate. Bottles containing solutions should have the date of preparation marked on them.

4.2 All water used shall be either distilled or demineralized water. The water for a hydrometer test shall be brought to the temperature that is expected to prevail during the hydrometer test. For example, if the sedimentation cylinder is to be placed in the water bath, the distilled or demineralized water to be used shall be brought to the temperature of the controlled water bath; or, if the sedimentation cylinder is used in a room with controlled temperature, the water for the test shall be at the temperature of the room. The basic temperature for the hydrometer test is 68°F (20°C). Small variations of temperature do not introduce differences that are of practical significance and do not prevent the use of corrections derived as prescribed.

000265

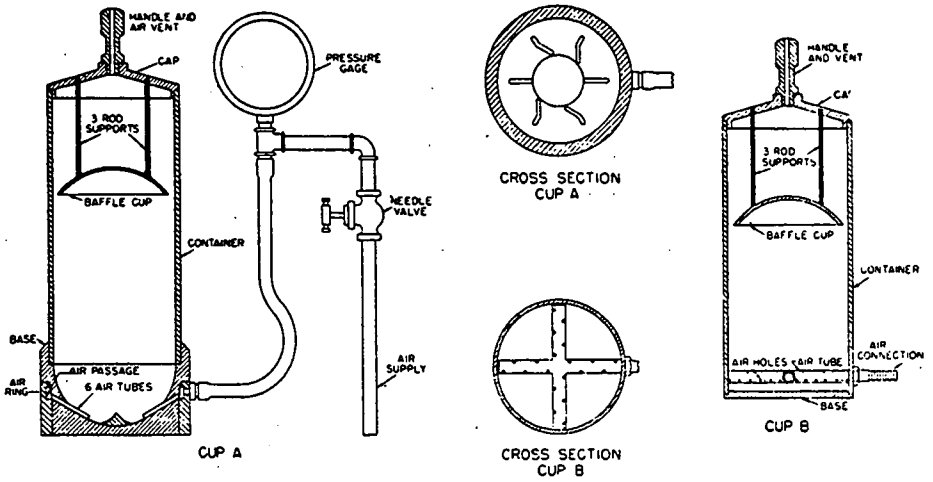


FIG. 3 Air-Jet Dispersion Cups of Apparatus B

5. Test Sample

5.1 Prepare the test sample for mechanical analysis as outlined in Practice D 421. During the preparation procedure the sample is divided into two portions. One portion contains only particles retained on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve while the other portion contains only particles passing the No. 10 sieve. The mass of air-dried soil selected for purpose of tests, as prescribed in Practice D 421, shall be sufficient to yield quantities for mechanical analysis as follows:

5.1.1 The size of the portion retained on the No. 10 sieve shall depend on the maximum size of particle, according to the following schedule:

Nominal Diameter of Largest Particles, in. (mm)	Approximate Minimum Mass of Portion, g
⅜ (9.5)	500
¾ (19.0)	1000
1 (25.4)	2000
1½ (38.1)	3000
2 (50.8)	4000
3 (76.2)	5000

5.1.2 The size of the portion passing the No. 10 sieve shall be approximately 115 g for sandy soils and approximately 65 g for silt and clay soils.

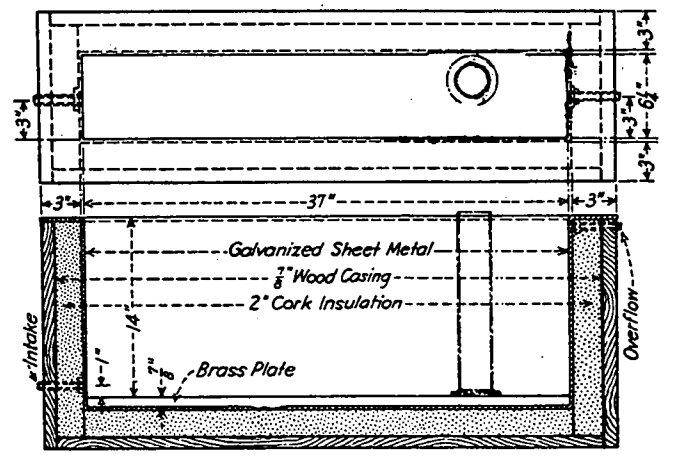
5.2 Provision is made in Section 5 of Practice D 421 for weighing of the air-dry soil selected for purpose of tests, the separation of the soil on the No. 10 sieve by dry-sieving and washing, and the weighing of the washed and dried fraction retained on the No. 10 sieve. From these two masses the percentages retained and passing the No. 10 sieve can be calculated in accordance with 12.1.

NOTE 8—A check on the mass values and the thoroughness of pulverization of the clods may be secured by weighing the portion passing the No. 10 sieve and adding this value to the mass of the washed and oven-dried portion retained on the No. 10 sieve.

SIEVE ANALYSIS OF PORTION RETAINED ON NO. 10 (2.00-mm) SIEVE

6. Procedure

6.1 Separate the portion retained on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve into a series of fractions using the 3-in. (75-mm), 2-in. (50-mm), 1½-in. (37.5-mm), 1-in. (25.0-mm), ¾-in. (19.0-mm), ⅜-in. (9.5-mm), No. 4 (4.75-mm), and No. 10 sieves, or as many as may be needed depending on the sample, or upon the specifications for the material under test.



Metric Equivalents

in.	⅞	1	3	6¼	14	37
mm	22.2	25.4	76.2	158.2	356	940

FIG. 4 Insulated Water Bath

6.2 Conduct the sieving operation by means of a lateral and vertical motion of the sieve, accompanied by a jarring action in order to keep the sample moving continuously over the surface of the sieve. In no case turn or manipulate fragments in the sample through the sieve by hand. Continue sieving until not more than 1 mass % of the residue on a sieve passes that sieve during 1 min of sieving. When mechanical sieving is used, test the thoroughness of sieving by using the hand method of sieving as described above.

6.3 Determine the mass of each fraction on a balance conforming to the requirements of 3.1. At the end of weighing, the sum of the masses retained on all the sieves used should equal closely the original mass of the quantity sieved.

000266

HYDROMETER AND SIEVE ANALYSIS OF PORTION PASSING THE NO. 10 (2.00-mm) SIEVE

7. Determination of Composite Correction for Hydrometer Reading

7.1 Equations for percentages of soil remaining in suspension, as given in 14.3, are based on the use of distilled or demineralized water. A dispersing agent is used in the water, however, and the specific gravity of the resulting liquid is appreciably greater than that of distilled or demineralized water.

7.1.1 Both soil hydrometers are calibrated at 68°F (20°C), and variations in temperature from this standard temperature produce inaccuracies in the actual hydrometer readings. The amount of the inaccuracy increases as the variation from the standard temperature increases.

7.1.2 Hydrometers are graduated by the manufacturer to be read at the bottom of the meniscus formed by the liquid on the stem. Since it is not possible to secure readings of soil suspensions at the bottom of the meniscus, readings must be taken at the top and a correction applied.

7.1.3 The net amount of the corrections for the three items enumerated is designated as the composite correction, and may be determined experimentally.

7.2 For convenience, a graph or table of composite corrections for a series of 1° temperature differences for the range of expected test temperatures may be prepared and used as needed. Measurement of the composite corrections may be made at two temperatures spanning the range of expected test temperatures, and corrections for the intermediate temperatures calculated assuming a straight-line relationship between the two observed values.

7.3 Prepare 1000 mL of liquid composed of distilled or demineralized water and dispersing agent in the same proportion as will prevail in the sedimentation (hydrometer) test. Place the liquid in a sedimentation cyclinder and the cylinder in the constant-temperature water bath, set for one of the two temperatures to be used. When the temperature of the liquid becomes constant, insert the hydrometer, and, after a short interval to permit the hydrometer to come to the temperature of the liquid, read the hydrometer at the top of the meniscus formed on the stem. For hydrometer 151H the composite correction is the difference between this reading and one; for hydrometer 152H it is the difference between the reading and zero. Bring the liquid and the hydrometer to the other temperature to be used, and secure the composite correction as before.

8. Hygroscopic Moisture

8.1 When the sample is weighed for the hydrometer test, weigh out an auxiliary portion of from 10 to 15 g in a small metal or glass container, dry the sample to a constant mass in an oven at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C), and weigh again. Record the masses.

9. Dispersion of Soil Sample

9.1 When the soil is mostly of the clay and silt sizes, weigh out a sample of air-dry soil of approximately 50 g. When the soil is mostly sand the sample should be approximately 100 g.

9.2 Place the sample in the 250-mL beaker and cover with 125 mL of sodium hexametaphosphate solution (40 g/L). Stir until the soil is thoroughly wetted. Allow to soak for at least 16 h.

9.3 At the end of the soaking period, disperse the sample further, using either stirring apparatus A or B. If stirring apparatus A is used, transfer the soil - water slurry from the beaker into the special dispersion cup shown in Fig. 2, washing any residue from the beaker into the cup with distilled or demineralized water (Note 9). Add distilled or demineralized water, if necessary, so that the cup is more than half full. Stir for a period of 1 min.

NOTE 9—A large size syringe is a convenient device for handling the water in the washing operation. Other devices include the wash-water bottle and a hose with nozzle connected to a pressurized distilled water tank.

9.4 If stirring apparatus B (Fig. 3) is used, remove the cover cap and connect the cup to a compressed air supply by means of a rubber hose. A air gage must be on the line between the cup and the control valve. Open the control valve so that the gage indicates 1 psi (7 kPa) pressure (Note 10). Transfer the soil - water slurry from the beaker to the air-jet dispersion cup by washing with distilled or demineralized water. Add distilled or demineralized water, if necessary, so that the total volume in the cup is 250 mL, but no more.

NOTE 10—The initial air pressure of 1 psi is required to prevent the soil - water mixture from entering the air-jet chamber when the mixture is transferred to the dispersion cup.

9.5 Place the cover cap on the cup and open the air control valve until the gage pressure is 20 psi (140 kPa). Disperse the soil according to the following schedule:

Plasticity Index	Dispersion Period, min
Under 5	5
6 to 20	10
Over 20	15

Soils containing large percentages of mica need be dispersed for only 1 min. After the dispersion period, reduce the gage pressure to 1 psi preparatory to transfer of soil - water slurry to the sedimentation cylinder.

10. Hydrometer Test

10.1 Immediately after dispersion, transfer the soil - water slurry to the glass sedimentation cylinder, and add distilled or demineralized water until the total volume is 1000 mL.

10.2 Using the palm of the hand over the open end of the cylinder (or a rubber stopper in the open end), turn the cylinder upside down and back for a period of 1 min to complete the agitation of the slurry (Note 11). At the end of 1 min set the cylinder in a convenient location and take hydrometer readings at the following intervals of time (measured from the beginning of sedimentation), or as many as may be needed, depending on the sample or the specification for the material under test: 2, 5, 15, 30, 60, 250, and 1440 min. If the controlled water bath is used, the sedimentation cylinder should be placed in the bath between the 2- and 5-min readings.

NOTE 11—The number of turns during this minute should be approximately 60, counting the turn upside down and back as two turns.

Any soil remaining in the bottom of the cylinder during the first few turns should be loosened by vigorous shaking of the cylinder while it is in the inverted position.

10.3 When it is desired to take a hydrometer reading, carefully insert the hydrometer about 20 to 25 s before the reading is due to approximately the depth it will have when the reading is taken. As soon as the reading is taken, carefully remove the hydrometer and place it with a spinning motion in a graduate of clean distilled or demineralized water.

NOTE 12—It is important to remove the hydrometer immediately after each reading. Readings shall be taken at the top of the meniscus formed by the suspension around the stem, since it is not possible to secure readings at the bottom of the meniscus.

10.4 After each reading, take the temperature of the suspension by inserting the thermometer into the suspension.

11. Sieve Analysis

11.1 After taking the final hydrometer reading, transfer the suspension to a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve and wash with tap water until the wash water is clear. Transfer the material on the No. 200 sieve to a suitable container, dry in an oven at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C) and make a sieve analysis of the portion retained, using as many sieves as desired, or required for the material, or upon the specification of the material under test.

CALCULATIONS AND REPORT

12. Sieve Analysis Values for the Portion Coarser than the No. 10 (2.00-mm) Sieve

12.1 Calculate the percentage passing the No. 10 sieve by dividing the mass passing the No. 10 sieve by the mass of soil originally split on the No. 10 sieve, and multiplying the result by 100. To obtain the mass passing the No. 10 sieve, subtract the mass retained on the No. 10 sieve from the original mass.

12.2 To secure the total mass of soil passing the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve, add to the mass of the material passing the No. 10 sieve the mass of the fraction passing the No. 4 sieve and retained on the No. 10 sieve. To secure the total mass of soil passing the ⅜-in. (9.5-mm) sieve, add to the total mass of soil passing the No. 4 sieve, the mass of the fraction passing the ⅜-in. sieve and retained on the No. 4 sieve. For the remaining sieves, continue the calculations in the same manner.

12.3 To determine the total percentage passing for each sieve, divide the total mass passing (see 12.2) by the total mass of sample and multiply the result by 100.

13. Hygroscopic Moisture Correction Factor

13.1 The hydroscopic moisture correction factor is the ratio between the mass of the oven-dried sample and the air-dry mass before drying. It is a number less than one, except when there is no hygroscopic moisture.

14. Percentages of Soil in Suspension

14.1 Calculate the oven-dry mass of soil used in the hydrometer analysis by multiplying the air-dry mass by the hygroscopic moisture correction factor.

14.2 Calculate the mass of a total sample represented by the mass of soil used in the hydrometer test, by dividing the oven-dry mass used by the percentage passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve, and multiplying the result by 100. This value is the weight W in the equation for percentage remaining in suspension.

TABLE 1 Values of Correction Factor, a, for Different Specific Gravities of Soil Particles[A]

Specific Gravity	Correction Factor[A]
2.95	0.94
2.90	0.95
2.85	0.96
2.80	0.97
2.75	0.98
2.70	0.99
2.65	1.00
2.60	1.01
2.55	1.02
2.50	1.03
2.45	1.05

[A] For use in equation for percentage of soil remaining in suspension when using Hydrometer 152H.

14.3 The percentage of soil remaining in suspension at the level at which the hydrometer is measuring the density of the suspension may be calculated as follows (Note 13): For hydrometer 151H:

$$P = [(100\,000/W) \times G/(G - G_1)](R - G_1)$$

NOTE 13—The bracketed portion of the equation for hydrometer 151H is constant for a series of readings and may be calculated first and then multiplied by the portion in the parentheses.

For hydrometer 152H:

$$P = (Ra/W) \times 100$$

where:

a = correction faction to be applied to the reading of hydrometer 152H. (Values shown on the scale are computed using a specific gravity of 2.65. Correction factors are given in Table 1),

P = percentage of soil remaining in suspension at the level at which the hydrometer measures the density of the suspension,

R = hydrometer reading with composite correction applied (Section 7),

W = oven-dry mass of soil in a total test sample represented by mass of soil dispersed (see 14.2), g,

G = specific gravity of the soil particles, and

G_1 = specific gravity of the liquid in which soil particles are suspended. Use numerical value of one in both instances in the equation. In the first instance any possible variation produces no significant effect, and in the second instance, the composite correction for R is based on a value of one for G_1.

15. Diameter of Soil Particles

15.1 The diameter of a particle corresponding to the percentage indicated by a given hydrometer reading shall be calculated according to Stokes' law (Note 14), on the basis that a particle of this diameter was at the surface of the suspension at the beginning of sedimentation and had settled to the level at which the hydrometer is measuring the density of the suspension. According to Stokes' law:

$$D = \sqrt{[30n/980(G - G_1)]} \times L/T$$

where:

D = diameter of particle, mm,

000268

n = coefficient of viscosity of the suspending medium (in this case water) in poises (varies with changes in temperature of the suspending medium),

L = distance from the surface of the suspension to the level at which the density of the suspension is being measured, cm. (For a given hydrometer and sedimentation cylinder, values vary according to the hydrometer readings. This distance is known as effective depth (Table 2)),

T = interval of time from beginning of sedimentation to the taking of the reading, min,

G = specific gravity of soil particles, and

G_1 = specific gravity (relative density) of suspending medium (value may be used as 1.000 for all practical purposes).

NOTE 14—Since Stokes' law considers the terminal velocity of a single sphere falling in an infinity of liquid, the sizes calculated represent the diameter of spheres that would fall at the same rate as the soil particles.

15.2 For convenience in calculations the above equation may be written as follows:

$$D = K\sqrt{L/T}$$

where:

K = constant depending on the temperature of the suspension and the specific gravity of the soil particles. Values of K for a range of temperatures and specific gravities are given in Table 3. The value of K does not change for a series of readings constituting a test, while values of L and T do vary.

15.3 Values of D may be computed with sufficient accuracy, using an ordinary 10-in. slide rule.

NOTE 15—The value of L is divided by T using the A- and B-scales, the square root being indicated on the D-scale. Without ascertaining the value of the square root it may be multiplied by K, using either the C- or CI-scale.

16. Sieve Analysis Values for Portion Finer than No. 10 (2.00-mm) Sieve

16.1 Calculation of percentages passing the various sieves used in sieving the portion of the sample from the hydrometer test involves several steps. The first step is to calculate the mass of the fraction that would have been retained on the No. 10 sieve had it not been removed. This mass is equal to the total percentage retained on the No. 10 sieve (100 minus total percentage passing) times the mass of the total sample represented by the mass of soil used (as calculated in 14.2), and the result divided by 100.

16.2 Calculate next the total mass passing the No. 200 sieve. Add together the fractional masses retained on all the sieves, including the No. 10 sieve, and subtract this sum from the mass of the total sample (as calculated in 14.2).

16.3 Calculate next the total masses passing each of the other sieves, in a manner similar to that given in 12.2.

16.4 Calculate last the total percentages passing by dividing the total mass passing (as calculated in 16.3) by the total mass of sample (as calculated in 14.2), and multiply the result by 100.

17. Graph

17.1 When the hydrometer analysis is performed, a graph of the test results shall be made, plotting the diameters of the particles on a logarithmic scale as the abscissa and the percentages smaller than the corresponding diameters to an

TABLE 2 Values of Effective Depth Based on Hydrometer and Sedimentation Cylinder of Specified Sizes[A]

Hydrometer 151H		Hydrometer 152H			
Actual Hydrometer Reading	Effective Depth, L, cm	Actual Hydrometer Reading	Effective Depth, L, cm	Actual Hydrometer Reading	Effective Depth, L, cm
1.000	16.3	0	16.3	31	11.2
1.001	16.0	1	16.1	32	11.1
1.002	15.8	2	16.0	33	10.9
1.003	15.5	3	15.8	34	10.7
1.004	15.2	4	15.6	35	10.6
1.005	15.0	5	15.5		
1.006	14.7	6	15.3	36	10.4
1.007	14.4	7	15.2	37	10.2
1.008	14.2	8	15.0	38	10.1
1.009	13.9	9	14.8	39	9.9
1.010	13.7	10	14.7	40	9.7
1.011	13.4	11	14.5	41	9.6
1.012	13.1	12	14.3	42	9.4
1.013	12.9	13	14.2	43	9.2
1.014	12.6	14	14.0	44	9.1
1.015	12.3	15	13.8	45	8.9
1.016	12.1	16	13.7	46	8.8
1.017	11.8	17	13.5	47	8.6
1.018	11.5	18	13.3	48	8.4
1.019	11.3	19	13.2	49	8.3
1.020	11.0	20	13.0	50	8.1
1.021	10.7	21	12.9	51	7.9
1.022	10.5	22	12.7	52	7.8
1.023	10.2	23	12.5	53	7.6
1.024	10.0	24	12.4	54	7.4
1.025	9.7	25	12.2	55	7.3
1.026	9.4	26	12.0	56	7.1
1.027	9.2	27	11.9	57	7.0
1.028	8.9	28	11.7	58	6.8
1.029	8.6	29	11.5	59	6.6
1.030	8.4	30	11.4	60	6.5
1.031	8.1				
1.032	7.8				
1.033	7.6				
1.034	7.3				
1.035	7.0				
1.036	6.8				
1.037	6.5				
1.038	6.2				

[A] Values of effective depth are calculated from the equation:

$$L = L_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\,[L_2 - (V_B/A)]$$

where:

L = effective depth, cm,

L_1 = distance along the stem of the hydrometer from the top of the bulb to the mark for a hydrometer reading, cm,

L_2 = overall length of the hydrometer bulb, cm,

V_B = volume of hydrometer bulb, cm^3, and

A = cross-sectional area of sedimentation cylinder, cm^2

Values used in calculating the values in Table 2 are as follows:

For both hydrometers, 151H and 152H:

L_2 = 14.0 cm

V_B = 67.0 cm^3

A = 27.8 cm^2

For hydrometer 151H:

L_1 = 10.5 cm for a reading of 1.000

= 2.3 cm for a reading of 1.031

For hydrometer 152H:

L_1 = 10.5 cm for a reading of 0 g/litre

= 2.3 cm for a reading of 50 g/litre

000269

TABLE 3 Values of K for Use in Equation for Computing Diameter of Particle in Hydrometer Analysis

Temperature, °C	Specific Gravity of Soil Particles								
	2.45	2.50	2.55	2.60	2.65	2.70	2.75	2.80	2.85
16	0.01510	0.01505	0.01481	0.01457	0.01435	0.01414	0.01394	0.01374	0.01356
17	0.01511	0.01486	0.01462	0.01439	0.01417	0.01396	0.01376	0.01356	0.01338
18	0.01492	0.01467	0.01443	0.01421	0.01399	0.01378	0.01359	0.01339	0.01321
19	0.01474	0.01449	0.01425	0.01403	0.01382	0.01361	0.01342	0.1323	0.01305
20	0.01456	0.01431	0.01408	0.01386	0.01365	0.01344	0.01325	0.01307	0.01289
21	0.01438	0.01414	0.01391	0.01369	0.01348	0.01328	0.01309	0.01291	0.01273
22	0.01421	0.01397	0.01374	0.01353	0.01332	0.01312	0.01294	0.01276	0.01258
23	0.01404	0.01381	0.01358	0.01337	0.01317	0.01297	0.01279	0.01261	0.01243
24	0.01388	0.01365	0.01342	0.01321	0.01301	0.01282	0.01264	0.01246	0.01229
25	0.01372	0.01349	0.01327	0.01306	0.01286	0.01267	0.01249	0.01232	0.01215
26	0.01357	0.01334	0.01312	0.01291	0.01272	0.01253	0.01235	0.01218	0.01201
27	0.01342	0.01319	0.01297	0.01277	0.01258	0.01239	0.01221	0.01204	0.01188
28	0.01327	0.01304	0.01283	0.01264	0.01244	0.01255	0.01208	0.01191	0.01175
29	0.01312	0.01290	0.01269	0.01249	0.01230	0.01212	0.01195	0.01178	0.01162
30	0.01298	0.01276	0.01256	0.01236	0.01217	0.01199	0.01182	0.01165	0.01149

arithmetic scale as the ordinate. When the hydrometer analysis is not made on a portion of the soil, the preparation of the graph is optional, since values may be secured directly from tabulated data.

18. Report

18.1 The report shall include the following:

18.1.1 Maximum size of particles,

18.1.2 Percentage passing (or retained on) each sieve, which may be tabulated or presented by plotting on a graph (Note 16),

18.1.3 Description of sand and gravel particles:

18.1.3.1 Shape—rounded or angular,

18.1.3.2 Hardness—hard and durable, soft, or weathered and friable,

18.1.4 Specific gravity, if unusually high or low,

18.1.5 Any difficulty in dispersing the fraction passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve, indicating any change in type and amount of dispersing agent, and

18.1.6 The dispersion device used and the length of the dispersion period.

NOTE 16—This tabulation of graph represents the gradation of the sample tested. If particles larger than those contained in the sample were removed before testing, the report shall so state giving the amount and maximum size.

18.2 For materials tested for compliance with definite specifications, the fractions called for in such specifications shall be reported. The fractions smaller than the No. 10 sieve shall be read from the graph.

18.3 For materials for which compliance with definite specifications is not indicated and when the soil is composed almost entirely of particles passing the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve, the results read from the graph may be reported as follows:

(1) Gravel, passing 3-in. and retained on No. 4 sieve ..... %
(2) Sand, passing No. 4 sieve and retained on No. 200 sieve ..... %
  (a) Coarse sand, passing No. 4 sieve and retained on No. 10 sieve ..... %
  (b) Medium sand, passing No. 10 sieve and retained on No. 40 sieve ..... %
  (c) Fine sand, passing No. 40 sieve and retained on No. 200 sieve ..... %
(3) Silt size, 0.074 to 0.005 mm ..... %
(4) Clay size, smaller than 0.005 mm ..... %
  Colloids, smaller than 0.001 mm ..... %

18.4 For materials for which compliance with definite specifications is not indicated and when the soil contains material retained on the No. 4 sieve sufficient to require a sieve analysis on that portion, the results may be reported as follows (Note 17):

SIEVE ANALYSIS

Sieve Size	Percentage Passing
3-in.	.....
2-in.	.....
1½-in.	.....
1-in.	.....
¾-in.	.....
⅜-in.	.....
No. 4 (4.75-mm)	.....
No. 10 (2.00-mm)	.....
No. 40 (425-μm)	.....
No. 200 (75-μm)	.....

HYDROMETER ANALYSIS

0.074 mm	.....
0.005 mm	.....
0.001 mm	.....

NOTE 17—No. 8 (2.36-mm) and No. 50 (300-μm) sieves may be substituted for No. 10 and No. 40 sieves.

19. Keywords

19.1 grain-size; hydrometer analysis; hygroscopic moisture; particle-size; sieve analysis

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000270

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 698 – 91

Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft³ (600 kN-m/m³))[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 698; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers laboratory compaction procedures used to determine the relationship between water content and dry unit weight of soils (compaction curve) compacted in a 4 or 6-in. (101.6 or 152.4-mm) diameter mold with a 5.5-lbf (24.4-N) rammer dropped from a height of 12 in. (305 mm) producing a compactive effort of 12,400 ft-lbf/ft³ (600 kN-m/m³).

NOTE 1—The equipment and procedures are similar as those proposed by R. R. Proctor (*Engineering News Record*—September 7, 1933) with this one major exception: his rammer blows were applied as "12 inch firm strokes" instead of free fall, producing variable compactive effort depending on the operator, but probably in the range 15,000 to 25,000 ft-lbf/ft³ (700 to 1,200 kN-m/m³). The standard effort test (see 3.2.2) is sometimes referred to as the Proctor Test.

NOTE 2—Soils and soil-aggregate mixtures should be regarded as natural occurring fine- or coarse-grained soils or composites or mixtures of natural soils, or mixtures of natural and processed soils or aggregates such as silt, gravel, or crushed rock.

1.2 This test method applies only to soils that have 30 % or less by weight of particles retained on the ¾-inch (19.0-mm) sieve.

NOTE 3—For relationships between unit weights and water contents of soils with 30 % or less by weight of material retained on the ¾-in. (19.0-mm) sieve to unit weights and water contents of the fraction passing ¾-in. (19.0-mm) sieve, see Practice D 4718.

1.3 Three alternative procedures are provided. The procedure used shall be as indicated in the specification for the material being tested. If no procedure is specified, the choice should be based on the material gradation.

1.3.1 *Procedure A:*

1.3.1.1 *Mold*—4-in. (101.6-mm) diameter.

1.3.1.2 *Material*—Passing No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

1.3.1.3 *Layers*—Three.

1.3.1.4 *Blows per layer*—25.

1.3.1.5 *Use*—May be used if 20 % or less by weight of the material is retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

1.3.1.6 *Other Use*—If this procedure is not specified, materials that meet these gradation requirements may be tested using Procedures B or C.

1.3.2 *Procedure B:*

1.3.2.1 *Mold*—4-in. (101.6-mm) diameter.

1.3.2.2 *Material*—Passing ⅜-in. (9.5-mm) sieve.

1.3.2.3 *Layers*—Three.

1.3.2.4 *Blows per layer*—25.

1.3.2.5 *Use*—Shall be used if more than 20 % by weight of the material is retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and 20 % or less by weight of the material is retained on the ⅜-in. (9.5-mm) sieve.

1.3.2.6 *Other Use*—If this procedure is not specified, materials that meet these gradation requirements may be tested using Procedure C.

1.3.3 *Procedure C:*

1.3.3.1 *Mold*—6-in. (152.4-mm) diameter.

1.3.3.2 *Material*—Passing ¾-inch (19.0-mm) sieve.

1.3.3.3 *Layers*—Three.

1.3.3.4 *Blows per layer*—56.

1.3.3.5 *Use*—Shall be used if more than 20 % by weight of the material is retained on the ⅜-in. (9.5-mm) sieve and less than 30 % by weight of the material is retained on the ¾-in. (19.0-mm) sieve.

1.3.4 The 6-in. (152.4-mm) diameter mold shall not be used with Procedure A or B.

NOTE 4—Results have been found to vary slightly when a material is tested at the same compactive effort in different size molds.

1.4 If the test specimen contains more than 5 % by weight oversize fraction (coarse fraction) and the material will not be included in the test, corrections must be made to the unit weight and water content of the specimen or to the appropriate field in place density test specimen using Practice D 4718.

1.5 This test method will generally produce a well defined maximum dry unit weight for non-free draining soils. If this test method is used for free draining soils the maximum unit weight may not be well defined, and can be less than obtained using Test Methods D 4253.

1.6 The values in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard. The values stated in SI units are provided for information only.

1.6.1 In the engineering profession it is customary practice to use, interchangeably, units representing both mass and force, unless dynamic calculations ($F = Ma$) are involved. This implicitly combines two separate systems of units, that is, the absolute system and the gravimetric system. It is scientifically undesirable to combine the use of two separate systems within a single standard. This test method has been written using inch-pound units (gravimetric system) where the pound (lbf) represents a unit of force. The use of mass (lbm) is for convenience of units and is not intended to convey the use is scientifically correct. Conversions are given in the SI system in accordance with Practice E 380. The use of balances or scales recording pounds of mass (lbm), or the recording of density in lbm/ft³ should not be regarded as nonconformance with this standard.

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.03 on Texture, Plasticity and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved Nov. 19, 1991. Published January 1992.

000272

1.7 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 127 Test Method for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate[2]

C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate[2]

D 422 Test Method for Particle Size Analysis of Soils[3]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[3]

D 854 Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[3]

D 1557 Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil Aggregate Mixtures Using 10-lb (4.54-kg.) Rammer and 18-in. (457 mm) Drop[3]

D 2168 Test Methods for Calibration of Laboratory Mechanical-Rammer Soil Compactors[3]

D 2216 Test Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[3]

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[3]

D 2488 Practice for Description of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[3]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[3]

D 4253 Test Methods for Maximum Index Density of Soils Using a Vibratory Table[3]

D 4718 Practice for Correction of Unit Weight and Water Content for Soils Containing Oversize Particles[3]

D 4753 Specification for Evaluating, Selecting and Specifying Balances and Scales For Use in Soil and Rock Testing[3]

E 1 Specification for ASTM Thermometers[4]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[5]

E 319 Practice for the Evaluation of Single-Pan Mechanical Balances[5]

E 380 Practice for Use of the International System of Units (SI) (the Modernized Metric System)[5]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions*—See Terminology D 653 for general definitions.

3.2 *Description of Terms Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *oversize fraction (coarse fraction), P_c in %*—the portion of total sample not used in performing the compaction test; it may be the portion of total sample retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm), 3/8-in. (9.5-mm), or 3/4-in. (19.0-mm) sieve.

3.2.2 *standard effort*—the term for the 12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3) compactive effort applied by the equipment and procedures of this test.

3.2.3 *standard maximum dry unit weight, γ_{dmax} in lbf/ft^3 (kN/m^3)*—the maximum value defined by the compaction curve for a compaction test using standard effort.

3.2.4 *standard optimum water content, w_o in %*—the water content at which a soil can be compacted to the maximum dry unit weight using standard compactive effort.

3.2.5 *test fraction (finer fraction), P_F in %*—the portion of the total sample used in performing the compaction test; it is the fraction passing the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve in Procedure A, minus 3/8-in. (9.5-mm) sieve in Procedure B, or minus 3/4-in. (19.0-mm) sieve in Procedure C.

4. Summary of Test Method

4.1 A soil at a selected water content is placed in three layers into a mold of given dimensions, with each layer compacted by 25 or 56 blows of a 5.5-lbf (24.4-N) rammer dropped from a distance of 12-in. (305-mm), subjecting the soil to a total compactive effort of about 12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3). The resulting dry unit weight is determined. The procedure is repeated for a sufficient number of water contents to establish a relationship between the dry unit weight and the water content for the soil. This data, when plotted, represents a curvilinear relationship known as the compaction curve. The values of optimum water content and standard maximum dry unit weight are determined from the compaction curve.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 Soil placed as engineering fill (embankments, foundation pads, road bases) is compacted to a dense state to obtain satisfactory engineering properties such as, shear strength, compressibility, or permeability. Also, foundation soils are often compacted to improve their engineering properties. Laboratory compaction tests provide the basis for determining the percent compaction and water content needed to achieve the required engineering properties, and for controlling construction to assure that the required compaction and water contents are achieved.

5.2 During design of an engineered fill, shear, consolidation, permeability, or other tests require preparation of test specimens by compacting at some water content to some unit weight. It is common practice to first determine the optimum water content (w_o) and maximum dry unit weight (γ_{dmax}) by means of a compaction test. Test specimens are compacted at a selected water content (w), either wet or dry of optimum (w_o) or at optimum (w_o), and at a selected dry unit weight related to a percentage of maximum dry unit weight (γ_{dmax}). The selection of water content (w), either wet or dry of optimum (w_o) or at optimum (w_o) and the dry unit weight (γ_{dmax}) may be based on past experience, or a range of values may be investigated to determine the necessary percent of compaction.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Mold Assembly*—The molds shall be cylindrical in shape, made of rigid metal and be within the capacity and dimensions indicated in 6.1.1 or 6.1.2 and Figs. 1 and 2. The walls of the mold may be solid, split, or tapered. The "split" type may consist of two half-round sections, or a section of

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.
[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.
[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.03.
[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

000273

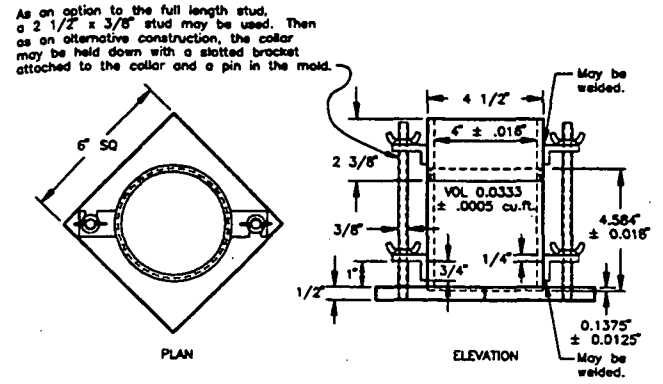


FIG. 1 4.0-in. Cylindrical Mold

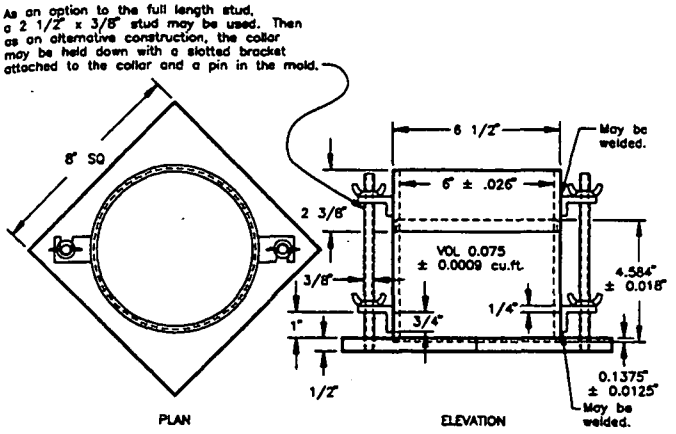


FIG. 2 6.0-in. Cylindrical Mold

pipe split along one element, which can be securely locked together to form a cylinder meeting the requirements of this section. The "tapered" type shall an internal diameter taper that is uniform and not more than 0.200 in./ft (16.7- mm/m) of mold height. Each mold shall have a base plate and an extension collar assembly, both made of rigid metal and constructed so they can be securely attached and easily detached from the mold. The extension collar assembly shall have a height extending above the top of the mold of at least 2.0 in. (50.8-mm) which may include an upper section that flares out to form a funnel provided there is at least a 0.75 in. (19.0-mm) straight cylindrical section beneath it. The extension collar shall align with the inside of the mold. The bottom of the base plate and bottom of the centrally recessed area that accepts the cylindrical mold shall be planar.

6.1.1 *Mold, 4 in.*—A mold having a 4.000 ± 0.016-in. (101.6 ± 0.4-mm) average inside diameter, a height of 4.584 ± 0.018-in. (116.4 ± 0.5-mm) and a volume of 0.0333 ± 0.0005 ft^3 (944 ± 14 cm^3). A mold assembly having the minimum required features is shown in Fig. 1.

6.1.2 *Mold, 6 in.*—A mold having a 6.000 ± 0.026-in. (152.4 ± 0.7-mm) average inside diameter, a height of 4.584 ± 0.018-in. (116.4 ± 0.5-mm), and a volume of 0.075 ± 0.0009 ft^3 (2124 ± 25 cm^3). A mold assembly having the minimum required features is shown in Fig. 2.

6.2 *Rammer*—A rammer, either manually operated as described further in 6.2.1 or mechanically operated as described in 6.2.2. The rammer shall fall freely through a distance of 12 ± 0.05-in. (304.8 ± 1.3-mm) from the surface of the specimen. The mass of the rammer shall be 5.5 ± 0.02-lbm (2.5 ± 0.01-kg), except that the mass of the mechanical rammers may be adjusted as described in Test Methods D 2168, see Note 5. The striking face of the rammer shall be planar and circular, except as noted in 6.2.2.3, with a diameter when new of 2.000 ± 0.005-in (50.80 ± 0.13-mm). The rammer shall be replaced if the striking face becomes worn or bellied to the extent that the diameter exceeds 2.000 ± 0.01-in. (50.80 ± 0.25-mm).

NOTE 5—It is a common and acceptable practice in the inch-pound system to assume that the mass of the rammer is equal to its mass determined using either a kilogram or pound balance and 1 lbf is equal to 1 lbm or 0.4536 kg. or 1 N is equal to 0.2248 lbm or 0.1020 kg.

6.2.1 *Manual Rammer*—The rammer shall be equipped with a guide sleeve that has sufficient clearance that the free fall of the rammer shaft and head is not restricted. The guide sleeve shall have at least four vent holes at each end (eight holes total) located with centers ¾ ± 1/16-in. (19.0 ± 1.6-mm) from each end and spaced 90 degrees apart. The minimum diameter of the vent holes shall be ⅜-in. (9.5-mm). Additional holes or slots may be incorporated in the guide sleeve.

6.2.2 *Mechanical Rammer-Circular Face*—The rammer shall operate mechanically in such a manner as to provide uniform and complete coverage of the specimen surface. There shall be 0.10 ± 0.03-in. (2.5 ± 0.8-mm) clearance between the rammer and the inside surface of the mold at its smallest diameter. The mechanical rammer shall meet the calibration requirements of Test Methods D 2168. The mechanical rammer shall be equipped with a positive mechanical means to support the rammer when not in operation.

6.2.2.3 *Mechanical Rammer-Sector Face*—When used with the 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold, a sector face rammer may be used in place of the circular face rammer. The specimen contact face shall have the shape of a sector of a circle of radius equal to 2.90 ± 0.02-in. (73.7 ± 0.5-mm). The rammer shall operate in such a manner that the vertex of the sector is positioned at the center of the specimen.

6.3 *Sample Extruder (optional)*—A jack, frame or other device adapted for the purpose of extruding compacted specimens from the mold.

6.4 *Balance*—A class GP5 balance meeting the requirements of Specification D 4753 for a balance of 1-g readability.

6.5 *Drying Oven*—Thermostatically controlled, preferably of a forced-draft type and capable of maintaining a uniform temperature of 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C) throughout the drying chamber.

6.6 *Straightedge*—A stiff metal straightedge of any convenient length but not less than 10-in. (254-mm). The total length of the straightedge shall be machined straight to a tolerance of ±0.005-in. (±0.1-mm). The scraping edge shall be beveled if it is thicker than ⅛-in. (3-mm).

6.7 *Sieves*—¾-in. (19.0-mm), ⅜-in. (9.5-mm), and No. 4 (4.75-mm), conforming to the requirements of Specification E 11.

6.8 *Mixing Tools*—Miscellaneous tools such as mixing pan, spoon, trowel, spatula, etc., or a suitable mechanical device for thoroughly mixing the sample of soil with increments of water.

000274

7. Calibration

7.1 Perform calibrations before initial use, after repairs or other occurrences that might affect the test results, at intervals not exceeding 1,000 test specimens, or annually, whichever occurs first, for the following apparatus:

7.1.2 *Balance*—Evaluate in accordance with Specification D 4753.

7.1.3 *Molds*—Determine the volume as described in Annex 1.

7.1.4 *Manual Rammer*—Verify the free fall distance, rammer mass, and rammer face in accordance with Section 6.2. Verify the guide sleeve requirements in accordance with Section 6.2.1.

7.1.5 *Mechanical Rammer*—Calibrate and adjust the mechanical rammer in accordance with Test Methods D 2168. In addition, the clearance between the rammer and the inside surface of the mold shall be verified in accordance with 6.2.2.

8. Test Sample

8.1 The required sample mass for Procedures A and B is approximately 35-lbm (16-kg), and for Procedure C is approximately 65-lbm (29-kg) of dry soil. Therefore, the field sample should have a moist mass of at least 50-lbm (23-kg) and 100-lbm (45-kg), respectively.

8.2 Determine the percentage of material retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm), 3/8-in. (9.5-mm), or 3/4-in. (19.0-mm) sieve as appropriate for choosing Procedure A, B, or C. Make this determination by separating out a representative portion from the total sample and determining the percentages passing the sieves of interest by Test Methods D 422 or Method C 136. It is only necessary to calculate percentages for the sieve or sieves for which information is desired.

9. Preparation of Apparatus

9.1 Select the proper compaction mold in accordance with the procedure (A, B, or C) being used. Determine and record its mass to the nearest gram. Assemble the mold, base and extension collar. Check the alignment of the inner wall of the mold and mold extension collar. Adjust if necessary.

9.2 Check that the rammer assembly is in good working condition and that parts are not loose or worn. Make any necessary adjustments or repairs. If adjustments or repairs are made, the rammer must be recalibrated.

10. Procedure

10.1 *Soils:*

10.1.1 Do not reuse soil that has been previously laboratory compacted.

10.1.2 When using this test method for soils containing hydrated halloysite, or where past experience with a particular soil indicates that results will be altered by air drying, use the moist preparation method (see 10.2).

10.1.3 Prepare the soil specimens for testing in accordance with 10.2 (preferred) or with 10.3.

10.2 *Moist Preparation Method (preferred)*—Without previously drying the sample, pass it through a No. 4 (4.75-mm), 3/8-in. (9.5-mm), or 3/4-in. (19.0-mm) sieve, depending on the procedure (A, B, or C) being used. Determine the water content of the processed soil.

10.2.1 Prepare at least four (preferably five) specimens having water contents such that they bracket the estimated optimum water content. A specimen having a water content close to optimum should be prepared first by trial additions of water and mixing (see Note 6). Select water contents for the rest of the specimens to provide at least two specimens wet and two specimens dry of optimum, and water contents varying by about 2 %. At least two water contents are necessary on the wet and dry side of optimum to accurately define the dry unit weight compaction curve (see 10.5). Some soils with very high optimum water content or a relatively flat compaction curve may require larger water content increments to obtain a well defined maximum dry unit weight. Water content increments should not exceed 4 %.

NOTE 6—With practice it is usually possible to visually judge a point near optimum water content. Typically, soil at optimum water content can be squeezed into a lump that sticks together when hand pressure is released, but will break cleanly into two sections when "bent". At water contents dry of optimum soils tend to crumble; wet of optimum soils tend to stick together in a sticky cohesive mass. Optimum water content is typically slightly less than the plastic limit.

10.2.2 Use approximately 5-lbm (2.3-kg) of the sieved soil for each specimen to be compacted using Procedure A or B, or 13-lbm (5.9-kg) using Procedure C. To obtain the specimen water contents selected in 10.2.1, add or remove the required amounts of water as follows: to add water, spray it into the soil during mixing; to remove water, allow the soil to dry in air at ambient temperature or in a drying apparatus such that the temperature of the sample does not exceed 140°F (60°C). Mix the soil frequently during drying to maintain an even water content distribution. Thoroughly mix each specimen to ensure even distribution of water throughout and then place in a separate covered container and allow to stand in accordance with Table 1 prior to compaction. For the purpose of selecting a standing time, the soil may be classified using Test Method D 2487, Practice D 2488 or data on other samples from the same material source. For referee testing, classification shall be by Test Method D 2487.

10.3 *Dry Preparation Method*—If the sample is too damp to be friable, reduce the water content by air drying until the material is friable. Drying may be in air or by the use of drying apparatus such that the temperature of the sample does not exceed 140°F (60°C). Thoroughly break up the aggregations in such a manner as to avoid breaking individual particles. Pass the material through the appropriate sieve: No. 4 (4.75-mm), 3/8-in. (9.5-mm), or 3/4-in. (19.0-mm). When preparing the material by passing over the 3/4-in. sieve for compaction in the 6-in. mold, break up aggregations sufficiently to at least pass the 3/8-in. sieve in order to facilitate the distribution of water throughout the soil in later mixing.

10.3.1 Prepare at least four (preferably five) specimens in accordance with 10.2.1.

10.3.2 Use approximately 5-lbm (2.3-kg) of the sieved soil for each specimen to be compacted using Procedure A or B,

TABLE 1 Required Standing Times of Moisturized Specimens

Classification	Minimum Standing Time, h
GW, GP, SW, SP	No Requirement
GM, SM	3
All other soils	16

000275

TABLE 2 Metric Equivalents for Figs. 1 and 2

in.	mm
0.016	0.41
0.026	0.66
0.032	0.81
0.028	0.71
½	12.70
2½	63.50
2⅝	66.70
4	101.60
4½	114.30
4.584	116.43
4¾	120.60
6	152.40
6½	165.10
6⅝	168.30
6¾	171.40
8¼	209.60
ft^3	**cm^3**
1/30 (0.0333)	943
0.0005	14
1/13.333 (0.0750)	2,124
0.0011	31

or 13-lbm (5.9-kg) using Procedure C. Add the required amounts of water to bring the water contents of the specimens to the values selected in 10.3.1. Follow the specimen preparation procedure specified in 10.2.2 for drying the soil or adding water into the soil and curing each test specimen.

10.4 *Compaction*—After curing, if required, each specimen shall be compacted as follows:

10.4.1 Determine and record the mass of the mold or mold and base plate.

10.4.2 Assemble and secure the mold and collar to the base plate. The mold shall rest on a uniform rigid foundation, such as provided by a cylinder or cube of concrete with a mass of not less than 200-lbm (91-kg). Secure the base plate to the rigid foundation. The method of attachment to the rigid foundation shall allow easy removal of the assembled mold, collar and base plate after compaction is completed.

10.4.3 Compact the specimen in three layers. After compaction, each layer should be approximately equal in thickness. Prior to compaction, place the loose soil into the mold and spread into a layer of uniform thickness. Lightly tamp the soil prior to compaction until it is not in a fluffy or loose state, using either the manual compaction rammer or a 2-in. (5-mm) diameter cylinder. Following compaction of each of the first two layers, any soil adjacent to the mold walls that has not been compacted or extends above the compacted surface shall be trimmed. The trimmed soil may be included with the additional soil for the next layer. A knife or other suitable device may be used. The total amount of soil used shall be such that the third compacted layer slighly extends into the collar, but does not exceed ¼-in. (6-mm) above the top of the mold. If the third layer does extend above the top of the mold by more than ¼-in. (6-mm), the specimen shall be discarded. The specimen shall be discarded when the last blow on the rammer for the third layer results in the bottom of the rammer extending below the top of the compaction mold.

10.4.4 Compact each layer with 25 blows for the 4-in. (101.6-mm) mold or with 56 blows for the 6-in. (152.4-mm) mold.

NOTE 7—When compacting specimens wetter than optimum wat content, uneven compacted surfaces can occur and operator judgemer is required as to the average height of the specimen.

10.4.5 In operating the manual rammer, take care t avoid lifting the guide sleeve during the rammer upstrok Hold the guide sleeve steady and within 5° of vertical. Appl the blows at a uniform rate of approximately 25 blows/mi and in such a manner as to provide complete, uniforr coverage of the specimen surface.

10.4.6 Following compaction of the last layer, remove th collar and base plate from the mold, except as noted i 10.4.7. A knife may be used to trim the soil adjacent to th collar to loosen the soil from the collar before removal t avoid disrupting the soil below the top of the mold.

10.4.7 Carefully trim the compacted specimen even witl the top of the mold by means of the straightedge scrape across the top of the mold to form a plane surface even witl the top of the mold. Initial trimming of the specimen abov the top of the mold with a knife may prevent the soil fron tearing below the top of the mold. Fill any holes in the to surface with unused or trimmed soil from the specimen press in with the fingers, and again scrape the straightedg across the top of the mold. Repeat the appropriate precedin operations on the bottom of the specimen when the mol volume was determined without the base plate. For very we or dry soils, soil or water may be lost if the base plate i removed. For these situations, leave the base plate attache to the mold. When the base plate is left attached, the volum of the mold must be calibrated with the base plate attache to the mold rather than a plastic or glass plate as noted ir Annex 1, A1.4.

10.4.8 Determine and record the mass of the specimer and mold to the nearest gram. When the base plate is lef attached, determine and record the mass of the specimen mold and base plate to the nearest gram.

10.4.9 Remove the material from the mold. Obtain a specimen for water content by using either the whol specimen (preferred method) or a representative portion. When the entire specimen is used, break it up to facilitate drying. Otherwise, obtain a portion by slicing the compacted specimen axially through the center and removing abou 500-g of material from the cut faces. Obtain the wate content in accordance with Test Method D 2216.

10.5 Following compaction of the last specimen, compare the wet unit weights to ensure that a desired pattern of obtaining data on each side of the optimum water content will be attained for the dry unit weight compaction curve. Plotting the wet unit weight and water content of each compacted specimen can be an aid in making the above evaluation. If the desired pattern is not obtained, additional compacted specimens will be required. Generally, one water content value wet of the water content defining the maximum wet unit weight is sufficient to ensure data on the wet side of optimum water content for the maximum dry unit weight.

11. Calculation

11.1 Calculate the dry unit weight and water content of each compacted specimen as explained in 11.3 and 11.4. Plot the values and draw the compaction curve as a smooth curve through the points (see example, Fig. 3). Plot dry unit weight

000276

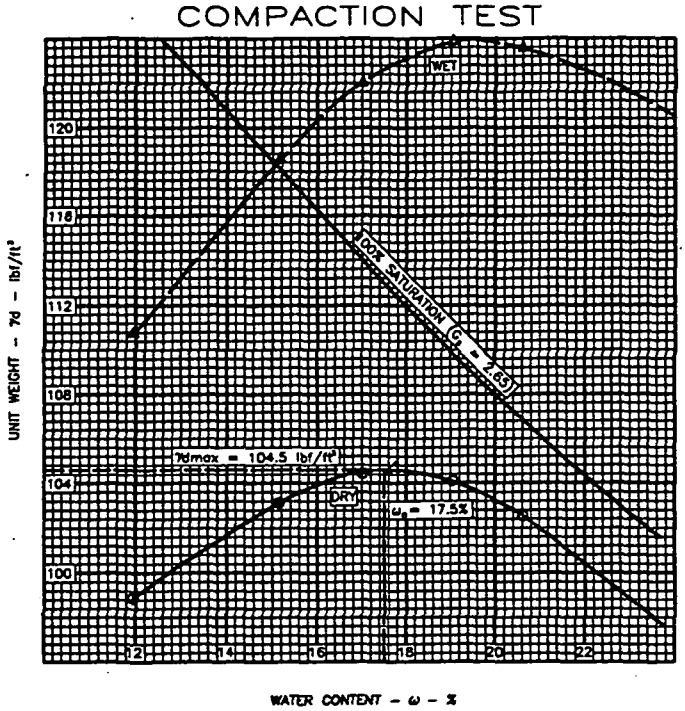


FIG. 3 Example Compaction Curve Plotting

to the nearest 0.1 lbf/ft³ (0.2 kN/m³) and water content to the nearest 0.1 %. From the compaction curve, determine the optimum water content and maximum dry unit weight. If more than 5 % by weight of oversize material was removed from the sample, calculate the corrected optimum water content and maximum dry unit weight of the total material using Practice D 4718. This correction may be made to the appropriate field in place density test specimen rather than to the laboratory test specimen.

11.2 Plot the 100 % saturation curve. Values of water content for the condition of 100 % saturation can be calculated as explained in 11.5 (see example, Fig. 3).

NOTE 8—The 100 % saturation curve is an aid in drawing the compaction curve. For soils containing more than approximately 10 % fines at water contents well above optimum, the two curves generally become roughly parallel with the wet side of the compaction curve between 92 % to 95 % saturation. Theoretically, the compaction curve cannot plot to the right of the 100 % saturation curve. If it does, there is an error in specific gravity, in measurements, in calculations, in test procedures, or in plotting.

NOTE 9—The 100 % saturation curve is sometimes referred to as the zero air voids curve or the complete saturation curve.

11.3 *Water Content, w*—Calculate in accordance with Test Method D 2216.

11.4 *Dry Unit Weights*—Calculate the moist density (Eq. 1), the dry density (Eq. 2), and then the dry unit weight (Eq. 3) as follows:

$$\rho_m = 1000(M_t - M_{md})/V \quad (1)$$

where:

ρ_m = moist density of compacted specimen, Mg/m³,
M_t = mass of moist specimen and mold, kg,
M_{md} = mass of compaction mold, kg, and
V = volume of compaction mold, m³ (see Annex 1)

$$\rho_d = \rho_m/(1 + w/100) \quad (2)$$

where:

ρ_d = dry density of compacted specimen, Mg/m³, and
w = water content, %.

$$\gamma_d = 62.43\ \rho_d \text{ in lbf/ft}^3 \quad (3)$$

or

$$\gamma_d = 9.807\ \rho_d \text{ in kN/m}^3$$

where:

γ_d = dry unit weight of compacted specimen.

11.5 To calculate points for plotting the 100 % saturation curve or zero air voids curve select values of dry unit weight, calculate corresponding values of water content corresponding to the condition of 100 % saturation as follows:

$$w_{sat} \frac{(\gamma_w)(G_s) - \gamma_d}{(\gamma_d)(G_s)} \times 100 \quad (4)$$

where:

w_{sat} = water content for complete saturation, %,
γ_w = unit weight of water, 62.43 lbf/ft³ (9.807 kn/m³),
γ_d = dry unit weight of soil, and
G_s = specific gravity of soil.

NOTE 10—Specific gravity may be estimated for the test specimen on the basis of test data from other samples of the same soil classification and source. Otherwise, a specific gravity test (Test Method C 127, Test Method D 854, or both) is necessary.

12. Report

12.1 *The report shall contain the following information:*

12.1.1 Procedure used (A, B, or C).

12.1.2 Preparation method used (moist or dry).

12.1.3 As received water content if determined.

12.1.4 Standard optimum water content, to the nearest 0.5 %.

12.1.5 Standard maximum dry unit weight, to the nearest 0.5 lbf/ft³.

12.1.6 Description of rammer (manual or mechanical).

12.1.7 *Soil sieve data when applicable for determination* of procedure (A, B, or C) used.

12.1.8 Description of material used in test, by Practice D 2488, or classification by Test Method D 2487.

12.1.9 Specific gravity and method of determination.

12.1.10 Origin of material used in test, for example, project, location, depth, and the like.

12.1.11 Compaction curve plot showing compaction points used to establish compaction curve, and 100 % saturation curve, point of maximum dry unit weight and optimum water content.

12.1.12 Oversize correction data if used, including the oversize fraction (coarse fraction), P_c in %.

13. Precision and Bias

13.1 *Precision*—Data are being evaluated to determine the precision of this test method. In addition, pertinent data is being solicited from users of the test method.

13.2 *Bias*—It is not possible to obtain information on bias because there is no other method of determining the values of standard maximum dry unit weight and optimum water content.

000277

14. Keywords

14.1 NT—impact compaction using standard effort; RT—density; RT—moisture-density curves; RT—proctor test; UF—compaction characteristics; UF—soil compaction; USE—laboratory tests

ANNEX

(Mandatory Information)

A1. VOLUME OF COMPACTION MOLD

A1.1 Scope

A1.1.1 This annex describes the procedure for determining the volume of a compaction mold.

A1.1.2 The volume is determined by a water-filled method and checked by a linear-measurement method.

A1.2 Apparatus

A1.2.1 In addition to the apparatus listed in Section 6 the following items are required:

A1.2.1.1 *Vernier or Dial Caliper*—having a measuring range of at least 0 to 6 in. (0 to 150 mm) and readable to at least 0.001 in. (0.02 mm).

A1.2.1.2 *Inside Micrometer*—having a measuring range of at least 2 to 12 in. (50 to 300 mm) and readable to at least 0.001 in. (0.02 mm).

A1.2.1.3 *Plastic or Glass Plates*—Two plastic or glass plates approximately 8 in. square by ¼ in. thick (200 by 200 mm by 6 mm).

A1.2.1.4 *Thermometer*—0 to 50°C range, 0.5°C graduations, conforming to the requirements of Specification E 1.

A1.2.1.5 *Stopcock grease* or similar sealant.

A1.2.1.6 *Miscellaneous equipment*—Bulb syringe, towels, etc.

A1.3 Precautions

A1.3.1 Perform this procedure in an area isolated from drafts or extreme temperature fluctuations.

A1.4 Procedure

A1.4.1 *Water-Filling Method:*

A1.4.1.1 Lightly grease the bottom of the compaction mold and place it on one of the plastic or glass plates. Lightly grease the top of the mold. Be careful not to get grease on the inside of the mold. If it is necessary to use the base plate, as noted in 10.4.7, place the greased mold onto the base plate and secure with the locking studs.

A1.4.1.2 Determine the mass of the greased mold and both plastic or glass plates to the nearest 0.01-lbm (1-g) and record. When the base plate is being used in lieu of the bottom plastic or glass plate determine the mass of the mold, base plate and a single plastic or glass plate to be used on top of the mold to the nearest 0.01-lbm (1-g) and record.

A1.4.1.3 Place the mold and the bottom plastic or glass plate on a firm, level surface and fill the mold with water to slightly above its rim.

A1.4.1.4 Slide the second plate over the top surface of the mold so that the mold remains completely filled with water and air bubbles are not entrapped. Add or remove water as necessary with a bulb syringe.

A1.4.1.5 Completely dry any excess water from the outside of the mold and plates.

A1.4.1.6 Determine the mass of the mold, plates and water and record to the nearest 0.01-lbm (1-g).

A1.4.1.7 Determine the temperature of the water in the mold to the nearest 1°C and record. Determine and record the absolute density of water from Table A1.1.

A1.4.1.8 Calculate the mass of water in the mold by subtracting the mass determined in A1.4.1.2 from the mass determined in A1.4.1.6.

A1.4.1.9 Calculate the volume of water by dividing the mass of water by the density of water and record to the nearest 0.0001 ft^3 (1 cm^3).

A1.4.1.10 When the base plate is used for the calibration of the mold volume repeat A1.4.1.3 through A1.4.1.9.

A1.4.2 *Linear Measurement Method:*

A1.4.2.1 Using either the vernier caliper or the inside micrometer, measure the diameter of the mold 6 times at the top of the mold and 6 times at the bottom of the mold, spacing each of the six top and bottom measurements equally around the circumference of the mold. Record the values to the nearest 0.001-in. (0.02-mm).

A1.4.2.2 Using the vernier caliper, measure the inside height of the mold by making three measurements equally spaced around the circumference of the mold. Record values to the nearest 0.001-in. (0.02-mm).

A1.4.2.3 Calculate the average top diameter, average bottom diameter and average height.

A1.4.2.4 Calculate the volume of the mold and record to the nearest 0.0001 ft^3 (1 cm^3) as follows:

$$V = \frac{(\pi)(h)(d_t + d_b)^2}{(16)(1728)} \text{ (inch-pound)}$$

$$V = \frac{(\pi)(h)(d_t + d_b)^2}{(16)(10^3)} \text{ (SI)}$$

TABLE A1 Density of Water[A]

Temperature, °C (°F)	Density of Water, g/ml
18 (64.4)	0.99862
19 (66.2)	0.99843
20 (68.0)	0.99823
21 (69.8)	0.99802
22 (71.6)	0.99779
23 (73.4)	0.99756
24 (75.2)	0.99733
25 (77.0)	0.99707
26 (78.8)	0.99681

[A] Values other than shown may be obtained by referring to the Handbook of Chemistry and Physics, Chemical Rubber Publishing Co., Cleveland, Ohio.

000278

where:

V = volume of mold, ft^3 (cm^3),
h = average height, in. (mm),
d_t = average top diameter, in. (mm),
d_b = average bottom diameter, in. (mm),
$1/1728$ = constant to convert in^3 to ft^3, and
$1/10^3$ = constant to convert mm^3 to cm^3.

A1.5 Comparison of Results

A1.5.1 The volume obtained by either method should be within the volume tolerance requirements of 6.1.1 and 6.1.2.

A1.5.2 The difference between the two methods should not exceed 0.5 % of the nominal volume of the mold.

A1.5.3 Repeat the determination of volume if these criteria are not met.

A1.5.4 Failure to obtain satisfactory agreement between the two methods, even after several trials, is an indication that the mold is badly deformed and should be replaced.

A1.5.5 Use the volume of the mold determined using the water-filling method as the assigned volume value for calculating the moist and dry density (see 11.4).

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000279

Standard Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 854; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the specific gravity of soils that pass the 4.75-mm (No. 4) sieve, by means of a pycnometer. When the soil contains particles larger than the 4.75-mm sieve, Test Method C 127 shall be used for the material retained on the 4.75-mm sieve and this test method shall be used for the material passing the 4.75-mm sieve.

1.1.1 Two procedures for performing the specific gravity are provided as follows:

1.1.1.1 *Method A*—Procedure for Oven-Dry Specimens, described in 9.1.

1.1.1.2 *Method B*—Procedure for Moist Specimens, described in 9.2. The procedure to be used shall be specified by the requesting authority. For specimens of organic soils and highly plastic, fine-grained soils, Procedure B shall be the preferred method.

1.2 When the specific gravity value is to be used in calculations in connection with the hydrometer portion of Test Method D 422, it is intended that the specific gravity test be made on that portion of the sample which passes the 2.00-mm (No. 10) sieve.

1.3 The values stated in acceptable metric units are to be regarded as standard.

1.4 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 127 Test Method for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate[2]

C 670 Practice for Preparing Precision and Bias Statements for Test Methods for Construction Materials[2]

D 422 Test Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[3]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[3]

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[3]

D 4753 Specification for Evaluating, Selecting, and Specifying Balances and Scales for Use in Soil and Rock Testing[3]

E 1 Specification for ASTM Thermometers[4]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[5]

E 12 Terminology Relating to Density and Specific Gravity of Solids, Liquids, and Gases[6]

2.2 *AASHTO Standards:*[7]

AASHTO Test Method T100

3. Terminology

3.1 All definitions are in accordance with Terminology D 653 and E 12.

3.2 *Description of Term Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *specific gravity*—the ratio of the mass of a unit volume of a material at a stated temperature to the mass of the same volume of gas-free distilled water at a stated temperature.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 The specific gravity of a soil is used in calculating the phase relationships of soils (that is, the relative volumes of solids to water and air in a given volume of soil).

4.2 The term solid particles is typically assumed to mean naturally occurring mineral particles that are not readily soluble in water. Therefore, the specific gravity of materials containing extraneous matter (such as cement, lime, and the like), water-soluble matter (such as sodium chloride), and soils containing matter with a specific gravity less than one, typically require special treatment or a qualified definition of their specific gravity.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Pycnometer*—The pycnometer shall be one of the following:

5.1.1 *Volumetric Flask*, having a capacity of at least 100 mL.

5.1.2 *Stoppered Bottle*, having a capacity of at least 50 mL. The stopper shall be of the same material, and shall permit the emission of air and surplus water when it is put in place.

NOTE 1—Flask sizes of greater than the specified minimum capacity are recommended. Larger flasks are capable of holding larger specimens and tend to produce better statistical results.

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.03 on Texture, Plasticity and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved Nov. 15, 1992. Published January 1993. Originally published as D 854 – 45. Last previous edition D 854 – 91.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.03.

[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

[6] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 15.05.

[7] Available from American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, 444 N Capital St., NW, Washington, DC 20001.

000280

5.2 *Balance*—Meeting the requirements of Specification D 4753 and readable, without estimation, to at least 0.1 % of the specimen mass.

5.3 *Drying Oven*—Thermostatically-controlled oven, capable of maintaining a uniform temperature of 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F) throughout the drying chamber.

5.4 *Thermometer*, capable of measuring the temperature range within which the test is being performed, graduated in a 0.5°C (1.0°F) division scale and meeting the requirements of Specification E 1.

5.5 *Desiccator*—A desiccator cabinet or large desiccator jar of suitable size containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium sulfate.[8]

NOTE 2—It is preferable to use a desiccant that changes color to indicate when it needs reconstitution.

5.6 *Entrapped Air Removal Apparatus*—To remove entrapped air, use one of the following:

5.6.1 *Hot Plate or Bunsen Burner*, capable of maintaining a temperature adequate to boil water.

5.6.2 *Vacuum System*, a vacuum pump or water aspirator, capable of producing a partial vacuum of 100 min or less absolute pressure.

NOTE 3—A partial vacuum of 100 mm Hg absolute pressure is approximately equivalent to a 660 mm (26 in.) Hg reading on vacuum gauge at sea level.

5.7 *Miscellaneous Equipment*, specimen dishes and insulated gloves.

6. Reagents and Materials

6.1 *Purity of Water*—Where distilled water is referred to in this test method, either distilled or demineralized water may be used.

7. Test Specimen

7.1 The test specimen may be oven-dried or moistened soil and shall be representative of the total sample. In either case the specimen shall be large enough that its minimum mass in the oven-dried state is in accordance with the following:

Maximum Particle Size (100 % passing)	Standard Sieve Size	Minimum Mass of Test Specimen, g
2 mm	No. 10	20
4.75 mm	No. 4	100

8. Calibration of Pycnometer

8.1 Determine and record the mass of a clean, dry pycnometer, M_f.

8.2 Fill the pycnometer with distilled water to the calibration mark. Visually inspect the pycnometer and its contents to ensure that there are no air bubbles in the distilled water. Determine and record the mass of the pycnometer and water, M_a.

8.3 Insert a thermometer in the water, and determine and record its temperature, T_a, to the nearest 0.5°C (1.0°F).

8.4 From the mass, M_a, determined at the observed temperature, T_a, prepare a table of values of mass, M_a, for a series of temperatures that are likely to prevail when the mass of the pycnometer, soil, and water, M_b, is determined later. These values of M_a can be determined experimentally or may be calculated as follows:

$$M_a \text{ (at } T_x) = [(\text{density of water at } T_x / \text{density of water at } T_a) \times (M_a \text{ (at } T_a) - M_f)] + M_f$$

where:

M_a = mass of pycnometer and water, g,
M_f = mass of pycnometer, g,
T_a = observed temperature of water, °C, and
T_x = any other desired temperature, °C.

NOTE 4—This test method provides a procedure that is more convenient for laboratories making many determinations with the same pycnometer. It is equally applicable to a single determination. Bringing the pycnometer and contents to some designated temperature when masses M_a and M_b are taken, requires considerable time. It is important that masses M_a and M_b be based on water at the same temperature. Values for the density of water at temperatures from 16.0 to 30.0°C are given in Table 1.

9. Procedure

9.1 *Test Method A—Procedure For Oven-Dried Specimens:*

9.1.1 Dry the specimen to a constant mass in an oven maintained at 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F) (See Note 5) and cool in a desiccator.

NOTE 5—Drying of certain soils at 110°C (230°F) may bring about loss of water of composition or hydration, and in such cases drying may be done in reduced air pressure or at a lower temperature.

9.1.2 Determine and record the mass of a clean, dry calibrated pycnometer, M_f. Select a pycnometer of [redacted] capacity that the volume filled to the mark will be a[redacted] percent greater than the space required to accommodate the test specimen. Place the specimen in the pycnometer

TABLE 1 Density of Water and Correction Factor *K* for Various Temperatures

Temperature, °C	Density of Water (g/mL)	Correction Factor *K*
16.0	0.99897	1.0007
16.5	0.99889	1.0007
17.0	0.99880	1.0006
17.5	0.99871	1.0005
18.0	0.99862	1.0004
18.5	0.99853	1.0003
19.0	0.99843	1.0002
19.5	0.99833	1.0001
20.0	0.99823	1.0000
20.5	0.99812	0.9999
21.0	0.99802	0.9998
21.5	0.99791	0.9997
22.0	0.99780	0.9996
22.5	0.99768	0.9995
23.0	0.99757	0.9993
23.5	0.99745	0.9992
24.0	0.99732	0.9991
24.5	0.99720	0.9990
25.0	0.99707	0.9988
25.5	0.99694	0.9987
26.0	0.99681	0.9986
26.5	0.99668	0.9984
27.0	0.99654	0.9983
27.5	0.99640	0.9982
28.0	0.99626	0.998[redacted]
28.5	0.99612	0.9[redacted]
29.0	0.99597	0.9[redacted]
29.5	0.99582	0.99[redacted]
30.0	0.99567	0.9974

[8] Anhydrous calcium sulfate is sold under the trade name Drierite.

000281

TABLE 2 Table of Precision Estimates[A]

Material and Type Index	Standard Deviation[B]		Acceptable Range of Two Results[C]	
	Passing No. 4 (4.75 mm)	Passing No. 10 (2.00 mm)	Passing No. 4 (4.75 mm)	Passing No. 10 (2.00 mm)
Single-operator precision:				
Cohesive soils	0.021	0.019	0.06	0.06
Noncohesive soils	B	B	B	B
Multilaboratory precision:				
Cohesive soils	0.056	0.041	0.16	0.12
Noncohesive soils	B	B	B	B

[A] The figures given in Columns 2 and 3 are the standard deviations that have been found to be appropriate for the materials described in Column 1. The figures given in Columns 4 and 5 are the limits that should not be exceeded by the difference between the two properly conducted tests.

[B] These numbers represent, respectively, the (1S) and (D2S) limits as described in Practice C 670.

[C] Criteria for assigning standard deviation values for noncohesive soils are not available at the present time.

Determine the mass of the specimen and pycnometer, and subtract the mass of the pycnometer, M_f, from this value to determine the mass of the oven-dry specimen, M_o.

9.1.3 Fill the pycnometer with distilled water to a level slightly above that required to cover the soil and soak the specimen for at least 12 h.

NOTE 6—For some soils containing a significant fraction of organic matter, kerosine is a better wetting agent than water and may be used in place of distilled water for oven-dried specimens. If kerosine is used, the entrapped air should only be removed by use of an aspirator. Kerosine is a flammable liquid that must be used with extreme caution.

NOTE 7—Adding distilled water to just cover the soil makes it easier to control boil-over during removal of entrapped air.

9.1.4 Remove the entrapped air by one of the following methods:

9.1.4.1 Boil the specimen gently for at least 10 min while agitating the pycnometer occasionally to assist in the removal of air. Then cool the heated specimen to room temperature.

9.1.4.2 Subject the contents to a vacuum (air pressure not exceeding 100 mm Hg) for at least 30 min (Note 8) either by connecting the pycnometer directly to an aspirator or vacuum pump or by use of a bell jar. While the vacuum is being applied, gently agitate the pycnometer periodically to assist in the removal of air. Some soils boil violently when subjected to reduced air pressure. It will be necessary in those cases to reduce the air pressure at a slower rate or to use a larger flask.

NOTE 8—Specimens with a high plasticity at the natural water content may require 6 to 8 h to remove entrapped air. Specimens with a low plasticity at the natural water content may require 4 to 6 h to remove entrapped air. Oven-dried specimens may require 2 to 4 h to remove entrapped air.

9.1.5 Fill the pycnometer to just below the calibration mark with distilled water at room temperature. Add the distilled water slowly and carefully to avoid the entrapment of air bubbles in the specimen (Note 9). Allow the pycnometer to obtain a uniform water temperature (Note 10).

NOTE 9—To avoid the entrapment of air bubbles, the distilled water can be introduced through a piece of small-diameter flexible tubing with its outlet end kept just below the surface of the distilled water in the pycnometer.

NOTE 10—To obtain a uniform water temperature the pycnometer may be allowed to sit overnight or be placed in a constant temperature bath.

9.1.6 Fill the pycnometer with distilled water at the same temperature to the mark, clean the outside, and dry with a clean, dry cloth. Determine and record the mass of the pycnometer filled with soil and water, M_b.

9.1.7 Insert a thermometer into the water, and determine and record its temperature, T_b, to the nearest 0.5°C (1.0°F).

9.2 *Test Method B—Procedure For Moist Specimens:*

9.2.1 Place the specimen in a calibrated pycnometer.

9.2.1.1 Disperse specimens of clay soils in distilled water before they are placed in the pycnometer, by use of the dispersing equipment specified in Test Method D 422. The minimum volume of slurry that can be prepared by this dispersing equipment is such that a 500-mL (or larger) flask is needed as a pycnometer.

9.2.2 Proceed as described in Sections 9.1.4 and 9.1.7.

9.2.3 Remove the specimen from the pycnometer, and dry it to a constant mass in an oven maintained at 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F) (See Note 5). Cool the specimen in a desiccator.

9.2.4 Determine and record the mass of the oven-dried soil, M_o.

10. Calculation

10.1 Calculate the specific gravity of the soil, G, to the nearest 0.01, based on water at a temperature (T_b) as follows:

$$G \text{ at } T_b = M_o/[M_o + (M_a - M_b]$$

where:

M_o = mass of sample of oven-dry soil, g,
M_a = mass of pycnometer filled with water at temperature T_b (Note 11), g,
M_b = mass of pycnometer filled with water and soil at temperature T_x, g,
T_b = temperature of the contents of the pycnometer when mass M_b was determined, °C.

NOTE 11—This value can be obtained from the table of values of M_a, prepared in accordance with 6.2, for the temperatures prevailing when mass M_b was determined, °C.

NOTE 12—The equation shown in 9.1 is for computing the specific gravity of the soil tested in water. When kerosine is used, the Eq must be adjusted by multiplying the result by the specific gravity of kerosine at T_b and dividing it by the density of water at T_b.

10.2 Calculate the weighted average specific gravity for soils containing particles both larger and smaller than the 4.75-mm sieve using the following equation:

$$G_{avg} = \frac{1}{\frac{R_1}{100G_1} + \frac{P_1}{100G_2}}$$

where:

G_{avg} = weighted average specific gravity of soils composed of particles larger and smaller than the 4.75-mm sieve,
R_1 = percent of soil particles retained on 4.75-mm sieve,
P_1 = percent of soil particles passing the 4.75-mm sieve,
G_1 = apparent specific gravity of soil particles retained on the 4.75-mm sieve as determined by Test Method C 127, and

000282

G_2 = specific gravity of soil particles passing the 4.75-mm sieve as determined by this test method.

10.3 Unless otherwise required, specific gravity (G) values reported shall be based on water at 20°C. Calculate the value based on water at 20°C from the value based on water at the observed temperature T_b, as follows:

$$G \text{ at } 20°C = K \times (G \text{ at } T_b)$$

where:

K = a number found by dividing the density of water at temperature T_b by the density of water at 20°C. Values for the range of temperatures are given in Table 1.

10.4 In some cases, it is desired to report the specific gravity value based on water at a different temperature. In these cases, the specific gravity value, based on any temperature T_x, may be calculated as follows:

$$G \text{ at } T_x = \frac{G \text{ at } 20°C}{K}$$

11. Report

11.1 The report (data sheet) shall include the following:

11.1.1 Identification of the sample (material) being tested, such as boring number, sample number, test number, etc.

11.1.2 Specific gravity at 20°C to the nearest 0.01. Test procedure used (A or B).

11.1.3 Maximum particle size of the test specimen.

11.1.4 Specific gravity to the nearest 0.01 at a specified temperature other than 20°C, if applicable.

11.1.5 Type of fluid used, if other than distilled water.

11.1.6 When any portion of the original sample of soil is eliminated in the preparation of the test specimen, the portion on which the test has been made shall be reported.

12. Precision and Bias

12.1 *Precision*—Criteria for judging the acceptability of specific gravity test results obtained by this test method on material passing the 4.75-mm sieve are given as follows:

12.2 *Statement of Precision*—Criteria for judging the acceptability of specific gravity test results obtained by this test method on material passing the 4.75 (No. 4) or 2.00 mm (No. 10) sieve are given in Table 2. The estimates of precision for material passing the 2.00 mm sieve are based on results from the AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory (AMRL) Proficiency Sample Program, of testing conducted on material passing the 2.00 (No. 10) sieve by this test method and AASHTO Test Method T100.

12.3 *Bias*—There is no acceptable reference value for this test method; therefore, bias cannot be determined.

13. Keywords

13.1 soil; specific gravity

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee; which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000283

Designation: D 1452 – 80 (Reapproved 1990)ε1

Standard Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 1452; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

ε1 NOTE—Section 6 was added editorially in July 1990.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers equipment and procedures for the use of earth augers in shallow geotechnical exploration. This practice does not apply to sectional continuous flight augers.

1.2 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Significance and Use

2.1 Auger borings often provide the simplest method of soil investigation and sampling. They may be used for any purpose where disturbed samples can be used and are valuable in connection with ground water level determination and indication of changes in strata and advancement of hole for spoon and tube sampling. Equipment required is simple and readily available. Depths of auger investigations are, however, limited by ground water conditions, soil characteristics, and the equipment used.

3. Apparatus

3.1 *Hand-Operated Augers*:

3.1.1 *Helical Augers*—Small lightweight augers generally available in sizes from 1 through 3 in. (25.4 through 76.2 mm).

3.1.1.1 *Spiral-Type Auger*, consisting of a flat thin metal strip, machine twisted to a spiral configuration of uniform pitch; having at one end, a sharpened or hardened point, with a means of attaching a shaft or extension at the opposite end.

3.1.1.2 *Ship-Type Auger*—Similar to a carpenter's wood bit. It is generally forged from steel and machined to the desired size and configuration. It is normally provided with sharpened and hardened nibs at the point end and with an integral shaft extending through its length for attachment of a handle or extension at the opposite end.

3.1.2 *Open Tubular Augers*, ranging in size from 1.5 through 8 in. (38.1 through 203.2 mm) and having the common characteristic of appearing essentially tubular when viewed from the digging end.

3.1.2.1 *Orchard-Barrel Type*, consisting essentially of a tube having cutting lips or nibs hardened and sharpened to penetrate the formation on one end and an adaptor fitting for an extension or handle on the opposite end.

3.1.2.2 *Open-Spiral Type*, consisting of a flat thin metal strip that has been helically wound around a circular mandrel to form a spiral in which the flat faces of the strip are parallel to the axis of the augered hole. The lower helix edges are hard-faced to improve wear characteristics. The opposite end is fitted with an adaptor for extension.

3.1.2.3 *Closed-Spiral Type*—Nearly identical to the open-spiral type except, the pitch of the helically wound spiral is much less than that of the open-spiral type.

3.1.3 *Post-Hole Augers*, generally 2 through 8 in. (50.8 through 203.2 mm), and having in common a means of blocking the escape of soil from the auger.

3.1.3.1 *Clam-Shell Type*, consisting of two halves, hinged to allow opening and closing for alternately digging and retrieving. It is not usable deeper than about 3.5 ft (1.07 m).

3.1.3.2 *Iwan Type*, consisting of two tubular steel segments, connected at the top to a common member to form a nearly complete tube, but with diametrically opposed openings. It is connected at the bottom by two radial blades pitched to serve as cutters which also block the escape of contained soil. Attachment of handle or extension is at the top connector.

3.2 *Machine-Operated Augers*:

3.2.1 *Helical Augers*, generally 8 through 48 in. (203.2 through 1219 mm), consisting essentially of a center shaft fitted with a shank or socket for application of power, and having one to three complete 360° (6.28-rad) spirals for conveyance and storage of cut soil. Cutter bits and pilot bits are available in moderate and hard formation types and normally replaceable in the field. They are normally operated by heavy-duty, high-torque machines, designed for heavy construction work.

3.2.2 *Stinger Augers*, generally 6 through 30 in. (152.4 through 762 mm), are similar to the helical auger in 3.2.1, but lighter and generally smaller. They are commonly operated by light-duty machines for post and power pole holes.

3.2.3 *Disk Augers*, generally 10 through 30 in. (254 through 762 mm), consisting essentially of a flat, steel disk with diametrically opposed segments removed and having a

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved June 12, 1980. Published August 1980. Originally published as D 1452 – 57 T. Last previous edition D 1452 – 65 (1972).

000284

shank or socket located centrally for application of power. Replaceable cutter bits, located downward from the leading edges of the remaining disk, dig and load soil that is held on the disk by valves or shutters hinged at the disk in order to close the removed segments. The disk auger is specifically designed to be operated by machines having limited vertical clearance between spindle and ground surface.

3.2.4 *Bucket Auger*, generally 12 through 48 in. (304.8 through 1219 mm), consisting essentially of a disk auger, without shank or socket, but hinge-mounted to the bottom of a steel tube or bucket of approximately the same diameter as the disk auger. A socket or shank for power application is located in the top center of the bucket diametral cross piece provided for the purpose.

3.3 *Casing* (when needed), consisting of pipe of slightly larger diameter than the auger used.

3.4 *Accessory Equipment*—Labels, field log sheets, sample jars, sealing wax, sample bags, and other necessary tools and supplies.

4. Procedure

4.1 Make the auger boring by rotating and advancing the desired distance into the soil. Withdraw the auger from the hole and remove the soil for examination and test. Return the empty auger to the hole and repeat the procedure. Continue the sequence until the required depth is reached.

4.2 Casing is required in unstable soil in which the bore hole fails to stay open and especially when the boring is extended below the ground-water level. The inside diameter of the casing must be slightly larger than the diameter of the auger used. The casing shall be driven to a depth not greater than the top of the next sample and shall be cleaned out by means of the auger. The auger can then be inserted into the bore hole and turned below the bottom of the casing to obtain a sample.

4.3 The soil auger can be used both for boring the hole and for bringing up disturbed samples of the soil encountered. The structure of a cohesive soil is completely destroyed and the moisture may be changed by the auger. Seal all samples in a jar or other airtight container and label appropriately. If more than one type of soil is picked up in the sample, prepare a separate container for each type of soil.

4.4 *Field Observations*—Record complete ground water information in the field logs. Where casing is used, measure ground water levels, both before and after the casing is pulled. In sands, determine the water level at least 30 min after the boring is completed; in silts, at least 24 h. In clays, no accurate water level determination is possible unless pervious seams are present. As a precaution, however, water levels in clays shall be taken after at least 24 h.

5. Report

5.1 The data obtained in boring shall be recorded in the field logs and shall include the following:

5.1.1 Date of start and completion of boring,

5.1.2 Identifying number of boring,

5.1.3 Reference datum including direction and distance of boring relative to reference line of project or other suitable reference points,

5.1.4 Type and size of auger used in boring,

5.1.5 Depth of changes in strata,

5.1.6 Description of soil in each major stratum,

5.1.7 Ground water elevation and location of seepage zones, when found, and

5.1.8 Condition of augered hole upon removal of auger, that is, whether the hole remains open or the sides cave, when such can be observed.

6. Keywords

Auger borings; sampling; soil investigations

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000285

Standard Test Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 1586; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DOD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

ε1NOTE—Editorial changes were made throughout October 1992.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method describes the procedure, generally known as the Standard Penetration Test (SPT), for driving a split-barrel sampler to obtain a representative soil sample and a measure of the resistance of the soil to penetration of the sampler.

1.2 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.* For a specific precautionary statement, see 5.4.1.

1.3 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

D 4633 Test Method for Stress Wave Energy Measurement for Dynamic Penetrometer Testing Systems[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard*

3.1.1 *anvil*—that portion of the drive-weight assembly which the hammer strikes and through which the hammer energy passes into the drill rods.

3.1.2 *cathead*—the rotating drum or windlass in the rope-cathead lift system around which the operator wraps a rope to lift and drop the hammer by successively tightening and loosening the rope turns around the drum.

3.1.3 *drill rods*—rods used to transmit downward force and torque to the drill bit while drilling a borehole.

3.1.4 *drive-weight assembly*—a device consisting of the hammer, hammer fall guide, the anvil, and any hammer drop system.

3.1.5 *hammer*—that portion of the drive-weight assembly consisting of the 140 ± 2 lb (63.5 ± 1 kg) impact weight which is successively lifted and dropped to provide the energy that accomplishes the sampling and penetration.

3.1.6 *hammer drop system*—that portion of the drive-weight assembly by which the operator accomplishes the lifting and dropping of the hammer to produce the blow.

3.1.7 *hammer fall guide*—that part of the drive-weight assembly used to guide the fall of the hammer.

3.1.8 *N-value*—the blowcount representation of the penetration resistance of the soil. The *N*-value, reported in blows per foot, equals the sum of the number of blows required to drive the sampler over the depth interval of 6 to 18 in. (150 to 450 mm) (see 7.3).

3.1.9 ΔN—the number of blows obtained from each of the 6-in. (150-mm) intervals of sampler penetration (see 7.3).

3.1.10 *number of rope turns*—the total contact angle between the rope and the cathead at the beginning of the operator's rope slackening to drop the hammer, divided by 360° (see Fig. 1).

3.1.11 *sampling rods*—rods that connect the drive-weight assembly to the sampler. Drill rods are often used for this purpose.

3.1.12 *SPT*—abbreviation for Standard Penetration Test, a term by which engineers commonly refer to this method.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 This test method provides a soil sample for identification purposes and for laboratory tests appropriate for soil obtained from a sampler that may produce large shear strain disturbance in the sample.

4.2 This test method is used extensively in a great variety of geotechnical exploration projects. Many local correlations and widely published correlations which relate SPT blowcount, or *N*-value, and the engineering behavior of earthworks and foundations are available.

5. Apparatus

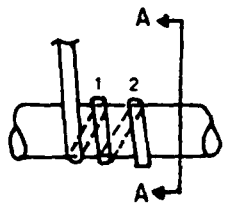
5.1 *Drilling Equipment*—Any drilling equipment that provides at the time of sampling a suitably clean open hole before insertion of the sampler and ensures that the penetration test is performed on undisturbed soil shall be acceptable. The following pieces of equipment have proven to be

[1] This method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

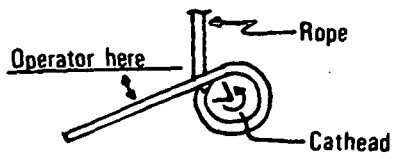
Current edition approved Sept. 11, 1984. Published November 1984. Originally published as D 1586 – 58 T. Last previous edition D 1586 – 67 (1974).

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

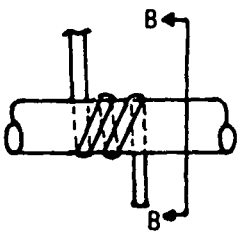
000286



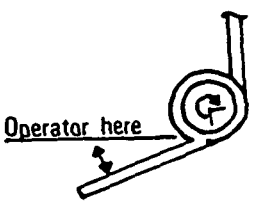
(a) counterclockwise rotation approximately 1¾ turns



Section A–A



(b) clockwise rotation approximately 2¼ turns



Section B–B

FIG. 1 Definitions of the Number of Rope Turns and the Angle for (a) Counterclockwise Rotation and (b) Clockwise Rotation of the Cathead

suitable for advancing a borehole in some subsurface conditions.

5.1.1 *Drag, Chopping, and Fishtail Bits*, less than 6.5 in. (162 mm) and greater than 2.2 in. (56 mm) in diameter may be used in conjuction with open-hole rotary drilling or casing-advancement drilling methods. To avoid disturbance of the underlying soil, bottom discharge bits are not permitted; only side discharge bits are permitted.

5.1.2 *Roller-Cone Bits*, less than 6.5 in. (162 mm) and greater than 2.2 in. (56 mm) in diameter may be used in conjunction with open-hole rotary drilling or casing-advancement drilling methods if the drilling fluid discharge is deflected.

5.1.3 *Hollow-Stem Continuous Flight Augers*, with or without a center bit assembly, may be used to drill the boring. The inside diameter of the hollow-stem augers shall be less than 6.5 in. (162 mm) and greater than 2.2 in. (56 mm).

5.1.4 *Solid, Continuous Flight, Bucket and Hand Augers*, less than 6.5 in. (162 mm) and greater than 2.2 in. (56 mm) in diameter may be used if the soil on the side of the boring does not cave onto the sampler or sampling rods during sampling.

5.2 *Sampling Rods*—Flush-joint steel drill rods shall be used to connect the split-barrel sampler to the drive-weight assembly. The sampling rod shall have a stiffness (moment of inertia) equal to or greater than that of parallel wall "A" rod (a steel rod which has an outside diameter of 1⅝ in. (41.2 mm) and an inside diameter of 1⅛ in. (28.5 mm).

NOTE 1—Recent research and comparative testing indicates the type rod used, with stiffness ranging from "A" size rod to "N" size rod, will usually have a negligible effect on the *N*-values to depths of at least 100 ft (30 m).

5.3 *Split-Barrel Sampler*—The sampler shall be constructed with the dimensions indicated in Fig. 2. The driving shoe shall be of hardened steel and shall be replaced or repaired when it becomes dented or distorted. The use of liners to produce a constant inside diameter of 1⅜ in. (35 mm) is permitted, but shall be noted on the penetration record if used. The use of a sample retainer basket is permitted, and should also be noted on the penetration record if used.

NOTE 2—Both theory and available test data suggest that *N*-values may increase between 10 to 30 % when liners are used.

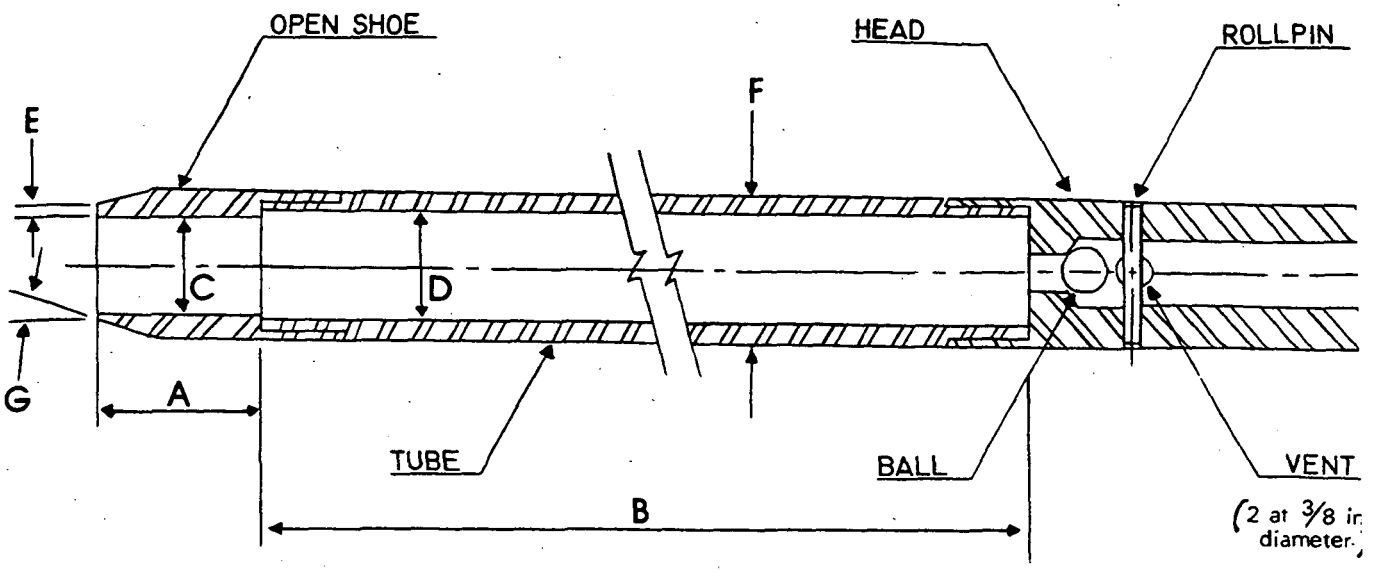
5.4 *Drive-Weight Assembly:*

5.4.1 *Hammer and Anvil*—The hammer shall weigh 140 ± 2 lb (63.5 ± 1 kg) and shall be a solid rigid metallic mass. The hammer shall strike the anvil and make steel on steel contact when it is dropped. A hammer fall guide permitting a free fall shall be used. Hammers used with the cathead and rope method shall have an unimpeded overlift capacity of at least 4 in. (100 mm). For safety reasons, the use of a hammer assembly with an internal anvil is encouraged.

NOTE 3—It is suggested that the hammer fall guide be permanently marked to enable the operator or inspector to judge the hammer drop height.

5.4.2 *Hammer Drop System*—Rope-cathead, trip, semi-automatic, or automatic hammer drop systems may be used, providing the lifting apparatus will not cause penetration of

000287



A = 1.0 to 2.0 in. (25 to 50 mm)
B = 18.0 to 30.0 in. (0.457 to 0.762 m)
C = 1.375 ± 0.005 in. (34.93 ± 0.13 mm)
D = 1.50 ± 0.05 – 0.00 in. (38.1 ± 1.3 – 0.0 mm)
E = 0.10 ± 0.02 in. (2.54 ± 0.25 mm)
F = 2.00 ± 0.05 – 0.00 in. (50.8 ± 1.3 – 0.0 mm)
G = 16.0° to 23.0°

The 1½ in. (38 mm) inside diameter split barrel may be used with a 16-gage wall thickness split liner. The penetrating end of the drive shoe may be slightly rounded. Me or plastic retainers may be used to retain soil samples.

FIG. 2 Split-Barrel Sampler

the sampler while re-engaging and lifting the hammer.

5.5 *Accessory Equipment*—Accessories such as labels, sample containers, data sheets, and groundwater level measuring devices shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of the project and other ASTM standards.

6. Drilling Procedure

6.1 The boring shall be advanced incrementally to permit intermittent or continuous sampling. Test intervals and locations are normally stipulated by the project engineer or geologist. Typically, the intervals selected are 5 ft (1.5 mm) or less in homogeneous strata with test and sampling locations at every change of strata.

6.2 Any drilling procedure that provides a suitably clean and stable hole before insertion of the sampler and assures that the penetration test is performed on essentially undisturbed soil shall be acceptable. Each of the following procedures have proven to be acceptable for some subsurface conditions. The subsurface conditions anticipated should be considered when selecting the drilling method to be used.

6.2.1 Open-hole rotary drilling method.

6.2.2 Continuous flight hollow-stem auger method.

6.2.3 Wash boring method.

6.2.4 Continuous flight solid auger method.

6.3 Several drilling methods produce unacceptable borings. The process of jetting through an open tube sampler and then sampling when the desired depth is reached shall not be permitted. The continuous flight solid auger method shall not be used for advancing the boring below a water table or below the upper confining bed of a confined non-cohesive stratum that is under artesian pressure. Casing may not be advanced below the sampling elevation prior t sampling. Advancing a boring with bottom discharge bits not permissible. It is not permissible to advance the borin for subsequent insertion of the sampler solely by means c previous sampling with the SPT sampler.

6.4 The drilling fluid level within the boring or hollow stem augers shall be maintained at or above the in sit groundwater level at all times during drilling, removal of dri rods, and sampling.

7. Sampling and Testing Procedure

7.1 After the boring has been advanced to the desire sampling elevation and excessive cuttings have been re moved, prepare for the test with the following sequence c operations.

7.1.1 Attach the split-barrel sampler to the sampling rod and lower into the borehole. Do not allow the sampler t drop onto the soil to be sampled.

7.1.2 Position the hammer above and attach the anvil t the top of the sampling rods. This may be done before th sampling rods and sampler are lowered into the borehole.

7.1.3 Rest the dead weight of the sampler, rods, anvil, an drive weight on the bottom of the boring and apply a seatin blow. If excessive cuttings are encountered at the bottom o the boring, remove the sampler and sampling rods from th boring and remove the cuttings.

7.1.4 Mark the drill rods in three successive 6-in. (0.15-m increments so that the advance of the sampler under th impact of the hammer can be easily observed for each 6-in (0.15-m) increment.

7.2 Drive the sampler with blows from the 140-lb (63.5

000288

kg) hammer and count the number of blows applied in each 6-in. (0.15-m) increment until one of the following occurs:

7.2.1 A total of 50 blows have been applied during any one of the three 6-in. (0.15-m) increments described in 7.1.4.

7.2.2 A total of 100 blows have been applied.

7.2.3 There is no observed advance of the sampler during the application of 10 successive blows of the hammer.

7.2.4 The sampler is advanced the complete 18 in. (0.45 m) without the limiting blow counts occurring as described in 7.2.1, 7.2.2, or 7.2.3.

7.3 Record the number of blows required to effect each 6 in. (0.15 m) of penetration or fraction thereof. The first 6 in. is considered to be a seating drive. The sum of the number of blows required for the second and third 6 in. of penetration is termed the "standard penetration resistance," or the "*N*-value." If the sampler is driven less than 18 in. (0.45 m), as permitted in 7.2.1, 7.2.2, or 7.2.3, the number of blows per each complete 6-in. (0.15-m) increment and per each partial increment shall be recorded on the boring log. For partial increments, the depth of penetration shall be reported to the nearest 1 in. (25 mm), in addition to the number of blows. If the sampler advances below the bottom of the boring under the static weight of the drill rods or the weight of the drill rods plus the static weight of the hammer, this information should be noted on the boring log.

7.4 The raising and dropping of the 140-lb (63.5-kg) hammer shall be accomplished using either of the following two methods:

7.4.1 By using a trip, automatic, or semi-automatic hammer drop system which lifts the 140-lb (63.5-kg) hammer and allows it to drop 30 ± 1.0 in. (0.76 m ± 25 mm) unimpeded.

7.4.2 By using a cathead to pull a rope attached to the hammer. When the cathead and rope method is used the system and operation shall conform to the following:

7.4.2.1 The cathead shall be essentially free of rust, oil, or grease and have a diameter in the range of 6 to 10 in. (150 to 250 mm).

7.4.2.2 The cathead should be operated at a minimum speed of rotation of 100 RPM, or the approximate speed of rotation shall be reported on the boring log.

7.4.2.3 No more than 2¼ rope turns on the cathead may be used during the performance of the penetration test, as shown in Fig. 1.

NOTE 4—The operator should generally use either 1¾ or 2¼ rope turns, depending upon whether or not the rope comes off the top (1¾ turns) or the bottom (2¼ turns) of the cathead. It is generally known and accepted that 2¾ or more rope turns considerably impedes the fall of the hammer and should not be used to perform the test. The cathead rope should be maintained in a relatively dry, clean, and unfrayed condition.

7.4.2.4 For each hammer blow, a 30-in. (0.76-m) lift and drop shall be employed by the operator. The operation of pulling and throwing the rope shall be performed rhythmically without holding the rope at the top of the stroke.

7.5 Bring the sampler to the surface and open. Record the percent recovery or the length of sample recovered. Describe the soil samples recovered as to composition, color, stratification, and condition, then place one or more representative portions of the sample into sealable moisture-proof containers (jars) without ramming or distorting any apparent stratification. Seal each container to prevent evaporation of soil moisture. Affix labels to the containers bearing job designation, boring number, sample depth, and the blow count per 6-in. (0.15-m) increment. Protect the samples against extreme temperature changes. If there is a soil change within the sampler, make a jar for each stratum and note its location in the sampler barrel.

8. Report

8.1 Drilling information shall be recorded in the field and shall include the following:

8.1.1 Name and location of job,

8.1.2 Names of crew,

8.1.3 Type and make of drilling machine,

8.1.4 Weather conditions,

8.1.5 Date and time of start and finish of boring,

8.1.6 Boring number and location (station and coordinates, if available and applicable),

8.1.7 Surface elevation, if available,

8.1.8 Method of advancing and cleaning the boring,

8.1.9 Method of keeping boring open,

8.1.10 Depth of water surface and drilling depth at the time of a noted loss of drilling fluid, and time and date when reading or notation was made,

8.1.11 Location of strata changes,

8.1.12 Size of casing, depth of cased portion of boring,

8.1.13 Equipment and method of driving sampler,

8.1.14 Type sampler and length and inside diameter of barrel (note use of liners),

8.1.15 Size, type, and section length of the sampling rods, and

8.1.16 Remarks.

8.2 Data obtained for each sample shall be recorded in the field and shall include the following:

8.2.1 Sample depth and, if utilized, the sample number,

8.2.2 Description of soil,

8.2.3 Strata changes within sample,

8.2.4 Sampler penetration and recovery lengths, and

8.2.5 Number of blows per 6-in. (0.15-m) or partial increment.

9. Precision and Bias

9.1 *Precision*—A valid estimate of test precision has not been determined because it is too costly to conduct the necessary inter-laboratory (field) tests. Subcommittee D18.02 welcomes proposals to allow development of a valid precision statement.

9.2 *Bias*—Because there is no reference material for this test method, there can be no bias statement.

9.3 Variations in *N*-values of 100 % or more have been observed when using different standard penetration test apparatus and drillers for adjacent borings in the same soil formation. Current opinion, based on field experience, indicates that when using the same apparatus and driller, *N*-values in the same soil can be reproduced with a coefficient of variation of about 10 %.

9.4 The use of faulty equipment, such as an extremely massive or damaged anvil, a rusty cathead, a low speed cathead, an old, oily rope, or massive or poorly lubricated rope sheaves can significantly contribute to differences in *N*-values obtained between operator-drill rig systems.

000289

344

9.5 The variability in N-values produced by different drill rigs and operators may be reduced by measuring that part of the hammer energy delivered into the drill rods from the sampler and adjusting N on the basis of comparative energies. A method for energy measurement and N-value adjustment is given in Test Method D 4633.

10. Keywords

10.1 blow count; in-situ test; penetration resistance; split-barrel sampling; standard penetration test

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000290

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 1587 – 83

Standard Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 1587; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This practice has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense and for listing in the DOD Index of Specifications and Standards.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers a procedure for using a thin-walled metal tube to recover relatively undisturbed soil samples suitable for laboratory tests of structural properties. Thin-walled tubes used in piston, plug, or rotary-type samplers, such as the Denison or Pitcher, must comply with the portions of this practice which describe the thin-walled tubes (5.3).

NOTE 1—This practice does not apply to liners used within the above samplers.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

3. Summary of Practice

3.1 A relatively undisturbed sample is obtained by pressing a thin-walled metal tube into the in-situ soil, removing the soil-filled tube, and sealing the ends to prevent the soil from being disturbed or losing moisture.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 This practice, or Practice D 3550, is used when it is necessary to obtain a relatively undisturbed specimen suitable for laboratory tests of structural properties or other tests that might be influenced by soil disturbance.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Drilling Equipment*—Any drilling equipment may be used that provides a reasonably clean hole; that does not disturb the soil to be sampled; and that does not hinder the penetration of the thin-walled sampler. Open borehole diameter and the inside diameter of driven casing or hollow stem auger shall not exceed 3.5 times the outside diameter of the thin-walled tube.

5.2 *Sampler Insertion Equipment,* shall be adequate to provide a relatively rapid continuous penetration force. For hard formations it may be necessary, although not recommended, to drive the thin-walled tube sampler.

5.3 *Thin-Walled Tubes,* should be manufactured as shown in Fig. 1. They should have an outside diameter of 2 to 5 in. and be made of metal having adequate strength for use in the soil and formation intended. Tubes shall be clean and free of all surface irregularities including projecting weld seams.

5.3.1 *Length of Tubes*—See Table 1 and 6.4.

5.3.2 *Tolerances,* shall be within the limits shown in Table 2.

5.3.3 *Inside Clearance Ratio,* should be 1 % or as specified by the engineer or geologist for the soil and formation to be sampled. Generally, the inside clearance ratio used should increase with the increase in plasticity of the soil being sampled. See Fig. 1 for definition of inside clearance ratio.

5.3.4 *Corrosion Protection*—Corrosion, whether from galvanic or chemical reaction, can damage or destroy both the thin-walled tube and the sample. Severity of damage is a function of time as well as interaction between the sample and the tube. Thin-walled tubes should have some form of protective coating. Tubes which will contain samples for more than 72 h shall be coated. The type of coating to be used may vary depending upon the material to be sampled. Coatings may include a light coat of lubricating oil, lacquer, epoxy, Teflon, and others. Type of coating must be specified by the engineer or geologist if storage will exceed 72 h. Plating of the tubes or alternate base metals may be specified by the engineer or geologist.

5.4 *Sampler Head,* serves to couple the thin-walled tube to the insertion equipment and, together with the thin-walled tube, comprises the thin-walled tube sampler. The sampler head shall contain a suitable check valve and a venting area to the outside equal to or greater than the area through the check valve. Attachment of the head to the tube shall be concentric and coaxial to assure uniform application of force to the tube by the sampler insertion equipment.

6. Procedure

6.1 Clean out the borehole to sampling elevation using whatever method is preferred that will ensure the material to be sampled is not disturbed. If groundwater is encountered, maintain the liquid level in the borehole at or above ground water level during the sampling operation.

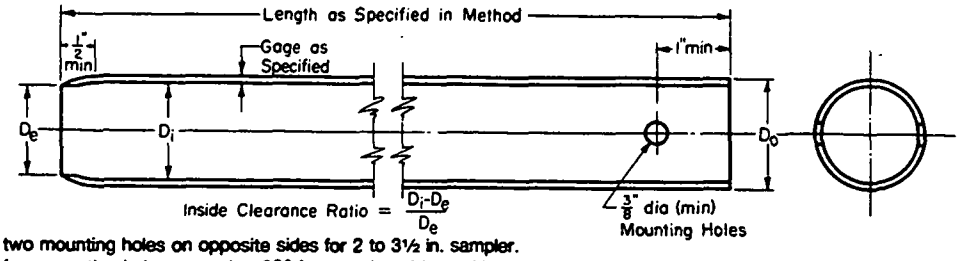
6.2 Bottom discharge bits are not permitted. Side discharge bits may be used, with caution. Jetting through an open-tube sampler to clean out the borehole to sampling elevation is not permitted. Remove loose material from the center of a casing or hollow stem auger as carefully as

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved Aug. 17, 1983. Published October 1983. Originally published as D 1587 – 58 T. Last previous edition D 1587 – 74.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards,* Vol 04.08.

000292



NOTE 1—Minimum of two mounting holes on opposite sides for 2 to 3½ in. sampler.
NOTE 2—Minimum of four mounting holes spaced at 90° for samplers 4 in. and larger.
NOTE 3—Tube held with hardened screws.
NOTE 4—Two-inch outside-diameter tubes are specified with an 18-gage wall thickness to comply with area ratio criteria accepted for "undisturbed samples." Users are advised that such tubing is difficult to locate and can be extremely expensive in small quantities. Sixteen-gage tubes are generally readily available.

Metric Equivalents

in.	mm
⅜	6.77
½	12.7
1	25.4
2	50.8
3½	88.9
4	101.6

FIG. 1 Thin-Walled Tube for Sampling

TABLE 1 Suitable Thin-Walled Steel Sample Tubes[A]

Outside diameter:			
in.	2	3	5
mm	50.8	76.2	127
Wall thickness:			
Bwg	18	16	11
in.	0.049	0.065	0.120
mm	1.24	1.65	3.05
Tube length:			
in.	36	36	54
m	0.91	0.91	1.45
Clearance ratio, %	1	1	1

[A] The three diameters recommended in Table 1 are indicated for purposes of standardization, and are not intended to indicate that sampling tubes of intermediate or larger diameters are not acceptable. Lengths of tubes shown are illustrative. Proper lengths to be determined as suited to field conditions.

TABLE 2 Dimensional Tolerances for Thin-Walled Tubes

Size Outside Diameter	Nominal Tube Diameters from Table 1[A] Tolerances, in.		
	2	3	5
Outside diameter	+0.007	+0.010	+0.015
	−0.000	−0.000	−0.000
Inside diameter	+0.000	+0.000	+0.000
	−0.007	−0.010	−0.015
Wall thickness	±0.007	±0.010	±0.015
Ovality	0.015	0.020	0.030
Straightness	0.030/ft	0.030/ft	0.030/ft

[A] Intermediate or larger diameters should be proportional. Tolerances shown are essentially standard commercial manufacturing tolerances for seamless steel mechanical tubing. Specify only two of the first three tolerances; that is, O.D. and I.D., or O.D. and Wall, or I.D. and Wall.

possible to avoid disturbance of the material to be sampled.

NOTE 2—Roller bits are available in downward-jetting and diffused-jet configurations. Downward-jetting configuration rock bits are not acceptable. Diffuse-jet configurations are generally acceptable.

6.3 Place the sample tube so that its bottom rests on the bottom of the hole. Advance the sampler without rotation by a continuous relatively rapid motion.

6.4 Determine the length of advance by the resistance and condition of the formation, but the length shall never exceed 5 to 10 diameters of the tube in sands and 10 to 15 diameters of the tube in clays.

NOTE 3—Weight of sample, laboratory handling capabilities, transportation problems, and commercial availability of tubes will generally limit maximum practical lengths to those shown in Table 1.

6.5 When the formation is too hard for push-type insertion, the tube may be driven or Practice D 3550 may be used. Other methods, as directed by the engineer or geologist, may be used. If driving methods are used, the data regarding weight and fall of the hammer and penetration achieved must be shown in the report. Additionally, that tube must be prominently labeled a "driven sample."

6.6 In no case shall a length of advance be greater than the sample-tube length minus an allowance for the sampler head and a minimum of 3 in. for sludge-end cuttings.

NOTE 4—The tube may be rotated to shear bottom of the sample after pressing is complete.

6.7 Withdraw the sampler from the formation as carefully as possible in order to minimize disturbance of the sample.

7. Preparation for Shipment

7.1 Upon removal of the tube, measure the length of sample in the tube. Remove the disturbed material in the upper end of the tube and measure the length again. Seal the upper end of the tube. Remove at least 1 in. of material from the lower end of the tube. Use this material for soil description in accordance with Practice D 2488. Measure the overall sample length. Seal the lower end of the tube. Alternatively, after measurement, the tube may be sealed without removal of soil from the ends of the tube if so directed by the engineer or geologist.

NOTE 5—Field extrusion and packaging of extruded samples under the specific direction of a geotechnical engineer or geologist is permitted.
NOTE 6—Tubes sealed over the ends as opposed to those sealed with expanding packers should contain end padding in end voids in order to prevent drainage or movement of the sample within the tube.

7.2 Prepare and immediately affix labels or apply markings as necessary to identify the sample. Assure that the

000293

markings or labels are adequate to survive transportation and storage.

8. Report

8.1 The appropriate information is required as follows:

8.1.1 Name and location of the project,

8.1.2 Boring number and precise location on project,

8.1.3 Surface elevation or reference to a datum,

8.1.4 Date and time of boring—start and finish,

8.1.5 Depth to top of sample and number of sample,

8.1.6 Description of sampler: size, type of metal, type of coating,

8.1.7 Method of sampler insertion: push or drive,

8.1.8 Method of drilling, size of hole, casing, and drilling fluid used,

8.1.9 Depth to groundwater level: date and time measured,

8.1.10 Any possible current or tidal effect on water level,

8.1.11 Soil description in accordance with Practice D 2488,

8.1.12 Length of sampler advance, and

8.1.13 Recovery: length of sample obtained.

9. Precision and Bias

9.1 This practice does not produce numerical data; therefore, a precision and bias statement is not applicable.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103. known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000294

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 2216 – 92

Standard Test Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2216; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the laboratory determination of the water (moisture) content of soil, rock, and similar materials by mass. For simplicity, the word "material" hereinafter also refers to either soil or rock, whichever is most applicable.

1.2 The water content of a material is defined by this standard as the ratio, expressed as a percentage, of the mass of "pore" or "free" water in a given mass of material to the mass of the solid material.

1.3 The term "solid particles" as used in geotechnical engineering is typically assumed to mean naturally occurring mineral particles of soil and rock that are not readily soluble in water. Therefore, the water content of materials containing extraneous matter (such as cement, and the like) may require special treatment or a qualified definition of water content. In addition, some organic materials may be decomposed by oven drying at the standard drying temperature for this method (110°C). Materials containing gypsum (calcium sulfate dihydrate or other compounds having significant amounts of hydrated water) may present a special problem as this material slowly dehydrates at the standard drying temperature (110°C) and at very low relative humidities, forming a compound (calcium sulfate hemihydrate) which is not normally present in natural materials except in some desert soils. In order to reduce the degree of dehydration of gypsum in those materials containing gypsum, or to reduce decomposition in highly organic soils, it may be desirable to dry these materials at 60°C or in a desiccator at room temperature. Thus, when a drying temperature is used which is different from the standard drying temperature as defined by this test method, the resulting water content may be different from standard water content determined at the standard drying temperature.

NOTE 1—Test Methods D 2974 provides an alternate procedure for determining water content of peat materials.

1.4 Materials containing water with substantial amounts of soluble solids (such as salt in the case of marine sediments) when tested by this method will give a mass of solids which includes the previously soluble solids. These materials require special treatment to remove or account for the presence of precipitated solids in the dry mass of the specimen, or a qualified definition of water content must be used.

1.5 *This test method requires several hours for proper drying of the water content specimen.* Test Method D 4643 provides for drying of the test specimen in a microwave oven which is a shorter process.

1.6 This standard requires the drying of material in an oven at high temperatures. If the material being dried is contaminated with certain chemicals, health and safety hazards can exist. Therefore, this standard should not be used in determining the water content of contaminated soils unless adequate health and safety precautions are taken.

1.7 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 2974 Test Methods for Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils[2]

D 4220 Practice for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[2]

D 4643 Test Method for Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil by the Microwave Oven Method[2]

D 4753 Specification for Evaluating, Selecting, and Specifying Balances and Scales for Use in Soil and Rock Testing[2]

E 145 Specification for Gravity-Convection And Forced-Ventilation Ovens[3]

3. Terminology

3.1 Refer to Terminology D 653 for standard definitions of terms.

3.2 *Description of Term Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *water content* (of a material)—the ratio of the mass of water contained in the pore spaces of soil or rock material, to the solid mass of particles in that material, expressed as a percentage.

[1] This method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.03 on Texture, Plasticity and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved June 15, 1992. Published August 1992. Originally published as D 2216 – 63 T. Last previous edition D 2216 – 90[ε1].

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

000296

4. Summary of Test Method

4.1 A test specimen is dried in an oven to a constant mass. The loss of mass due to drying is considered to be water. The water content is calculated using the mass of water and the mass of the dry specimen.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 For many materials, the water content is one of the most significant index properties used in establishing a correlation between soil behavior and its properties.

5.2 The water content of a material is used in expressing the phase relationships of air, water, and solids in a given volume of material.

5.3 In fine-grained (cohesive) soils, the consistency of a given soil type depends on its water content. The water content of a soil, along with its liquid and plastic limits as determined by Test Method D 4318, is used to express its relative consistency or liquidity index.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Drying Oven*, thermostatically-controlled, preferably of the forced-draft type, meeting the requirements of Specification E 145 and capable of maintaining a uniform temperature of 110 ± 5°C throughout the drying chamber.

6.2 *Balances*—All balances must meet the requirements of Specification D 4753 and this Section. A Class GP1 balance of 0.01g readability is required for specimens having a mass of up to 200 g (excluding mass of specimen container) and a Class GP2 balance of 0.1g readability is required for specimens having a mass over 200 g.

6.3 *Specimen Containers*—Suitable containers made of material resistant to corrosion and change in mass upon repeated heating, cooling, exposure to materials of varying pH, and cleaning. Containers with close-fitting lids shall be used for testing specimens having a mass of less than about 200 g; while for specimens having a mass greater than about 200 g, containers without lids may be used. One container is needed for each water content determination.

NOTE 2—The purpose of close-fitting lids is to prevent loss of moisture from specimens before initial mass determination and to prevent absorption of moisture from the atmosphere following drying and before final mass determination.

6.4 *Desiccator*—A desiccator cabinet or large desiccator jar of suitable size containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium phosphate. It is preferable to use a desiccant which changes color to indicate it needs reconstitution. See Section 10.5.

NOTE 3—Anhydrous calcium sulfate is sold under the trade name Drierite.

6.5 *Container Handling Apparatus*, gloves, tongs, or suitable holder for moving and handling hot containers after drying.

6.6 *Miscellaneous*, knives, spatulas, scoops, quartering cloth, sample splitters, etc, as required.

7. Samples

7.1 Samples shall be preserved and transported in accordance with Practice 4220 Groups B, C, or D soils. Keep the samples that are stored prior to testing in noncorrodible airtight containers at a temperature between approximately 3 and 30°C and in an area that prevents direct contact with sunlight. Disturbed samples in jars or other containers shall be stored in such a way as to prevent or minimize moisture condensation on the insides of the containers.

7.2 The water content determination should be done as soon as practicable after sampling, especially if potentially corrodible containers (such as thin-walled steel tubes, paint cans, etc.) or plastic sample bags are used.

8. Test Specimen

8.1 For water contents being determined in conjunction with another ASTM method, the specimen mass requirement stated in that method shall be used if one is provided. If no minimum specimen mass is provided in that method then the values given before shall apply.

8.2 The minimum mass of moist material selected to be representative of the total sample, if the total sample is not tested by this method, shall be in accordance with the following:

Maximum particle size (100 % passing)	Standard Sieve Size	Recommended minimum mass of moist test specimen for water content reported to ±0.1 %	Recommended minimum mass of moist test specimen for water content reported to ±1 %
2 mm or less	No. 10	20 g	20 g*
4.75 mm	No. 4	100 g	20 g*
9.5 mm	⅜-in.	500 g	50 g
19.0 mm	¾-in.	2.5 kg	250 g
37.5 mm	1½ in.	10 kg	1 kg
75.0 mm	3-in.	50 kg	5 kg

NOTE—*To be representative not less than 20 g shall be used.

8.2.1 If the total sample is used it does not have to meet the minimum mass requirements provided in the table above. The report shall indicate that the entire sample was used.

8.3 Using a test specimen smaller than the minimum indicated in 8.2 requires discretion, though it may be adequate for the purposes of the test. Any specimen used not meeting these requirements shall be noted in the report of results.

8.4 When working with a small (less than 200g) specimen containing a relatively large gravel particle, it is appropriate not to include this particle in the test specimen. However, any discarded material shall be described and noted in the report of the results.

8.5 For those samples consisting entirely of intact rock, the minimum specimen mass shall be 500 g. Representative portions of the sample may be broken into smaller particles, depending on the sample's size, the container and balance being used and to facilitate drying to constant mass, see Section 10.4.

9. Test Specimen Selection

9.1 When the test specimen is a portion of a larger amount of material, the specimen must be selected to be representative of the water condition of the entire amount of material. The manner in which the test specimen is selected depends on the purpose and application of the test, type of material being tested, the water condition, and the type of sample (from another test, bag, block, and the likes.)

9.2 For disturbed samples such as trimmings, bag samples, and the like, obtain the test specimen by one of the

000297

following methods (listed in order of preference):

9.2.1 If the material is such that it can be manipulated and handled without significant moisture loss, the material should be mixed and then reduced to the required size by quartering or splitting.

9.2.2 If the material is such that it cannot be thoroughly mixed and/or split, form a stockpile of the material, mixing as much as possible. Take at least five portions of material at random locations using a sampling tube, shovel, scoop, trowel, or similar device appropriate to the maximum particle size present in the material. Combine all the portions for the test specimen.

9.2.3 If the material or conditions are such that a stockpile cannot be formed, take as many portions of the material as possible at random locations that will best represent the moisture condition. Combine all the portions for the test specimen.

9.3 Intact samples such as block, tube, split barrel, and the like, obtain the test specimen by one of the following methods depending on the purpose and potential use of the sample.

9.3.1 Carefully trim at least 3 mm of material from the outer surface of the sample to see if material is layered and to remove material that is drier or wetter than the main portion of the sample. Then carefully trim at least 5 mm, or a thickness equal to the maximum particle size present, from the entire exposed surface or from the interval being tested.

9.3.2 Slice the sample in half. If material is layered see Section 9.3.3. Then carefully trim at least 5 mm, or a thickness equal to the maximum particle size present, from the exposed surface of one half, or from the interval being tested. Avoid any material on the edges that may be wetter or drier than the main portion of the sample.

NOTE 4—Migration of moisture in some cohesionless soils may require that the full section be sampled.

9.3.3 If a layered material (or more than one material type is encountered), select an average specimen, or individual specimens, or both. Specimens must be properly identified as to location, or what they represent, and appropriate remarks entered on data sheets.

10. Procedure

10.1 Determine and record the mass of the clean and dry specimen container (and its lid, if used).

10.2 Select representative test specimens in accordance with Section 9.

10.3 Place the moist test specimen in the container and, if used, set the lid securely in position. Determine the mass of the container and moist material using a balance (See 6.2) selected on the basis of the specimen mass. Record this value.

NOTE 5—To prevent mixing of specimens and yielding of incorrect results, all containers, and lids if used, should be numbered and the container numbers shall be recorded on the laboratory data sheets. The lid numbers should match the container numbers to eliminate confusion.

NOTE 6—To assist in the oven-drying of large test specimens, they should be placed in containers having a large surface area (such as pans) and the material broken up into smaller aggregations.

10.4 Remove the lid (if used) and place the container with moist material in the drying oven. Dry the material to a constant mass. Maintain the drying oven at 110 ± 5°C unless otherwise specified (see 1.3). The time required to obtain constant mass will vary depending on the type of material, size of specimen, oven type and capacity, and other factors. The influence of these factors generally can be established by good judgment, and experience with the materials being tested and the apparatus being used.

NOTE 7—In most cases, drying a test specimen overnight (about 12 to 16 h) is sufficient. In cases where there is doubt concerning the adequacy of drying, drying should be continued until the change in mass after two successive periods (greater than 1 h) of drying is an insignificant amount (less than about 0.1 %). Specimens of sand may often be dried to constant mass in a period of about 4 h, when a forced-draft oven is used.

NOTE 8—Since some dry materials may absorb moisture from moist specimens, dried specimens should be removed before placing moist specimens in the same oven. However, this would not be applicable if the previously dried specimens will remain in the drying oven for an additional time period of about 16 h.

10.5 After the material has dried to constant mass remove the container from the oven (and replace the lid if used). Allow the material and container to cool to room temperature or until the container can be handled comfortably with bare hands and the operation of the balance will not be affected by convection currents and/or its being heated. Determine the mass of the container and oven-dried material using the same balance as used in 10.3. Record this value. Tight fitting lids shall be used if it appears that the specimen is absorbing moisture from the air prior to determination of its dry mass.

NOTE 9—Cooling in a desiccator is acceptable in place of tight fitting lids since it greatly reduces absorption of moisture from the atmosphere during cooling especially for containers without tight fitting lids.

11. Calculation

11.1 Calculate the water content of the material as follows:

$$w = [(M_{cws} - M_{cs})/(M_{cs} - M_c)] \times 100 = \frac{M_w}{M_s} \times 100$$

where:

w = water content, %,
M_{cws} = mass of container and wet specimen, g,
M_{cs} = mass of container and oven dry specimen, g,
M_c = mass of container, g,
M_w = mass of water ($M_w = M_{cws} - M_{cds}$), g, and
M_s = mass of solid particles ($M_s = M_{cds} - M_c$), g.

12. Report

12.1 The report (data sheet) shall include the following:

12.1.1 Identification of the sample (material) being tested, such as boring number, sample number, test number, container number etc.

12.1.2 Water content of the specimen to the nearest 1 % or 0.1 %, as appropriate based on the minimum sample used. If this method is used in concert with another method, the water content of the specimen should be reported to the value required by the test method for which the water content is being determined.

12.1.3 Indicate if test specimen had a mass less than the minimum indicated in 8.2.

000298

12.1.4 Indicate if test specimen contained more than one material type (layered, etc.).

12.1.5 Indicate the method of drying if different from oven-drying at 110 ± 5°C.

12.1.6 Indicate if any material (size and amount) was excluded from the test specimen.

13. Precision and Bias

13.1 *Statement on Bias*—There is no accepted reference value for this test method; therefore, bias cannot be determined.

13.2 *Statements on Precision:*

13.2.1 *Single-Operator Precision*—The single-operator coefficient of variation has been found to be 2.7 percent. Therefore, results of two properly conducted tests by the same operator with the same equipment should not be considered suspect unless they differ by more than 7.[illegible] percent of their mean.

13.2.2 *Multilaboratory Precision*—The multilaboratory coefficient of variation has been found to be 5.0 percent. Therefore, results of two properly conducted tests by different operators using different equipment should not be considered suspect unless they differ by more than 14.0 percent of their mean.

14. Keywords

14.1 consistency; index property; laboratory; moisture analysis; moisture content; soil aggregate; water content

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000299

Designation: D 2217 – 85

Standard Practice for Wet Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2217; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This practice has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense and for listing in the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers the wet preparation of soil samples as received from the field for particle-size analysis and determination of soil constants.

1.2 Procedure A provides for drying the field sample at a temperature not exceeding 140°F (60°C), making a wet separation on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve, or No. 40 (425-μm) sieve, or both, as needed, and finally drying at a temperature not exceeding 140°F. Procedure B provides that the sample shall be kept at a moisture content equal to or greater than the natural water content. The procedure to be used should be indicated in the specification for the material being tested. If no procedure is specified, the provisions of Procedure B shall govern.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of whoever uses this standard to consult and establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 421 Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[2]

D 422 Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[2]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Procedure A is used to prepare soil samples for plasticity tests and particle-size analysis when the coarse-grained particles of a sample are soft and pulverize readily, as in Practice D 421, or when the fine particles are very cohesive and tend to resist removal from the coarse particles.

3.2 Some soils never dry out in nature and may change their characteristics greatly when dried. If the true natural gradation and plasticity characteristics of such soils are desired, these soils should be shipped to the laboratory in sealed containers and processed in accordance with Procedure B of this practice.

3.3 Liquid limit and plasticity index values derived from samples containing their natural moisture are usually, but not always, equal to or higher than values derived from similar samples of the dried soil. In the case of fine-grained organic soil, there is a radical drop in plasticity due to oven drying.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Balance*, sensitive to 0.1 g.

4.2 *Mortar and Rubber-Covered Pestle*, suitable for breaking up the aggregations of soil particles.

4.3 *Sieves*, No. 10 (2.00-mm) and No. 40 (425-μm), of square mesh woven-wire cloth, conforming to Specification E 11.

4.4 *Sampler*—A riffle sampler or sample splitter for quartering the samples.

4.5 *Drying Apparatus*—Thermostatically controlled drying oven for use at 140°F (60°C) or below and at 230°F (110°C), infrared lamps; air drier; or other suitable device for drying samples.

4.6 *Filter Funnels or Candles*—Büchner funnels 10 in. (254 mm) in diameter and filter paper or filter candles.

4.7 *Miscellaneous Equipment*—Pans 12 in. (304.8 mm) in diameter and 3 in. (76.2 mm) in depth; a suitable container that will prevent loss of moisture during storage of the moist test sample prepared in Procedure B.

PROCEDURE A

5. Sampling

5.1 Dry the soil sample as received from the field, using one of the following methods: (*1*) in air at room temperature, (*2*) in a drying oven at a temperature not exceeding 140°F (60°C), or (*3*) using any warming device that will not raise the temperature of the sample above 140°F. Break up thoroughly any aggregations of particles using the mortar and rubber-covered pestle or other suitable device (Note 1). Select a representative portion by the method of quartering or by use of the sampler. This portion must be sufficient to provide samples for particle-size analyses of material retained on and passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve, and to provide an adequate amount of material passing the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve for the tests to determine soil constants. The amounts of material required to perform the individual tests are as follows:

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.03 on Texture, Plasticity, and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved July 26, 1985. Published September 1985. Originally published as D 2217 – 63 T. Last previous edition D 2217 – 66 (1978)[ε1].

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

000300

Particle-Size Analysis of Material Retained on No. 10 (2.00-mm) Sieve:	
Gravelly soils, g	4 000 to 10 000
Sandy soils, g	1 500
Silty or clayey soils, g	400
Particle-Size Analysis of Material Passing No. 10 (2.00-mm) Sieve:	
Sandy soils, g	115
Silty or clayey soils, g	65
Tests for Determination of Soil Constants:	
Liquid limit, g	100
Plastic limit, g	15
Centrifuge moisture equivalent, g	10
Shrinkage factors, g	30
Check tests, g	65

NOTE 1—When the sample contains particles of soft shale or sandstone or similar weak material, proper care must be exercised to avoid excessive reduction in the size of the particles.

6. Preparation of Test Samples

6.1 *For Particle-Size Analysis:*

6.1.1 Weigh the portion of the test sample selected for particle-size analysis and record as the weight of test sample uncorrected for hygroscopic moisture. Separate this material into two portions using the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve. Set aside the portion passing for later recombination with additional material washed from the portion retained on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve.

6.1.2 Place the material retained on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve in a pan, cover with water, and allow to soak until the particle aggregations become soft. After soaking, wash the material on a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve in the following manner: Place an empty No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve on the bottom of a clean pan and pour the water from the soaked sample into the sieve. Add sufficient water to bring the level approximately ½ in. (12.7 mm) above the mesh of the sieve. Transfer the soaked material to the sieve in increments not exceeding 1 lb (0.45 kg), stirring each increment with the fingers while agitating the sieve up and down. Crumble or mash any lumps that have not slaked, using the thumb and fingers. Raise the sieve above the water in the pan and complete the washing operation using a small amount of clean water. Transfer the washed material on the sieve to a clean pan before placing another increment of soaked material on the sieve.

6.1.3 Dry the material retained on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve at a temperature of 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C), sieve on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve, and add the material passing the sieve to similar material obtained in 6.1.1. Set aside the material retained on the sieve for use in the particle-size analysis.

6.1.4 Set aside the pan containing the washings for a period of several hours or until the water above the particles is clear. Decant, pipet, or siphon off as much of the clear water as possible (Note 2). Dry the soil remaining in the pan at a temperature not exceeding 140°F (60°C). Grind the dried soil in the mortar with the rubber-covered pestle or other suitable device, and combine with similar material obtained in 6.1.1.

6.1.5 Alternatively, after all the soaked material has been washed, remove most of the water by filtering the wash water on one or more Büchner funnels fitted with filter paper or by using filter candles. Remove the moist soil from the filter paper or filter candles, combine with any sediment remaining in the pan, and dry at a temperature not exceeding 140°F (60°C). Grind the dried soil in the mortar with a rubber-covered pestle or other suitable device and combine with similar material obtained in 6.1.1.

NOTE 2—In some instances, the wash water will not become clear in a reasonable length of time; in this case the entire volume must be evaporated.

6.2 *For Determination of Soil Constants*—Proceed in accordance with 6.1, substituting a No. 40 (425-μm) sieve for the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve.

NOTE 3—In some areas it is possible that the cations of salts present in the tap water may exchange with the natural cations in the soil and alter significantly the values of the soil constants should tap water be used in the soaking and washing operations. Unless it is known that such cations are not present in the tap water, distilled or demineralized water should be used. The soaking and washing operation will remove soluble salts contained in the soil. When soluble salts are present in the soil, the wash water should be saved and evaporated, and the salts returned to the soil sample.

7. Test Samples

7.1 Keeping each portion separate from the other portion, mix thoroughly the portions of the soil sample passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve and the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve. By the method of quartering or by the use of the sampler, select and weigh out test samples of the weights indicated in Section 5, as may be needed to make the required tests.

PROCEDURE B

8. Samples

8.1 Samples prepared in accordance with this procedure must be shipped from the field to the laboratory in sealed containers and must contain all their natural moisture. Samples obviously containing only particles passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve may be tested in the particle-size analysis without first washing on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve. Samples obviously containing only particles passing the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve may be used in the tests to determine soil constants without first washing on the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve.

9. Preparation of Test Samples

9.1 *For Particle-Size Analysis:*

9.1.1 Select and weigh a representative portion of the moist sample estimated to contain 50 g of particles passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve for silty and clayey soil, or 100 g for sandy soil. For samples containing particles not passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve for which a particle-size analysis is required, select and weigh a representative sample estimated to contain the required amounts of particles both passing and not passing the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve. Determine the moisture content at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C) using an auxiliary sample, for use in Method D 422.

9.1.2 Soak the moist sample and wash on a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve as described in 6.1.2. After washing, dry the material retained on the No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve in an oven at a temperature of 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C), weigh, and retain for the particle-size analysis. If the volume of the wash water and soil is too large for use in the sedimentation procedure of the test for particle-size analysis, evaporate excess water by exposure to air at room temperature, by heating in an oven

000301

a temperature not exceeding 230°F (110°C), or by boiling. Regardless of the method of evaporation used, the following precautions must be taken: (*1*) stir the slurry from time to time to prevent a dry soil ring from forming on the walls of the evaporation vessel, and (*2*) return the temperature of the sample to room temperature before testing.

9.2 *For Determination of Soil Constants*—Select a representative portion of the moist sample estimated to contain sufficient particles passing the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve to make the required tests for determination of soil constants. Soak this selected portion of the moist sample and wash on the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve as described in 6.2 (Note 2). Reduce the moisture content of the material passing the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve until the mass reaches a putty-like consistency (such as 30 to 35 drops of the cup in the liquid limit test) but never below the natural moisture content. Reduction of moisture content may be accomplished as follows: by exposure to air at ordinary room temperature, by heating in an oven at a temperature not exceeding 230°F (110°C), by boiling, by filtering on a Büchner funnel, or by use of filter candles. During evaporation and cooling, stir the sample often enough to prevent overdrying of the fringes and soil pinnacles on the surface. Cool the heated samples to normal room temperature before testing. For soil samples containing soluble salts, use a method of water reduction that will not eliminate the soluble salts from the test sample. Protect the prepared sample in a suitable container from further drying until all required tests have been performed.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000302

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2435; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers procedures for determining the magnitude and rate of consolidation of soil when it is restrained laterally and drained axially while subjected to incrementally applied controlled-stress loading. Two alternative procedures are provided as follows:

1.1.1 *Test Method A*—This test method is performed with constant load increment duration of 24 h, or multiples thereof. Time-deformation readings are required on a minimum of two load increments.

1.1.2 Test Method B—Time-deformation readings are required on all load increments. Successive load increments are applied after 100 % primary consolidation is reached, or at constant time increments as described in Test Method A.

NOTE 1—The determination of the rate and magnitude of consolidation of soil when it is subjected to controlled-strain loading is covered by Test Method D 4186.

1.2 This test method is most commonly performed on undisturbed samples of fine grained soils naturally sedimented in water, however, the basic test procedure is applicable, as well, to specimens of compacted soils and undisturbed samples of soils formed by other processes such as weathering or chemical alteration. Evaluation techniques specified in this test method are generally applicable to soils naturally sedimented in water. Tests performed on other soils such as compacted and residual (weathered or chemically altered) soils may require special evaluation techniques.

1.3 It shall be the responsibility of the agency requesting this test to specify the magnitude and sequence of each load increment, including the location of a rebound cycle, if required, and, for Test Method A, the load increments for which time-deformation readings are desired.

NOTE 2—Time-deformation readings are required to determine the time for completion of primary consolidation and for evaluating the coefficient of consolidation, c_v. Since c_v varies with stress level and load increment (loading or unloading), the load increments with timed readings must be selected with specific reference to the individual project. Alternatively, the requesting agency may specify Test Method B wherein the time-deformation readings are taken on all load increments.

1.4 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard. The values stated in inch-pound units are approximate and given for guidance only. Reporting of test results in units other than SI shall not be regarded as nonconformance with this test method.

1.4.1 In the engineering profession it is customary practice to use, interchangeably, units representing both mass and force, unless dynamic calculations ($F = Ma$) are involved. This implicitly combines two separate systems of units, that is, the absolute system and the gravimetric system. It is scientifically undesirable to combine two separate systems within a single standard. This test method has been written using SI units; however, inch-pound conversions are given in the gravimetric system, where the pound (lbf) represents a unit of force (weight). The use of balances or scales recording pounds of mass (lbm), or the recording of density in lb/ft^3 should not be regarded as nonconformance with this test method.

1.5 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 422 Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[2]
D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil and Rock[2]
D 854 Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[2]
D 1587 Practice For Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]
D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[2]
D 2487 Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[3]
D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[3]
D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]
D 4186 Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils Using Controlled-Strain Loading[2]
D 4220 Practice for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]
D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[2]
D 4452 Methods for X-Ray Radiography of Soil Samples[2]
D 4546 Test Methods for One-Dimensional Swell or Settlement Potential of Cohesive Soils[3]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions*—The definitions of terms used in this test method shall be in accordance with Terminology D 653.

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of subcommittee D18.05 on Structural Properties of Soil.

Current edition approved June 29, 1990. Published November 1990. Originally published as D 2435 – 65T. Last previous edition D 2435 – 80.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 04.08 and 08.04.

000304

H_o=19.050 mm

H_s=8.538 mm

Void Ratio and Strain Information

Load Increment (kPa)	d_f corrected (mm)	$\Sigma\Delta H$ (mm)	ε $\Sigma\Delta H/H_o$ (%)	H $(H_o-\Delta H)$ (mm)	e $(H-H_s)/H_s$
initial	5.3300	0	0	19.0500	1.231
5	5.3012	0.0288	0.15	19.0212	1.228
10	5.2743	0.0557	0.29	18.9943	1.225
20	5.2167	0.1133	0.59	18.9367	1.218
40	5.1161	0.2139	1.12	18.8361	1.206
80	4.9433	0.3867	2.03	18.6633	1.186
160	4.4740	0.8560	4.49	18.1940	1.131
320	2.9804	2.3496	12.33	16.7004	0.956
640	1.8908	3.4392	18.05	15.6108	0.828
1280	0.9860	4.3440	22.80	14.7060	0.722
320	1.0747	4.2553	22.34	14.7947	0.733
80	1.4000	3.9300	20.63	15.1200	0.771
20	1.8169	3.5131	18.44	15.5369	0.820
5	2.2319	3.0981	16.26	15.9519	0.868

Coefficient of Consolidation, c_v

d_{50} corrected (mm)	$\Sigma\Delta H$ (mm)	ε_{50} (%)	H_{50} (mm)	e_{50}	t_{50} (sec)	c_v (mm^2/sec)
5.0604	0.2696	1.42	18.780	1.200	52	3.34×10^{-1}
4.7945	0.5355	2.81	18.515	1.169	144	1.17×10^{-1}
3.7861	1.5439	8.10	17.506	1.050	516	2.93×10^{-2}
2.4983	2.8317	14.86	16.218	0.900	282	4.59×10^{-2}
1.5077	3.8223	20.06	15.228	0.784	156	7.32×10^{-2}

FIG. 1 Consolidation Test Summary

4. Summary of Test Method

4.1 In this test method a soil specimen is restrained laterally and loaded axially with total stress increments. Each stress increment is maintained until excess pore water pressures are completely dissipated. During the consolidation process, measurements are made of change in the specimen height and these data are used to determine the relationship between the effective stress and void ratio or strain, and the rate at which consolidation can occur by evaluating the coefficient of consolidation.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 The data from the consolidation test are used to estimate the magnitude and rate of both differential and total settlement of a structure or earthfill. Estimates of this type are of key importance in the design of engineered structures and the evaluation of their performance.

5.2 The test results can be greatly affected by sample disturbance. Careful selection and preparation of test specimens is required to minimize disturbance.

5.3 Consolidation test results are dependent upon the magnitude of the load increments. Traditionally, the load is doubled for each increment resulting in a load-increment ratio of 1. For undisturbed samples, this load procedure has provided data from which estimates of the preconsolidation pressure also referred to as the maximum past pressure, using established evaluation techniques, compare directly with field measurement. Other load schedules may be used to model particular field conditions or meet special requirements. For example, it may be desirable to inundate and load the specimen in accordance with the wetting or loading pattern expected in the field in order to best simulate the response. Smaller than standard load increment ratios may be desirable for soils that are highly sensitive or whose response is highly dependent on strain rate. The test method specified to estimate the preconsolidation pressure provides a simple technique to verify that one set of time readings are taken after the preconsolidation pressure. Several other evaluation techniques exist and may yield different estimates of the preconsolidation pressure. Therefore, the requesting agency may specify an alternate technique to estimate the preconsolidation pressure.

5.4 Consolidation test results are dependent upon the duration of each load increment. Traditionally, the load duration is the same for each increment and equal to 24 h. For some soils, the rate of consolidation is such that complete consolidation (dissipation of excess pore pressure) will require more than 24 h. The apparatus in general use does not have provisions for formal verification of pore pressure dissipation. It is necessary to use an interpretation technique which indirectly determines that consolidation is complete. This test method specifies two techniques, however the requesting agency may specify an alternative technique and still be in conformance with this test method.

5.5 The apparatus in general use for this test method does not have provisions for verification of saturation. Most undisturbed samples taken from below the water table will be saturated. However, the time rate of deformation is very sensitive to degree of saturation and caution must be exercised regarding estimates for duration of settlements when partially saturated conditions prevail. The extent to which partial saturation influences the test results may be a part of the test evaluation and may include application of theoretical models other than conventional consolidation theory. Alternatively, the test may be performed using an apparatus equipped to saturate the specimen.

5.6 This test method uses conventional consolidation theory based on Terzaghi's consolidation equation to compute the coefficient of consolidation, c_v. The analysis is based upon the following assumptions:

5.6.1 The soil is saturated and has homogeneous properties;

5.6.2 The flow of pore water is in the vertical direction;

5.6.3 The compressibility of soil particles and pore water is negligible compared to the compressibility of the soil skeleton;

000305

5.6.4 The stress-strain relationship is linear over the load increment;

5.6.5 The ratio of soil permeability to soil compressibility is constant over the load increment; and

5.6.6 Darcy's law for flow through porous media applies.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Load Device*—A suitable device for applying vertical loads or total stresses) to the specimen. The device should be capable of maintaining specified loads for long periods of time with an accuracy of ± 0.5 % of the applied load and should permit quick application of a given load increment without significant impact.

NOTE 3—Load application generally should be completed in a time corresponding to 0.01 t_{100} or less. For soils where primary consolidation is completed in 3 min, load application should be less than 2 s.

6.2 *Consolidometer*—A device to hold the specimen in a ring that is either fixed to the base or floating (supported by friction on periphery of specimen) with porous disks on each face of the specimen. The inside diameter of the ring shall be determined to a tolerance of 0.075 mm (0.003 in.). The consolidometer shall also provide a means of submerging the specimen, for transmitting the concentric vertical load to the porous disks, and for measuring the change in height of specimen.

6.2.1 *Minimum Specimen Diameter*—The minimum specimen diameter shall be 50 mm (2.00 in.).

6.2.2 *Minimum Specimen Height*—The minimum initial specimen height shall be 12 mm (0.5 in.), but shall be not less than ten times the maximum particle diameter.

NOTE 4—If large particles are found in the specimen after testing, include in the report this visual observation or the results of a particle size analysis in accordance with Method D 422 (except the minimum sample size requirement shall be waived).

6.2.3 *Minimum Specimen Diameter-to-Height Ratio*—The minimum specimen diameter-to-height ratio shall be 2.5.

NOTE 5—The use of greater diameter-to-height ratios is recommended. To minimize the effects of friction between the sides of the specimen and ring, a diameter-to-height ratio greater than four is preferable.

6.2.4 *Specimen Ring Rigidity*—The rigidity of the ring shall be such that, under hydrostatic stress conditions in the specimen, the change in diameter of the ring will not exceed 0.03 % of the diameter under the greatest load applied.

6.2.5 *Specimen Ring Material*—The ring shall be made of a material that is noncorrosive in relation to the soil tested. The inner surface shall be highly polished or shall be coated with a low-friction material. Silicone grease or molybdenum disulfide is recommended; polytetrafluoroethylene is recommended for nonsandy soils.

6.3 *Porous Disks*—The porous disks shall be of silicon carbide, aluminum oxide, or similar noncorrosive material. The grade of the disks shall be fine enough to prevent intrusion of soil into the pores. If necessary, a filter paper (see Note 6) may be used to prevent intrusion of the soil into the disks; however, the permeability of the disks, and filter paper, if used, must be at least one order of magnitude higher than that of the specimen.

NOTE 6—Whatman No. 54 filter paper has been found to meet requirements for permeability and durability.

6.3.1 *Diameter*—The diameter of the top disk shall be 0.2 to 0.5 mm (0.01 to 0.02 in.) less than the inside diameter of the ring. If a floating ring is used, the bottom disk shall have the same diameter as the top disk.

NOTE 7—The use of tapered disks is recommended, with the larger diameter in contact with the soil.

6.3.2 *Thickness*—Thickness of the disks shall be sufficient to prevent breaking. The top disk shall be loaded through a corrosion-resistant plate of sufficient rigidity to prevent breakage of the disk.

6.3.3 *Maintenance*—The disks shall be clean and free from cracks, chips, and nonuniformities. New porous disks should be boiled for at least 10 minutes and left in the water to cool to ambient temperature before use. Immediately after each use, clean the porous disks with a nonabrasive brush and boil to remove clay particles that may reduce their permeability. It is recommended that porous disks be stored in a jar with deaired water between tests.

6.4 *Specimen Trimming Device*—A trimming turntable or a cylindrical cutting ring may be used for trimming the sample down to the inside diameter of the consolidometer ring with a minimum of disturbance. A cutter having the same inside diameter as the specimen ring shall attach to or be integral with the specimen ring. The cutter shall have a sharp edge, a highly polished surface and be coated with a low-friction material. Alternatively, a turntable or trimming lathe may be used. The cutting tool must be properly aligned to form a specimen of the same diameter as that of the ring.

6.5 *Deformation Indicator*—To measure change in specimen height, with a readability of 0.0025 mm (0.0001 in.).

6.6 *Miscellaneous Equipment*—Including timing device with 1 s readability, distilled or demineralized water, spatulas, knives, and wire saws, used in preparing the specimen.

6.7 *Balances*, in accordance with Method D 2216.

6.8 *Drying Oven*, in accordance with Method D 2216.

6.9 *Water Content Containers*, in accordance with Method D 2216.

6.10 Environment—Tests shall be performed in an environment where temperature fluctuations are less than ± 4°C (± 7°F) and there is no direct exposure to sunlight.

7. Calibration

7.1 The measured vertical deformations must be corrected for apparatus flexibility whenever the calibration correction determined in 7.4 exceeds 5 % of the measured deformation and in all tests where filter paper disks are used.

7.2 Assemble the consolidometer with a copper or hard steel disk of approximately the same height as the test specimen and 1 mm (0.04 in.) smaller in diameter than the ring, in place of the sample. Moisten the porous disks. If filter papers are to be used (see 6.3), they should be moistened and sufficient time (a minimum of 2 min.) allowed for the moisture to be squeezed from them during each increment of the calibration process.

7.3 Load and unload the consolidometer as in the test and measure the deformation for each load applied. When filter papers are used it is imperative that calibration be performed following the exact loading and unloading schedule to be used. This is due to the inelastic deformation characteristics of filter paper. Recalibration for tests without filter paper need be done only on an annual basis, or after replacement and reassembly of apparatus components.

7.4 At each load applied, plot or tabulate the corrections to be applied to the measured deformation of the test specimen. Note that the metal disk will deform also; however, the correction due to this deformation will be negligible for all but extremely stiff soils. If necessary, the compression of the metal disk can be computed and applied to the corrections.

8. Sampling

8.1 Practices D 1587 and D 3550 cover procedures and apparatus that may be used to obtain undisturbed samples generally satisfactory for testing. Specimens may also be trimmed from large undisturbed block samples fabricated and sealed in the field. Finally, remolded specimens may be prepared from bulk samples to density and moisture conditions stipulated by the agency requesting the test.

8.2 Undisturbed samples destined for testing in accordance with this test method shall be preserved, handled, and transported in accordance with the practices for Group C and D samples in Practices D 4220. Bulk samples for remolded specimens should be handled and transported in accordance with the practice for Group B samples.

8.3 *Storage*—Storage of sealed samples should be such that no moisture is lost during storage, that is, no evidence of partial drying of the ends of the samples or shrinkage. Time of storage should be minimized, particularly when the soil or soil moisture is expected to react with the sample tubes.

8.4 The quality of consolidation test results diminishes greatly with sample disturbance. It should be recognized that no sampling procedure can ensure completely undisturbed samples. Therefore, careful examination of the sample is essential in selection of specimens for testing.

NOTE 8—Examination for sample disturbance, stones, or other inclusions, and selection of specimen location is greatly facilitated by x-ray radiography of the samples (see Methods D 4452).

9. Specimen Preparation

9.1 All possible precautions should be taken to minimize disturbance of the soil or changes in moisture and density during specimen preparation. Avoid vibration, distortion, and compression.

9.2 Prepare test specimens in an environment where soil moisture change during preparation is minimized.

NOTE 9—A high humidity environment is usually used for this purpose.

9.3 Trim the specimen and insert it into the consolidation ring. When specimens come from undisturbed soil collected using sample tubes, the inside diameter of the tube shall be at least 5 mm (0.25 in.) greater than the inside diameter of the consolidation ring, except as noted in 9.4 and 9.5. It is recommended that either a trimming turntable or cylindrical cutting ring be used to cut the soil to the proper diameter. When using a trimming turntable, make a complete perimeter cut, reducing the specimen diameter to the inside diameter of the consolidation ring. Carefully insert the specimen into the consolidation ring, by the width of the cut, with a minimum of force. Repeat until the specimen protrudes from the bottom of the ring. When using a cylindrical cutting ring, trim the soil to a gentle taper in front of the cutting edge. After the taper is formed, advance the cutter a small distance to form the final diameter. Repeat the process until the specimen protrudes from the ring.

9.4 Fibrous soils, such as peat, and those soils that are easily damaged by trimming, may be transferred directly from the sampling tube to the ring, provided that the ring has the same diameter as the sample tube.

9.5 Specimens obtained using a ring-lined sampler may be used without prior trimming, provided they comply with the requirements of Practice D 3550 and this test method.

9.6 Trim the specimen flush with the plane ends of the ring. The specimen may be recessed slightly below the top of the ring, to facilitate centering of the top stone, by partial extrusion and trimming of the bottom surface. For soft to medium soils, a wire saw should be used for trimming the top and bottom of the specimen to minimize smearing. A straightedge with a sharp cutting edge may be used for the final trim after the excess soil has first been removed with a wire saw. For stiff soils, a sharpened straightedge alone may be used for trimming the top and bottom. If a small particle is encountered in any surface being trimmed, it should be removed and the resulting void filled with soil from the trimmings.

NOTE 10—If, at any stage of the test, the specimen swells beyond its initial height, the requirement of lateral restraint of the soil dictates the use of a recessed specimen or the use of a specimen ring equipped with an extension collar of the same inner diameter as the specimen ring. At no time should the specimen extend beyond the specimen ring or extension collar.

9.7 Determine the initial wet mass of the specimen, M_{T_o}, in the consolidation ring by measuring the mass of the ring with specimen and subtracting the tare mass of the ring.

9.8 Determine the initial height, H_o, of the specimen to the nearest 0.025 mm (0.001 in.) by taking the average of at least four evenly spaced measurements over the top and bottom surfaces of the specimen using a dial comparator or other suitable measuring device.

9.9 Compute the initial volume, V_o, of the specimen to the nearest 0.25 cm^3 (0.015 $in.^3$) from the diameter of the ring and the initial specimen height.

9.10 Obtain two or three natural water content determinations of the soil in accordance with Method D 2216 from material trimmed adjacent to the test specimen if sufficient material is available.

9.11 When index properties are specified by the requesting agency, store the remaining trimmings taken from around the specimen and determined to be similar material in a sealed container for determination as described in Section 10.

000307

10. Soil Index Property Determinations

10.1 The determination of index properties is an important adjunct to but not a requirement of the consolidation test. These determinations when specified by the requesting agency should be made on the most representative material possible. When testing uniform materials, all index tests may be performed on adjacent trimmings collected in 9.11. When samples are heterogeneous or trimmings are in short supply, index tests should be performed on material from the test specimen as obtained in 11.6, plus representative trimmings collected in 9.11.

10.2 *Specific Gravity*—The specific gravity shall be determined in accordance with Test Method D 854 on material from the sample as specified in 10.1. The specific gravity from another sample judged to be similar to that of the test specimen may be used for calculation in 12.2.5 whenever an accurate void ratio is not needed.

10.3 *Atterberg Limits*—The liquid limit, plastic limit and plasticity index shall be determined in accordance with Test Method D 4318 using material from the sample as specified in 10.1. Determination of the Atterberg limits are necessary for proper material classification but are not a requirement of this test method.

10.4 *Particle Size Distribution*—The particle size distribution shall be determined in accordance with Method D 422 (except the minimum sample size requirement shall be waived) on a portion of the test specimen as obtained in 11.6. A particle size analysis may be helpful when visual inspection indicates that the specimen contains a substantial fraction of coarse grained material but is not a requirement of this test method.

11. Procedure

11.1 Preparation of the porous disks and other apparatus will depend on the specimen being tested. The consolidometer must be assembled in such a manner as to prevent a change in water content of the specimen. Dry porous disks and filters must be used with dry, highly expansive soils and may be used for all other soils. Damp disks may be used for partially saturated soils. Saturated disks may be used when the specimen is saturated and known to have a low affinity for water. Assemble the ring with specimen, porous disks, filter disks (when needed) and consolidometer. If the specimen will not be inundated shortly after application of the seating load (see 11.2), enclose the consolidometer in a loose fitting plastic or rubber membrane to prevent change in specimen volume due to evaporation.

NOTE 11—In order to meet the stated objectives of this test method, the specimen must not be allowed to swell in excess of its initial height prior to being loaded beyond its preconsolidation pressure. Detailed procedures for the determination of one-dimensional swell or settlement potential of cohesive soils is covered by Test Method D 4546.

11.2 Place the consolidometer in the loading device and apply a seating pressure of 5 kPa (100 lbf/ft^2). Immediately after application of the seating load, adjust the deformation indicator and record the initial zero reading, d_o. If necessary, add additional load to keep the specimen from swelling. Conversely, if it is anticipated that a load of 5 kPa (100 lbf/ft^2) will cause significant consolidation of the specimen, reduce the seating pressure to 2 or 3 kPa (about 50 lbf/ft^2) or less.

11.3 If the test is performed on an intact specimen that was either saturated under field conditions or obtained below the water table, inundate shortly after application of the seating load. As inundation and specimen wetting occur, increase the load as required to prevent swelling. Record the load required to prevent swelling and the resulting deformation reading. If specimen inundation is to be delayed to simulate specific conditions, then inundation must occur at a pressure that is sufficiently large to prevent swell. In such cases, apply the required load and inundate the specimen. Take time deformation readings during the inundation period as specified in 11.5. In such cases, note in the test report the pressure at inundation and the resulting changes in height.

11.4 The specimen is to be subjected to increments of constant total stress. The duration of each increment shall conform to guidelines specified in 11.5. The specific loading schedule will depend on the purpose of the test, but should conform to the following guidelines. If the slope and shape of a virgin compression curve or determination of the preconsolidation pressure is required, the final pressure shall be equal to or greater than four times the preconsolidation pressure. In the case of overconsolidated clays, a better evaluation of recompression parameters may be obtained by imposing an unload-reload cycle after the preconsolidation pressure has been defined. Details regarding location and extent of an unload-reload cycle is the option of the agency requesting the test (see 1.3), however, unloading shall always span at least two decrements of pressure.

11.4.1 The standard loading schedule shall consist of a load increment ratio (LIR) of one which is obtained by doubling the pressure on the soil to obtain values of approximately 12, 25, 50, 100, 200, etc. kPa (250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, etc. lbf/ft^2).

11.4.2 The standard rebound or unloading schedule should be selected by halving the pressure on the soil (that is, use the same increments of 11.4.1, but in reverse order). However, if desired, each successive load can be only one-fourth as large as the preceding load, that is, skip a decrement.

11.4.3 An alternative loading, unloading, or reloading schedule may be employed that reproduces the construction stress changes or obtains better definition of some part of the stress deformation (compression) curve, or aids in interpreting the field behavior of the soil.

NOTE 12—Small increments may be desirable on highly compressible specimens or when it is desirable to determine the preconsolidation pressure with more precision. It should be cautioned, however, that load increment ratios less than 0.7 and load increments very close to the preconsolidation pressure may preclude evaluation for the coefficient of consolidation, c_v, and the end-of-primary consolidation as discussed in Section 12.

000308

11.5 Before each pressure increment is applied, record the height or change in height, d_f, of the specimen. Two alternative procedures are available that specify the time sequence of readings and the required minimum load duration. Longer durations are often required during specific load increments to define the slope of the characteristic straight line secondary compression portion of the deformation versus log of time graph. For such increments, sufficient readings should be taken near the end of the pressure increment to define this straight line portion. It is not necessary to increase the duration of other pressure increments during the test.

11.5.1 *Test Method A*—The standard load increment duration shall be 24 h. For at least two load increments, including at least one load increment after the preconsolidation pressure has been exceeded, record the height or change in height, d, at time intervals of approximately 0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 4, 8, 15 and 30 min, and 1, 2, 4, 8 and 24 h (or 0.09, 0.25, 0.49, 1, 4, 9 min etc. in using 12.3.2 to present time-deformation data), measured from the time of each incremental pressure application. Take sufficient readings near the end of the pressure increment period to verify that primary consolidation is completed. For some soils, a period of more than 24 h may be required to reach the end-of-primary consolidation (as determined in 12.3.1.1 or 12.3.2.3). In such cases, load increment durations greater than 24 h are required. The load increment duration for these tests is usually taken at some multiple of 24 h and should be the standard duration for all load increments of the test. The decision to use a time interval greater than 24 h is usually based on experience with particular types of soils. If, however, there is a question as to whether a 24 h period is adequate, a record of height or change in height with time should be made for the initial load increments in order to verify the adequacy of a 24 h period. Load increment durations other than 24 h shall be noted in the report. For pressure increments where time versus deformation data are not required, leave the load on the specimen for the same length of time as when time versus deformation readings are taken.

11.5.2 *Test Method B*—For each increment, record the height or change in height, d, at time intervals of approximately 0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 4, 8, 15, 30 min, and 1, 2, 4, 8 and 24 h (or 0.09, 0.25, 0.49, 1, 4, 9, min, etc. if using 12.3.2 to present time deformation data), measured from the time of each incremental pressure application. The standard load increment duration shall exceed the time required for completion of primary consolidation as determined by 12.3.1.1, 12.3.2.3 or a criterion set by the requesting agency. For each increment where it is impossible to verify the end of primary consolidation (for example, low LIR or rapid consolidation), the load increment duration shall be constant and exceed the time required for primary consolidation of an increment applied after the preconsolidation pressure and along the virgin compression curve. Where secondary compression must be evaluated, apply pressures for longer periods. The report shall contain the load increment duration for each increment.

NOTE 13—The suggested time intervals for recording height or change in height are for typical soils and load increments. It is often desirable to change the reading frequency to improve interpretation of the data. More rapid consolidation will require more frequent readings. For most soils, primary consolidation during the first load decrements will be complete in less time (typically one-tenth) than would be required for a load increment along the virgin compression curve, however, at very low stresses the rebound time can be longer.

11.6 To minimize swell during disassembly, rebound the specimen back to the seating load (5 kPa). Once height changes have ceased (usually overnight), dismantle quickly after releasing the final small load on the specimen. Remove the specimen and the ring from the consolidometer and wipe any free water from the ring and specimen. Determine the mass of the specimen in the ring and subtract the tare mass of the ring to obtain the final wet specimen mass, M_{T_f}. The most accurate determination of the specimen dry mass and water content is found by drying the entire specimen at the end of the test. If the soil sample is homogeneous and sufficient trimmings are available for the specified index testing (see 9.11), then determine the final water content, w_f, in accordance with Method D 2216 and dry mass of solids, M_d, using the entire specimen. If the soil is heterogeneous or more material is required for the specified index testing, then determine the final water content, w_{f_p}, in accordance with Method D 2216 using a small wedge shaped section of the specimen. The remaining undried material should be used for the specified index testing.

12. Calculation

12.1 Calculations as shown are based on the use of SI units. Other units are permissible, provided the appropriate conversion factors are used to maintain consistency of units throughout the calculations. See 1.4.1 for additional comments on the use of inch-pound units.

12.2 *Specimen Properties:*

12.2.1 Obtain the dry mass of the total specimen, M_d, by direct measurement or for the case where part of the specimen is used for index testing, calculate the dry mass as follows:

$$M_d = \frac{M_{T_f}}{1 + w_{f_p}}$$

where:

M_{T_f} = moist mass of total specimen after test, g or Mg, and
w_{f_p} = water content (decimal form) wedge of specimen taken after test.

12.2.2 Calculate the initial and final water content, in percent, as follows:

$$\text{initial water content: } w_0 = \frac{M_{T_o} - M_d}{M_d} \times 100$$

$$\text{final water content: } w_f = \frac{M_{T_f} - M_d}{M_d} \times 100$$

where:

M_d = dry mass of specimen, g or Mg, and
M_{T_o} = moist mass of specimen before test, g or Mg.

12.2.3 Calculate the initial dry density of the specimen as follows:

$$\rho_d = \frac{M_d}{V_o}$$

000309

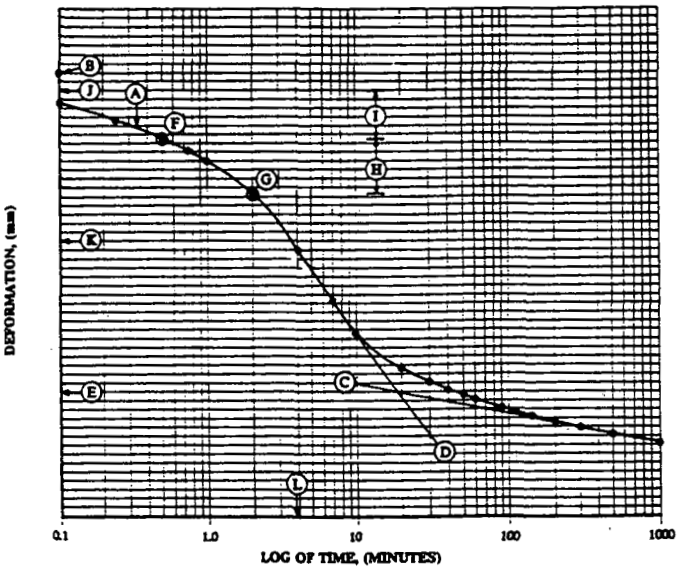


FIG. 2 Time-Deformation Curve From Log of Time Method

where:
ρ_d = dry density of specimen, g/cm^3 or Mg/m^3, and
V_o = initial volume of specimen, cm^3 or m^3.

12.2.4 Calculate the dry unit weight of the specimen as follows:

$$\gamma_d = 9.8 \times \rho_d, \text{ in kN/m}^3$$

$$\gamma_d = 62.43 \times \rho_d, \text{ in lbf/ft}^3$$

12.2.5 Compute the volume of solids as follows:

$$V_s = \frac{M_d}{G\rho_w}$$

where:
G = specific gravity of the solids, and
ρ_w = density of water, 1.0 g/cm^3 or Mg/m^3

12.2.6 Since the cross-sectional area of the specimen is constant throughout the test, it is convenient for subsequent calculations to introduce the term "equivalent height of solids," defined as follows:

$$H_s = \frac{V_s}{A}$$

where:
A = specimen area, cm^2 or m^2.

12.2.7 Calculate void ratio before and after test as follows:

$$\text{void ratio before test: } e_o = \frac{H_o - H_s}{H_s}$$

$$\text{void ratio after test: } e_f = \frac{H_f - H_s}{H_s}$$

where:
H_o = initial specimen height, cm or m, and
H_f = final specimen height, cm or m.

12.2.8 Calculate the degree of saturation, in percent, before and after test as follows:

$$\text{initial degree of saturation: } S_o = \frac{M_{T_o} - M_d}{A\rho_w(H_o - H_s)} \times 100$$

$$\text{final degree of saturation: } S_f = \frac{M_{T_f} - M_d}{A\rho_w(H_f - H_s)} \times 100$$

12.3 *Time—Deformation Properties*—From those increments of load where time-deformation readings are obtained, two alternative procedures (see 12.3.1 or 12.3.2) are provided to present the data, determine the end-of-primary consolidation and compute the rate of consolidation. Alternatively, the requesting agency may specify a method of its choice and still be in conformance with this test method. The deformation readings may be presented as measured deformation, deformation corrected for apparatus compressibility or converted to strain (see 12.4).

12.3.1 Referring to Fig. 2, plot the deformation readings, d, versus the log of time (normally in minutes) for each increment of load.

12.3.1.1 First draw a straight line through the points representing the final readings which exhibit a straight line trend and constant slope (C).[4] Draw a second straight line tangent to the steepest part of the deformation-log time curve (D). The intersection represents the deformation, d_{100}, and time, t_{100}, corresponding to 100 % primary consolidation (E). Compression in excess of the above estimated 100 % primary consolidation is defined as secondary compression.

12.3.1.2 Find the deformation representing 0 % primary consolidation by selecting any two points that have a time ratio of 1 to 4. The deformation at the larger of the two times should be greater than ¼, but less than ½ of the total deformation for the load increment. The deformation corresponding to 0 % primary consolidation is equal to the deformation at the smaller time, less the difference in deformation for the two selected times.

12.3.1.3 The deformation, d_{50}, corresponding to 50 % primary consolidation is equal to the average of the deformations corresponding to the 0 and 100 % deformations. The time, t_{50}, required for 50 % consolidation may be found graphically from the deformation-log time curve by observing the time that corresponds to 50 % of the primary consolidation on the curve.

12.3.2 Referring to Fig. 3, plot the deformation readings, d, versus the square root of time (normally in minutes) for each increment of load.

[4] The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to a list of references at the end of the text.

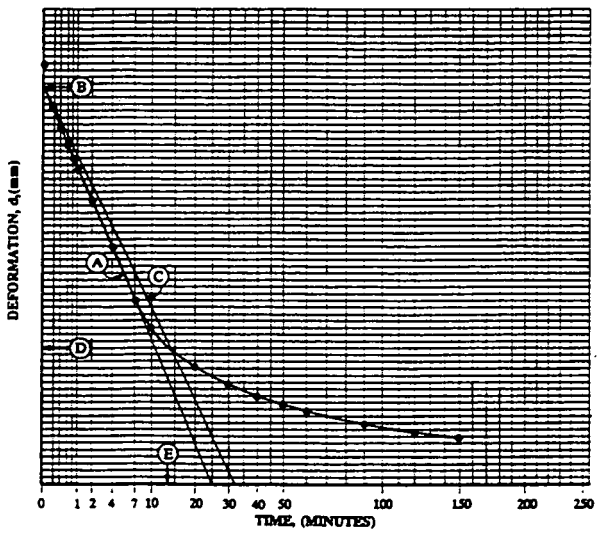


FIG. 3 Time-Deformation Curve From Square Root of Time Method

12.3.2.1 First draw a straight line through the points representing the initial readings that exhibit a straight line trend. Extrapolate the line back to $t = 0$ and obtain the deformation ordinate representing 0 % primary consolidation.

12.3.2.2 Draw a second straight line through the 0 % ordinate so that the abscissa of this line is 1.15 times the abscissa of the first straight line through the data. The intersection of this second line with the deformation-square root of time curve is the deformation, d_{90}, and time, t_{90}, corresponding to 90 % primary consolidation.

12.3.2.3 The deformation at 100 % consolidation is 1/9 more than the difference in deformation between 0 and 90 % consolidation. The time of primary consolidation, t_{100}, may be taken at the intersection of the deformation-square root of time curve and this deformation ordinate. The deformation, d_{50}, corresponding to 50 % consolidation is equal to the deformation at 5/9 of the difference between 0 and 90 % consolidation.

12.3.3 Compute the coefficient of consolidation for each increment of load using the following equation and values appropriate to the chosen method of interpretation:

$$c_v = \frac{TH^2_{D_{50}}}{t}$$

where:

T = a dimensionless time factor:
for method 12.3.1 use 50 % consolidation with T = $T_{50} = 0.197$,
for method 12.3.2 use 90 % consolidation with $T = T_{90} = 0.848$,

t = time corresponding to the particular degree of consolidation, s or min;
for method 12.3.1 use $t = t_{50}$,
for method 12.3.2 use $t = t_{90}$, and

$H_{D_{50}}$ = length of the drainage path at 50 % consolidation, cm or m
for double-sided drainage $H_{D_{50}}$ is half the specimen height at the appropriate increment and for one-sided drainage $H_{D_{50}}$ is the full specimen height.

12.4 *Load-Deformation Properties:*

12.4.1 Tabulate the deformation or change in deformation, d_f, readings corresponding to the end of each increment and, if using Test Method B, corresponding to the end-of-primary consolidation, d_{100}.

12.4.2 Calculate the change in height, $\Delta H = d - d_o$, relative to the initial specimen height for each reading. If necessary, correct the deformation for the apparatus flexibility by subtracting the calibration value obtained in Section 9 from each reading.

12.4.3 Represent the deformation results in one of the following formats.

12.4.3.1 Calculate the void ratio as follows:

$$e = e_o - \frac{\Delta H}{H_s}$$

12.4.3.2 Alternatively, calculate the vertical strain, in percent, as follows:

$$\epsilon = \frac{\Delta H}{H_0} \times 100$$

12.4.4 Calculate the vertical stress as follows:

$$\sigma_v = \frac{P}{A}$$

where:

P = applied load in N
σ_v = vertical stress in kPa.

12.4.5 Referring to Fig. 4, plot the deformation results (void ratio or strain) corresponding to the end of each increment and, if using Test Method B, corresponding to the end-of-primary consolidation versus the logarithm of the pressure.

NOTE 14—In some cases, it may be preferable to present the load-deformation curve in arithmetic scale.

12.4.6 Referring to Fig. 4, determine the value of the preconsolidation pressure using the following procedure.

NOTE 15—Any other recognized method of estimating preconsolidation pressure (see references) may also be used, provided the method is identified in the report.

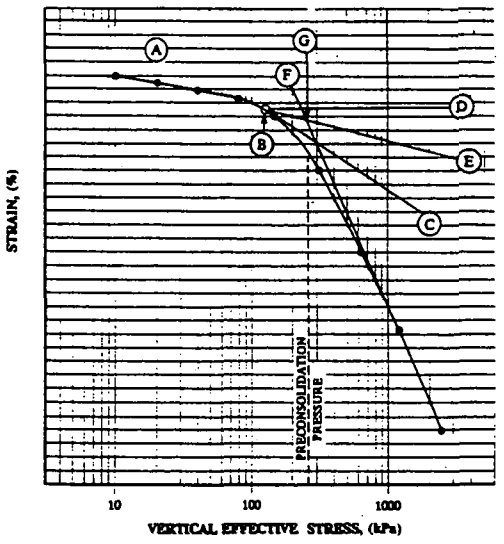
12.4.6.1 Estimate the point of maximum curvature on the consolidation curve (B).

12.4.6.2 Draw the tangent to the consolidation curve at this point (C), and a horizontal line through the point (D), both extended towards increasing values on the abscissa.

12.4.6.3 Draw the line bisecting the angle between these lines (E).

12.4.6.4 Extend the tangent to the steep, linear portion of the consolidation curve (virgin compression branch) (F) upwards to intersection with the bisector line (E). The

000311



A STRESS STRAIN CURVE FROM DATA POINTS
B POINT OF MAXIMUM CURVATURE
C TANGENT LINE TO CURVE AT POINT B
D HORIZONTAL LINE THROUGH POINT B
E LINE BISECTING ANGLE BETWEEN LINES C AND D
F TANGENT TO LINEAR PORTION OF CURVE IN VIRGIN COMPRESSION RANGE
G INTERSECTION OF LINES E AND F (VERTICAL EFFECTIVE STRESS AT POINT G EQUALS THE PRECONSOLIDATION PRESSURE)

FIG. 4 Evaluation for Preconsolidation Pressure From Casagrande Method

pressure (G) (abscissa) corresponding to this point of intersection is the estimated preconsolidation pressure.

12.4.7 Complete evaluation often includes consideration of information not generally available to the laboratory performing the test. For this reason further evaluation of the test is not mandatory. Many recognized methods of evaluation are described in the literature. Some of these are discussed in the Refs. (1) through (8).

13. Report

13.1 In addition to project name and location, boring number, sample number, and depth, report the following information.

13.1.1 Description and classification of the soil in accordance with Practice D 2488 or Test Method D 2487 when Atterberg limit data are available. Specific gravity of solids, Atterberg limits and grain size distribution shall also be reported when available plus the source of such information if other than measurements obtained on test specimen. Also note occurrence and approximate size of isolated large particles.

13.1.2 *Soil Condition:*

13.1.2.1 Average water content of trimmings,

13.1.2.2 Initial and final water content of specimen,

13.1.2.3 Initial and final dry unit weight of specimen,

13.1.2.4 Initial and final void ratio of specimen,

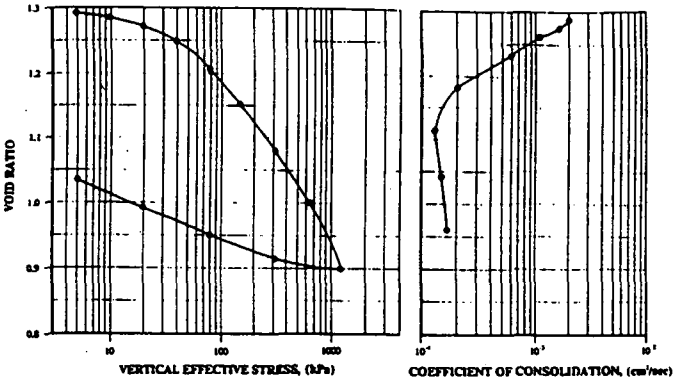


FIG. 5 Example of Consolidation Test Summary Plots

13.1.2.5 Initial and final degree of saturation of specimen, and

13.1.2.6 Preconsolidation pressure.

13.1.3 *Test Procedure:*

13.1.3.1 Preparation procedure used relative to trimming; state whether the specimen was trimmed using a trimming turntable, trimmed using a cutting shoe, or tested directly in a ring from a ring lined sampler.

13.1.3.2 Condition of test (natural moisture or inundated, pressure at inundation).

13.1.3.3 Method of testing (A or B).

13.1.3.4 Test Method used to compute coefficient of consolidation.

13.1.3.5 Listing of loading increments and decrements, and load increment duration, if differing from 24 h; end of increment deformation results and, for Test Method B, end-of-primary deformation results and coefficient of consolidation (see Fig. 1).

13.1.3.6 All departures from the procedure outlined, including special loading sequences.

13.1.4 *Graphical Presentations:*

13.1.4.1 Graph of deformation versus log time (see Fig. 2) or square root of time (see Fig. 3) for those load increments where time rate readings were taken.

13.1.4.2 Graph of void ratio versus log of pressure curve or percent compression versus log of pressure curve (see Fig. 4).

13.1.4.3 In cases where time rate of deformation readings have been taken for several load increments, prepare a graph of the log of coefficient of consolidation versus average void ratio or average percent compression for the respective load increments (see Fig. 5). Alternatively, a graph of coefficient of consolidation or log of coefficient of consolidation versus log of average pressure may be used. If time rate readings were obtained for only two load increments, simply tabulate the values of c_v versus the average pressure for the increment.

NOTE 16—The average pressure between two load increments is chosen because it is a convenient coordinate for plotting the result. Unless the rate of pore pressure dissipation is measured, it is not possible to determine the actual effective pressure at the time of 50 % consolidation. Furthermore, some ambiguity may arise in cases where the test has been carried through one or more intermediate load-rebound cycles.

000312

14. Precision and Bias

14.1 *Statement of Precision*—Due to the nature of the soil materials tested by this test method it is either not feasible or too costly at this time to produce multiple specimens which have uniform physical properties. Any variation observed in the data is just as likely to be due to specimen variation as to operator or laboratory testing variation. Subcommittee D18.05 welcomes proposals that would allow for development of a valid precision statement.

14.2 *Statement of Bias*—There is no acceptable reference value for this test method, therefore, bias cannot be determined.

15. Keywords

15.1 Compressibility; compression curves; consolidation; consolidation coefficient; consolidation test; consolidometer; preconsolidation pressure; primary consolidation; rebound; secondary compression; settlement; swelling.

000313

REFERENCES

(1) Casagrande, A., "The Determination of the Pre-Consolidation Load and its Practical Significance," Proceedings 1st ICSMFE, III, 1936, p. 60.

(2) Taylor, D. W., *Fundamentals of Soil Mechanics*, John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY, 1948.

(3) Burmeister, D. M. "The Application of Controlled Test Methods in Consolidation Testing," ASTM STP 126, p. 83, ASTM 1951.

(4) Schmertmann, J. H. "The Undisturbed Consolidation Behavior of Clay" Trans. ASCE, 120, pp. 1201 through 1233, 1955.

(5) Leonards, G. A. "Engineering Properties of Soils," Chapter 2 in *Foundation Engineering* by Leonards, G. A., ed. McGraw-Hill, New York, NY, 1962.

(6) Winterkorn, H. F. and Fang, H. Y. eds. *Foundation Engineering Handbook*, Chapter 4, Von Nostrand Reinhold Co, New York, NY, 1975.

(7) Holtz, R. D. and Kovacs, W. D. *An Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering*, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1981.

(8) Yong, R. N. and Townsend, F. C. Eds. "Consolidation of Soils: Testing and Evaluation," *ASTM STP 892*, ASTM, 1986.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103. known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000315

Standard
Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2487; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DOD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This standard describes a system for classifying mineral and organo-mineral soils for engineering purposes based on laboratory determination of particle-size characteristics, liquid limit, and plasticity index and shall be used when precise classification is required.

NOTE 1—Use of this standard will result in a single classification group symbol and group name except when a soil contains 5 to 12 % fines or when the plot of the liquid limit and plasticity index values falls into the crosshatched area of the plasticity chart. In these two cases, a dual symbol is used, for example, GP-GM, CL-ML. When the laboratory test results indicate that the soil is close to another soil classification group, the borderline condition can be indicated with two symbols separated by a slash. The first symbol should be the one based on this standard, for example, CL/CH, GM/SM, SC/CL. Borderline symbols are particularly useful when the liquid limit value of clayey soils is close to 50. These soils can have expansive characteristics and the use of a borderline symbol (CL/CH, CH/CL) will alert the user of the assigned classifications of expansive potential.

1.2 The group symbol portion of this sytem is based on laboratory tests performed on the portion of a soil sample passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve (see Specification E 11).

1.3 As a classification system, this standard is limited to naturally occurring soils.

NOTE 2—The group names and symbols used in this test method may be used as a descriptive system applied to such materials as shale, claystone, shells, crushed rock, etc. See Appendix X2.

1.4 This standard is for qualitative application only.

NOTE 3—When quantitative information is required for detailed designs of important structures, this test method must be supplemented by laboratory tests or other quantitative data to determine performance characteristics under expected field conditions.

1.5 This standard is the ASTM version of the Unified Soil Classification System. The basis for the classification scheme is the Airfield Classification System developed by A. Casagrande in the early 1940's.[2] It became known as the Unified Soil Classification System when several U.S. Government Agencies adopted a modified version of the Airfield System in 1952.

1.6 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 117 Test Method for Materials Finer Than 75-μm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing[3]

C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[3]

C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[3]

D 420 Guide for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock[4]

D 421 Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[4]

D 422 Test Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[4]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[4]

D 1140 Test Method for Amount of Material in Soils Finer than the No. 200 (75-μm) Sieve[4]

D 2216 Test Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock[4]

D 2217 Practice for Wet Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[4]

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[4]

D 4083 Practice for Description of Frozen Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[4]

D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[4]

D 4427 Classification of Peat Samples by Laboratory Testing[4]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions*—Except as listed below, all definitions are in accordance with Terminology D 653.

---

[1] This standard is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.07 on Identification and Classification of Soils.

Current edition approved May 15, 1992. Published July 1992. Originally published as D 2487 – 66 T. Last previous edition D 2487 – 90[ε1].

[2] Casagrande, A., "Classification and Identification of Soils," *Transactions*, ASCE, 1948, p. 901.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

NOTE 4—For particles retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) U.S. standard sieve, the following definitions are suggested:

Cobbles—particles of rock that will pass a 12-in. (300-mm) square opening and be retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) U.S. standard sieve, and

Boulders—particles of rock that will not pass a 12in. (300-mm) square opening

3.1.1 *gravel*—particles of rock that will pass a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 4 (4.75-mm) U.S. standard sieve with the following subdivisions:

Coarse—passes 3-in. (75-mm) sieve and retained on ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve, and

Fine—passes ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve and retained on No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

3.1.2 *sand*—particles of rock that will pass a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 200 (75-μm) U.S. standard sieve with the following subdivisions:

Coarse—passes No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and retained on No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve,

Medium—passes No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve and retained on No. 40 (425-μm) sieve, and

Fine—passes No. 40 (425-μm) sieve and retained on No. 200 (75-μm) sieve.

3.1.3 *clay*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-μm) U.S. standard sieve that can be made to exhibit plasticity (putty-like properties) within a range of water contents and that exhibits considerable strength when air dry. For classification, a clay is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index equal to or greater than 4, and the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls on or above the "A" line.

3.1.4 *silt*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-μm) U.S. standard sieve that is nonplastic or very slightly plastic and that exhibits little or no strength when air dry. For classification, a silt is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index less than 4 or if the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls below the "A" line.

3.1.5 *organic clay*—a clay with sufficient organic content to influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic clay is a soil that would be classified as a clay except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

3.1.6 *organic silt*—a silt with sufficient organic content to influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic silt is a soil that would be classified as a silt except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

3.1.7 *peat*—a soil composed of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition usually with an organic odor, a dark-brown to black color, a spongy consistency, and a texture ranging from fibrous to amorphous.

3.2 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *coefficient of curvature*, Cc—the ratio $(D_{30})^2/(D_{10} \times D_{60})$, where D_{60}, D_{30}, and D_{10} are the particle diameters corresponding to 60, 30, and 10 % finer on the cumulative particle-size distribution curve, respectively.

3.2.2 *coefficient of uniformity*, Cu—the ratio D_{60}/D_{10}, where D_{60} and D_{10} are the particle diameters corresponding to 60 and 10 % finer on the cumulative particle-size distribution curve, respectively.

4. Summary

4.1 As illustrated in Table 1, this classification system identifies three major soil divisions: coarse-grained soils, fine-grained soils, and highly organic soils. These three divisions are further subdivided into a total of 15 basic soil groups.

4.2 Based on the results of visual observations and prescribed laboratory tests, a soil is catalogued according to the basic soil groups, assigned a group symbol(s) and name, and thereby classified. The flow charts, Fig. 1 for fine-grained soils, and Fig. 2 for coarse-grained soils, can be used to assign the appropriate group symbol(s) and name.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 This standard classifies soils from any geographic location into categories representing the results of prescribed laboratory tests to determine the particle-size characteristics, the liquid limit, and the plasticity index.

5.2 The assigning of a group name and symbol(s) along with the descriptive information required in Practice D 2488 can be used to describe a soil to aid in the evaluation of its significant properties for engineering use.

5.3 The various groupings of this classification system have been devised to correlate in a general way with the engineering behavior of soils. This standard provides a useful first step in any field or laboratory investigation for geotechnical engineering purposes.

5.4 This standard may also be used as an aid in training personnel in the use of Practice D 2488.

5.5 This standard may be used in combination with Practice D 4083 when working with frozen soils.

6. Apparatus

6.1 In addition to the apparatus that may be required for obtaining and preparing the samples and conducting the prescribed laboratory tests, a plasticity chart, similar to Fig. 3, and a cumulative particle-size distribution curve, similar to Fig. 4, are required.

NOTE 5—The "U" line shown on Fig. 3 has been empirically determined to be the approximate "upper limit" for natural soils. It is a good check against erroneous data, and any test results that plot above or to the left of it should be verified.

7. Sampling

7.1 Samples shall be obtained and identified in accordance with a method or methods, recommended in Recommended Guide D 420 or by other accepted procedures.

7.2 For accurate identification, the minimum amount of test sample required for this test method will depend on which of the laboratory tests need to be performed. Where only the particle-size analysis of the sample is required, specimens having the following minimum dry weights are required:

Maximum Particle Size, Sieve Opening	Minimum Specimen Size, Dry Weight
4.75 mm (No. 4)	100 g (0.25 lb)
9.5 mm (⅜ in.)	200 g (0.5 lb)
19.0 mm (¾ in.)	1.0 kg (2.2 lb)
38.1 mm (1½ in.)	8.0 kg (18 lb)
75.0 mm (3 in.)	60.0 kg (132 lb)

Whenever possible, the field samples should have weights two to four times larger than shown.

000317

TABLE 1 Soil Classification Chart

Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests[A]				Soil Classification	
				Group Symbol	Group Name[B]
COARSE-GRAINED SOILS More than 50 % retained on No. 200 sieve	Gravels More than 50 % of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	Clean Gravels Less than 5 % fines[C]	$Cu \geq 4$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3^E$	GW	Well-graded gravel[F]
			$Cu < 4$ and/or $1 > Cc > 3^E$	GP	Poorly graded gravel[F]
		Gravels with Fines More than 12 % fines[C]	Fines classify as ML or MH	GM	Silty gravel[F,G,H]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	GC	Clayey gravel[F,G,H]
	Sands 50 % or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	Clean Sands Less than 5 % fines[D]	$Cu \geq 6$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3^E$	SW	Well-graded sand[I]
			$Cu < 6$ and/or $1 > Cc > 3^E$	SP	Poorly graded sand[I]
		Sands with Fines More than 12 % fines[D]	Fines classify as ML or MH	SM	Silty sand[G,H,I]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	SC	Clayey sand[G,H,I]
FINE-GRAINED SOILS 50 % or more passes the No. 200 sieve	Silts and Clays Liquid limit less than 50	inorganic	PI > 7 and plots on or above "A" line[J]	CL	Lean clay[K,L,M]
			PI < 4 or plots below "A" line[J]	ML	Silt[K,L,M]
		organic	$\frac{\text{Liquid limit - oven dried}}{\text{Liquid limit - not dried}} < 0.75$	OL	Organic clay[K,L,M,N] / Organic silt[K,L,M,O]
	Silts and Clays Liquid limit 50 or more	inorganic	PI plots on or above "A" line	CH	Fat clay[K,L,M]
			PI plots below "A" line	MH	Elastic silt[K,L,M]
		organic	$\frac{\text{Liquid limit - oven dried}}{\text{Liquid limit - not dried}} < 0.75$	OH	Organic clay[K,L,M,P] / Organic silt[K,L,M,O]
HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS	Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor			PT	Peat

[A] Based on the material passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

[B] If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

[C] Gravels with 5 to 12 % fines require dual symbols:
GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt
GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay
GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt
GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay

[D] Sands with 5 to 12 % fines require dual symbols:
SW-SM well-graded sand with silt
SW-SC well-graded sand with clay
SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt
SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay

[E] $Cu = D_{60}/D_{10}$ $\quad Cc = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$

[F] If soil contains ≥ 15 % sand, add "with sand" to group name.

[G] If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

[H] If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

[I] If soil contains ≥ 15 % gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

[J] If Atterberg limits plot in hatched area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

[K] If soil contains 15 to 29 % plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.

[L] If soil contains ≥ 30 % plus No. 200, predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

[M] If soil contains ≥ 30 % plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

[N] PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line.

[O] PI < 4 or plots below "A" line.

[P] PI plots on or above "A" line.

[Q] PI plots below "A" line.

7.3 When the liquid and plastic limit tests must also be performed, additional material will be required sufficient to provide 150 g to 200 g of soil finer than the No. 40 (425-μm) sieve.

7.4 If the field sample or test specimen is smaller than the minimum recommended amount, the report shall include an appropriate remark.

8. Classification of Peat

8.1 A sample composed primarily of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition and has a fibrous to amorphous texture, a dark-brown to black color, and an organic odor should be designated as a highly organic soil and shall be classified as peat, PT, and not subjected to the classification procedures described hereafter.

8.2 If desired, classification of type of peat can be performed in accordance with Classification D 4427.

9. Preparation for Classification

9.1 Before a soil can be classified according to this standard, generally the particle-size distribution of the minus 3-in. (75-mm) material and the plasticity characteristics of the minus No. 40 (425-μm) sieve material must be determined. See 9.8 for the specific required tests.

9.2 The preparation of the soil specimen(s) and the testing for particle-size distribution and liquid limit and plasticity index shall be in accordance with accepted standard procedures. Two procedures for preparation of the soil specimens for testing for soil classification purposes are given in Appendixes X3 and X4. Appendix X3 describes the wet preparation method and is the preferred method for cohesive soils that have never dried out and for organic soils.

9.3 When reporting soil classifications determined by this standard, the preparation and test procedures used shall be reported or referenced.

9.4 Although the test procedure used in determining the particle-size distribution or other considerations may require a hydrometer analysis of the material, a hydrometer analysis is not necessary for soil classification.

9.5 The percentage (by dry weight) of any plus 3-in. (75-mm) material must be determined and reported as auxiliary information.

9.6 The maximum particle size shall be determined (measured or estimated) and reported as auxiliary information.

9.7 When the cumulative particle-size distribution is required, a set of sieves shall be used which include the

000318

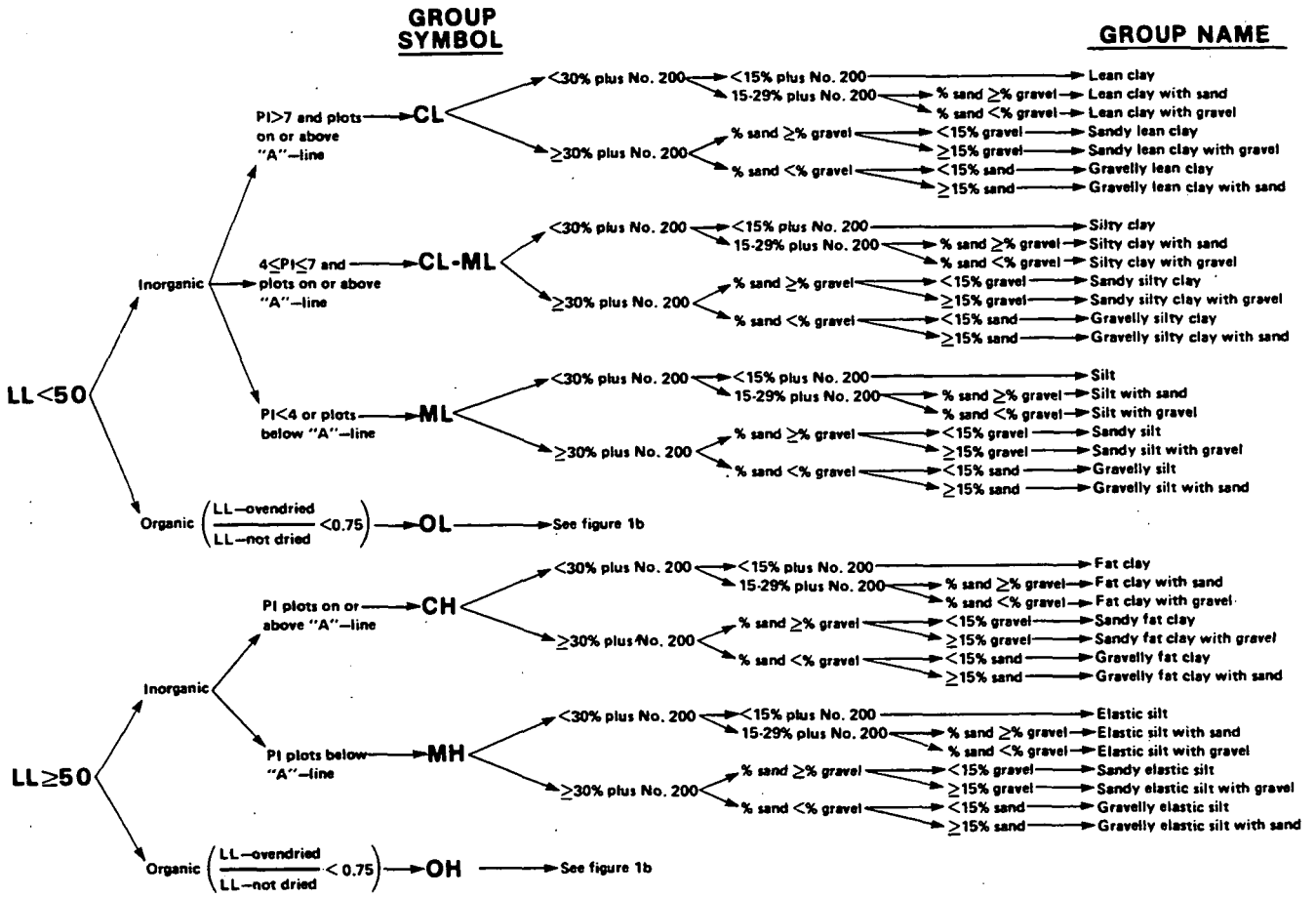


FIG. 1a Flow Chart for Classifying Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or More Passes No. 200 Sieve)

following sizes (with the largest size commensurate with the maximum particle size) with other sieve sizes as needed or required to define the particle-size distribution:

3-in. (75-mm)
¾-in.(19.0-mm)
No. 4 (4.75-mm)
No. 10 (2.00-mm)
No. 40 (425-μm)
No. 200 (75-μm)

9.8 The tests required to be performed in preparation for classification are as follows:

9.8.1 For soils estimated to contain less than 5 % fines, a plot of the cumulative particle-size distribution curve of the fraction coarser than the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve is required. The cumulative particle-size distribution curve may be plotted on a graph similar to that shown in Fig. 4.

9.8.2 For soils estimated to contain 5 to 15 % fines, a cumulative particle-size distribution curve, as described in 9.8.1, is required, and the liquid limit and plasticity index are required.

9.8.2.1 If sufficient material is not available to determine the liquid limit and plasticity index, the fines should be estimated to be either silty or clayey using the procedures described in Practice D 2488 and so noted in the report.

9.8.3 For soils estimated to contain 15 % or more fines, a determination of the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel is required, and the liquid limit and plasticity index are required. For soils estimated to contain 90 % fines or more, the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel may be estimated using the procedures described in Practice D 2488 and so noted in the report.

10. Preliminary Classification Procedure

10.1 Class the soil as fine-grained if 50 % or more by dry weight of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve and follow Section 11.

10.2 Class the soil as coarse-grained if more than 50 % by dry weight of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve and follow Section 12.

11. Procedure for Classification of Fine-Grained Soils (50 % or more by dry weight passing the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve)

11.1 The soil is an inorganic clay if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls on or above the "A" line, the plasticity index is greater than 4, and the presence of organic matter does not influence the liquid limit as determined in 11.3.2.

NOTE 6—The plasticity index and liquid limit are determined on the minus No. 40 (425 μm) sieve material.

11.1.1 Classify the soil as a *lean clay*, CL, if the liquid limit is less than 50. See area identified as CL on Fig. 3.

11.1.2 Classify the soil as a *fat clay*, CH, if the liquid limit

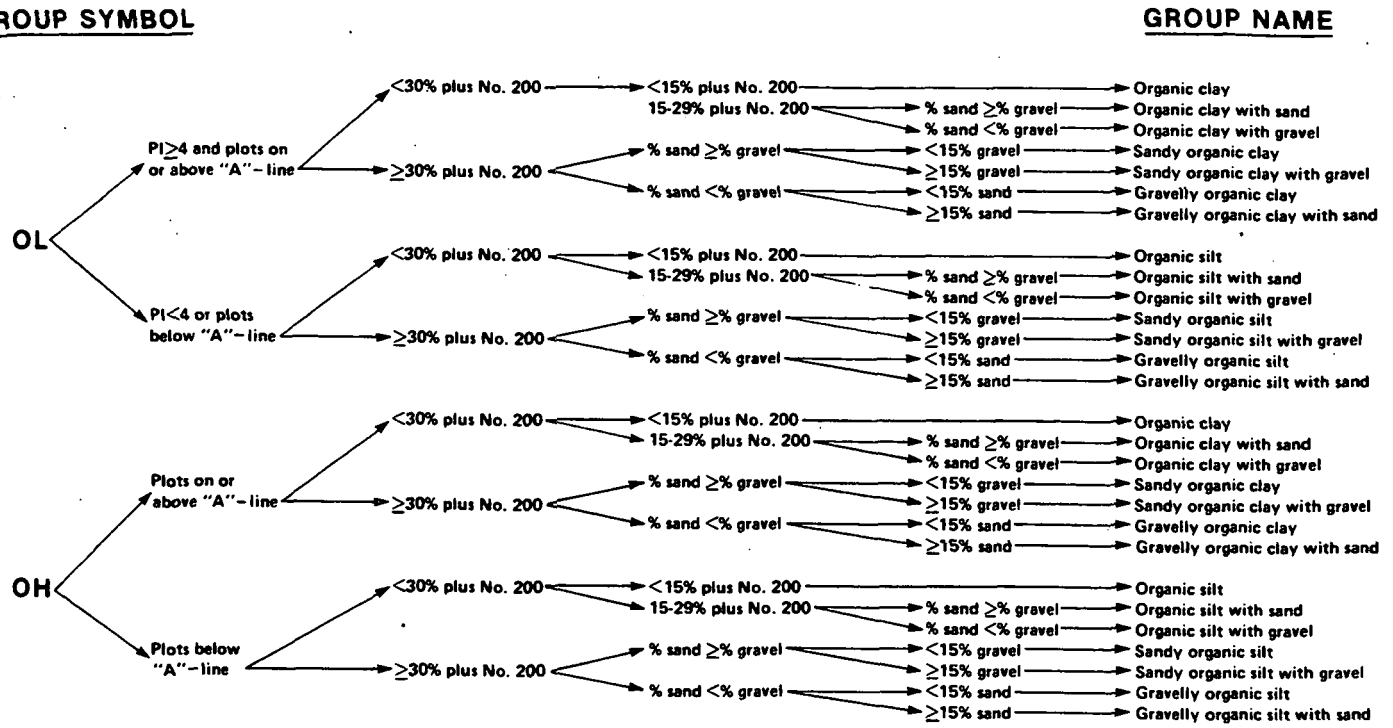


FIG. 1b Flow Chart for Classifying Organic Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or More Passes No. 200 Sieve)

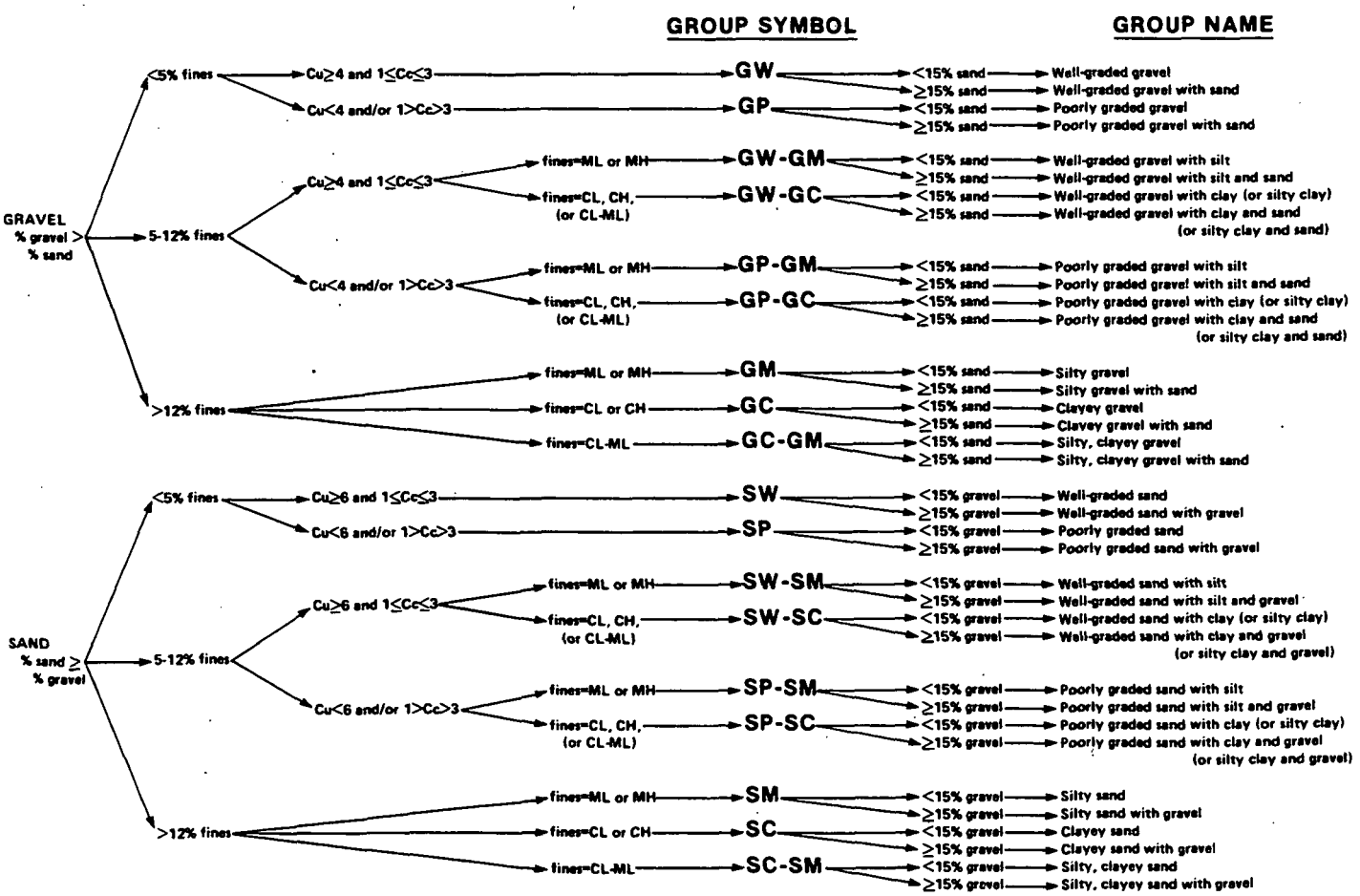


FIG. 2 Flow Chart for Classifying Coarse-Grained Soils (More Than 50 % Retained on No. 200 Sieve)

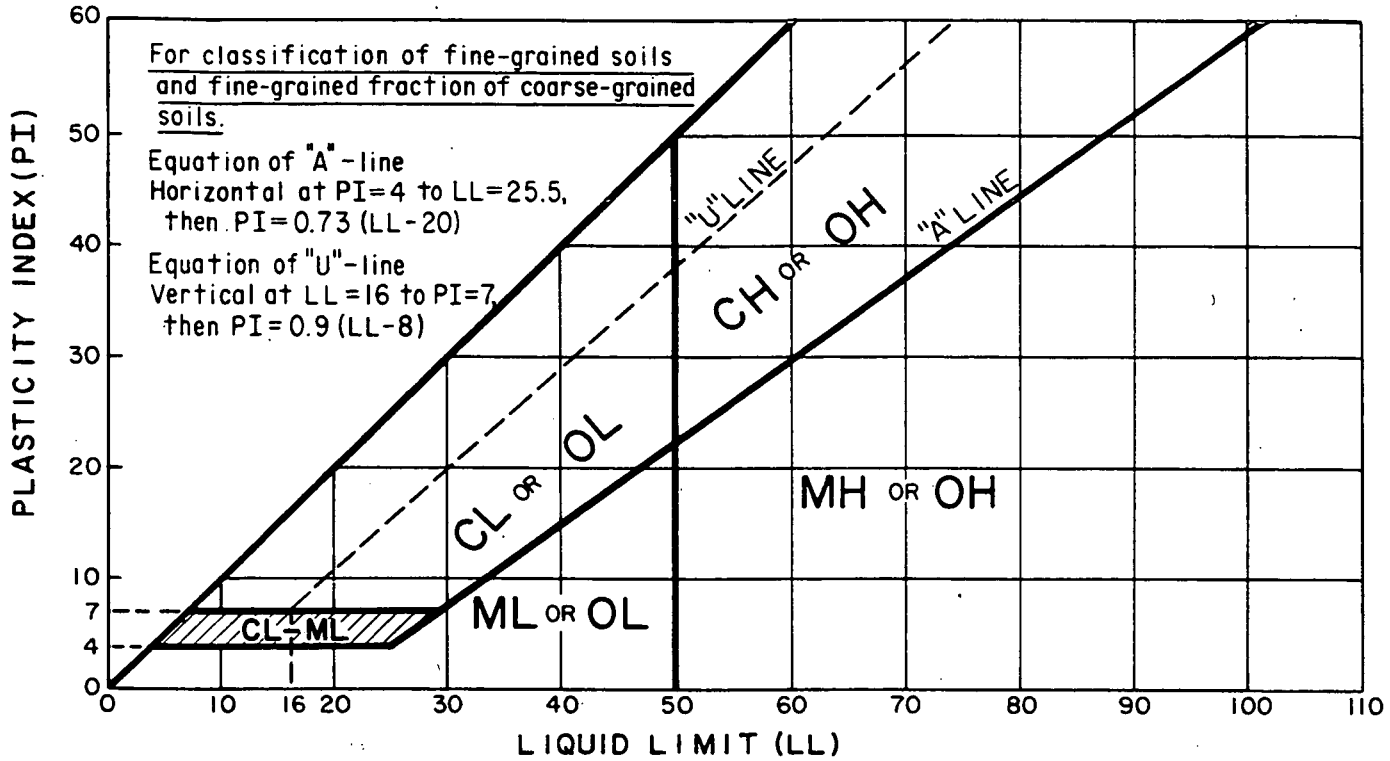


FIG. 3 Plasticity Chart

's 50 or greater. See area identified as CH on Fig. 3.

NOTE 7—In cases where the liquid limit exceeds 110 or the plasticity index exceeds 60, the plasticity chart may be expanded by maintaining the same scale on both axes and extending the "A" line at the indicated slope.

11.1.3 Classify the soil as a *silty clay*, CL-ML, if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls on or above the "A" line and the plasticity index is in the range of 4 to 7. See area identified as CL-ML on Fig. 3.

11.2 The soil is an inorganic silt if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls below the "A" line or the plasticity index is less than 4, and presence of organic matter does not influence the liquid limit as determined in 11.3.2.

11.2.1 Classify the soil as a *silt*, ML, if the liquid limit is less than 50. See area identified as ML on Fig. 3.

11.2.2 Classify the soil as an *elastic silt*, MH, if the liquid limit is 50 or greater. See area identified as MH on Fig. 3.

11.3 The soil is an organic silt or clay if organic matter is present in sufficient amounts to influence the liquid limit as determined in 11.3.2.

11.3.1 If the soil has a dark color and an organic odor when moist and warm, a second liquid limit test shall be performed on a test specimen which has been oven dried at 110 ± 5°C to a constant weight, typically over night.

11.3.2 The soil is an organic silt or organic clay if the liquid limit after oven drying is less than 75 % of the liquid limit of the original specimen determined before oven drying (see Procedure B of Practice D 2217).

11.3.3 Classify the soil as an *organic silt* or *organic clay*, OL, if the liquid limit (not oven dried) is less than 50 %. Classify the soil as an *organic silt*, OL, if the plasticity index is less than 4, or the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls below the "A" line. Classify the soil as an *organic clay*, OL, if the plasticity index is 4 or greater and the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls on or above the "A" line. See area identified as OL (or CL-ML) on Fig. 3.

11.3.4 Classify the soil as an *organic clay* or *organic silt*, OH, if the liquid limit (not oven dried) is 50 or greater. Classify the soil as an *organic silt*, OH, if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls below the "A" line. Classify the soil as an *organic clay*, OH, if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid-limit plot falls on or above the "A" line. See area identified as OH on Fig. 3.

11.4 If less than 30 % but 15 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve, the words "with sand" or "with gravel" (whichever is predominant) shall be added to the group name. For example, lean clay with sand, CL; silt with gravel, ML. If the percent of sand is equal to the percent of gravel, use "with sand."

11.5 If 30 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve, the words "sandy" or "gravelly" shall be added to the group name. Add the word "sandy" if 30 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve and the coarse-grained portion is predominantly sand. Add the word "gravelly" if 30 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve and the coarse-grained portion is predominantly gravel. For example, sandy lean clay, CL; gravelly fat clay, CH; sandy silt, ML. If the percent of sand is equal to the percent of gravel, use "sandy."

000321

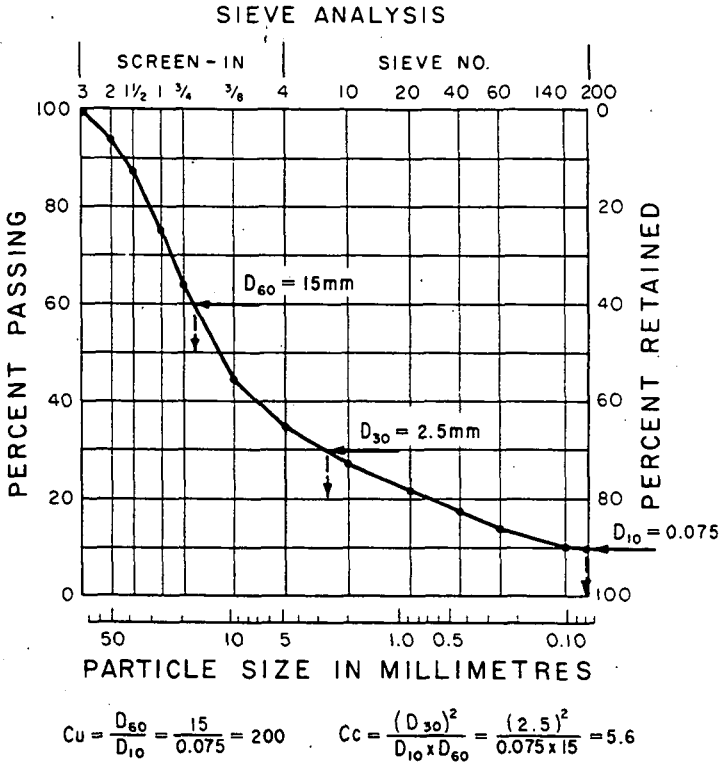


FIG. 4 Cumulative Particle-Size Plot

12. Procedure for Classification of Coarse-Grained Soils (more than 50 % retained on the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve)

12.1 Class the soil as gravel if more than 50 % of the coarse fraction [plus No. 200 (75-μm) sieve] is retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

12.2 Class the soil as sand if 50 % or more of the coarse fraction [plus No. 200 (75-μm) sieve] passes the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

12.3 If 12 % or less of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve, plot the cumulative particle-size distribution, Fig. 4, and compute the coefficient of uniformity, Cu, and coefficient of curvature, Cc, as given in Eqs 1 and 2.

$$Cu = D_{60}/D_{10} \quad (1)$$

$$Cc = (D_{30})^2/(D_{10} \times D_{60}) \quad (2)$$

where:

D_{10}, D_{30}, and D_{60} = the particle-size diameters corresponding to 10, 30, and 60 %, respectively, passing on the cumulative particle-size distribution curve, Fig. 4.

NOTE 8—It may be necessary to extrapolate the curve to obtain the D_{10} diameter.

12.3.1 If less than 5 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve, classify the soil as a *well-graded gravel*, GW, or *well-graded sand*, SW, if Cu is greater than 4.0 for gravel or greater than 6.0 for sand, and Cc is at least 1.0 but not more than 3.0.

12.3.2 If less than 5 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve, classify the soil as *poorly graded gravel*, GP, or *poorly graded sand*, SP, if either the Cu or the Cc criteria for well-graded soils are not satisfied.

12.4 If more than 12 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve, the soil shall be considered a coarse-grained soil with fines. The fines are determined to be either clayey or silty based on the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot on Fig. 3. (See 9.8.2.1 if insufficient material available for testing). (See NOTE 6)

12.4.1 Classify the soil as a *clayey gravel*, GC, or *clayey sand*, SC, if the fines are clayey, that is, the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls on or above the "A" line and the plasticity index is greater than 7.

12.4.2 Classify the soil as a *silty gravel*, GM, or *silty sand*, SM, if the fines are silty, that is, the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls below the "A" line or the plasticity index is less than 4.

12.4.3 If the fines plot as a silty clay, CL-ML, classify the soil as a *silty, clayey gravel*, GC-GM, if it is a gravel or a *silty, clayey sand*, SC-SM, if it is a sand.

12.5 If 5 to 12 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve, give the soil a dual classification using two group symbols.

12.5.1 The first group symbol shall correspond to that for a gravel or sand having less than 5 % fines (GW, GP, SW, SP), and the second symbol shall correspond to a gravel or sand having more than 12 % fines (GC, GM, SC, SM).

12.5.2 The group name shall correspond to the first group symbol plus "with clay" or "with silt" to indicate the plasticity characteristics of the fines. For example, well-graded gravel with clay, GW-GC; poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SM (See 9.8.2.1 if insufficient material available for testing).

NOTE 9—If the fines plot as a *silty clay*, CL-ML, the second group symbol should be either GC or SC. For example, a poorly graded sand with 10 % fines, a liquid limit of 20, and a plasticity index of 6 would be classified as a poorly graded sand with silty clay, SP-SC.

000322

12.6 If the specimen is predominantly sand or gravel but contains 15 % or more of the other coarse-grained constituent, the words "with gravel" or "with sand" shall be added to the group name. For example, poorly graded gravel with sand, clayey sand with gravel.

12.7 If the field sample contained any cobbles or boulders or both, the words "with cobbles," or "with cobbles and boulders" shall be added to the group name. For example, silty gravel with cobbles, GM.

13. Report

13.1 The report should include the group name, group symbol, and the results of the laboratory tests. The particle-size distribution shall be given in terms of percent of gravel, sand, and fines. The plot of the cumulative particle-size distribution curve shall be reported if used in classifying the soil. Report appropriate descriptive information according to the procedures in Practice D 2488. A local or commercial name or geologic interpretation for the material may be added at the end of the descriptive information if identified as such. The test procedures used shall be referenced.

NOTE 10—*Example: Clayey Gravel with Sand and Cobbles* (GC)—46 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded gravel; 30 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded sand; 24 % clayey fines, LL = 38, PI = 19; weak reaction with HCl; original field sample had 4 % hard, subrounded cobbles: maximum dimension 150 mm.

In-Place Conditions—firm, homogeneous, dry, brown,
Geologic Interpretation—alluvial fan.

NOTE 11—Other examples of soil descriptions are given in Appendix X1.

14. Keywords

14.1 Atterberg limits; classification; clay; gradation; gravel; laboratory classification; organic soils; sand; silt; soil classification; soil tests

APPENDIXES

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. EXAMPLES OF DESCRIPTIONS USING SOIL CLASSIFICATION

X1.1 The following examples show how the information required in 13.1 can be reported. The appropriate descriptive information from Practice D 2488 is included for illustrative purposes. The additional descriptive terms that would accompany the soil classification should be based on the intended use of the classification and the individual circumstances.

X1.1.1 *Well-Graded Gravel with Sand (GW)*—73 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular gravel; 23 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular sand; 4 % fines; Cc = 2.7, Cu = 12.4.

X1.1.2 *Silty Sand with Gravel (SM)*—61 % predominantly fine sand; 23 % silty fines, LL = 33, PI = 6; 16 % fine, hard, subrounded gravel; no reaction with HCl; (field sample smaller than recommended). *In-Place Conditions*—Firm, stratified and contains lenses of silt 1 to 2 in. thick, moist, brown to gray; in-place density = 106 lb/ft^3 and in-place moisture = 9 %.

X1.1.3 *Organic Clay (OL)*—100 % fines, LL (not dried) = 32, LL (oven dried) = 21, PI (not dried) = 10; wet, dark brown, organic odor, weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.4 *Silty Sand with Organic Fines (SM)*—74 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular reddish sand; 26 % organic and silty dark-brown fines, LL (not dried) = 37, LL (oven dried) = 26, PI (not dried) = 6, wet, weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.5 *Poorly Graded Gravel with Silt, Sand, Cobbles and Boulders (GP-GM)*—78 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded to subangular gravel; 16 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded to subangular sand; 6 % silty (estimated) fines; moist, brown; no reaction with HCl; original field sample had 7 % hard, subrounded cobbles and 2 % hard, subrounded boulders with a maximum dimension of 18 in.

X2. USING SOIL CLASSIFICATION AS A DESCRIPTIVE SYSTEM FOR SHALE, CLAYSTONE, SHELLS, SLAG, CRUSHED ROCK, ETC.

X2.1 The group names and symbols used in this standard may be used as a descriptive system applied to materials that exist in situ as shale, claystone, sandstone, siltstone, mudstone, etc., but convert to soils after field or laboratory processing (crushing, slaking, etc.).

X2.2 Materials such as shells, crushed rock, slag, etc., should be identified as such. However, the procedures used in this standard for describing the particle size and plasticity characteristics may be used in the description of the material. If desired, a classification in accordance with this standard may be assigned to aid in describing the material.

X2.3 If a classification is used, the group symbol(s) and group names should be placed in quotation marks or noted with some type of distinguishing symbol. See examples.

X2.4 Examples of how soil classifications could be incorporated into a description system for materials that are not naturally occurring soils are as follows:

X2.4.1 *Shale Chunks*—Retrieved as 2 to 4-in. pieces of shale from power auger hole, dry, brown, no reaction with HCl. After laboratory processing by slaking in water for 24 h, material classified as "Sandy Lean Clay (CL)"—61 % clayey fines, LL = 37, PI = 16; 33 % fine to medium sand; 6 % gravel-size pieces of shale.

X2.4.2 *Crushed Sandstone*—Product of commercial crushing operation; "Poorly Graded Sand with Silt (SP-SM)"—91 % fine to medium sand; 9 % silty (estimated) fines; dry, reddish-brown, strong reaction with HCl.

X2.4.3 *Broken Shells*—62 % gravel-size broken shells;

000323

31 % sand and sand-size shell pieces; 7 % fines; would be classified as "Poorly Graded Gravel with Sand (GP)".

X2.4.4 *Crushed Rock*—Processed gravel and cobbles from Pit No. 7; "Poorly Graded Gravel (GP)"—89 % fine, hard, angular gravel-size particles; 11 % coarse, hard, angular sand-size particles, dry, tan; no reaction with HCl; Cc = 2.4, Cu = 0.9.

X3. PREPARATION AND TESTING FOR CLASSIFICATION PURPOSES BY THE WET METHOD

X3.1 This appendix describes the steps in preparing a soil sample for testing for purposes of soil classification using a wet-preparation procedure.

X3.2 Samples prepared in accordance with this procedure should contain as much of their natural water content as possible and every effort should be made during obtaining, preparing, and transportating the samples to maintain the natural moisture.

X3.3 The procedures to be followed in this standard assume that the field sample contains fines, sand, gravel, and plus 3-in. (75-mm) particles and the cumulative particle-size distribution plus the liquid limit and plasticity index values are required (see 9.8). Some of the following steps may be omitted when they are not applicable to the soil being tested.

X3.4 If the soil contains plus No. 200 (75-μm) particles that would degrade during dry sieving, use a test procedure for determining the particle-size characteristics that prevents this degradation.

X3.5 Since this classification system is limited to the portion of a sample passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, the plus 3-in. (75-mm) material shall be removed prior to the determination of the particle-size characteristics and the liquid limit and plasticity index.

X3.6 The portion of the field sample finer than the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve shall be obtained as follows:

X3.6.1 Separate the field sample into two fractions on a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, being careful to maintain the natural water content in the minus 3-in. (75-mm) fraction. Any particles adhering to the plus 3-in. (75-mm) particles shall be brushed or wiped off and placed in the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X3.6.2 Determine the air-dry or oven-dry weight of the fraction retained on the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve. Determine the total (wet) weight of the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X3.6.3 Thoroughly mix the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve. Determine the water content, in accordance with Test Method D 2216, of a representative specimen with a minimum dry weight as required in 7.2. Save the water-content specimen for determination of the particle-size analysis in accordance with X3.8.

X3.6.4 Compute the dry weight of the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve based on the water content and total (wet) weight. Compute the total dry weight of the sample and calculate the percentage of material retained on the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X3.7 Determine the liquid limit and plasticity index as follows:

X3.7.1 If the soil disaggregates readily, mix on a clean, hard surface and select a representative sample by quartering in accordance with Practice C 702.

X3.7.1.1 If the soil contains coarse-grained particles coated with and bound together by tough clayey material, take extreme care in obtaining a representative portion of the No. 40 (425-μm) fraction. Typically, a larger portion than normal has to be selected, such as the minimum weights required in 7.2.

X3.7.1.2 To obtain a representative specimen of a basically cohesive soil, it may be advantageous to pass the soil through a ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve or other convenient size so the material can be more easily mixed and then quartered or split to obtain the representative specimen.

X3.7.2 Process the representative specimen in accordance with Procedure B of Practice D 2217.

X3.7.3 Perform the liquid-limit test in accordance with Test Method D 4318, except the soil shall not be air dried prior to the test.

X3.7.4 Perform the plastic-limit test in accordance with Test Method D 4318, except the soil shall not be air dried prior to the test, and calculate the plasticity index.

X3.8 Determine the particle-size distribution as follows:

X3.8.1 If the water content of the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve was required (X3.6.3), use the water-content specimen for determining the particle-size distribution. Otherwise, select a representative specimen in accordance with Practice C 702 with a minimum dry weight as required in 7.2.

X3.8.2 If the cumulative particle-size distribution including a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Test Method D 422. See 9.7 for the set of required sieves.

X3.8.3 If the cumulative particle-size distribution without a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Method C 136. See 9.7 for the set of required sieves. The specimen should be soaked until all clayey aggregations have softened and then washed in accordance with Test Method C 117 prior to performing the particle-size distribution.

X3.8.4 If the cumulative particle-size distribution is not required, determine the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel in the specimen in accordance with Test Method C 117, being sure to soak the specimen long enough to soften all clayey aggregations, followed by Method C 136 using a nest of sieves which shall include a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve.

X3.8.5 Calculate the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel in the minus 3-in. (75-mm) fraction for classification purposes.

000324

X4. AIR-DRIED METHOD OF PREPARATION OF SOILS FOR TESTING FOR CLASSIFICATION PURPOSES

X4.1 This appendix describes the steps in preparing a soil sample for testing for purposes of soil classification when air-drying the soil before testing is specified or desired or when the natural moisture content is near that of an air-dried state.

X4.2 If the soil contains organic matter or mineral colloids that are irreversibly affected by air drying, the wet-preparation method as described in Appendix X3 should be used.

X4.3 Since this classification system is limited to the portion of a sample passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, the plus 3-in. (75-mm) material shall be removed prior to the determination of the particle-size characteristics and the liquid limit and plasticity index.

X4.4 The portion of the field sample finer than the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve shall be obtained as follows:

X4.4.1 Air dry and weigh the field sample.

X4.4.2 Separate the field sample into two fractions on a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X4.4.3 Weigh the two fractions and compute the percentage of the plus 3-in. (75-mm) material in the field sample.

X4.5 Determine the particle-size distribution and liquid limit and plasticity index as follows (see 9.8 for when these tests are required):

X4.5.1 Thoroughly mix the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X4.5.2 If the cumulative particle-size distribution including a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Test Method D 422. See 9.7 for the set of sieves that is required.

X4.5.3 If the cumulative particle-size distribution without a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Test Method D 1140 followed by Method C 136. See 9.7 for the set of sieves that is required.

X4.5.4 If the cumulative particle-size distribution is not required, determine the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel in the specimen in accordance with Test Method D 1140 followed by Method C 136 using a nest of sieves which shall include a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve.

X4.5.5 If required, determine the liquid limit and the plasticity index of the test specimen in accordance with Test Method D 4318.

X5. RATIONALE

X5.1 Significant revisions were made to the standard which appeared as D 2487 – 83 from the previous version of D 2487 – 69 (1975). The changes are documented in the literature.[5]

X5.2 The 1992 edition differs from the previous edition in that the title was changed to better indicate the use of the standard and identifying it as the ASTM version of the Unified Soil Classification System.

[5] Howard, A.K., "The Revised ASTM Standard on the Unified Soil Classification System," Geotechnical Testing Journal, GTJODJ Vol 7, No. 4, December 1984.

000325

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000326

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 2488 – 90

Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2488; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers procedures for the description of soils for engineering purposes.

1.2 This practice also describes a procedure for identifying soils, at the option of the user, based on the classification system described in Test Method D 2487. The identification is based on visual examination and manual tests. It must be clearly stated in reporting an identification that it is based on visual-manual procedures.

1.2.1 When precise classification of soils for engineering purposes is required, the procedures prescribed in Test Method D 2487 shall be used.

1.2.2 In this practice, the identification portion assigning a group symbol and name is limited to soil particles smaller than 3 in. (75 mm).

1.2.3 The identification portion of this practice is limited to naturally occurring soils (disturbed and undisturbed).

NOTE 1—This practice may be used as a descriptive system applied to such materials as shale, claystone, shells, crushed rock, etc. (See Appendix X2).

1.3 The descriptive information in this practice may be used with other soil classification systems or for materials other than naturally occurring soils.

1.4 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.* For specific precautionary statements see Section 8.

1.5 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 1452 Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings[2]

D 1586 Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2113 Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation[2]

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]

D 4083 Practice for Description of Frozen Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 Except as listed below, all definitions are in accordance with Terminology D 653.

NOTE 2—For particles retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) US standard sieve, the following definitions are suggested:

Cobbles—particles of rock that will pass a 12-in. (300-mm) square opening and be retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, and

Boulders—particles of rock that will not pass a 12-in. (300-mm) square opening.

3.1.1.2 *clay*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve that can be made to exhibit plasticity (putty-like properties) within a range of water contents, and that exhibits considerable strength when air-dry. For classification, a clay is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index equal to or greater than 4, and the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls on or above the "A" line (see Fig. 3 of Test Method D 2487).

3.1.1.3 *gravel*—particles of rock that will pass a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve with the following subdivisions:

coarse—passes a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve and is retained on a ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve.

fine—passes a ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve and is retained on a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

3.1.1.4 *organic clay*—a clay with sufficient organic content to influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic clay is a soil that would be classified as a clay, except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

3.1.1.5 *organic silt*—a silt with sufficient organic content to influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic silt is a soil that would be classified as a silt except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

3.1.1.6 *peat*—a soil composed primarily of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition usually with an organic odor, a dark brown to black color, a spongy consistency, and a texture ranging from fibrous to amorphous.

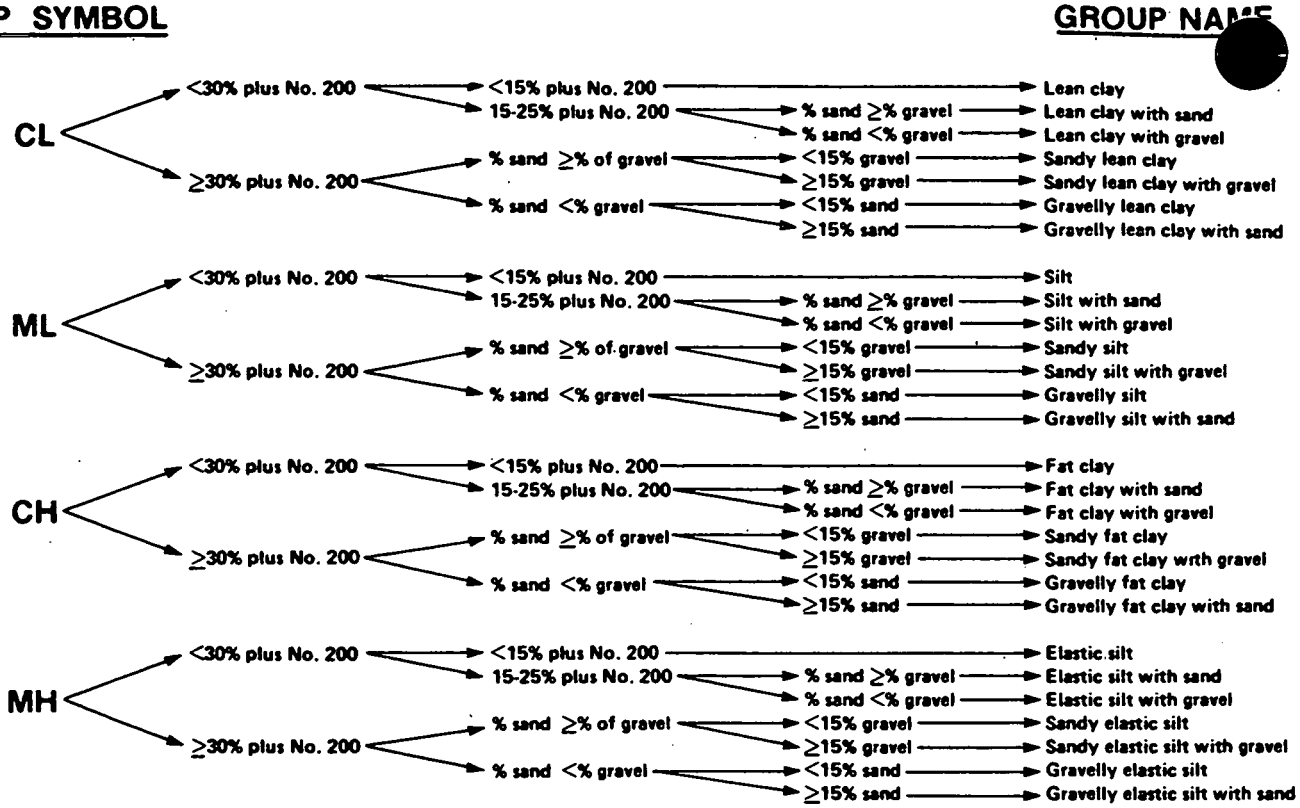
3.1.1.7 *sand*—particles of rock that will pass a No. 4

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.07 on Identification and Classification of Soils.

Current edition approved June 29, 1990. Published August 1990. Originally published as D 2488 – 66 T. Last previous edition D 2488 – 84[ε1].

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000328



NOTE—Percentages are based on estimating amounts of fines, sand, and gravel to the nearest 5 %.

FIG. 1a Flow Chart for Identifying Inorganic Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or more fines)

(4.75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve with the following subdivisions:

coarse—passes a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and is retained on a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve.

medium—passes a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve and is retained on a No. 40 (425-μm) sieve.

fine—passes a No. 40 (425-μm) sieve and is retained on a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve.

3.1.1.8 *silt*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve that is nonplastic or very slightly plastic and that exhibits little or no strength when air dry. For classification, a silt is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index less than 4, or the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls below the "A" line (see Fig. 3 of Test Method D 2487).

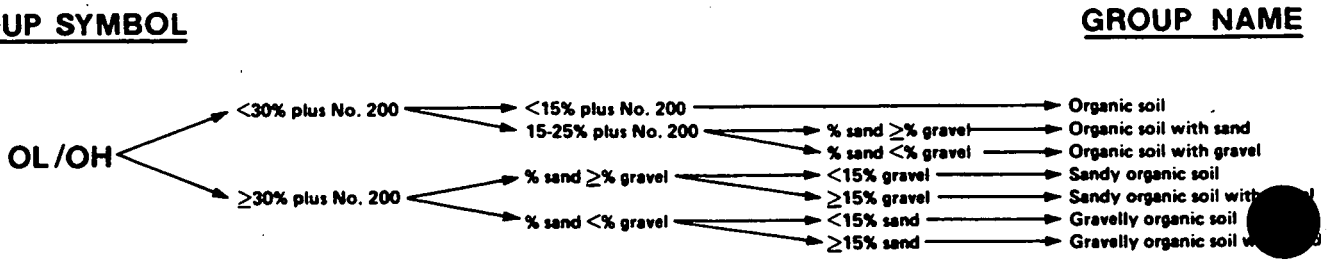
4. Summary of Practice

4.1 Using visual examination and simple manual tests, this practice gives standardized criteria and procedures for describing and identifying soils.

4.2 The soil can be given an identification by assigning a group symbol(s) and name. The flow charts, Figs. 1a and 1b for fine-grained soils, and Fig. 2, for coarse-grained soils, can be used to assign the appropriate group symbol(s) and name. If the soil has properties which do not distinctly place it into a specific group, borderline symbols may be used, see Appendix X3.

NOTE 3—It is suggested that a distinction be made between *dual symbols* and *borderline symbols*.

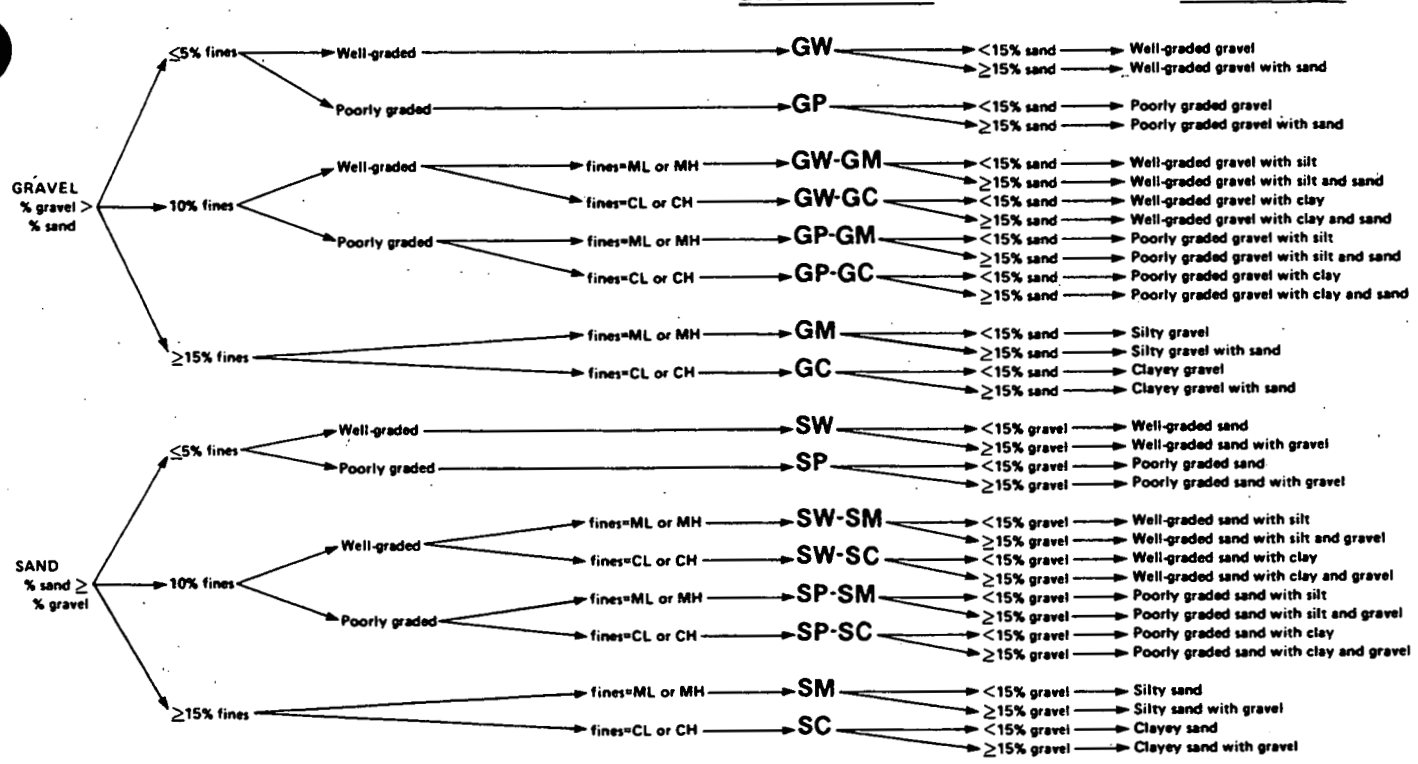
Dual Symbol—A dual symbol is two symbols separated by a hyphen, for example, GP-GM, SW-SC, CL-ML used to indicate that the soil has been identified as having the properties of a classification in accordance with Test Method D 2487 where two symbols are required. Two symbols are required when the soil has between 5 and 12 % fines or



NOTE—Percentages are based on estimating amounts of fines, sand, and gravel to the nearest 5 %.

FIG. 1b Flow Chart for Identifying Organic Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or more fines)

000329



NOTE—Percentages are based on estimating amounts of fines, sand, and gravel to the nearest 5 %.

FIG. 2 Flow Chart for Identifying Coarse-Grained Soils (less than 50 % fines)

when the liquid limit and plasticity index values plot in the CL-ML area of the plasticity chart.

Borderline Symbol—A borderline symbol is two symbols separated by a slash, for example, CL/CH, GM/SM, CL/ML. A borderline symbol should be used to indicate that the soil has been identified as having properties that do not distinctly place the soil into a specific group (see Appendix X3).

5. Significance and Use

5.1 The descriptive information required in this practice can be used to describe a soil to aid in the evaluation of its significant properties for engineering use.

5.2 The descriptive information required in this practice should be used to supplement the classification of a soil as determined by Test Method D 2487.

5.3 This practice may be used in identifying soils using the classification group symbols and names as prescribed in Test Method D 2487. Since the names and symbols used in this practice to identify the soils are the same as those used in Test Method D 2487, it shall be clearly stated in reports and all other appropriate documents, that the classification symbol and name are based on visual-manual procedures.

5.4 This practice is to be used not only for identification of soils in the field, but also in the office, laboratory, or wherever soil samples are inspected and described.

5.5 This practice has particular value in grouping similar soil samples so that only a minimum number of laboratory tests need be run for positive soil classification.

NOTE 4—The ability to describe and identify soils correctly is learned more readily under the guidance of experienced personnel, but it may also be acquired systematically by comparing numerical laboratory test results for typical soils of each type with their visual and manual characteristics.

5.6 When describing and identifying soil samples from a given boring, test pit, or group of borings or pits, it is not necessary to follow all of the procedures in this practice for every sample. Soils which appear to be similar can be grouped together; one sample completely described and identified with the others referred to as similar based on performing only a few of the descriptive and identification procedures described in this practice.

5.7 This practice may be used in combination with Practice D 4083 when working with frozen soils.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Required Apparatus:*

6.1.1 *Pocket Knife or Small Spatula.*

6.2 *Useful Auxiliary Apparatus:*

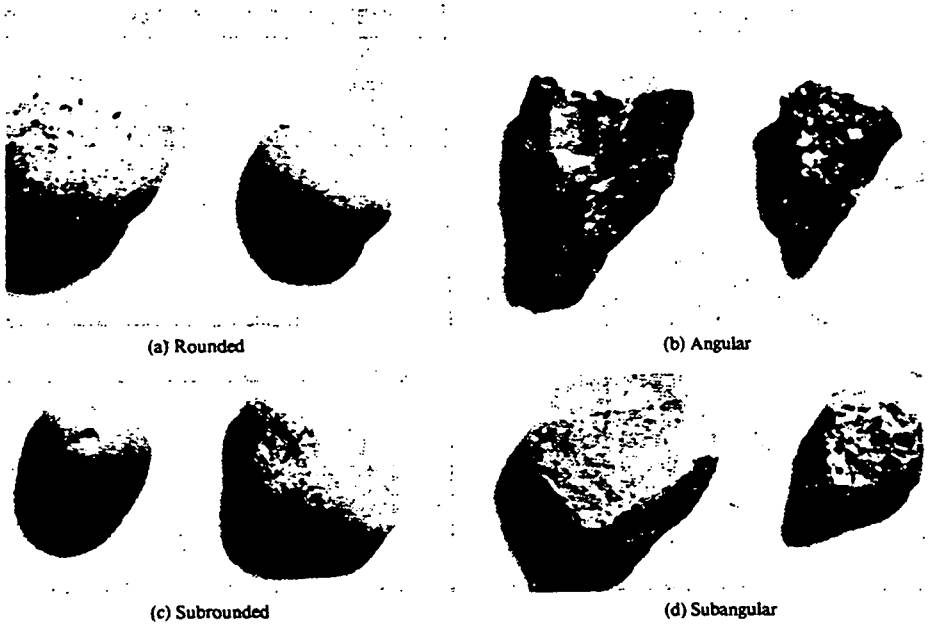
6.2.1 *Small Test Tube and Stopper* (or jar with a lid).

6.2.2 *Small Hand Lens.*

7. Reagents

7.1 *Purity of Water*—Unless otherwise indicated, references to water shall be understood to mean water from a city water supply or natural source, including non-potable water.

7.2 *Hydrochloric Acid*—A small bottle of dilute hydrochloric acid, HCl, one part HCl (10 *N*) to three parts water (This reagent is optional for use with this practice). See Section 8.



(a) Rounded (b) Angular

(c) Subrounded (d) Subangular

FIG. 3 Typical Angularity of Bulky Grains

8. Safety Precautions

8.1 When preparing the dilute HCl solution of one part concentrated hydrochloric acid (10 *N*) to three parts of distilled water, slowly add acid into water following necessary safety precautions. Handle with caution and store safely. If solution comes into contact with the skin, rinse thoroughly with water.

8.2 **Caution**—Do not add water to acid.

9. Sampling

9.1 The sample shall be considered to be representative of the stratum from which it was obtained by an appropriate, accepted, or standard procedure.

NOTE 5—Preferably, the sampling procedure should be identified as having been conducted in accordance with Practices D 1452, D 1587, or D 2113, or Method D 1586.

9.2 The sample shall be carefully identified as to origin.

NOTE 6—Remarks as to the origin may take the form of a boring number and sample number in conjunction with a job number, a geologic stratum, a pedologic horizon or a location description with respect to a permanent monument, a grid system or a station number and offset with respect to a stated centerline and a depth or elevation.

9.3 For accurate description and identification, the minimum amount of the specimen to be examined shall be in accordance with the following schedule:

Maximum Particle Size, Sieve Opening	Minimum Specimen Size, Dry Weight
4.75 mm (No. 4)	100 g (0..5 lb)
9.5 mm (⅜ in.)	200 g (0.5 lb)
19.0 mm (¾ in.)	1.0 kg (2.2 lb)
38.1 mm (1½ in.)	8.0 kg (18 lb)
75.0 mm (3 in.)	60.0 kg (132 lb)

NOTE 7—If random isolated particles are encountered that are significantly larger than the particles in the soil matrix, the soil matrix can be accurately described and identified in accordance with the preceeding schedule.

9.4 If the field sample or specimen being examined is smaller than the minimum recommended amount, the report shall include an appropriate remark.

TABLE 1 Criteria for Describing Angularity of Coarse-Grained Particles (see Fig. 3)

Description	Criteria
Angular	Particles have sharp edges and relatively plane sides with unpolished surfaces
Subangular	Particles are similar to angular description but have rounded edges
Subrounded	Particles have nearly plane sides but have well-rounded corners and edges
Rounded	Particles have smoothly curved sides and no edges

10. Descriptive Information for Soils

10.1 *Angularity*—Describe the angularity of the sand (coarse sizes only), gravel, cobbles, and boulders, as angular, subangular, subrounded, or rounded in accordance with the criteria in Table 1 and Fig. 3. A range of angularity may be stated, such as: subrounded to rounded.

10.2 *Shape*—Describe the shape of the gravel, cobbles, and boulders as flat, elongated, or flat and elongated if they meet the criteria in Table 2 and Fig. 4. Otherwise, do not mention the shape. Indicate the fraction of the particles that have the shape, such as: one-third of the gravel particles are flat.

10.3 *Color*—Describe the color. Color is an important property in identifying organic soils, and within a given

TABLE 2 Criteria for Describing Particle Shape (see Fig. 4)

The particle shape shall be described as follows where length, width, and thickness refer to the greatest, intermediate, and least dimensions of a [illegible], respectively.

Flat	Particles with width/thickness > 3
Elongated	Particles with length/width > 3
Flat and elongated	Particles meet criteria for both flat and elongated

000331

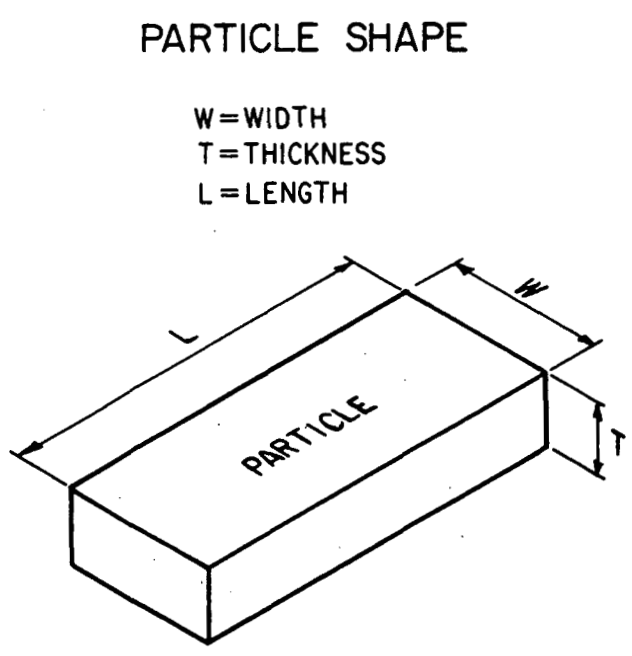


FIG. 4 Criteria for Particle Shape

TABLE 3 Criteria for Describing Moisture Condition

Description	Criteria
Dry	Absence of moisture, dusty, dry to the touch
Moist	Damp but no visible water
Wet	Visible free water, usually soil is below water table

locality it may also be useful in identifying materials of similar geologic origin. If the sample contains layers or patches of varying colors, this shall be noted and all representative colors shall be described. The color shall be described for moist samples. If the color represents a dry condition, this shall be stated in the report.

10.4 *Odor*—Describe the odor if organic or unusual. Soils containing a significant amount of organic material usually have a distinctive odor of decaying vegetation. This is especially apparent in fresh samples, but if the samples are dried, the odor may often be revived by heating a moistened sample. If the odor is unusual (petroleum product, chemical, and the like), it shall be described.

10.5 *Moisture Condition*—Describe the moisture condition as dry, moist, or wet, in accordance with the criteria in Table 3.

10.6 *HCl Reaction*—Describe the reaction with HCl as none, weak, or strong, in accordance with the critera in Table 4. Since calcium carbonate is a common cementing agent, a report of its presence on the basis of the reaction with dilute hydrochloric acid is important.

TABLE 4 Criteria for Describing the Reaction With HCl

Description	Criteria
None	No visible reaction
Weak	Some reaction, with bubbles forming slowly
Strong	Violent reaction, with bubbles forming immediately

TABLE 5 Criteria for Describing Consistency

Description	Criteria
Very soft	Thumb will penetrate soil more than 1 in. (25 mm)
Soft	Thumb will penetrate soil about 1 in. (25 mm)
Firm	Thumb will indent soil about ¼ in. (6 mm)
Hard	Thumb will not indent soil but readily indented with thumbnail
Very hard	Thumbnail will not indent soil

10.7 *Consistency*—For intact fine-grained soil, describe the consistency as very soft, soft, firm, hard, or very hard, in accordance with the criteria in Table 5. This observation is inappropriate for soils with significant amounts of gravel.

10.8 *Cementation*—Describe the cementation of intact coarse-grained soils as weak, moderate, or strong, in accordance with the criteria in Table 6.

10.9 *Structure*—Describe the structure of intact soils in accordance with the criteria in Table 7.

10.10 *Range of Particle Sizes*—For gravel and sand components, describe the range of particle sizes within each component as defined in 3.1.2 and 3.1.6. For example, about 20 % fine to coarse gravel, about 40 % fine to coarse sand.

10.11 *Maximum Particle Size*—Describe the maximum particle size found in the sample in accordance with the following information:

10.11.1 *Sand Size*—If the maximum particle size is a sand size, describe as fine, medium, or coarse as defined in 3.1.6. For example: maximum particle size, medium sand.

10.11.2 *Gravel Size*—If the maximum particle size is a gravel size, describe the maximum particle size as the smallest sieve opening that the particle will pass. For example, maximum particle size, 1½ in. (will pass a 1½-in. square opening but not a ¾-in. square opening).

10.11.3 *Cobble or Boulder Size*—If the maximum particle size is a cobble or boulder size, describe the maximum dimension of the largest particle. For example: maximum dimension, 18 in. (450 mm).

10.12 *Hardness*—Describe the hardness of coarse sand and larger particles as hard, or state what happens when the particles are hit by a hammer, for example, gravel-size particles fracture with considerable hammer blow, some gravel-size particles crumble with hammer blow. "Hard" means particles do not crack, fracture, or crumble under a hammer blow.

10.13 Additional comments shall be noted, such as the presence of roots or root holes, difficulty in drilling or augering hole, caving of trench or hole, or the presence of mica.

10.14 A local or commercial name or a geologic interpre-

TABLE 6 Criteria for Describing Cementation

Description	Criteria
Weak	Crumbles or breaks with handling or little finger pressure
Moderate	Crumbles or breaks with considerable finger pressure
Strong	Will not crumble or break with finger pressure

000332

TABLE 7 Criteria for Describing Structure

Description	Criteria
Stratified	Alternating layers of varying material or color with layers at least 6 mm thick; note thickness
Laminated	Alternating layers of varying material or color with the layers less than 6 mm thick; note thickness
Fissured	Breaks along definite planes of fracture with little resistance to fracturing
Slickensided	Fracture planes appear polished or glossy, sometimes striated
Blocky	Cohesive soil that can be broken down into small angular lumps which resist further breakdown
Lensed	Inclusion of small pockets of different soils, such as small lenses of sand scattered through a mass of clay; note thickness
Homogeneous	Same color and appearance throughout

tation of the soil, or both, may be added if identified as such.

10.15 A classification or identification of the soil in accordance with other classification systems may be added if identified as such.

11. Identification of Peat

11.1 A sample composed primarily of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition that has a fibrous to amorphous texture, usually a dark brown to black color, and an organic odor, shall be designated as a highly organic soil and shall be identified as peat, PT, and not subjected to the identification procedures described hereafter.

12. Preparation for Identification

12.1 The soil identification portion of this practice is based on the portion of the soil sample that will pass a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve. The larger than 3-in. (75-mm) particles must be removed, manually, for a loose sample, or mentally, for an intact sample before classifying the soil.

12.2 Estimate and note the percentage of cobbles and the percentage of boulders. Performed visually, these estimates will be on the basis of volume percentage.

NOTE 8—Since the percentages of the particle-size distribution in Test Method D 2487 are by dry weight, and the estimates of percentages for gravel, sand, and fines in this practice are by dry weight, it is recommended that the report state that the percentages of cobbles and boulders are by volume.

12.3 Of the fraction of the soil smaller than 3 in. (75 mm), estimate and note the percentage, by dry weight, of the gravel, sand, and fines (see Appendix X4 for suggested procedures).

NOTE 9—Since the particle-size components appear visually on the basis of volume, considerable experience is required to estimate the percentages on the basis of dry weight. Frequent comparisons with laboratory particle-size analyses should be made.

12.3.1 The percentages shall be estimated to the closest 5 %. The percentages of gravel, sand, and fines must add up to 100 %.

12.3.2 If one of the components is present but not in sufficient quantity to be considered 5 % of the smaller than 3-in. (75-mm) portion, indicate its presence by the term *trace*, for example, trace of fines. A trace is not to be considered in the total of 100 % for the components.

13. Preliminary Identification

13.1 The soil is *fine grained* if it contains 50 % or more fines. Follow the procedures for identifying fine-grained soils of Section 14.

13.2 The soil is *coarse grained* if it contains less than 50 % fines. Follow the procedures for identifying coarse-grained soils of Section 15.

14. Procedure for Identifying Fine-Grained Soils

14.1 Select a representative sample of the material for examination. Remove particles larger than the No. 40 sieve (medium sand and larger) until a specimen equivalent to about a handful of material is available. Use this specimen for performing the dry strength, dilatancy, and toughness tests.

14.2 *Dry Strength:*

14.2.1 From the specimen, select enough material to mold into a ball about 1 in. (25 mm) in diameter. Mold the material until it has the consistency of putty, adding water if necessary.

14.2.2 From the molded material, make at least three test specimens. A test specimen shall be a ball of material about ½ in. (12 mm) in diameter. Allow the test specimens to dry in air, or sun, or by artificial means, as long as the temperature does not exceed 60°C.

14.2.3 If the test specimen contains natural dry lumps, those that are about ½ in. (12 mm) in diameter may be used in place of the molded balls.

NOTE 10—The process of molding and drying usually produces higher strengths than are found in natural dry lumps of soil.

14.2.4 Test the strength of the dry balls or lumps by crushing between the fingers. Note the strength as none, low, medium, high, or very high in accorance with the criteria in Table 8. If natural dry lumps are used, do not use the result of any of the lumps that are found to contain particles of coarse sand.

14.2.5 The presence of high-strength water-soluble cementing materials, such as calcium carbonate, may cause exceptionally high dry strengths. The presence of calcium carbonate can usually be detected from the intensity of the reaction with dilute hydrochloric acid (see 10.6).

14.3 *Dilatancy:*

14.3.1 From the specimen, select enough material to mold into a ball about ½ in. (12 mm) in diameter. Mold the material, adding water if necessary, until it has a soft, but not sticky, consistency.

14.3.2 Smooth the soil ball in the palm of one hand with the blade of a knife or small spatula. Shake horizontally, striking the side of the hand vigorously against the other hand several times. Note the reaction of water appearing on

TABLE 8 Criteria for Describing Dry Strength

Description	Criteria
None	The dry specimen crumbles into powder with mere pressure of handling
Low	The dry specimen crumbles into powder with some finger pressure
Medium	The dry specimen breaks into pieces or crumbles with considerable finger pressure
High	The dry specimen cannot be broken with finger pressure. Specimen will break into pieces between thumb and a hard surface
Very high	The dry specimen cannot be broken between the thumb and a hard surface

000333

344

TABLE 9 Criteria for Describing Dilatancy

Description	Criteria
None	No visible change in the specimen
Slow	Water appears slowly on the surface of the specimen during shaking and does not disappear or disappears slowly upon squeezing
Rapid	Water appears quickly on the surface of the specimen during shaking and disappears quickly upon squeezing

TABLE 10 Criteria for Describing Toughness

Description	Criteria
Low	Only slight pressure is required to roll the thread near the plastic limit. The thread and the lump are weak and soft
Medium	Medium pressure is required to roll the thread to near the plastic limit. The thread and the lump have medium stiffness
High	Considerable pressure is required to roll the thread to near the plastic limit. The thread and the lump have very high stiffness

the surface of the soil. Squeeze the sample by closing the hand or pinching the soil between the fingers, and note the reaction as none, slow, or rapid in accordance with the criteria in Table 9. The reaction is the speed with which water appears while shaking, and disappears while squeezing.

14.4 *Toughness:*

14.4.1 Following the completion of the dilatancy test, the test specimen is shaped into an elongated pat and rolled by hand on a smooth surface or between the palms into a thread about ⅛ in. (3 mm) in diameter. (If the sample is too wet to roll easily, it should be spread into a thin layer and allowed to lose some water by evaporation.) Fold the sample threads and reroll repeatedly until the thread crumbles at a diameter of about ⅛ in. The thread will crumble at a diameter of ⅛ in. when the soil is near the plastic limit. Note the pressure required to roll the thread near the plastic limit. Also, note the strength of the thread. After the thread crumbles, the pieces should be lumped together and kneaded until the lump crumbles. Note the toughness of the material during kneading.

14.4.2 Describe the toughness of the thread and lump as low, medium, or high in accordance with the criteria in Table 10.

14.5 *Plasticity*—On the basis of observations made during the toughness test, describe the plasticity of the material in accordance with the criteria given in Table 11.

14.6 Decide whether the soil is an *inorganic* or an *organic* fine-grained soil (see 14.8). If inorganic, follow the steps given in 14.7.

14.7 *Identification of Inorganic Fine-Grained Soils:*

TABLE 11 Criteria for Describing Plasticity

Description	Criteria
Nonplastic	A ⅛-in. (3-mm) thread cannot be rolled at any water content
Low	The thread can barely be rolled and the lump cannot be formed when drier than the plastic limit
Medium	The thread is easy to roll and not much time is required to reach the plastic limit. The thread cannot be rerolled after reaching the plastic limit. The lump crumbles when drier than the plastic limit
High	It takes considerable time rolling and kneading to reach the plastic limit. The thread can be rerolled several times after reaching the plastic limit. The lump can be formed without crumbling when drier than the plastic limit

14.7.1 Identify the soil as a *lean clay*, CL, if the soil has medium to high dry strength, no or slow dilatancy, and medium toughness and plasticity (see Table 12).

14.7.2 Identify the soil as a *fat clay*, CH, if the soil has high to very high dry strength, no dilatancy, and high toughness and plasticity (see Table 12).

14.7.3 Identify the soil as a *silt*, ML, if the soil has no to low dry strength, slow to rapid dilatancy, and low toughness and plasticity, or is nonplastic (see Table 12).

14.7.4 Identify the soil as an *elastic silt*, MH, if the soil has low to medium dry strength, no to slow dilatancy, and low to medium toughness and plasticity (see Table 12).

NOTE 11—These properties are similar to those for a lean clay. However, the silt will dry quickly on the hand and have a smooth, silky feel when dry. Some soils that would classify as MH in accordance with the criteria in Test Method D 2487 are visually difficult to distinguish from lean clays, CL. It may be necessary to perform laboratory testing for proper identification.

14.8 *Identification of Organic Fine-Grained Soils:*

14.8.1 Identify the soil as an *organic soil*, OL/OH, if the soil contains enough organic particles to influence the soil properties. Organic soils usually have a dark brown to black color and may have an organic odor. Often, organic soils will change color, for example, black to brown, when exposed to the air. Some organic soils will lighten in color significantly when air dried. Organic soils normally will not have a high toughness or plasticity. The thread for the toughness test will be spongy.

NOTE 12—In some cases, through practice and experience, it may be possible to further identify the organic soils as organic silts or organic clays, OL or OH. Correlations between the dilatancy, dry strength, toughness tests, and laboratory tests can be made to identify organic soils in certain deposits of similar materials of known geologic origin.

14.9 If the soil is estimated to have 15 to 25 % sand or gravel, or both, the words "with sand" or "with gravel" (whichever is more predominant) shall be added to the group name. For example: "lean clay with sand, CL" or "silt with gravel, ML" (see Figs. 1a and 1b). If the percentage of sand is equal to the percentage of gravel, use "with sand."

14.10 If the soil is estimated to have 30 % or more sand or gravel, or both, the words "sandy" or "gravelly" shall be added to the group name. Add the word "sandy" if there appears to be more sand than gravel. Add the word "gravelly" if there appears to be more gravel than sand. For example: "sandy lean clay, CL", "gravelly fat clay, CH", or "sandy silt, ML" (see Figs. 1a and 1b). If the percentage of sand is equal to the percent of gravel, use "sandy."

15. Procedure for Identifying Coarse-Grained Soils (Contains less than 50 % fines)

15.1 The soil is a *gravel* if the percentage of gravel is estimated to be more than the percentage of sand.

TABLE 12 Identification of Inorganic Fine-Grained Soils from Manual Tests

Soil Symbol	Dry Strength	Dilatancy	Toughness
ML	None to low	Slow to rapid	Low or thread cannot be formed
CL	Medium to high	None to slow	Medium
MH	Low to medium	None to slow	Low to medium
CH	High to very high	None	High

000334

15.2 The soil is a *sand* if the percentage of gravel is estimated to be equal to or less than the percentage of sand.

15.3 The soil is a *clean gravel* or *clean sand* if the percentage of fines is estimated to be 5 % or less.

15.3.1 Identify the soil as a *well-graded gravel*, GW, or as a *well-graded sand*, SW, if it has a wide range of particle sizes and substantial amounts of the intermediate particle sizes.

15.3.2 Identify the soil as a *poorly graded gravel*, GP, or as a *poorly graded sand*, SP, if it consists predominantly of one size (uniformly graded), or it has a wide range of sizes with some intermediate sizes obviously missing (gap or skip graded).

15.4 The soil is either a *gravel with fines* or a *sand with fines* if the percentage of fines is estimated to be 15 % or more.

15.4.1 Identify the soil as a *clayey gravel*, GC, or a *clayey sand*, SC, if the fines are clayey as determined by the procedures in Section 14.

15.4.2 Identify the soil as a *silty gravel*, GM, or a *silty sand*, SM, if the fines are silty as determined by the procedures in Section 14.

15.5 If the soil is estimated to contain 10 % fines, give the soil a dual identification using two group symbols.

15.5.1 The first group symbol shall correspond to a clean gravel or sand (GW, GP, SW, SP) and the second symbol shall correspond to a gravel or sand with fines (GC, GM, SC, SM).

15.5.2 The group name shall correspond to the first group symbol plus the words "with clay" or "with silt" to indicate the plasticity characteristics of the fines. For example: 'well-graded gravel with clay, GW-GC" or "poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SM" (see Fig. 2).

15.6 If the specimen is predominantly sand or gravel but contains an estimated 15 % or more of the other coarse-grained constituent, the words "with gravel" or "with sand" shall be added to the group name. For example: "poorly graded gravel with sand, GP" or "clayey sand with gravel, SC" (see Fig. 2).

15.7 If the field sample contains any cobbles or boulders, or both, the words "with cobbles" or "with cobbles and boulders" shall be added to the group name. For example: "silty gravel with cobbles, GM."

16. Report

16.1 The report shall include the information as to origin, and the items indicated in Table 13.

NOTE 13—*Example: Clayey Gravel with Sand and Cobbles, GC*—About 50 % fine to coarse, subrounded to subangular gravel; about 30 % fine to coarse, subrounded sand; about 20 % fines with medium plasticity, high dry strength, no dilatancy, medium toughness; weak reaction with HCl; original field sample had about 5 % (by volume) subrounded cobbles, maximum dimension, 150 mm.

In-Place Conditions—Firm, homogeneous, dry, brown

Geologic Interpretation—Alluvial fan

NOTE 14—Other examples of soil descriptions and identification are given in Appendixes X1 and X2.

NOTE 15—If desired, the percentages of gravel, sand, and fines may be stated in terms indicating a range of percentages, as follows:

Trace—Particles are present but estimated to be less than 5 %

Few—5 to 10 %

Little—15 to 25 %

Some—30 to 45 %

Mostly—50 to 100 %

TABLE 13 Checklist for Description of Soils

1. Group name
2. Group symbol
3. Percent of cobbles or boulders, or both (by volume)
4. Percent of gravel, sand, or fines, or all three (by dry weight)
5. Particle-size range:
   Gravel—fine, coarse
   Sand—fine, medium, coarse
6. Particle angularity: angular, subangular, subrounded, rounded
7. Particle shape: (if appropriate) flat, elongated, flat and elongated
8. Maximum particle size or dimension
9. Hardness of coarse sand and larger particles
10. Plasticity of fines: nonplastic, low, medium, high
11. Dry strength: none, low, medium, high, very high
12. Dilatancy: none, slow, rapid
13. Toughness: low, medium, high
14. Color (in moist condition)
15. Odor (mention only if organic or unusual)
16. Moisture: dry, moist, wet
17. Reaction with HCl: none, weak, strong

For intact samples:

18. Consistency (fine-grained soils only): very soft, soft, firm, hard, very hard
19. Structure: stratified, laminated, fissured, slickensided, lensed, homogeneous
20. Cementation: weak, moderate, strong
21. Local name
22. Geologic interpretation
23. Additional comments: presence of roots or root holes, presence of mica, gypsum, etc., surface coatings on coarse-grained particles, caving or sloughing of auger hole or trench sides; difficulty in augering or excavating, etc.

16.2 If, in the soil description, the soil is identified using a classification group symbol and name as described in Test Method D 2487, it must be distinctly and clearly stated in log forms, summary tables, reports, and the like, that the symbol and name are based on visual-manual procedures.

17. Precision and Bias

17.1 This practice provides qualitative information only, therefore, a precision and bias statement is not applicable.

18. Keywords

18.1 classification; clay; gravel; organic soils; sand; silt; soil classification; soil description; visual classification

000335

APPENDIXES

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. EXAMPLES OF VISUAL SOIL DESCRIPTIONS

X1.1 The following examples show how the information required in 16.1 can be reported. The information that is included in descriptions should be based on individual circumstances and need.

X1.1.1 *Well-Graded Gravel with Sand (GW)*—About 75 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular gravel; about 25 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular sand; trace of fines; maximum size, 75 mm, brown, dry; no reaction with HCl.

X1.1.2 *Silty Sand with Gravel (SM)*—About 60 % predominantly fine sand; about 25 % silty fines with low plasticity, low dry strength, rapid dilatancy, and low toughness; about 15 % fine, hard, subrounded gravel, a few gravel-size particles fractured with hammer blow; maximum size, 25 mm; no reaction with HCl (Note—Field sample size smaller than recommended).

In-Place Conditions—Firm, stratified and contains lenses of silt 1 to 2 in. (25 to 50 mm) thick, moist, brown to gray; in-place density 106 lb/ft^3; in-place moisture 9 %.

X1.1.3 *Organic Soil (OL/OH)*—About 100 % fines with low plasticity, slow dilatancy, low dry strength, and low toughness; wet, dark brown, organic odor; weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.4 *Silty Sand with Organic Fines (SM)*—About 75 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular reddish sand; about 25 % organic and silty dark brown nonplastic fines with no dry strength and slow dilatancy; wet; maximum size, coarse sand; weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.5 *Poorly Graded Gravel with Silt, Sand, Cobbles and Boulders (GP-GM)*—About 75 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded to subangular gravel; about 15 % fine, hard, subrounded to subangular sand; about 10 % silty nonplastic fines; moist, brown; no reaction with HCl; original field sample had about 5 % (by volume) hard, subrounded cobbles and a trace of hard, subrounded boulders, with a maximum dimension of 18 in. (450 mm).

X2. USING THE IDENTIFICATION PROCEDURE AS A DESCRIPTIVE SYSTEM FOR SHALE, CLAYSTONE, SHELLS, SLAG, CRUSHED ROCK, AND THE LIKE

X2.1 The identification procedure may be used as a descriptive system applied to materials that exist in-situ as shale, claystone, sandstone, siltstone, mudstone, etc., but convert to soils after field or laboratory processing (crushing, slaking, and the like).

X2.2 Materials such as shells, crushed rock, slag, and the like, should be identified as such. However, the procedures used in this practice for describing the particle size and plasticity characteristics may be used in the description of the material. If desired, an identification using a group name and symbol according to this practice may be assigned to aid in describing the material.

X2.3 The group symbol(s) and group names should be placed in quotation marks or noted with some type of distinguishing symbol. See examples.

X2.4 Examples of how group names and symbols can be incororated into a descriptive system for materials that are not naturally occurring soils are as follows:

X2.4.1 *Shale Chunks*—Retrieved as 2 to 4-in. (50 to 100-mm) pieces of shale from power auger hole, dry, brown, no reaction with HCl. After slaking in water for 24 h, material identified as "Sandy Lean Clay (CL)"; about 60 % fines with medium plasticity, high dry strength, no dilatancy, and medium toughness; about 35 % fine to medium, hard sand; about 5 % gravel-size pieces of shale.

X2.4.2 *Crushed Sandstone*—Product of commercial crushing operation; "Poorly Graded Sand with Silt (SP-SM)"; about 90 % fine to medium sand; about 10 % nonplastic fines; dry, reddish-brown, strong reaction with HCl.

X2.4.3 *Broken Shells*—About 60 % gravel-size broken shells; about 30 % sand and sand-size shell pieces; about 10 % fines; "Poorly Graded Gravel with Sand (GP)."

X2.4.4 *Crushed Rock*—Processed from gravel and cobbles in Pit No. 7; "Poorly Graded Gravel (GP)"; about 90 % fine, hard, angular gravel-size particles; about 10 % coarse, hard, angular sand-size particles; dry, tan; no reaction with HCl.

X3. SUGGESTED PROCEDURE FOR USING A BORDERLINE SYMBOL FOR SOILS WITH TWO POSSIBLE IDENTIFICATIONS.

X3.1 Since this practice is based on estimates of particle size distribution and plasticity characteristics, it may be difficult to clearly identify the soil as belonging to one category. To indicate that the soil may fall into one of two possible basic groups, a borderline symbol may be used with the two symbols separated by a slash. For example: SC/CL or CL/CH.

X3.1.1 A borderline symbol may be used when the

000336

percentage of fines is estimated to be between 45 and 55 %. One symbol should be for a coarse-grained soil with fines and the other for a fine-grained soil. For example: GM/ML or CL/SC.

X3.1.2 A borderline symbol may be used when the percentage of sand and the percentage of gravel are estimated to be about the same. For example: GP/SP, SC/GC, GM/SM. It is practically impossible to have a soil that would have a borderline symbol of GW/SW.

X3.1.3 A borderline symbol may be used when the soil could be either well graded or poorly graded. For example: GW/GP, SW/SP.

X3.1.4 A borderline symbol may be used when the soil could either be a silt or a clay. For example: CL/ML, CH/MH, SC/SM.

X3.1.5 A borderline symbol may be used when a fine-grained soil has properties that indicate that it is at the boundary between a soil of low compressibility and a soil of high compressibility. For example: CL/CH, MH/ML.

X3.2 The order of the borderline symbols should reflect similarity to surrounding or adjacent soils. For example: soils in a borrow area have been identified as CH. One sample is considered to have a borderline symbol of CL and CH. To show similarity, the borderline symbol should be CH/CL.

X3.3 The group name for a soil with a borderline symbol should be the group name for the first symbol, except for:

CL/CH lean to fat clay
ML/CL clayey silt
CL/ML silty clay

X3.4 The use of a borderline symbol should not be used indiscriminately. Every effort shall be made to first place the soil into a single group.

X4. SUGGESTED PROCEDURES FOR ESTIMATING THE PERCENTAGES OF GRAVEL, SAND, AND FINES IN A SOIL SAMPLE

X4.1 *Jar Method*—The relative percentage of coarse- and fine-grained material may be estimated by thoroughly shaking a mixture of soil and water in a test tube or jar, and then allowing the mixture to settle. The coarse particles will fall to the bottom and successively finer particles will be deposited with increasing time; the sand sizes will fall out of suspension in 20 to 30 s. The relative proportions can be estimated from the relative volume of each size separate. This method should be correlated to particle-size laboratory determinations.

X4.2 *Visual Method*—Mentally visualize the gravel size particles placed in a sack (or other container) or sacks. Then, do the same with the sand size particles and the fines. Then, mentally compare the number of sacks to estimate the percentage of plus No. 4 sieve size and minus No. 4 sieve size present. The percentages of sand and fines in the minus sieve size No. 4 material can then be estimated from the wash test (X4.3).

X4.3 *Wash Test (for relative percentages of sand and fines)*—Select and moisten enough minus No. 4 sieve size material to form a 1-in (25-mm) cube of soil. Cut the cube in half, set one-half to the side, and place the other half in a small dish. Wash and decant the fines out of the material in the dish until the wash water is clear and then compare the two samples and estimate the percentage of sand and fines. Remember that the percentage is based on weight, not volume. However, the volume comparison will provide a reasonable indication of grain size percentages.

X4.3.1 While washing, it may be necessary to break down lumps of fines with the finger to get the correct percentages.

X5. RATIONALE

X5.1 This practice was significantly revised in the D 2488 - 84 version from the previous version D 2488 - 69 (1975). The revisions are documented in the literature.[3]

X5.2 Changes in this version from the previous version include rewording of 1.2.3 to say (disturbed and undisturbed), the addition of 5.7 to refer to the practice for describing frozen soils, and the addition of Appendix X5 on Rationale.

[3] Howard, A. K. "The Revised ASTM Standard on the Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)," *Geotechical Testing Journal*, GTJODJ Vol. 10, No. 4, December 1987.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000337

Designation: D 2573 – 72 (Reapproved 1978)

Standard Test Method for Field Vane Shear Test in Cohesive Soil[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2573: the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This method covers the field vane test in soft, saturated, cohesive soils. Knowledge of the nature of the soil in which each vane test is to be made is necessary for assessment of the applicability and interpretation of the test.

2. Summary of Method

2.1 The vane shear test basically consists of placing a four-bladed vane in the undisturbed soil and rotating it from the surface to determine the torsional force required to cause a cylindrical surface to be sheared by the vane; this force is then converted to a unit shearing resistance of the cylindrical surface. It is of basic importance that the friction of the vane rod and instrument be accounted for; otherwise, the friction would be improperly recorded as soil strength. Friction measurements under no-load conditions (such as the use of a blank stem in place of the vanes, or a vane that allows some free rotation of the rod prior to loading) are satisfactory only provided that the torque is applied by a balanced moment that does not result in a side thrust. As torsional forces become greater during a test, a side thrust in the instrument will result in an increase in friction that is not accounted for by initial no-load readings. Instruments involving side thrust are not recommended. The vane rod may be of sufficient rigidity that it does not twist under full load conditions; otherwise a correction must be made for plotting torque-rotation curves.

3. Apparatus

3.1 The vane shall consist of a four-bladed vane as illustrated in Fig. 1. The height of the vane shall be twice the diameter. Vane dimensions shall be as specified in Table 1. Sizes other than those specified in Table 1 shall be used only with the permission of the engineer in charge of the boring program. The ends of the vane may be tapered (see Fig. 1). The penetrating edge of the vane blade shall be sharpened having an included angle of 90°.

3.2 The vane shall be connected to the surface by means of steel torque rods. These rods shall have sufficient diameter such that their elastic limit is not exceeded when the vane is stressed to its capacity (Note 1). They shall be so coupled that the shoulders of the male and female ends shall meet to prevent any possibility of the coupling tightening when the torque is applied during the test. If a vane housing is used, the torque rods shall be equipped with well-lubricated bearings where they pass through the housing. These bearings shall be provided with seals to prevent soil from entering them. The torque rods shall be guided so as to prevent friction from developing between the torque rods and the walls of casing or boring.

NOTE 1—If torque *versus* rotation curves are to be determined, it is essential that the torque rods be calibrated (prior to use in the field). The amount of rod twist (if any) must be established in degrees per foot per unit torque. This correction becomes progressively more important as the depth of the test increases and the calibration must be made at least to the maximum depth of testing anticipated:

3.3 Torque shall be applied to the torque rods, thence to the vane. The accuracy of the torque reading should be such that it will produce a variation not to exceed ±25 lb/ft^2 (1.20 kPa) shear strength.

3.4 It is preferable to apply torque to the vane with a geared drive. In the absence of a geared drive, it is acceptable to apply the torque directly by hand with a torque wrench or

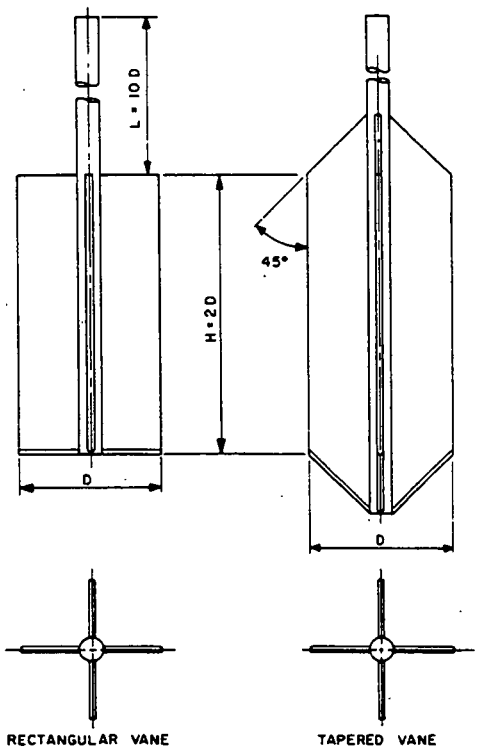


FIG. 1 Geometry of Field Vane

[1] This method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved Jan. 17, 1972. Published February 1972. Originally published as D 2573 – 67 T. Last previous edition D 2573 – 67 T.

000338

TABLE 1 Recommended Dimensions of Field Vanes[A]

Casing Size	Diameter, in. (mm)	Height, in. (mm)	Thickness of Blade, in. (mm)	Diameter of Vane Rod, in. (mm)
AX	1½ (38.1)	3 (76.2)	1/16 (1.6)	½ (12.7)
BX	2 (50.8)	4 (101.6)	1/16 (1.6)	½ (12.7)
NX	2½ (63.5)	5 (127.0)	⅛ (3.2)	½ (12.7)
4 in. (101.6 mm)[B]	3⅝ (92.1)	7¼ (184.1)	⅛ (3.2)	½ (12.7)

[A] Selection of the vane size is directly related to the consistency of the soil being tested, that is, the softer the soil the larger the vane diameter.
[B] Inside diameter.

equivalent. The duration of the test should be controlled by the requirements of 4.3.

4. Procedure

4.1 In the case where a vane housing is used, advance the housing to a depth which is at least five vane housing diameters less than the desired depth of the vane tip. Where no vane housing is used, stop the hole in which the vane is lowered at a depth such that the vane tip may penetrate undisturbed soil for a depth of at least five times the diameter of the hole.

4.2 Advance the vane from the bottom of the hole or the vane housing in a single thrust to the depth at which the test is to be conducted. Take precautions to make sure no torque is applied to the torque rods during the thrust.

4.3 With the vane in position, apply the torque to the vane at a rate which should not exceed 0.1°/s. This generally requires a time to failure of from 2 to 5 min, except in very soft clays where the time to failure may be as much as 10 to 15 min. In stiffer materials, which reach failure at small deformations, it may be desirable to reduce the rate of angular displacement so that a reasonable determination of the stress-strain properties can be obtained. During the rotation of the vane, hold it at a fixed elevation. Record the maximum torque. With apparatus with geared drives, it is desirable to record intermediate values of torque at intervals of 15 s or at lesser frequency if conditions require.

4.4 Following the determination of the maximum torque, rotate the vane rapidly through a minimum of 10 revolutions; the determination of the remoulded strength should be started immediately after completion of rapid rotation and in all cases within 1 min after the remoulding process.

4.5 In the case where soil is in contact with the torque rods, determine the friction between the soil and the rod by means of torque tests conducted on similar rods at similar depths with no vane attached. Conduct the rod friction test at least once on each site; this shall consist of a series of torque tests at varying depths.

4.6 In apparatus in which the torque rod is completely isolated from the soil, conduct a friction test with a blank rod (Note 2) at least once on each site to determine the magnitude of the friction of the bearings. In a properly functioning vane apparatus, this friction should be negligible.

NOTE 2—In some cases it is not necessary to remove the vane for the friction test. As long as the vane is not in contact with the soil, that is, where it is retracted into a casing, the friction measurement is not affected.

4.7 Conduct undisturbed and remoulded vane tests at intervals of not less than 2½ ft (0.76 m) throughout the soil profile when conditions will permit vane testing (Note 3). Do not conduct the vane test in any soil that will permit drainage or dilates during the test period, such as sands or silts or in soils where stones or shells are encountered by the vane in such a manner as to influence the results.

NOTE 3—This spacing may be varied only by the engineer in charge of the boring program.

5. Calculation

5.1 Calculate the shear strength of the soil in the following manner: The turning moment required to shear the soil is as follows:

$$T = s \times K$$

where:
T = torque, lbf·ft (or N·m),
s = shear strength of the clay, lbf/ft^2 (or kPa), and
K = constant, depending on dimensions and shape of the vane, ft^3 (or m^3).

5.2 Assuming the distribution of the shear strength is uniform across the ends of a cylinder and around the perimeter, calculate the value of K as follows:
Inch-Pound Units:

$$K = (\pi/1728) \times (D^2H/2) \times [1 + (D/3H)]$$

Metric Units:

$$K = (\pi/10^6) \times (D^2H/2) \times [1 + D/3H)]$$

where:
D = measured diameter of the vane, in. (or cm), and
H = measured height of vane, in. (or cm).
It is important that these dimensions are checked periodically to ensure the vane is not distorted or worn.

5.3 As the ratio of length to breadth of the vane is 2:1, the value of K may be simplified in terms of the diameter so that it becomes the following:
Inch-Pound Units:

$$K = 0.0021D^3$$

Metric Units:

$$K = 0.00000366D^3$$

5.4 Since the value of s is required, it is more useful to write the equation as follows:

$$s = T \times k$$

where:
k = $1/K$ and
T, the torque, is measured so that s can be calculated.

5.5 For the tapered vane of Fig. 1, the following modified equation may be used for the vane constant:
Inch-Pound Units:

$$K = 1/1728\ [\pi D^3 + 0.37\ (2D^3 - d^3)]$$

Metric Units:

$$K = 1/10^6\ [\pi D^3 + 0.37\ (2D^3 - d^3)]$$

[redacted]od diameter, in. (cm). For a ½-in. (1.27-cm) rod this reduces to:

Inch-Pound Units:

$$K = 0.00225D^3 - 0.00003$$

Metric Units:

$$K = 0.00000388D^3 - 0.00000076$$

6. Report

6.1 For each vane test record the following observations:

6.1.1 Date of the test,

6.1.2 Boring number,

6.1.3 Size and shape of the vane (tapered or rectangular),

6.1.4 Depth of the vane tip,

6.1.5 Depth of the vane tip below the housing or bottom of the hole,

6.1.6 Maximum torque reading, and intermediate readings if required for the undisturbed test,

6.1.7 Time to failure of the test,

6.1.8 Rate of remoulding,

6.1.9 Maximum torque reading for the remoulded test, and

6.1.10 Notes on any deviations from standard test procedure.

6.2 In addition, record the following observations for the boring:

6.2.1 Boring number,

6.2.2 Location,

6.2.3 Log of the soil conditions,

6.2.4 Reference elevation,

6.2.5 Method of making the hole,

6.2.6 Description of the vane, that is, housed or not,

6.2.7 Description of the method of applying and measuring the torque,

6.2.8 Notes on the driving resistance,

6.2.9 Name of the drilling foreman, and

6.2.10 Name of the supervising engineer.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000340

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Test Method for Resistance *R*-Value and Expansion Pressure of Compacted Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2844; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the procedure for testing both treated and untreated laboratory compacted soils or aggregates with the stabilometer and expansion pressure devices to obtain results indicative of performance when placed in the base, subbase, or subgrade of a road subjected to traffic.

1.2 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 670 Practice for Preparing Precision and Bias Statements for Test Methods of Construction Materials[2]

E 4 Practices for Loading Verification of Testing Machines[3]

E 11 Specification for Wire Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[4]

2.2 *AASHTO Documents:*

T 190 Test Method for Resistance R-Value and Expansion Pressure of Compacted Soils[5]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 This test method is used to measure the potential strength of subgrade, subbase, and base course materials for use in road and airfield pavements. The *R*-value is used by some agencies as a criteria for acceptance of aggregates for base course and bituminous courses.

3.2 The expansion pressure testing has been used in conjunction with the *R*-value test to determine cover requirements (thickness) and construction controls to reduce pavement distortion from expansive subgrade soils.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Kneading Compactor*, capable of applying an average contact pressure of 350 ± 16 psi (2410 ± 110 kPa) to the tamper foot shown in Fig. 1 and with provisions for maintaining this pressure during changes in sample height. The load-time trace shall be free of "chatter" or evidence of impact-associated changes in slope. The rise time for application of foot pressure, in the range from 35 to 300 psi (240 to 2070 kPa), shall not be less than 0.07 nor more than 0.20: The dwell time, measured at 300 psi foot pressure, shall not be less than 0.15 nor more than 0.45 s: The pressure-release or removal time shall not be greater than 0.60 s.

4.1.1 The compactor shall include a counter or timer for measuring the number of tamps applied to a specimen and a mold holder, for use in compacting specimens, that rotates equally between tamps to give 5 to 7 tamps per revolution of the mold. The holder shall firmly restrain the mold during compaction. The base of the mold holder shall have a metal plate $3^{31}/_{32}$ in. (100.8 mm) in diameter and 0.5 in. (12.7 mm) high to which is cemented a rubber disk having a diameter of $3^{15}/_{16}$ in. (100.0 mm) and a height of ⅛ in. (3.2 mm). The plate shall be an integral part of the base of the mold holder. The compactor shall also include a trough for feeding the sample into the mold in 20 increments (Fig. 2). Troughs with a semicircular cross section of 6 in.^{3} (39 cm^2) in area and 20 in. (50.8 cm) long have proven satisfactory.

4.2 *Compression Testing Machine*, with a minimum capacity of 10 000 lbf (45 kN) and satisfying the requirements of Practices E 4.

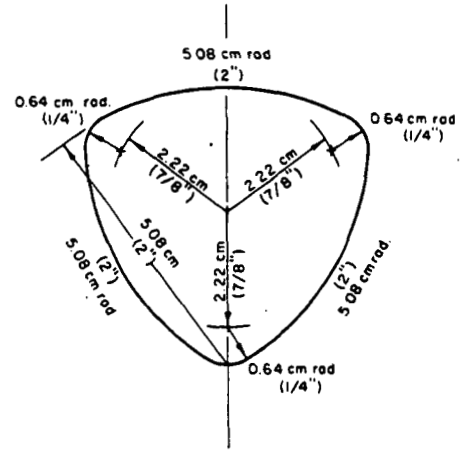


FIG. 1 Tamper Shoe for Kneading Compactor

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.08 on Special and Construction Control Tests.

Current edition approved Oct. 27, 1989. Published December 1989. Originally published as D 2844 – 69. Last previous edition D 2844 – 68 (1975).

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 04.01, 04.02, 04.03, and 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 03.01, 04.02, 07.01, and 08.03.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

[5] Available from American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, 444 N. Capitol St., NW, Suite 225, Washington, DC 20001.

000342

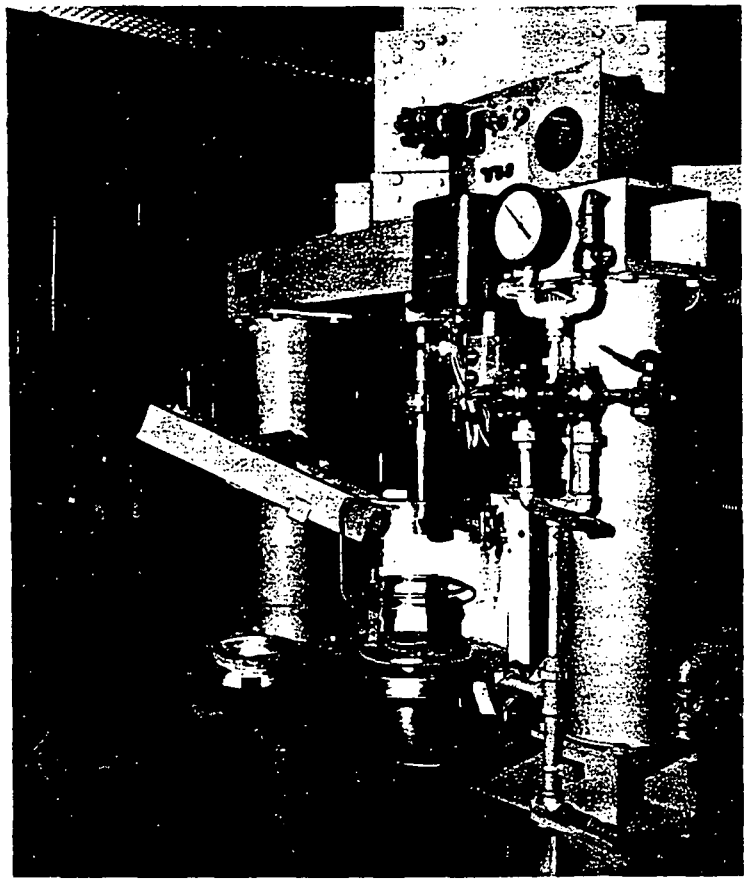


FIG. 2 Compactor with Sample Feed Trough

4.3 *Mold*, 4 ± 0.002 in. (101.6 ± 0.05 mm) inside diameter by 5 ± 0.008 in. (127 ± 0.20 mm) high. (See Fig. 3 for surface roughness.)

4.4 *Rubber Disks*, 3 15/16 in. (100 mm) in diameter by 1/8 in. (3 mm) thick and having a durometer hardness of 60 ± 15.

4.5 *Metal Follower*, solid-walled, metal specimen follower 3.95 ± 0.005 in. (100.33 ± 0.13 mm) in outside diameter by 5 in. (127 mm) long.

4.6 *Exudation Device*, as shown in Fig. 4.[6]

4.7 *Phosphor Bronze Disk*, as shown in Fig. 5.

4.8 *Filter Paper*, 100 mm in diameter and 0.006 in. (1.5 mm) thick, smooth surface, medium filtering speed, medium retention.

4.9 *Filter Paper*, 110 mm in diameter and 0.006 in. (1.5 mm) thick, creped surface, medium-fast filtering speed, medium retention.

4.10 *Expansion-Pressure Device*, with accessories as shown in Fig. 6.[6] There should be at least three of these devices for each sample to be tested within a day's time.

4.11 *Deflection Gage*, with divisions of 0.0001 in. (0.002 mm) and an allen wrench as shown in Fig. 6.

4.12 *Stabilometer*, with accessories, as shown in Figs. 7 and 8.[6]

4.13 *Standard Metal Specimen*, 4 in. (101.60 mm) in outside diameter by 6 in. (152.2 mm) high as shown in Fig. 8.

4.14 *Balance*, 5000-g capacity, accurate to 1 g.

4.15 *Sieves*, 1 in. (25.0 mm), 3/4 in. (19.0 mm) and No. 4 (4.75 mm) conforming to the requirements of Specification E 11.

4.16 *Miscellaneous Equipment*, including mixing pans, spoons, spatulas, and gallon cans with close-fitting lids.

5. Soil Preparation

5.1 Remove any coatings from coarse aggregate and break clay lumps to pass the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

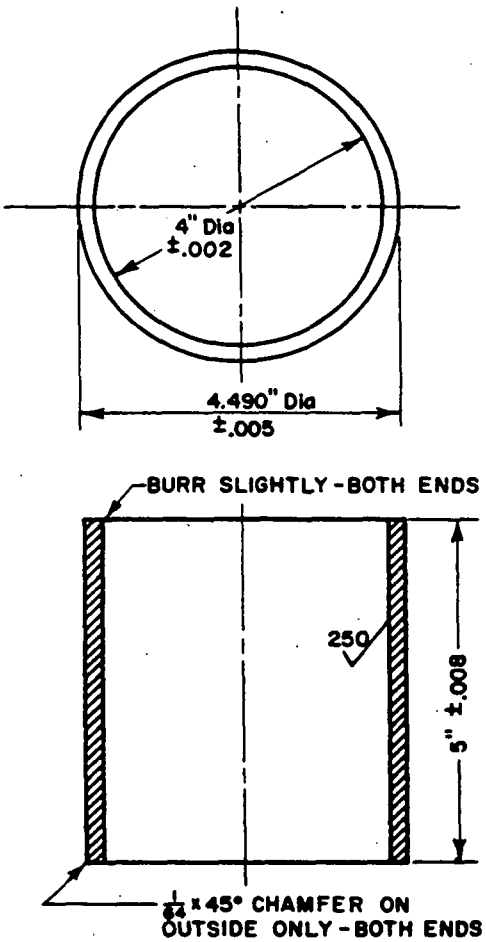
5.2 Adjust the soil graduation when some of the material is retained on the 3/4-in. (19.0-mm) sieve. When 75 % or more passes the 3/4-in. sieve, use that part of the sample passing the 3/4-in. sieve. If less than 75 % of the sample passes the 3/4-in. sieve use that part of the sample passing the 1-in. (25.0-mm) sieve.

6. Preparation of Soil Specimens

6.1 Thoroughly mix four 1200-g samples of soil with the amount of water estimated to equal one half to two thirds of the water required to produce saturation as defined in 6.3 and 6.4. Place the samples in covered containers and allow

[6] Copies of detailed drawings of the apparatus shown in Figs. 4 (1 drawing), 6 (4 drawings), 7 and 8 (7 drawings) are available at a nominal cost from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103. Request Adjunct No. 12-428440-10, 12-428440-20, and 12-428440-30, respectively.

000343



NOTE—Inside roughness is obtained by smooth machining inside to required diameter of 4.000 ± 0.002 in. followed on final operation with a boring tool bit ground to a 90° point with sharp point ground flat measuring 0.001 to 0.003 in. across. Depth of cut is 0.002 in. with 0.010 in. feed using sulfur-based oil coolant.

FIG. 3 Mold

them to stand overnight. Just prior to compaction, mix the samples with the final amount of water required to produce saturation. The first sample is used as a pilot specimen to assist in determining the final amount of water required.

6.2 Weigh out enough material to fabricate a compacted sample 4 in. (101.6 mm) in diameter by 2.5 in. (63 mm) high. Compacted specimens having heights from 2.3 to 2.7 in. (58 to 68 mm) are acceptable. Compact the soil into the mold by means of the kneading compactor as follows: Place the mold in the mold holder which has a rubber disk, $3^{15}/_{16}$ in. (100 mm) in diameter and ⅛ in. (3 mm) thick, cemented to the plate. Adjust the mold for approximately ⅛-in. (3-mm) clearance between the lower edge of the mold and base of the mold holder. With the compactor-foot pressure set at 250 ± 25 psi (1720 ± 170 kPa), feed 3 in. (76 mm) of the soil in the trough into the mold. Feed the balance of the soil into the mold in 20 equal increments with one application of the ram after each increment. Alloy 10 additional tamps to level the soil, then place a rubber disk on top of the specimen. Apply 100 additional tamps with a foot pressure of 350 psi (2410 kPa). Stop compacting the soil at any time

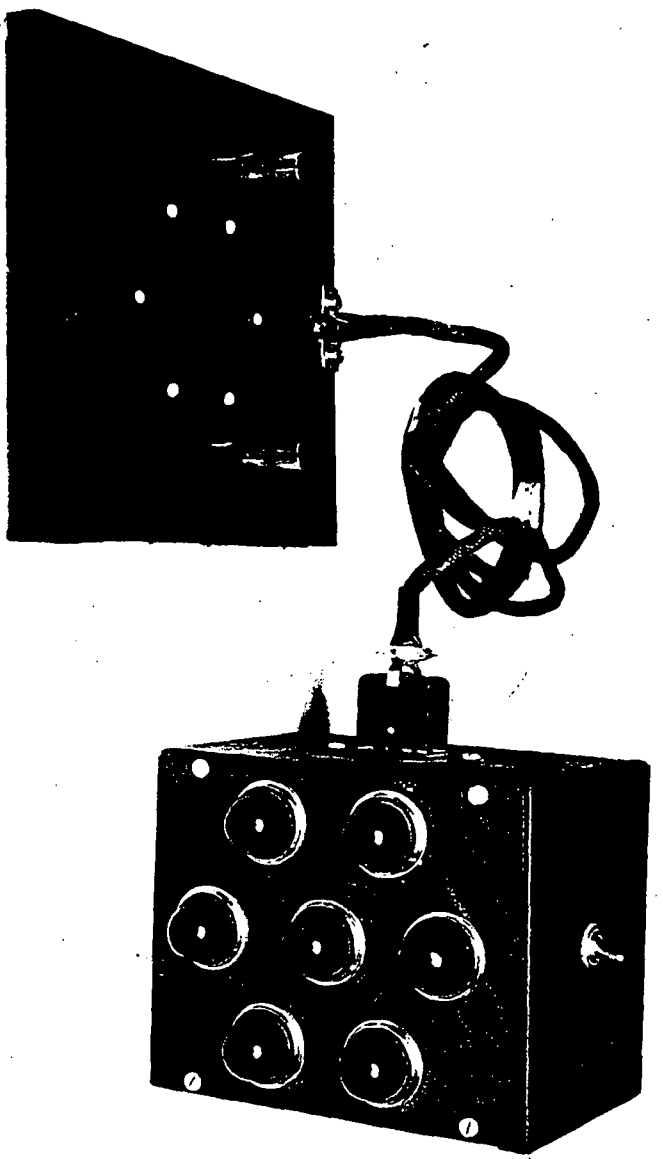


FIG. 4 Exudation-Indicator Device

before 100 tamps if water appears around the bottom of the mold.

NOTE 1—Use lower compaction pressures when necessary to limit penetration of the ram into the soil to not greater than ¼ in. (6 mm).

6.3 Remove the mold containing the compacted specimen from the compactor. Level the tamped surface by hand tamping with a 1.5-in. (38-mm) diameter rod. Place a phosphor-bronze disk on the tamped surface of the soil and place a filter paper on top of the bronze disk. Invert the mold and place it on the exudation device so that the filter paper is on the bottom. Using the compression testing machine, apply a uniformly increasing pressure to the soil at the rate of 2000 lbf (8900 N)/min. Water should be exuded from the soil at 300 psi (2070 kPa) as evidence that enough moisture is present to produce saturation. Stop the loading and record the exudation pressure when either five of the six outer lights

000344

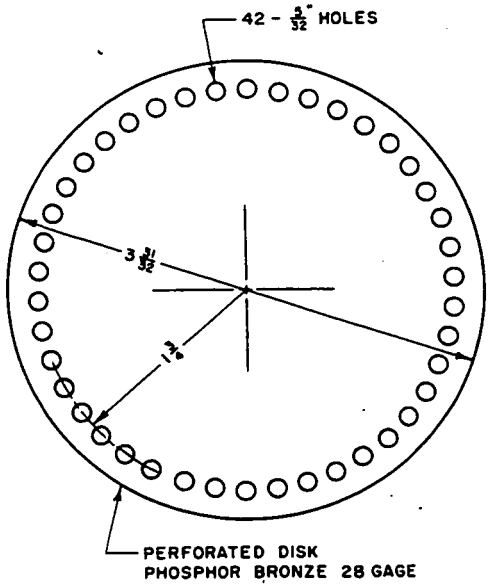


FIG. 5 Phosphor-Bronze Disk

on the exudation pressure device are lighted or three outer lights are lighted and free water is visible around the bottom of the mold. Do not exceed a loading of 800 psi (5520 kPa).

6.4 Mold at least two more specimens with different amounts of moisture so that a range of exudation pressures from 100 to 800 psi (690 to 5520 kPa) (Note 2) is obtained which brackets the 300 psi (2070 kPa) value. For some high volume-change soils, additional specimens having exudation pressures lower than 100 psi may be necessary to obtain expansion pressures that are low enough to provide a suitable range of data for a complete expansion pressure analysis of the soil.

NOTE 2—Occasionally, material from very plastic, clay-test specimens will extrude from under the mold and around the follower ram during the loading operation. If this occurs when the 800-psi (5520-kPa) point is reached and fewer than five lights are lighted, the soil should be reported as less than 5 *R*-value. Coarse granular materials and clean sands may require the use of paper baskets to permit testing.

7. Calibration of Expansion-Pressure Apparatus

7.1 Calibrate the spring-steel bar of the expansion-pressure device (Fig. 6) by applying upward measured loads at the center of the bar and measuring the respective deflections of the bar with the deflection gage.

7.2 The steel spring bar is considered in calibration when the deflections are within the following tolerances:

Applied Load	Dial Reading, in. (mm)
8 (3.75)	0.0021 ± 0.0002 (0.055 ± 0.005)
16 (7.50)	0.0042 ± 0.0002 (0.110 ± 0.005)
24 (11.25)	0.0063 ± 0.0002 (0.165 ± 0.005)
32 (15.00)	0.0084 ± 0.0002 (0.220 ± 0.005)

7.3 If the deflection gage does not check the above readings, loosen the top frame bar and adjust the position of the shims, between the frame and the spring steel bar, until the required readings are obtained.

NOTE 3—Some models of the expansion-pressure apparatus have set screw adjustments in lieu of shims.

8. Expansion-Pressure Testing

8.1 Allow the test specimen to rebound in a covered mold for at least 30 min after determination of the exudation pressure.

8.2 Place deflection gage in position on the expansion-pressure device with the single-bearing end of the gage bas resting on the adjustment ring.

8.3 Using an allen wrench, raise or lower the adjustment plug until the deflection gage is on −1.0010 in. (0.025 mm). The deflection gage will read 0.0090 in. (0.229 mm).

8.4 Place the perforated disk with stem firmly on the face of the compacted specimen in the mold and place the mold in the expansion-pressure device after placing creped surface filter paper on the turntable.

8.5 Seat the perforated disk firmly on the specimen with

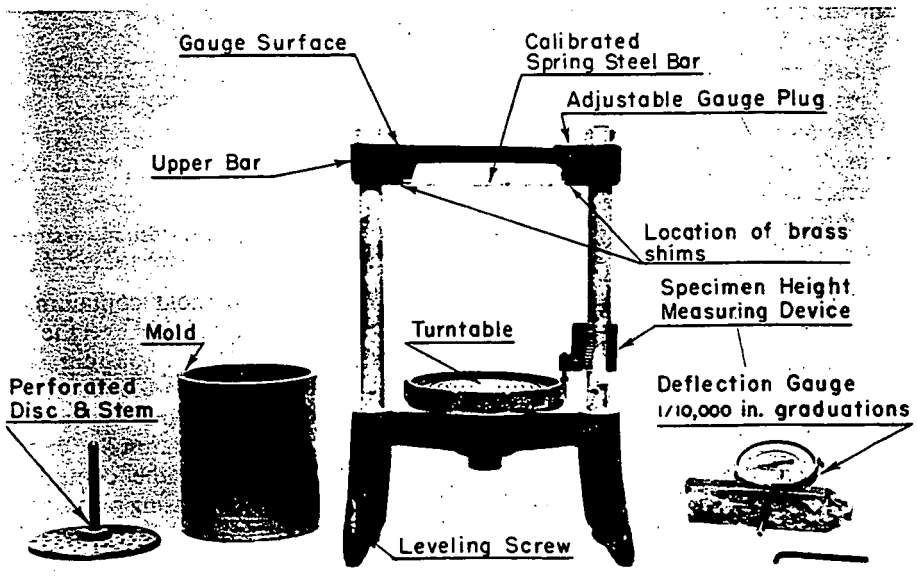


FIG. 6 Expansion-Pressure Device and Accessories

000345

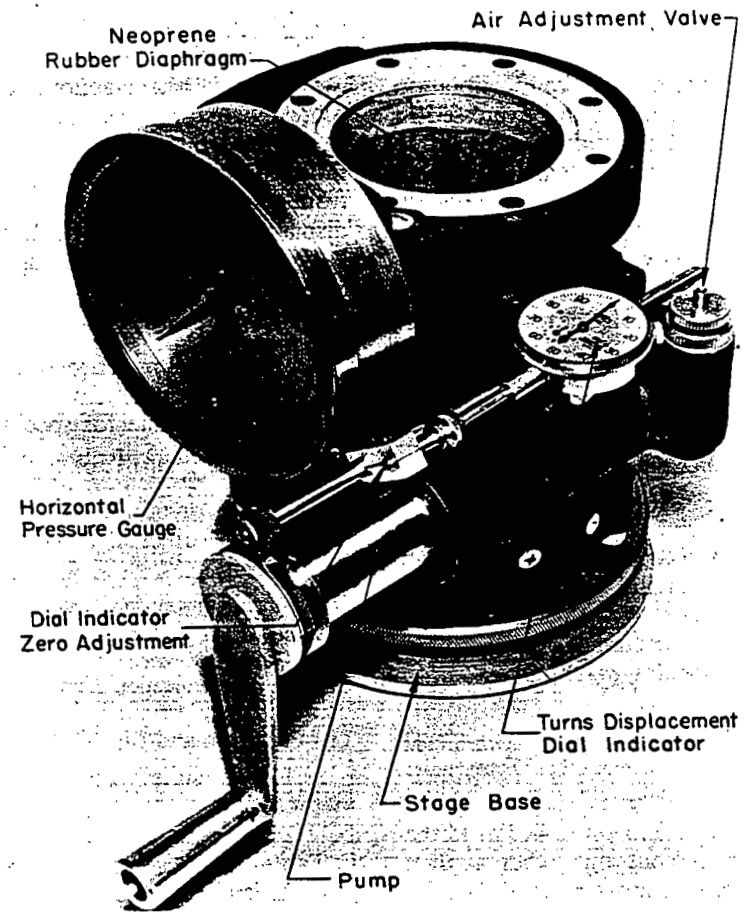


FIG. 7 Hveem Stabilometer.

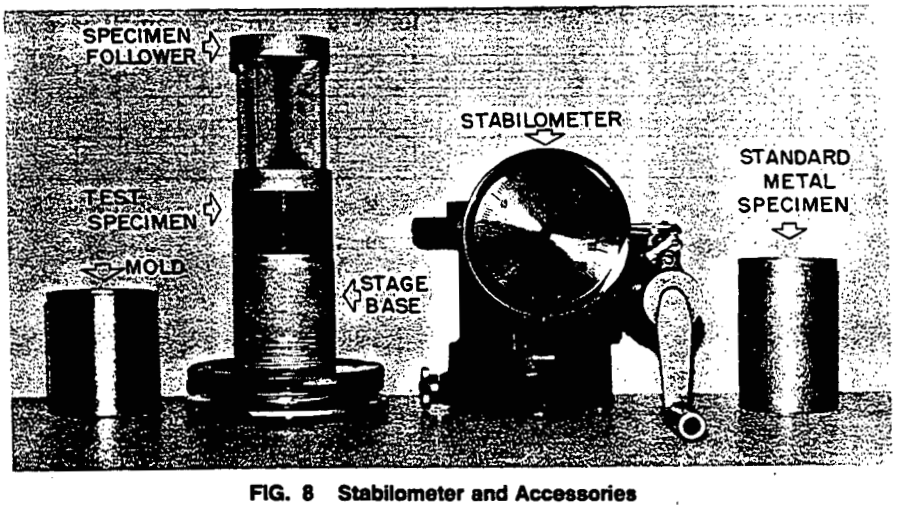


FIG. 8 Stabilometer and Accessories

pressure applied by the fingers. Raise the turntable on the expansion device until the deflection gage reads zero. If the device was properly adjusted, according to 6.3, this will apply the preset surcharge deflection of 0.0010 in. (0.025 mm).

8.6 Put approximately 200 mL of water into the mold and allow pressure from expansion of the specimen to develop for 16 to 24 h.

NOTE 4—Do not leave a test specimen unconfined by the expansion-pressure device while there is free water on top of the specimen in the mold.

8.7 Read the deflection of the calibrated spring steel bar to 0.0001 in. (0.002 mm). When the deflection is greater than 0.0100 in. (0.254 mm), the expansion-pressure device should be recalibrated before using again.

8.8 Determine the expansion pressure, P, as follows:

$$P = kd$$

where:

k = spring constant of steel bar calculated from calibration of the expansion-pressure apparatus and expressed in psi/0.0010 in. (or kPa/0.025 mm), and,

d = deflection shown by deflection gage, in. (mm).

9. Adjustment of Stabilometer

9.1 Adjust the bronze nut on the stabilometer stage base so that the top of the stage is 3½ in. (89 mm) below the bottom of the upper tapered ring of the stabilometer. Perform all tests at this setting.

9.2 Adjust the amount of air in the stabilometer cell so that 2 ± 0.05 turns of the pump handle increase the liquid pressure from 5 to 100 psi (34 to 690 kPa) with the standard metal specimen in the stabilometer chamber.

10. Resistance-Value Testing of Specimens

10.1 After testing for expansion pressure, pour water off the top of the specimen (Note 5) and place the mold with the specimen on top of the stabilometer. Place the follower on top of the specimen and force the specimen from the mold into the stabilometer. Lower the testing machine head until it just engages the follower.

NOTE 5—If all the water has drained through the specimen, add water to the top and allow to stand for 15 min. Pour off any excess water and continue test.

10.2 Apply a horizontal pressure of 5 psi (34 kPa) to the specimen by means of the displacement pump then apply a vertical load using a uniform rate of movement of 0.05 in. (1.3 mm)/min.

10.3 Record the horizontal pressure when the vertical load is 2000 lbf (8900 N) and stop loading. Reduce the vertical load to 1000 lbf (4450 N). With the displacement pump, adjust the horizontal pressure to 5 psi (34 kPa).

NOTE 6—This will result in a further reduction in the applied load, and should be ignored.

10.4 Turn the stabilometer pump handle at approximately two turns per second and measure the number of turns of the pump handle (using the turns-displacement dial indicator on the stabilometer) to raise the horizontal pressure from 5 to 100 psi (34 to 690 kPa). This is the turns displacement, D, of the specimen.

10.5 Determine the resistance, R, as follows:

$$R = 100 - [100/(2.5/D)(160/P_h - 1) + 1]$$

where:

P_h = horizontal pressure, psi, and

D = turns displacement reading.

This is the R-value for specimens with compacted heights from 2.45 to 2.55 in. (62 to 65 mm). If the height of the specimen is between 2.3 and 2.45 in. or 2.55 and 2.7 in. (58 and 62 mm or 65 and 68 mm, respectively) use the chart (Fig. 9) for correcting R-values to a specimen height of 2.5 in. (63 mm).

NOTE 7—If the R-value is desired at a specific exudation pressure, for example, 300 psi (2070 kPa), within the range of pressures measured in tests of the three specimens, it is convenient to construct a graph of R-value versus exudation pressure and interpolate.

11. Precision and Bias

11.1 Bias statements are not applicable to this test method.

11.2 The estimates of precision for this test method listed in Table 1 are based on the analysis of data from 13 pairs of AMRL soil reference samples. Participating laboratories were asked to perform AASHTO Test Method T190, which is equivalent to ASTM Test Method D 2844, at an exudation pressure of 300 psi. More than 100 paired test results from 16 to 23 laboratories were analyzed. Estimates of test precision for R-values greater than 50 have not been developed.

000347

CHART FOR CORRECTING "R" VALUES TO SPECIMEN HEIGHT OF 2.50"

HEIGHT CORRECTION SHOULD BE MADE USING THE CHART BELOW.

NOTE: NO CORRECTION FOR SPECIMEN HEIGHTS BETWEEN 2.45" AND 2.55". INTERPRET R-VALUE CORRECTIONS FOR OTHER HEIGHTS.

EXAMPLE: OVERALL HEIGHT OF 2.65"
R-VALUE (UNCORRECTED) = 50
R-VALUE (CORRECTED) = 54

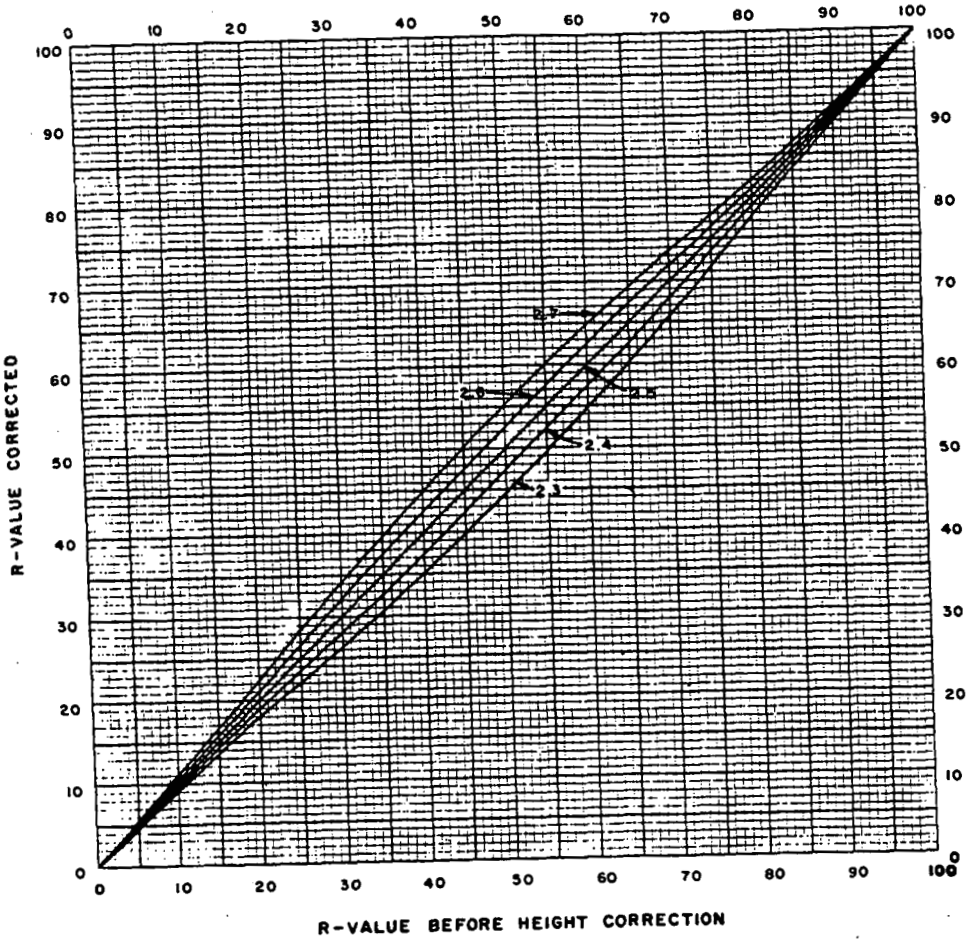


FIG. 9 Height-Correction Chart

TABLE 1 Estimates of Precision[A,B]

	Standard Deviation (1S)	Acceptable Range of Two Results (D2S)
Single-operator precision:		
R-values at 300 psi between 5 and 20	3	8
Single-operator precision:		
R-values at 300 psi between 21 and 50	4	12
Multilaboratory precision:		
R-values at 300 psi between 5 and 20	6	18
Multilaboratory precision:		
R-values at 300 psi between 21 and 50	13	37

[A] These numbers represent the (1S) and (D2S) limits as described in Practice C 670.

[B] Supporting data are available from ASTM Headquarters. Request RR: D18-1000.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee; which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000349

Designation: D 2850 – 87[ε1]

Standard Test Method for Unconsolidated, Undrained Compressive Strength of Cohesive Soils in Triaxial Compression[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2850; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

[ε1] NOTE—Section 11 was added editorially in January 1991.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the unconsolidated, undrained compressive strength (or maximum principal stress difference) of cylindrical specimens of cohesive soils in undisturbed, remolded, or compacted conditions using constant rate of deformation (strain-controlled) application of the axial compression test load and where the specimen is subjected to a confining fluid pressure in a triaxial chamber. No drainage of the specimen is permitted during the test. The test method provides for the measurement of the total stresses applied to the specimen, that is, the stresses are not corrected for pore-water pressure. The total stress is the sum of the effective stress and the pore pressure.

1.2 This test method provides data for determining unconsolidated strength properties and stress-strain relations for [illegible].

NOTE 1—The determination of the unconsolidated, undrained strength of cohesive soils without lateral confinement is covered by Test Methods D 2166.

NOTE 2—This test method does not provide a procedure for back pressure saturation of the test specimens. If back pressure saturation of the specimens is required, the test must be performed utilizing procedures and apparatus similar to those required for a consolidated undrained triaxial test. However, due to consolidation, which could occur during the saturation phase, this modified procedure is not truly unconsolidated. A test method for the consolidated undrained triaxial test is currently under development in Subcommittee D18.05.

NOTE 3—This test method does not include a procedure for obtaining pore pressure measurements. Furthermore, at the rapid strain rates used in this test method such measurements could be inaccurate. If pore pressure measurements are desired, alternative procedures such as the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation Method E-17 can be used.

1.3 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.4 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 422 Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[2]
D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]
D 854 Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[2]
D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]
D 2166 Test Methods for Unconfined Compressive Strength of Cohesive Soil[2]
D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[2]
D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]
D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]
D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]
D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 *triaxial compression test*—a test in which a cylindrical specimen of soil encased in an impervious membrane is subjected to a confining pressure and then loaded axially to failure in compression (as defined in 3.2.1).

3.1.2 *principal stress difference or deviator stress*—the difference between the major and minor principal stresses in a triaxial test.

3.1.2.1 *Discussion*—The principal stress difference or deviator stress is equal to the axial load applied to the specimen divided by the corrected cross-sectional area of the specimen, as prescribed in Section 8. The major principal stress in the specimen is equal to the deviator stress plus the chamber pressure, and the minor principal stress in the specimen is equal to the chamber pressure.

3.2 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *failure*—the failure stresses are taken as the stresses in the specimen corresponding to the maximum principal stress difference (deviator stress) attained or the principal stress difference (deviator stress) at 15 % axial strain, whichever is obtained first during the performance of a test.

3.2.2 *unconsolidated-undrained compressive strength*—

[illegible]his test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil [illegible]ock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.05 on Structural Properties of Soils.

Current edition approved April 24, 1987. Published June 1987. Originally published as D 2850 – 70. Last previous edition D 2850 – 82.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000350

the value of the maximum principal stress difference or deviator stress obtained during the test.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 In this test method, the compressive strength of a soil is determined in terms of the total stress, therefore, the resulting strength depends on the pressure developed in the pore fluid during loading. In this test method, fluid flow is not permitted from or into the soil specimen as the load is applied, therefore the resulting pore pressure, and hence strength, differs from that developed in the case where drainage can occur.

4.2 If the test specimens are 100 % saturated, consolidation cannot occur when the confining pressure is applied nor during the shear portion of the test since drainage is not permitted. Therefore, if several specimens of the same material are tested, and if they are all at approximately the same water content and void ratio when they are tested, they will have approximately the same undrained shear strength. The Mohr failure envelope will usually be a horizontal straight line over the entire range of confining stresses applied to the specimens if the specimens are fully saturated.

4.3 If the test specimens are partially saturated or compacted specimens, where the degree of saturation is less than 100 %, consolidation may occur when the confining pressure is applied and during shear, even though drainage is not permitted. Therefore, if several partially saturated specimens of the same material are tested at different confining stresses, they will not have the same undrained shear strength. Thus, the Mohr failure envelope for unconsolidated undrained triaxial tests on partially saturated soils is usually curved.

4.4 The unconsolidated undrained triaxial strength is applicable to certain design situations in geotechnical engineering practice where the loads are assumed to take place so rapidly that there is insufficient time for the induced pore-water pressure to dissipate and for consolidation to occur during the loading period (that is, drainage does not occur). The unconsolidated undrained triaxial strength is used to determine strengths at the end of construction.

4.5 Compressive strengths determined using this procedure may not apply in cases where the loading conditions in the field differ significantly from those used in this test method.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Axial Loading Device*—The axial compression device may be screw jack driven by an electric motor through a geared transmission, a hydraulic or pneumatic loading device, or any other compression device with sufficient capacity and control to provide the rate of loading prescribed in 7.5. When the loading device is set to advance at a certain rate of strain, the actual rate of strain shall not deviate by more than ±10 %. Vibrations due to the operation of the loading device shall be kept at a minimum.

NOTE 4—A loading device may be said to provide sufficiently small vibrations if there are no visible ripples in a glass of water placed on the loading platen when the device is operating at the speed at which the test is performed.

5.2 *Axial Load-Measuring Device*—The axial load-measuring device shall be a load ring, electronic load cell, hydraulic load cell, or any other load-measuring device capable of the accuracy prescribed in this section and may be a part of the axial loading device. The axial load-measuring device shall be capable of measuring the axial load to an accuracy of 1 % of the estimated axial load at failure.

5.3 *Chamber Pressure-Maintaining and Measurement Device*—The chamber pressure-maintaining and measurement device shall be capable of applying and controlling the chamber pressure to within ±1 % of the applied chamber pressure. This device may consist of a reservoir connected to the triaxial chamber and partially filled with the chamber fluid (usually water), with the upper part of the reservoir connected to a compressed gas supply; the gas pressure being controlled by a pressure regulator and measured by a pressure gage, electronic pressure transducer, or any other device capable of measuring to the prescribed tolerance. However, a hydraulic system pressurized by deadweight acting on a piston or any other pressure-maintaining and measurement device capable of applying and controlling the chamber pressure to the tolerance prescribed in this section may be used.

5.4 *Triaxial Compression Chamber*—An apparatus shall be provided in which the cylindrical specimen, enclosed by a membrane sealed to the specimen cap and base, may be placed and subjected to a constant hydrostatic fluid pressure. The apparatus shall include a bushing and piston, aligned with the axis of the specimen, through which the load from the axial loading device is transmitted to the specimen axially between the specimen cap and base. The bushing and piston shall be designed to minimize friction and lateral thrust to the specimen cap.

5.5 *Specimen Cap and Base*—An impermeable rigid cap and base shall be used to prevent drainage of the specimen. The specimen cap and base shall be constructed of a noncorrosive impermeable material, and each shall have a circular plane surface of contact with the specimen and a circular cross section. The weight of the specimen cap shall produce an axial stress on the specimen of less than 1 kN/m^2. The diameter of the cap and base shall be equal to the initial diameter of the specimen. The specimen base shall be coupled to the triaxial compression chamber so as to prevent lateral motion or tilting and the specimen cap shall be designed to receive the piston such that the piston-to-cap contact area is concentric with the cap. The specimen cap during shear shall not tilt more than 5°. The cylindrical surface of the specimen base and cap that contacts the membrane to form a seal shall be smooth and free of scratches.

NOTE 5—The stress produced by the specimen cap can exceed 1 kN/m^2 provided the test data is corrected for the effects of that stress.

5.6 *Deformation Indicator*—The deformation indicator shall be a dial indicator capable of measuring axial deformation to within 0.03 % of the specimen height and having a travel range of at least 20 % of the initial height of the test specimen, or any other measuring device, such as electronic deformation measuring devices, meeting these requirements of readability and range.

5.7 *Rubber Membranes*—The rubber membrane used to encase the specimen shall provide reliable protection against leakage. Membranes shall be carefully inspected prior to use and if any flaws or pinholes are evident, the membrane shall be discarded. In order to offer minimum restraint to the

000351

ecimen, the unstretched membrane diameter shall be ween 90 and 95 % of that of the specimen. The membrane thickness shall not exceed 1 % of the diameter of the specimen. The membrane shall be sealed to the specimen base and cap by any method that will produce a positive seal. An equation for correcting the principal stress difference (deviator stress) for the effect of the stiffness of the membrane is given in 8.5.

NOTE 6—The membrane is typically sealed using O-rings with silicon grease between the cap and base and the membrane.

5.8 *Sample Extruder*—The sample extruder shall be capable of extruding the soil core from the sampling tube in the same direction of travel in which the sample entered the tube and with minimum disturbance of the sample. If the soil core is not extruded vertically, care should be taken to avoid bending stresses on the core due to gravity. Conditions at the time of sample removal may dictate the direction of removal, but the principal concern is to keep the degree of disturbance minimal.

5.9 *Specimen Size Measurement Devices*—Devices used to measure the height and diameter of the specimen shall be capable of measuring the desired dimension to within 0.1 % of its actual length and shall be constructed such that their use will not disturb the specimen.

5.10 *Timer*—A timing device indicating the elapsed testing time to the nearest 1 s shall be used for establishing the rate of strain application prescribed in 7.5.

5.11 *Balances*—The balance used to weigh specimens ll determine the mass of the specimens to within 0.1 % of total mass.

5.12 *Apparatus for Water Content*, as specified in Method D 2216.

5.13 *Miscellaneous Apparatus*—Specimen trimming and carving tools, membrane and O-ring expanders, compaction apparatus, and data sheets as required.

6. Test Specimens

6.1 *Specimen Size*—Specimens shall have a minimum diameter of 30 mm and the largest particle contained within the test specimen shall be smaller than 1/6 of the specimen diameter. If, after completion of a test, it is found that oversize particles are present, indicate this information in the report of test data under remarks. Determine the average height and diameter of the test specimen using the apparatus specified in 5.9. Take a minimum of three height measurements (120° apart) and at least three diameter measurements at each of the quarter points of the height. The height-to-diameter ratio of the specimen shall be between 2 and 2.5.

NOTE 7—If large soil particles are found in the specimen after testing, a particle-size analysis in accordance with Method D 422 may be performed to confirm the visual observation and the results provided with the test report.

6.2 *Undisturbed Specimens*—Prepare undisturbed specimens from large undisturbed samples or from samples secured in accordance with Practice D 1587 or other acceptable undisturbed tube sampling procedures. Undisturbed samples shall be preserved and transported as outlined for Groups C or D samples in Practices D 4220. Specimens obtained by tube sampling may be tested without trimming, except for the squaring of ends, provided soil characteristics are such that no significant disturbance results from sampling and the specimen is uniformly circular. Handle specimens carefully to minimize disturbance, changes in cross section, or loss of water content. If compression or any type of noticeable disturbance would be caused by the extrusion device, split the sample tube lengthwise or cut it off in small sections to facilitate removal of the specimen with minimum disturbance. Prepare trimmed specimens in an environment where the change in the water content of the soil is minimized (Note 8). Specimens shall be of uniform, circular cross section perpendicular to the axis of the specimen. Where pebbles or crumbling result in excessive irregularity along the outside edges of the specimen or at the ends, pack soil from the trimmings in the irregularities to produce the desired surface. As an alternative, the ends of the specimen may be capped with a minimal thickness of plaster of paris, hydrostone, or similar material. Where soil conditions permit, a vertical lathe accommodating the total sample may be used as an aid in trimming the specimen to the required diameter. Determine the mass and dimensions of the test specimen in accordance with 5.9 and 5.11. If the specimen is to be capped, determine its mass and dimensions before capping. Enclose the specimen in the rubber membrane and seal the membrane to the specimen base and cap immediately after preparation.

NOTE 8—A controlled high-humidity room is usually used for this purpose.

6.3 *Remolded Specimens*—Prepare the specimen by first thoroughly working the undisturbed specimen, which has been tested and is still encased in the rubber membrane, with the fingers. Then reform the specimen by forming within a mold having dimensions such that the remolded specimen dimensions will be equal to those of the undisturbed specimen. Exercise care to avoid entrapping air in the specimen. This will aid in obtaining a uniform unit weight, in remolding to the same void ratio as the undisturbed specimen, and in preserving the natural water content of the soil.

6.4 *Compacted Specimens*—Prepare specimens using the compaction method, predetermined water content, and unit weight prescribed by the individual assigning the test. Compacted specimens may be prepared by compacting material in at least six layers, using a pressing or kneading action, into a split mold of circular cross section having dimensions meeting the requirements of 6.1. Material required for the specimen shall be batched by thoroughly mixing soil with sufficient water to produce the desired water content. After batching, store the material in a covered container for at least 16 h prior to compaction. Specimens may be molded to the desired density by either: (*1*) kneading or tamping each layer until the accumulative weight of the soil placed in the mold is compacted to a known volume or (*2*) by adjusting the number of layers, the number of tamps per layer, and the force per tamp. Scarify the top of each layer prior to the addition of material for the next layer. The tamper used to compact the material shall have an area in contact with the soil equal to or less than 1/2 the area of the mold. After a specimen is formed, with the ends perpendicular to the longitudinal axis, remove the mold and determine the mass and dimensions of the specimen using the devices described in 5.9 and 5.11. Perform one or more water content

determinations on excess material used to prepare the specimen in accordance with Method D 2216.

NOTE 9—It is common for the unit weight of the specimen after removal from the mold to be less than the value based on the volume of the mold. This occurs as a result of the specimen swelling after removal of the lateral confinement due to the mold.

NOTE 10—Experience indicates that it is difficult to compact, handle, and obtain valid results with specimens that have a degree of saturation that is greater than about 90 %.

7. Procedure

7.1 Place the membrane on the membrane expander or, if it is rolled onto the specimen, roll the membrane onto the cap or base. Place the specimen on the base. Place the rubber membrane around the specimen and seal it at the cap and base with O-rings or other positive seals at each end. A thin coating of silicon grease on the vertical surfaces of the cap or base will aid in sealing the membrane.

7.2 With the specimen encased in the rubber membrane, which is sealed to the specimen cap and base and positioned in the chamber, assemble the triaxial chamber. Bring the axial load piston into contact with the specimen cap several times to permit proper seating and alignment of the piston with the cap. When the piston is brought into contact the final time, record the reading on the deformation indicator. During this procedure, take care not to apply an axial stress to the specimen exceeding approximately 0.5 % of the estimated compressive strength. If the weight of the piston is sufficient to apply an axial stress exceeding approximately 0.5 % of the estimated compressive strength, lock the piston in place above the specimen cap after checking the seating and alignment and keep locked until application of the chamber pressure.

7.3 Place the chamber in position in the axial loading device. Be careful to align the axial loading device, the axial load-measuring device, and the triaxial chamber to prevent the application of a lateral force to the piston during testing. Attach the pressure-maintaining and measurement device and fill the chamber with the confining liquid. Adjust the pressure-maintaining and measurement device to the desired chamber pressure and apply the pressure to the chamber fluid. Wait approximately 10 min after the application of chamber pressure before continuing the test.

NOTE 11—In some cases the chamber will be filled and the chamber pressure applied before placement in the axial loading device.

NOTE 12—Make sure the piston is locked or held in place by the axial loading device before applying the chamber pressure.

NOTE 13—The purpose of the waiting period is to allow the specimen to stabilize under the chamber pressure prior to application of the axial load.

7.4 If the axial load-measuring device is located outside of the triaxial chamber, the chamber pressure will produce an upward force on the piston that will react against the axial loading device. In this case, start the test with the piston slightly above the specimen cap, and before the piston comes in contact with the specimen cap, either: (*1*) measure and record the initial piston friction and upward thrust of the piston produced by the chamber pressure and later correct the measured axial load, or (*2*) adjust the axial load-measuring device to compensate for the friction and thrust. If the axial load-measuring device is located inside the chamber, it will not be necessary to correct or compensate for the uplift force acting on the axial loading device or for piston friction. In both cases record the initial reading on the deformation indicator when the piston contacts the specimen cap.

7.5 Apply the axial load to produce axial strain at a rate of approximately 1 %/min for plastic materials and 0.3 %/min for brittle materials that achieve maximum deviator stress at approximately 3 to 6 % strain. At these rates, the elapsed time to reach maximum deviator stress will be approximately 15 to 20 min. Continue the loading to 15 % axial strain, except loading may be stopped when the deviator stress has peaked then dropped 20 % or the axial strain has reached 5 % beyond the strain at which the peak in deviator stress occurred.

7.6 Record load and deformation values at about 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, and 0.5 % strain; then at increments of about 0.5 % strain to 3 %; and, thereafter at every 1 %. Take sufficient readings to define the stress - strain curve; hence, more frequent readings may be required in the early stages of the test and as failure is approached.

NOTE 14—Alternate intervals for the readings may be used provided sufficient points are obtained to define the stress - strain curve.

7.7 After completion of the tests, remove the test specimen from the chamber. Determine the water content of the test specimen in accordance with Method D 2216 using the entire specimen, unless representative cuttings are obtained for this purpose, as in the case of undisturbed specimens. Indicate on the test report whether the water content sample was obtained before or after the shear test, as required in 9.1.2.

7.8 Make a sketch, or take a photo, of the test specimen at failure and show the slope angle of the failure surface if the angle is visible and measurable.

8. Calculations

8.1 Calculate the axial strain, ϵ (expressed as a decimal), for a given applied axial load, as follows:

$$\epsilon = \Delta L / L_O$$

where:

ΔL = change in length of specimen as read from deformation indicator, and

L_O = initial length of test specimen minus any change in length prior to loading.

8.2 Calculate the average cross-sectional area, A, for a given applied axial load as follows:

$$A = A_O / (1 - \epsilon)$$

where:

A_O = initial average cross-sectional area of the specimen, and

ϵ = axial strain for the given axial load (expressed as a decimal).

NOTE 15—In the event that the application of the chamber pressure results in a change in the specimen length, A_O should be corrected to reflect this change in volume. Frequently, this is done by assuming that lateral strains are equal to vertical strains. The diameter after volume change would be given by $D = D_O(1 - \Delta L/L)$.

8.3 Calculate the principal stress difference (deviator stress), $\sigma_1 - \sigma_3$, for a given applied axial load as follows:

$$\sigma_1 - \sigma_3 = P/A$$

where:

P = measured applied axial load (corrected for uplift and piston friction, if required see 7.4), and

A = corresponding average cross-sectional area.

8.4 *Stress-Strain Curve*—Prepare a graph showing the relationship between principal stress difference (deviator stress) and axial strain, plotting deviator stress as ordinate and axial strain (in percent) as abscissa. Select the compressive strength and axial strain at failure in accordance with the definitions in 3.2.1 and 3.2.2.

8.5 *Correction of Strength Due to Stiffness of Rubber Membrane*—Assuming units are consistent, the following equation, or other acceptable equations, shall be used to correct the principal stress difference or deviator stress for the effect of the rubber membrane if the error in principal stress difference due to the stiffness of the membrane exceeds 5 %:

$$\Delta(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3) = \frac{4E_m t \epsilon_1}{D}$$

where:

$\Delta(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$ = correction to be subtracted from the measured principal stress difference,

D = $\sqrt{\frac{4A}{\pi}}$ = diameter of specimen,

E_m = Young's modulus for the membrane material,

t = thickness of the membrane, and

ϵ_1 = axial strain.

8.5.1 The Young's modulus of the membrane material may be determined by hanging a 10.0-mm wide strip of membrane over a thin rod, placing another rod along the bottom of the hanging membrane, and measuring the force per unit strain obtained by stretching the membrane. The modulus value may be computed using the following equation assuming units are consistent:

$$E_m = \frac{FL}{A_m \Delta L}$$

where:

E_m = Young's modulus of the membrane material,

F = force applied to stretch the membrane,

A_m = twice the initial thickness of the membrane multiplied by the width of the membrane strip,

L = unstretched length of the membrane, and

ΔL = change in length of the membrane due to application of F.

A typical value of E_m for latex membrane is 1400 kN/m^2.

NOTE 16—The effect of the stiffness of the membrane on the lateral stress is usually assumed to be negligible.

NOTE 17—The correction for rubber membranes is based on simplified assumptions concerning their behavior during shear. Their actual behavior is complex and there is not a consensus on more exact corrections.

8.6 Calculate the major and minor principal total stresses at failure as follows:

σ_3 = minor principal total stress = chamber pressure, and

σ_1 = major principal total stress = deviator stress at failure plus chamber pressure.

8.7 Calculate the initial degree of saturation of the test specimen using the initial mass and dimensions.

NOTE 18—The specific gravity determined in accordance with Test Method D 854 is required for calculation of the degree of saturation, or an assumed value may be used provided it is noted in the test report that an assumed value was used.

9. Report

9.1 The report shall include the following:

9.1.1 Identification and visual description of specimen, including soil group name, symbol, whether specimen is undisturbed, remolded, or compacted, and the like. Also include specimen identifying information, such as project, location, boring number, sample number, depth, and the like. Visual descriptions shall be made in accordance with Practice D 2488.

9.1.2 Initial dry unit weight and water content (specify if the water content specimen was obtained before or after the shear and from cuttings or the entire specimen).

9.1.3 Degree of saturation.

9.1.4 Height and diameter of the specimen.

9.1.5 Height to diameter ratio.

9.1.6 The value of the compressive strength and the values of the minor and major principal stresses at failure.

9.1.7 Stress - strain curve as described in 8.4.

9.1.8 Axial strain at failure, in percent.

9.1.9 Average rate of axial strain to failure, percent per minute.

9.1.10 Liquid and plastic limits, if determined, in accordance with Test Method D 4318.

9.1.11 Sketch or photo showing type of failure, that is, bulge, diagonal shear, and the like.

9.1.12 Particle-size analysis, if determined, in accordance with Method D 422.

9.1.13 If a membrane correction was used, the report shall state that a membrane correction was used to adjust the compressive strength and must indicate the membrane correction equation that was used.

9.1.14 In a remarks section note any unusual conditions or other data that would be considered necessary to properly interpret the results obtained, for example, slickensides, stratification, shells, pebbles, roots, or brittleness.

10. Precision and Bias

10.1 No method presently exists to evaluate the precision of a group of triaxial compression tests on undisturbed specimens, due to specimen variability. Undisturbed soil specimens from apparently homogeneous soil deposits at the same location often exhibit significantly different strength and stress - strain properties.

10.2 A suitable test material and method of specimen preparation have not been developed for the determination of laboratory variances of compacted specimens due to the difficulty in producing identical cohesive soil specimens. No estimates of precision for this test method are available.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000355

Designation: D 2974 – 87

Standard Test Methods for Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2974; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 These test methods cover the measurement of moisture content, ash content, and organic matter in peats and other organic soils, such as organic clays, silts, and mucks.

1.2 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Summary of Methods

2.1 *Method A*—Moisture is determined by drying a peat or organic soil sample at 105°C. The moisture content is expressed either as a percent of the oven dry mass or of the as-received mass.

2.2 *Method B*—This is an alternative moisture method which removes the total moisture in two steps: (*1*) evaporation of moisture in air at room temperature (air-drying), and (*2*) the subsequent oven drying of the air-dried sample at 105°C. This method provides a more stable sample, the air-dried sample, when tests for nitrogen, pH, cation exchange, and the like are to be made.

2.3 *Methods C and D*—Ash content of a peat or organic soil sample is determined by igniting the oven-dried sample from the moisture content determination in a muffle furnace at 440°C (Method C) or 750°C (Method D). The substance remaining after ignition is the ash. The ash content is expressed as a percentage of the mass of the oven-dried sample.

2.4 Organic matter is determined by subtracting percent ash content from one hundred.

3. Apparatus

3.1 *Oven*, capable of being regulated to a constant temperature of 105 ± 5°C.

NOTE—The temperature of 105°C is quite critical for organic soils. The oven should be checked for "hot spots" to avoid possible ignition of the specimen.

3.2 *Muffle Furnace*, capable of producing constant temperatures of 440°C and 750°C.

3.3 *Evaporating Dishes*, of high silica or porcelain of not less than 100-mL capacity.

3.4 *Blender*, high-speed.

3.5 *Aluminum Foil*, heavy-duty.

3.6 *Porcelain Pan, Spoons*, and equipment of the like.

3.7 *Desiccator.*

4. Preparation of Sample

4.1 Place a representative field sample on a square rubber sheet, oil cloth, or equivalent material. Reduce the sample to the quantity required by quartering and place in a moisture-proof container. Work rapidly to prevent moisture loss or perform the operation in a room with a high humidity.

MOISTURE CONTENT

5. Method A

5.1 Record to the nearest 0.01 g the mass of a high silica or porcelain evaporating dish fitted with a heavy-duty aluminum foil cover. The dish shall have a capacity of not less than 100 mL.

5.2 Mix thoroughly the representative sample and place a test specimen of at least 50 g in the container described in 5.1. Crush soft lumps with a spoon or spatula. The thickness of peat in the container should not exceed 3 cm.

5.3 Cover immediately with the aluminum foil cover and record the mass to the nearest 0.01 g.

5.4 Dry uncovered for at least 16 h at 105°C or until there is no change in mass of the sample after further drying periods in excess of 1 h. Remove from the oven, cover tightly, cool in a desiccator, and record the mass.

6. Method A Calculation

6.1 Calculate the moisture content as follows:

$$\text{Moisture Content, \%} = [(A - B) \times 100]/A$$

where:

A = mass of the as-received test specimen, g, and

B = mass of the oven-dried specimen, g.

6.1.1 This calculation is used primarily for agriculture, forestry, energy, and horticultural purposes and the result should be referred to as the moisture content as a percentage of as-received or total mass.

6.2 An alternative calculation is as follows:

$$\text{Moisture Content, \%} = [(A - B) \times 100]/B$$

where:

A = as-received test specimen, g, and

B = mass of the oven-dried specimen, g.

[1] These test methods are under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and are the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.18 on Peats and Related Materials.

Current edition approved May 29, 1987. Published July 1987. Originally published as D 2974 – 71. Last previous edition D 2974 – 84.

000356

6.2.1 This calculation is used primarily for geotechnical purposes and the result should be referred to as the moisture content as a percentage of oven-dried mass.

6.3 Take care to indicate the calculation method used.

7. Method B

7.1 This method should be used if pH, nitrogen content, cation exchange capacity, and the like are to be tested.

7.2 Mix the sample thoroughly and select a 100 to 300 g representative sample. Determine the mass of this sample and spread evenly on a large flat pan. Crush soft lumps with a spoon or spatula and let the sample come to moisture equilibrium with room air. This will require at least 24 h. Stir occasionally to maintain maximum air exposure of the entire sample. When the mass of the sample reaches a constant value, calculate the moisture removed during air drying as a percentage of the as-received mass.

7.3 Grind a representative portion of the air-dried sample for 1 to 2 min in a high-speed blender. Use the ground portion for moisture, ash, nitrogen, cation exchange capacity tests, and the like.

7.4 Thoroughly mix the air-dried, ground sample. Weigh to the nearest 0.01 g the equivalent of 50 g of test specimen on an as-received basis. Determine the amount, in grams, of air-dried sample equivalent to 50 g of as-received sample, as follows:

$$\text{Equivalent Sample Mass, g} = 50.0 - [(50 \times M)/100]$$

where:

M = moisture removed in air drying, %.

7.5 Place the sample in a container as described in 5.1 and proceed as in Method A.

8. Method B Calculation

8.1 Calculate the moisture content as follows:

$$\text{Moisture Content, \%} = (50 - B) \times 2$$

where:

B = oven-dried sample, g.

8.1.1 This calculation gives moisture content as a percentage of as-received mass.

8.2 An alternative calculation is as follows:

$$\text{Moisture Content, \%} = [(50 - B) \times 100]/B$$

8.2.1 This calculation gives moisture content as a percentage of oven-dried mass.

ASH CONTENT

9. Method C

9.1 Determine the mass of a covered high-silica or porcelain dish.

9.2 Place a part of or all of the oven-dried test specimen from a moisture determination in the dish and determine the mass of the dish and specimen.

9.3 Remove the cover and place the dish in a muffle furnace. Gradually bring the temperature in the furnace to 440°C and hold until the specimen is completely ashed (no change of mass occurs after a further period of heating).

9.4 Cover with the retained aluminum foil cover, cool in a desiccator, and determine the mass.

9.5 This method should be used for all geotechnical and general classification purposes.

10. Method D

10.1 Determine the mass of a covered high-silica or porcelain dish.

10.2 Place a part of or all of the oven-dried test specimen from a moisture determination in the dish and determine the mass of the dish and specimen.

10.3 Remove the cover and place the dish in a muffle furnace. Gradually bring the temperature in the furnace to 750°C and hold until the specimen is completely ashed (no change of mass occurs after a further period of heating).

10.4 Cover with the retained aluminum foil cover, cool in a desiccator, and determine the mass.

10.5 This method should be used when peats are being evaluated for use as a fuel.

11. Calculation for Methods C and D

11.1 Calculate the ash content as follows:

$$\text{Ash Content, \%} = (C \times 100)/B$$

where:

C = ash, g, and

B = oven-dried test specimen, g.

ORGANIC MATTER

12. Calculation

12.1 Determine the amount of organic matter by difference, as follows:

$$\text{Organic matter, \%} = 100.0 - D$$

where:

D = ash content, %.

13. Report

13.1 Report the following information:

13.1.1 Results for organic matter and ash content, to the nearest 0.1 %.

13.1.2 Furnace temperature used for ash content determinations.

13.1.3 Whether moisture contents are by proportion of as-received mass or oven-dried mass.

13.1.3.1 Express results for moisture content as a percentage of as-received mass to the nearest 0.1 %.

13.1.3.2 Express results for moisture content as a percentage of oven-dried mass as follows:

(*a*) Below 100 % to the nearest 1 %.

(*b*) Between 100 % and 500 % to the nearest 5 %.

(*c*) Between 500 % and 1000 % to the nearest 10 %.

(*d*) Above 1000 % to the nearest 20 %.

14. Precision and Bias

14.1 The precision and bias of these test methods have not been determined. Data are being sought for use in developing a precision and bias statement.

000357

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000358

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Test Method for Direct Shear Test of Soils Under Consolidated Drained Conditions[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 3080; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the consolidated drained shear strength of a soil material in direct shear. The test is performed by deforming a specimen at a controlled strain rate on or near a single shear plane determined by the configuration of the apparatus. Generally, three or more specimens are tested, each under a different normal load, to determine the effects upon shear resistance and displacement, and strength properties such as Mohr strength envelopes.

1.2 Shear stresses and displacements are nonuniformly distributed within the specimen. An appropriate height cannot be defined for calculation of shear strains. Therefore, stress-strain relationships or any associated quantity such as modulus, cannot be determined from this test.

1.3 The determination of strength envelopes and the development of criteria to interpret and evaluate test results are left to the engineer or office requesting the test.

1.4 The results of the test may be affected by the presence of soil or rock particles, or both, (see Section 7).

1.5 Test conditions including normal stress and moisture environment are selected which represent the field conditions being investigated. The rate of shearing should be slow enough to ensure drained conditions.

1.6 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard. Within this test method the SI units are shown in brackets. The values stated in each system are not exact equivalents; therefore, each system must be used independently of each other.

1.7 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 422 Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[2]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 698 Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil Aggregate Mixtures Using 5.5 lb (2.49 kg) Rammer and 12-in. (305 mm) Drop[2]

D 854 Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[2]

D 1557 Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil Aggregate Mixtures Using 10-lb (4.54 kg) Rammer and 18-in. (457 mm) Drop[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil Aggregate Mixtures[2]

D 2435 Test Method for One Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils[2]

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[2]

D 4753 Specifications for Evaluating, Selecting, and Specifying Balances and Scales for Use in Soil and Rock Testing[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions*—For definitions of terms used in this test method, refer to Terminology D 653

3.2 *Description of Terms Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *Relative lateral displacement*—the horizontal displacement of the top and bottom shear box halves.

3.2.2 *Failure*—the stress condition at failure for a test specimen. Failure is often taken to correspond to the maximum shear stress attained, or the shear stress at 15 to 20 percent relative lateral displacement. Depending on soil behavior and field application, other suitable criteria may be defined.

4. Summary of Test Method

4.1 This test method consists of placing the test specimen in the direct shear device, applying a predetermined normal stress, providing for wetting or draining of the test specimen, or both, consolidating the specimen under the normal stress, unlocking the frames that hold the test specimen, and displacing one frame horizontally with respect to the other at a constant rate of shearing deformation and measuring the shearing force and horizontal displacements as the specimen is sheared (Fig. 1).

5. Significance and Use

5.1 The direct shear test is suited to the relatively rapid determination of consolidated drained strength properties

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.05 on Structural Properties of Soils.

Current edition approved Nov. 30, 1990. Published January 1991. Originally published as D 3080 – 72. Last previous edition D 3080 – 72(79).

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000360

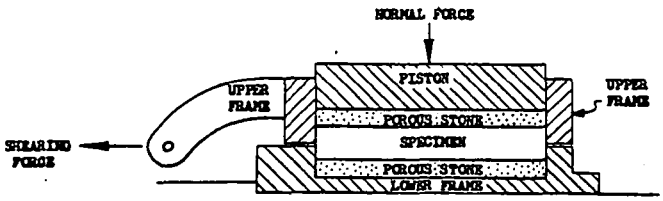


FIG. 1 Test Specimens in (*a*) Single and (*b*) Double Shear

because the drainage paths through the test specimen are short, thereby allowing excess pore pressure to be dissipated more rapidly than with other drained stress tests. The test can be made on all soil materials and undisturbed, remolded or compacted materials. There is however, a limitation on maximum particle size (see 7.2).

5.2 The test results are applicable to assessing strength in a field situation where complete consolidation has occurred under the existing normal stresses. Failure is reached slowly under drained conditions so that excess pore pressures are dissipated. The results from several tests may be used to express the relationship between consolidation stress and drained shear strength.

5.3 During the direct shear test, there is rotation of principal stresses, which may or may not model field conditions. Moreover, failure may not occur on the weak plane since failure is forced to occur on or near a horizontal plane at the middle of the specimen. The fixed location of the plane in the test can be an advantage in determining the shear resistance along recognizable weak planes within the soil material and for testing interfaces between dissimilar materials.

5.4 Shear stresses and displacements are nonuniformly distributed within the specimen, and an appropriate height is not defined for calculating shear strains or any associated engineering quantity. The slow rate of displacement provides for dissipation of excess pore pressures, but it also permits plastic flow of soft cohesive soils. Care should be taken to ensure that the testing conditions represent those conditions being investigated.

5.5 The range in normal stresses, rate of shearing, and general test conditions should be selected to approximate the specific soil conditions being investigated.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Shear Device*—a device to hold the specimen securely between two porous inserts in such a way that torque is not applied to the specimen. The shear device shall provide a means of applying a normal stress to the faces of the specimen, for measuring change in thickness of the specimen, for permitting drainage of water through the porous inserts at the top and bottom boundaries of the specimen, and for submerging the specimen in water. The device shall be capable of applying a shear force to the specimen in water. The device shall be capable of applying a shear force to the specimen along a predetermined shear plane (single shear) parallel to the faces of the specimen. The frames that hold the specimen shall be sufficiently rigid to prevent their distortion during shearing. The various parts of the shear device shall be made of material not subject to corrosion by moisture or substances within the soil, for example, stainless steel, bronze, or aluminum, etc. Dissimilar metals, which may cause galvanic action, are not permitted.

6.2 *Shear Box*, a shear box, either circular or square, made of stainless steel, bronze, or aluminum, with provisions for drainage through the top and bottom. The box is divided vertically by a horizontal plane into two halves of equal thickness which are fitted together with alignment screws. The shear box is also fitted with gap screws, which control the space (gap) between the top and bottom halves of the shear box.

6.3 *Porous Inserts*, Porous inserts function to allow drainage from the soil specimen along the top and bottom boundaries. They also function to transfer horizontal shear stress from the insert to the top and bottom boundaries of the specimen. Porous inserts shall consist of silicon carbide, aluminum oxide, or metal which is not subject to corrosion by soil substances or soil moisture. The proper grade of insert depends on the soil being tested. The permeability of the insert should be substantially greater than that of the soil, but should be textured fine enough to prevent excessive intrusion of the soil into the pores of the insert. The diameter or width of the top porous insert or plate shall be 0.01 to 0.02 in. (0.2 to 0.5 mm) less than that of the inside of the ring. If the insert functions to transfer the horizontal stress to the soil, it must be sufficiently coarse to develop interlock. Sandblasting or tooling the insert may help, but the surface of the insert should not be so irregular as to cause substantial stress concentrations in the soil.

NOTE 1—Exact criteria for insert texture and permeability have not been established. For normal soil testing, medium grade inserts with a permeability of about 0.5 to 1.0 × 10^3 ft/yr (5.0 × 10^{-4} to 1.0 × 10^{-3} cm/s) are appropriate for testing silts and clays, and coarse grade inserts with a permeability of about 0.5 to 1.0 × 10^5 ft/yr (0.05 to 0.10 cm/s) are appropriate for sands. It is important that the permeability of the porous insert is not reduced by the collection of soil particles in the pores of the insert; hence frequent checking and cleaning (by flushing and boiling, or by ultrasonic cleaning) are required to ensure the necessary permeability.

6.4 *Loading Devices:*

6.4.1 *Device for Applying and Measuring the Normal Force*—The normal force is applied by a lever loading yoke which is activated by dead weights (masses) or by a pneumatic loading device. The device shall be capable of maintaining the normal force to within ±1 percent of the specified force quickly without exceeding it.

6.4.2 *Device for Shearing the Specimen*—The device shall be capable of shearing the specimen at a uniform rate of displacement, with less than ±5 percent deviation, and should permit adjustment of the rate of displacement from 0.0001 to 0.04 in./min (.0025 to 1.0 mm/min). The rate to be applied depends upon the consolidation characteristics of the soils (see 9.12.1). The rate is usually maintained with an electric motor and gear box arrangement and the shear force is determined by a load indicating device such as a proving ring or load cell.

6.4.3 The weight of the top shear box should be less than 1 percent of the applied normal force: this may require that the top shear box be modified and supported by counter force.

NOTE 2—Shearing the test specimen at a rate greater than specified may produce partially drained shear results that will differ from the drained strength of the material.

000361

6.5 *Shear force measurement device*—A proving ring or load cell accurate to 0.5 lbf (2.5 *N*), or 1 percent of the shear force at failure, whichever is greater.

6.6 *Shear box bowl*—A metallic box which supports the shear box and provides either a reaction against which one half of the shear box is restrained, or a solid base with provisions for aligning one half of the shear box, which is free to move coincident with applied shear force in a horizontal plane.

6.7 *Controlled High Humidity Room*, if required, for preparing specimens, such that water content gain or loss during specimen preparation is minimized.

6.8 *Trimmer or Cutting Ring*, for trimming oversized samples to the inside dimensions of the shear box with a minimum of disturbance. An exterior jig may be needed to maintain the shear box alignment.

6.9 *Balances*—in accordance with Test Method D 2216.

6.10 *Deformation Indicators*—Either dial gages or displacement transformers capable of measuring the change in thickness of the specimen, with a sensitivity of at least 0.0001 in. (0.0025 mm) and to measure horizontal displacement with sensitivity of at least 0.001 in. (0.025 mm).

6.11 *Apparatus for Determination of Water Content*, as specified in Test Method D 2216.

6.12 *Equipment for Remolding or Compacting Specimens*, if applicable.

6.13 Miscellaneous Equipment, including timing device with a second hand, distilled or demineralized water, spatulas, knives, straightedge, wire saws, etc., used in preparing the specimen.

7. Test Specimen

7.1 The sample used for specimen preparation should be sufficiently large so that a minimum of three similar specimens can be prepared. Prepare the specimens in a controlled temperature and humidity environment to minimize moisture loss or gain.

7.1.1 Extreme care should be taken in preparing undisturbed specimens of sensitive soils to prevent disturbance to the natural soil structure. Determine the initial mass of the wet specimen for use in calculating the initial water content and unit weight of the specimen.

7.2 The minimum specimen diameter for circular specimens, or width for square specimens, shall be 2.0 in. (50 mm), or not less than 10 times the maximum particle size diameter, whichever is larger, and conform to the width to thickness ratio specified in 7.4.

7.3 The minimum initial specimen thickness shall be 0.5 in. (12 mm), but not less than six times the maximum particle diameter.

7.4 The minimum specimen diameter to thickness or width to thickness ratio shall be 2:1.

NOTE 3—If large soil particles are found in the soil after testing, a particle size analysis should be performed in accordance with Method D 422 to confirm the visual observations, and the result should be provided with the test report.

7.5 *Specimen Preparation:*

7.5.1 *Undisturbed specimens*—Prepare undisturbed specimens from large undisturbed samples or from samples secured in accordance with Practice D 1587, or other undisturbed tube sampling procedures. Undisturbed samples shall be preserved and transported as outlined for Group C or D samples in Practice D 4220. Handle specimens carefully to minimize disturbance, changes in cross section, or loss of water content. If compression or any type of noticeable disturbance would be caused by the extrusion device, split the sample tube lengthwise or cut it off in small sections to facilitate removal of the specimen with minimum disturbance. Prepare trimmed specimens, whenever possible, in an environment which will minimize the gain or loss of specimen moisture.

NOTE 4—A controlled high-humidity room is desirable for this purpose.

7.5.2 *Compacted specimens*—Specimens shall be prepared using the compaction method, water content, and unit weight prescribed by the individual assigning the test. Assemble and secure the shear box. Place a moist porous insert in the bottom of the shear box. Specimens may be molded by either kneading or tamping each layer until the accumulative mass of the soil placed in the shear box is compacted to a known volume, or by adjusting the number of layers, the number of tamps per layer, and the force per tamp. The top of each layer shall be scarified prior to the addition of material for the next layer. The compacted layer boundaries should be positioned so they are not coincident with the shear plane defined by the shear box halves, unless this is the stated purpose for a particular test. The tamper used to compact the material shall have an area in contact with the soil equal to or less than ½ the area of the mold. Determine the mass of wet soil required for a single compacted lift and place it in the shear box. Compact the soil until the desired unit weight is obtained. Continue placing and compacting soil until the entire specimen is compacted.

NOTE 5—A light coating of grease applied to the inside of the shear box may be used to reduce friction between the specimen and shear box during consolidation. However, the upper ring in some shear devices requires friction to support the ring after the shear plates have been gapped. A light coating of grease applied between the halves of the shear box may be used to reduce friction between the halves of the shear box during shear. TFE-fluorocarbon coating may also be used on these surfaces instead of grease to reduce friction.

NOTE 6—The required thickness of the compacted lift may be determined by directly measuring the thickness of the lift, or from the marks on the tamping rod which correspond to the thickness of the lift being placed.

NOTE 7—The decision to dampen the porous inserts by inundating the shear box before applying the normal force depends on the problem under study. For undisturbed samples obtained below the water table, the porous inserts are usually dampened. For swelling soils, the sequence of consolidation, wetting, and shearing should model field conditions. Determine the compacted mass of the specimen from either the measured mass placed and compacted in the mold, or the difference between the mass of the shear box and compacted specimen and the tare mass of the shear box.

7.6 Material required for the specimen shall be batched by thoroughly mixing soil with sufficient water to produce the desired water content. Allow the specimen to stand prior to compaction in accordance with the following guide:

Classification D2487	Minimum Standing Time, h
SW, SP	No Requirement
SM	3
SC, ML, CL	18
MH, CH	36

7.7 Compacted specimens may also be prepared by com-

000362

pacting soil using the procedures and equipment used to determine moisture-density relationships of soils (Test Methods D 698 or D 1557), and trimming the direct shear test specimen from the larger test specimen as though it were an undisturbed specimen.

8. Calibration

8.1 The calibration is to determine the deformation of the apparatus when subject to the consolidation load, so that for each normal consolidation load the apparatus deflection may be subtracted from the observed deformations. Therefore, only deformation due to sample consolidation will be reported for complete tests. Calibration for the equipment load-deformation characteristics need to be performed on the apparatus when first placed in service, or when apparatus parts are changed.

8.2 Assemble the direct-shear device with a metal calibration disk or plate of a thickness approximately equal to the desired test specimen and about ¼ in. (5 mm) smaller in diameter or width.

8.3 Position the normal displacement indicator. Adjust this indicator so that it can be used to measure either consolidation or swell from the calibration disk or plate reading. Record the zero or "no load" reading.

8.4 Apply increments of normal force up to the equipment limitations, and record the normal displacement indicator reading and normal force. Remove the applied normal force in reverse sequence of the applied force, and record the normal displacement indicator readings and normal force. Average the values and plot the load deformation of the apparatus as a function of normal load. Retain the results for future reference in determining the thickness of the test specimen and compression within the test apparatus itself.

8.5 Remove the calibration disk or plate.

NOTE 8—Other methods of proven accuracy for calibrating the apparatus are acceptable.

9. Procedures

9.1 Assemble the shear box.

9.1.1 *Undisturbed Specimen*—Place moist porous inserts over the exposed ends of the specimen in the shear box; place the shear box containing the undisturbed specimen and porous inserts into the shear box bowl and attach the shear box.

NOTE 9—For some apparatus, the top half of the shear box is held in place by a notched rod which fits into a receptacle in the top half of the shear box. The bottom half of the shear box is held in place in the shear box bowl retaining bolts. For some apparatus, the top half of the shear box is held in placed by an anchor plate.

9.1.2 *Compacted Specimen*—Place the shear box containing the compacted specimen and porous inserts into the shear box bowl and attach the shear box.

9.2 Connect and adjust the shear force loading system so that no force is imposed on the load measuring device.

9.3 Properly position and adjust the horizontal displacement measurement device used to measure shear displacement. Obtain an initial reading or set the measurement device to indicate zero displacement.

9.4 Place a moist porous insert and load transfer plate on the top of the specimen in the shear box.

9.5 Place the normal force loading yoke into position and adjust it so the loading bar is horizontal. For dead load lever loading systems, level the lever. For pneumatic loading systems, adjust the yoke until it sits snugly against the recess in the load transfer plate, or place a ball bearing on the load transfer plate and adjust the yoke until the contact is snug.

9.6 Apply a small normal load to the specimen. Verify that all components of the loading system are seated and aligned. The top porous insert and load transfer plate must be aligned so that the movement of the load transfer plate into the shear box is not inhibited. Record the applied vertical load and horizontal load on the system.

NOTE 10—The normal stress applied to the specimen should be approximately 1 lbf/in.^{2} (7 kPa).

9.7 Attach and adjust the vertical displacement measurement device. Obtain initial reading for the vertical measurement device and a reading for the horizontal displacement measurement device.

9.8 If required, fill the shear box with water, and keep it full for the duration of the test.

9.9 Calculate and record the normal force required to achieve the desired normal stress or increment thereof. Apply the desired normal stress by adding the appropriate mass to the lever arm hanger, or by increasing the pneumatic pressure.

NOTE 11—The normal force used for the specimen will depend upon the data required. Application of the normal force in one increment may be appropriate for relatively firm soils. For relatively soft soils, application of the normal force in several increments may be necessary to prevent damage to the specimen.

9.10 Apply the desired normal load or increments thereof to the specimen and begin recording the normal deformation readings against elapsed time. For all load increments, verify completion of primary consolidation before proceeding (see Test Method D 2435). Plot the normal displacement versus either log of time or square root of time (in min).

9.11 After primary consolidation is completed, remove the alignment screws or pins from the shear box. Open the gap between the shear box halves to approximately 0.025 in. (0.64 mm) using the gap screws. Back out the gap screws.

NOTE 12—There may be instances when the gap between the plates should be increased to accommodate sand sizes greater than the specified gap. Presently there is insufficient information available for specifying gap dimension based on particle size distribution.

9.12 Shear the specimen.

9.12.1 Select the appropriate displacement rate. Shear the specimen at a relatively slow rate so that no excess pore pressure would exist at failure. The following equation shall be used as a guide to determine the estimated minimum time required from the start of the test to failure:

$$t_f = 50t_{50}$$

where:

t_f = total estimated elapsed time to failure, min,

t_{50} = time required for the specimen to achieve 50 percent consolidation under the specified normal stress (or increments thereof), min.

NOTE 13—If the normal displacement versus square root of time used, t_{50} can be calculated from the time to complete 90 % consolidation using the following expression:

000363

$$t_{50} = \frac{t_{90}}{4.28}$$

where:

t_{90} = time required for the specimen to achieve 90 percent consolidation under the specified normal stress (or increment thereof), min.

4.28 = constant, relates displacement and time factors at 50 and 90 percent consolidation.

NOTE 14—If the material exhibits a tendency to swell, the soil must be inundated with water and must be permitted to achieve equilibrium under an increment of normal stress large enough to counteract the swell tendency before the minimum time to failure can be determined. The time-consolidation curve for subsequent normal stress increments are then valid for use in determining t_f.

NOTE 15—Some soils, such as dense sands and over consolidated clays, may not exhibit well defined time-settlement curves. Consequently, the calculation of t_f may produce an inappropriate estimate of the time required to fail the specimen under drained conditions. For over consolidated clays which are tested under normal stresses less than the soil's pre-consolidation pressure, it is suggested that a time to failure be estimated using a value of t_{50} equivalent to one obtained from normal consolidation time-settlement behavior. For clean dense sands which drain quickly, a value of 10 min may be used for t_f. For dense sands with more than 5 % fines, a value of 60 min may be used for t_f. If an alternative value of t_f is selected, the rationale for the selection shall be explained with the test results.

9.13 Determine the appropriate displacement from the following equation:

$$d_r = d_f/t_f$$

where:

d_r = displacement rate (in./min, mm/min),

d_f = estimated horizontal displacement at failure (in., mm),

t_f = total estimate elapsed time to failure, min.

NOTE 16—The magnitude of the estimated displacement at failure is dependent on many factors including the type and the stress history of the soil. As a guide, use $d_f = 0.5$ in. (12 mm) if the material is normally or lightly over consolidated fine-grained soil, otherwise use $d_f = 0.2$ in. (5 mm).

9.13.1 *Select and set the displacement rate*—For some types of apparatus, the displacement rate is achieved using combinations of gear wheels and gear lever positions. For other types the displacement rate is achieved by adjusting the motor speed.

9.13.2 Record the initial time, vertical and horizontal displacements, and normal and shear forces.

9.13.3 Start the apparatus and initiate shear.

9.13.4 Obtain data readings of time, vertical and horizontal displacement, and shear force at desired interval of displacement. Data readings should be taken at displacement intervals equal to 2 percent of the specimen diameter or width to accurately define a shear stress-displacement curve.

NOTE 17—Additional readings may be helpful in identifying the value of peak shear stress of over consolidated or brittle material.

NOTE 18—It may be necessary to stop the test and re-gap the shear box halves to maintain clearance between the shear box halves.

9.13.5 After reaching failure, stop the test apparatus. This displacement may range from 10 to 20 percent of the specimen's original diameter or length.

9.13.6 Remove the normal force from the specimen by removing the mass from the lever and hanger, or by releasing the pressure.

9.14 For cohesive test specimens, separate the shear box halves with a sliding motion along the failure plane. Do not pull the shear box halves apart perpendicularly to the failure surface, since it would damage the specimen. Photograph, sketch, or described in writing the failure surface. This procedure is not applicable to cohesionless specimens.

9.15 Remove the specimen from the shear box and determine its water content according to Test Method D 2216.

9.16 *Calculate and plot the following:*

9.16.1 Nominal shear stress versus relative lateral displacement.

10. Calculation

10.1 Calculate the following:

10.1.1 Nominal shear stress, acting on the specimen is,

$$\tau = \frac{F}{A}$$

where:

τ = nominal shear stress (lbf/in.^{2}, kPa),

F = shear force (lbf, N),

A = initial area of the specimen (in.^{2}, mm^2).

10.1.2 Normal stress acting on the specimen is,

$$\bar{\sigma}_n = \frac{N}{A}$$

where:

$\bar{\sigma}_n$ = normal stress (lbf/in.^{2}, kPa),

N = normal vertical force acting on the specimen (lbf, N).

NOTE 19—Factors which incorporate assumptions regarding the actual specimen surface area over which the shear and normal forces are measured can be applied to the calculated values of shear or normal stress, or both. If a correction(s) is made, the factor(s) and rationale for using the correction shall be explained with the test results.

10.1.3 *Displacement rate*—Calculate the actual displacement rate by dividing the relative lateral displacement by the elapsed time, or report the rate used for the test.

$$d_r = d_h/t_e$$

where:

d_r = displacement rate (in./min, mm/min),

d_h = relative lateral displacement (in./mm),

t_e = elapsed time of test (min).

10.1.4 Compute the initial void ratio, water content, dry unit weight and degree of saturation based on the specific gravity, and mass of the total specimen. Specimen volume is determined by measurements of the shear box lengths or diameter and of the measured thickness of the specimen.

11. Report

11.1 The report shall include the following:

11.1.1 Sample identification, project and location.

11.1.2 Description of type of shear device used in test.

11.1.3 Description of appearance of the specimen, based on Practice D 2488 (Test Method C 2487 may be used as an alternative), Atterberg limits (Test Method D 4318), and grain size data (Method D 422), if obtained (see 7.4).

11.1.4 Description of soil structure, that is whether the specimen is undisturbed, remolded, compacted, or otherwise prepared.

11.1.5 Initial and final water content.

000364

11.1.6 Dry mass and initial and final wet unit weight.

11.1.7 Initial and final dry unit weight.

11.1.8 Initial thickness and diameter (width for square shear boxes).

11.1.9 Normal stress, rate of deformation, shear displacement, and corresponding nominal shear stress values and specimen thickness changes.

11.1.10 Plot of log of time or square root of time versus deformation of those load increments where t_{50} was determined.

11.1.11 Plot of nominal shear stress versus percent relative lateral displacement.

11.1.12 Departure from the procedure outlines, such as special loading sequences or special wetting requirements.

12. Precision and Bias

12.1 *Precision*—Data are being evaluated to determine the precision of this test method. In addition, subcommittee D 18.05 is seeking pertinent data from users of the test method.

12.2 *Bias*—There is no accepted reference value for this test method, therefore, bias cannot be determined.

13. Keywords

13.1 compacted specimens; consolidated; direct-shear test; drained test conditions; Mohr strength envelope; shear strength; undisturbed

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000365

Standard Practice for Ring-Lines Barrel Sampling of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 3550; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

ε1 NOTE—Section 8 was added editorially in November 1991.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers a procedure for using a ring-lined barrel sampler to obtain representative samples of soil for identification purposes and other laboratory tests. In cases where it has been established that the quality of the sample is adequate, this practice provides shear and consolidation specimens that can be used directly in the test apparatus without prior trimming. Some types of soils may gain or lose significant shear strength or compressibility, or both, as a result of sampling. In cases like these, suitable comparison tests should be made to evaluate the effect of sample disturbance on shear strength and compressibility.

1.2 This practice is not intended to be used as a penetration test; however, the force required to achieve penetration or a blow count, when driving is necessary, is recommended as supplemental information.

1.3 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 1586 Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2113 Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation[2]

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 This practice is used where soil condition and resistance to advance of the sampler do not permit the use of a thin-wall tube (Practice D 1587) and where the formation does not require diamond coring (Practice D 2113).

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Drilling Equipment*—Any drilling equipment may be used that provides a reasonably clean hole before insertion of the sampler and that does not disturb the soil to be sampled. However, in no case shall a bottom-discharge bit be permitted. Side-discharge bits are permissible.

4.2 *Drive Weight Assembly*—Any drive weight assembly that will provide penetration in the range from 1 to 20 blows per foot (65 blows per metre) may be used. Whenever possible, soils are to be sampled by pushing instead of driving (see Section 5).

4.3 *Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling Assembly*—This shall consist of a shoe, sampler, and waste barrel, as shown in Fig. 1.

4.4 *Ring-Lined Sampler*—Test specimens shall be obtained using a suitable one piece or split sampling barrel lined on the inside with removable rings. These rings shall be thin-walled and shall conform to the size requirements of the particular laboratory test determinations employed. They shall fit snugly inside the sampler with no discernible free play in any direction. The sampler may be sectionalized to allow end-to-end make up of sections as necessary. Each section shall be designed so that addition or removal of sections will not loosen, permit movement, or otherwise adversely affect retention of the rings within the sampler. The sampler and rings shall be free of bumps, dents, scratches, rust, dirt, and corrosion.

NOTE 1—It is recommended that the sampler contain at least six rings in order to provide samples for a variety of tests.

4.5 *Waste Barrel*—A waste barrel that can be removed from the sampler in the field shall be provided to contain space for disturbed soil originally at the bottom of the hole. The length of the waste barrel shall be at least three times its interior diameter, and the inside diameter shall be the same, or slightly larger than, the inside diameter of the rings.

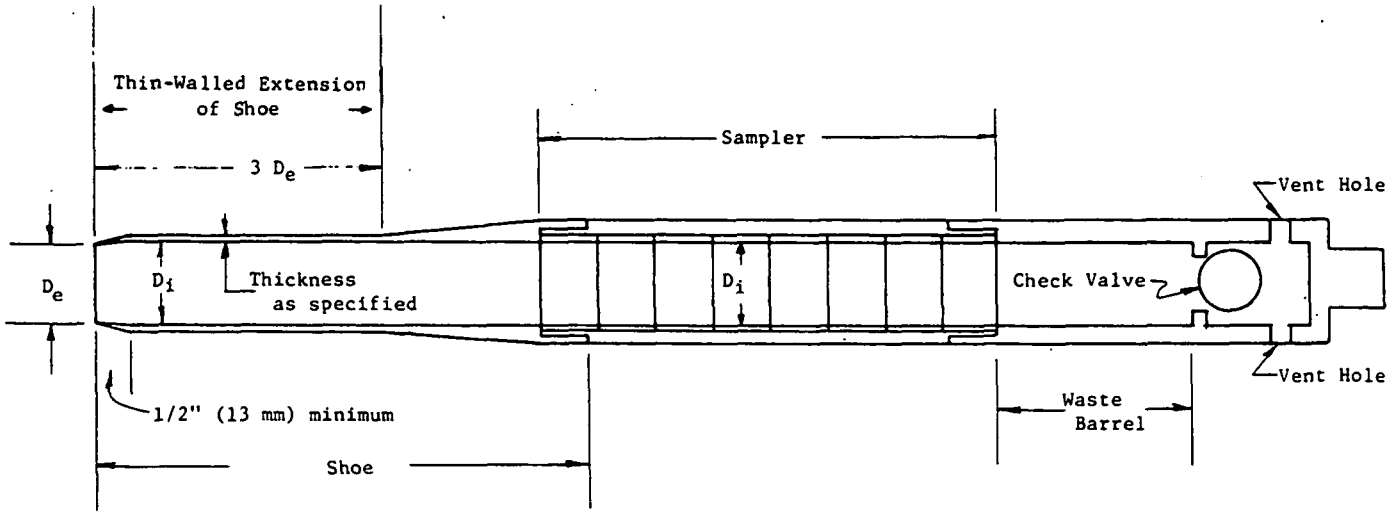
4.5.1 An attachment, check valve, and one or more vents is required. The design of these items is optional.

4.6 *Shoe*—The shoe shall be machined as shown in Fig. 1. The inside of the assembled shoe and ring-lined sampler shall be smooth, straight, and uniform. The thin-walled extension of the shoe shall be 2 to 4 in. (51 to 102 mm) in outside diameter and made of any materials of adequate strength and resistance to corrosion. The length of the thin-walled extension shall be equal to three times the diameter of its opening, but shall not exceed 8 in. (203 mm). The inside clearance ratio shall be between 0.5 and 3.0 %. (See Fig. 1 for

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved Jan. 27, 1984. Published April 1984. Originally published as D 3550 – 77. Last previous edition D 3550 – 77ε1.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.



NOTE 1—Inside clearance ratio = $(D_i - D_e)/D_e$.
NOTE 2—Dimensional tolerance of D_i = ±0.003 in. (±0.08 mm)

FIG. 1 Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling Assembly

inside clearance ratio formula.) The wall thickness of the thin-walled extension shall conform to Table 1.

4.6.1 The thin-walled extension of the shoe shall be perfectly round. Shoes that have become out-of-round for any reason shall not be used. If the thin-walled extension of the shoe deforms during sampling, the sample obtained shall not be used for tests, such as shear strength, where soil disturbance is a factor.

NOTE 2—The thin-walled extension of the shoe is not suitable for stiff or gravelly soils. In cases such as these, a shoe similar to the type specified in Method D 1586 is required for penetration. The use of this type of shoe, however, may result in excessive disturbance of the soil so that it is no longer suitable for shear or consolidation determinations, or both.

4.7 *Sample Extractor*—Specimen-filled rings shall be removed from the sampler by pressing them out or alternatively by the use of a split barrel. The extractor disk shall be at least 0.5 in. (13 mm) thick and shall bear solidly against the sample rings at all points. It shall slide easily inside the sampler barrel without jamming and without free play.

4.8 *Containers for Specimen-Filled Rings*—These shall be snug fitting, tightly sealed (watertight), rigid containers that will not permit movement of the specimen-filled rings inside. They shall be noncorrosive.

4.9 *Miscellaneous Equipment*—This includes a pipe vise, pipe wrenches, spatulas, cleaning brushes, buckets, rags, data sheets, transporting boxes, etc. Water must be available for cleaning the equipment.

5. Procedure

5.1 Clean the hole to sampling elevation using whatever method is preferred that will ensure that the material to be sampled is not disturbed. In saturated sands and silts, withdraw the drill bit slowly to prevent loosening of the soil around the hole. When casing is used, it shall not be driven below sampling elevation. Water or drilling liquid within the casing must be maintained at all times at or above the natural ground water level; it is preferable to keep the hole filled.

5.2 Keep a careful record of drill penetration and sampler depth to ensure that the soil being sampled is the original soil at the bottom of the hole and is not contaminated by soil falling down from the sides of the hole. If there is any significant tendency for soil to fall from the sides of the hole to the bottom, use water, drilling mud, or casing, as necessary, in order to prevent this from happening. The process of jetting through an open-tube sampler and then sampling when the desired depth is reached shall not be permitted. The use of bottom-discharge bits shall not be allowed.

5.3 Assemble the sampling assembly and lower it carefully into the hole. With the cutting edge of the shoe resting on the bottom of the hole and the water level in the boring at the ground water level or above, push the sampling assembly into the soil by a continuous and rapid motion without impact or twisting. Push the assembly in far enough so that all cuttings, sludge, and soil disturbed by drilling are in the waste barrel; however, in no case push the assembly farther than the total length of the shoe, sampler, and waste barrel. Take care that none of the sample is lost due to improper operation of the check valve.

5.4 When the soils are so hard that they cannot be penetrated by pushing, using generally acceptable field procedures, and where recovery by pushing in sands is poor, use a driving hammer to drive the sampling assembly. In such a case, record the hammer weight, height of drop, and number of blows.

5.5 Carefully disassemble the sampling assembly in such a manner as to minimize soil disturbance as much as possible. Trim the soil flush with the ends of the sampling barrel, and remove the specimen (consisting of soil plus rings). Slip the container over the specimen-filled rings and cap both ends. Be certain that there is no movement of the specimen-filled rings inside the container and that the specimen was not disturbed while being removed from the barrel and placed in the container. Label the container in a suitable manner. If the soil in the bottom end ring does not protrude from the ring after removing the shoe, do not use the soil in the

000367

bottom ring for tests other than soil classification and moisture content. If the top ring or rings contain voids, depressions, or any material other than the soil which is being sampled, do not use the soil in this ring (or rings) for any purpose whatsoever. The filling of depressions in the end rings with additional soil shall not be permitted. Discard samples that appear to be disturbed or questionable.

5.6 Examine the soil remaining in the shoe for structure, consistency, color, and condition. Record these observations and include them in the report (see 6.1.8).

NOTE 3—The soil remaining in the shoe is relatively undisturbed and therefore may be suitable for a variety of laboratory tests.

6. Report

6.1 Data obtained in each boring shall be recorded in the field and shall contain the following:

6.1.1 Name and location of job,
6.1.2 Date of boring and times of start and finish,
6.1.3 Boring number and location,
6.1.4 Surface elevation, if available,
6.1.5 Sample number and depth,
6.1.6 Method of advancing sampler, penetration, and recovery lengths,
6.1.7 Description and size of sampler,
6.1.8 Description of soil (see Practice D 2488),
6.1.9 Thickness of layer,
6.1.10 Depth to water table or depth of overlying water and time of reading,
6.1.11 Size of casing, depth of cased hole,
6.1.12 Type of drilling equipment—description,
6.1.13 Names of personnel: crewman, field engineer, technician, etc.,
6.1.14 Weather conditions, and
6.1.15 General remarks.

7. Precision and Bias

7.1 This practice does not produce numerical or repeatable data and therefore a precision and bias statement is not applicable.

8. Keywords

8.1 consolidation; direct shear; identification; liner; representative; ring; sampling

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 3967 – 92 (Reapproved 1992)ε1

Standard Test Method for Splitting Tensile Strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 3967; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

ε1 NOTE—Section 10 was corrected editorially November 1992.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers testing apparatus, specimen preparation, and testing procedures for determining the splitting tensile strength of rock by diametral line compression of a disk.

NOTE 1—The tensile strength of rock determined by tests other than the straight pull test is designated as the "indirect" tensile strength and, specifically, the value obtained in Section 8 of this test is termed the "splitting" tensile strength.

1.2 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Document

2.1 *ASTM Standard:*

E 4 Practices for Load Verification of Testing Machines[2]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 By definition the tensile strength is obtained by the direct uniaxial tensile test. But the tensile test is difficult and expensive for routine application. The splitting tensile test appears to offer a desirable alternative, because it is much simpler and inexpensive. Furthermore, engineers involved in rock mechanics design usually deal with complicated stress fields, including various combinations of compressive and tensile stress fields. Under such conditions, the tensile strength should be obtained with the presence of compressive stresses to be representative of the field conditions. The splitting tensile strength test is one of the simplest tests in which such stress fields occur. Since it is widely used in practice, a uniform test method is needed for data to be comparable. A uniform test is also needed to insure positively that the disk specimens break diametrally due to tensile pulling along the loading diameter.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Loading Device,* to apply and measure axial load on the specimen, of sufficient capacity to apply the load at a rate conforming to the requirements in 7.3. It shall be verified at suitable time intervals in accordance with Practices E 4 and shall comply with the requirements prescribed therein.

4.2 *Bearing Surfaces*—The testing machine shall be equipped with two steel bearing blocks having a Rockwell hardness of not less than 58 HRC (Note 2). One of the blocks shall be spherically seated and the other a plain rigid block. The bearing faces shall not depart from a plane by more than 0.0005 in. (0.0127 mm) when the blocks are new and shall be maintained within a permissible variation of 0.001 in. (0.025 mm). The diameter of the spherically seated bearing face shall be at least as large as that of the test specimen but shall not exceed twice the diameter of the test specimen. The movable portion of the bearing block shall be held closely in the spherical seat, but the design shall be such that the bearing face can be rotated and tilted through small angles in any direction.

NOTE 2—False platens, with plane bearing faces conforming to the requirements of this standard, may be used. These shall consist of disks about ½ to ¾ in. (12.7 to 19.05 mm) thick, oil hardened to more than 58 HRC, and surface ground. With abrasive rocks these platens tend to roughen after a number of specimens have been tested, and hence need to be resurfaced from time to time.

4.2.1 During testing the specimen can be placed in direct contact with the machine bearing plates (or false platens, if used) (Fig. 1). Otherwise, curved supplementary bearing plates or bearing strips should be placed between the specimen and the machine bearing plates to reduce high stress concentration.

4.2.2 Curved supplementary bearing plates with the same specifications as described in 4.2 may be used to reduce the contact stresses. The radius of curvature of the supplementary bearing plates shall be so designed that their arc of contact with the specimen will in no case exceed 15° or that the width of contact is less than $D/6$, where D is the diameter of the specimen.

NOTE 3—Since the equation used in 8.1 for splitting tensile strength is derived based on a line load, the applied load shall be confined to a very narrow strip if the splitting tensile strength test is to be valid. But a line load creates extremely high contact stresses which cause premature cracking. A wider contact strip can reduce the problem significantly. Investigations show that an arc of contact smaller than 15° causes no more than 2 % of error in principal tensile stress while reducing the incidence of premature cracking greatly.

4.3 *Bearing Strips* (0.01 D thick cardboard cushion, where D is the specimen diameter; or up to 0.25 in. thick plywood cushion are recommended to place between the machine bearing surfaces (or supplementary bearing plates; if used)

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.12 on Rock Mechanics.

Current edition approved May 15, 1992. Published July 1992. Originally published as D 3967 – 81. Last previous edition D 3967 – 86ε1.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards,* Vols 03.01, 04.02, and 08.03.

000370

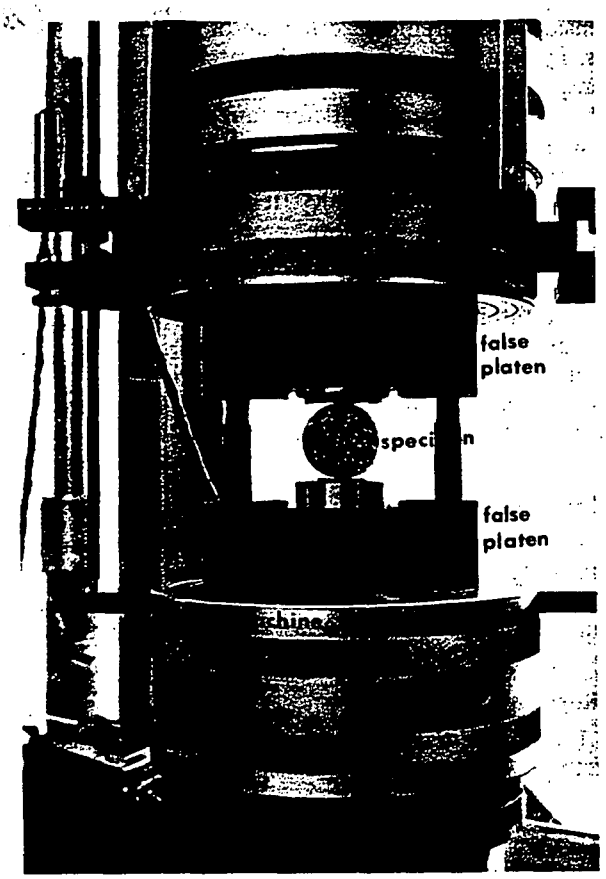


FIG. 1 One of the Proposed Testing Setup for Splitting Tensile Strength

and the specimen to reduce high stress concentration.

NOTE 4—Experiences have indicated that test results using the curved supplementary bearing plates and bearing strips, as specified in 4.2.2 and 4.3, respectively, do not significantly differ from each other, but there may be some consistent difference from the results of tests in which direct contact between the specimen and the machine platen is used.

5. Sampling

5.1 The specimen shall be selected from the core to represent a true average of the type of rock under consideration. This can be achieved by visual observations of mineral constituents, grain sizes and shape, partings, and defects such as pores and fissures.

6. Test Specimens

6.1 *Dimensions*—The test specimen shall be a circular disk with a thickness-to-diameter ratio (L/D) between 0.5 and 0.75. The diameter of the specimen shall be at least 10 times greater than the largest mineral grain constituent. A diameter of 1-15/16 in. (wireline core) will generally satisfy this criterion.

NOTE 5—When cores smaller than the specified minimum must be tested because of the unavailability of material, notation of the fact shall be made in the test report.

NOTE 6—If the specimen shows apparent anisotropic features such as bedding or schistosity, care shall be exercised in preparing the specimen so that the orientation of the loading diameter relative to anisotropic features can be determined precisely. Notation of this orientation shall be made in the test report.

6.2 *Number of specimens*—At least ten specimens shall be tested to obtain a meaningful average value. If the reproducibility of the test results is good (coefficient of variation less than 5 %), a smaller number of specimens is acceptable.

6.3 The circumferential surface of the specimen shall be smooth and straight to 0.020 in. (0.50 mm).

6.4 Cut the ends of the specimen parallel to each other and at right angles to the longitudinal axis. The ends of the specimen shall not deviate from perpendicular to the core axis by more than 0.5°. This requirement can be generally met by cutting the specimen with a precision diamond saw.

6.5 Determine the diameter of the specimen to the nearest 0.01 in. (0.25 mm) by taking the average of at least three measurements, one of which shall be along the loading diameter.

6.6 Determine the thickness of the specimen to the nearest 0.01 in. (0.25 mm) by taking the average of at least three measurements, one of which shall be at the center of the disk.

6.7 The moisture conditions of the specimen at the time of test can have a significant effect upon the indicated strength of the rock. The field moisture condition for the specimen shall be preserved until the time of test. On the other hand, there may be reasons for testing specimens at other moisture contents, including zero, and preconditioning of specimen when moisture control is needed. In any case, tailor the moisture content of the test specimen to the problem at hand and report it in accordance with 9.1.6.

7. Procedure

7.1 *Marking*—The desired vertical orientation of the specimen shall be indicated by marking a diametral line on each end of the specimen. These lines shall be used in centering the specimen in the testing machine to ensure proper orientation, and they are also used as the reference lines for thickness and diameter measurements.

NOTE 7—If the specimen is anisotropic, take care to ensure that the marked lines in each specimen refer to the same orientation.

7.2 *Positioning*—Position the test specimen to ensure that the diametral plane of the two lines marked on the ends of the specimen lines up with the center of thrust of the spherically seated bearing surface to within 0.05 in. (0.013 mm).

NOTE 8—A good line loading can often be attained by rotating the specimen about its axis until there is no light visible between the specimen and the loading platens. Back lighting helps in making this observation.

7.3 *Loading*—Apply a continuously increasing compressive load to produce an approximately constant rate of loading or deformation such that failure will occur within 1 to 10 min of loading, which should fall between 500 and 3000 psi/min of loading rate, depending on the rock type.

NOTE 9—Results of tests by several investigators indicate that rates loading at this range are reasonably free from rapid loading effects.

000371

Calculation

8.1 The splitting tensile strength of the specimen shall be calculated as follows:

$$\sigma_t = 2P/\pi LD$$

and the result shall be expressed to the appropriate number of significant figures (usually 3), where:

σ_t = splitting tensile strength, psi or Pa,
P = maximum applied load indicated by the testing machine, lbf (or N),
L = thickness of the specimen, in. (or m), and
D = diameter of the specimen, in. (or m).

9. Report

9.1 The report shall include as much of the following as possible:

9.1.1 Sources of the specimen including project name and location, and if known, storage environment. The location is frequently specified in terms of the borehole number and depth of specimen from collar of hole.

9.1.2 Physical description of the specimen including rock type; location and orientation of apparent weakness planes, bedding planes, and schistosity; large inclusions or inhomogeneities, if any.

9.1.3 Dates of sampling and testing.

9.1.4 Specimen diameter and length, conformance with dimensional requirements, direction of loading if anisotropy exists. Type of contact between the specimen and the loading platens.

9.1.5 Rate of loading or deformation rate.

9.1.6 General indication of moisture condition of the specimen at time of test such as as-received, saturated, laboratory air dry, or oven dry. It is recommended that the moisture condition be more precisely determined when possible and reported as either water content or degree of saturation.

9.1.7 Splitting tensile strength of each specimen as calculated, average splitting tensile strength of all specimens, standard deviation or coefficient of variation.

9.1.8 Type and location of failure. A sketch of the fractured specimen is recommended.

10. Precision and Bias

10.1 Data are being evaluated via an interlaboratory test program for rock properties to determine the precision of this test method. There is no accepted reference value of rock for this test method, therefore, bias cannot be determined.

11. Keywords

11.1 indirect tensile strength; rock; splitting tensile strength

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000372

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 4186 – 89

Standard Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils Using Controlled-Strain Loading[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4186; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the rate and magnitude of consolidation of soil when it is restrained laterally and drained axially and subjected to controlled-strain loading.

NOTE 1—The determination of the rate and magnitude of consolidation of soil when it is subjected to incremental loading is covered by Test Method D 2435.

1.2 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard. The values stated in inch-pound units are approximate.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 422 Test Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[2]
D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]
D 854 Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[2]
D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]
D 2216 Test Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[2]
D 2435 Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils[2]
D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]
D 4220 Practices for Perserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]
D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[2]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Information concerning rate and magnitude of consolidation settlement of soil is essential in the design of earth and earth-supported structures. The results of this method may be used to analyze or estimate one-dimensional consolidation settlements and rates.

3.2 *Strain Rate:*

3.2.1 It is recognized that consolidation test results are strain-rate dependent. Strain rates recommended in this standard are within the range usually encountered in Test Method D 2435.

3.2.2 Field strain rates vary greatly with time, depth below the loaded area, and radial distance from the loaded area. Because field rates cannot be accurately determined or predicted, it is not feasible to relate the laboratory-test strain rate to the field strain rate. However, it may be feasible to relate field pore pressure ratios (u_b σ_v) to laboratory pore pressure ratios. Further research is needed in this area.

3.2.3 The constant-rate-of-strain consolidation test does not address the problem of strain-rate effects but does provide a means for studying strain rate effects.

3.3 This method is not applicable to soils of high permeability, such as sands and other coarse-grained soils, or to partially saturated soils.

3.4 This method makes the following assumptions:

3.4.1 The ratio of soil permeability to soil compressibility is constant,

3.4.2 Flow of soil pore water occurs only in the vertical direction,

3.4.3 Darcy's law for flow through porous media applies,

3.4.4 The soil is saturated,

3.4.5 The soil is homogeneous,

3.4.6 The compressibility of the soil grains and water is negligible,

3.4.7 The log stress versus strain relationship is linear during a short-time interval of loading, and

3.4.8 The distribution of excess pore-water pressures across the specimen is parabolic.

4. Terminology

4.1 *Definitions*—The definitions of terms used in this method shall be in accordance with Terminology D 653.

4.2 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to this Standard:*

4.2.1 *back pressure*—the pore-water pressure at the drainage boundary.

4.2.2 *excess pore-water pressure*, u_b—the pore-water pressure developed at the impervious end of the specimen (usually the base of the specimen) in excess of the back pressure.

4.2.3 *applied vertical stress*, σ_v—the axial stress applied at the drainage boundary in excess of the back pressure.

4.2.4 *pore pressure ratio*—the excess pore water pressure divided by the applied vertical stress.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Axial Loading Device*—The axial compression device

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.05 on Structural Properties of Soils.

Current edition approved June 30, 1989. Published October 1989. Originally published as D 4186 – 82. Last previous edition D 4186 – 82.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000374

may be a screw jack driven by an electric motor through a geared transmission, a platform weighing scale equipped with a screw-jack activated yoke, a hydraulic or pneumatic loading device, or any other compression device with sufficient capacity and control to axially compress the specimen at the constant rate of strain prescribed in 9.6. If the axial loading device is outside the consolidometer, see 5.8.

5.2 *Axial Load-Measuring Device*—The axial load-measuring device may be a load ring, strain-gage load cell, hydraulic load cell, or any other load-measuring device capable of the accuracy prescribed in this paragraph and may be a part of the axial loading device. The axial load-measuring device shall be capable of measuring the axial load to an accuracy of 0.25 % of the maximum load applied to the specimen.

NOTE 2—For a constant rate of deformation to be transmitted from the axial loading device through the load-measuring device, it is important that the load-measuring device be relatively stiff. Some hydraulic load cells or proving rings may not provide sufficient stiffness.

5.3 *Pore-Water Pressure-Measuring Device*—The pore-water pressure-measuring device shall be a differential pressure transducer. Separate pressure transducers for measuring pore-water pressure at the base of the specimen and back pressures may be used if both have the required accuracy and both are monitored during the test. The device shall be constructed and located such that the pore-water pressure at the base of the specimen can be measured with negligible drainage of pore water from the base of the specimen on one side of the transducer. The other side of the transducer measures the back pressure applied to the specimen. Negligible drainage of pore water from the base of the specimen can be attained if the coefficient of volume change of the pore pressure-measuring device and de-aired, water-filled cavities connecting the device to the base of the specimen is less than 10^{-5} in.^{3}/psi (10^{-8} m^3/Pa). The pore pressure-measuring device shall be capable of measuring the pore-water pressure at the base of the specimen to an accuracy of 0.25 % of the maximum anticipated pore pressure.

5.4 *Back Pressure-Maintaining Device*, capable of applying and controlling the back pressure to within ±2.0 %. This device may consist of a reservoir, it may have reservoirs connected to the top and bottom of the specimen and partially filled with de-aired water; the upper part of the reservoir shall be connected to a compressed gas supply, the gas pressure being controlled by a pressure regulator and measured by a pressure gage. (See Note 3.) However, a hydraulic system pressurized by a deadweight acting on a piston or any other pressure-maintaining device capable of applying and controlling the back pressure to the tolerance prescribed in this paragraph may be used. A low volume-change valve shall be provided in the back-pressure measuring device as near as possible to the base of the specimen. This valve, when open, shall permit the application of back pressure to the base of the specimen; when closed, shall prevent the drainage of water from the specimen base and pore-water pressure-measuring device to the reservoir of the back pressure-maintaining device.

NOTE 3—All gas-water interfaces should be small in area relative to area of the specimen and should be in reservoirs connected to the consolidometer by a length of small diameter tubing.

5.5 *Deformation Indicator*—The deformation indicator shall be a dial indicator or displacement transducer having a sensitivity of 0.002 mm (0.0001 in.) and a range of at least 50 % of the specimen height, or other measuring device meeting these requirements for sensitivity and range.

5.6 *Timer*, indicating the elapsed testing time to the nearest 1 s for establishing the rates of strain application prescribed in 9.6.

5.7 *Balances*, devices for determining the mass of the soil specimens as well as portions of the apparatus. All measurements of mass should be accurate to 0.1 %.

5.8 *Consolidometer*, to hold the specimen in a ring that is fixed to a rigid base, with porous stones on each face of the specimen. Any potentially submerged parts of the consolidometer shall be made of a material that is noncorrosive in relation to the soil or other parts of the consolidometer. The bottom of the ring shall form a leak-proof seal with the rigid base capable of withstanding internal pressures of 1400 kPa (200 psi). The consolidometer shall be constructed such that placement of the specimen into the ring and consolidometer will not entrap air at the base of the specimen. The axial loading device and back pressure-maintaining device may be an integral part of the consolidometer. If the design of the consolidometer is such that back pressures affect axial load readings (due to pressure pushing the piston from the consolidometer), the change in readings with changes in back pressure shall be determined by calibration. The consolidometer shall conform to the following requirements:

5.8.1 *Minimum Specimen Diameter* shall be 50 mm (2.0 in.) and shall be at least 6 mm (0.25 in.) less than the diameter of the sample tube if using undisturbed samples, except as indicated in 7.2.

5.8.2 *Minimum Specimen Thickness* shall be 20 mm (0.75 in.) but shall be not less than 10 times the maximum grain diameter as determined in accordance with Method D 422.

5.8.3 *Minimum-Specimen-Diameter-to-Thickness Ratio* shall be 2.5.

5.8.4 *Thickness of the Ring* shall be such that, under assumed hydrostatic stress conditions in the specimen, the change in diameter of the ring will not exceed 0.03 % under the greatest load applied.

5.8.5 *Ring* shall be made of a material that is noncorrosive in relation to the soil and pore fluid being tested. The inner surface shall be highly polished or shall be coated with a low-friction material.

5.9 *Porous Disk:*

5.9.1 The porous stones shall be of silicon carbide, aluminum oxide, metal, or other suitable material that is not attacked by the soil or soil moisture and shall be of medium grade. For soft fine-grain soils, a fine-grade porous stone shall be used. The stone shall be fine enough that the soil will not extrude into the pores, but have sufficient permeability so as not to impede the flow of water from the specimen. (Exact criteria have not been established.)

5.9.2 The diameter of the top stone shall be 0.2 to 0.5 mm (0.01 to 0.02 in.) less than that of the ring.

5.9.3 The stone shall be thick enough to prevent breaking. The top stone shall be loaded through a corrosion-resistant plate of sufficient rigidity to prevent breakage of the stone.

5.10 *Moist Room*—In climates where moisture loss

000375

during preparation exceeds 0.1 %, the specimen shall be prepared in a moist room.

5.11 *Trimmer or Cylindrical Cutter*, for trimming the specimen down to the inside diameter of the consolidometer ring with a minimum of disturbance.

5.12 *Specimen-Measuring Device*, capable of measuring specimen height and diameter to the nearest 0.02 mm (0.001 in.).

5.13 *Drying Oven*, that can be maintained at 230 ± 9°F (110 ± 5°C).

5.14 *Miscellaneous Equipment*—Specimen trimming and carving tools, including spatulas, knives, and wire saws, moisture content cans, and data sheets as required.

6. Sampling

6.1 Sampling and field investigation shall be conducted in accordance with Practice D 1587. Specimens cut from block samples may also be used.

6.2 If suitable specimens can be obtained using Practice D 3550, then they may be used.

6.3 Transport and handling of samples shall be conducted in accordance with Practice D 4220.

7. Specimens

7.1 Prepare the specimen so moisture loss is less than 0.1 %; if necessary, prepare the specimen in a moist room. Trim the specimen to the inside diameter of the consolidometer ring. Fill with remolded soil any minor indentations in the specimen that would leave voids between the specimen and the ring. Place the specimen in the ring and trim it flush with the plane surface of the ring. The surface must be smooth. A specimen ring with the cutting edge attached provides the most accurate fit in most soils.

7.2 Organic soils, such as peat, and those soils that are easily damaged, may be transferred directly from the sampling tube to the ring where the ring and tube sizes have been selected for this purpose, provided that the cutting edge of the ring has the same diameter as the sample.

7.3 Determine the mass and height of the specimen. Record the specimen mass, height, and diameter.

NOTE 4—Precautions should be taken to minimize disturbance of the soil or changes in moisture and density during specimen preparation; vibration, distortion, and compression must be avoided.

7.4 Use the material trimmed adjacent to the specimen (see 7.1) to determine the natural moisture content (based on dry mass) in accordance with Method D 2216 and the specific gravity in accordance with Test Method D 854. Determine initial wet weight of the specimen and its volume from the mass, diameter, and height of the specimen ring. A more accurate determination of the specimen dry weight and moisture is found by drying the specimen at the end of the test (see 9.11). The value determined from the trimmings is approximate but permits determining the void ratio before the test is complete. The specific gravity can be estimated where an accurate void ratio is not needed.

7.5 The liquid and plastic limits as determined by Test Method D 4318, are useful in identifying the soil and in correlating the results of tests on different soils. These tests may also be performed on the trimmings.

8. Preparation of Apparatus

8.1 De-air the water in the back pressure-maintaining device and pore-water pressure-measuring system (see 5.3 and 5.4).

8.2 Saturate the porous stones with de-aired water.

8.3 Place the bottom porous stone in the consolidometer so as not to entrap any air in the pore water pressure-measuring system.

NOTE 5—Guidelines for system saturation may be found in one or more of the references listed at the end of this method.

9. Procedure

9.1 Assemble the specimen, ring, porous stones, and loading plate in the consolidometer. Avoid entrapping any air between the bottom porous stone and the specimen.

9.2 Place the consolidometer in the axial loading device, adjust the deformation indicator for the initial or zero reading, and apply a seating pressure of 5 kPa (100 lbf/ft^2). The axial loading device may be set to maintain constant seating pressure or maintain a constant specimen height. If a constant specimen height is desired, the seating pressure required to maintain constant specimen height must be recorded. (For very soft soils, a seating pressure of 2.5 kPa (50 lbf/ft^2), or less, is desirable.)

9.3 Check to ensure that the system formed by the water reservoirs of the back pressure-maintaining device and the consolidometer is completely de-aired. Open the valve connecting the consolidometer base to a de-aired water source and fill the reservoir to the appropriate level. Apply the appropriate value of back pressure simultaneously to the top and bottom of the specimen for the appropriate length of time to ensure complete saturation of the specimen, or to ensure as near complete saturation of the specimen as practical. The back pressure shall be applied slowly to specimens having low initial degrees of saturation to minimize deformation of the specimen and prestressing.

9.4 If necessary (see 5.8), adjust the axial load-measuring device to compensate for the load produced by the back pressure, or record the axial load produced on the axial load-measuring device by the back pressure (no volume change), and subtract this value from all load readings.

9.5 If the axial loading device is set to maintain constant seating pressure, record the amount of consolidation or swell that occurs prior to controlled-strain loading. If the axial loading device is set to maintain constant specimen height, record the decrease or increase in axial load that occurs prior to controlled-strain loading.

9.6 *Strain Rate Selection*—It is desirable to select a strain rate that will cause the absolute value of the excess pore-water pressure to be between 3 and 30 % (See Note 6) of the applied vertical stress at any time during the test.

NOTE 6—To achieve this, it is good practice to target a maximum value of 20 % and in no case may the maximum valve exceed 30 %. Guidelines for strain rate selection may be found in one or more of the references listed at the end of this method. The excess pore-water pressure may be limited to values less than 30 % for purposes of getting results consistent with incremental loading tests (Test Method D 2435).

9.7 *Axial Loading*—Close the valve connecting the specimen base to the back pressure-maintaining device and begin to apply the axial load so as to produce axial strain at the constant rate selected in 9.6. Record axial load, excess

000376

pore-water pressure, deformation, and elapsed time values at approximately 1-min intervals for the first 10 min, 5-min intervals for the next 1 h, and 15-min intervals thereafter. Take sufficient readings to define the stress-strain curve; hence more frequent readings may be required when significant changes in test parameters occur. Continuous recording or plotting, or both, may be used to obtain necessary data. Continue the loading until the desired stress or strain is obtained. When axial loading is complete, allow the excess pore-water pressure to dissipate at constant axial load or constant deformation and monitor axial load, deformation, and excess pore pressure.

9.8 *Secondary Compression* may be evaluated at any time during the test. To obtain secondary compression data, interrupt the controlled-strain axial loading at any preselected axial load and maintain the axial-load constant. Continue to record axial load, excess pore-water pressure, deformation, and elapsed time as suggested in 9.7. In addition, record deformation and elapsed time at time intervals of 0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 4, 8, 15, and 30 min and 1, 2, 4, 8, etc. h, measured from the time of interruption of controlled-strain loading. Readings shall continue at least until the slope of the characteristic linear secondary portion of the deformation versus log of time plot is apparent. If further axial loading is required, resume the controlled-strain axial loading at the previous constant strain rate and record axial load, excess pore water pressure, deformation, and elapsed time at the 1, 5, and 15-min intervals described in 9.7. The procedure in this paragraph may be repeated at subsequent higher stress levels, when necessary.

NOTE 7—Interruption of the controlled-strain test to obtain secondary compression data under constant load may affect the void ratio-effective stress relationship. Further research is needed to define these effects.

9.9 *Rebound*—When rebound or unloading characteristics are desired, unload the specimen at a constant strain rate so that a positive total vertical stress is maintained. (See Note 8.) The excess pore water pressure will become negative. Back pressures must be sufficiently high or strain rates sufficiently low to maintain the pressure at the base of the specimen greater than atmospheric pressure. If the coefficient of consolidation for the rebound portion is desired, back pressures must be sufficiently high or strain rates sufficiently low to maintain a greater pressure at the base of the specimen than the back pressure required for saturation. Record axial load, excess pore-water pressure, deformation, and elapsed time at the 1, 5, and 15-min intervals described in 9.7. When rebound is complete, allow the excess pore water pressure to dissipate at constant axial load or constant deformation.

NOTE 8—Some have found that unloading strain rates on the order of one-tenth the loading strain rates are sufficient to maintain positive total vertical stress on the specimen and keep reasonable values of pore water pressures at the base.

9.10 An alternative loading, unloading, or reloading schedule may be employed that reproduces the construction stress changes, or obtains better definition of some part of the stress-strain (or stress-void ratio) curve, or aids in interpreting the field behavior of the soil. This shall be indicated clearly on the test results.

9.11 At the completion of the test, remove the entire specimen from the consolidometer, weigh, oven-dry, and reweigh to obtain the weight of solids.

10. Calculation

10.1 Calculate the initial void ratio, water content, unit weight, and degree of saturation, based on the dry weight of the total specimen. Specimen volume is computed from values measured in 7.3. Compute volume of solids by dividing the dry weight of specimen by the specific gravity of the solids. The volume of voids is assumed to be the difference between the specimen volume and the volume of the solids.

10.2 Calculate void ratio, e (or alternatively, axial strain, ϵ), total vertical stress, σ_v, and average effective vertical stress, σ'_v for each set of values recorded in 9.7 through 9.9.

10.2.1 Calculate the void ratio as follows:

$$e = e_0 - \Delta H/H_s$$

where:

e_0 = initial void ratio,
ΔH = deformation,
H_s = height of solids; volume of solids divided by the cross-sectional area of the specimen.

10.2.2 Calculate the axial strain as follows:

$$\epsilon = \Delta H/H_0$$

where:

H_0 = initial height of the specimen as measured in 7.3.

10.2.3 Calculate the applied axial stress as follows:

$$\sigma_v = P/A$$

where:

P = applied axial load (see Note 9), and
A = cross-sectional area of the specimen.

10.2.4 Calculate the average effective vertical stress (see 3.4.8) as follows:

NOTE 9—If applied axial load is measured outside the cell, the load must be corrected to account for the force caused by the back pressure acting on the piston.

$$\sigma'_v = (\sigma_v^3 - 2\sigma_v^2 u_b + \sigma_v u_b^2)^{1/3}$$

where:

u_b = excess pore-water pressure measured at the base of the specimen.

10.3 When the excess pore-water pressure measured at the base of the specimen exceeds 3 kPa (0.5 psi), calculate the coefficient of consolidation, C_v, for the interval between two sets of readings (see 3.4.7), recorded in 9.7 through 9.9, as follows:

$$c_v = -\frac{H^2 \log\left[\frac{\sigma_{v2}}{\sigma_{v1}}\right]}{2\Delta t \log\left[1 - \frac{u_b}{\sigma_v}\right]}$$

where:

σ_{v1} = applied axial stress at time t_1
σ_{v2} = applied axial stress at time t_2
H = average specimen height between t_1 and t_2
Δt = elapsed time between t_1 and $t_2 = t_2 - t_1$
u_b = average excess pore pressure between t_2 and t_1, and
σ_v = average total applied axial stress between t_2 and t_1.

000377

If strain rates are changed at any time during the test, the values of C_v calculated at those times may be inaccurate.

NOTE 10—The above averages are obtained from one-half the sum of the two values.

10.3.1 It is best to compute C_v between consecutive readings and assign the value of C_v to the average value of σ'_v between the two readings.

10.3.2 If the values of effective vertical stress do not change significantly between consecutive readings, the time interval may be increased.

11. Report

11.1 The report shall include the following information:

11.1.1 Identification and description of sample, including whether soil is undisturbed, remolded, compacted, or otherwise prepared,

11.1.2 Initial moisture content,

11.1.3 Initial wet unit weight,

11.1.4 Initial percent saturation,

11.1.5 If void ratio calculations are made, value of specific gravity of solids in the calculations,

11.1.6 Condition of test (value of back pressure, swell or consolidation during backpressure or seating pressure necessary to maintain constant height, strain rate(s) during loading and unloading),

11.1.7 Plot of void ratio versus log of average effective vertical stress or axial strain versus log of average effective vertical stress,

11.1.8 Plot of coefficient of consolidation versus log of average effective vertical stress,

11.1.9 Plot of pore pressure versus log of average effective vertical stress.

11.1.10 Plot of pore pressure ratio versus log of average effective vertical stress.

11.1.11 For tests in which secondary compression data were obtained, a plot of deformation versus log of time shall be provided, and

11.1.12 Departures from the procedure outlined, including special loading sequences.

12. Precision

12.1 Undisturbed soil samples from homogeneous soil deposits at the same location often exhibit significantly different consolidation properties. No method exists to evaluate the precision of a group of consolidation tests on undisturbed samples, due to sample variability.

12.2 A suitable test material and method of sample preparation have not been developed for the determination of laboratory variances, due to the difficulty in producing identical cohesive soil samples. No estimates of precision for this test method are available.

REFERENCES

(1) Black, D. K., and Lee, K. L., "Saturated Laboratory Samples by Back Pressure," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*, ASCE, Vol 99, No. SM1, Proc Paper 9484, 1973, pp. 75–93.

(2) Gorman, C. T., "Constant-Rate-of-Strain and Controlled-Gradient Consolidation Testing," *Research Report 448*, Division of Research, Kentucky Department of Transportation, May 1976.

(3) Gorman, C. T., "Strain-Rate Selection in the Constant-Rate-of-Strain Consolidation Test," *Research Report 556*, Division of Research, Kentucky Department of Transportation, October 1980.

(4) Deen, R. C., Drnevich, V. P., Gorman, C. T., and Hopkins, T. C., "Constant-Rate-of-Strain and Controlled-Gradient Consolidation Testing," *Geotechnical Testing Journal*, ASTM, Vol 1, No. 1, March 1978, pp. 3–15.

(5) Lowe, John, III, "New Concepts in Consolidation and Settlement Analysis," *Journal of Geotechnical Division*, ASCE, Vol 100, No.GT6, Proc Paper 10623, June 1974, pp. 571–612.

(6) Lowe, John, III, Jonas, E., and Obrician, V., "Controlled Gradient Consolidation Test," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*, ASCE, Vol 95, No. SM1, January 1969.

(7) Lowe, John, III, Zaccheo, P. F., and Feldman, H. S., "Consolidation Testing with Back Pressure," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*, ASCE, Vol 90, No. SM5, September 1964.

(8) Smith, R. E., and Wahls, H. E., "Consolidation under Constant Rates of Strain," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*, ASCE, Vol 95, No. SM2, March 1969.

(9) Wissa, A. E. Z., Christian, J. T., Davis, E. H., and Heiberg, S., "Consolidation at Constant Rate of Strain," *Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division*, ASCE, Vol 97, No. SM10, October 1971.

(10) Armour, D.W., Jr., and Drnevich, V.P., "Improved Techinques for the Constant-Rate-of-Strain Consolidation of Soils: Testing and Evaluation, ASTM STP 892, Yong R.N. and Townsend F.C., Eds., American Society for Testing Materials, Phiadelphia, 1986, pp. 170-183.

(11) Mesri, G., and Castro, A., "C/C Concept and K During Secondary Compression," Journal of the Geotechnical Engineering Div., ASCE, Vol. 113, No. GT3, March 1987, pp. 230-247.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4220; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 These practices cover procedures for preserving soil samples immediately after they are obtained in the field and accompanying procedures for transporting and handling the samples.

1.2 *Limitations*—These practices are not intended to address requirements applicable to transporting of soil samples known or suspected to contain hazardous materials.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.* See Section 7.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 420 Practice for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock for Engineering Purposes[2]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 1452 Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings[2]

D 1586 Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 Terminology in these practices is in accordance with Terminology D 653.

4. Summary of Practices

4.1 The various procedures are given under four groupings as follows:

4.1.1 *Group A*—Samples for which only general visual identification is necessary.

4.1.2 *Group B*—Samples for which only water content and classification tests, proctor and relative density, or profile logging is required, and bulk samples that will be remolded or compacted into specimens for swell pressure, percent swell, consolidation, permeability, shear testing, CBR, stabilimeter, etc.

4.1.3 *Group C*—Intact, naturally formed or field fabricated, samples for density determinations; or for swell pressure, percent swell, consolidation, permeability testing and shear testing with or without stress-strain and volume change measurements, to include dynamic and cyclic testing.

4.1.4 *Group D*—Samples that are fragile or highly sensitive for which tests in Group C are required.

4.2 The procedure(s) to be used should be included in the project specifications or defined by the designated responsible person.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 Use of the various procedures recommended in these practices is dependent on the type of samples obtained (Practice D 420), the type of testing and engineering properties required, the fragility and sensitivity of the soil, and the climatic conditions. In all cases, the primary purpose is to preserve the desired inherent conditions.

5.2 The procedures presented in these practices were primarily developed for soil samples that are to be tested for engineering properties, however, they may be applicable for samples of soil and other materials obtained for other purposes.

6. Apparatus

6.1 The type of materials and containers needed depend upon the conditions and requirements listed under the four groupings A to D in Section 4, and also on the climate and transporting mode and distance.

6.1.1 *Sealing Wax*, includes microcrystalline wax, paraffin, beeswax, ceresine, carnaubawax, or combinations thereof.

6.1.2 *Metal Disks*, about 1/16 in. (about 2 mm) thick and having a diameter slightly less than the inside diameter of the tube, liner, or ring and to be used in union with wax or caps and tape, or both.

6.1.3 *Wood Disks*, prewaxed, 1 in. (25 mm) thick and having a diameter slightly less than the inside diameter of the liner or tube.

6.1.4 *Tape*, either waterproof plastic, adhesive friction, or duct tape.

6.1.5 *Cheesecloth*, to be used in union with wax in alternative layers.

6.1.6 *Caps*, either plastic, rubber or metal, to be placed over the end of thin-walled tubes (Practice D 1587), liners and rings (Practice D 3550), in union with tape or wax.

6.1.7 *O'ring (Sealing End Caps)*, used to seal the ends of samples within thin-walled tubes, by mechanically expanding an O'ring against the tube wall.

---

[1] These practices are under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and are the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved July 13, 1989. Published September 1989. Originally published as D 4220 – 83. Last previous edition D 4220 – 83.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

NOTE 1—Plastic expandable end caps are preferred. Metal expandable end caps seal equally well; however, long-term storage may cause corrosion problems.

6.1.8 *Jars*, wide mouthed, with rubber-ringed lids or lids lined with a coated paper seal and of a size to comfortably receive the sample, commonly ½ pt (250 mL), 1 pt (500 mL) and quart-sized (1000 mL).

6.1.9 *Bag*, either plastic, burlap with liner, burlap or cloth type (Practice D 1452).

6.1.10 *Packing Material*, to protect against vibration and shock.

6.1.11 *Insulation*, either granule (bead), sheet or foam type, to resist temperature change of soil or to prevent freezing.

6.1.12 *Sample Cube Boxes*, for transporting cube (block) samples. Constructed with ½ to ¾ in. (13 to 19 mm) thick plywood (marine type).

6.1.13 *Cylindrical Sample Containers*, somewhat larger in dimension than the thin-walled tube or liner samples, such as cylindrical frozen food cartons.

6.1.14 *Shipping Containers*, either box or cylindrical type and of proper construction to protect against vibration, shock, and the elements, to the degree required.

NOTE 2—The length, girth and weight restrictions for commercial transportation must be considered.

6.1.15 *Identification Material*—This includes the necessary writing pens, tags, and labels to properly identify the sample(s).

7. Precautions

7.1 Special instructions, descriptions, and marking of containers must accompany any sample that may include radioactive, chemical, toxic, or other contaminant material.

7.2 Interstate transportation containment, storage, and disposal of soil samples obtained from certain areas within the United States and the transportation of foreign soils into or through the United States are subject to regulations established by the U.S. Department of Agriculture, Animal, and Plant Health Service, Plant Protection and Quarantine Programs, and possibly to regulations of other federal, state, or local agencies.

7.2.1 Samples shipped by way of common carrier or U.S. Postal Service must comply with the Department of Transportation Hazardous Materials Regulation, 49CRF Part 172.

7.3 Sample traceability records (see Fig. 1) are encouraged and should be required for suspected contaminated samples.

7.3.1 The possession of all samples must be traceable, from collection to shipment to laboratory to disposition, and should be handled by as few persons as possible.

7.3.2 The sample collector(s) should be responsible for initiating the sample traceability record; recording the project, sample identification and location, sample type, date, and the number and types of containers.

7.3.3 A separate traceability record shall accompany each shipment.

7.3.4 When transferring the possession of samples the person(s) relinquishing and receiving the samples shall sign, date, record the time, and check for completeness of the traceability record.

8. Procedure

8.1 *All Samples*—Properly identify samples with tags, labels, and markings prior to transporting them as follows:

8.1.1 Job name or number, or both,

8.1.2 Sampling date,

8.1.3 Sample/boring number and location,

8.1.4 Depth or elevation, or both,

8.1.5 Sample orientation,

8.1.6 Special shipping or laboratory handling instructions, or both, including sampling orientation, and

8.1.7 Penetration test data, if applicable (Test Method D 1586).

8.1.8 Subdivided samples must be identified while maintaining association to the original sample.

8.1.9 If required, sample traceability record.

8.2 *Group A*—Transport samples in any type of container by way of available transportation. If transported commercially, the container need only meet the minimum requirements of the transporting agency and any other requirements necessary to assure against sample loss.

8.3 *Group B:*

8.3.1 Preserve and transport these samples in sealed, moistureproof containers. All containers shall be of sufficient thickness and strength to ensure against breakage and moisture loss. The container types include: plastic bags or pails, glass or plastic (provided they are waterproof) jars, thin walled tubes, liners, and rings. Wrap cylindrical and cube samples in suitable plastic film or aluminum foil, or both, (Note 3) and coat with several layers of wax, or seal in several layers of cheesecloth and wax.

8.3.2 Transport these samples by any available transportation. Ship these samples as prepared or placed in larger shipping containers, including bags, cardboard, or wooden boxes or barrels.

NOTE 3—Some soils may cause holes to develop in aluminum foil, due to corrosion. Avoid direct contact where adverse affects to sample composition are a concern.

8.3.3 *Plastic Bags*—Place the plastic bags as tightly as possible around the sample, squeezing out as much air as possible. They shall be 3 mil or thicker to prevent leakage.

8.3.4 *Glass-Plastic Jars*—If the jar lids are not rubber ringed or lined with new waxed paper seals, seal the lids with wax.

8.3.5 *Plastic Pails*—If the plastic pail lids are not air tight, seal them with wax or tape.

8.3.6 *Thin-Walled Tubes:*

8.3.6.1 *Expandable Packers*—The preferred method of sealing sample ends within tubes is with plastic, expandable packers.

8.3.6.2 *Wax With Disks*—For short-term sealing, paraffin wax is acceptable. For long term sealing (in excess of 3 days) use microcrystalline waxes or combine with up to 15 % beeswax or resin, for better adherence to the wall of the tube and to reduce shrinkage. Several thin layers of wax are preferred over one thick layer. The minimum final thickness shall be 0.4 in. (10 mm).

000381

8.3.6.3 *End Caps*—Seal metal, rubber, or plastic end caps with tape. For long term storage (longer than 3 days), also dip them in wax, applying two or more layers of wax.

8.3.6.4 *Cheesecloth and Wax*—Use alternating layers (a minimum of two each) of cheesecloth and wax to seal each end of the tube and stabilize the sample.

NOTE 4—Where necessary, spacers or appropriate packing materials, or both, must be placed prior to sealing the tube ends to provide proper confinement. Packing material must be nonabsorbent and must maintain its properties to provide the same degree of continued sample support.

8.3.7 *Liners and Rings*—Refer to 8.3.6.3 or 8.3.6.4.

8.3.8 *Exposed Samples:*

8.3.8.1 *Cylindrical, Cubical or Other Samples Wrapped in Plastic*, such as polyethylene and polypropylene, or foil should be further protected with a minimum of three coats of wax.

8.3.8.2 *Cylindrical and Cube Samples Wrapped in Cheesecloth and Wax*, shall be sealed with a minimum of three layers of each, placed alternatively.

8.3.8.3 *Carton Samples (Frozen Food Cartons)*—Samples placed in these containers must be situated so that wax can be poured completely around the sample. The wax should fill the void between the sample and container wall. The wax should be sufficiently warm to flow, but not so hot that it penetrates the pores of the soil. Generally, the samples should be wrapped in plastic or foil before being surrounded with wax.

8.4 *Group C:*

8.4.1 Preserve and seal these samples in containers as covered in 8.3. In addition, they must be protected against vibration and shock, and protected from extreme heat or cold.

8.4.2 Samples transported by the sampling or testing agency personnel on seats of automobiles and trucks need only be placed in cardboard boxes, or similar containers into which the sealed samples fit snugly, preventing bumping, rolling, dropping, etc.

8.4.3 For all other methods of transporting samples, including automobile trunk, bus, parcel services, truck, boat, air, etc., place the sealed samples in wood, metal, or other type of suitable shipping containers that provide cushioning or insulation, or both, for each sample and container. Avoid transporting by any agency whose handling of containers is suspect.

8.4.4 The cushioning material (sawdust, rubber, polystyrene, urethane foam, or material with similar resiliency) should completely encase each sample. The cushioning between the samples and walls of the shipping containers should have a minimum thickness of 1 in. (25 mm). A minimum thickness of 2 in. (50 mm) shall be provided on the container floor.

8.4.5 When required, the samples should be shipped in the same orientation in which they were sampled. Otherwise, special conditions shall be provided such as freezing, controlled drainage, or sufficient confinement, or a combination thereof, to maintain sample integrity.

8.5 *Group D:*

8.5.1 The requirements of 8.4 must be met, in addition to the following:

8.5.1.1 Samples should be handled in the same orientation in which they were sampled, including during transportation or shipping, with appropriate markings on the shipping container.

8.5.1.2 For all modes of private or commercial transportation, the loading, transporting and unloading of the shipment containers should be supervised as much as possible by a qualified person.

NOTE 5—A qualified person may be an engineer, geologist, soil scientist, soils technician or responsible person designated by the project manager.

8.6 *Shipping Containers* (see Figs. 2 to 7 for typical containers):

8.6.1 The following features should be included in the design of the shipping container for Groups C and D.

8.6.1.1 It should be reuseable,

8.6.1.2 It should be constructed so that the samples can be maintained, at all times, in the same position as when sampled or packed, or both,

8.6.1.3 It should include sufficient packing material to cushion or isolate, or both, the tubes from the adverse effect of vibration and shock, and

8.6.1.4 It should include sufficient insulating material to prevent freezing, sublimation and thawing, or undesirable temperature changes.

8.6.2 *Wood Shipping Containers:*

8.6.2.1 Wood is preferred over metal. Outdoor (marine) plywood having a thickness of ½ and ¾ in. (13 to 19 mm) may be used. The top (cover) should be hinged and latched. or fastened with screws.

8.6.2.2 The cushioning requirements are given in 8.4.4.

8.6.2.3 For protection against freezing or extreme temperature variation, the entire shipping container should be lined with a minimum insulation thickness of 2 in. (50 mm).

8.6.3 *Metal Shipping Containers*—The metal shipping containers must incorporate cushioning and insulation material to minimum thicknesses in accordance with 8.6.2. although slightly greater thicknesses would be appropriate. Alternatively, the cushion effect could be achieved with a spring suspension system, or any other means that would provide similar protection.

8.6.4 *Styrene Shipping Containers*—Bulk styrene with slots cut to the dimensions of the sample tube or liner. A protective outer box of plywood or reinforced cardboard is recommended.

8.6.5 *Other Containers*—Containers constructed with laminated fiberboard, plastic or reinforced cardboard outer walls, and properly lined, may also be used.

9. Reporting

9.1 The data obtained in the field shall be recorded and should include the following:

9.1.1 Job name or number, or both,

9.1.2 Sampling date(s),

9.1.3 Sample/boring number(s) and location(s),

9.1.4 Depth(s) or elevation(s), or both,

9.1.5 Sample orientation,

000382

Sample Identification/Traceability Record
(Controlled Document)

Project: _____ W.O. _____
Shipped by: _____
Shipped to: _____ Attention of:
Comments: _____ Hazardous materials suspected? (yes/no)
_____

Sampling Point	Location	Field ID #	Date	Sample Type	No. of Containers	Analysis/Test Required	(optional) Lab ID

Sampler(s) (signature) _____

Field ID	Relinquished by: (signature)	Date/Time		Received by: (signature)	Date/Time		Comments

Shipment prepared by: (signature) _____ Date/Time _____ Shipment method: _____

Received for Lab by: (signature) _____ Date/Time _____ Comments _____
_____

Receiving Laboratory: Please return original form after signing for receipt of samples. _____

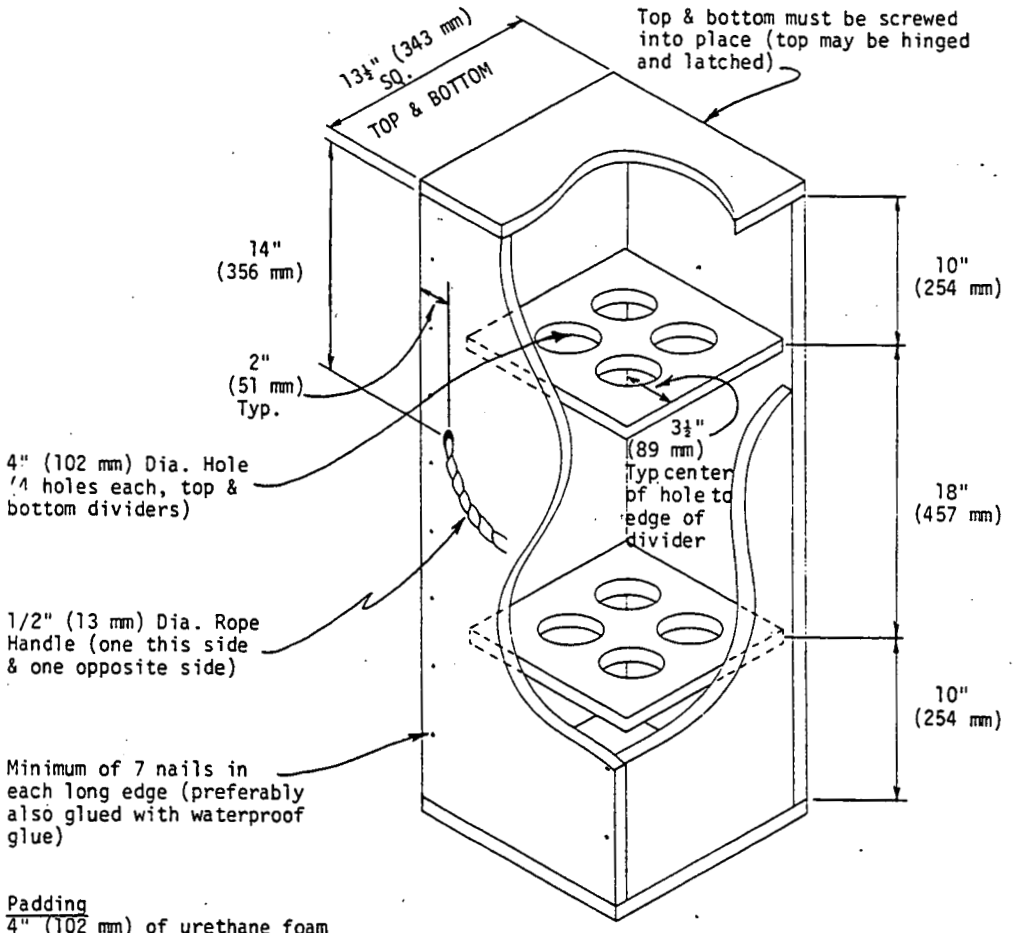
FIG. 1 Example Layout of Record Form

9.1.6 Groundwater observation, if any,
9.1.7 Method of sampling, and penetration test data, if applicable,
9.1.8 Sample dimensions,
9.1.9 Soil description (Practice D 2488),
9.1.10 Names of technician/crewman, engineer, project chief, etc.,
9.1.11 Comments regarding contaminated or possible contaminated samples,
9.1.12 If used, a copy of traceability records,
9.1.13 Weather conditions, and
9.1.14 General remarks.

10. Precision and Bias

10.1 This practice provides qualitative and general information only. Therefore, a precision and bias statement is not applicable.

000383

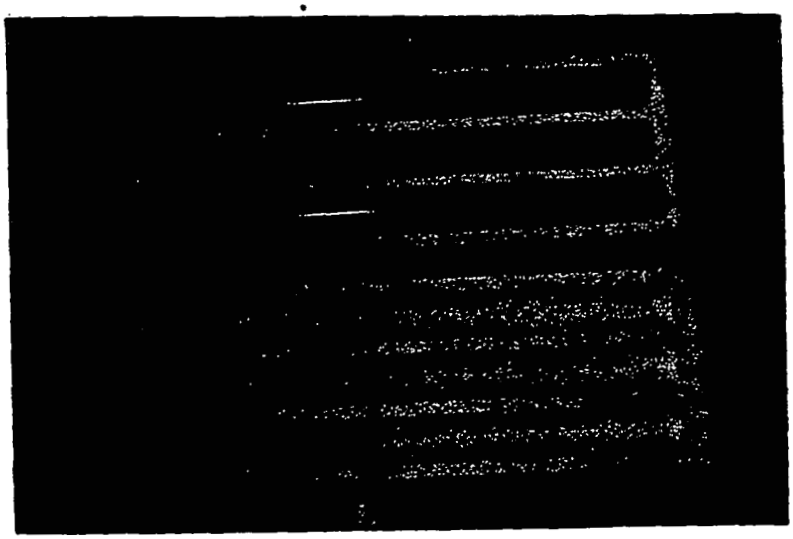


Padding
4" (102 mm) of urethane foam (or equivalent) in the bottom of the box. 1" (25 mm) around the tubes and on top.

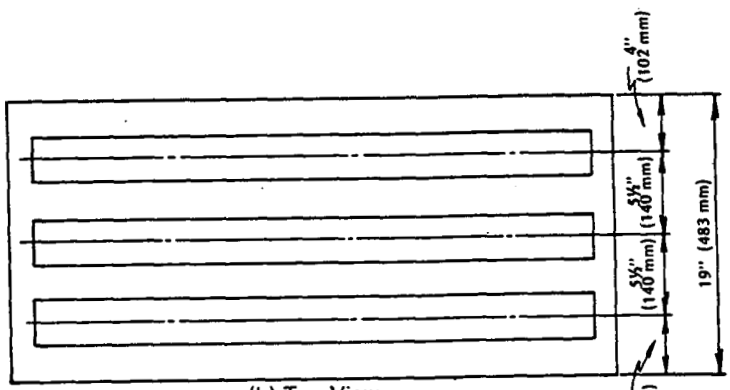
Material
3/4" (19 mm) thick plywood (exterior grade)

FIG. 2 Shipping Box for 3-in. (76-mm) Thin-Walled Tubes

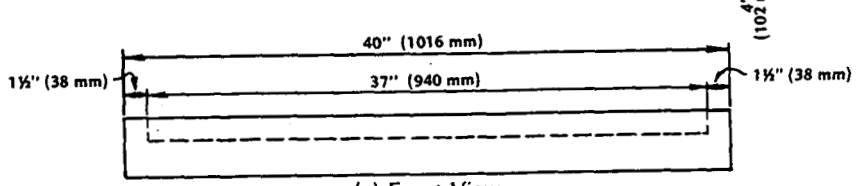
000384



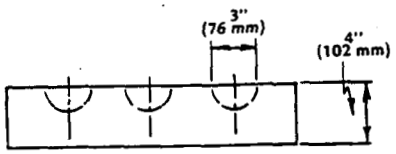
(a) Photo of Open Box For 5" (127 mm) Tubes



(b) Top View



(c) Front View

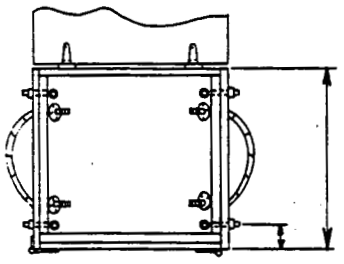


(d) Side View

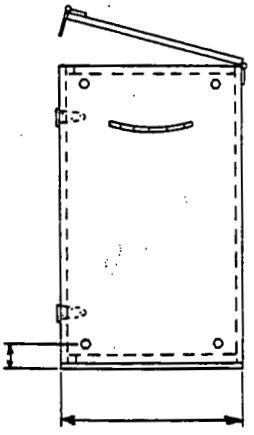
NOTE—Top and bottom halves are identical.

FIG. 3 Styrene Shipping Container for 3-in. (76-mm) Thin-Walled Tubes

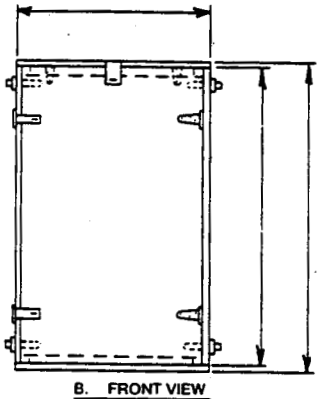
000385



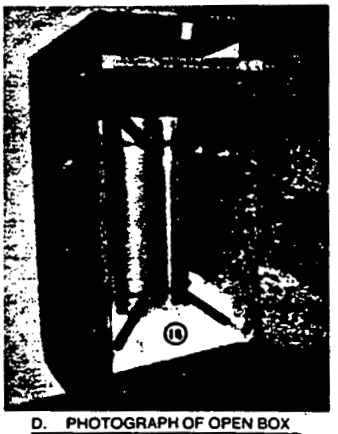
A. TOP VIEW
(lid open)



C. SIDE VIEW



B. FRONT VIEW



D. PHOTOGRAPH OF OPEN BOX

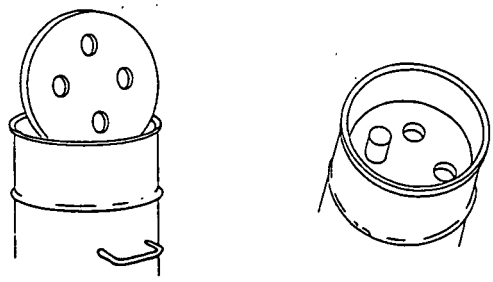
BILL OF MATERIALS

Item No.	Description of Item	Quantity
1	*Plywood*, 4 ft by 8 ft by ¾ in. (1220 mm by 2440 mm by 19.1 mm) exterior, Grade AC	1 Sheet
2	*Hinge*, strap, 4 in. (102 mm), heavy duty with screws	4 Each
3	*Hasp*, hinged, 4½ in. (114 mm), with screws	3 Each
4	*Screw, Wood, Steel, Flathead*, No. 10 by 1¾ in. (44.5 mm)	72 Each
5	*Bolt, Machine*, ⅜ in. (9.5 mm), with nut to secure hasps	3 Each
6	*Washer*, flat, ⅜ in. (9.5 mm)	3 Each
7	*Eye Bolt*, ½ by 2 in. (6.4 mm by 51 mm), zinc-plated, with nut	8 Each
8	*Washer*, flat, ¼ in. (6.4 mm), for hasp bolt	8 Each
9	*S Hooks*, 2 in. (51 mm), open, zinc-plated	8 Each
10	*Clamp*, adjustable, hose, steel, worm screw adjustment	2 Each
11	*Spring*, expansion	8 Each
12	*Adhesive*, woodworking	1 lb (454 g)
13	*Rope*, nylon, ½-in. (12.7-mm) diameter, solid braided	5 ft (1524 mm)
14	*Cushioning Material*, expanded polystyrene foam	10 ft^3 (0.28 m^3)

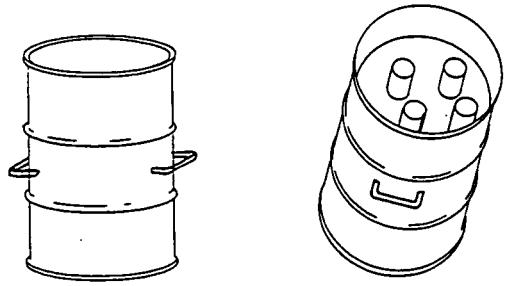
NOTES—(a) All wooden components can be sawed from one sheet of plywood.
(b) This shipping box will accommodate approximately three 3-in. (76-mm) diameter tubes or two 5-in (127-mm) diameter tubes up to 30 in. (762 mm) in length. For longer tubes the inside height of the box must be a minimum of 6-in. (152 mm) greater than the length of the tube.
(c) All joints to be glued and fastened with screws.
(d) Stencil all sides as follows (See Views B and C).
TO PROTECT FROM FREEZING
(e) After suspending samples as indicated above, all void space must be filled with a suitable resilient packing material.

FIG. 4 Suspension System Container for Thin-Walled Tubes

000386



(a) 55-gallon (0.21 m^3) oil barrels with sections of styrofoam insulation; welded handles on each side.



(b) Same as (a) showing barrel ready for shipment. Steel lids bolted on to provide tight seal.

NOTE—Two in. (51 mm) of foam rubber covers 2 in. of styrofoam at the base. One in. (25 mm) of foam rubber overlays the top of the tubes, and the remaining space to the lid is filled with styrofoam.

FIG. 5 Shipping Barrel for Thin-Walled Tubes

000387

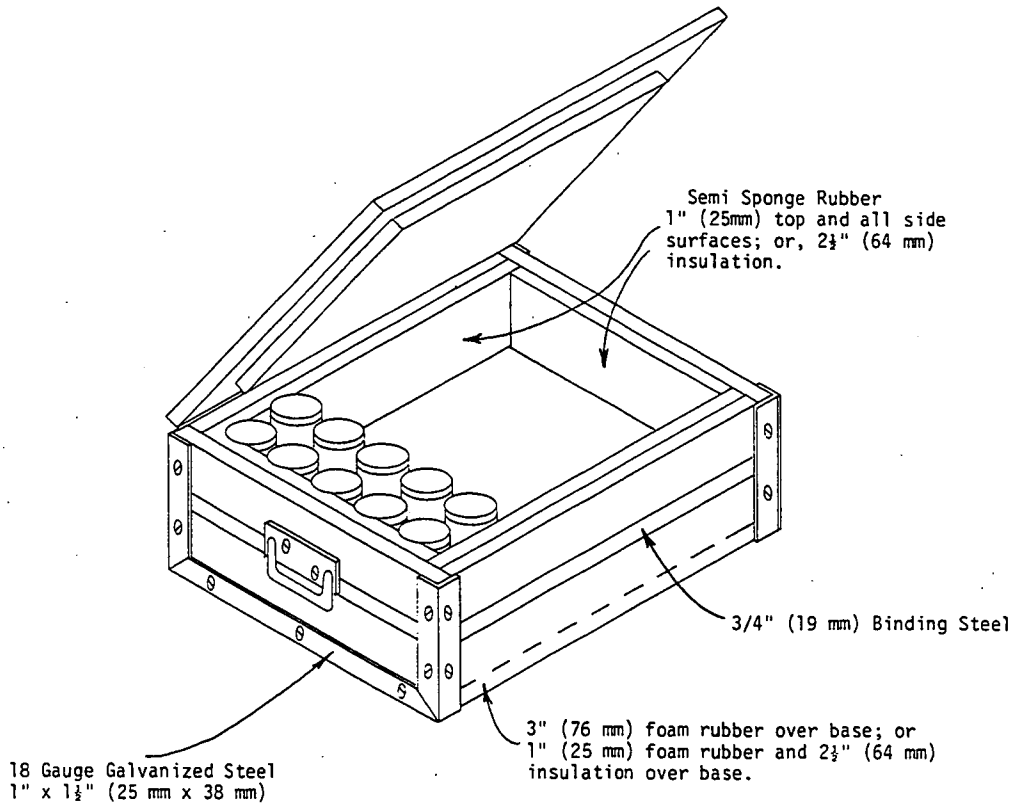
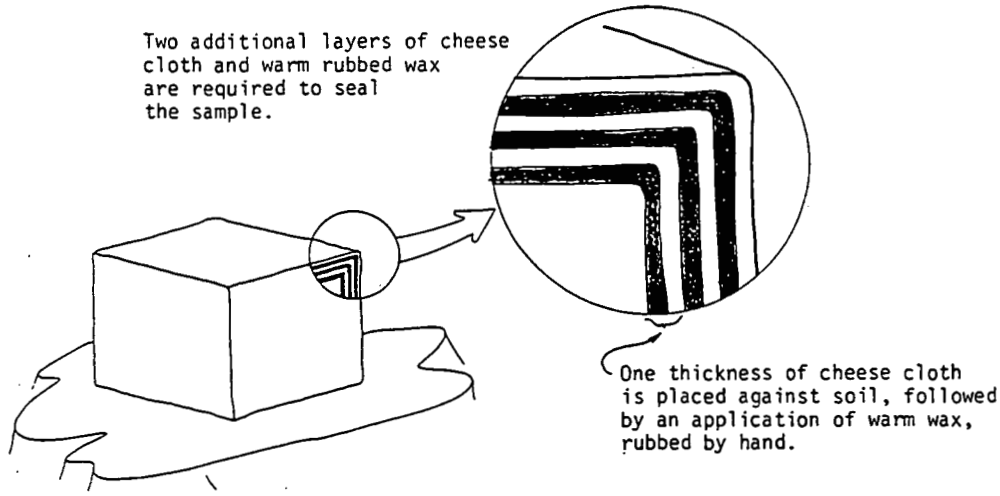
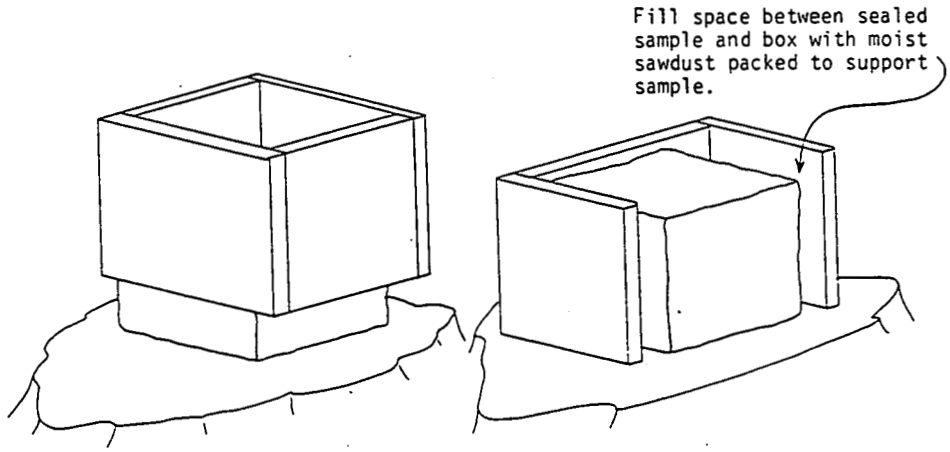


FIG. 6 Shipping Box for Liner (Short Tube) or Ring Samples



A. METHOD FOR SEALING HAND-CUT UNDISTURBED SAMPLES



B. ENCASE EASILY DISTURBED SAMPLES IN BOX PRIOR TO CUTTING

Box constructed with 1/2"-3/4" (13 - 19 mm) exterior plywood.

FIG. 7 Preparing and Packaging a Block Sample

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000389

Standard Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4318; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the liquid limit, plastic limit, and the plasticity index of soils as defined in Section 3.

1.1.1 Two procedures for preparing test specimens and two procedures for performing the liquid limit are provided as follows:

A Multipoint test using a wet preparation procedure, described in Sections 10.1, 11, and 12.

B Multipoint test using a dry preparation procedure, described in Sections 10.2, 11, and 12.

C One-point test using a wet preparation procedure, described in Sections 13, 14, and 15.

D One-point test using a dry preparation procedure, described in Sections 13, 14, and 15.

The procedure to be used shall be specified by the requesting authority. If no procedure is specified, Procedure A shall be used.

NOTE 1—Prior to the adoption of this test method, a curved grooving tool was specified as part of the apparatus for performing the liquid limit test. The curved tool is not considered to be as accurate as the flat tool described in 6.2 since it does not control the depth of the soil in the liquid limit cup. However, there are some data which indicate that typically the liquid limit is slightly increased when the flat tool is used instead of the curved tool.

1.1.2 The plastic limit test procedure is described in Sections 16, 17, and 18. The plastic limit test is performed on material prepared for the liquid limit test. In effect, there are two procedures for preparing test specimens for the plastic limit test.

1.1.3 The procedure for calculating the plasticity index is given in Section 19.

1.2 The liquid limit and plastic limit of soils (along with the shrinkage limit) are often collectively referred to as the Atterberg limits in recognition of their formation by Swedish soil scientist, A. Atterberg. These limits distinguish the boundaries of the several consistency states of plastic soils.

1.3 As used in this test method, soil is any natural aggregation of mineral or organic materials, mixtures of such materials, or artificial mixtures of aggregates and natural mineral and organic particles.

1.4 The multipoint liquid limit procedure is somewhat more time consuming than the one-point procedure when both are performed by experienced operators. However, the one-point procedure requires the operator to judge when the test specimen is approximately at its liquid limit. In cases where this is not done reliably, the multipoint procedure is as fast as the one-point procedure and provides additional precision due to the information obtained from additional trials. It is particularly recommended that the multipoint procedure be used by inexperienced operators.

1.5 The correlations on which the calculations of the one-point procedure are based may not be valid for certain soils, such as organic soils or soils from a marine environment. The liquid limit of these soils should therefore be determined by the multipoint procedure (Procedure A).

1.6 The liquid and plastic limits of many soils that have been allowed to dry before testing may be considerably different from values obtained on undried samples. If the liquid and plastic limits of soils are used to correlate or estimate the engineering behavior of soils in their natural moist state, samples should not be permitted to dry before testing unless data on dried samples are specifically desired.

1.7 The composition and concentration of soluble salts in a soil affect the values of the liquid and plastic limits as well as the water content values of soils (see Method D 2216). Special consideration should therefore be given to soils from a marine environment or other sources where high soluble salt concentrations may be present. The degree to which the salts present in these soils are diluted or concentrated must be given consideration if meaningful results are to be obtained.

1.8 Since the tests described herein are performed only on that portion of a soil which passes the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, the relative contribution of this portion of the soil to the properties of the sample as a whole must be considered when using these tests to evaluate the properties of a soil.

1.9 The values stated in acceptable metric units are to be regarded as the standard. The values given in parentheses are for information only.

1.10 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of whoever uses this standard to consult and establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.03 on Texture, Plasticity, and Density Characteristics of Soils.

Current edition approved Oct. 26, 1984. Published December 1984. Originally published as D 4318 – 83. Last previous edition D 4318 – 83[ε1].

000390

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 702 Methods for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[2]

D 75 Practice for Sampling Aggregates[4]

D 420 Practice for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock for Engineering Purposes[4]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[4]

D 1241 Specification for Materials for Soil-Aggregate Subbase, Base, and Surface Courses[4]

D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[4]

D 2240 Test Method for Rubber Property—Durometer Hardness[5]

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[4]

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[4]

D 3282 Practice for Classification of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures for Highway Construction Purposes[4]

E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[6]

E 319 Methods of Testing Single-Arm Balances[6]

E 898 Method of Testing Top-Loading, Direct-Reading Laboratory Scales and Balances[6]

3. Definitions

3.1 *Atterberg limits*—originally, seven "limits of consistency" of fine-grained soils were defined by Albert Atterberg. In current engineering usage, the term usually refers only to the liquid limit, plastic limit, and in some references, the shrinkage limit.

3.2 *consistency*—the relative ease with which a soil can be deformed.

3.3 *liquid limit (LL)*—the water content, in percent, of a soil at the arbitrarily defined boundary between the liquid and plastic states. This water content is defined as the water content at which a pat of soil placed in a standard cup and cut by a groove of standard dimensions will flow together at the base of the groove for a distance of 13 mm (½ in.) when subjected to 25 shocks from the cup being dropped 10 mm in a standard liquid limit apparatus operated at a rate of 2 shocks per second.

NOTE 2—The undrained shear strength of soil at the liquid limit is considered to be 2 ± 0.2 kPa (0.28 psi).

3.4 *plastic limit (PL)*—the water content, in percent, of a soil at the boundary between the plastic and brittle states. The water content at this boundary is the water content at which a soil can no longer be deformed by rolling into 3.2 mm (⅛ in.) in diameter threads without crumbling.

3.5 *plastic soil*—a soil which has a range of water content over which it exhibits plasticity and which will retain its shape on drying.

3.6 *plasticity index (PI)*—the range of water content over which a soil behaves plastically. Numerically, it is the difference between the liquid limit and the plastic limit.

3.7 *liquidity index*—the ratio, expressed as a percentage, of (*1*) the natural water content of a soil minus its plastic limit, to (*2*) its plasticity index.

3.8 *activity number (A)*—the ratio of (*1*) the plasticity index of a soil to (*2*) the percent by weight of particles having an equivalent diameter smaller than 0.002 mm.

4. Summary of Method

4.1 The sample is processed to remove any material retained on a 425-μm (No. 40) sieve. The liquid limit is determined by performing trials in which a portion of the sample is spread in a brass cup, divided in two by a grooving tool, and then allowed to flow together from the shocks caused by repeatedly dropping the cup in a standard mechanical device. The multipoint liquid limit, Procedures A and B, requires three or more trials over a range of water contents to be performed and the data from the trials plotted or calculated to make a relationship from which the liquid limit is determined. The one-point liquid limit, Procedures C and D, uses the data from two trials at one water content multiplied by a correction factor to determine the liquid limit.

4.2 The plastic limit is determined by alternately pressing together and rolling into a 3.2 mm (⅛ in.) diameter thread a small portion of plastic soil until its water content is reduced to a point at which the thread crumbles and is no longer able to be pressed together and rerolled. The water content of the soil at this stage is reported as the plastic limit.

4.3 The plasticity index is calculated as the difference between the liquid limit and the plastic limit.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 This test method is used as an integral part of several engineering classification systems to characterize the fine-grained fractions of soils (see Test Method D 2487 and Practice D 3282) and to specify the fine-grained fraction of construction materials (see Specification D 1241). The liquid limit, plastic limit, and plasticity index of soils are also used extensively, either individually or together with other soil properties to correlate with engineering behavior such as compressibility, permeability, compactibility, shrink-swell, and shear strength.

5.2 The liquid and plastic limits of a soil can be used with the natural water content of the soil to express its relative consistency or liquidity index and can be used with the percentage finer than 2-μm size to determine its activity number.

5.3 The one-point liquid limit procedure is frequently used for routine classification purposes. When greater precision is required, as when used for the acceptance of a material or for correlation with other test data, the multipoint procedure should be used.

5.4 These methods are sometimes used to evaluate the weathering characteristics of clay-shale materials. When subjected to repeated wetting and drying cycles, the liquid limits of these materials tend to increase. The amount of increase is considered to be a measure of a shale's susceptibility to weathering.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.
[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vols 04.02, 04.03, and 04.08.
[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.
[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 09.01.
[6] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 14.02.

000391

5.5 The liquid limit of a soil containing substantial amounts of organic matter decreases dramatically when the soil is oven-dried before testing. Comparison of the liquid limit of a sample before and after oven-drying can therefore be used as a qualitative measure of organic matter content of a soil.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Liquid Limit Device*—A mechanical device consisting of a brass cup suspended from a carriage designed to control its drop onto a hard rubber base. A drawing showing the essential features of the device and the critical dimensions is given in Fig. 1. The design of the device may vary provided that the essential functions are preserved. The device may be operated either by a hand crank or by an electric motor.

6.1.1 *Base*—The base shall be hard rubber having a D Durometer hardness of 80 to 90, and a resilience such that an 8-mm (5/16-in.) diameter polished steel ball, when dropped from a height of 25 cm (9.84 in.) will have an average rebound of at least 80 % but no more than 90 %. The tests shall be conducted on the finished base with feet attached.

6.1.2 *Feet*—The base shall be supported by rubber feet designed to provide isolation of the base from the work surface and having an A Durometer hardness no greater than 60 as measured on the finished feet attached to the base.

6.1.3 *Cup*—The cup shall be brass and have a weight, including cup hanger, of 185 to 215 g.

6.1.4 *Cam*—The cam shall raise the cup smoothly and continuously to its maximum height, over a distance of at least 180° of cam rotation. The preferred cam motion is a uniformly accelerated lift curve. The design of the cam and follower combination shall be such that there is no upward or downward velocity of the cup when the cam follower leaves the cam.

NOTE 3—The cam and follower design in Fig. 1 is for uniformly accelerated (parabolic) motion after contact and assures that the cup has no velocity at drop off. Other cam designs also provide this feature and may be used. However, if the cam-follower lift pattern is not known, zero velocity at drop off can be assured by carefully filing or machining the cam and follower so that the cup height remains constant over the last 20 to 45° of cam rotation.

6.1.5 *Carriage*—The cup carriage shall be constructed in a way that allows convenient but secure adjustment of the height of drop of the cup to 10 mm (0.394 in.). The cup hanger shall be attached to the carriage by means of a pin which allows removal of the cup and cup hanger for cleaning and inspection.

6.1.6 *Optional Motor Drive*—As an alternative to the hand crank shown in Fig. 1, the device may be equipped with a motor to turn the cam. Such a motor must turn the cam at 2 ± 0.1 revolutions per second and must be isolated from the rest of the device by rubber mounts or in some other way that prevents vibration from the motor being transmitted to the rest of the apparatus. It must be equipped with an ON-OFF switch and a means of conveniently positioning the cam for height of drop adjustments. The results obtained using a motor-driven device must not differ from those obtained using a manually operated device.

DIMENSIONS

LETTER	A △	B △	C △	E △	F	G	H	J △	K △	L △	M △
MM	54 ± 0.5	2 ± 0.1	27 ± 0.5	56 ± 2.0	32	10	16	60 ± 1.0	50 ± 2.0	150 ± 2.0	125 ± 2.0

LETTER	N	P	R	T	U △	V	W	Z
MM	24	28	24	45	47 ± 1.0	3.8	13	6.5

△ ESSENTIAL DIMENSIONS

CAM ANGLE DEGREES	CAM RADIUS
0	0.742 R
30	0.753 R
60	0.764 R
90	0.773 R
120	0.784 R
150	0.796 R
180	0.818 R
210	0.854 R
240	0.901 R
270	0.945R
300	0.974R
330	0.995R
360	1.000R

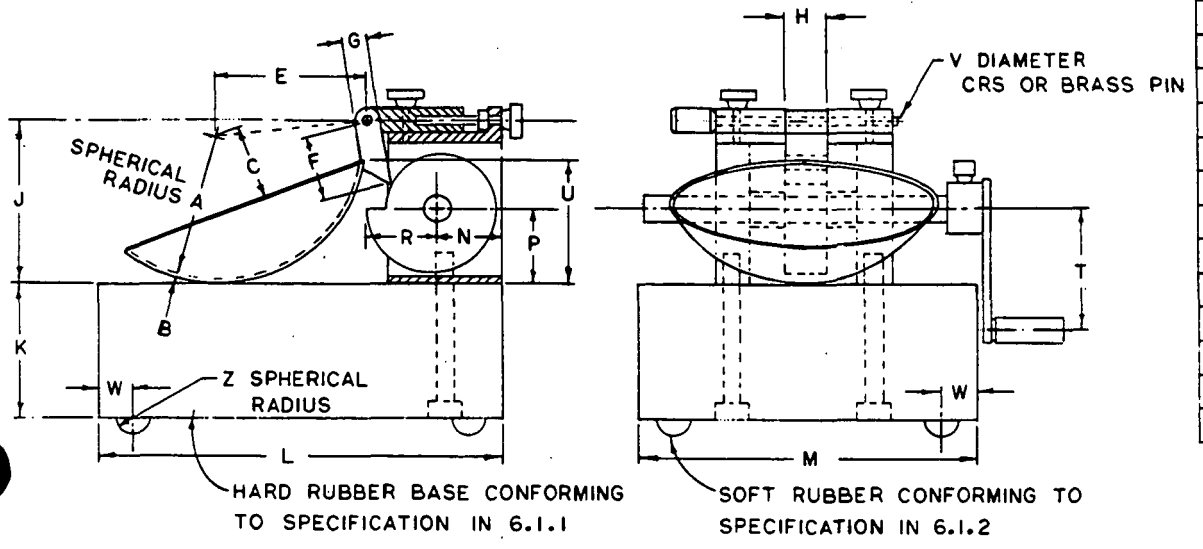


FIG. 1 Hand-Operated Liquid Limit Device

000392

DIMENSIONS

LETTER	A[Δ]	B[Δ]	C[Δ]	D[Δ]	E[Δ]	F[Δ]
MM	2 ± 0.1	11 ± 0.2	40 ± 0.5	8 ± 0.1	50 ± 0.5	2 ± 0.1
LETTER	G	H	J	K[Δ]	L[Δ]	N
MM	10 MINIMUM	13	60	10 ±0.05	60 DEG ± 1 DEG	20

[Δ] ESSENTIAL DIMENSIONS

[□] BACK AT LEAST 15 MM FROM TIP

NOTE: DIMENSION A SHOULD BE 1.9–2.0 AND DIMENSION D SHOULD BE 8.0–8.1 WHEN NEW TO ALLOW FOR ADEQUATE SERVICE LIFE

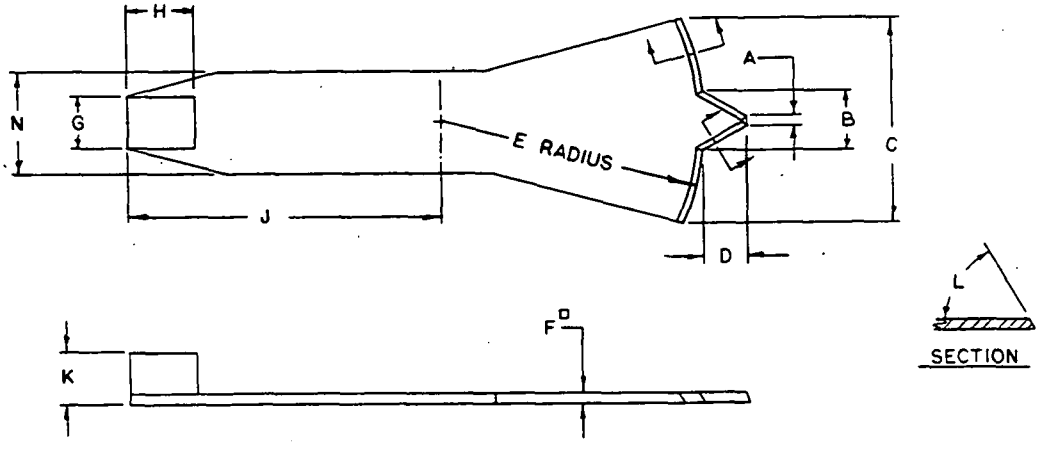
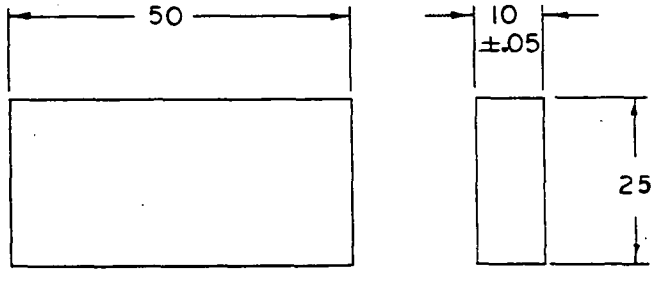


FIG. 2 Grooving Tool (Optional Height-of-Drop Gage Attached)

6.2 *Flat Grooving Tool*—A grooving tool having dimensions shown in Fig. 2. The tool shall be made of plastic or noncorroding metal. The design of the tool may vary as long as the essential dimensions are maintained. The tool may, but need not, incorporate the gage for adjusting the height of drop of the liquid limit device.

6.3 *Gage*—A metal gage block for adjusting the height of drop of the cup, having the dimensions shown in Fig. 3. The design of the tool may vary provided the gage will rest securely on the base without being susceptible to rocking, and the edge which contacts the cup during adjustment is straight, at least 10 mm (⅜ in.) wide, and without bevel or radius.



DIMENSIONS IN MILLIMETRES

FIG. 3 Height of Drop Gage

6.4 *Containers*—Small corrosion-resistant containers with snug-fitting lids for water content specimens. Aluminum or stainless steel cans 2.5 cm (1 in.) high by 5 cm (2 in.) in diameter are appropriate.

6.5 *Balance*—A balance readable to at least 0.01 g and having an accuracy of 0.03 g within three standard deviations within the range of use. Within any 15-g range, a difference between readings shall be accurate within 0.01 g (Notes 4 and 5).

NOTE 4—See Methods E 898 and E 319 for an explanation of terms relating to balance performance.

NOTE 5—For frequent use, a top-loading type balance with automatic load indication, readable to 0.01 g, and having an index of precision (standard deviation) of 0.003 or better is most suitable for this method. However, nonautomatic indicating equal-arm analytical balances and some small equal arm top pan balances having readabilities and sensitivities of 0.002 g or better provide the required accuracy when used with a weight set of ASTM Class 4 (National Bureau of Standards Class P) or better. Ordinary commercial and classroom type balances such as beam balances are not suitable for this method.

6.6 *Storage Container*—A container in which to store the prepared soil specimen that will not contaminate the specimen in any way, and which prevents moisture loss. A porcelain, glass, or plastic dish about 11.4 cm (4½ in.) in diameter and a plastic bag large enough to enclose the dish and be folded over is adequate.

000393

344

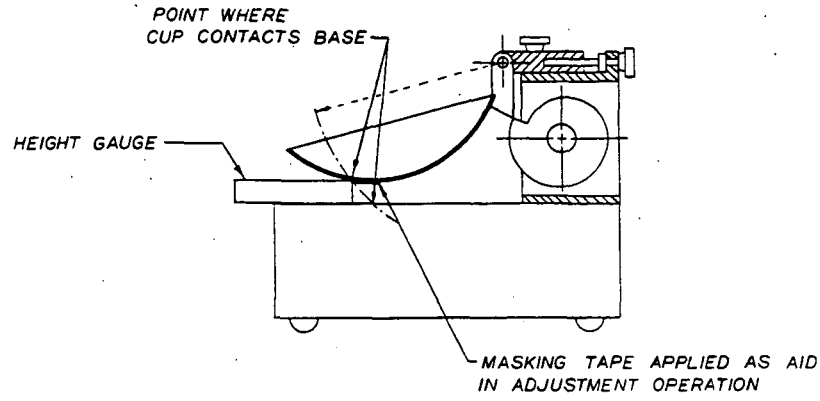


FIG. 4 Calibration for Height of Drop

6.7 *Ground Glass Plate*—A ground glass plate at least 30 cm (12 in.) square by 1 cm (⅜ in.) thick for mixing soil and rolling plastic limit threads.

6.8 *Spatula*—A spatula or pill knife having a blade about 2 cm (¾ in.) wide by about 10 cm (4 in.) long. In addition, a spatula having a blade about 2.5 cm (1 in.) wide and 15 cm (6 in.) long has been found useful for initial mixing of samples.

6.9 *Sieve*—A 20.3 cm (8 in.) diameter, 425-μm (No. 40) sieve conforming to the requirements of Specification E 11 and having a rim at least 5 cm (2 in.) above the mesh. A 2-mm (No. 10) sieve meeting the same requirements may also be needed.

6.10 *Wash Bottle*, or similar container for adding controlled amounts of water to soil and washing fines from coarse particles.

6.11 *Drying Oven*—A thermostatically controlled oven, preferably of the forced-draft type, capable of continuously maintaining a temperature of 110 ± 5°C throughout the drying chamber. The oven shall be equipped with a thermometer of suitable range and accuracy for monitoring oven temperature.

6.12 *Washing Pan*—A round, flat-bottomed pan at least 7.6 cm (3 in.) deep, slightly larger at the bottom than a 20.3-cm (8-in.) diameter sieve.

6.13 *Rod* (optional)—A metal or plastic rod or tube 3.2 mm (⅛ in.) in diameter and about 10 cm (4 in.) long for judging the size of plastic limit threads.

7. Materials

7.1 A supply of distilled or demineralized water.

8. Sampling

8.1 Samples may be taken from any location that satisfies testing needs. However, Methods C 702, Practice D 75, and Recommended Practice D 420 should be used as guides for selecting and preserving samples from various types of sampling operations. Samples which will be prepared using the wet preparation procedure, 10.1, must be kept at their natural water content prior to preparation.

8.2 Where sampling operations have preserved the natural stratification of a sample, the various strata must be kept separated and tests performed on the particular stratum of interest with as little contamination as possible from other strata. Where a mixture of materials will be used in construction, combine the various components in such proportions that the resultant sample represents the actual construction case.

8.3 Where data from this test method are to be used for correlation with other laboratory or field test data, use the same material as used for these tests where possible.

8.4 Obtain a representative portion from the total sample sufficient to provide 150 to 200 g of material passing the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve. Free flowing samples may be reduced by the methods of quartering or splitting. Cohesive samples shall be mixed thoroughly in a pan with a spatula, or scoop and a representative portion scooped from the total mass by making one or more sweeps with a scoop through the mixed mass.

9. Calibration of Apparatus

9.1 *Inspection of Wear:*

9.1.1 *Liquid Limit Device*—Determine that the liquid limit device is clean and in good working order. The following specific points should be checked:

9.1.1.1 *Wear of Base*—The spot on the base where the cup makes contact should be worn no greater than 10 mm (⅜ in.) in diameter. If the wear spot is greater than this, the base can be machined to remove the worn spot provided the resurfacing does not make the base thinner than specified in 6.1 and the other dimensional relationships are maintained.

9.1.1.2 *Wear of Cup*—The cup must be replaced when the grooving tool has worn a depression in the cup 0.1 mm (0.004 in.) deep or when the edge of the cup has been reduced to half its original thickness. Verify that the cup is firmly attached to the cup hanger.

9.1.1.3 *Wear of Cup Hanger*—Verify that the cup hanger pivot does not bind and is not worn to an extent that allows more than 3-mm (⅛-in.) side-to-side movement of the lowest point on the rim.

9.1.1.4 *Wear of Cam*—The cam shall not be worn to an extent that the cup drops before the cup hanger (cam follower) loses contact with the cam.

9.1.2 *Grooving Tools*—Inspect grooving tools for wear on a frequent and regular basis. The rapidity of wear depends on the material from which the tool is made and the types of soils being tested. Sandy soils cause rapid wear of grooving tools; therefore, when testing these materials, tools should be inspected more frequently than for other soils. Any tool with a tip width greater than 2.1 mm must not be used. The depth

000394

of the tip of the grooving tool must be 7.9 to 8.1 mm.

NOTE 6—The width of the tip of grooving tools is conveniently checked using a pocket-sized measuring magnifier equipped with a millimetre scale. Magnifiers of this type are available from most laboratory supply companies. The depth of the tip of grooving tools can be checked using the depth measuring feature of vernier calipers.

9.2 *Adjustment of Height of Drop*—Adjust the height of drop of the cup so that the point on the cup that comes in contact with the base rises to a height of 10 ± 0.2 mm. See Fig. 4 for proper location of the gage relative to the cup during adjustment.

NOTE 7—A convenient procedure for adjusting the height of drop is as follows: place a piece of masking tape across the outside bottom of the cup parallel with the axis of the cup hanger pivot. The edge of the tape away from the cup hanger should bisect the spot on the cup that contacts the base. For new cups, placing a piece of carbon paper on the base and allowing the cup to drop several times will mark the contact spot. Attach the cup to the device and turn the crank until the cup is raised to its maximum height. Slide the height gage under the cup from the front, and observe whether the gage contacts the cup or the tape. See Fig. 4. If the tape and cup are both contacted, the height of drop is approximately correct. If not, adjust the cup until simultaneous contact is made. Check adjustment by turning the crank at 2 revolutions per second while holding the gage in position against the tape and cup. If a ringing or clicking sound is heard without the cup rising from the gage, the adjustment is correct. If no ringing is heard or if the cup rises from the gage, readjust the height of drop. If the cup rocks on the gage during this checking operation, the cam follower pivot is excessively worn and the worn parts should be replaced. Always remove tape after completion of adjustment operation.

MULTIPOINT LIQUID LIMIT—PROCEDURES A AND B

10. Preparation of Test Specimens

10.1 *Wet Preparation*—Except where the dry method of specimen preparation is specified (10.2), prepare specimens for test as described in the following sections.

10.1.1 *Samples Passing the 425-μm (No. 40) Sieve*—When by visual and manual procedures it is determined that the sample has little or no material retained on a 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, prepare a specimen of 150 to 200 g by mixing thoroughly with distilled or demineralized water on the glass plate using the spatula. If desired, soak soil in a storage dish with small amount of water to soften the soil before the start of mixing. Adjust the water content of the soil to bring it to a consistency that would require 25 to 35 blows of the liquid limit device to close the groove (Note 8). If, during mixing, a small percentage of material is encountered that would be retained on a 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, remove these particles by hand, if possible. If it is impractical to remove the coarser material by hand, remove small percentages (less than about 15 %) of coarser material by working the specimen through a 425-μm (No. 40) sieve using a piece of rubber sheeting, rubber stopper, or other convenient device provided the operation does not distort the sieve or degrade material that would be retained if the washing method described in 10.1.2 were used. If larger percentages of coarse material are encountered during mixing, or it is considered impractical to remove the coarser material by the methods just described, wash the sample as described in 10.1.2. When the coarse particles found during mixing are concretions, shells, or other fragile particles, do not crush these particles to make them pass a 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, but remove by hand or by washing. Place the mixed soil in the storage dish, cover to prevent loss of moisture, and allow to stand for at least 16 h (overnight). After the standing period and immediately before starting the test, thoroughly remix the soil.

NOTE 8—The time taken to adequately mix a soil will vary greatly, depending on the plasticity and initial water content. Initial mixing times of more than 30 min may be needed for stiff, fat clays.

10.1.2 *Samples Containing Material Retained on a 425-μm (No. 40) Sieve:*

10.1.2.1 Select a sufficient quantity of soil at natural water content to provide 150 to 200 g of material passing the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve. Place in a pan or dish and add sufficient water to cover the soil. Allow to soak until all lumps have softened and the fines no longer adhere to the surfaces of the coarse particles (Note 9).

NOTE 9—In some cases, the cations of salts present in tap water will exchange with the natural cations in the soil and significantly alter the test results should tap water be used in the soaking and washing operations. Unless it is known that such cations are not present in the tap water, distilled or demineralized water should be used. As a general rule, water containing more than 100 mg/L of dissolved solids should not be used for washing operations.

10.1.2.2 When the sample contains a large percentage of material retained on the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, perform the following washing operation in increments, washing no more than 0.5 kg (1 lb) of material at one time. Place the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve in the bottom of the clean pan. Pour the soil water mixture onto the sieve. If gravel or coarse sand particles are present, rinse as many of these as possible with small quantities of water from a wash bottle, and discard. Alternatively, pour the soil water mixture over a 2-mm (No. 10) sieve nested atop the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, rinse the fine material through and remove the 2-mm (No. 10) sieve. After washing and removing as much of the coarser material as possible, add sufficient water to the pan to bring the level to about 13 mm (½ in.) above the surface of the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve. Agitate the slurry by stirring with the fingers while raising and lowering the sieve in the pan and swirling the suspension so that fine material is washed from the coarser particles. Disaggregate fine soil lumps that have not slaked by gently rubbing them over the sieve with the fingertips. Complete the washing operation by raising the sieve above the water surface and rinsing the material retained with a small amount of clean water. Discard material retained on the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve.

10.1.2.3 Reduce the water content of the material passing the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve until it approaches the liquid limit. Reduction of water content may be accomplished by one or a combination of the following methods: (*a*) exposing the air currents at ordinary room temperature, (*b*) exposing to warm air currents from a source such as an electric hair dryer, (*c*) filtering in a Büchner funnel or using filter candles, (*d*) decanting clear water from surface of suspension, or (*e*) draining in a colander or plaster of paris dish lined with high retentivity, high wet-strength filter paper.[7] If a plaster of paris dish is used, take care that the dish never becomes sufficiently saturated that it fails to actively absorb water into its surface. Thoroughly dry dishes between uses. During evaporation and cooling, stir the sample often enough to prev

[7] S and S 595 filter paper available in 32-cm circles, has proven satisfactory.

000395

overdrying of the fringes and soil pinnacles on the surface of the mixture. For soil samples containing soluble salts, use a method of water reduction such as *a* or *b* that will not eliminate the soluble salts from the test specimen.

10.1.2.4 Thoroughly mix the material passing the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve on the glass plate using the spatula. Adjust the water content of the mixture, if necessary, by adding small increments of distilled or demineralized water or by allowing the mixture to dry at room temperature while mixing on the glass plate. The soil should be at a water content that will result in closure of the groove in 25 to 35 blows. Return the mixed soil to the mixing dish, cover to prevent loss of moisture, and allow to stand for at least 16 h. After the standing period, and immediately before starting the test, remix the soil thoroughly.

10.2 *Dry Preparation:*

10.2.1 Select sufficient soil to provide 150 to 200 g of material passing the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve after processing. Dry the sample at room temperature or in an oven at a temperature not exceeding 60°C until the soil clods will pulverize readily. Disaggregation is expedited if the sample is not allowed to completely dry. However, the soil should have a dry appearance when pulverized. Pulverize the sample in a mortar with a rubber tipped pestle or in some other way that does not cause breakdown of individual grains. When the coarse particles found during pulverization are concretions, shells, or other fragile particles, do not crush these particles to make them pass a 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, but remove by hand or other suitable means, such as washing.

10.2.2 Separate the sample on a 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, shaking the sieve by hand to assure thorough separation of the finer fraction. Return the material retained on the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve to the pulverizing apparatus and repeat the pulverizing and sieving operations as many times as necessary to assure that all finer material has been disaggregated and material retained on the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve consists only of individual sand or gravel grains.

10.2.3 Place material remaining on the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve after the final pulverizing operations in a dish and soak in a small amount of water. Stir the soil water mixture and pour over the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, catching the water and any suspended fines in the washing pan. Pour this suspension into a dish containing the dry soil previously sieved through the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve. Discard material retained on the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve.

10.2.4 Adjust the water content as necessary by drying as described in 10.1.2.3 or by mixing on the glass plate, using the spatula while adding increments of distilled or demineralized water, until the soil is at a water content that will result in closure of the groove in 25 to 35 blows.

10.2.5 Put soil in the storage dish, cover to prevent loss of moisture and allow to stand for at least 16 h. After the standing period, and immediately before starting the test, thoroughly remix the soil (Note 8).

11. Procedure

11.1 Place a portion of the prepared soil in the cup of the liquid limit device at the point where the cup rests on the base, squeeze it down, and spread it into the cup to a depth of about 10 mm at its deepest point, tapering to form an approximately horizontal surface. Take care to eliminate air bubbles from the soil pat but form the pat with as few strokes as possible. Heap the unused soil on the glass plate and cover with the inverted storage dish or a wet towel.

11.2 Form a groove in the soil pat by drawing the tool, beveled edge forward, through the soil on a line joining the highest point to the lowest point on the rim of the cup. When cutting the groove, hold the grooving tool against the surface of the cup and draw in an arc, maintaining the tool perpendicular to the surface of the cup throughout its

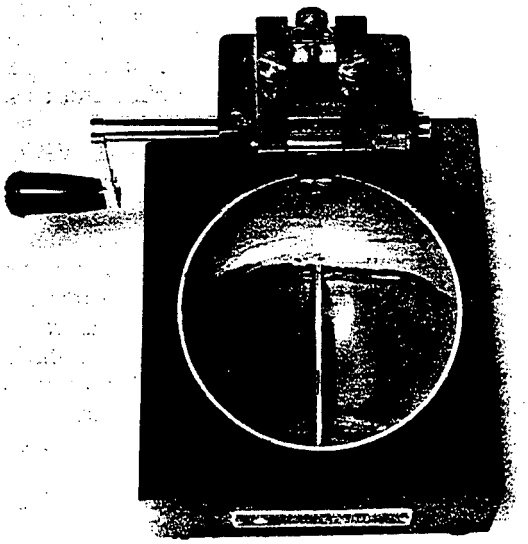


FIG. 5 Grooved Soil Pat in Liquid Limit Device

000396

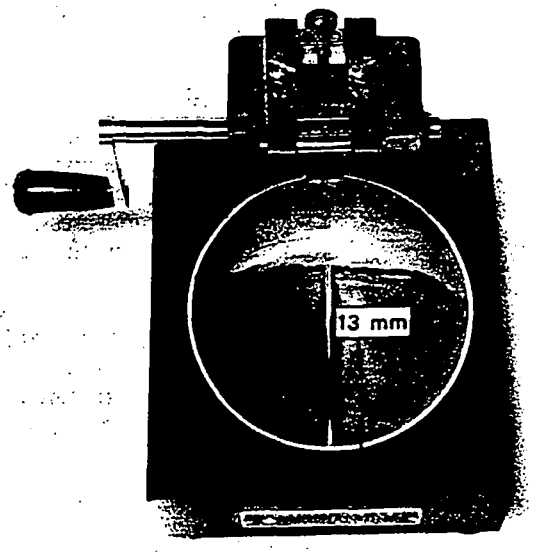


FIG. 6 Soil Pat After Groove Has Closed

movement. See Fig. 5. In soils where a groove cannot be made in one stroke without tearing the soil, cut the groove with several strokes of the grooving tool. Alternatively, cut the groove to slightly less than required dimensions with a spatula and use the grooving tool to bring the groove to final dimensions. Exercise extreme care to prevent sliding the soil pat relative to the surface of the cup.

11.3 Verify that no crumbs of soil are present on the base or the underside of the cup. Lift and drop the cup by turning the crank at a rate of 1.9 to 2.1 drops per second until the two halves of the soil pat come in contact at the bottom of the groove along a distance of 13 mm (½ in.). See Fig. 6.

NOTE 10—Use the end of the grooving tool, Fig. 2, or a scale to verify that the groove has closed 13 mm (½ in.).

11.4 Verify that an air bubble has not caused premature closing of the groove by observing that both sides of the groove have flowed together with approximately the same shape. If a bubble has caused premature closing of the groove, reform the soil in the cup, adding a small amount of soil to make up for that lost in the grooving operation and repeat 11.1 to 11.3. If the soil slides on the surface of the cup, repeat 11.1 through 11.3 at a higher water content. If, after several trials at successively higher water contents, the soil pat continues to slide in the cup or if the number of blows required to close the groove is always less than 25, record that the liquid limit could not be determined, and report the soil as nonplastic without performing the plastic limit test.

11.5 Record the number of drops, N, required to close the groove. Remove a slice of soil approximately the width of the spatula, extending from edge to edge of the soil cake at right angles to the groove and including that portion of the groove in which the soil flowed together, place in a weighed container, and cover.

11.6 Return the soil remaining in the cup to the glass plate. Wash and dry the cup and grooving tool and reattach the cup to the carriage in preparation for the next trial.

11.7 Remix the entire soil specimen on the glass plate adding distilled water to increase the water content of the soil and decrease the number of blows required to close the groove. Repeat 11.1 through 11.6 for at least two additional trials producing successively lower numbers of blows to close the groove. One of the trials shall be for a closure requiring 25 to 35 blows, one for closure between 20 and 30 blows, and one trial for a closure requiring 15 to 25 blows.

11.8 Determine the water content, W_N, of the soil specimen from each trial in accordance with Method D 2216. Make all weighings on the same balance. Initial weighings should be performed immediately after completion of the test. If the test is to be interrupted for more than about 15 min, the specimens already obtained should be weighed at the time of the interruption.

12. Calculations

12.1 Plot the relationship between the water content, W_N, and the corresponding number of drops, N, of the cup on a semilogarithmic graph with the water content as ordinates on the arithmetical scale, and the number of drops as abscissas on the logarithmic scale. Draw the best straight line through the three or more plotted points.

12.2 Take the water content corresponding to the intersection of the line with the 25-drop abscissa as the liquid limit of the soil. Computational methods may be substituted for the graphical method for fitting a straight line to the data and determining the liquid limit.

ONE-POINT LIQUID LIMIT—PROCEDURES C AND D

13. Preparation of Test Specimens

13.1 Prepare the specimen in the same manner as described in Section 10, except that at mixing, adjust the water content to a consistency requiring 20 to 30 drops of the

000397

TABLE 1 Factors for Obtaining Liquid Limit from Water Content and Number of Drops Causing Closure of Groove

N (Number of Drops)	K (Factor for Liquid Limit)
20	0.974
21	0.979
22	0.985
23	0.990
24	0.995
25	1.000
26	1.005
27	1.009
28	1.014
29	1.018
30	1.022

liquid limit cup to close the groove.

14. Procedure

14.1 Proceed as described in 11.1 through 11.5 except that the number of blows required to close the groove shall be 20 to 30. If less than 20 or more than 30 blows are required, adjust the water content of the soil and repeat the procedure.

14.2 Immediately after removing a water content specimen as described in 11.5, reform the soil in the cup, adding a small amount of soil to make up for that lost in the grooving and water content sampling operations. Repeat 11.2 through 11.5, and, if the second closing of the groove requires the same number of drops or no more than two drops difference, secure another water content specimen. Otherwise, remix the entire specimen and repeat.

NOTE 11—Excessive drying or inadequate mixing will cause the number of blows to vary.

14.3 Determine water contents of specimens as described in 11.8.

15. Calculations

15.1 Determine the liquid limit for each water content specimen using one of the following equations:

$$LL = W_N \left(\frac{N}{25}\right)^{0.121} \quad \text{or}$$

$$LL = K(W_N)$$

where:

N = the number of blows causing closure of the groove at water content,

W_N = water content, and

K = a factor given in Table 1.

The liquid limit is the average of the two trial liquid limit values.

15.2 If the difference between the two trial liquid limit values is greater than one percentage point, repeat the test.

PLASTIC LIMIT

16. Preparation of Test Specimen

16.1 Select a 20-g portion of soil from the material prepared for the liquid limit test, either after the second mixing before the test, or from the soil remaining after completion of the test. Reduce the water content of the soil to a consistency at which it can be rolled without sticking to the hands by spreading and mixing continuously on the glass plate. The drying process may be accelerated by exposing the soil to the air current from an electric fan, or by blotting with paper that does not add any fiber to the soil, such as hard surface paper toweling or high wet-strength filter paper.

17. Procedure

17.1 From the 20-g mass, select a portion of 1.5 to 2.0 g. Form the test specimen into an ellipsoidal mass. Roll this mass between the palm or fingers and the ground-glass plate with just sufficient pressure to roll the mass into a thread of uniform diameter throughout its length (Note 12). The thread shall be further deformed on each stroke so that its diameter is continuously reduced and its length extended until the diameter reaches 3.2 ± 0.5 mm (0.125 ± .020 in.), taking no more than 2 min (Note 13). The amount of hand or finger pressure required will vary greatly, according to the soil. Fragile soils of low plasticity are best rolled under the outer edge of the palm or at the base of the thumb.

NOTE 12—A normal rate of rolling for most soils should be 80 to 90 strokes per minute, counting a stroke as one complete motion of the hand forward and back to the starting position. This rate of rolling may have to be decreased for very fragile soils.

NOTE 13—A 3.2-mm (⅛-in.) diameter rod or tube is useful for frequent comparison with the soil thread to ascertain when the thread has reached the proper diameter, especially for inexperienced operators.

17.1.1 When the diameter of the thread becomes 3.2 mm, break the thread into several pieces. Squeeze the pieces together, knead between the thumb and first finger of each hand, reform into an ellipsoidal mass, and reroll. Continue this alternate rolling to a thread 3.2 mm in diameter, gathering together, kneading and rerolling, until the thread crumbles under the pressure required for rolling and the soil can no longer be rolled into a 3.2-mm diameter thread (See Fig. 7). It has no significance if the thread breaks into threads of shorter length. Roll each of these shorter threads to 3.2 mm in diameter. The only requirement for continuing the test is that they are able to be reformed into an ellipsoidal mass and rolled out again. The operator shall at no time attempt to produce failure at exactly 3.2 mm diameter by allowing the thread to reach 3.2 mm, then reducing the rate of rolling or the hand pressure, or both, while continuing the rolling without further deformation until the thread falls apart. It is permissible, however, to reduce the total amount of deformation for feebly plastic soils by making the initial diameter of the ellipsoidal mass nearer to the required 3.2-mm final diameter. If crumbling occurs when the thread has a diameter greater than 3.2 mm, this shall be considered a satisfactory end point, provided the soil has been previously rolled into a thread 3.2 mm in diameter. Crumbling of the thread will manifest itself differently with the various types of soil. Some soils fall apart in numerous small aggregations of particles, others may form an outside tubular layer that starts splitting at both ends. The splitting progresses toward the middle, and finally, the thread falls apart in many small platy particles. Fat clay soils require much pressure to deform the thread, particularly as they approach the plastic limit. With these soils, the thread breaks into a series of barrel-shaped segments about 3.2 to 9.5 mm (⅛ to ⅜ in.) in length.

17.2 Gather the portions of the crumbled thread together and place in a weighed container. Immediately cover the container.

000398

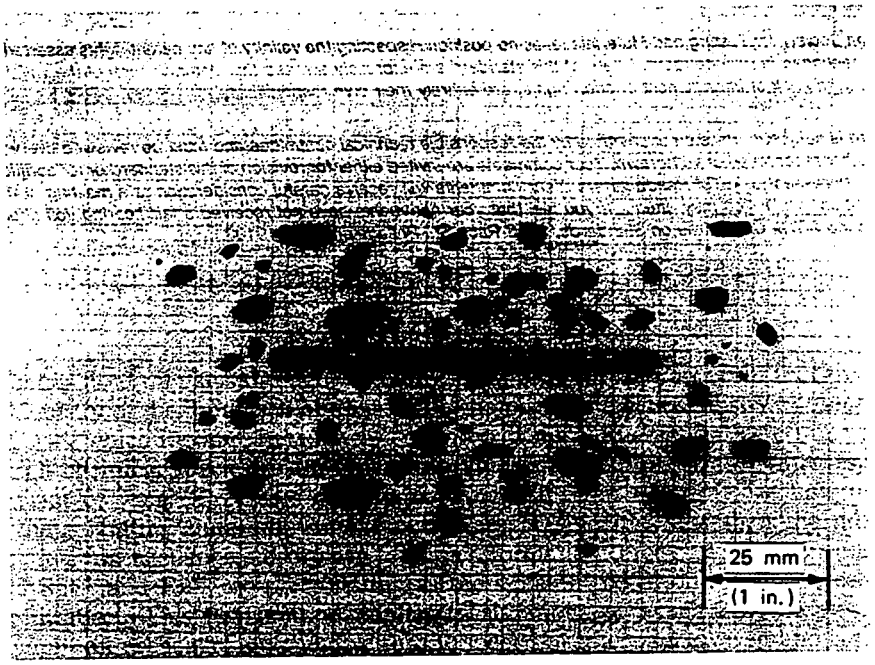


FIG. 7 Lean Clay Soil at the Plastic Limit

17.3 Select another 1.5 to 2.0 g portion of soil from the original 20-g specimen and repeat the operations described in 17.1 and 17.2 until the container has at least 6 g of soil.

17.4 Repeat 17.1 through 17.3 to make another container holding at least 6 g of soil. Determine the water content, in percent, of the soil contained in the containers in accordance with Method D 2216. Make all weighings on the same balance.

NOTE 14—The intent of performing two plastic limit trials is to verify the consistency of the test results. It is acceptable practice to perform only one plastic limit trial when the consistency in the test results can be confirmed by other means.

18. Calculations

18.1 Compute the average of the two water contents. If the difference between the two water contents is greater than two percentage points, repeat the test. The plastic limit is the average of the two water contents.

PLASTICITY INDEX

19. Calculations

19.1 Calculate the plasticity index as follows:

$$PI = LL - PL$$

where:
LL = the liquid limit,
PL = the plastic limit.

Both LL and PL are whole numbers. If either the liquid limit or plastic limit could not be determined, or if the plastic limit is equal to or greater than the liquid limit, report the soil as nonplastic, NP.

20. Report

20.1 Report the following information:

20.1.1 Sample identifying information,

20.1.2 Any special specimen selection process used, such as removal of sand lenses from undisturbed sample,

20.1.3 Report sample as airdried if the sample was air-dried before or during preparation,

20.1.4 Liquid limit, plastic limit, and plasticity index to the nearest whole number and omitting the percent designation. If the liquid limit or plastic limit tests could not be performed, or if the plastic limit is equal to or greater than the liquid limit, report the soil as nonplastic, NP,

20.1.5 An estimate of the percentage of sample retained on the 425-μm (No. 40) sieve, and

20.1.6 Procedure by which liquid limit was performed, if it differs from the multipoint method.

21. Precision and Bias

21.1 No interlaboratory testing program has as yet been conducted using this test method to determine multilaboratory precision.

21.2 The within laboratory precision of the results of tests performed by different operators at one laboratory on two soils using Procedure A for the liquid limit is shown in Table 2.

TABLE 2 Within Laboratory Precision for Liquid Limit

	Average Value, $\bar{x}$	Standard Deviation, s
Soil A:		
PL	21.9	1.07
LL	27.9	1.07
Soil B:		
PL	20.1	1.21
LL	32.6	0.98

000399

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000400

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Standard Test Methods for One-Dimensional Swell or Settlement Potential of Cohesive Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4546; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 These test methods cover three alternative laboratory methods for determining the magnitude of swell or settlement of relatively undisturbed or compacted cohesive soil.

NOTE 1—Refer to Section 5 to determine the best method for a particular application.

1.2 The test methods can be used to determine (*a*) the magnitude of swell or settlement under known vertical (axial) pressure, or (*b*) the magnitude of vertical pressure needed to maintain no volume change of laterally constrained, axially loaded specimens.

1.3 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard. The values stated in inch-pound units are approximate.

1.4 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 422 Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[2]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 698 Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 5.5-lb (2.49-kg) Rammer and 12-in. (305-mm) Drop[2]

D 854 Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[2]

D 1557 Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 10-lb (4.54-kg) Rammer and 18-in. (457-mm) Drop[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[2]

D 2435 Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils[2]

D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 3877 Test Methods for One-Dimensional Expansion, Shrinkage, and Uplift Pressure of Soil-Lime Mixtures[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions*—Refer to Terminology D 653 for standard definitions of terms.

3.2 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *heave (L)*—increase in vertical height, Δh, of a column of in situ soil of height h following sorption of water.

3.2.2 *percent heave or settlement, %*—increase or decrease in the ratio of the change in vertical height, Δh, to the original height of a column of in situ soil; $h \times 100$ or $\Delta h/h \times 100$.

3.2.3 *settlement, L*—decrease in vertical height, Δh, of a column of in situ soil of height h.

3.2.4 *swell, L*—increase in elevation or dilation of soil column following sorption of water.

3.2.5 *free swell, %*—percent heave, $\Delta h/h \times 100$, following sorption of water at the seating pressure σ_{se}.

3.2.6 *primary swell, L*—an arbitrary short-term swell usually characterized as being completed at the intersection of the tangent of reverse curvature to the curve of a dimensional change-logarithm of time plot with the tangent to the straight line portion representing long-term or secondary swell (Fig. 1).

3.2.7 *secondary swell, L*—an arbitrary long-term swell usually characterized as the linear portion of a dimensional change-logarithm of time plot following completion of short-term or primary swell (Fig. 1).

3.2.8 *swell index*—slope of the rebound pressure - void ratio curve on a semi-log plot.

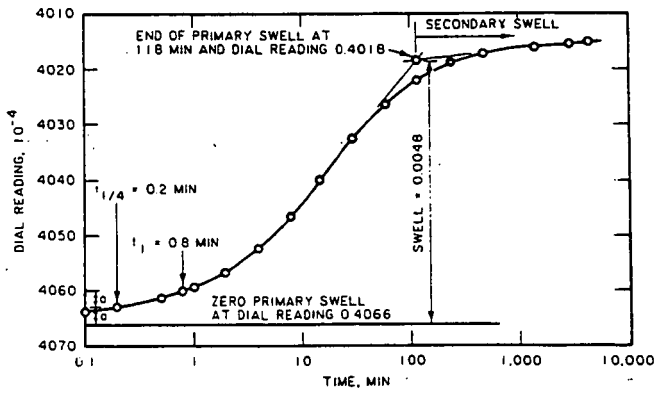


FIG. 1 Time - Swell Curve

[1] These test methods are under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and are the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.05 on Structural Properties of Soils.

Current edition approved Oct. 26, 1990. Published December 1990. Originally published as D 4546 – 85. Last previous edition D 4546 – 85.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol. 04.08.

000402

3.2.9 *swell pressure, FL^{-2}*—(*1*) a pressure which prevents the specimen from swelling as obtained in Method C, or (*2*) that pressure which is required to return the specimen back to its original state (void ratio, height) after swelling in Method A or B.

NOTE 2—Swell pressures by Method C corrected for specimen disturbance may be similar to or slightly greater than those by Method A.

4. Summary of Test Methods

4.1 The following three alternative test methods require that a soil specimen be restrained laterally and loaded axially in a consolidometer with access to free water.

4.1.1 *Method A*—The specimen is inundated and allowed to swell vertically at the seating pressure (pressure of at least 1 kPa (20 lbf/ft^2) applied by the weight of the top porous stone and load plate) until primary swell is complete. The specimen is loaded after primary swell has occurred until its initial void ratio/height is obtained.

4.1.2 *Method B*—A vertical pressure exceeding the seating pressure is applied to the specimen before placement of free water into the consolidometer. The magnitude of vertical pressure is usually equivalent to the in situ vertical overburden pressure or structural loading, or both, but may vary depending on application of the test results. The specimen is given access to free water. This may result in swell, swell then contraction, contraction, or contraction then swell. The amount of swell or settlement is measured at the applied pressure after movement is negligible.

4.1.3 *Method C*—The specimen is maintained at constant height by adjustments in vertical pressure after the specimen is inundated in free water to obtain swell pressure. A consolidation test is subsequently performed in accordance with Test Method D 2435. Rebound data is used to estimate potential heave.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 The relative swell/settlement potential of soil determined from these test methods can be used to develop estimates of heave or settlement for given final moisture and loading conditions. The initial water content and void ratio should be representative of the in situ soil immediately prior to construction. Selection of test method, loading, and inundation sequences should, as closely as possible, simulate any construction and post-construction wetting and drying effects and changes in loading conditions.

5.2 Soils containing montmorillonites (Smectite) are likely to have a significant potential for swell and are commonly tested by these test methods.

NOTE 3—Montmorillonites with divalent cations usually swell less than with monovalent cations. It is useful to know the type of cation as well as the cation exchange capacity of montmorillonite.

5.3 Laboratory-prepared test specimens should duplicate the in situ soil or field-compacted soil conditions as closely as possible because relatively small variations in unit weight and water content can significantly alter the measured heave and swell pressure. Differences in soil fabric of the compacted specimens, such as obtained by kneading or static compaction, could also have a significant impact on the swell/settlement behavior of cohesive soils.

5.4 These test methods are applicable to undisturbed test or remolded specimens, or both, as follows:

5.4.1 *Method A*—This test method measures (*a*) the free swell, (*b*) percent heave for vertical confining pressures up to the swell pressure, and (*c*) the swell pressure.

5.4.2 *Method B*—This test method measures (*a*) the percent heave or settlement for vertical pressure usually equivalent to the estimated in situ vertical overburden and other vertical pressure up to the swell pressure, and (*b*) the swell pressure.

5.4.3 *Method C*—This test method measures (*a*) the swell pressure, (*b*) preconsolidation pressure, and (*c*) percent heave or settlement within the range of applied vertical pressures.

NOTE 4—Methods A and C have produced estimates of heave consistent with observed heave. Method B may lead to estimates of heave less than observed heave. Method A has not been recommended for evaluation of swell pressure and consolidation parameters for settlement estimates because sorption of water under practically no restraint may disturb the soil structure.

6. Interferences

6.1 Estimates of the swell and settlement of soil determined by these test methods are often of key importance in design of floor slabs on grade and evaluation of their performance. However, when using these estimates it is recognized that swell parameters determined from these test methods for the purpose of estimating in situ heave of foundations and compacted soils may not be representative of many field conditions because:

6.1.1 Lateral swell and lateral confining pressure are not simulated.

6.1.2 Swell in the field usually occurs under constant overburden pressure, depending on the availability of water. Swell in the laboratory is evaluated by observing changes in volume due to changes in applied pressure while the specimen is inundated with water. Method B is designed to avoid this limitation.

6.1.3 Rates of swell indicated by swell tests are not always reliable indicators of field rates of heave due to fissures in the in situ soil mass and inadequate simulation of the actual availability of water to the soil. The actual availability of water to the foundation may be cyclic, intermittent, or depend on in-place situations, such as pervious soil-filled trenches and broken water and drain lines.

6.1.4 Secondary or long-term swell may be significant for some soils and should be added to primary swell.

6.1.5 Chemical content of the inundating water affects volume changes and swell pressure; that is, field water containing large concentrations of calcium ions will produce less swelling than field water containing large concentrations of sodium ions or even rain water.

6.1.6 Disturbance of naturally occurring soil samples greatly diminishes the meaningfulness of the results.

7. Apparatus and Materials

7.1 *Consolidometer*—The apparatus shall comply with the requirements of Test Method D 2435. The apparatus shall be capable of exerting a pressure on the specimen of (*1*) at least 200 % of the maximum anticipated design pressure, or (*2*) the pressure required to maintain the original spec-

000403

imen height when the specimen is inundated (Method C), whichever is greatest.

7.1.1 Consolidometer rigidity influences the observed swell, particularly with Method C. Therefore, consolidometers of high rigidity should be used with Method C (see Test Method D 2435).

NOTE 5—Small increases in soil volume can significantly relieve swell pressures. Therefore, variations in displacements that occur during determination of swell pressures by Method C should be as small as possible to reduce the magnitude of correction required in 13.2.5. The measurements, especially swell pressure measurements, should be based on corrections for compression of members.

7.2 *Porous Stones*—The stones shall be smooth ground and fine enough to minimize intrusion of soil into the stones if filter paper is not used and shall reduce false displacements caused by seating of the specimen against the surface of porous stones (Note 6). Such displacements may be significant, especially if displacements and applied vertical pressures are small.

7.2.1 Porous stones shall be air dry.

7.2.2 Porous stones shall fit close to the consolidometer ring to avoid extrusion or punching at high vertical pressures. Suitable stone dimensions are described in 5.3 of Test Method D 2435.

NOTE 6—A suitable pore size is 10 μm if filter paper is not used. Filter paper is not recommended because of its high compressibility and should not be used when measuring the swell/settlement of stiff clays and when measuring swell pressure by Method C.

7.3 *Plastic Membrane, Aluminum Foil, or Moist Paper Towel,* a loose fitting cover to enclose the specimen, ring, and porous stones prior to inundating the specimen, used to minimize evaporation from the specimen.

8. Sampling of Naturally Occurring Soils

8.1 Disturbance of the soil sample from which specimens are to be obtained greatly diminishes the meaningfulness of results and should be minimized. Practice D 1587 and Practice D 3550 cover procedures and apparatus that may be used to obtain satisfactory undisturbed samples.

8.2 Storage in sampling tubes is not recommended for swelling soils even though stress relief may be minimal. The influence of rust and penetration of drilling fluid or free water into the sample may adversely influence laboratory test results. Water and oxygen from the sample could cause the formation of rust within the tube which could result in the sample adhering to the tube. Therefore, sampling tubes should be brass, stainless steel, or galvanized or lacquered inside to inhibit corrosion in accordance with Practice D 1587.

8.3 If samples are to be stored prior to testing, they should be extruded from the sampling tubes as quickly as possible after sampling and thoroughly sealed to minimize further stress relief and moisture loss. The sample should be extruded from the sampling tube in the same direction as sampled, to minimize further sample disturbance. If the sample cannot be extruded from the tubes immediately, they should be handled and shipped in accordance with Practices D 4220, Group D.

8.4 Prior to sealing in storage containers, samples extruded from tubes that were obtained with slurry drilling techniques should be wiped clean to remove drilling fluid adhering to the surface of the sample. An outer layer of 3 to 6 mm (0.1 to 0.3 in.) should be trimmed from the cylindrical surface of the samples so that moisture or the slurry will not penetrate into the sample and alter the swell potential, swell pressure, and other soil parameters. Such trimming will also remove some disturbance at the periphery due to sidewall friction. Drilling with air or foam instead of slurry will reduce moisture penetration.

8.5 Containers for storage of extruded samples may be either cardboard or metal and should be approximately 25 mm (1 in.) greater in diameter and 40 to 50 mm (1.5 to 2.0 in.) greater in length than the sample to be encased.

8.6 Soil samples stored in containers should be completely sealed in wax. The temperature of the wax should be 8 to 14°C (15 to 25°F) above the melting point when applied to the soil sample; wax that is too hot will penetrate pores and cracks in the sample and render it useless and will also dry the sample. Aluminum foil, cheese cloth, or plastic wrap may be placed around the sample to prevent penetration of molten wax into open fissures. A small amount of wax (about 113-mm or 0.5-in. thickness) should be placed in the bottom of the container and allowed to partly congeal. The sample should subsequently be placed in the container, completely immersed and covered with molten wax, and then allowed to cool before moving.

NOTE 7—A good wax for sealing expansive soils consists of a 1 to 1 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax or 100 % beeswax.

8.7 Examine and test samples as soon as possible after receipt; however, samples required to be stored should be kept in a humid room and may require rewaxing and relabeling before storage. Samples encased in wax or sampling tubes may be cut using a band-saw. The soil specimen should be adequately supported while trimming to size using sharp and clean instruments. The specimen may be extruded from a section of sampling tube and trimmed in one continuous operation to minimize sampling disturbance.

9. Specimen Preparation

9.1 Undisturbed or laboratory-compacted specimens may be used for testing. Prepare laboratory-compacted specimens to duplicate compacted fills as closely as possible.

NOTE 8—The compaction method, such as kneading or static compaction, may influence the volume change behavior when prepared wet of optimum water content. Compaction of laboratory specimens is described in Test Methods D 698 and Test Methods D 1557. Swelling soil is sometimes adequately treated with lime and test specimens compacted as described in Test Methods D 3877.

9.2 Trim the specime[illegible] ...dance with Test Method D 2435. A ring extensi[illegible] ...in Test Methods D 3877 may [illegible] assembly to accommod[illegible] thin hard disk may be i[illegible] ring during compactio[illegible] ring. Turn the ring an[illegible] the thin disk insert to [illegible] precaution to minimi[illegible] moisture and unit w[illegible] preparation. Vibrati[illegible] avoided.

[illegible] ...ment [illegible] ...us pur- [illegible] ...ate move- [illegible] ...ted tensioned [illegible] ...pecimen may be [illegible] must conform with [illegible] ...s needed in this respect [illegible] ...atic recording equipment.

This test [illegible] and Rock and is [illegible] Mechanics. Current edition appr[illegible] published as D 4554 - 85.

000404

NOTE 9—Tests with specimens recessed 5 mm (0.2 in.) in rings of 25-mm (1.0-in.) height have performed adequately.

10. Calibration

10.1 Calibrate the consolidation machine in accordance with Test Method D 2435.

10.2 Measure the compressibility of the apparatus with a smooth copper, brass, or hard steel disk substituted for the soil specimen. The disk should be approximately the same height as the specimen and 1 mm (0.04 in.) smaller in diameter than that of the ring. Place moistened filter papers between the porous stones and metal disk if filter papers are to be used during the test. Allow sufficient time for moisture to be squeezed from the filter paper during each load increment and decrement. The deflections of the calibration test are subtracted from the deflections of the soil test for each load increment and decrement.

NOTE 10—When filter paper is used, calibration must duplicate the exact load increment/decrement sequence due to inelastic compression of paper; thus, calibration is needed for each test. Periodic calibration will suffice for tests without filter paper.

11. Associated Soil Properties

11.1 Determine the initial (or natural) water content, wet and dry unit weights, volume, and initial void ratio in accordance with Test Method D 2435. Determine the specific gravity in accordance with Test Method D 854 when results are required in terms of void ratio. The liquid limit, plastic limit, and plasticity index as determined in accordance with Test Method D 4318 and the particle size distribution for soils with substantial granular material as determined in accordance with Method D 422 are useful in identifying the soil and correlating results of tests on different soils.

12. Procedure

12.1 Assemble the ring with the specimen recessed in the ring, dry filter paper if used, and air-dry porous stones in the loading device. Enclose the specimen, ring, filter paper, if any, and porous stones as soon as possible with a loose fitting plastic membrane, moist paper towel, or aluminum foil to minimize change in specimen water content and volume due to evaporation. This wrapping may be cut away and discarded at the time of specimen inundation.

12.2 Apply a seating pressure, σ_{se}, of at least 1 kPa (20 lbf/ft^2). Within 5 min after application of σ_{se}, adjust the extensometer deformation device for the initial or zero reading.

12.3 A graphical representation of results of the three alternative test methods shown in Fig. 2 includes corrections for consolidometer compressibility. These test methods are performed in accordance with Test Method D 2435 except as follows:

12.3.1 *Method A*—After the initial deformation reading at the seating pressure is recorded, inundate the specimen and record deformations after various elapsed times. Readings at 0.1, 0.2, 0.5, 1.0, 2.0, 4.0, 8.0, 15.0, and 30.0 min and 1, 2, 4, 8, 24, 48, and 72 h are usually satisfactory. Continue readings until primary swell is complete, as determined by the method illustrated in Fig. 1. After completion of swell, apply a vertical pressure of approximately 5, 10, 20, 40, 80, etc., kPa (100, 200, 400, 800, 1600, etc., lbf/ft^2) with each pressure maintained constant in accordance with 10.4 of Test Method D 2435. Maintain pressure until the specimen is recompressed to its initial void ratio/height. The duration of each load increment shall be equal and of a duration which assures 100 % primary consolidation (see 11.2 or 11.6 of Test Method D 2435).

NOTE 11—Some secondary swell must be recorded in order to determine graphically the end of primary swell.

NOTE 12—The duration of a typical loading increment is 1 day.

NOTE 13—Vertical pressures may be applied to recompress the specimen to void ratios less than the initial void ratio (point 6, Fig. 2 (Method A)) because the exact magnitude of vertical pressure required to recompress the specimen to its initial void ratio is unknown. Loading units equipped with pneumatic regulators are ideally suited for this purpose.

12.3.2 Method A may be modified to place an initial vertical stress, σ_1, on the specimen equivalent to the estimated vertical pressure on the in situ soil within 5 min of placing the seating pressure and securing the zero deformation reading. Read the deformation within 5 min and remove the vertical stress, except for the seating pressure. Record the deformation within 5 min after removal of σ_1, inundate the specimen, and continue the test as in 12.3.1. This modification provides a correction to the initial deformation reading at σ_{se} in an effort to more closely duplicate the in situ void ratio of the soil.

12.3.3 *Method B*—Apply a vertical pressure exceeding the seating pressure within 5 min of placing the seating pressure. Read the deformation within 5 min of placing the vertical pressure. The specimen is inundated immediately after the deformation is read and deformation recorded after elapsed times similar to 12.3.1 until primary swell is complete. Continue the test as in 12.3.1.

12.3.4 *Method C*—Apply an initial stress, σ_1, equivalent to the estimated vertical in situ pressure or swell pressure within 5 min after placement of the seating pressure. Read the deformation within 5 min after placing σ_1, and immediately inundate the specimen with water. Apply increments of vertical stress as needed to prevent swell (see Note 14). Variations from the deformation reading at the time the specimen is inundated at stress σ_1 shall be kept preferably within 0.005 mm (0.0002 in.) and not more than 0.010 mm (0.0004 in.). Load the specimen in accordance with 12.3.1, following no further tendency to swell (usually overnight). Load increments shall be sufficient to define the maximum point of curvature on the consolidation curve and to determine the slope of the virgin compression curve. The rebound curve following consolidation shall also be determined as illustrated in Fig. 2 (Method C). Duration of rebound load decrements shall be in accordance with 10.6 of Test Method D 2435.

NOTE 14—The use of small weight increments, such as lead shot, provide adequate control as needed to prevent swell.

12.4 Measurements shall include the time of reading, applied stress, observed deformation, and corrections for compression of members.

13. Calculations

13.1 Compute the initial void ratio or height, water content, wet and dry unit weights, and degree of saturation

000405

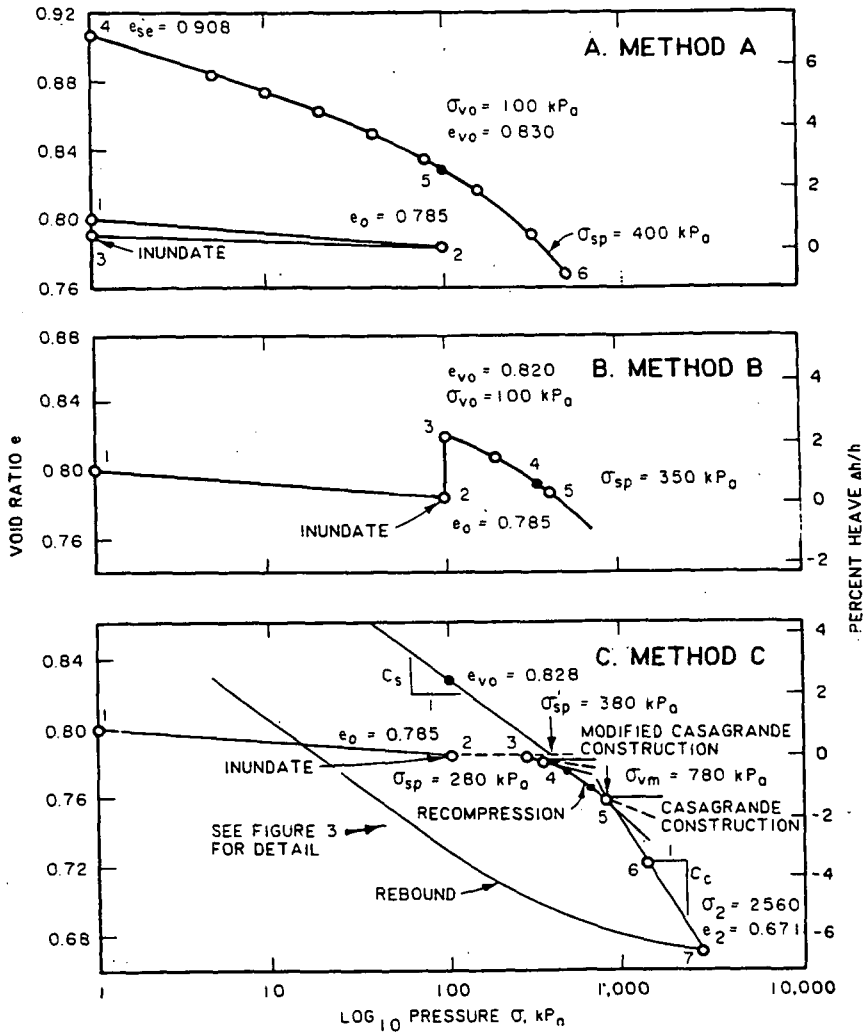


FIG. 2 Void Ratio - Log Pressure Curves

in accordance with Test Method D 2435. The void ratio or percent heave calculations are based on the final dial reading for each swell increment and load increment or decrement. The void ratio or percent heave may be plotted versus logarithm of the vertical pressure, as for examples of the three methods graphically illustrated in Fig. 2. The percent heave shall be relative to an initial specimen height, h_o, observed for an appropriate applied vertical pressure, σ (see 4.1.2). Void ratio or percent heave versus vertical pressure on an arithmetic scale may also be useful for practical applications.

13.2 The data points from a plot of e versus $\log_{10} \sigma$ (Fig. 2) may be used to evaluate the swell and settlement parameters of the tested soil.

13.2.1 *Method A*—The free swell at the seating pressure relative to the initial void ratio, e_o, is given as follows (see Fig. 2 (Method A)):

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{e_{se} - e_o}{1 + e_o} \times 100 = \left(\frac{\gamma_{do}}{\gamma_{dse}} - 1\right) 100$$

where:

Δh = change in specimen height,
h_o = initial specimen height,
e_{se} = void ratio after stabilized swell at the seating pressure σ_{se},
e_o = initial void ratio,
γ_{do} = dry unit weight at void ratio e_o, and
γ_{dse} = dry unit weight at void ratio e_{se}.

NOTE 15—Figure 2 (Method A) illustrates the free swell at a seating pressure σ_{se} = 1 kPa (20 lbf/ft^2).

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{0.908 - 0.785}{1.000 + 0.785} \times 100 = 6.9\ \%$$

The percent heave of 6.9 % may be read directly from the right ordinate of Fig. 2 (Method A) for e_{se} = 0.908, point 4.

13.2.2 The percent heave at a vertical pressure, σ, up to the swell pressure σ_{sp}, relative to e_o or an appropriate initial vertical pressure σ_{vo}, is as follows (see Fig. 2 (Method A)):

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{e - e_o}{1 + e_o} \times 100 = \left(\frac{\gamma_{do}}{\gamma_d} - 1\right) 100$$

where:

e = void ratio at vertical pressure, and
γ_d = dry unit weight at void ratio e.

000406

NOTE 16—Figure 2 (Method A) illustrates a percent heave, as follows:

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{0.830 - 0.785}{1.000 + 0.785} \times 100 = 2.5\ \%$$

where:
$e = e_{vo} = 0.830$, and
$\sigma = \sigma_{vo} = 100$ kPa (2000 lbf/ft^2).
The swell pressure, σ_{sp}, is given by 400 kPa (8350 lbf/ft^2) relative to $e_o = 0.785$.

13.2.3 Figure 2 may be plotted with dry unit weight, γ_d, versus logarithm of applied pressure, σ, instead of void ratio e versus logarithm σ if specific gravities were not determined. The swell for any change in dry unit weight within limits of the test results may be determined in a manner similar to that described in 13.2.1.

13.2.4 *Method B*—The percent heave at the vertical pressure σ_{vo}, applied following the seating pressure, (see 4.1.2) relative to e_o is given as follows (see Fig. 2 (Method B)):

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{e_{vo} - e_o}{1 + e_o} \times 100 = \left(\frac{\gamma_{do}}{\gamma_{dvo}} - 1\right) 100$$

where:
e_{vo} = void ratio after stabilized swell at the applied vertical pressure σ_{vo}, and
γ_{dvo} = unit dry weight at void ratio e_{vo}.

NOTE 17—Figure 2 (Method B) illustrates a percent heave, as follows:

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{0.820 - 0.785}{1.000 + 0.785} \times 100 = 2.0\ \%$$

where
$\sigma = \sigma_{vo} = 100$ kPa (2000 lbf/ft^2), and
σ_{sp} = swell pressure = 350 kPa (7300 lbf/ft^2) for $e_o = 0.785$.
Computations of settlement are similar if the specimen contracts at the applied vertical pressure following access to water.

13.2.5 *Method C*—The swell pressure σ_{sp} (point 3, Fig. 2 (Method C)) shall be corrected upward by a suitable construction procedure. Soil disturbance and the process of adjusting vertical pressures may allow some volume expansion to occur, which reduces the maximum observed swell pressure.

NOTE 18—Suitable correction procedures include those based on the preconsolidation pressure σ_{vm}. A construction procedure for soils that break onto a "virgin compression" curve when the recompression curve is not apparent is as follows: (*a*) locate the point of maximum curvature (point 5, Fig. 2 (Method C)), (*b*) draw horizontal, tangential, and bisector lines through the point of maximum curvature, (*c*) draw the virgin part of the compression curve backward to intersect the bisector at the preconsolidation pressure σ_{vm}, or 780 kPa (Fig. 2 (Method C)). The swell pressure is taken as the preconsolidation pressure. The slope of the rebound curve of these soils is usually much less than that of the compression curve.

NOTE 19—A modified construction procedure may be used for soils that break onto the recompression curve, Fig. 2 (Method C). The construction procedure is as follows: (*a*) locate the point of maximum curvature (point 4, Fig. 2 (Method C)), (*b*) draw horizontal, tangential, and bisector lines through the point of maximum curvature, (*c*) extend the recompression line through the bisector line. Intersection of the recompression line with the bisector line is designated the corrected swell pressure, σ'_{sp}, which is 380 kPa for the example in Fig. 2 (Method C). A detail of this construction is shown in Fig. 3. σ'_{sp} in this case is less than σ_{vm}. If the recompression line is not well defined, draw a line parallel with the rebound curve for void ratios greater than e_o through the bisector line. Frequent load increments may be necessary to define any recompression curve.

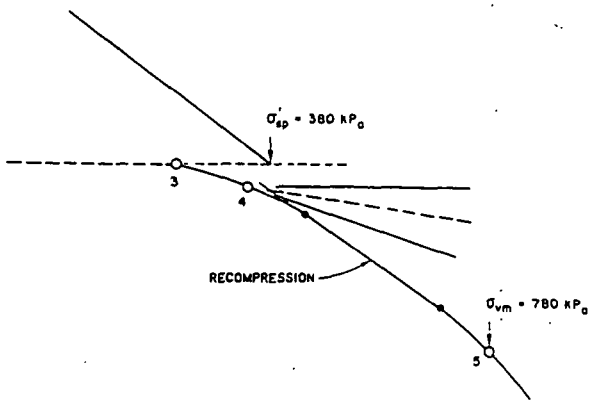


FIG. 3 Construction Detail for Method C

13.2.6 Draw a suitable curve parallel with the rebound (or recompression) curve for void ratios greater than e_o through the corrected swell pressure σ'_{sp} at the initial void ratio e_o given by point 3, Fig. 2 (Method C), to obtain the percent heave for any vertical pressure relative to σ'_{sp} and e_o within the range of test results.

NOTE 20—Percent heave calculated by Method C for $\sigma_{vo} = 100$ kPa (2000 lbf/ft^2) is as follows:

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{e_{vo} - e_o}{1 + e_o} \times 100 = \frac{0.828 - 0.785}{1.000 + 0.785} \times 100 = 2.4\ \%$$

13.2.7 The percent settlement (negative percent heave) may be evaluated from the void ratio e_2 exceeding the corrected swell pressure, as follows:

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{e_2 - e_o}{1 + e_o} \times 100$$

NOTE 21—Figure 2 (Method C) illustrates the percent settlement, as follows:

$$\frac{\Delta h}{h_o} \times 100 = \frac{0.671 - 0.785}{1.000 + 0.785} \times 100 = -6.4\ \%$$

where:
$e_2 = 0.671$, and
$\sigma_2 = 2560$ kPa (53 000 lbf/ft^2).

14. Report

14.1 The report shall include the information required in Test Method D 2435, and shall also include the following:

14.1.1 All departures from procedures, including changes in loading sequences.

14.1.2 The percent heave or settlement for the given vertical pressure and swell pressure σ_{sp}, or corrected swell pressure σ'_{sp}. The compression index, C_c, and swell index, C_s, should be reported if these are evaluated. All departures from the described procedures for computing these parameters and correction procedures used to determine percent heave or settlement and σ'_{sp} shall be described.

14.1.3 The type of water used to inundate the specimen.

15. Precision and Bias

15.1 *Precision*—Data are being evaluated to determine the precision of this test method. In addition, Subcommittee

D18.05 is seeking pertinent data from users of the test method.

15.2 *Bias*—There is no accepted reference value for this test method, therefore, bias cannot be determined.

16. Keywords

16.1 Expansive soil; heave; laboratory tests; settlement; swell pressure; swell index.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000408

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 4643 – 87

Standard Test Method for Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil by the Microwave Oven Method[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4643; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method outlines procedures for determining the water (moisture) content of soils by incrementally drying soil in a microwave oven.

1.2 This test method is not intended as a replacement for Method D 2216; but, rather as a supplement when more rapid results are required or desired to expedite other phases of testing. Method D 2216 is to be used as the method to compare for accuracy checks and correction.

1.3 When questions of accuracy between this test method and Method D 2216 arise, Method D 2216 shall be the referee method.

1.4 This test method is applicable for most soil types. For some soils, such as those containing significant amounts of halloysite, mica, montmorillonite, gypsum or other hydrated materials, highly organic soils, or soils in which the pore water contains dissolved solids (such as salt in the case of marine deposits), this test method may not yield reliable water content values.

1.5 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.6 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.* See Section 7.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 All definitions are in accordance with Terminology D 653.

3.2 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to this Standard:*

3.2.1 *water (moisture) content*—the ratio, expressed as a percentage, of the mass of "pore" or "free" water in a given mass of soil to the mass of the solid particles.

3.2.2 *microwave heating*—a process by which heat is induced within a material due to the interaction between dipolar molecules of the material and an alternating, high frequency electric field. Microwaves are electromagnetic waves with 1 mm to 1 m wavelengths.

4. Summary of Method

4.1 A moist soil specimen is placed in a suitable container and its mass is determined. It is then placed in a microwave oven, subjected to an interval of drying, and removed from the oven and its new mass is determined. This procedure is repeated until the mass becomes nearly constant.

4.2 The difference between the mass of the moist specimen and the dried specimen is used as the mass of water originally contained in the specimen. The water content is determined by dividing the mass of water by the dry mass of soil, multiplied by 100. For a given soil and sample size, the time to achieve a constant dry mass can be noted and used as a minimum drying time for subsequent tests using the same size specimen of the same soil.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 The water content of a soil is used throughout geotechnical engineering practice both in the laboratory and in the field. The use of Method D 2216 for water content determination can be time consuming and there are occasions when a more expedient method is desirable. The use of a microwave oven is one such method.

5.2 The principal objection to the use of the microwave oven for water-content determination has been the possibility of overheating the soil, thereby yielding a water content higher than would be determined by Method D 2216. While not eliminating this possibility, the incremental drying procedure described in this test method will minimize its effects. Some microwave ovens have settings at less than full power, which can also be used to reduce overheating.

5.3 The behavior of a soil, when subjected to microwave energy, is dependent on its mineralogical compositions, and as a result no one procedure is applicable for all types of soil. Therefore, the procedure recommended in this test method is meant to serve as a guide when using the microwave oven.

000110

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.08 on Special and Construction Control Tests.

Current edition approved Feb. 2, 1987. Published April 1987.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

5.4 This test method is best suited for minus No. 4 sized material. Larger size particles can be tested; however, care must be taken because of the increased chance of particle shattering.

5.5 The use of this method may not be appropriate when highly accurate results are required, or the test using the data is extremely sensitive to moisture variations.

5.6 Due to the localized high temperatures that the specimen is exposed to in microwave heating, the physical characteristics of the soil may be altered. Degregation of individual particles may occur, along with vaporization or chemical transition. It is therefore recommended that samples used in this test method not be used for other tests subsequent to drying.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Microwave Oven*—A household-type microwave oven, preferably with a vented chamber is suitable. The required size and power rating of the oven is dependent on its intended use.

NOTE 1—For routine laboratory applications, ovens with input power ratings between 1 and 2 kW have proven to be adequate.

6.2 *Balances,* having a precision (repeatability) of +0.01 g for specimens having a mass of 200 g or less, +0.1 g for specimens having a mass between 200 and 1000 g, or +1 g for specimens having a mass greater than 1000 g.

6.3 *Specimen Containers*—Suitable containers made of a nonmetallic nonabsorbant material, resistant to thermal shock, and not subject to changes in mass or shape when subjected to repeated heating, cooling, or cleaning. Porcelain evaporating dishes and standard borosilicate glass dishes perform satisfactorily. Other containers, such as paper cups or plates, also have been used satisfactorily; however, they may require pre-drying prior to use.

6.4 *Container Handling Apparatus*—A glove or holder, suitable for removing hot containers from the oven.

7. Hazards

7.1 Handle hot containers with a container holder. Some soil types can retain considerable heat, and serious burns could result from improper handling.

7.2 Suitable eye protection is recommended due to the possibility of particle shattering during the heating, mixing, or mass determinations.

7.3 Safety precautions supplied by the manufacturer of the microwave should be observed. Particular attention should be paid to keeping the door sealing gasket clean and in good working condition.

NOTE 2—The use of a microwave oven for the drying of soils may be considered abusive by the manufacturers and consitute voiding of warranties. Microwave drying of soils containing metallic materials may cause arcing in the oven. Highly organic soils and soils containing oils and coal may ignite and burn during microwave drying. Continued operation of the oven after the soil has reached constant weight may also cause damage or premature failure of the microwave oven.

NOTE 3—When first introduced, microwave ovens were reported to affect heart pacemakers, primarily because of the operating frequencies of the two devices. Since that time, pacemakers have been redesigned, and the microwave oven is not regarded as the health hazard it once was. However, it is advisable to post warnings that a microwave is in use.

7.4 Highly organic soils and soils containing oil or other contaminates may ignite into flames during microwave drying. Means for smothering flames to prevent operator injury or oven damage should be available during testing. Fumes given off from contaminated soils or wastes may be toxic, and the oven should be vented accordingly.

7.5 Due to the possibility of steam explosions, or thermal stress shattering porous or brittle aggregates, a covering over the sample container may be appropriate to prevent operator injury or oven damage. A cover of heavy paper toweling has been found satisfactory for this purpose. This also prevents scattering of the test sample in the oven during the drying cycle.

7.6 Do not use metallic containers in a microwave oven because arcing and oven damage may result.

7.7 Observe manufacturer's operating instructions when installing and using the oven.

8. Samples

8.1 Keep the samples that are stored prior to testing in noncorrodible airtight containers at a temperature between approximately 3 and 30°C in an area that prevents direct exposure to sunlight.

8.2 The water content determination should be performed as soon as practical after sampling, especially if potentially corrodible containers (such as steel thin-walled tubes, paint cans, and the like) or unsealed sample bags are used.

9. Test Specimen

9.1 For water contents being determined in conjunction with another ASTM method, the method of specimen selection specified in that method controls.

9.2 The manner in which the test specimen is selected and its required mass is basically dependent on the purpose (application) of the test, type of material being tested, and the type of sample (specimen from another test, bag, tube, split-barrel, and the like). In all cases, however, a representative portion of the total sample shall be selected. If a thinly layered soil or more than one soil type is encountered, select an average portion or individual portions, or both, and note which portion(s) was tested in the report of the results.

9.2.1 For bulk samples, select the test specimen from the material after it has been mixed thoroughly. The mass of moist material selected shall be in accordance with Table 1.

9.2.2 For small (jar) samples, select a representative portion in accordance with the following procedure:

9.2.2.1 For cohesionless soils, mix thoroughly the material, then select a test specimen having a mass of moist material in accordance with Table 1.

9.2.2.2 For cohesive soils, remove about 3 mm of material from the exposed periphery of the sample and slice the remaining specimen in half (to check if the material is layered), prior to selecting the test specimen. If the soil is layered, see 9.2. The mass of moist material selected should be in accordance with Table 1, if coarse-grained particles are

TABLE 1 Test Specimen Masses

Sieve Retaining Not More Than About 10 % of Sample	Recommended Mass of Moist Specimen, g
2.0 mm (No. 10)	100 to 200
4.75 mm (No. 4)	300 to 500
19 mm (¾ in.)	500 to 1000

000411

noted. Breaking or cutting of cohesive samples to approximately 6-mm (¼-in.) particles will speed drying and prevent crusting or the overheating of the surface while drying the interior.

9.3 Using a test specimen smaller than the minimum mass indicated previously requires discretion, though it may be adequate for the purpose of the test. A specimen having a mass less than the previously indicated value shall be noted in the report of the results.

NOTE 4—In many cases, when working with a small sample containing a relatively large coarse-grained particle, it is appropriate not to include this particle in the test specimen. If this occurs, it should be noted in the report of the results.

9.4 When results of a water (moisture) content determination by the use of this test method are to be compared to the results of another method, such as Method D 2216, a second sample should be obtained during the selection of the sample for this test method. Precautions should be taken to obtain a sample of the same water (moisture) content. The comparison sample should be processed as quickly as possible to avoid unrecorded moisture losses.

10. Conditioning

10.1 Prepare and process the specimens as quickly as possible to minimize unrecorded moisture loss that will result in erroneous water content determinations.

10.2 Cut or break up the soil into small size aggregations to aid in obtaining more uniform drying of the specimen.

10.3 If the specimens are not to be tested immediately, place in containers that can be closed to prevent loss of moisture prior to the initial weighing.

11. Procedure

11.1 Determine the mass of a clean, dry container or dish, and record.

11.2 Place the soil specimen in the container, and immediately determine and record the mass.

11.3 Place the soil and container in a microwave oven and turn the oven on for 3 min. If experience with a particular soil type and specimen size indicates shorter or longer initial drying times can be used without overheating, the initial and subsequent drying times may be adjusted.

NOTE 5—The 3-min initial setting is for a minimum sample mass of 100 g, as indicated in Table 1. Smaller samples are not recommended when using the microwave oven because drying may be too rapid for proper control. When very large samples are needed to represent soil containing large gravel particles, the sample may need to be split into segments and dried separately to obtain the dry mass of the total sample.

NOTE 6—Most ovens have a variable power setting. For the majority of soils tested, a setting of "high" should be satisfactory; however, for some soils such a setting may be too severe. The proper setting can be determined only through the use of and experience with a particular oven for various soil types and sample sizes. The energy output of microwave ovens may decrease with age and usage; therefore, power settings and drying times should be established for each oven.

11.4 After the set time has elapsed, remove the container and soil from the oven and cool to allow handling and to prevent damage to the balance. Determine and record the mass.

11.5 With a small spatula or knife carefully mix the soil, taking special precaution not to lose any soil.

11.6 Return the container and soil to the oven and reheat in the oven for 1 min.

11.7 Repeat 11.4 through 11.6, until the change between two consecutive mass determinations would have an insignificant affect on the calculated moisture content. A change of 0.1 % or less of the initial wet mass of the soil should be acceptable for most specimens.

11.8 Use the final mass determination in calculating the water content. Obtain this value immediately after removing the container and soil from the oven and cooling.

11.9 When routine testing of similar soils is contemplated, the drying times and number of cycles may be standardized for each oven. When standardized drying times and cycles are utilized, periodic verification to assure that the results of the final dry mass determination are equivalent to the procedure in 11.7 should be performed.

NOTE 7—Incremental heating, together with stirring, will minimize overheating and localized drying of the soil, thereby yielding results more consistent with results obtained by Method D 2216. The recommended time increments have been suitable for most specimens having particles smaller than a No. 4 sieve and with a mass of approximately 200 g; however, they may not be appropriate for all soils and ovens, and adjustment may be necessary.

NOTE 8—Water content specimens should be discarded after testing and not used in any other tests due to particle breakdown, chemical changes or losses, melting, or losses of organic constituencies.

12. Calculations

12.1 Calculate the water content of the soil as follows:

$$w = [(\text{mass of water})/(\text{mass of ovendried soil})] \times 100$$

$$w = [(M_1 - M_2)/(M_2 - M_c)] \times 100 = M_w/M_s \times 100$$

where:

w = water content, %,
M_1 = mass of container and moist specimen, g,
M_2 = mass of container and ovendried specimen, g,
M_c = mass of container, g,
M_w = mass of water, g, and
M_s = mass of solid particles, g,

13. Report

13.1 The report (data sheet) shall include the following:

13.1.1 Identification of the sample (material) being tested. by boring number, sample number, test number, and the like.

13.1.2 Water content of the specimen to the nearest 0.1 or 1 %, depending on the purpose of the test.

13.1.3 Indicate if test specimen has a mass less than the minimum indicated in Table 1.

13.1.4 Indicate if test specimen contains more than one soil type (layered, and the like).

13.1.5 Indication of any material (size and amount) excluded from the test specimen.

13.1.6 Time and setting of initial drying period and subsequent incremental drying periods.

13.1.7 Initial mass of test specimen prior to drying, and the mass after the incremental drying periods.

13.1.8 Identification of comparison test(s) if performed. and the method of test utilized.

13.1.9 Identification of the microwave oven and the drying settings and cycles used, when standardized drying is utilized.

000412

NOTE 9—Water (moisture) content determinations conducted in accordance with Method D 2216 or other methods may be recorded on the same report. This is not a mandatory requirement, but may be convenient when the results of the two methods are to be compared.

14. Precision and Bias

14.1 Limited data is being evaluated to determine the precision of this test method. The subcommittee is seeking pertinent data from users of the test method.

14.2 Preliminary studies to determine bias indicate the mean difference between the absolute value of water content, expressed as a percentage, when tested by the microwave oven and convection oven is 0.24 % for micaceous soils (having 5 to 25 % mica particles by mass) and 0.61 % for other soils. The standard deviation of the absolute value of the difference between the water content, expressed as a percentage, by the microwave oven and convection oven is 0.2 % for the micaceous soils and 0.3 % for other soils.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000413

Designation: D 4767 – 88$^{\epsilon 1}$

Standard Test Method for Consolidated-Undrained Triaxial Compression Test on Cohesive Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4767; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ϵ) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

$^{\epsilon 1}$ NOTE—Section 13 was added editorially January 1991.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of strength and stress-strain relationships for a cylindrical specimen of either an undisturbed or remolded saturated cohesive soil when it is isotropically consolidated and sheared undrained in compression at a constant rate of axial deformation (strain controlled).

1.2 The test method provides for the calculation of total and effective stresses on, and axial compression of the test specimen by measurement of axial load, axial deformation, and pore-water pressure.

1.3 The test provides data useful in determining strength and deformation properties of cohesive soils such as Mohr strength envelopes and Young's modulus. Generally, three specimens are tested at different effective consolidation stresses to define a strength envelope.

1.4 The determination of strength envelopes and the development of relationships to aid in interpreting and evaluating test results are left to the engineer or office requesting the test.

1.5 The values stated in either SI or non-SI units shall be regarded separately as standard. The values in each system may not be exact equivalents, therefore, each system must be used independently of the other, without combining values in any way.

1.6 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 422 Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[2]

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 854 Test Method for Specific Gravity of Soils[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2166 Test Method for Unconfined Compressive Strength of Cohesive Soil[2]

D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[2]

D 2435 Test Method for One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils[2]

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]

D 2850 Test Method for Unconsolidated, Undrained Compressive Strength of Cohesive Soils in Triaxial Compression[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions*—The definitions of terms used in this test method shall be in accordance with Terminology D 653.

3.2 *Description of Terms Specific to this Standard:*

3.2.1 *back pressure*—a pressure applied to the specimen pore-water to cause air in the pore space to pass into solution in the pore-water, that is, to saturate the specimen.

3.2.2 *effective consolidation stress*—the difference between the cell pressure and the pore-water pressure prior to shearing the specimen.

3.2.3 *failure*—the stress condition at failure for a test specimen. Failure is often taken to correspond to the maximum principal stress difference (maximum deviator stress) attained or the principal stress difference (deviator stress) at 15 % axial strain, whichever is obtained first during the performance of a test. Depending on soil behavior and field application, other suitable failure criteria may be defined, such as maximum effective stress obliquity, σ'_1/σ'_3, or the principal stress difference (deviator stress) at a selected axial strain other than 15 %.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 The shear strength of a saturated soil in triaxial compression depends on the stresses applied, time of consolidation, strain rate, and the stress history experienced by the soil.

4.2 The strength in this test is measured under undrained conditions and is applicable to field conditions where soils that have been fully consolidated under one set of stresses are subjected to a change in stress without time for further consolidation to take place (undrained condition), and the field stress conditions are similar to those in the test.

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.05 on Structural Properties of Soils.

Current edition approved May 3, 1988. Published July 1988.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000414

NOTE 1—If the strength is required for the case where the soil is not consolidated during testing prior to shear, refer to Test Method D 2850 or Test Method D 2166.

4.3 Using the pore-water pressure measured during the test, the shear strength determined from this test can be expressed in terms of effective stress. This shear strength may be applied to field conditions where full drainage can occur (drained conditions) or where pore pressures induced by loading can be estimated, and the field stress conditions are similar to those in the test.

4.4 The shear strength determined from the test expressed in terms of total stresses (undrained conditions) or effective stresses (drained conditions) is commonly used in embankment stability analyses, earth pressure calculations, and foundation design.

5. Apparatus

5.1 A schematic diagram of a triaxial compression apparatus suitable for the performance of consolidated-undrained tests is shown in Fig. 1. The requirements for equipment needed to perform satisfactory tests are given in the following sections.

5.2 *Axial Loading Device*—The axial compression device may be a screw jack driven by an electric motor through a geared transmission, a hydraulic or pneumatic loading device, or any other compression device with sufficient capacity and control to provide the rate of axial strain (loading) described in 8.4.2. The rate of advance of the loading device should not deviate by more than ±1 % from the selected value. Vibration due to the operation of the loading device shall be sufficiently small to not cause dimensional changes in the specimen or to produce changes in pore-water pressure when the drainage valves are closed.

NOTE 2—A loading device may be judged to produce sufficiently small vibrations if there are no visible ripples in a glass of water placed on the loading platform when the device is operating.

5.3 *Axial Load-Measuring Device*—The axial load-measuring device may be a load ring, electronic load cell, hydraulic load cell, or any other load-measuring device capable of the accuracy prescribed in this paragraph and may be a part of the axial loading device. The axial load-measuring device shall be capable of measuring the axial load to an accuracy of within ±1 % of the axial load at failure. If the load-measuring device is located inside the triaxial compression chamber, it shall be insensitive to horizontal forces and to the magnitude of the chamber pressure.

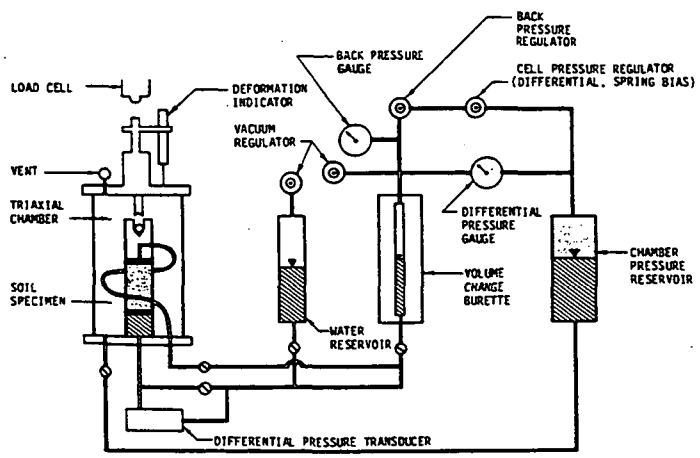


FIG. 1 Schematic Diagram of a Typical Consolidated Undrained Triaxial Apparatus

5.4 *Triaxial Compression Chamber*—The triaxial chamber must be able to withstand a chamber pressure equal to the sum of the effective consolidation stress and the back pressure. It shall consist of a top plate and a baseplate separated by a cylinder. The cylinder may be constructed of any material capable of withstanding the applied pressures. It is desirable to use a transparent material or have a cylinder provided with viewing ports so the behavior of the specimen may be observed. The top plate shall have a vent valve such that air can be forced out of the chamber as it is filled. The baseplate shall have an inlet through which the pressure liquid is supplied to the chamber, and inlets leading to the specimen base and provide for connection to the cap to allow saturation and drainage of the specimen when required.

5.5 *Axial Load Piston*—The piston passing through the top of the chamber and its seal must be designed so the variation in axial load due to friction does not exceed 0.1 % of the axial load at failure and so there is negligible lateral bending of the piston during loading.

NOTE 3—The use of two linear ball bushings to guide the piston is recommended to minimize friction and maintain alignment.

NOTE 4—A minimum piston diameter of ⅙ the specimen diameter has been used successfully in many laboratories to minimize lateral bending.

5.6 *Pressure- and Vacuum-Control Devices*—The chamber pressure and back pressure control devices shall be capable of applying and controlling pressures to within ±0.25 psi (2 kPa) for effective consolidation pressures less than 28 psi (200 kPa) and to within ±1 % for effective consolidation pressures greater than 28 psi (200 kPa). The vacuum control device shall be capable of applying and controlling partial vacuums to within ±0.25 psi (2 kPa). The devices may consist of self-compensating mercury pots, pneumatic pressure regulators, combination pneumatic pressure and vacuum regulators, or any other device capable of applying and controlling pressures or partial vacuums to the required tolerances.

5.7 *Pressure- and Vacuum-Measurement Devices*—The chamber pressure, back pressure, and vacuum measuring devices shall be capable of measuring pressures or partial vacuums to the tolerances given in 5.6. They may consist of Bourdon gages, pressure manometers, electronic pressure transducers, or any other device capable of measuring pressures, or partial vacuums to the stated tolerances. If separate devices are used to measure the chamber pressure and back pressure, the devices must be calibrated simultaneously and against the same pressure source. Since the chamber and back pressure are the pressures taken at the midheight of the specimen, it may be necessary to adjust the calibration of the devices to reflect the hydraulic head of fluids in the chamber and back pressure control systems (Fig. 1).

5.8 *Pore-Water Pressure Measurement Device*—The specimen pore-water pressure shall also be measured to the tolerances given in 5.6. During undrained shear, the pore-

000415

water pressure shall be measured in such a manner that as little water as possible is allowed to go into or out of the specimen. To achieve this requirement, a very stiff electronic pressure transducer or null-indicating device must be used. With an electronic pressure transducer the pore-water pressure is read directly. With a null-indicating device a pressure control is continuously adjusted to maintain a constant level of the water/mercury interface in the capillary bore of the device. The pressure required to prevent movement of the water is equal to the pore-water pressure. Both measuring devices shall have a rigidity of all the assembled parts of the pore-water pressure measurement system relative to the total volume of the specimen, satisfying the following requirement:

$$\frac{(\Delta V/V)}{\Delta u} < 2.2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ in.}^2/\text{lb } (3.2 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^2/\text{kN}) \quad (1)$$

where:

ΔV = change in volume of the pore-water measurement system due to a pore pressure change, in.^{3} (mm^3),
V = the total volume of the specimen, in.^{3} (mm^3), and
Δu = the change in pore pressure, psi (kPa).

NOTE 5—To meet the rigidity requirement, tubing between the specimen and the measuring device should be short and thick walled with small bores. Thermoplastic, copper, and stainless steel tubing have been used successfully in many laboratories.

5.9 *Volume Change Measurement Device*—The volume of water entering or leaving the specimen shall be measured with an accuracy of within ±0.05 % of the total volume of the specimen. The volume measuring device is usually a burette but may be any other device meeting the accuracy requirement. The device must be able to withstand the maximum chamber pressure.

5.10 *Deformation Indicator*—The vertical deformation of the specimen is usually determined from the travel of the piston acting on the top of the specimen. The piston travel shall be measured with an accuracy of at least ±0.02 % of the initial specimen height. The deformation indicator shall have a travel range of at least 20 % of the initial height of the specimen and may be a dial indicator, linear variable differential transformer (LVDT), extensiometer, or other measuring device meeting the requirements for accuracy and range.

5.11 *Specimen Cap and Base*—The specimen cap and base shall be designed to provide drainage from both ends of the specimen. They shall be constructed of a rigid, noncorrosive, impermeable material, and each shall, except for the drainage provision, have a circular plane surface of contact with the porous discs and a circular cross section. The weight of the specimen cap and top porous disc shall be less than 0.5 % of the applied axial load at failure or less than 0.1 lb (50 g). The diameter of the cap and base shall be equal to the initial diameter of the specimen. The specimen base shall be connected to the triaxial compression chamber to prevent lateral motion or tilting, and the specimen cap shall be designed such that eccentricity of the piston-to-cap contact relative to the vertical axis of the specimen does not exceed 0.05 in. (1.3 mm). The end of the piston and specimen cap contact area shall be designed so that tilting of the specimen cap during the test is minimal. The cylindrical surface of the specimen base and cap that contacts the membrane to form a seal shall be smooth and free of scratches.

5.12 *Porous Discs*—The specimen shall be separated from the specimen cap and base by rigid porous discs of a diameter equal to that of the specimen. The coefficient of permeability of the discs shall be approximately equal to that of fine sand (4×10^{-5} in./s (1×10^{-4} cm/s)). The discs shall be regularly checked to determine whether they have become clogged.

NOTE 6—Filter-paper discs of a diameter equal to that of the specimen may be placed between the porous discs and specimen to avoid clogging of the porous discs when accurate moduli values are not required.

5.13 *Filter-Paper Strips and Discs*—Filter-paper strips are used by many laboratories to decrease the time required for testing. If filter strips and discs are used, they shall be of a type that does not dissolve in water. The coefficient of permeability of the filter paper shall not be less than 4×10^{-6} in./s (1×10^{-5} cm/s) for a normal pressure of 80 psi (550 kPa). To avoid hoop tension, filter strips should cover no more than 50 % of the specimen periphery. Filter-strip cages similar to that shown in Fig. 2 have been successfully used by many laboratories. An equation for correcting the principal stress difference (deviator stress) for the effect of the strength of vertical filter strips is given in 10.6.

NOTE 7—Whatman's No. 54 Filter Paper has been found to meet the permeability and durability requirements.

5.14 *Rubber Membrane*—The rubber membrane used to encase the specimen shall provide reliable protection against leakage. To check a membrane for leakage, the membrane shall be placed around a cylindrical form, sealed at both ends with rubber O-rings, subjected to a small air pressure on the inside, and immersed in water. If air bubbles appear from any point on the membrane it shall be rejected. To offer minimum restraint to the specimen, the unstretched membrane diameter shall be between 90 and 95 % of that of the specimen. The membrane thickness shall not exceed 1 % of the diameter of the specimen. The membrane shall be sealed

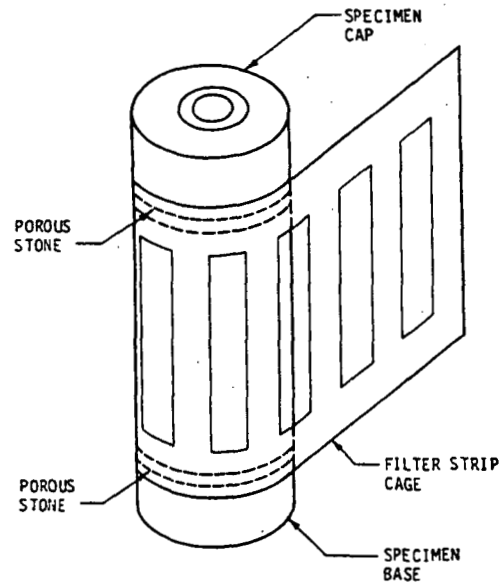


FIG. 2 Filter Strip Cage

000416

to the specimen cap and base with rubber O-rings for which the unstressed inside diameter is between 75 and 85 % of the diameter of the cap and base, or by other means that will provide a positive seal. An equation for correcting the principal stress difference (deviator stress) for the effect of the stiffness of the membrane is given in 10.7.

5.15 *Valves*—Changes in volume due to opening and closing valves may result in inaccurate volume change and pore-water pressure measurements. For this reason, valves in the specimen drainage system shall be of the type that produce minimum volume changes due to their operation. A valve may be assumed to produce minimum volume change if opening or closing the valve in a closed, saturated pore-water pressure system does not induce a pressure change of greater than ±0.1 psi (0.7 kPa). All valves must be capable of withstanding applied pressures without leakage.

NOTE 8—Ball valves have been found to provide minimum volume-change characteristics; however, any other type of valve having suitable volume-change characteristics may be used.

5.16 *Specimen-Size Measurement Devices*—Devices used to determine the height and diameter of the specimen shall measure the respective dimensions to within ±0.1 % of the total dimension and shall be constructed such that their use will not disturb the specimen.

NOTE 9—Circumferential measuring tapes are recommended over calipers for measuring the diameter.

5.17 *Recorders*—Specimen behavior may be recorded manually or by electronic digital or analog recorders. If electronic recorders are used, it shall be necessary to calibrate the measuring devices through the recorder using known input standards.

5.18 *Sample Extruder*—The sample extruder shall be capable of extruding the soil core from the sampling tube at a uniform rate in the same direction of travel as the sample entered the tube and with minimum disturbance of the sample. If the soil core is not extruded vertically, care should be taken to avoid bending stresses on the core due to gravity. Conditions at the time of sample removal may dictate the direction of removal, but the principal concern is to minimize the degree of disturbance.

5.19 *Timer*—A timing device indicating the elapsed testing time to the nearest 1 s shall be used to obtain consolidation data (8.3.3).

5.20 *Weighing Device*—The specimen weighing device shall determine the mass of the specimen to an accuracy of within ±0.05 % of the total mass of the specimen.

5.21 *Water Deaeration Device*—The amount of dissolved gas (air) in the water used to saturate the specimen may be decreased by boiling, by heating and spraying into a vacuum, or by any other method that will satisfy the requirement for saturating the specimen within the limits imposed by the available maximum back pressure and time to perform the test.

5.22 *Testing Environment*—The consolidation and shear portion of the test shall be performed in an environment where temperature fluctuations are less than ±7.2°F (±4°C) and there is no direct contact with sunlight.

5.23 *Miscellaneous Apparatus*—Specimen trimming and carving tools including a wire saw, steel straightedge, miter box, and vertical trimming lathe, apparatus for preparing compacted specimens, membrane and O-ring expander, water content cans, and data sheets shall be provided as required.

6. Test Specimen Preparation

6.1 *Specimen Size*—Specimens shall be cylindrical and have a minimum diameter of 1.3 in. (3.3 cm). The height-to-diameter ratio shall be between 2 and 2.5. The largest particle size shall be smaller than ⅙ the specimen diameter. If, after completion of a test, it is found based on visual observation that oversize particles are present, indicate this information in the report of test data (11.1.22).

NOTE 10—If oversize particles are found in the specimen after testing, a particle-size analysis may be performed in accordance with Method D 422 to confirm the visual observation and the results provided with the test report (11.1.4).

6.2 *Undisturbed Specimens*—Prepare undisturbed specimens from large undisturbed samples or from samples secured in accordance with Practice D 1587 or other acceptable undisturbed tube sampling procedures and preserved and transported in accordance with the practices for Group C samples in Practices D 4220. Specimens obtained by tube sampling may be tested without trimming except for cutting the end surfaces plane and perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the specimen, provided soil characteristics are such that no significant disturbance results from sampling. Handle specimens carefully to minimize disturbance, changes in cross section, or change in water content. If compression or any type of noticeable disturbance would be caused by the extrusion device, split the sample tube lengthwise or cut the tube in suitable sections to facilitate removal of the specimen with minimum disturbance. Prepare trimmed specimens, in an environment such as a controlled high-humidity room where soil water content change is minimized. Where removal of pebbles or crumbling resulting from trimming causes voids on the surface of the specimen, carefully fill the voids with remolded soil obtained from the trimmings. Where the sample condition permits a vertical trimming lathe that will accommodate the total sample may be used as an aid in preparing the specimen to the required diameter. After obtaining the desired diameter, place the specimen in a miter box and cut the specimen to the final length with a wire saw or other suitable device. Trim the surfaces with the steel straightedge. Perform one or more water content determinations on material trimmed from the specimen in accordance with Method D 2216. Determine the mass and dimensions of the specimen using the devices described in 5.16 and 5.20. A minimum of three height measurements (120° apart) and at least three diameter measurements at the quarter points of the height shall be made to determine the average height and diameter of the specimen.

6.3 *Compacted Specimens*—Compacted specimens may be prepared by compacting material in at least six layers using a pressing or kneading action into a split mold of circular cross section having dimensions meeting the requirements enumerated in 6.1. Material required for the specimen shall be batched by thoroughly mixing soil with sufficient water to produce the desired water content. After batching, store the material in a covered container for at least 16 h prior to compaction. Specimens may be compacted to the

000417

34 4

desired density by either: (*1*) kneading or tamping each layer until the accumulative mass of the soil placed in the mold is compacted to a known volume; or (*2*) by adjusting the number of layers, the number of tamps per layer, and the force per tamp. The top of each layer shall be scarified prior to the addition of material for the next layer. The tamper used to compact the material shall have diameter equal to or less than ½ the diameter of the mold. After a specimen is formed, with the ends perpendicular to the longitudinal axis, remove the mold and determine the mass and dimensions of the specimen using the devices described in 5.16 and 5.20. Perform one or more water content determinations on excess material used to prepare the specimen in accordance with Method D 2216.

NOTE 11—It is common for the unit weight of the specimen after removal from the mold to be less than the value based on the volume of the mold. This occurs as a result of the specimen swelling after removal of the lateral confinement due to the mold.

7. Mounting Specimen

7.1 *Preparations*—Before mounting the specimen in the triaxial chamber, make the following preparations:

7.1.1 If deemed necessary, check the rubber membrane for leaks (see 5.14).

7.1.2 Place the membrane on the membrane expander or, if it is to be rolled onto the specimen, roll the membrane on the cap or base.

7.1.3 Check that the porous discs and specimen drainage tubes are not obstructed by passing air or water through the appropriate lines.

7.1.4 Attach the pressure-control and volume-measurement system, and a pore-pressure measurement device to the chamber base.

7.2 Depending on whether the saturation portion of the test will be initiated with either a wet or dry drainage system, mount the specimen using the appropriate method, as follows in either 7.2.1 or 7.2.2:

NOTE 12—It is recommended that the dry mounting method be used for specimens of soils that swell appreciably when in contact with water. If the wet mounting method is used for such soils, it will be necessary to obtain the specimen dimensions after the specimen has been mounted. In such cases, it will be necessary to determine the double thickness of the membrane, the double thickness of the wet filter paper strips (if used), and the combined height of the cap, base, and porous discs (including the thickness of filter discs if they are used) so that the appropriate values may be subtracted from the measurements.

7.2.1 *Wet Mounting Method:*

7.2.1.1 Fill the specimen drainage lines and the pore-water pressure measurement device with deaired water.

7.2.1.2 Saturate the porous discs by boiling them in water for at least 10 min and allow to cool to room temperature.

7.2.1.3 Place a saturated porous disc on the specimen base and after wiping away all free water on the disc, place the specimen on the disc. Next, place another porous disc and the specimen cap on top of the specimen. Check that the specimen cap, specimen, and porous discs are centered on the specimen base.

NOTE 13—If filter-paper discs are to be placed between the porous discs and specimen, they should be dipped in water prior to placement.

7.2.1.4 If filter-paper strips or a filter-paper cage (Fig. 2) are to be used, saturate the paper with water prior to placing it on the specimen. To avoid hoop tension, do not cover more than 50 % of the specimen periphery with vertical strips of filter paper.

7.2.1.5 Proceed with Section 7.3.

7.2.2 *Dry Mounting Method:*

7.2.2.1 Dry the specimen drainage system. This may be accomplished by allowing dry air to flow through the system prior to mounting the specimen.

7.2.2.2 Dry the porous discs in the oven overnight prior to mounting the specimen and place in a desiccator while allowing the discs to cool to room temperature.

7.2.2.3 Place a dry porous disc on the specimen base and place the specimen on the disc. Next, place a dry porous disc and the specimen cap on the specimen. Check that the specimen cap, porous discs, and specimen are centered on the specimen base.

NOTE 14—If desired, dry filter-paper discs may be placed between the porous discs and specimen.

7.2.2.4 If filter-paper strips or a filter-paper cage (Fig. 2) are to be used, the cage or strips may be held in place by small pieces of tape at the top and bottom.

7.3 Place the rubber membrane around the specimen and seal it at the cap and base with two rubber O-rings or other positive seal at each end. A thin coating of silicon grease on the vertical surfaces of the cap and base will aid in sealing the membrane. If filter-paper strips or a filter-paper cage are used, do not apply grease to surfaces in contact with the filter-paper.

7.4 Attach the top drainage line and check the alignment of the specimen and the specimen cap. If the dry mounting method has been used, apply a partial vacuum of approximately 5 psi (35 kPa) (not to exceed the consolidation stress) to the specimen through the top drainage line prior to checking the alignment. If there is any eccentricity, release the partial vacuum, realign the specimen and cap, and then reapply the partial vacuum. If the wet mounting method has been used, the alignment of the specimen and the specimen cap may be checked and adjusted without the use of a partial vacuum.

8. Procedure

8.1 *Prior to Saturation*—After assembling the triaxial chamber, perform the following operations:

8.1.1 Bring the axial load piston into contact with the specimen cap several times to permit proper seating and alignment of the piston with the cap. During this procedure, take care not to apply an axial load to the specimen exceeding 0.5 % of the estimated axial load at failure. When the piston is brought into contact, record the reading of the deformation indicator.

8.1.2 Fill the chamber with the chamber liquid, being careful to avoid trapping air or leaving an air space in the chamber.

8.2 *Saturation*—The objective of the saturation phase of the test is to fill all voids in the specimen with water without undesirable prestressing of the specimen or allowing the specimen to swell. Saturation is usually accomplished by applying back pressure to the specimen pore water to drive air into solution after either: (*1*) applying vacuum to the specimen and dry drainage system (lines, porous discs, pore-pressure device, filter-strips or cage, and discs) and

000418

allowing deaired water to saturate the system while maintaining the vacuum; or (*2*) saturating the drainage system by boiling the porous discs in water and allowing water to flow through the system prior to mounting the specimen. It should be noted that time is required to place air into solution. Accordingly, removing as much air as possible prior to applying back pressure will decrease the amount of air that will have to be placed into solution and will also decrease the back pressure required for saturation. In addition, air remaining in the specimen and drainage system just prior to applying back pressure will go into solution much more readily if deaired water is used for saturation. The use of deaired water will also decrease the time and back pressure required for saturation. Many procedures have been developed to accomplish saturation. The following are suggested procedures:

8.2.1 *Starting with Initially Dry Drainage System*—Increase the partial vacuum acting on top of the specimen to the maximum available vacuum. If the effective consolidation stress under which the strength is to be determined is less than the maximum partial vacuum, apply a lower partial vacuum to the chamber. The difference between the partial vacuum applied to the specimen and the chamber should never exceed the effective consolidation stress for the test and should not be less than 5 psi (35 kPa) to allow for flow through the sample. After approximately 2 h, allow deaired water to percolate from the bottom to the top of the specimen under a differential vacuum of less than 3 psi (20 kPa) (Note 15).

8.2.1.1 There should always be a positive effective stress of at least 2 psi (13 kPa) at the bottom of the specimen during this part of the procedure. When water appears in the burette connected to the top of the specimen, close the valve to the bottom of the specimen and fill the burette with deaired water. Next, reduce the vacuum acting on top of the specimen through the burette to atmospheric pressure while simultaneously increasing the chamber pressure by an equal amount. During this process, the difference between the pore pressure measured at the bottom of the specimen and the chamber pressure should not be allowed to exceed the desired effective consolidation pressure. When the pore pressure at the bottom of the specimen stabilizes, proceed with back pressuring of the specimen pore-water as described in 8.2.3. To check for equalization, close the drainage valves to the specimen and measure the pore pressure change over a 1-min interval. If the change is less than 1 % of the chamber pressure, the pore pressure may be assumed to be stabilized.

NOTE 15—For saturated clays, percolation may not be necessary and water can be added simultaneously at both top and bottom.

8.2.2 *Starting with Initially Saturated Drainage System*—After filling the burette connected to the top of the specimen with deaired water, apply a chamber pressure of 5 psi (35 kPa) or less and open the specimen drainage valves. When the pore pressure at the bottom of the specimen stabilizes, according to the method described in 8.2.1, or when the burette reading stabilizes, back pressuring of the specimen pore-water may be initiated.

8.2.3 *Applying Back Pressure*—Simultaneously increase the chamber and back pressure in steps with specimen drainage valves opened so that deaired water from the burette connected to the top and bottom of the specimen may flow into the specimen. To avoid undesirable prestressing of the specimen while applying back pressure, the pressures must be applied incrementally with adequate time between increments to permit equalization of pore-water pressure throughout the specimen. The size of each increment might be 5 psi (35 kPa), 10 psi (70 kPa), or even 20 psi (140 kPa), depending on the compressibility of the soil specimen, the magnitude of the desired effective consolidation stress, and the degree of saturation of the specimen just prior to the addition of the increment. The difference between the chamber pressure and the back pressure during back pressuring should not exceed 5 psi (35 kPa) unless it is deemed necessary to control swelling of the specimen during the procedure. The difference between the chamber and back pressure must also remain within ±5 % when the pressures are raised and within ±2 % when the pressures are constant. To check for equalization after application of a back pressure increment or after the full value of back pressure has been applied, close the specimen drainage valves and measure the change in pore-pressure over a 1-min interval. If the change in pore pressure is less than 1 % of the difference between the chamber pressure and the back pressure, another back pressure increment may be added or a measurement may be taken of the pore pressure parameter B (see 8.2.4) to determine if saturation is completed. Specimens shall be considered to be saturated if the value of B is equal to or greater than 0.95, or if B remains unchanged with addition of back pressure increments.

NOTE 16—Although the pore pressure parameter B is used to measure the degree of saturation, the B-value is also a function of soil stiffness. If the degree of saturation of the sample is 100 %, the B-value measurement will increase with decreasing soil stiffness. Therefore, when testing soft soil samples, a B-value of 95 % may indicate a degree of saturation less than 100 %.

NOTE 17—The back pressure required to saturate a compacted specimen may be higher for the wet mounting method than for the dry mounting method and may be as high as 200 psi (1400 kPa).

NOTE 18—Many laboratories use differential pressure regulators and transducers to achieve the requirements for small differences between chamber and back pressure.

8.2.4 *Measurement of the Pore Pressure Parameter B*—Determine the value of the pore pressure parameter B in accordance with 8.2.4.1 through 8.2.4.4. The pore pressure parameter B is defined by the following equation:

$$B = \Delta u/\Delta\sigma_3 \quad (2)$$

where:

Δu = the change in the specimen pore pressure that occurs as a result of a change in the chamber pressure when the specimen drainage valves are closed, and

$\Delta\sigma_3$ = the change in the chamber pressure.

8.2.4.1 Close the specimen drainage valves and increase the chamber pressure 10 psi (70 kPa).

8.2.4.2 After approximately 2 min, determine and record the maximum value of the induced pore pressure. For many specimens, the pore pressure may decrease after the immediate response and then increase slightly with time. If this occurs, values of Δu should be plotted with time and the asymptotic pore pressure used as the change in pore pressure. A large increase in Δu with time or values of Δu greater than $\Delta\sigma_3$ indicate a leak of chamber fluid into the specimen. Decreasing values of Δu with time may indicate a leak in that

000419

part of the pore pressure measurement system located outside of the chamber.

8.2.4.3 Calculate the *B*-value using Eq 2.

8.2.4.4 Reapply the same effective consolidation stress as existed prior to the *B*-value by reducing the chamber pressure by 10 psi (70 kPa) or by alternatively, increasing the back pressure by 10 psi (70 kPa). If *B* is continuing to increase with increasing back pressure, continue with back pressure saturation. If *B* is equal to or greater than 0.95 or if a plot of *B* versus back pressure indicates no further increase in *B* with increasing back pressure, initiate consolidation.

8.3 *Consolidation*—The objective of the consolidation phase of the test is to allow the specimen to reach equilibrium in a drained state under the effective consolidation stress for which a strength determination is required. During consolidation, data is obtained for use in determining when consolidation is complete and for computing a rate of strain to be used for the shear portion of the test. The consolidation procedure is as follows:

8.3.1 When the saturation phase of the test is completed, bring the axial load piston into contact with the specimen cap and record the reading on the deformation indicator. During this procedure, take care not to apply an axial load to the specimen exceeding 0.5 % of the estimated axial load at failure. After recording the reading, raise the piston a small distance above the specimen cap and lock the piston in place.

8.3.2 With the specimen drainage valves closed, hold the maximum back pressure constant and increase the chamber pressure until the difference between the chamber pressure and the back pressure equals the desired effective consolidation pressure.

NOTE 19—In certain circumstances, consolidation in stages may be desirable, especially when radial drainage is used.

8.3.3 Obtain an initial burette reading and then open appropriate drainage valves so that the specimen may drain from both ends into the burette. At increasing intervals of elapsed time (0.1, 0.2, 0.5, 1, 2, 4, 8, 15, and 30 min and at 1, 2, 4, and 8 h, etc.) observe and record the burette readings and after the 15-min reading record the accompanying deformation indicator readings obtained by carefully coupling the piston with the specimen cap. If burette and deformation indicator readings are to be plotted against the square root of time, the time intervals at which readings are taken may be adjusted to those that have easily obtained square roots, for example, 0.09, 0.25, 0.49, 1, 4, 9 min, etc. Depending on soil type, time intervals may be changed to convenient time intervals which allow for adequate definition of volume change versus time.

NOTE 20—In cases where significant amounts of fines may be washed from the specimen because of high initial hydraulic gradients, it is permissible to gradually increase the chamber pressure to the total desired pressure over a period of up to 10 min with the drainage valves open. If this is done, recording of data should begin immediately after the total pressure is reached.

8.3.4 Plot the burette and deformation indicator readings versus either the logarithm or square root of elapsed time. Allow consolidation to continue for at least one log cycle of time or one overnight period after 100 % primary consolidation has been achieved as determined in accordance with one of the procedures outlined in Test Method D 2435. A marked deviation between the slopes of the burette and deformation indicator curves toward the end of consolidation based on deformation indicator readings indicates leakage of fluid from the chamber into the specimen and the test should be terminated.

8.3.5 Determine the time for 50 % primary consolidation, t_{50}, in accordance with one of the procedures outlined in Test Method D 2435.

8.4 *Shear*—During shear, the chamber pressure shall be kept constant while advancing the axial load piston downward against the specimen cap using controlled axial strain as the loading criterion. Specimen drainage is not permitted during shear.

8.4.1 *Prior to Axial Loading*—Before initiating shear, perform the following steps:

8.4.1.1 By opening or closing the appropriate valves, isolate the specimen so that during shear the specimen pore-water pressure will be measured by the pore-pressure measurement device and no drainage will occur.

8.4.1.2 Place the chamber in position in the axial loading device. Be careful to align the axial loading device, the axial load-measuring device, and the triaxial chamber to prevent the application of a lateral force to the piston during shear.

8.4.1.3 Bring the axial load piston into contact with the specimen cap to permit proper seating and realignment of the piston with the cap. Remember that during this procedure, care should be taken not to apply an axial load to the specimen exceeding 0.5 % of the estimated axial load at failure. If the axial load-measuring device is located outside of the triaxial chamber, the chamber pressure will produce an upward force on the piston that will react against the axial loading device. In this case, start shear with the piston slightly above the specimen cap, and before the piston comes into contact with the specimen cap, either (*1*) measure and record the initial piston friction and upward thrust of the piston produced by the chamber pressure and later correct the measured axial load, or (*2*) adjust the axial load-measuring device to compensate for the friction and thrust. The variation in the axial load-measuring device reading should not exceed 0.1 % of the estimated failure load when the piston is moving downward prior to contacting the specimen cap. If the axial load-measuring device is located inside the chamber, it will not be necessary to correct or compensate for the uplift force acting on the axial loading device or for piston friction. However, if an internal load-measuring device of significant flexibility is used in combination with an external deformation indicator, correction of the deformation readings may be necessary. In both cases, record the initial reading on the pore-water pressure measurement device immediately prior to when the piston contacts the specimen cap and the reading on the deformation indicator when the piston contacts the specimen cap.

8.4.2 *Axial Loading*—Apply axial load to the specimen using a rate of axial strain that will produce approximate equalization of pore pressures throughout the specimen at failure. Assuming failure will occur after 4 %, a suitable rate of strain may be obtained by dividing 4 % by ten times the value of t_{50} (obtained in 8.3.5). This rate of strain will provide for determination of accurate effective stress paths in the range necessary to define effective strength envelopes. If, however, it is estimated that failure will occur at a strain value lower than 4 %, it will be necessary to obtain a suitable

000420

strain rate by dividing the estimated failure strain by ten times the value of t_{50}. At a minimum, record load, deformation, and pore-water pressure values at increments of 0.1 % to 1 % strain and, thereafter, at every 1 %. Take sufficient readings to define the stress-strain curve; hence, more frequent readings may be required in the early stages of the test and as failure is approached. Continue the loading to 15 % strain, except loading may be stopped when the principal stress difference (deviator stress) has dropped 20 % or when 5 % additional axial strain occurs after a peak in principal stress difference (deviator stress).

NOTE 21—The use of a manually adjusted null-indicating device will require nearly continuous attention to ensure the criterion for undrained shear.

9. Removing Specimen

9.1 When shear is completed, perform the following steps:

9.1.1 Remove the axial load and reduce the chamber and back pressures to zero.

9.1.2 With the specimen drainage valves remaining closed, quickly remove the specimen from the apparatus so that the specimen will not have time to absorb water from the porous discs.

9.1.3 Remove the rubber membrane (and the filter-paper strips or cage from the specimen if they were used) and determine the water content of the total specimen in accordance with the procedure outlined in Method D 2216. (Free water remaining on the specimen after removal of the membrane should be blotted away before obtaining the water content.) In cases where there is insufficient material rom trimmings for index property tests, that is, where specimens have the same diameter as the sampling tube, the specimen should be weighed prior to removing material for index property tests and a representative portion of the specimen used to determine its final water content. Prior to placing the specimen (or portion thereof) in the oven to dry, sketch a picture or take a photograph of the specimen showing the mode of failure (shear plane, bulging, etc.).

10. Calculations

10.1 *Initial Specimen Properties*—Using the dry mass of the total specimen, calculate and record on the appropriate data sheet the initial water content, volume of solids, initial void ratio, initial degree of saturation, and initial dry unit weight. Calculate the specimen volume from values measured in 6.2 or 6.3. Calculate the volume of solids by dividing the dry mass of the specimen by the specific gravity of the solids (Note 22) and dividing by the density of water. Calculate the void ratio by dividing the volume of voids by the volume of solids where the volume of voids is assumed to be the difference between the specimen volume and the volume of the solids. Calculate dry density by dividing the dry mass of the specimen by the specimen volume.

NOTE 22—The specific gravity of solids can be determined in accordance with Test Method D 854 or it may be assumed based on previous test results.

10.2 *Specimen Properties After Consolidation*—Calculate the specimen height and area after consolidation as follows:

10.2.1 Height of specimen after consolidation, H_c, is determined from the following equation:

$$H_c = H_o - \Delta H_o \quad (3)$$

where:

H_o = initial height of specimen, in. (mm), and
ΔH_o = change in height of specimen at end of consolidation, in. (mm).

10.2.2 The cross-sectional area of the specimen after consolidation, A_c, shall be computed using one of the following methods (assuming consistent units are used). The choice of the method to be used depends on whether shear data are to be computed as the test is performed (in which case Method A would be used) or on which of the two methods in the opinion of a qualified person yield specimen conditions considered to be most representative of those after consolidation.

10.2.2.1 *Method A:*

$$A_c = (V_o - \Delta V_{sat} - \Delta V_c)/H_c \quad (4)$$

where:

V_o = initial volume of specimen, in.^{3} (mm^3),
ΔV_c = change in volume of specimen during consolidation as indicated by burette readings, in.^{3} (mm^3), and
ΔV_{sat} = change in volume of specimen during saturation, in.^{3} (mm^3), as follows:

$$\Delta V_{sat} = 3V_o\,\Delta H_s/H_o$$

where:

ΔH_s = change in height of the specimen during saturation, in. (mm).

10.2.2.2 *Method B:*

$$A_c = (V_{wf} + V_s)/H_c \quad (5)$$

where:

V_{wf} = final volume of water (based on final water content), in.^{3} (mm^3), and
V_s = volume of solids, in.^{3} (mm^3), as follows:

$$V_s = w_s/(G_s\rho_w)$$

where:

w_s = specimen dry mass, lb (kg),
G_s = specific gravity of solids, and
ρ_w = density of water, lb/in.^{3} (kg/mm^3).

10.2.3 Using the calculated dimensions of the specimen after consolidation, and assuming that the water content after consolidation is the same as the final water content, calculate the consolidated void ratio and degree of saturation.

NOTE 23—If the specimen absorbs water from the porous discs during the time it is being removed from the apparatus, the calculated degree of saturation based on the final water content will exceed 100 %.

NOTE 24—In this test method, the equations are written such that compression and consolidation are considered positive.

10.3 *Shear Data:*

10.3.1 Calculate the axial strain, ϵ_1, for a given applied axial load as follows:

$$\epsilon_1 = \Delta H/H_c \quad (6)$$

where:

ΔH = change in height of specimen during loading as read from deformation indicator, in. (mm), and
H_c = height of specimen after consolidation, in. (mm).

10.3.2 Calculate the cross-sectional area, A, for a given applied axial load as follows:

000421

$$A = A_c/(1 - \epsilon_1) \quad (7)$$

where:

A_c = average cross-sectional area of the specimen after consolidation, in.^{2} (mm^2), and

ϵ_1 = axial strain for the given axial load.

NOTE 25—The cross-sectional area computed in this manner is based on the assumption that the specimen deforms as a right circular cylinder during shear. In cases where there is localized bulging, it may be possible to determine more accurate values for the area based on specimen dimension measurements obtained after shear.

10.3.3 Calculate the principal stress difference (deviator stress), $\sigma_1 - \sigma_3$, for a given applied axial load as follows:

$$\sigma_1 - \sigma_3 = P/A \quad (8)$$

where:

P = given applied axial load (corrected for uplift and piston friction if required as obtained in 8.4.1.3), lb (kN), and

A = corresponding cross-sectional area, in.^{2} (mm^2).

10.3.4 Calculate the effective minor principal stress, σ'_3 for a given applied axial load as follows:

$$\sigma'_3 = \sigma_3 - \Delta u \quad (9)$$

where:

σ_3 = effective consolidation stress, psi (kPa), and

Δu = induced pore-water pressure at the given axial load (total pore-water pressure minus the total back pressure), psi (kPa).

10.4 *Principal Stress Difference (Deviator Stress) and Induced Pore-Water Pressure versus Strain Curves*—Prepare graphs showing relationships between principal stress difference (deviator stress) and induced pore-water pressure with axial strain, plotting deviator stress and induced pore-water pressure as ordinates and axial strain as abscissa. Select the principal stress difference (deviator stress) and axial strain at failure in accordance with a definition in 3.2.3.

10.5 $p' - q$ *Diagram*—Prepare a graph showing the relationship between p', $(\sigma'_1 + \sigma'_3)/2$ and q, $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2$, plotting q as ordinate and p' as abscissa using the same scale. The value of p' for a given axial load may be computed as follows:

$$p' = ((\sigma_1 - \sigma_3) + 2\sigma'_3)/2 \quad (10)$$

where:

$\sigma_1 - \sigma_3$ = principal stress difference (deviator stress), psi (kPa), and

σ'_3 = effective minor principal stress, psi (kPa).

10.6 *Correction for Filter-Paper Strips*—For vertical filter-paper strips which extend over the total length of the specimen, apply a filter-paper strip correction to the computed values of the principal stress difference (deviator stress), if the error in principal stress difference (deviator stress) due to the strength of the filter-paper strips exceeds 5 %.

10.6.1 For values of axial strain above 2 %, use the following equation to compute the correction:

$$\Delta(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3) = K_{fp}P_{fp}/A_c \quad (11)$$

where:

$\Delta(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$ = correction to be subtracted from the measured principal stress difference (deviator stress), psi (kPa),

K_{fp} = load carried by filter-paper strips per unit length of perimeter covered by filter-paper, lbf/in. (kN/mm),

P_{fp} = perimeter covered by filter-paper, in. (mm), and

A_c = cross-sectional area of specimen after consolidation, in.^{2} (mm^2).

10.6.2 For values of axial strain of 2 % or less, use the following equation to compute the correction:

$$\Delta(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3) = 50\epsilon_1 K_{fp}P_{fp}/A_c \quad (12)$$

where:

ϵ_1 = axial strain (decimal form) and other terms are the same as those defined in 10.6.1.

NOTE 26—For filter-paper generally used in triaxial testing, K_{fp} is approximately 1.1 lb/in. (0.19 kN/m).

10.7 *Correction for Rubber Membrane*—Use the following equation to correct the principal stress difference (deviator stress) for the effect of the rubber membrane if the error in principal stress difference (deviator stress) due to the strength of the membrane exceeds 5 %:

$$\Delta(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3) = (4E_m t_m \epsilon_1)/D_c \quad (13)$$

where:

$\Delta(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$ = the correction to be subtracted from the measured principal stress difference (deviator stress), psi (kPa),

D_c = $\sqrt{4A_c/\pi}$ = diameter of specimen after consolidation, in. (mm),

E_m = Young's modulus for the membrane material, psi (kPa),

t_m = thickness of the membrane, in. (mm), and

ϵ_1 = axial strain (decimal form).

10.7.1 The Young's modulus of the membrane material may be determined by hanging a 0.5-in. (15-mm) circumferential strip of membrane using a thin rod, placing another rod through the bottom of the hanging membrane, and measuring the force per unit strain obtained by stretching the membrane. The modulus value may be computed using the following equation:

$$E_m = (F/A_m)/(\Delta L/L) \quad (14)$$

where:

E_m = Young's modulus of the membrane material, psi (kPa),

F = force applied to stretch the membrane, lbf (kN),

L = unstretched length of the membrane, in. (mm),

ΔL = change in length of the membrane due to application of the force, F, in. (mm), and

A_m = area of the membrane = 2 t_m W_s, in.^{2} (m^2 = mm^2/1 000 000)

where:

t_m = thickness of the membrane, and

W_s = width of circumferential strip (4.5 in. or 15 mm).

NOTE 27—A typical value of E_m for latex membranes is 200 psi (1400 kPa).

NOTE 28—The effect of the membrane on the lateral stress is usually assumed to be negligible.

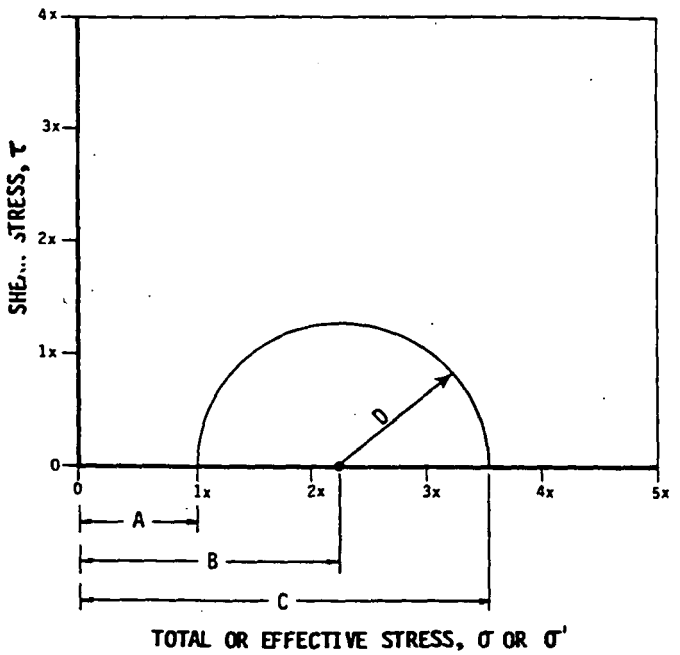
NOTE 29—The corrections for filter-paper strips and membranes are based on simplified assumptions concerning their behavior during shear. Their actual behavior is complex and there is not a consensus on more exact corrections.

000422

10.8 Determine the major and minor principal stresses at failure based on total stresses, σ_{1f} and σ_{3f} respectively, and on effective stresses, σ'_{1f} and σ'_{3f} respectively, as follows:

σ_{3f} = effective consolidation stress, psi (kPa),
σ_{1f} = $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$ at failure + σ_{3f}, psi (kPa),
σ'_{3f} = $\sigma_{3f} - \Delta u_f$, psi (kPa), and
σ'_{1f} = $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$ at failure + σ'_{3f}, psi (kPa), where Δu is the induced pore-water pressure at failure.

10.9 *Mohr Stress Circles*—Construct Mohr stress circles at failure based on total and effective stresses on an arithmetic plot with shear stress as ordinate and normal stress as abscissa using the same scales. As shown in Fig. 3, the circle based on total stresses is drawn with a radius of one-half the principal stress difference (deviator stress) at failure with its center at a value equal to one-half the sum of the major and minor total principal stresses. The Mohr stress circle based on effective stresses is drawn in a similar manner except that its center is at a value equal to one-half the sum of the major and minor effective principal stresses.



A = TOTAL OR EFFECTIVE MINOR PRINCIPAL STRESS (σ_3 or σ'_3)
B = AVERAGE OF TOTAL OR EFFECTIVE PRINCIPAL STRESSES
C = TOTAL OR EFFECTIVE MAJOR PRINCIPAL STRESS (σ_1 or σ'_1)
D = RADIUS OF THE MOHR'S CIRCLE; HALF THE PRINCIPAL STRESS DIFFERENCE

FIG. 3 Construction of Mohr Stress Circle

11. Report

11.1 The report shall include the following:

11.1.1 Identification data and visual description of specimen, including soil classification and whether the specimen is undisturbed, compacted, or otherwise prepared.

11.1.2 Values of plastic limit and liquid limit, if determined in accordance with Test Method D 4318.

11.1.3 Value of specific gravity of solids and notation if the value was determined in accordance with Test Method D 854 or assumed.

11.1.4 Particle-size analysis, if determined in accordance with Method D 422.

11.1.5 Initial specimen dry unit weight, void ratio, water content, and percent saturation.

11.1.6 Initial height and diameter of specimen.

11.1.7 Method followed for specimen saturation (that is, dry or wet method).

11.1.8 Total back pressure.

11.1.9 The pore pressure parameter B at the end of saturation.

11.1.10 Effective consolidation stress.

11.1.11 Time to 50 % primary consolidation.

11.1.12 Specimen dry unit weight, void ratio, water content, and degree of saturation after consolidation.

11.1.13 Specimen cross-sectional area after consolidation and method used for determination.

11.1.14 Failure criterion used.

11.1.15 The value of the principal stress difference (deviator stress) at failure and the values of the effective minor and major principal stresses at failure.

11.1.16 Axial strain at failure, percent

11.1.17 Rate of strain, percent/min.

11.1.18 Principal stress difference (deviator stress) and induced pore-water pressure versus axial strain curves as described in 10.4.

11.1.19 The $p' - q$ diagram for the test results.

11.1.20 Mohr stress circles based on total and effective stresses.

11.1.21 Failure sketch or photograph of the specimen.

11.1.22 Remarks and notations regarding any unusual conditions or other information necessary to properly interpret the results obtained, including any departures from the procedure outlined.

12. Precision and Bias

12.1 The variability of soil and resultant inability to determine a true reference value prevent development of a meaningful statement of bias. Data are being evaluated to determine the precision of this test method. In addition, the subcommittee is seeking pertinent data from users of this test method.

13. Keywords

13.1 Back pressure situation; cohesive soils; consolidated-undrained-triaxial compression test; consolidated undrained triaxial compressive strength; effective consolidation stress; shear strength; strength envelope.

000423

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000424

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 4992 – 94

Standard Practice for Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4992; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers the evaluation of rock to be used for erosion control. The complexity and extent of this evaluation will be governed by the size and design requirements of the individual project, the quantity and quality of rock required, and the potential risk for property damage or loss of human life.

1.2 It is not intended that all of the evaluations listed in this practice be addressed for every project. For some small, less critical jobs, a visual inspection of the rock may be all that is necessary. Several of the evaluations listed may be necessary on large, complex, high-hazard projects. The intensity and number of evaluations made on any one project must be determined by the designer.

1.3 Examination of the rock at the source, evaluation of similar rock exposed to the environment at any field installations, as well as laboratory tests may be necessary to determine the properties of the rock as related to its predicted performance at the site of intended use (**1, 2, 3**).[2]

1.4 The examination of the rock at its source is essential to its evaluation for erosion control and aids in the planning of the subsequent laboratory examinations. Very large pieces of rock up to several tons weight are used in the control of erosion; thus great care must be taken with the field descriptions and in the sampling program to assure that zones of impurities or weaknesses that might not occur in ordinary size specimens are recorded and evaluated for their deleterious potential under the conditions of intended use. It is necessary that the intended method of rock removal be studied to ascertain whether the samples taken will correspond to the blasting, handling, and weathering history of the rock that will finally be used (**1**).

1.5 The specific procedures employed in the laboratory examinations depend on the kind of rock, its characteristics, mineral components, macro and micro structure, and perhaps most importantly, the intended use, size of the pieces, and the exposure conditions at the site of use (**3**).

1.6 It is assumed that this practice will be used by personnel who are qualified by education and experience to plan the necessary evaluations and to conduct them so that the necessary parameters of the subject rock will be defined. Therefore, this practice does not attempt to detail the laboratory techniques required, but rather to mention them and only detail those properties that must be of special concern in the course of the examination for rock to be used for erosion control.

1.7 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard. The inch-pound units given in parentheses are for information only.

1.8 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety concerns, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 88 Test Methods for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate[3]

C 127 Test Method for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate[3]

C 294 Descriptive Nomenclature of Constituents of Natural Mineral Aggregates[3]

C 295 Practice for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete[3]

C 535 Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Large-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine[3]

D 653 Terminology Related to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[4]

D 3967 Test Method for Splitting Tensile Strength of Intact Rock Core Specimens[4]

D 5121 Practice for Preparation of Rock Slabs for Durability Testing[5]

D 5240 Test Method for Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate[4]

D 5312 Test Method for Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions[5]

D 5313 Test Method for Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions[5]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 *rock mass properties*—lithologic properties of rock and its discontinuities that must be evaluated on a macroscopic scale in the field.

3.1.2 *rock material properties*—lithologic properties of

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.17 on Rock for Erosion Control.

Current edition approved March 15, 1994. Published May 1994. Originally published as D 4992 – 89. Last previous edition D 4992 – 89.

[2] The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to the list of references at the end of this standard.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[5] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.09.

000426

rock that can be evaluated using an in-hand sample either in the field or in the laboratory.

3.1.3 *shot rock*—(synonym for quarry run); unprocessed stone produced from a source primarily by blasting. The term does not indicate stone size or gradation.

3.1.4 For other definitions of terms relating to this practice, refer to Terminology D 653.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 The field examination and petrographic examination in this practice along with appropriate laboratory testing may be used to determine the suitability of rock for erosion control. It should identify and delineate areas or zones of the rock, beds, and facies of unsuitable or marginal composition and properties due to weathering, alteration, structural weaknesses, porosity, and other potentially deleterious characteristics.

4.2 Both the rock mass properties and the rock material properties must be evaluated.

4.2.1 The rock mass properties are the lithologic properties of the in situ rock that must be evaluated on a macroscopic scale in the field. These would include features such as fractures, joints, faults, bedding, schistosity, and lineations, as well as the lateral and vertical extent of the rock unit.

4.2.2 The rock material properties are those lithologic properties that may be evaluated using small specimens and thus can be subject to meaningful laboratory testing. These properties would include mineral composition, grain size, rock hardness, degree of weathering, porosity, unit weight, and many others.

4.3 Rock proposed for use in erosion control applications will normally be classified as either filter bedding stone, riprap stone, armor stone, or breakwater stone. However, these procedures may be also extended to rocks used in groin and gabion structures.

5. Planning

5.1 A plan and schedule of the field examination and subsequent laboratory examination should include a review of all available information about the source rock and the purpose for which it is intended. State geological surveys, geological divisions of state transportation departments, and geology/environmental departments of universities near the source to be examined are generally good sources of information. Any local engineering geologists should also be consulted, to gain all collateral information that might be useful in examining the source site and any project installations, and in the planning of the laboratory test requirements.

5.2 This review may provide the name of the rock unit and key to lithologic descriptions, previous examinations, and structural and compositional characteristics affecting the rock in its intended use, as well as test data. The information may further assist in planning the examinations and alternatives to problems such as vertical quarry faces.

6. Materials and Equipment for Examinations

6.1 Equipment for the field examination will be at the investigator's discretion. A checklist of equipment may include, but not be limited to, the following:

6.1.1 *Geologists's Pick or Hammer.*

6.1.2 *Hand Lens.*

6.1.3 *Sledge Hammer.*

6.1.4 *Bottle of Dilute Hydrochloric Acid (3 parts water, 1 part HCl).*

6.1.5 *Tape or Scale.*

6.1.6 *Rock Scratching Tool, Knife, or Dissecting Needle.*

6.1.7 *Brunton Compass.*

6.1.8 *Camera.*

6.1.9 *Note Book.*

6.1.10 *Sample Bags.*

6.1.11 *Marking Pens or Spray Paint.*

6.2 *Apparatus and Supplies for Petrographic Examination:*

6.2.1 The apparatus and supplies listed for petrographic examination in Practice C 295 will be those required for this standard practice except that some of the equipment for handling the large pieces of rock should be of larger size as outlined below.

6.2.1.1 *Rock Cutting Saw*, diamond edged blade at least 600 mm (24 in.) in diameter.

NOTE 1—Some laboratories have fabricated reciprocating saws that cut with diamond powder in a slurry. Such saws can be made capable of cutting almost any size rock specimen.

6.2.1.2 *Horizontal Grinding Wheel*, minimum of 400 mm (16 in.) diameter.

6.2.1.3 *Polishing Wheel*, minimum of 400 mm (16 in.) diameter.

NOTE 2—When the first saw cut is smooth, as when fabricated with a smooth edged circular diamond saw running in an oil bath, vibratin laps may be substituted for the horizontal grinding wheel and t polishing lap. These laps may be obtained in sizes up to 675 mm (27 in.) in diameter. These large vibratory laps will be a useful addition and will completely substitute for the polishing lap. Considerable effort must be expended to keep vibratory laps clean and the abrasives free of contamination.

6.2.1.4 *Stereoscopic Microscope*—The stereoscopic microscope shall have a zoom lens from 10 to 120×. The microscope shall be mounted on an arm that can swing over the specimen or alternatively have a specially constructed stage of large size to facilitate the handling of the large specimen slabs that will be required.

6.2.1.5 *Petrographic Microscope*, shall be as described in Practice C 295. Optionally, for the detection of very small microcracks, it may be equipped with incident ultraviolet light for use with thin sections impregnated with a fluorescing dye (4).

NOTE 3—Special types of thin sections will probably require additional preparation equipment. An example is given in Ref (4).

6.3 *Thin Section Fabrication:*

6.3.1 Laboratories may find that they can obtain good, rapid, individualized service from a geological laboratory that specializes in the fabrication of thin sections. When choosing such a laboratory, considerations should include the following.

6.3.1.1 Time between sending off the rock fragments or prepared chips and return of the finished sections.

6.3.1.2 Will adjacent rock fragments or slices be return for further examination or archival use, or both?

6.3.1.3 Costs involved.

6.3.1.4 Charges and any extra time required for specially

000427

prepared sections: special large size, epoxy impregnated, impregnated with special dyes, and thin sections thinned to less than the standard 30 μm (10 to 15 μm required for fine grained rock and for detection of fine microcracking, certain deleterious textures and substances).

6.3.1.4 Workload.

6.3.1.5 Quality of work.

6.3.2 Laboratories should consider obtaining their own thin-section equipment whenever workload, space, and financial considerations permit if experienced personnel are available or obtainable to fabricate the sections. In-house equipment allows for much greater versatility of operation. As the knowledge of the rock material accumulates through examination of finely lapped slabs and hand specimens, and from the results of laboratory testing, it will invariably be found that the first estimate of the proper number, location of "chips" and types of thin sections requires amending.

6.4 *Photographic Facilities Should Be Capable of Producing the Following:*

6.4.1 Photographs of quarries and other rock sources, in use placements of rock and natural outcrops of rocks under the proposed conditions of exposure,

6.4.2 Close-up photographs of rock specimens, cores, chunks, and slabs,

6.4.3 Photographs taken through the stereoscopic microscope (easily usable equipment can be obtained from the microscope manufacturer), and

6.4.4 Photographs taken through the petrographic microscope (easily usable equipment can be obtained from the microscope manufacturer).

7. Field Examination

7.1 The field examination is an integral part of the total evaluation of the rock for its use in erosion control projects. The geologic scientist conducting the field examination must have knowledge of the intended use of the rock and of the size pieces that will be required and the environment to which the rock will be subjected. The scientist must also be familiar with the laboratory tests that are most apt to be conducted in order that appropriate samples may be obtained.

7.2 During the field examination determine the following:

7.2.1 The type of quarry and its development plan. The blasting procedures that are or will be employed. Note blasting hole diameter, hole depth, spacing, angle, amount of overburden, types of explosives, distribution, and sequences. The expected 'curing time,' the interval between blasting or other removal from the bedrock, and the size sorting and final inspection and evaluation for use in the intended placement **(1, 5, 6, 7)**.

7.2.2 The general lithology and, if possible, geologic unit and age.

7.2.3 Homogeneity throughout the proposed source. In particular note the stratigraphic facies, metamorphic and weathering phases, and lateral extent of each.

7.2.4 Dip and strike of the bedding, lineation, or both, should be noted as well as the dip and strike of any structural features, zones of brecciation, partings, solution features, schistosity, foliation, diastrophic joints, faults, folds, dikes, veins, and etc. Any joints due to overburden-relief must be recorded.

7.2.5 The thickness of the bedding, and the presence and distance between any poorly indurated beds or facies. The distance between any regular zones of weakness such as joints, weakly filled veins, etc. must be recorded as this will be a major control of the size fragments available.

7.2.6 Special note shall be taken of any fragments of the rock that have been exposed to weather for a long period of time. If these are not available at the proposed site of rock removal, an effort shall be made to find such weathered examples of this rock at other sites.

7.2.7 Any examples of this rock in use in a manner similar to the proposed use shall be investigated for evidence of durability. In conjunction with this examination, natural occurrences of this rock at sites similar to the proposed use shall be sought and examined; for example, a natural outcrop on a river bank, or even better, an outcrop as a local base-level at the rapids of a stream.

7.3 Observations made during the field examination shall be recorded in writing using standard nomenclature **(5, 6, 8)**, in a designated field notebook in a manner that will allow future reference.

7.4 Photographs shall be taken.

8. Sampling

8.1 The sampling plan and labeling plan shall be designed to identify the location from which the sample was derived, the stratigraphic unit or facies, and the orientation; for example, up versus down, east versus west, north versus south. Cores shall be identified in a manner that will allow sequential matching of the pieces.

8.2 The samples, whenever practical, should include pieces of the size that will be required for the final placement of the rock.

8.3 The number of samples and the number of pieces of rock in each sample and the specimens taken for archival use shall be completely dependent upon the nature of the rock, the amount of material required for the erosion prevention placement, and the variability of the rock within the mass proposed for use.

8.4 The samples chosen for testing shall be representative of the rock to be used on a project.

8.5 Samples shall be of such dimensions as to minimize mechanical reduction (breaking) of the specimen prior to testing, with the exception of specimens that are sawed prior to examination or testing. The latter specimens may be taken from oversize specimens.

8.6 Samples may be obtained from a quarry face, shot rock, or stockpile. Samples of shot or stockpiled rock should be compared to stratigraphic units visible on a quarry face. Soft or fractured stratigraphic units which are reduced to small sizes during blasting and end up as waste will not need to be sampled. These units will not be included in a stockpile or in rock loaded for delivery to a project. The finished product is the preferred source of the samples.

9. Preparation of Specimens for Laboratory Examination

9.1 The details of the specimen preparation must be left to the discretion of the geological scientists and engineers involved. Many laboratory tests such as freeze-thaw, wet-dry, and others require special specimen preparation. The greater the number of specialized tests, the more careful the parti-

000428

tioning of the amount of specimen available must be. In the general case, the petrographic procedures require the least mass, but the most careful selection; therefore these specimens are often selected first.

9.2 Valuable data can be gained by careful observation of the bulk samples specimens as received in the laboratory. Spot tests with acid and dyes will often indicate general composition. The fine structure of a specimen can often be made visible by smoothing and etching, or staining, or combination thereof, one large surface. These methods will often indicate which further test procedures should be used on which specimen pieces and therefore which preparation methods will be required.

9.3 *Sample Preparation for Petrographic Examination*—The minimum requirements of specimen preparation for petrographic methods include:

9.3.1 The preparation of a finely lapped slab of as large a size as possible from each of the lithologies and qualities of that lithology that are being considered for use as erosion control rock.

9.3.2 The preparation of "chips," shaped blanks for thin sections. If thin sections are fabricated by an outside laboratory there shall be at least two "chips" per lithology and quality. If time is a factor these chips shall be sent to the fabricating laboratory immediately. If thin sections are fabricated in house, one such "chip" shall be prepared and reserved. When desired, another "chip" can be prepared from specially selected areas of the back side of the slab or from hand samples. The petrographer may wish that the second thin section be prepared in a special manner.

9.3.3 The observation of "hand" specimens, fist-sized chunks of the rock, representative of each lithology, facies, phase, and quality of the entire mass of rock being considered for use in an erosion control project is recommended.

10. Petrographic Examination

NOTE 4—No attempt is made to detail the procedures to be used in the petrographic examinations. The decisions concerning methods and the various specimen preparations must be at the best judgment of the petrographer, taking into account the nature of the rock and the purposes for which it is intended. It is usually best if the exact plan of examination develops as information concerning the nature of the samples is collected and correlated. The examinations often employ acids, stains, and spot chemical tests. Items to be reported on include but are not limited to the subjects listed within this section.

10.1 *Stereomicroscopic Examination*—The hand specimens and the finely lapped slabs, the surfaces of core specimens, etc. should all be examined for features affecting durability. The examination with the stereomicroscope will often include the selection or preparation of materials, or both, (grain-mount, thin-section, etc.) for study with the higher powered microscopes.

10.1.1 Preliminary identification of mineral composition and petrographic name of the rock as in Descriptive Nomenclature C 294.

10.1.2 Major and minor cracks and crack patterns.

10.1.3 General quality including degree and kind of weathering, induration or cementation, or a combination thereof.

10.1.4 The presence of any zones of weaknesses, clay seams or partings, veins, stylolites, void structures, or micro breccias.

10.1.5 Directional and diastrophic features such as bedding, foliation, schistosity, lineation (gneissic or otherwise), micro-folding, flow structures, and micro-cracking.

10.1.6 Vugs (mineral filled or open), large pores, nodules, concretions, etc.

10.2 *Petrographic Microscope Examination*—The examination with the petrographic (polarizing) microscope shall, at the discretion of the petrographer, involve the study of grain amounts, thin-sections (may be etched or dyed, or both), and small polished sections. The study with the petrographic microscope will generally give more detailed information concerning the same features discussed in 10.1. In addition, it will be possible to study the microtexture or fabric and the degree of interlock of the crystals or sedimentary particles. If desired, a point-count or Wentworth (Chayes) count may be made to determine the relative percentages of the major minerals; this may result in a more classical identification of the rock type than can be determined otherwise.

10.3 Ethylene glycol **(9)** may be used as a supplementary method for igneous rocks containing smectite and will give advance notice of subsequent deterioration. If used, rock specimens should be greater than 2.5 cm (smallest dimension) and should be soaked in ethylene glycol for at least 15 days before reaction to cracking, disintegration, etc., is evaluated and recorded.

10.4 The Methylene Blue Absorption (MBA) test may also be used to detect smectite **(10)**. This procedure is especially applicable where only small amounts of joint or crack filling are available as the test requires only a 2-g sample.

11. Laboratory Tests

11.1 Engineers, geologists, and others involved in the evaluation of rock durability for erosion control applications generally divide the laboratory durability tests into those that simulate accelerated weathering and those that measure physical properties.

11.2 Accelerated weathering tests available that may aid in the evaluation of rock durability generally include wet-dry, freeze-thaw, sodium sulfate soundness, and magnesium sulfate soundness. Currently there is no consensus opinion as to which test or tests best represents the actual field performance **(11)**. The choice as to which one(s) to run is generally based on experience, the particular use of the rock, and its required design life. The intent of this guide is not to prioritize or favor any test, but to provide a short description with a reference for those who wish additional details.

11.2.1 *Wet-Dry*—This accelerated weathering test is designed to simulate summer-time conditions of alternating rainfall and subsequent drying by the summer sun. It also simulates the rise and fall of tidal movements and water levels in reservoirs, lakes, rivers, etc. Specimens are alternately soaked in water and heated for a specified number of cycles. The procedure is specified in Test Method D 5313 **(1, 11, 12)**.

11.2.2 *Freeze-Thaw* **(1, 12, 13)**—This test simulates the type of exposure to which the rock specimens would be subjected under winter-time conditions. Specimens are soaked in an alcohol-water solution followed by alternating cycles of freezing and thawing for a varying number of cycles. The procedure is specified in Test Method D 5312.

000429

11.2.3 Another test method uses 73 mm (2⅞ in.) cubes that are subjected to 250 cycles of 1½ to 3 h exposure at freezing temperatures of −12.2°C (10°F) and thawing temperatures of 21.2°C (70°F). Termination of the test is 250 cycles or when a 25 % loss of rock mass is attained (16).

11.2.4 *Sodium or Magnesium Sulfate Soundness*—This test is an indirect attempt to simulate the expansion of water on freezing. Rock specimens are subjected to alternating cycles of immersion in saturated solutions of sodium or magnesium sulfate followed by oven drying. Specimens are prepared according to practice and the soundness testing procedure is described in Test Method D 5240.

11.3 Physical property tests available that may help in evaluating rock durability include bulk specific gravity, absorption, Los Angeles Abrasion test, and the splitting strength tensile test.

11.3.1 *Bulk Specific Gravity*—This test reflects the quality of rock and is important in that it is one of the indicators of the resistance of a rock to wave action (1). The test is run similar to that in Test Method C 127 except for the size of the test specimens.

11.3.2 *Absorption*—This test provides an indicator of the amount of moisture absorbed by the rock. It is also an indicator of the porosity of a given rock; however, it is not an indicator of susceptibility to freeze-thaw action. Pore size is more important in evaluating freeze-thaw durability than percent absorption. Again, a test procedure similar to Test Method C 127 except for the size of the test specimens has been used.

11.3.3 *Los Angeles Abrasion*—This test is used as an indicator of the wearing resistance of rock and is normally used only when petrographic examination indicates a potential problem regarding the softness or lack of abrasion resistance. The test procedure is similar to Test Method C 535 except for the size of the test specimens.

11.3.4 *Splitting Tensile Strength Test* (14)—This test determines the tensile strength of disk-like rock core while the disk is undergoing diametral compression. It may be useful for the approximate tensile stress needed to fracture the rock and in determining the velocity of the shock wave required to fragment the rock. Thus, it can be used indirectly to determine what explosive or blasting agent to employ. Also see Test Method D 3967.

11.3.5 *Insoluble residue test*—This test is useful in determining the percent of quartz, clay, or other non-carbonate minerals in a limestone or dolomite. The rock is dissolved in hydrochloric acid and the percent residue is weighed and determined as a percent of the total rock. Carbonate rocks containing large amounts of clay have been shown to be nondurable (15).

12. Report

12.1 The report of the field investigations, petrographic examinations, and laboratory tests should summarize the essential data needed to identify the sample as to source and proposed use. It should include a description giving the essential data on composition and properties of the material as revealed by the evaluation program. The report should reference examination procedures and any test procedures employed and give a description of the nature and features of each important constituent of the sample accompanied by such tables and photographs as may be required.

12.2 In descriptions of the lateral and vertical extent or volume of acceptable rock at the source, there should be a statement as to whether or not there is sufficient acceptable rock at the source to complete the work for which it is intended.

12.3 When the rock has been found to possess properties or constituents that are known to have specific unfavorable effects in the rock, those properties or constituents should be described qualitatively and, to the extent practicable, quantitatively. The unfavorable effects that may be expected to ensue in the rock should be mentioned. This includes any performance data of suspect rocks or minerals. When appropriate, it should be stated that a given sample was not found to contain any undesirable features. When such is the case it may also be appropriate, especially if the report is not accompanied by reports of results of physical and chemical tests for which numerical limits may be applicable, to add that the material appears acceptable for use provided the applicable acceptance tests are made and the results are within the appropriate limits. The report should not, however, contain conclusions other than those based upon the findings of the examination unless the additional data to support such conclusions are included in or with the report.

12.4 The report should include recommendations regarding any additional petrographic, chemical, physical, or geological investigations that may be required to evaluate adverse properties that are indicated by the field, laboratory, and petrographic examinations that have been performed. Supplementary petrographic investigations might include qualitative or quantitative analysis of the rock or of selected portions thereof by X-ray diffraction, differential thermal methods, or other procedures that are directed to identification and description of the constituents of the rock.

13. Precision and Bias

13.1 The practice provides information for evaluating the estimated performance of rock for erosion control based on qualitative and quantitative investigations. Since the final decision involves both judgment and experience, no applicable statement on precision and bias is possible or warranted.

14. Keywords

14.1 armor stone; breakwater stone: erosion control; laboratory testing; petrographic analysis; riprap; rock; rock durability; rock mass properties; rock material properties

REFERENCES

(1) Lienhart, D. A., and Stransky, T. E., "Evaluation of Potential Sources of Riprap and Armor Stone—Methods and Considerations," *Bulletin of the Association of Engineering Geologists*, Vol XVIII, No. 3, 1981, pp. 323 to 332.

(2) Fookes, P. G., and Poole, A. B. "Some Preliminary Considerations on the Selection and Durability of Rock and Concrete Materials

000430

for Breakwaters and Coastal Protection Works," *Quarterly Journal of Engineering Geology London*, 1981. Vol 14, pp. 97 to 128.

(3) Wills, H. B., "Slope Protection Design for Embankments in Reservoirs," *Engineering Technical Letter* 1110-2-222, 1969, Office of the Chief of Engineers, Department of the Army, Washington, DC 20314.

(4) Walker, H. N., and Marshall, B. F., "Methods and Equipment Used in Preparing and Examining Fluorescent Ultrathin Sections of Portland Cement Concrete," *Cement Concrete and Aggregates*, ASTM Vol 1, No. 1, 2979, pp. 3 to 9.

(5) *Rock Material Field Classification Procedure*, U.S. Department of Agricultural, Soil Conservation Service. Technical Release No. 71, 2nd edition.

(6) Bieniawski, Z. T., ASTM Symposium on Rock Classification Systems for Engineering Purpose, "The Rock Mass Rating System (Geomechanics Classification)," June 25, 1987.

(7) Lienhart, D. A., "Special Study on the Effect of (Curing) on the Durability of the Berea Sandstone," Ohio River Division Laboratory, Pub. No. 103/75.618B, P.O. Box 27168, Cincinnati, OH 45227, 1975.

(8) "Geologic Mapping Procedures," ETL-110-2-203, Department of the Army, Office of the Chief of Engineers, Washington, DC, March 21, 1975.

(9) Higgs, Nelson B., "Slaking Basalts," *Bulletin of the Association of Engineering Geologists*, Vol XIII, No. 2, 1976, pp. 151 to 162.

(10) Higgs, Nelson, B., "Methylene Blue Adsorption as a Rapid and Economical Method of Detecting Smectite," *ASTM Geotechnical Testing Journal*, Vol II, Number 1, March, 1988, pp. 68 to 71.

(11) Lutton, R. J., Houston, B. J., and Warriner, J. B., *Evaluation of Quality and Performance of Stone as Riprap or Armor*, Technical Report GL-81-8, U.S. Army Engineer, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

(12) "Investigations for Rock Sources for Riprap," Designation E-39, *Earth Manual*, 2nd Edition, Bureau of Reclamation, U.S. Dept. of Interior, 1974, pp. 775 to 781.

(13) "Method of Testing Stone for Resistance to Freezing and Thawing" CRD-C 144, *Handbook for Concrete and Cement*,USAE, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.

(14) Vutukuri, V. S., Lama, R. D., and Saluja, S. S., "Handbook on Mechanical Properties of Rock," *Trans Tech Publications*, 1974, Bay Village, OH.

(15) Fisher, H. H., "Insoluble Residue of Carbonate Rock and its Application to Durability of Rock Riprap," *ASTM STP 1177, ASTM, year, etc ?*

(16) Farrar, J.A., "Bureau of Reclamation Experience in Testing of Riprap for Erosion Control Dams," *ASTM STP 1177*, ASTM, year, etc ?

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000431

Standard Test Method for Measurement of Hydraulic Conductivity of Saturated Porous Materials Using a Flexible Wall Permeameter[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 5084; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers laboratory measurement of the hydraulic conductivity (also referred to as *coefficient of permeability*) of water-saturated porous materials with a flexible wall permeameter.

1.2 This test method may be utilized with undisturbed or compacted specimens that have a hydraulic conductivity less than or equal to 1×10^{-5} m/s (1×10^{-3} cm/s).

1.3 The hydraulic conductivity of materials with hydraulic conductivities greater than 1×10^{-5} m/s may be determined by Test Method D 2434.

1.4 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard, unless other units are specifically given. By tradition in U.S. practice, hydraulic conductivity is reported in centimetres per second, although the common SI units for hydraulic conductivity are metres per second.

1.5 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 698 Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 5.5-lb (2.49-kg) Rammer and 12-in. (305-mm) Drop[2]

D 1557 Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 10-lb (4.54-kg) Rammer and 18-in. (457-mm) Drop[2]

D 1587 Practice of Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2113 Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation[2]

D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content in Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[2]

D 2434 Test Method for Permeability of Granular Soils (Constant Head)[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

D 4753 Specification for Evaluating, Selecting and Specifying Balances and Scales for Use in Soil and Rock Testing[2]

D 4767 Test Method for Consolidated-Undrained Triaxial Compression[2]

E 145 Specification for Gravity-Convection and Forced-Ventilation Ovens[3]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 *hydraulic conductivity, k*—the rate of discharge of water under laminar flow conditions through a unit cross-sectional area of a porous medium under a unit hydraulic gradient and standard temperature conditions (20°C).

DISCUSSION—The term *coefficient of permeability* is often used instead of *hydraulic conductivity*, but *hydraulic conductivity* is used exclusively in this test method. A more complete discussion of the terminology associated with Darcy's law is given in the literature.[4]

3.1.2 *pore volume of flow*—the cumulative quantity of flow into a test specimen divided by the volume of voids in the specimen.

3.1.3 For definitions of other terms used in this test method, see Terminology D 653.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 This test method applies to one-dimensional, laminar flow of water within porous materials such as soil and rock.

4.2 The hydraulic conductivity of porous materials generally decreases with an increasing amount of air in the pores of the material. This test method applies to water-saturated porous materials containing virtually no air.

4.3 This test method applies to permeation of porous materials with water. Permeation with other liquids, such as chemical wastes, can be accomplished using procedures similar to those described in this test method. However, this test method is only intended to be used when water is the permeant liquid.

4.4 It is assumed that Darcy's law is valid and that the hydraulic conductivity is essentially unaffected by hydraulic gradient. The validity of Darcy's law may be evaluated by measuring the hydraulic conductivity of the specimen at three hydraulic gradients; if all measured values are similar (within about 25 %), then Darcy's law may be taken as valid. However, when the hydraulic gradient acting on a test

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.04 on Hydrologic Properties of Soil and Rocks.

Current edition approved June 29, 1990. Published October 1990.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] Olson, R. E., and Daniel, D. E., "Measurement of the Hydraulic Conductivity of Fine-Grained Soils," *Symposium on Permeability and Groundwater Contaminant Transport, ASTM STP 746*, ASTM, 1981, pp. 18–64.

specimen is changed, the state of stress will also change, and, if the specimen is compressible, the volume of the specimen will change. Thus, some change in hydraulic conductivity may occur when the hydraulic gradient is altered, even in cases where Darcy's law is valid.

4.5 This test method provides a means for determining hydraulic conductivity at a controlled level of effective stress. Hydraulic conductivity varies with varying void ratio, which in turn changes when the effective stress changes. If the void ratio is changed, the hydraulic conductivity of the test specimen will likely change. To determine the relationship between hydraulic conductivity and void ratio, the hydraulic conductivity test would have to be repeated at different effective stresses.

4.6 The correlation between results obtained with this test method and the hydraulic conductivities of in-place field materials has not been fully investigated. Experience has sometimes shown that flow patterns in small test specimens do not necessarily follow the same patterns on large field scales and that hydraulic conductivities measured on small test specimens are not necessarily the same as larger-scale values. Therefore, the results should be applied to field situations with caution and by qualified personnel.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Hydraulic System*—Constant head (Method A), falling head (Methods B and C), or constant rate of flow (Method D) systems may be utilized provided they meet the criteria outlined as follows:

5.1.1 *Constant Head*—The system must be capable of maintaining constant hydraulic pressures to within ±5 % and shall include means to measure the hydraulic pressures to within the prescribed tolerance. In addition, the head loss across the test specimen must be held constant to within ±5 % and shall be measured with the same accuracy or better. Pressures shall be measured by a pressure gage, electronic pressure transducer, or any other device of suitable accuracy.

5.1.2 *Falling Head*—The system shall allow for measurement of the applied head loss, thus hydraulic gradient, to within 5 % or better at any time. In addition, the ratio of initial head loss divided by final head loss over an interval of time shall be measured such that this computed ratio is accurate to within ±5 %. The head loss shall be measured with a pressure gage, electronic pressure transducer, engineer's scale, graduated pipette, or any other device of suitable accuracy. Falling head tests may be performed with either a constant tailwater elevation (Method B) or a rising tailwater elevation (Method C).

5.1.3 *Constant Rate of Flow*—The system must be capable of maintaining a constant rate of flow through the specimen to within 5 % or better. Flow measurement shall be by calibrated syringe, graduated pipette, or other device of suitable accuracy. The head loss across the specimen shall be measured to an accuracy of 5 % or better using an electronic pressure transducer or other device of suitable accuracy. More information on testing with a constant rate of flow is given in the literature.[5]

5.1.4 *System De-airing*—The hydraulic system shall be designed to facilitate rapid and complete removal of free air bubbles from flow lines.

5.1.5 *Back Pressure System*—The hydraulic system shall have the capability to apply back pressure to the specimen to facilitate saturation. The system shall be capable of maintaining the applied back pressure throughout the duration of hydraulic conductivity measurements. The back pressure system shall be capable of applying, controlling, and measuring the back pressure to 5 % or better of the applied pressure. The back pressure may be provided by a compressed gas supply, a deadweight acting on a piston, or any other method capable of applying and controlling the back pressure to the tolerance prescribed in this paragraph.

NOTE 1—Application of gas pressure directly to a fluid will dissolve gas in the fluid. A variety of techniques are available to minimize dissolution of gas in the back pressure fluid, including separation of gas and liquid phases with a bladder and frequent replacement of the liquid with de-aired water.

5.2 *Flow Measurement System*—Both inflow and outflow volumes shall be measured unless the lack of leakage, continuity of flow, and cessation of consolidation or swelling can be verified by other means. Flow volumes shall be measured by a graduated accumulator, graduated pipette, vertical standpipe in conjunction with an electronic pressure transducer, or other volume-measuring device of suitable accuracy.

5.2.1 *Flow Accuracy*—Required accuracy for the quantity of flow measured over an interval of time is 5 % or better.

5.2.2 *De-airing and Compliance of the System*—The flow-measurement system shall contain a minimum of dead space and be capable of complete and rapid de-airing. Compliance of the system in response to changes in pressure shall be minimized by using a stiff flow measurement system. Rigid tubing, such as metallic or rigid thermoplastic tubing, shall be used.

5.2.3 *Head Losses*—Head losses in the tubes, valves, porous end pieces, and filter paper may lead to error. To guard against such errors, the permeameter shall be assembled with no specimen inside and then the hydraulic system filled. If a constant or falling head test is to be used, the hydraulic pressures or heads that will be used in testing a specimen shall be applied, and the rate of flow measured with an accuracy of 5 % or better. This rate of flow shall be at least ten times greater than the rate of flow that is measured when a specimen is placed inside the permeameter and the same hydraulic pressures or heads are applied. If a constant rate of flow test is to be used, the rate of flow to be used in testing a specimen shall be supplied to the permeameter and the head loss measured. The head loss without a specimen shall be less than 0.1 times the head loss when a specimen is present.

5.3 *Permeameter Cell Pressure System*—The system for pressurizing the permeameter cell shall be capable of applying and controlling the cell pressure to within 5 % of the applied pressure. However, the effective stress on the test specimen (which is the difference between the cell pressure and the pore water pressure) shall be maintained to the desired value with an accuracy of 10 % or better. The device for pressurizing the cell may consist of a reservoir connected to the permeameter cell and partially filled with de-aired

[5] Olson, H. W., Morin, R. H., and Nichols, R. W., "Flow Pump Applications in Triaxial Testing," *Symposium on Advanced Triaxial Testing of Soil and Rock, ASTM STP 977*, ASTM, 1988, pp. 68–81.

000433

water, with the upper part of the reservoir connected to a compressed gas supply or other source of pressure (see Note 2). The gas pressure shall be controlled by a pressure regulator and measured by a pressure gage, electronic pressure transducer, or any other device capable of measuring to the prescribed tolerance. A hydraulic system pressurized by deadweight acting on a piston or any other pressure device capable of applying and controlling the permeameter cell pressure to the tolerance prescribed in this paragraph may be used.

NOTE 2—De-aired water is commonly used for the cell fluid to minimize potential for diffusion of air through the membrane into the specimen. Other fluids, such as oils, which have low gas solubilities are also acceptable, provided they do not react with components of the permeameter. Also, use of a long (approximately 5 to 7 m) tube connecting the pressurized cell liquid to the cell helps to delay the appearance of air in the cell fluid and to reduce the flux of dissolved air into the cell.

5.4 *Permeameter Cell*—An apparatus shall be provided in which the specimen and porous end pieces, enclosed by a membrane sealed to the cap and base, are subjected to controlled fluid pressures. A schematic diagram of a typical cell is shown in Fig. 1.

5.4.1 The permeameter cell may allow for observation of changes in height of the specimen, either by observation through the cell wall using a cathetometer or other instrument, or by monitoring of either a loading piston or an extensometer extending through the top plate of the cell bearing on the top cap and attached to a dial indicator or other measuring device. The piston or extensometer should pass through a bushing and seal incorporated into the top plate and shall be loaded with sufficient force to compensate for the cell pressure acting over the cross-sectional area of the piston where it passes through the seal. If deformations are measured, the deformation indicator shall be a dial indicator or cathetometer graduated to 0.3 mm (0.01 in.) or better and having an adequate travel range. Any other measuring device meeting these requirements is acceptable.

5.4.2 In order to facilitate gas removal, and thus saturation of the hydraulic system, four drainage lines leading to the specimen, two each to the base and top cap, are recommended. The drainage lines shall be controlled by no-volume-change valves, such as ball valves, and shall be designed to minimize dead space in the lines.

5.5 *Top Cap and Base*—An impermeable, rigid top cap and base shall be used to support the specimen and provide for transmission of permeant liquid to and from the specimen. The diameter or width of the top cap and base shall be equal to the diameter or width of the specimen ±5 %. The base shall prevent leakage, lateral motion, or tilting, and the top cap shall be designed to receive the piston or extensometer, if used, such that the piston-to-top cap contact area is concentric with the cap. The surface of the base and top cap that contacts the membrane to form a seal shall be smooth and free of scratches.

5.6 *Flexible Membranes*—The flexible membrane used to encase the specimen shall provide reliable protection against leakage. The membrane shall be carefully inspected prior to use and if any flaws or pinholes are evident, the membrane shall be discarded. To minimize restrain to the specimen, the diameter or width of the unstretched membrane shall be

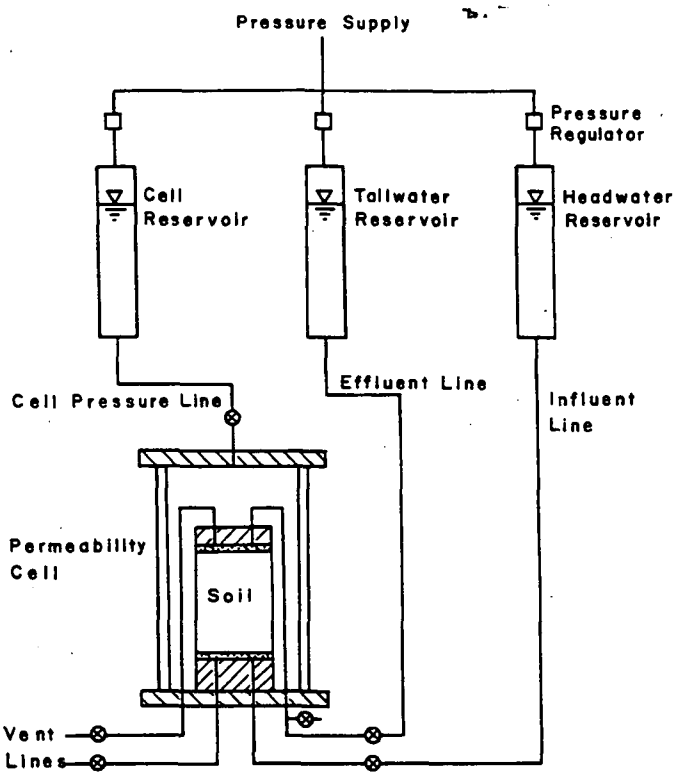


FIG. 1 Permeameter Cell

between 90 and 95 % of that of the specimen. The membrane shall be sealed to the specimen base and cap with rubber O-rings for which the unstressed, inside diameter or width is less than 90 % of the diameter or width of the base and cap, or by any other method that will produce an adequate seal.

NOTE 3—Membranes may be tested for flaws by placing them around a form sealed at both ends with rubber O-rings, subjecting them to a small air pressure on the inside, and then dipping them into water. If air bubbles come up from any point on the membrane, or if any visible flaws are observed, the membrane shall be discarded.

5.7 *Porous End Pieces*—The porous end pieces shall be of silicon carbide, aluminum oxide, or other material that is not attacked by the specimen or permeant liquid. The end pieces shall have plane and smooth surfaces and be free of cracks, chips, and nonuniformities. They shall be checked regularly to ensure that they are not clogged.

5.7.1 The porous end pieces shall be the same diameter or width (±5 %) as the specimen, and the thickness shall be sufficient to prevent breaking.

5.7.2 The hydraulic conductivity of the porous end pieces shall be significantly greater than that of the specimen to be tested. The requirements outlined in 5.2.3 ensure this.

5.8 *Filter Paper*—If necessary to prevent intrusion of material into the pores of the porous end pieces, one or more sheets of filter paper shall be placed between the top and bottom porous end pieces and the specimen. The paper shall have a negligibly small hydraulic impedance. The requirements outlined in 5.2.3 ensure that the impedance is small.

5.9 *Equipment for Compacting a Specimen*—Equipment (including compactor and mold) suitable for the method of compaction specified by the requester shall be used.

000434

5.10 *Sample Extruder*—When the material being tested is a soil core, the soil core shall usually be removed from the sampler with an extruder. The sample extruder shall be capable of extruding the soil core from the sampling tube in the same direction of travel in which the sample entered the tube and with minimum disturbance of the sample. If the soil core is not extruded vertically, care should be taken to avoid bending stresses on the core due to gravity. Conditions at the time of sample extrusion may dictate the direction of removal, but the principal concern is to keep the degree of disturbance minimal.

5.11 *Trimming Equipment*—Specific equipment for trimming the specimen to the desired dimensions will vary depending on quality and characteristics of the sample; however, the following items listed may be used: lathe, wire saw with a wire about 0.3 mm (0.01 in.) in diameter, spatulas, knives, steel rasp for very hard clay specimens, cradle or split mold for trimming specimen ends, and steel straight edge for final trimming of specimen ends.

5.12 *Devices for Measuring the Dimensions of the Specimen*—Devices used to measure the dimensions of the specimen shall be capable of measuring to the nearest 0.3 mm (0.01 in.) or better and shall be constructed such that their use will not disturb the specimen.

5.13 *Balances*—The balance shall be suitable for determining the mass of the specimen and shall be selected as discussed in Specification D 4753. The mass of specimens less than 100 g shall be determined to the nearest 0.01 g. The mass of specimens 100 g or larger shall be determined to the nearest 0.1 g. The mass of specimens >1000 g shall be determined to the nearest 1.0 g.

5.14 *Equipment for Mounting the Specimen*—Equipment for mounting the specimen in the permeameter cell shall include a membrane stretcher or cylinder, and ring for expanding and placing O-rings on the base and top cap to seal the membrane.

5.15 *Vacuum Pump*—To assist with de-airing of permeameter system and saturation of specimens.

5.16 *Temperature Maintaining Device*—The temperature of the permeameter, test specimen, and reservoir of permeant liquid shall not vary more than ±3°C (±5.7°F). Normally, this is accomplished by performing the test in a room with a relatively constant temperature. If such a room is not available, the apparatus shall be placed in a water bath, insulated chamber, or other device that maintains a temperature within the tolerance specified in 5.16. The temperature shall be periodically measured and recorded.

5.17 *Water Content Containers*—The containers shall be in accordance with Method D 2216.

5.18 *Drying Oven*—The oven shall be in accordance with Specification E 145.

6. Reagents

6.1 *Permeant Water:*

6.1.1 The permeant water is the liquid used to permeate the test specimen and is also the liquid used in backpressuring the specimen.

1.2 The type of permeant water should be specified by the requestor. If no specification is made, tap water shall be used for the permeant liquid. The type of water utilized shall be indicated in the report.

NOTE 4—Chemical interactions between a permeant liquid and the porous material may lead to variations in hydraulic conductivity. Distilled water can significantly lower the hydraulic conductivity of clayey soils (see the literature).[4] For this reason, distilled water is not usually recommended as a permeant liquid. A permeant liquid used by some is 0.005 N $CaSO_4$, which can be obtained for example, by dissolving 6.8 g of nonhydrated, reagent-grade $CaSO_4$ in 10 L of de-aired, distilled water. This $CaSO_4$ solution is thought to neither increase nor decrease significantly the hydraulic conductivity of clayey soils. In areas with extremely brackish tap water, the $CaSO_4$ solution is recommended.

6.1.3 *Deaired Water*—To aid in removing as much air from the test specimen as possible, deaired water shall be used. The water is usually deaired by boiling, by spraying a fine mist of water into an evacuated vessel attached to a vacuum source, or by forceful agitation of water in a container attached to a vacuum source. If boiling is used, care shall be taken not to evaporate an excessive amount of water, which can lead to a larger salt concentration in the permeant water than desired. To prevent dissolution of air back into the water, deaired water shall not be exposed to air for prolonged periods.

7. Test Specimens

7.1 *Size*—Specimens shall have a minimum diameter of 25 mm (1.0 in.) and a minimum height of 25 mm. The height and diameter of the specimen shall be measured to the nearest 0.3 mm (0.01 in.) or better. The length and diameter shall vary by no more than ±5 %. The surface of the test specimen may be uneven, but indentations must not be so deep that the length or diameter vary by more than ±5 %. The diameter and height of the specimen shall each be at least 6 times greater than the largest particle size within the specimen. If, after completion of a test, it is found based on visual observation that oversized particles are present, that information shall be indicated on the report.

NOTE 5—Most hydraulic conductivity tests are performed on cylindrical test specimens. It is possible to utilize special equipment for testing prismatic test specimens, in which case reference to "diameter" in 7.1 applies to the least width of the prismatic test specimen.

7.2 *Undisturbed Specimens*—Undisturbed test specimens shall be prepared from a representative portion of undisturbed samples secured in accordance with Practice D 1587 or Practice D 2113, and preserved and transported in accordance with requirements for Group C materials in Practice D 4220. Specimens obtained by tube sampling or coring may be tested without trimming except for cutting the end surfaces plane and perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the specimen, provided soil characteristics are such that no significant disturbance results from sampling. Where the sampling operation has caused disturbance of the soil, the disturbed material shall be trimmed. Where removal of pebbles or crumbling resulting from trimming causes voids on the surface of the specimen that cause the length or diameter to vary by more than ±5 %, the voids shall be filled with remolded material obtained from the trimmings. The ends of the test specimen shall be cut and not troweled (troweling can seal off cracks, slickensides, or other secondary features that might conduct water flow). Specimens shall be trimmed, whenever possible, in an environment where changes in moisture content are minimized. A controlled high-humidity room is usually used for this purpose. The mass and dimensions of the test specimen shall be

000435

344

determined to the tolerances given in 5.12 and 5.13. The test specimen shall be mounted immediately in the permeameter. The water content of the trimmings shall be determined in accordance with Method D 2216.

7.3 *Laboratory-Compacted Specimens*—The material to be tested shall be prepared and compacted inside a mold in a manner specified by the requestor. If the specimen is placed and compacted in layers, the surface of each previously-compacted layer shall be lightly scarified (roughened) with a fork, ice pick, or other suitable object, unless the requester specifically states that scarification is not to be performed. Test Methods D 698 and D 1557 describe two methods of compaction, but any other method specified by the requestor may be used as long as the method is described in the report. Large clods of material should not be broken down prior to compaction unless it is known that they will be broken in field construction, as well, or the requestor specifically requests that the clod size be reduced. Neither hard clods nor individual particles of the material shall exceed ⅙ of either the height or diameter of the specimen. After compaction, the test specimen shall be removed from the mold, the ends scarified, and the dimensions and weight determined within the tolerances given in 5.12 and 5.13. After the dimensions and mass are determined, the test specimen shall be immediately mounted in the permeameter. The water content of the trimmings shall be determined in accordance with Method D 2216.

7.4 *Other Preparation Methods*—Other methods of preparation of a test specimen are permitted if specifically requested. The method of specimen preparation shall be identified in the report.

7.5 After the height, diameter, mass, and water content of the test specimen have been determined, the dry unit weight shall be calculated. Also, the initial degree of saturation shall be estimated (this information may be used later in the backpressure stage).

8. Procedure

8.1 *Specimen Setup:*

8.1.1 Cut two filter paper sheets to approximately the same shape as the cross section of the test specimen. Soak the two porous end pieces and filter paper sheets, if used, in a container of permeant water.

8.1.2 Place the membrane on the membrane expander. Apply a thin coat of silicon high-vacuum grease to the sides of the end caps. Place one porous end piece on the base and place one filter paper sheet, if used, on the porous end piece, followed by the test specimen. Place the second filter paper sheet, if used, on top of the specimen followed by the second porous end piece and the top cap. Place the membrane around the specimen, and using the membrane expander or other suitable O-ring expander, place one or more O-rings to seal the membrane to the base and one or more additional O-rings to seal the membrane to the top cap.

8.1.3 Attach flow tubing to the top cap, if not already attached, assemble the permeameter cell, and fill it with de-aired water or other cell fluid. Attach the cell pressure reservoir to the permeameter cell line and the hydraulic system to the influent and effluent lines. Fill the cell pressure reservoir with deaired water, or other suitable liquid, and the hydraulic system with deaired permeant water. Apply a small

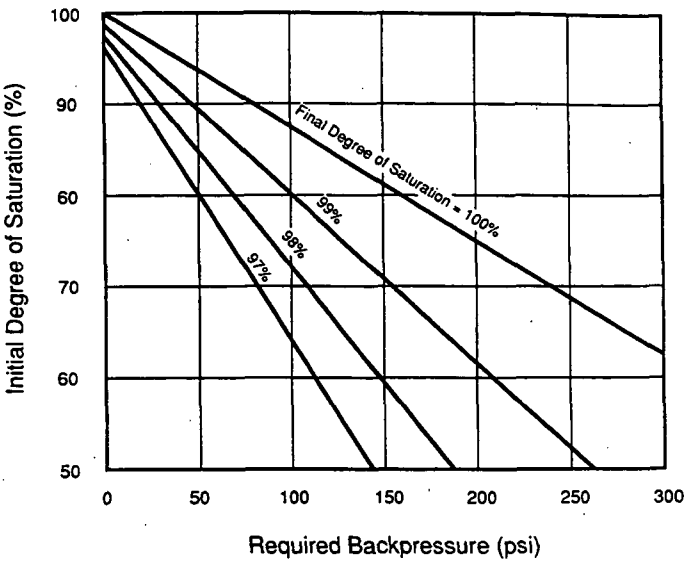


FIG. 2 Back Pressure to Attain Various Degrees of Saturation[6]

confining pressure of 7 to 35 kPa (1 to 5 psi) to the cell and apply a pressure less than the confining pressure to both the influent and effluent systems, and flush permeant water through the flow system. After all visible air has been removed from the flow lines, close the control valves. At no time during saturation of the system and specimen or hydraulic conductivity measurements shall the maximum applied effective stress be allowed to exceed that to which the specimen is to be consolidated.

8.2 *Specimen Soaking (Optional)*—To aid in saturation, specimens may be soaked under partial vacuum applied to the top of the specimen. Atmospheric pressure shall be applied to the specimen base through the influent lines, and the magnitude of the vacuum set to generate a hydraulic gradient across the sample less than that which will be used during hydraulic conductivity measurements.

NOTE 6—Soaking under vacuum is applicable when there are continuous air voids in the specimen. Soaking under vacuum is only recommended for test specimens with initial degrees of saturation below 70 %. The specimen may swell when exposed to water; the effective stress will tend to counteract the swelling. However, for materials that tend to swell, unless the applied effective stress is greater than or equal to the swell pressure, the specimen will swell.

8.3 *Backpressure Saturation*—To saturate the specimen, backpressuring is usually necessary. Figure 2 provides guidance on back pressure required to attain saturation.

NOTE 7—Figure 2 assumes that the water used for back pressure is deaired and that the only source for air to dissolve into the water is air from the test specimen. If air pressure is used to control the back pressure, pressurized air will dissolve into the water, thus reducing the capacity of the water used for back pressure to dissolve air located in the pores of the test specimen. The problem is minimized by using a long (>5 m) tube that is impermeable to air between the air-water interface and test specimen, by separating the back-pressure water from the air by a material or fluid that is relatively impermeable to air, by periodically replacing the back-pressure water with deaired water, or by other means.

[6] Lowe, J., and Johnson, T. C., "Use of Back Pressure to Increase Degree of Saturation of Triaxial Test Specimens," *Proceedings, ASCE Research Conference on Shear Strength of Cohesive Soils*, Boulder, CO, 1960.

000436

8.3.1 Open the flow line valves and flush out of the system any free air bubbles using the procedure outlined in 8.1.3. If electronic pressure transducer or other measuring device is to be used during the test to measure pore pressures or applied hydraulic gradient, it should be bled of any trapped air. Take and record an initial reading of specimen height, if being monitored.

8.3.2 Adjust the applied confining pressure to the value to be used during saturation of the sample. Apply backpressure by simultaneously increasing the cell pressure and the influent and effluent pressures in increments. The maximum value of an increment in backpressure shall be sufficiently low so that no point in the specimen is exposed to an effective stress in excess of that to which the specimen will be subsequently consolidated. At no time shall a head be applied so that the effective confining stress is <7 kPa (1 psi) because of the danger of separation of the membrane from the test specimen. Maintain each increment of pressure for a period of a few minutes to a few hours, depending upon the characteristics of the specimen. To assist in removal of trapped air, a small hydraulic gradient may be applied across the specimen to induce flow.

8.3.3 Saturation shall be verified with one of the three following techniques:

8.3.3.1 Saturation may be verified by measuring the *B* coefficient as described in Test Method D 4767 (see Note 8). The test specimen shall be considered to be adequately saturated if (*1*) the *B* value is ≥0.95, or (*2*) for relatively incompressible materials, for example, rock, if the *B* value remains unchanged with application of larger values of back pressure. The *B* value may be measured prior to or after completion of the consolidation phase (see 8.4). Accurate *B*-value determination can only be made if no gradient is acting on the specimen and all pore pressure induced by consolidation has dissipated.

NOTE 8—The *B* coefficient is defined for this type of test as the change in pore water pressure in the porous material divided by the change in confining pressure. Compressible materials that are fully saturated with water will have a *B* value of 1.0. Relatively incompressible, saturated materials have *B* values which are somewhat less than 1.0.

8.3.3.2 Saturation of the test specimen may be confirmed at the completion of the test by calculation of the final degree of saturation. The final degree of saturation shall be 100 ± 5 %. However, measurement of the *B* coefficient as described in 8.3.3.1 or use of some other technique (8.3.3.3) is strongly recommended because it is much better to confirm saturation prior to permeation than to wait until after the test to determine if the test was valid.

8.3.3.3 Other means for verifying saturation, such as measurement of the volume change of the specimen when the pore water pressure has been changed, can be used for verifying saturation provided data are available for similar materials to establish that the procedure used confirms saturation as required in 8.3.3.1 or 8.3.3.2.

8.4 *Consolidation*—The specimen shall be consolidated to the effective stress specified by the requestor. Consolidation may be accomplished in stages, if desired.

NOTE 9—The test specimen may be consolidated prior to application of backpressure. Also, the backpressure and consolidation phases may be completed concurrently if backpressures are applied sufficiently slowly to minimize potential for overconsolidation of the specimen.

8.4.1 Record the specimen height, if being monitored, prior to application of consolidation pressure and periodically during consolidation.

8.4.2 Increase the cell pressure to the level necessary to develop the desired effective stress, and begin consolidation. Drainage may be allowed from the base or top of the specimen, or simultaneously from both ends.

8.4.3 (Optional) Record outflow volumes to confirm that primary consolidation has been completed prior to initiation of the hydraulic conductivity test. Alternatively, measurements of the change in height of the test specimen can be used to confirm completion of consolidation.

NOTE 10—The procedure in 8.4.3 is optional because the requirements of 8.5 ensure that the test specimen is adequately consolidated during permeation because if it is not, inflow and outflow volumes will differ significantly. However, for accurate *B*-value determination, completion of consolidation should be confirmed (see 8.3.3.1). It is recommended that outflow volumes or height changes be recorded as a means for verifying the completion of consolidation prior to initialization of permeation. Also, measurements in the change in height of the test specimen, coupled with knowledge of the initial height, provide a means for checking the final height of the specimen.

8.5 *Permeation:*

8.5.1 *Hydraulic Gradient*—When possible, the hydraulic gradient used for hydraulic conductivity measurements should be similar to that expected to occur in the field. In general, hydraulic gradients from <1 to 5 cover most field conditions. However, the use of small hydraulic gradients can lead to very long testing times for materials having low hydraulic conductivity (less than about 1×10^{-6} cm/s). Somewhat larger hydraulic gradients are usually used in the laboratory to accelerate testing, but excessive gradients must be avoided because high seepage pressures may consolidate the material, material may be washed from the specimen, or fine particles may be washed downstream and plug the effluent end of the test specimen. These effects could increase or decrease hydraulic conductivity. If no gradient is specified by the requestor, the following guidelines may be followed:

Hydraulic Conductivity, cm/s	Recommended Maximum Hydraulic Gradient
1×10^{-3} to 1×10^{-4}	2
1×10^{-4} to 1×10^{-5}	5
1×10^{-5} to 1×10^{-6}	10
1×10^{-6} to 1×10^{-7}	20
less than 1×10^{-7}	30

NOTE 11—Seepage pressures associated with large hydraulic gradients can consolidate soft, compressible specimens and reduce their hydraulic conductivity. It may be necessary to use smaller hydraulic gradients (<10) for such specimens.

8.5.2 *Initialization*—Initiate permeation of the specimen by increasing the influent pressure (see 8.3.2). The effluent pressure shall not be decreased because air bubbles that were dissolved by the specimen water during backpressuring may come out of solution if the pressure is decreased. The back pressure shall be maintained throughout the permeation phase.

8.5.3 *Constant Head Test (Method A)*—Measure and record the required head loss across the test specimen to the tolerances stated in 5.1.1 and 5.2.3. The head loss across the specimen shall be kept constant ±5 %. Measure and record periodically the quantity of inflow as well as the quantity of outflow. Also measure and record any changes in height of the test specimen, if being monitored (see Note 11). Con-

000437

tinue permeation until at least four values of hydraulic conductivity are obtained over an interval of time in which: (*1*) the ratio of outflow to inflow rate is between 0.75 and 1.25, and (*2*) the hydraulic conductivity is steady. The hydraulic conductivity shall be considered steady if four or more consecutive hydraulic conductivity determinations fall within ±25 % of the mean value for $k \geq 1 \times 10^{-10}$ m/s or within ±50 % for $k < 1 \times 10^{-10}$ m/s, and a plot of the hydraulic conductivity versus time shows no significant upward or downward trend.

8.5.4 *Falling-Head Tests (Methods B and C)*—Measure and record the required head loss across the test specimen to the tolerances stated in 5.1.2. For falling-head tests, at no time shall the applied head loss across the specimen be less than 75 % of the initial (maximum) head loss during each individual hydraulic conductivity determination (see Note 12). Periodically measure and record any changes in the height of the specimen, if being monitored. Continue permeation until at least four values of hydraulic conductivity are obtained over an interval of time in which: (*1*) the ratio of outflow to inflow rate is between 0.75 and 1.25, and (*2*) the hydraulic conductivity is steady (see 8.5.3).

NOTE 12—When the water pressure in a test specimen changes and the applied total stress is constant, the effective stress in the test specimen changes, which can cause volume changes that can invalidate the test results. The requirement that the head loss not decrease very much is intended to keep the effective stress from changing too much. For extremely soft, compressible test specimens, even more restrictive criteria might be needed. Also, when the initial and final head losses across the test specimen do not differ by much, great accuracy is needed to comply with the requirement of 5.1.2 that the ratio of initial to final head loss be determined with an accuracy of ±5 % or better. When the initial and final head loss over an interval of time do not differ very much, it may be possible to comply with the requirements for a constant head test (8.5.3) in which the head loss must not differ by more than ±5 % and to treat the test as a constant head test.

8.5.4.1 *Test with Constant Tailwater Level (Method B)*—If the water pressure at the downstream (tailwater) end of the test specimen is kept constant, periodically measure and record either the quantity of inflow or the level of water in the influent standpipe; measure and record the quantity of outflow from the test specimen.

8.5.4.2 *Test with Increasing Tailwater Level (Method C)*—If the water pressure at the downstream end of the test specimen rises during an interval of time, periodically measure and record either the quantity or inflow and outflow or the changes in water levels in the influent and effluent standpipes.

8.5.5 *Constant Rate of Flow Tests (Method D)*—Initiate permeation of the specimen by imposing a constant flow rate. Choose the flow rate so the hydraulic gradient does not exceed the value specified, or if none is specified, the value recommended in 8.5.1. Periodically measure the rate of inflow, the rate of outflow, and head loss across the test specimen to the tolerances given in 5.1.3. Also, measure and record any changes in specimen height, if being monitored. Continue permeation until at least four values of hydraulic conductivity are obtained over an interval of time in which (*1*) the ratio of inflow to outflow rates is between 0.75 and 1.25, and (*2*) hydraulic conductivity is steady (see 8.5.3).

8.6 *Final Dimensions of the Specimen*—After completion of permeation, reduce the applied confining, influent, and effluent pressures in a manner that does not generate significant volume change of the test specimen. Then carefully disassemble the permeater cell and remove the specimen. Measure and record the final height, diameter, and total mass of the specimen. Then determine the final water content of the specimen by the procedure of Method D 2216. Dimensions and mass of the test specimen shall be measured to the tolerances specified in 5.13 and 7.1.

NOTE 13—The specimen may swell after removal of back pressure as a result of air coming out of solution. A correction may be made for this effect, provided that changes in the length of the specimen are monitored during the test. The strain caused by dismantling the cell is computed from the length of the specimen before and after dismantling the cell. The same strain is assumed to have occurred in the diameter. The corrected diameter and actual length before the back pressure was removed are used to compute the volume of the test specimen prior to dismantling the cell. The volume prior to dismantling the cell is used to determine the final dry density and degree of saturation.

9. Calculation

9.1 *Constant Head and Constant Rate of Flow Tests (Methods A and D)*—Calculate the hydraulic conductivity, k, as follows:

$$k = QL/Ath \quad (1)$$

where:

k = hydraulic conductivity, m/s,
Q = quantity of flow, taken as the average of inflow and outflow, m^3,
L = length of specimen along path of flow, m,
A = cross-sectional area of specimen, m^2,
t = interval of time, s, over which the flow Q occurs, and
h = difference in hydraulic head across the specimen, m of water.

9.2 *Falling-Head Tests:*

9.2.1 *Constant Tailwater Pressure (Method B)*—Calculate the hydraulic conductivity, k, as follows:

$$k = \frac{aL}{At} \ln\left(\frac{h_1}{h_2}\right) \quad (2)$$

where:

a = cross-sectional area of the reservoir containing the influent liquid, m^2,
L = length of the specimen, m,
A = cross-sectional area of the specimen, m^2,
t = elapsed time between determination of h_1 and h_2, s,
h_1 = head loss across the specimen at time t_1, m, and
h_2 = head loss across the specimen at time t_2, m.

9.2.2 *Increasing Tailwater Pressure (Method C)*—Calculate the hydraulic conductivity, k, as follows:

$$k = \frac{a_{in}\, a_{out}\, L}{A\, t\, (a_{in} + a_{out})} \ln(h_1/h_2) \quad (3)$$

where:

a_{in} = cross-sectional area of the reservoir containing the influent liquid, m^2,
a_{out} = cross-sectional area of the reservoir containing the effluent liquid, m^2,
L = length of the specimen, m,
A = cross-sectional area of the specimen, m^2,
t = elapsed time between determination of h_1 and h_2, s,
h_1 = head loss across the specimen at time t, m, and
h_2 = head loss across the specimen at time t_2, m.

000438

NOTE 14—For the case in which $a_{out} = a_{in} = a$, the equation for calculating k for a falling head test with a rising tailwater level is:

$$k = \frac{a\,L}{-2\,A\,t} \ln\left(\frac{h_1}{h_2}\right) \quad (4)$$

9.3 Correct the hydraulic conductivity to that for 20°C (68°F), k_{20}, by multiplying k by the ratio of the viscosity of water at test temperature to the viscosity of water at 20°C (68°F), R_T, from Table 1, as follows:

$$k_{20} = R_T k \quad (5)$$

10. Report

10.1 Report the following information:

10.1.1 Sample identifying information,

10.1.2 Any special selection and preparation process, such as removal of stones or other materials, or indication of their presence, if undisturbed specimen,

10.1.3 Descriptive information on method of compaction,

10.1.4 Initial dimensions of the specimen,

10.1.5 Initial water content and dry unit weight of the specimen,

10.1.6 Type of permeant liquid used,

10.1.7 Magnitude of total back pressure,

10.1.8 Maximum and minimum effective consolidation stress,

NOTE 15—The maximum effective stress exists at the effluent end of the test specimen and the minimum stress at the influent end.

10.1.9 Height of specimen after completion of consolidation, if monitored,

10.1.10 Range of hydraulic gradient used,

10.1.11 Final length, diameter, water content, dry unit weight, and degree of saturation of the test specimen,

10.1.12 Average hydraulic conductivity for the last four determinations of hydraulic conductivity (obtained as described in 8.5.3 to 8.5.5), reported with two significant figures, for example, 7.1×10^{-10} m/s, and reported in units of m/s (plus additional units, if requested or customary),

10.1.13 Graph or table of hydraulic conductivity versus time or pore volumes of flow is recommended.

TABLE 1 Correction Factor R_T for Viscosity of Water at Various Temperatures[A]

Temperature, °C	R_T	Temperature, °C	R_T
0	1.783	25	0.889
1	1.723	26	0.869
2	1.664	27	0.850
3	1.611	28	0.832
4	1.560	29	0.814
5	1.511	30	0.797
6	1.465	31	0.780
7	1.421	32	0.764
8	1.379	33	0.749
9	1.339	34	0.733
10	1.301	35	0.719
11	1.265	36	0.705
12	1.230	37	0.692
13	1.197	38	0.678
14	1.165	39	0.665
15	1.135	40	0.653
16	1.106	41	0.641
17	1.077	42	0.629
18	1.051	43	0.618
19	1.025	44	0.607
20	1.000	45	0.598
21	0.976	46	0.585
22	0.953	47	0.575
23	0.931	48	0.565
24	0.910	49	0.556

[A] $R_T = (-0.02452\,T + 1.495)$ where T is the degrees celsius.

11. Precision and Bias

11.1 *Precision*—Data are being evaluated to determine the precision of this test method. In addition, Subcommittee D18.04 on Hydrologic Properties of Soil and Rocks, is seeking pertinent data from users of this test method.

11.2 *Bias*—There is no accepted reference value for this test method, therefore, bias cannot be determined.

12. Keywords

12.1 coefficient of permeability; hydraulic barriers; hydraulic conductivity; liner; permeameter

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000439

Standard Test Method for Testing Rock Slabs to Evaluate Soundness of Riprap by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 5240; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers test procedures for evaluating the soundness of riprap by the effects of a sodium or magnesium sulfate solution on slabs of rock.

1.2 The values stated in either SI or inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 88 Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate[2]

C 295 Practice for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete[2]

D 4753 Specification for Evaluating, Selecting, and Specifying Balances and Scales for Use in Soil and Rock Testing[3]

D 4992 Practice for Evaluation of Rock to Be Used for Erosion Control[3]

D 5121 Practices for Preparation of Rock Slabs for Durability Testing[3]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Rock riprap is composed of pieces of natural rock that are placed on construction projects to minimize the effects of erosion. The ability of riprap to withstand deterioration from weathering affects both the effectiveness of the project and its cost. The sodium sulfate or magnesium sulfate soundness test is one method by which to estimate qualitatively the durability of rock under weathering conditions.

3.2 The results of this test method are not to be used as the sole basis for determination of rock durability, but rather should always be used in conjunction with the results of other tests.

3.3 This test method has been used to evaluate many different types of rocks. There have been occasions when test results have provided data that have not agreed with the durability of rock under actual field conditions; samples yielding a low soundness loss have disintegrated in actual usage, and the reverse has been true.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Circular Diamond Saw*, 14-in. (360-mm) diameter, capable of sawing rock, of the type required for Practices D 5121.

4.2 *Apparatus*, as required by Test Method C 88, with the following exception: sieves are not required, and the balance shall meet the requirements of Class GP 10 in Specification D 4753 and be accurate within 5 g.

5. Special Solutions Required

5.1 The solutions required in this test method shall be the sodium or magnesium sulfate solutions required by Test Method C 88, and they shall be prepared and used in the same manner.

6. Samples

6.1 A source of rock to be sampled, shall be guided by Practice D 4992 (mine, quarry, outcrop, or field boulders) that is macroscopically uniform in color, texture, mineralogy, or some other visual property shall be represented by a sample consisting of a minimum of five pieces of rock, and a macroscopically nonuniform source shall be represented by a minimum of eight pieces of rock. Each piece of rock shall be of a size such that testing can proceed without further mechanical crushing. In all cases, the pieces shall be chosen to provide a visually unbiased sample of the majority of rocks present at a source. Rock types, as determined from their macroscopic properties, that comprise less than 5 % of the source may be ignored unless their presence in a sample will greatly affect the test results and subsequent proposed use of the rock.

7. Preparation of Test Specimen

7.1 Saw the sample as indicated in Practices D 5121. Cut at least one slab (specimen) from each sample for subsequent testing. Make the first cut at a point between ⅓ and ½ of the distance from the edge to the middle of the piece.

7.2 Make each specimen 64 ± 6 mm (2.5 ± ¼ in.) thick. Slab heights (the distance above the saw table) and lengths shall be a minimum of 125 mm (5 in.). The length will normally be greater than the height.

7.3 Due to internal defects, in certain cases a slab will break during the sawing process. Do not test this slab or any fragments that break off the slab. The percent loss of breakage shall be estimated visually and noted in the report.

NOTE 1—The best estimates of rock durability are made from the results of tests performed on the largest possible slabs of rock that include the typical textures found in the rock.

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.17 on Rock for Erosion Control.

Current edition approved May 15, 1992. Published July 1992.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

8. Procedure

8.1 Describe each slab as indicated in Practices D 5121.

8.2 Dry each slab in an oven to a constant mass at 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F), and record the mass.

8.3 Place each slab in an individual basket and test it in a sulfate solution, according to the procedure of Section 8 of Test Method C 88.

8.4 Repeat the process of immersion and drying for a total of five cycles.

9. Quantitative Examination

9.1 Perform the following calculation for each slab:

$$\% \text{ soundness loss} = (A - B)/A \times 100 \quad (1)$$

where:

A = oven-dried mass of the slab prior to testing, and

B = oven-dried mass of the largest remaining piece of each slab after testing.

9.2 Determine the percent loss for all slabs from the cumulative initial and final masses.

$$\% \text{ average soundness loss} = (C - D)/C \times 100 \quad (2)$$

where:

C = oven-dried cumulative mass of all slabs prior to testing, and

D = oven-dried cumulative mass of the largest remaining pieces of all slabs after testing.

10. Report

10.1 Report the following information:

10.1.1 Identification number.

10.1.2 Sample location (source).

10.1.3 Type of rock.

10.1.4 Type of solution used in the soundness test.

10.1.5 Description and visual estimation of the percent of any fragments broken off the slab during the sawing process that are not tested.

10.1.6 Initial oven dry mass of each slab prior to testing, and its percent soundness loss after testing, plus the average percent loss after testing.

10.1.7 Description of any deterioration suffered by the slab during testing, noting any cracks, flaking, or disintegration.

10.1.8 Any uncertainty with the test results arising from sampling or test conditions.

10.2 The following report items are optional:

10.2.1 Geological formation name of the rock source.

10.2.2 Photograph of the slab before and after testing, with a scale indicating the specimen size.

11. Precision and Bias

11.1 Due to the nature of the rock materials tested by this test method, it is not possible to produce multiple specimens that have uniform physical properties. ASTM Subcommittee D18.17 is instituting a program of specimen testing to determine the feasibility of precision measurements and welcomes proposals that would allow for the development of a valid precision statement. No accepted reference value exists for this test method; therefore, bias cannot be determined.

12. Keywords

12.1 riprap; rock defects; rock durability; rock weathering; soundness of riprap

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000441

Designation: D 5299 – 92

Standard Guide for Decommissioning of Ground Water Wells, Vadose Zone Monitoring Devices, Boreholes, and Other Devices for Environmental Activities[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 5299; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This guide covers procedures that are specifically related to permanent decommissioning (closure) of the following as applied to environmental activities. It is intended for use where solid or hazardous materials or wastes are found, or where conditions occur requiring the need for decommissioning. The following devices are considered in this guide:

1.1.1 A borehole used for geoenvironmental purposes (see Note 1),

1.1.2 Monitoring wells,

1.1.3 Observation wells,

1.1.4 Injection wells (see Note 2),

1.1.5 Piezometers,

1.1.6 Wells used for the extraction of contaminated ground water, the removal of floating or submerged materials other than water such as gasoline or tetrachloroethylene, or other devices used for the extraction of soil gas,

1.1.7 A borehole used to construct a monitoring well, and

1.1.8 Any other vadose zone monitoring device.

1.2 Temporary decommissioning of the above is not covered in this guide.

NOTE 1—This guide may be used to decommission boreholes where no contamination is observed at a site (see Practice D 420 for details); however, the primary use of the guide is to decommission boreholes and wells where solid or hazardous waste have been identified. Methods identified in this guide can also be used in other situations such as the decommissioning of water supply wells and boreholes where water contaminated with nonhazardous pollutants (such as nitrates or sulfates) are present. This guide should be consulted in the event that a routine geotechnical investigation indicates the presence of contamination at a site.

NOTE 2—The term "well" is used in this guide to denote monitoring wells, piezometers, or other devices constructed in a manner similar to a well. Some of the devices listed such as injection and extraction wells can be decommissioned using this guide for information, but are not specifically covered in the text.

NOTE 3—Details on the decommissioning of multiple-screened wells are not provided in this guide due to the many methods used to construct these types of wells and the numerous types of commercially available multiple-screened well systems. However, in some instances, the methods presented in this guide may be used with few changes. An example of how this guide may be used is the complete removal of the multiple-screened wells by overdrilling.

1.3 Most monitoring wells and piezometers are intended primarily for water quality sampling, water level observation, or soil gas sampling, or combination thereof, to determine quality. Many wells are relatively small in diameter (<4-in. (10.1 cm) inside diameter) and are used to monitor for hazardous chemicals in ground water. Decommissioning of monitoring wells is necessary to:

1.3.1 Eliminate the possibility that the well is used for purposes other than intended,

1.3.2 Prevent migration of contaminants into an aquifer or between aquifers,

1.3.3 Prevent migration of contaminants in the vadose zone,

1.3.4 Reduce the potential for vertical or horizontal migration of fluids in the well or adjacent to the well, and

1.3.5 Remove the well from active use when the well is no longer capable of rehabilitation, or has failed structurally; no longer required for monitoring; no longer capable of providing representative samples or is providing unreliable samples; or required to be decommissioned; or to meet regulatory requirements.

NOTE 4—The determination of whether a well is providing a representative water quality sample is not defined in this guide. Examples of when a representative water quality sample may not be collected include the biological or chemical clogging of well screens, a drop in water level to below the base of the well screen, or complete silting of a tail pipe. These conditions may indicate that a well is not functioning properly.

1.4 This guide is intended to provide information for effective permanent closure of wells so that the physical structure of the well does not provide a means of hydraulic communication between aquifers or react chemically in a detrimental way with the environment.

1.5 The intent of this guide is to provide procedures that when followed result in a reasonable level of confidence in the integrity of the decommissioning activity. However, it may not be possible to verify the integrity of the decommissioning procedure. At this time, methods are not available to substantially determine the integrity of the decommissioning activity.

1.6 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard. The SI units given in parentheses are for information only.

1.7 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

[1] This guide is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.21 on Ground Water and Vadose Zone Investigations.

Current edition approved Sept. 15, 1992. Published January 1993.

000442

NOTE 5—If state and local regulations are in effect where the decommissioning is to occur, the regulations take precedence over this guide.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 150 Specification for Portland Cement[2]

C 618 Specification for Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Concrete Cement[2]

D 420 Guide for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock[3]

D 4380 Test Method for Density of Bentonitic Slurries[3]

D 5088 Practice or the Decontamination of Field Equipment Used at Non-Radioactive Waste Sites[3]

D 5092 Practice for Design and Installation of Ground Water Monitoring Wells in Aquifers[3]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard:*

3.1.1 **abandonment**—see *decommissioning.*

3.1.2 *attapulgite clay*—a chain-lattice clay mineral. The term also applies to a group of clay minerals that are lightweight, tough, matted, and fibrous.

3.1.3 *borehole television log*—a borehole or well video record produced by lowering a television camera into the borehole or well. This record is useful in visually observing downhole conditions such as collapsed casing or a blocked screen.

3.1.4 *blowout*—a sudden or violent uncontrolled escape of fluids or gas, or both, from a borehole.

3.1.5 *caliper log*—a geophysical borehole log that shows to scale the variations with depth in the mean diameter of a cased or uncased borehole.

3.1.6 *cement, API, Class A*—a cement intended for use from the surface to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m). This cement is similar to ASTM Type I cement.

3.1.7 *cement, API, Class B*—a cement intended for use from the surface to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m) when conditions require moderate- to high-sulfate resistance. This cement is similar to ASTM Type II cement.

3.1.8 *cement, API, Class C*—this cement is intended for use from the surface to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m) when conditions require high early strength. This cement is similar to ASTM Type III cement. Also available as a high sulfate resistant type.

3.1.9 *cement, API, Class G*—this cement is intended for use from the surface to a depth of 8000 ft (2438 m). It can be used with accelerators or retarders to cover a wide range of well depths and temperatures. No additions other than calcium sulfate or water, or both, can be interground or blended with the clinker during manufacture of the cement. Also available as several sulfate-resistant types.

3.1.10 *cement, API, Class H*—this cement is intended for use from the surface to a depth of 8000 ft (2438 m). It can be used with accelerators or retarders to cover a wide range of well depths and temperatures. No additions other than calcium sulfate or water, or both, can be interground or blended with the clinker during manufacture of the cement. Also available as a sulfate-resistant type.

3.1.11 *cement, API, Class J*—this cement is intended for use from depths of 12 000 to 16 000 ft (3658 to 4877 m) under conditions of extremely high temperatures and pressures. It can be used with accelerators and retarders to cover a range of well depths and temperatures. No additions of retarders other than calcium sulfate, or water, or both, can be interground or blended with the clinker during manufacture of the cement.

3.1.12 *cement bond (sonic) log*—a borehole geophysical log that can be used to determine the effectiveness of a cement seal of the annular space of a well.

3.1.13 *channeling*—the process of forming a vertical cavity resulting from a faulty cement job in the annular space.

3.1.14 *curing accelerator*—a material added to cement to decrease the time for curing. Examples are sodium chloride, calcium sulfate (gypsum), and aluminum powder.

3.1.15 *curing retarder*—a material added to cement to increase the time for curing. Sodium chloride in high concentrations is an example.

3.1.16 *decommissioning (closure)*—the engineered closure of a well, borehole, or other subsurface monitoring device sealed with plugging materials. Decommissioning also includes the planning and documenting of all associated activities. A synonym is abandonment.

3.1.17 *decontamination*—the process of removing undesirable physical or chemical constituents, or both, from equipment to reduce the potential for cross-contamination.

3.1.18 *fallback*—shrinkage, settlement, or loss of plugging material placed in a borehole or well.

3.1.19 *fire clay*—a silicious clay rich in hydrous aluminum silicates.

3.1.20 *flow log*—a borehole geophysical log used to record vertical movement of ground water and movement of water into or out of a well or borehole and between formations within a well.

3.1.21 *geophysical borehole log*—a log obtained by lowering an instrument into a borehole and continuously recording a physical property of native or backfill material and contained fluids. Examples include resistivity, induction, caliper, sonic, and natural gamma logs.

3.1.22 *grout*—material consisting of bentonite, cement, or a cement-bentonite mixture.

3.1.23 *grout pipe*—a pipe or tube that is used to transport cement, bentonite, or other plugging materials from the ground surface to a specified depth in a well or borehole. The material may be allowed to flow freely or it may be injected under pressure. The term tremie pipe is frequently used interchangeably.

3.1.24 *hydraulic communication*—the migration of fluids from one zone to another, with reference to this guide; especially along a casing, grout plug, or through backfill materials.

3.1.25 *multiple-screened wells*—two or more monitoring wells situated in the same borehole. These devices can be either individual casing strings and screen set at a specific depth, a well with screens in more than one zone, or can consist of devices with screens with tubing or other collecting devices attached that can collect a discrete sample.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000443

3.1.26 *native material*—in place geologic (or soil) materials encountered at a site.

3.1.27 *overdrilling*—the process of drilling out a well casing and any material placed in the annular space.

3.1.28 *perforation*—a slot or hole made in well casing to allow for communication of fluids between the well and the annular space.

3.1.29 *permanent plugging*—a seal that has a hydraulic conductivity that is equivalent or less than the hydraulic conductivity of the geologic formation. This term is often used with uncased boreholes.

3.1.30 *plow layer*—the depth typically reached by a plow or other commonly used earth turning device used in agriculture. This depth is commonly one to two feet (.3 m to .61 m) below land surface.

3.1.31 *plugging material*—a material that has a hydraulic conductivity equal to or less than that of the geologic formation(s) to be sealed. Typical materials include portland cement and bentonite.

3.1.32 *pre-conditioning*—an activity conducted prior to placing plugging material into a borehole in order to stabilize the hole.

3.1.33 *temporary decommissioning*—the engineered closure of a well intended to be returned to service at some later date (generally no more than six months). Temporary plugging should not damage the structural integrity of the well. Plugging materials consist of sand, bentonite, or other easily removed materials.

4. Summary of Guide

4.1 Information is provided on the significance of properly decommissioning boreholes and wells at sites containing or formerly containing solid or hazardous waste or hazardous materials or their byproducts, or that may be affected by solid or hazardous waste materials or their byproducts in the future. This guide may be used in situations where water quality in one aquifer may be detrimental to another aquifer either above or below the aquifer. The primary purpose of decommissioning activities is to permanently decommission the borehole or monitoring device so that the natural migration of ground water or soil vapor is not significantly influenced. Decommissioned boreholes and wells should have no adverse influence on the local environment than the original geologic setting.

4.2 It is important to have a good understanding of the geology, hydrogeology, well construction, historic and future land use, chemicals encountered, and the regulatory environment for successful decommissioning to occur.

4.3 Various materials suitable for decommissioning boreholes and wells are discussed, including their positive and negative attributes for decommissioning. A generalized procedure is provided that discusses the process from planning through implementation and documentation. Examples of typical practices are provided in the appendix.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 Decommissioning of boreholes and monitoring wells, and other devices requires that the specific characteristics of each site be considered. The wide variety of geological, biological, and physical conditions, construction practices, and chemical composition of the surrounding soil, rock, waste, and ground water precludes the use of a single decommissioning practice. The procedures discussed in this guide are intended to aid the geologist or engineer in selecting the tasks required to plan, choose materials for, and carry out an effective permanent decommissioning operation. Each individual situation should be evaluated separately and the appropriate technology applied to best meet site conditions. Considerations for selection of appropriate procedures are presented in this guide, but other considerations based on site specific conditions should also be taken into account.

NOTE 6—Ideally, decommissioning should be considered as an integral part of the design of the monitoring well. Planning at this early stage can make the decommissioning activity easier to accomplish. See Practice D 5092 for details on monitoring well construction.

5.2 This guide is intended to provide technical information and is not intended to supplant statutes or regulations. Approval of the appropriate regulatory authorities should be an important consideration during the decommissioning process.

6. Materials

6.1 The materials used for construction of a monitoring well or other monitoring device to be decommissioned in part determines how it is decommissioned. Various materials are available for use in plugging boreholes and monitoring wells. This section provides information on these materials.

6.2 *Casing and Screen Materials:*

6.2.1 Various materials are used for well casing and screen. The most common materials used are: PVC, PTFE, fiberglass, carbon steel, stainless steel, and aluminum. Typically, the same material is used for casing and screen in a well, however, in some instances different materials may be used in a well to achieve a particular purpose such as corrosion protection, reduction of material costs, or improving the integrity of ground water or soil vapor samples. This guide does not specifically address the use of more than one type of casing or screen material used in a well, however, the same decommissioning methods can frequently be used when more than one material is used (for example, PVC and PTFE, or stainless steel and carbon steel) in a well.

6.2.2 In selecting a well decommissioning method, PVC, PTFE, and fiberglass wells can be decommissioned using similar methods as all three types of materials tend to be low in tensile strength and easy to drill out or perforate. Appendix X1 provides a discussion on various procedures that can be used for the decommissioning of PVC wells and by reference PTFE and fiberglass wells.

6.2.3 Wells constructed of carbon steel, stainless steel, and heavy walled aluminum can be decommissioned using similar methods as these materials tend to have a higher tensile strength that allows for the casing to be removed. Appendix X1 provides a discussion on various procedures that can be used for the decommissioning of steel wells and by reference stainless steel and aluminum wells.

6.3 *Plugging Materials:*

6.3.1 Plugging materials should be carefully chosen for well closure to be permanent. Basic material characteristics are listed as follows:

6.3.1.1 Plugging materials should not react with contami-

000444

nants or adversely react with ground water or geologic materials.

6.3.1.2 Plugging materials used in decommissioning wells, borings, etc. should have hydraulic conductivity (saturated condition) that is comparable to or lower than that of the lowest hydraulic conductivity of the geologic material being sealed.

6.3.1.3 Plugging materials must have sufficient structural strength to withstand pressures expected from native conditions.

6.3.1.4 Plugging materials must maintain sealing capabilities and not degrade due to chemical interaction, corrosion, dehydration, or other physical or chemical processes. Materials should maintain their design characteristics for the length of time contamination is present at the site.

6.3.1.5 Plugging materials should not be readily susceptible to cracking or shrinkage, or both.

6.3.1.6 Plugging materials must be capable of being placed at the position in the well or borehole in which they are needed and must have properties that reduce their unintended movement vertically and horizontally.

6.3.1.7 Plugging materials must be capable of forming a tight bond and seal with well casing and the formation.

6.3.18 Plugging materials must have properties that eliminate leaching or erosion of the material, under the conditions the material will be subjected. These include vertical or horizontal movement, or both, or contact with ground water or other existing conditions.

NOTE 7—The grain size of plugging material used in decommissioning operations conducted in areas where thick vadose zones occur should be coarser than materials used in areas where thin vadose zones or shallow saturated conditions occur. This is necessary as water is not transported effectively in coarse-grained materials under negative pore pressures. Coarse-grained materials should not be used where saturated conditions are likely to exist during the period of time that hazardous materials can be expected to occur at the site. It is important to determine the lithology and grain size distribution of materials adjacent to the borehole or well prior to selection of plugging materials.

NOTE 8—If coarse-grained materials are used to decommission the borehole or well, a layer of fine-grained material (such as cement or bentonite, or both) 1 or 2 ft (.3 or .61 m) thick should be placed at 10 ft (3 m) intervals in the borehole in the saturated zone. This layer should extend 2 to 3 ft (.61 to .91 m) above the highest expected level saturation is expected based on historical information on the water table for unconfined aquifers. A similar thickness of these materials should be used for confined aquifers. A similar 5-ft (1.5-m) seal of a low-permeability material should be placed near the ground surface to reduce the potential for entrance of fluids at the ground surface.

6.4 *Commonly Used Materials*—Subsections 6.2 and 6.3 introduced the general criteria that must be evaluated during the process of selecting the appropriate procedure and material for plugging a specific well. Because well construction and local geological conditions are site specific, a wide variety of materials and procedures may be used to complete the closure.

6.4.1 Section 6.4 presents a review of the plugging materials most commonly used to decommission monitoring wells. Table 1 summarizes these materials and lists the most important considerations (positive and negative) for their use. A detailed discussion of each material is presented in the following subsections.

6.4.2 *Portland Cement*—Portland cement may be used in any of its various forms to meet placement, strength, and durability criteria listed in 6.1. The amount of shrinkage or settling of neat cement is dependent on the amount of water used. Higher water to cement ratios tend to increase shrinkage (**1**).[4]

6.5 *Specification C 150:*

6.5.1 *Type I*—Type I cement, a general-purpose material, is the most commonly used cement. This material has a tendency to develop a relatively high heat of hydration when used in confined situations and has relatively low-sulfate resistance.

6.5.2 *Type II*—Somewhat slower strength development than Type I; however, Type II cement has moderate heat of hydration and moderate sulfate resistance.

6.5.3 *Type III*—Type III cement is used when high early strength is desired. This material is not commonly used in decommissioning activities because of its ability to quickly set. Care must be used in working with this material.

6.5.4 *Type IV*—Type IV cement is used where a low heat of hydration is desired. It is not commonly used in decommissioning activities.

6.5.5 *Type V*—Type V cement has high resistance to sulfate, and brine solutions. This material has ultimate strength development somewhat less than either Types I or II.

6.5.6 Type K cement is expansive and can be used to compensate for shrinkage. This cement is essentially Type I or more commonly Type II Portland Cement with additives to produce expansion. It can be of use in plugging situations where water-tightness is important. Type K cement contains calcium sulfoaluminate. When mixed with water, the hydration causes an expansion ranging from approximately 0.05 to 0.20 % (**2**).

6.6 *API Cements* (**3**):

6.6.1 *Class A*—Class A cement corresponds closely to ASTM Type 1. This cement is intended to be used from the surface to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m).

6.6.2 *Class B*—Class B cement corresponds closely to ASTM Type II. It is intended for use from the surface to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m) and is also available as a high-sulfate resistant variety.

6.6.3 *Class C*—Class C cement corresponds closely to ASTM Type III. It is intended for use from the surface to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m). It is also available as a high-sulfate resistant variety.

6.6.4 *Class G*—Class G cement is intended for use from the surface to a depth of 8000 ft (2438 m) and can be used with accelerators or retarders to cover a wide range of depths and temperatures. The cement is also available as a high-sulfate resistant variety.

6.6.5 *Class H*—Class H cement is intended for use from the surface to a depth of 8000 ft (2438 m). It can be used with a wide variety of accelerators and retarders to cover a wide range of depths and temperatures. It is available only as a moderate-sulfate resistant type.

6.6.6 *Class J*—This cement is intended for use from a depth of 12 000 to 16 000 ft (3658 to 4877 m) where

[4] The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to a list of references at the end of the text.

000445

TABLE 1 Properties of Common Plugging Materials

Plugging Material	Description	Positive Attributes	Negative Attributes
ASTM C-50 Portland Cement			
Type I	Most commonly used type of cement for plugging	Forms a good seal when used with bentonite in 3 to 5 % concentration. Commonly available and can be purchased premixed on-site.	High heats of hydration may be a problem in PVC-cased wells. Can shrink and crack; low-sulfate resistance. Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments.
Type II	Similar to Type I, but with a moderate heat of hydration.	Moderate heat of hydration. Moderate resistance to sulfate.	Somewhat slower strength development than Type I; expensive. Can shrink and crack. Can be difficult to use. Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments.
Type III	High early strength.	May prove useful in situations where high early strength is needed, such as borehole walls that have a tendency to collapse.	Not a common cement. Can set very quickly before decommissioning is completed. Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments.
Type IV	Low heat of hydration.	May prove useful in situations where a low heat of hydration is required	Not a common cement. Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments.
Type V	Similar to Type I, with high resistance to sulfate and brine.	High resistance to sulfate and brine. Low heat of hydration.	Ultimate strength is less than Types I and III. Expensive; should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments. Can be difficult to use. Can shrink or crack.
K	Expansive cement.	Basically Type I or Type II Portland Cement with additions (tricalcium sulfo aluminate for example) to provide for expansion. Expansion is generally in the range from 0.05 to 0.20 % Good resistance to sulfate attack.	
API 10			
Class A	Similar to ASTM Type I.	Can be used to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m). Forms a good seal when used with bentonite in 3 to 5 % concentration. Commonly available and can be purchased premixed on-site.	High heats of hydration may be a problem in PVC-cased wells. Can shrink and crack; low-sulfate resistance. Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments.
Class B	Similar to ASTM Type II.	Can be used to depth of 6000 ft (1828 m). Moderate heat of hydration. Moderate resistance to sulfate. Available as a high-sulfate resistant variety.	Somewhat slower strength development than Type I; expensive. Can shrink and crack. Can be difficult to use. Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments.
Class C	Similar to ASTM Type III.	Can be used to a depth of 6000 ft (1828 m).	Can set very quickly before decommissioning is completed. Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments. Can shrink and crack.
ss G	Useful in a wide range of temperatures and depths through the use of accelerators or retarders.	Can be used to a depth of 8000 ft (2438 m). Available as a sulfate-resistant variety.	Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments. Can shrink and crack.
Class H	Useful in a wide range of depths and temperatures through the use of accelerators or retarders.	Can be used to a depth of 8000 ft (2438 m). Available only as a moderate sulfate type.	Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments. Can shrink and crack.
Class J	Intended for use from a depth 12 000 to 16 000 ft (3658 to 4877 m).	Has use where extremely high temperatures and pressures occur.	Should not be used in the presence of strong acids or in low-pH environments. Can shrink and crack.
Pozzolanic cement	Addition of silicious materials to ASTM Type V or API Class A cement.	Good resistance to corrosive conditions and in reducing the permeability of cement.	Many types of materials can be used that can result in variable results.
Epoxy cements	Vinyl ester resins.	Good chemical resistance to acids and bases. Can use available equipment to place cement.	Very expensive. Poor chemical resistance to chlorinated hydrocarbons and acetic aid. Should be used only by experienced personnel. Water accelerates curing, must use diesel oil to precondition hole (diesel may increase contamination of site if hydrocarbons are a concern).
Bentonite			
Pellets	Granular bentonite compressed into a tablet	Uniform in size. Easy to use. Produces a low permeability seal.	Must be hydrated after placement. Shrinkage may occur when desiccated or when in contact with high concentrations of organic compounds (greater than 2 %) or materials that are strongly acidic or alkaline. Expensive.
Chips	Raw mined montmorillonite in the form of chunks ¼ to ¾ in. (.64 to 1.91 m) in size.	Inexpensive. No mixing equipment required. Forms a low-permeability seal.	Difficult to place. Must be hydrated after placement. Less swelling than beneficiated bentonite. Shrinkage may occur when desiccated when in contact with high concentrations of organic compounds (greater than 2 %) or materials that are strongly acidic or alkaline.
Granular	Raw mined montmorillonite crushed and seared to an 8 to 20-mesh size.	Can be placed at depth in dry holes. Forms a low- permeability seal.	Difficult to place in holes containing water as it quickly hydrates. Can bridge in hole. May desiccate when in contact with high concentrations of organic compounds (greater than 2 %) or materials that are strongly acidic or alkaline causing shrinkage.

000446

TABLE 1 *Continued*

Plugging Material	Description	Positive Attributes	Negative Attributes
Powdered	Pulverized and seared bentonite that passes a 200- mesh screen. Used as drilling mud or as an additive to cement.	Used with cement to compensate for shrinkage (under saturated conditions). Other additives can be used to inhibit swelling, etc. Retards cement set; lowers heat of hydration.	May not be a desirable plugging material in deep vadose zones due to the drying out of the material, resulting in cracking. Difficult to place in holes containing water, as it quickly hydrates. Can bridge in hole. May desiccate when in contact with high concentrations of organic compounds (greater than 2 %) or materials that are strongly acidic or alkaline causing shrinkage.
High solids clay grout	Powdered bentonite (200 mesh) mixed with fresh water to form a slurry with a minimum of 20 % solids and a density of 9.4 lb/gal (1126 Kg/m^3 g/L).	Does not shrink during curing. Low density reduces formation losses. Forms a low-permeability seal that stays flexible as long as it is hydrated.	May not be a desirable plugging material in deep vadose zones due to the drying out of the material, resulting in cracking. May desiccate when in contact with high concentrations of organic compounds (greater than 2 %) or materials that are strongly acidic or alkaline causing shrinkage. A low-strength material subject to expansion under low-pressure differentials such as artesian conditions.

extremely high temperatures and pressures can be expected to occur.

6.6.7 *Other Cements*—Other cements have been developed that may have applicability in decommissioning activities. These include the following:

6.6.7.1 Ultralight cements with a slurry density that can be as low as 6 lb/gal (719 cm Kg/L). This material can be made by foaming the cement with nitrogen or through the addition of hollow glass microspheres between 60 and 315 µm in diameter. The latter forms a slurry of between 9 and 12 lb/gal (1078 and 1438 Kg/L). Ultralight cements and microspheres have been reported **(4)** for cement unconsolidated sands and for plugging cavernous formations and lost circulation zones. Reference **(5)** provided similar information on microspheres. Microspheres can also be used in high-pressure applications when it may be desirable to limit density increases. Another advantage is the low water/cement ratio due to the low water absorbency and low density **(5)**.

6.6.7.2 *Pozzolanic-Portland Cements*—These cements consist of silicious materials that develop into a cement in the presence of lime and water. Both natural materials of volcanic origin such as perlites (volcanic ashes), heat-treated clays, shales, tuffs, opaline cherts, diatomaceous earth and artificial materials consisting of byproducts from glass factories, furnace slag, and fly ash have been used **(2, 4, 6)**. The large variety of materials that can be used as a source for pozzolans may result in variable results.

6.6.7.3 Pozzolans act to extend cement and decrease density. The specific gravity of fly ash ranges from 2.3 to 2.7 (depending upon the source) while portland cement is 3.1 to 3.2 **(2)**. These materials can also provide improved resistance to corrosive fluids. Table 2 provides a comparison of sulfate resistance between ASTM Type V cement with and without pozzolans.

6.6.7.4 The improved resistance to corrosive materials is accomplished in part as many pozzolans contain zeolites which have the ability for ion exchange between the corrosive material and the alkaline component in the cement **(7)**. Secondly, the use of pozzolans also decreases cement permeability over time. This occurs as a result of the increased percentage in hydrated cement containing materials resulting from the release of calcium hydroxide and the silica combining with lime from the cement to form a stable material **(8)**.

6.6.7.5 Pozzolans are added to portland cement by adding 74 lb (33.6 Kg) (as fly ash) per sack of cement. If perlites are used, 2 to 6 % of bentonite by weight is needed to keep the perlite from floating **(9)**.

6.6.8 Gypsum cements can be used for high early strength development and their ability to set rapidly. These cements expand approximately 0.3 %. This cement may have use in plugging highly permeable formations. Care should be taken in using gypsum cements due to the solubility of gypsum.

6.6.9 *Epoxy Resin Cements*—Epoxy (vinyl ester resins) cements may have applicability in decommissioning wells and boreholes where corrosive materials may be present **(5)**.

6.6.9.1 Epoxy cement consists of an epoxy base, hardener, accelerator, and inert filler. Resin viscosity is reduced by the addition of a nonreactive liquid diluent that also controls exothermic heat during polymerization. An inert solid filler such as very fine silica or barite is added to further reduce reaction heat and increase strength **(10)**.

6.6.9.2 There are several advantages of using epoxy cements. Reference **(11)** reports that a stronger bond occurred between the casing and the formation. Cole also reported resistance to various chemicals (see Table 3). The cement is highly resistant to high concentrations of hydrochloric and sulfuric acid, but is not suitable for use in environments where acetic acid, chlorinated hydrocarbons, or toluene are present.

TABLE 2 Comparison of ASTM Type V Cement With and Without Pozzolan Materials[A]

Cement Type	Relative Degree of Sulfate Attack	Percentage of Water Soluble Sulfate (as SO_4) in Soil, ppm	Sulfate (as SO_4) in Water Samples, ppm
V	Severe	0.20 to 2.00	1 500 to 10 000
V (plus pozzolan)	Very severe	2.00 or more	10 000 or more

[A] See Ref **(4)**.

TABLE 3 List of Chemicals Reported Not to Affect Epoxy Cement[A]

Chemical	Concentration, %
Hydrochloric acid	30
Sulfuric acid	25
Chromic acid	up to 10
Nitric acid	5
Hydroxide	up to 20
Hypochlorite	up to 6

[A] See Ref **(11)**.

000447

6.6.9.3 This cement is expensive and requires removal of water (that reduces settling time) through the use of gelled and weighted diesel oil to precondition the hole. The use of this material may increase contamination at the site, if diesel oil (hydrocarbons) are a concern at the site.

6.6.10 *Cement Additives*—A number of materials can be added to cement to modify properties to meet a specific need. Cement additives can be used to extend, accelerate, retard, increase density, control fluid losses, control circulation losses, or reduce friction (**4**). Several of these materials have more than one use; for example, sodium chloride can be used to accelerate or retard cement. The most common cement additives are discussed in the following subsections. Figure 1 lists these additives and presents the relative impact of their use on selected performance criteria.

6.7 *Extenders:*

6.7.1 Bentonite is the most commonly used material in modifying cement properties. It can be added to most ASTM and API cements. In decommissioning activities, the percentage of bentonite added is generally no more than 4 %. It has the following effects when added to cement (**4**):

6.7.1.1 Lowers the hydraulic conductivity of the cement;

6.7.1.2 Increases slurry viscosity;

6.7.1.3 Reduces fluid loss to the formation;

6.7.1.4 Provides for a longer pumpability at normal pressures as a result of delaying strength development;

6.7.1.5 Reduces compressive strength; and

6.7.1.6 Lowers resistance to chemical attack.

6.7.2 Bentonite increases shrinkage as it ties up large volumes of water that would normally be in the cement. A second common extender are pozzolans which have already been addressed in 6.6.7.2.

6.8 *Accelerators:*

6.8.1 Accelerators hasten the settling of cement and are useful when voids occur, or when cement plugs are to be used in the first pour. Two common materials are used; calcium chloride and sodium chloride.

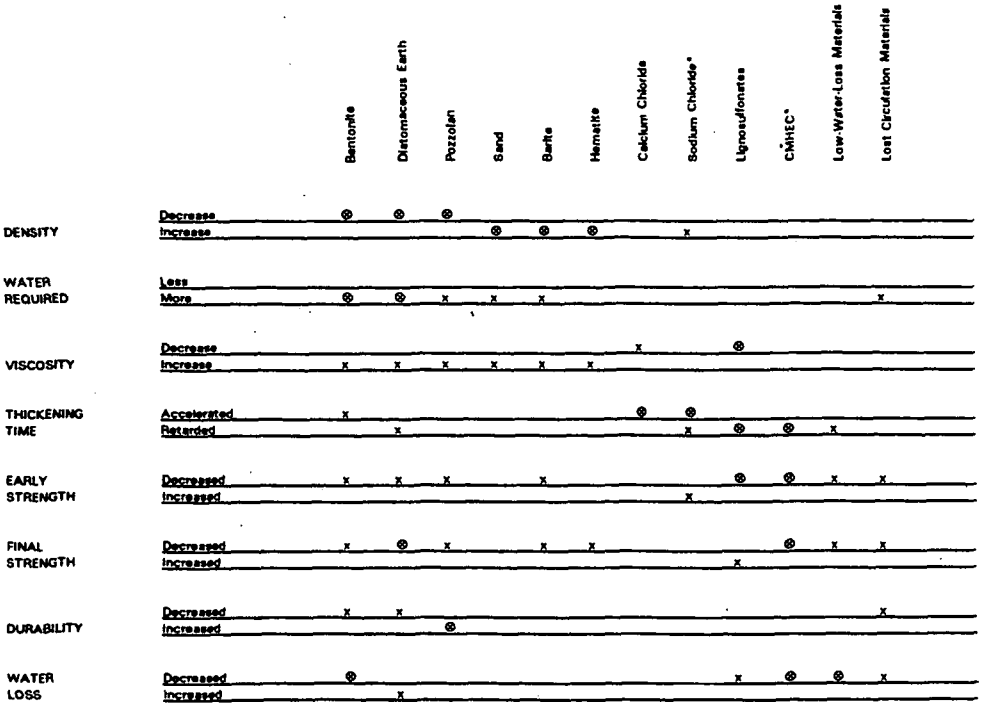
6.8.2 Calcium chloride is available as a powder or flake. Flakes are the most commonly used form, as it is easy to store and can absorb some moisture without becoming lumpy (**2**). Two to four % of calcium chloride by weight is used to achieve maximum acceleration. The use of calcium chloride should be considered when a rapid set, a decrease in viscosity, and early strength are desired.

6.8.3 Sodium chloride can be added between 1.5 to 5 % by weight of cement to reduce setting time. Maximum acceleration occurs at a concentration of 2 to 2.5 % except when higher water ratios are used (**2**).

6.9 *Retarders:*

6.9.1 Sodium chloride can be used to retard the settling of cement as well as accelerate the setting of cement. Fifteen to seventeen % salt (14 to 16 lb (6.35 to 7.26 Kg) of salt per sack) by weight is added to retard cement (**2**).

6.9.2 Other chemicals (cellulose, lignosulfates) have been used as retarders, but are not appropriate for decommissioning activities without additional information on their compatibility with waste and their effect on water quality. Reference (**12**) indicates that sugar-derived retarders such as cellulose lignosulfates are destructive to cement strength and should not be used where strength is important. Organic



x Denotes minor effect.
⊛ Denotes major effect and/or principal purpose for which use.
+ Carboxymethyl hydroxyethyl cellulose.
* Small percentages of sodium chloride accelerate thickening.

NOTE—See Ref (**3**).

FIG. 1 Effects of Some Additives on the Physical Properties of Cement

000448

retarders should not be used for decommissioning activities.

6.10 *Density Improvers*—The density of cement can be improved to increase hydrostatic pressure. Sand can be used to increase density without affecting the cement chemically although additional water is required. Barite has been used, but may interact with waste and should not be used.

6.11 *Fluid Loss Controllers:*

6.11.1 Various organic materials such as cellulose can be used to produce a constant water to solids ratio that may have applicability when a grout is placed under pressure and water loss can occur. However, these materials may not be suitable for decommissioning activities, as they may contribute to contamination.

6.11.2 These organic materials (fibrous materials, cellophane flakes) act to block the movement of the grout into the formation. It is not desirable to use these materials in decommissioning activities due to their organic content that may adversely affect water quality and also may not result in a good plug.

6.12 *Friction Reducers (Dispersants):*

6.12.1 These materials reduce friction to improve flow and can be effective when the water cement ratio is reduced. Reduction of the water cement ratio is a method to decrease cement friction. (It is possible to reduce the amount of water added by using a dispersant (5). These materials (sodium chloride, polymers, and calcium lignosulfonate) also help to reduce the energy required to pump the grout. Polymers and calcium lignosulfonate may not be appropriate materials for decommissioning activity as they may affect water quality.

6.13 *Bentonite*—Bentonite is predominantly composed of the clay mineral sodium montmorillonite. It has the ability to absorb large quantities of water and swell to many times its original size when hydrated, and the material remains flexible. Bentonite clay may be used in any of its various forms to meet placement, strength, and sealing criteria listed in 6.3. The amount of shrinkage or settling of a bentonite seal is dependent on the percent solids of bentonite, composition of surrounding formation and its soil moisture. Higher water to bentonite ratios increase the likelihood of dehydration.

6.13.1 The permeability of bentonite is very low; hydraulic conductivities of 1×10^{-6} cm/s or less can be achieved. However, bentonite may desiccate in the presence of high concentrations of some organic chemicals, strong acids or bases, saline ground water, or when allowed to dry, thereby increasing its hydraulic conductivity. Bentonite is commercially available in the following forms:

6.13.1.1 *Pellets*—Pellets are made from granular powdered bentonite that has been compressed into tablets, commonly ¼ to ¾ in. (.64 cm to 1.91 cm) in diameter. Pellets have a low-moisture content, high density, and uniform size. Pellets should be composed of additive-free, high-swelling granular sodium bentonite. Properly placed in a well or borehole, pellets hydrate and expand creating a low permeability (1×10^{-6} cm/s) plug. Pellets can be used in the saturated zone provided the length of the water column is short. The rate of pour into the hole should not be more than 50 lb (22.7 Kg) of bentonite in 5 min (1).

6.13.1.2 *Preformed Donuts*—Commercial preformed donuts consist of compressed bentonite and may have use in decommissioning activities.

6.13.2 *Chips*—Raw mined sodium montmorillonite in the form of chunks that are ¼ to ¾ in. (6.4 to 1.91 cm) diameter. Their angular shape can make it difficult to pl chips to the desired depth in a small-diameter well or borehole without bridging.

6.13.2.1 Fine-grained material resulting from the mechanical breakdown during shipping may cause a problem in the placement of chips due to clumping. Fines should be screened through a ¼-in. (6.4-mm) mesh screen before use.

6.13.2.2 The lower affinity for water that chips have allow them to fall through a water column without rapid hydration.

6.13.2.3 Chips have applicability in large-diameter boreholes and when carefully dropped into the hole to reduce bridging.

6.13.3 *Granular*—Raw-mined sodium montmorillonite without any additives that has been crushed and seared to an 8 to 20-mesh size. This material can be placed at depth in dry holes but hydrates quickly when placed into water. It often sticks to wet borehole walls and bridges when placed through water. Granular material is best suited for use in the unsaturated zone with enough water added to provide adequate hydration.

6.13.3.1 Fines can clump when in contact with water (1). Fines result from mechanical breakdown of the material during shipping. Granular bentonite should be poured slowly to reduce the potential for bridging. In some situations, a pour rate not exceeding 50 lb (227 Kg) in 5 min has been used successfully (1).

6.13.4 *Powdered*—Untreated, seared, and grou bentonite that passes through a 200-mesh screen. It designed to be used in drilling fluids (muds) and as an additive to other plugging materials such as cement. Bentonite powder slurry can become an effective grout material when combined with density-increasing additives and swelling inhibitors. Powdered bentonite should not be placed in dry form through water as it can bridge and stick to the borehole walls.

6.13.5 *High Solids Clay Grout*—This material is a blend of powdered polymer-free bentonite clays mixed with fresh water that forms a slurry with a minimum 20 % solids by weight and a density of 9.4 lb/gal (1126m^3 Kg/L). The slurry sets to a low-permeable plastic grout that generates no heat of hydration and does not shrink during curing in the presence of moisture. High solids clay grouts are commonly used for borehole plugging.

6.14 *Other Materials:*

6.14.1 A number of other materials have been used for plugging:

6.14.1.1 Attapulgite clay (may have applicability when used with a salt cement grout)[5]

6.14.1.2 Fire clay

6.14.1.3 Commercial packing materials

6.14.1.4 Packers

6.14.2 These materials are either inappropriate for use in decommissioning wells or boreholes where hazardous waste are encountered, or are not well studied for decommissioning wells in hazardous waste situations. Therefore, the

[5] Sutton, Fred. Personal Communication, 1990.

000449

e not discussed in this guide.

6.14.3 Other materials have been used in the past for plugging wells and boreholes. Such materials as wooden or lead plugs should not be used because wood plugs may decay and lead is a potentially hazardous material. Mechanical packers composed of steel, plastic, or other materials can be used to assist in plugging.

7. Procedure

7.1 The primary purpose of most boreholes and monitoring wells is to monitor chemical compounds in the soil and ground water; however, there are other uses for subsurface monitoring including the measurement of temperature, soil gas sampling, or measurement of geophysical parameters. Use significant care in planning and implementing the decommissioning activity. It is important to obtain any required approvals from regulatory agencies, land owners, responsible parties, and other parties involved with the site. The following subsections present a recommended list of tasks in order that the decommissioning activity is successfully completed. Several of the steps outlined below do not pertain to boreholes and may be omitted.

7.2 *Planning:*

7.2.1 *Records Review*—Carefully review all available records and information relating to use of the monitoring well, borehole, etc. This review may include the following information:

7.2.1.1 Review applicable Federal, state, and local regulations relating to decommissioning activities. This may include contacting the applicable state or local agency having jurisdiction over drilling activities and preparation of the necessary documentation to drill (start card),

7.2.1.2 Collection of drillers' logs, geophysical logs, well construction, or geologic logs, including stratigraphy, structural geology, subsurface information, construction materials, screened interval, depth, hydraulic gradients (if water levels are available from other wells for its determination), legal location, date of installation, and photographs of the well,

7.2.1.3 Review of analytical chemical data for soil and ground water over the life of the well, and variations in water levels over time,

7.2.1.4 Review of records of the repairs, modifications, or other changes made to the well during the lifetime of the well,

7.2.1.5 Evaluation of historic, current, and planned land use,

7.2.1.6 Interviews with local workers and collection of other pertinent data such as discussing site conditions with local drillers, and

7.2.1.7 While not directly part of the decommissioning activity, proper disposal of displaced fluids and other materials (such as pulled or drilled out casing and cement seals) should be considered. Some of these materials may be classified as a hazardous waste under Federal, state, or local regulations. Conduct a review of these regulations and appropriate analytical documentation prior to classifying a material as a hazardous waste.

NOTE 9—This information may be summarized in a work plan. A work plan would also include a description of the site geology and hydrogeology and the decommissioning method to be used.

7.2.2 *Verification of Field Data*—The variety and quality of field practices and reporting require that the well be inspected to verify the actual field situation prior to decommissioning the well. The following list of procedures is recommended so that the actual condition of the well is known. Some of the borehole geophysical logs may not be applicable or may not be available for small diameter (2 in. (5.08 cm) or less) holes or wells.

7.2.2.1 Inspection of well head installation for integrity,

7.2.2.2 Current depth measurement of the casing and well. (The original depth of the borehole may be different than the well.),

7.2.2.3 *Water Quality Sampling and Analysis*—A final water quality sample taken from the well may be required for regulatory purposes;

7.2.2.4 *Downhole Inspections*—Including caliper logs to measure inside diameter; television logs to determine in-well conditions such as casing breaks, screen size, etc.; gamma logs to verify geologic information, if not already available; cement bond logs (sonic) to determine if the casing is firmly attached to grout (presently available for holes 2½ in. (6.35 cm) or larger in diameter); flow logs (flow meter or spinners) to determine if vertical flow occurs within the casing; and hydraulic integrity test to determine if the well casing is intact.

NOTE 10—Care should be taken in running any of these tools in a well with a collapsed or broken casing, or in boreholes that may collapse on the tool. Tools with active radioactive sources should not be used under these circumstances. Conduct downhole inspections only after obstructions are removed from the well casing or borehole.

7.2.2.5 Contact local owner, resident operator/observer to verify operations at the site.

7.2.2.6 Verification of field data is an ongoing responsibility. Use verified information to modify plans in order that the decommissioning activity is correctly conducted. Continue this activity during the field phase and change specifications as needed.

7.2.3 *Review of Decommissioning Options*—After the records have been thoroughly reviewed and verified in the field, select an appropriate decommissioning procedure. Evaluate each possible option to determine the most appropriate method for the selection. The following list of evaluation criteria is recommended:

7.2.3.1 The potential for fluid movement from one aquifer into another by means of the borehole or well should be eliminated.

7.2.3.2 Materials to be used in plugging must be compatible with well casing and screen (if left in place), and with subsurface formation and ground water, etc. over the period of time hazardous materials are found at these sites.

7.2.3.3 Future land use (as is known at the time of decommissioning) should be compatible with decommissioning plans.

7.2.3.4 Closure options should be compatible with applicable federal, state, and local requirements.

7.3 *Implementation:*

7.3.1 *Field Procedure:*

7.3.1.1 Satisfactory completion of decommissioning is the primary purpose of this guide. All work performed on the borehole or well should be completed by competently trained drillers, equipped with appropriate tools, under the

000450

direction of a geological or engineering professional who is qualified to certify that the decommissioning is completed according to the planned procedures and is consistent with applicable regulations.

7.3.1.2 Approve any modifications to the proposed work plan and record in writing by the on-site geologist or engineer (or their representatives) prior to implementation.

7.3.1.3 The geologist or engineer should be on-site during the field activities to verify that the activities are completed as planned. Decommissioning operations can be successfully accomplished by careful planning and documentation (see 7.5). Maintain documentation of decommissioning activities for the post-closure period or period required by regulations (if specified). While regulations may require documentation for a period of 30 years, it is advisable to continue this activity for a period lasting as long as hazardous materials occur at the site.

7.3.1.4 Remove casing from the ground by either pulling or overdrilling (see 7.3.7). Depending upon construction, it may be necessary to leave the casing in place and produce suitable perforations in the screen and blank casing to allow for the plugging material to penetrate the annular space and formation (see 7.3.7). If grout in the annular space can be verified to be in good condition, the well can be decommissioned by cutting the blank casing and filling the screened interval with grout. Verifying the integrity of grout may be difficult to impossible. If a filter pack is present, it may be necessary to remove the filter pack after perforating the casing by washing or overdrilling. Several of the methods identified in this subsection are briefly discussed in the Appendix X1.

7.3.1.5 If well construction conditions are not adequately known and the well site contains hazardous materials, it may not be appropriate to remove the casing and screen, as this may increase the mobility of hazardous materials.

7.3.1.6 The borehole or well, or both, may require preconditioning for decommissioning to be successful. Preconditioning can reduce the potential for sloughing of the borehole wall if for example, a sodium montmorillonite clay occurs naturally in the formation and cement is used as the plugging material. The calcium contained in Portland cement exchanges with the sodium cation in bentonite clay decreasing the water contained in the clay and inducing sloughing. This problem can be significant in sediments or rocks that are under considerable pressure, causing a loss in part of the hole, thereby not completely plugging the borehole and possibly causing loss of all downhole equipment. These conditions are usually known by local drilling and well servicing contractors who should be contacted prior to the start of field operations.

7.3.1.7 Preconditioning consists of removing mud from borehole walls (when mud is used for drilling the borehole), or stabilizing a borehole prior to placement of the plugging material. If a drilling mud has been used to drill a borehole, preconditioning can involve the circulation of a high-quality, low-solids drilling fluid to remove gelled mud from the borehole and borehole walls prior to plugging. For the above situation, a high-quality bentonite or drilling fluid can be used. If a drilling mud is used as the plugging material, prepare fresh mud. The mud used in drilling contains cuttings and may also not have suitable properties (13). The selection and use of material(s) should meet the requirements specified in Section 6.

7.3.2 *Volume of Plugging Material Required:*

7.3.2.1 The geologist or engineer should calculate the volume of plugging material required for the borehole or well after first taking into consideration applicable loss of material to the formation, voids intersecting the borehole, changes in borehole diameter, washout zones, and swelling or shrinkage of material. An approximation of the volume of material that may be required can frequently be provided by contacting local drillers or professionals.

7.3.2.2 Loss of plugging material into the formation may occur rapidly (within minutes) or after several hours or days. The volume of plugging material required to be on-site should be at a minimum, enough to fill one borehole volume, however, it is advisable to have available a minimum of 25 to 50 % in excess of the calculated borehole volume (1, 2). Additional plugging material should be readily available to site personnel under short notice, especially if it is common to lose plugging material into the formation or the material is required for clearing a hole (see 7.3.8.2).

7.3.2.3 A caliper log is helpful in boreholes or overdrilled holes to define hole diameter. If this information is not available, use an estimate of borehole diameter from the available well construction specifications. Calculate the volume of the borehole using the following:

$$v = \pi r^2 L$$

where:

v = volume,
L = length of borehole or well to be plugged, and
r = radius of hole.

7.3.2.4 Manuals listing the volume of a hole per linear foot (metre) such as Ref (3) can also be used. These manuals are available through major deep well cementing service companies. Assume in the calculations or table used that the derived volume is the minimum required for actual conditions due to possible loss of plugging material into the formation. Verify grout emplaced through estimating the volume of material leaving the hole for holes filled with mud or water. For all boreholes, measure the volume of material emplaced and check for the appearance of the material at the top of the interval grouted or land's surface, whichever is applicable.

7.3.2.5 Location of the grout at depth can be difficult because the top of the grout may not be able to be distinguished from water or other fluids in the borehole. One field procedure that has been applied to measure the level of the grout is to use a wooden sounding block with a weight attached to the block. The weight should be slightly denser than the grout.

NOTE 11—Location of the depth of plugging material in a borehole or well does not confirm that the plug has performed its intended purpose. Plugging materials may not have adhered to the walls of the borehole or well or may have been bypassed from the target zone. Therefore, placement of plugging materials is highly dependent upon proper preparation of the hole.

7.3.2.6 In areas where coarse materials are encountered, or considerable fracturing or solution openings occur, two or three times the calculated volume of material may be required to fill the hole. In extreme cases such as in some karst terrains where large conduits may exist, it may be

difficult to plug a well or borehole. In these situations, packers can be used to isolate critical intervals for filling with plugged materials above or below the karstic formations. Packers may also be used to isolate critical intervals within a well or borehole throughout the entire depth.

7.3.3 *Quality of Water Used for Grout*—Grout must be carefully mixed using water of a known chemical quality. The quality of the water must be compatible with the grouting material and not introduce contamination into the subsurface. For cement, water used should be free of silt, organic matter, alkali compounds, and have a total solids content of 500 mg/L or less **(14)**. The grout should be weighed using a mud balance.

NOTE 12—Thicker grout mixtures may have greater effectiveness in plugging highly permeable materials or materials with large voids, but may be very difficult to pump through a grout pipe. Less viscous mixtures are easy to pump, but may be too mobile, have greater shrinkage, and take longer to set if additives to compensate these problems are not added.

7.3.4 *Mixing of Cement and Bentonite On-Site*—Both cement and bentonite can be mixed on site. Cement can also be purchased from a contractor and delivered premixed on site, provided the water used is of known and acceptable quality.

7.3.5 *Use of Curing Accelerators*—Curing accelerators can be used to hasten the initial set time for cement from 6 to 8 h to perhaps 2 or 3 h, provided the accelerator (typically calcium chloride, sodium chloride, aluminum powder, or gypsum) does not degrade the cement or react with the environment. The use of these materials may also require approval by regulatory authorities.

7.3.6 *Decommissioning of Boreholes:*

7.3.6.1 To achieve an effective seal, the borehole should be free of debris and foreign matter that may restrict the adhesion of the plugging materials to the borehole wall. Clear boreholes of excessive mud filtercake, or gelled mud (if used) and any bridges resulting from the removal of temporary casing, or when noncohesive materials (such as sand and gravel) are encountered that can lead to a collapsed borehole during decommissioning activities.

7.3.6.2 One method commonly used for effective removal of these materials is to advance a small grout pipe to the bottom of the borehole by use of water or a high-quality bentonite slurry and flush the hole. Flushing is continued until the blockage is removed, or noncohesive formations are stabilized. Use at least two borehole volume of materials. If the flushing fluid returning to the surface contains potentially hazardous materials, it may be necessary to place this material into containers for proper disposal.

7.3.6.3 As soon as the borehole is prepared, pump plugging material slowly through a grout pipe to displace the flushing fluid. Inject grout starting from the bottom of the hole, forcing other fluids upward. Complete grouting slowly to prevent channeling of the grout around any undesirable material remaining in the hole. Complete this operation in one continuous operation. Raise the grout pipe when pumping pressure increases significantly, or when undiluted grout reaches the surface. Regularly sample and evaluate overflowing grout for weight, presence of foreign material, or other changes. When the overflowing grout is similar to that being pumped down the hole, the plugging is considered complete.

7.3.6.4 Grout pipes should be the largest diameter that is practical for field operations to reduce the required pumping pressure. Cut the lower end of the pipe at an angle to allow for the side discharge of the grout. Side discharge reduces the potential for erosion of the borehole wall. Typically, heavy-walled PVC (Schedule 40 or greater) or thin-walled steel pipe is used for grouting purposes. Use caution while grouting deeper holes in order that downhole pressure does not exceed the rupture strength of the grout pipe.

7.3.6.5 Grouting of shallow auger holes or other boreholes where grout pumping equipment is not readily available may be accomplished by placing grout through a side discharge grout pipe that has a funnel attached to the top. As the grouting progresses, slowly raise the pipe. Take care when using this procedure, as the low placement pressure may not completely fill or flush undesirable materials from the borehole. This procedure is only recommended when the entire borehole depth is 10 to 15 ft (3 to 4.6 m) or less.

7.3.6.6 Small diameter (<2-in. (5.08 cm-mm)) holes are difficult to plug. A small diameter (¾-in. (1.9 cm-mm)) grout pipe can be used, however, high-pumping pressures may be required or less viscous plugging materials may be necessary.

NOTE 13—It is important to avoid hydrofracturing or blowout in shallow holes in unconsolidated materials when pressure grouting. A general rule to avoid hydrofracturing is to restrict pumping pressure to about 0.6 lb/in.^{2} (0.42 Kg/cm^2) of hydraulic pressure for each foot (metre) of overburden. In some instances, the pressure used must be reduced further.

7.3.6.7 A conservative method **(15)** of calculating maximum pressure is as follows:

$$Pm = (0.733 - 0.433\ Sg)d$$

where:

Pm = pressure of fluid injected at wellhead, lb/in.^{2} (Kg/cm^2),

Sg = density (specific gravity) of the plugging material (grout) (unitless), and

d = depth measured for the surface to the opening of the grout pipe (metres) feet.

Hydrofracturing typically occurs during start-up or restart of grouting.

7.3.6.8 Inject grout at the bottom of the hole, displacing grout, loose formation materials, and borehole fluids upward. Slowly pump grout to avoid channeling. Do this in one continuous operation. Raise the grout pipe when grout can no longer be easily forced from the pipe into the hole or when undiluted grout reaches the top of the hole and flows out. Sample and weigh this material. The weight of the grout returning to the surface should be the same as the grout pumped into the hole.

7.3.7 *Control of Elevated Formation Pressures*—Occasionally, a borehole or well may penetrate a formation that is under confined conditions (artesian head), or from which a gas is being released, under pressure. (Gas bubbling upward through the grout may result in open channels, or increase the permeability of the grout.) When this condition is encountered, sealing of the borehole requires that the grout pressure be maintained greater than the formation pressure until initial grout set occurs. The "shut-in-pressure" of the

000452

formation can usually be determined by use of pressure gages attached to a casing that has been pushed or driven into the confining unit. This casing must be tightly sealed to prevent leakage around its annulus. (Separate packers or casing grout, or both, may be required to prevent leakage around the casing.)

7.3.7.1 Several procedures may be used to balance the formation pressure until the initial set of the grout has occurred. (See Fig. 2.) The procedure most often used to contain the pressure is to use a sufficient column of grout. If additional head pressure is required, increase the unit weight of the grout by the addition of sand, densifying additives (barite, or hematite) or decreasing the water cement ratio. Another alternative commonly used is to pump the grout through a check valve into the casing until the top of grout reaches the desired elevation. Maintain pressure above the grout by use of compressed air, or by use of a simple standpipe filled with water. If the standpipe procedure is used, pump grout through a tremie pipe extending through the water to prevent dilution.

7.3.7.2 After the initial grout set has occurred (minimum 24 h), the sustaining pressure (above atmospheric pressure) may be released. However, record the air pressure (or fluid level) in the air filled casing above the grout frequently for several days to verify that no leakage is occurring. If gas (of any variety) is present in the formation, analyze a sample of the air from the casing above the grout. Care should be taken under these conditions, as explosive or hazardous conditions may be present. Methane, the most commonly produced gas, is odorless, colorless, toxic, and extremely flammable. Safety precautions are advised.

7.3.7.3 Only after testing results confirm that the seal is effective, is it advisable to complete the permanent closure or removal of the near (or above) surface casing.

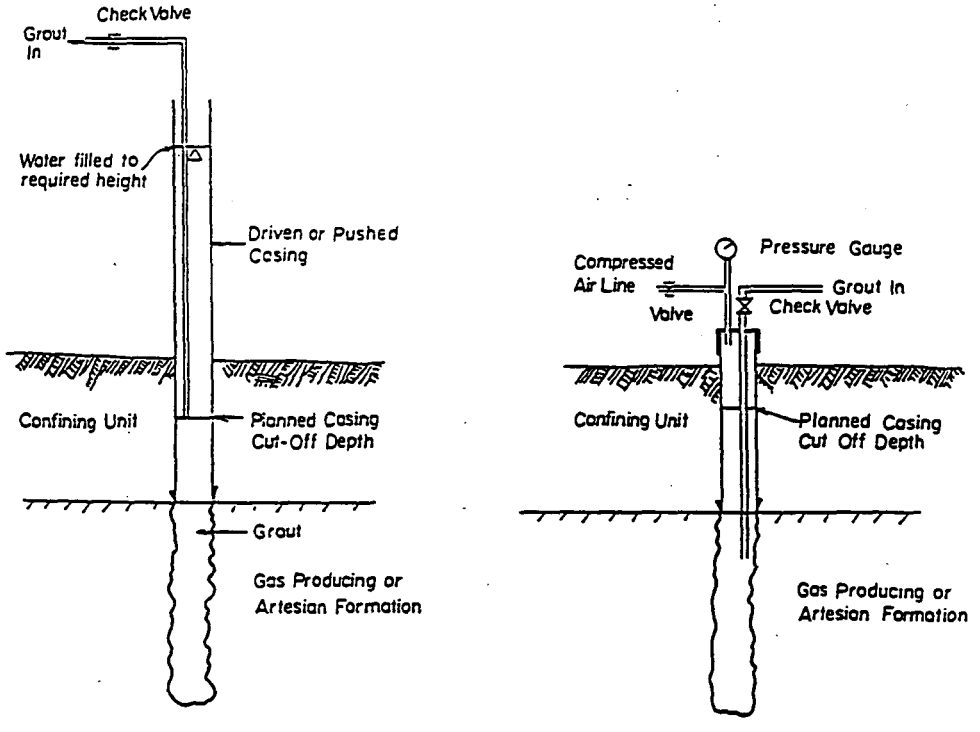
7.3.7.4 Measure any fallback or settlement of the grout surface (whether by gravity or under pressure) that occurs after grout emplacement to the nearest foot and record. Correct any fallback with native or imported materials to grade, or to a specified depth below grade, such as below the plow layer. The depth is based on existing and proposed land use and regulatory requirements.

7.3.8 *Decommissioning of Wells and Other Monitoring Devices:*

7.3.8.1 This discussion has applicability in decommissioning ground water monitoring and injection wells and soil gas monitoring wells, neutron probe access tubes, lysimeter and tensiometer and installations, and similar devices. Appendix X1 should be consulted for additional information.

7.3.8.2 It is desirable to remove all existing well construction materials such as screen, casing, filter pack, seal, and grout from the hole to reduce the potential for the formation of a vertical conduit to occur at the contact between casing and annular seal; reduce the potential of these materials interfering with the decommissioning operation; decrease the potential of a reaction between the materials used; or to minimize the reaction with the native materials or ground water. In situations where well materials are removed and borehole collapse occurs, redrill the borehole following the guidance provided in 7.3.6.

7.3.8.3 Steel casing may be removed using jacks to free casing from the hole followed by lifting the casing out by using a drill rig, backhoe, cranes, etc. of sufficient capacity. If



Stand Pipe To Contain Excess Formation Pressure

Compressed Air To Contain Excess Formation Pressure

FIG. 2 Two Procedures That Can Be Used to Overcome Elevated Formation Pressure

the annular space has been cemented over a long distance, this method may not be readily used unless a poor contact occurs between the casing and borehole. Small lengths of cement (typically less than 10 ft (3 m)) can be removed along with the casing if the drill rig has sufficient lifting capacity. When the casing cannot be removed, perforate the casing and screen using a suitable tool. This is necessary as encrustation or corrosion of the screen can block or completely close openings. A wide variety of commercial equipment is available for perforating casings and screens. Due to the diversity of application, consult an experienced contractor prior to selection of the technique. A minimum of four rows of perforations several inches (millimetres) long and a minimum of five perforations per linear foot (metre) of casing or screen is recommended.

7.3.8.4 Remove steel casing by overdrilling (overreaming) the casing. Overreaming can be done using an overreaming tool (see Fig. 3). Select a pilot bit that is nearly the same size as the inside diameter of the casing. The reaming bit should be slightly larger than the borehole diameter to remove all well construction materials and a small amount of native material. As drilling proceeds, the casing, grout, bentonite seal, filter pack, and other well materials are destroyed and returned to the surface. In situations when the grout in the annular space can be verified to be in good condition, it may be very difficult to remove casing and grout and grout can be left in place by pressure grouting the screened interval and casing. Verifying the integrity of the grout can be difficult.

7.3.8.5 PVC and other low tensile strength materials generally cannot be removed by pulling if they have been properly cemented into place. Overdrilling is necessary to remove these casing and screen materials.

7.3.8.6 A hollow stem auger equipped with outward facing carbide cutting teeth with a diameter 2 to 4 in. (50.8 to 1016 cm) larger than the casing may be used for overdrilling. Place the lead auger over the casing and rotate downward (see Fig. 4). The casing guides the cutting head and remains inside the auger. When the full diameter and length of the well has been penetrated, the casing and screen can be retrieved from the center of the auger. It is important to use outward facing cutting teeth in order that the cutting tool does not sever the casing and drift off center. An alternative is to install a steel guide pipe inside the well casing so that the augers can be centered.[6] Firmly attach this temporary working pipe to the inside of the casing by use of a packer, or other type of expansion or friction device. When the auger reaches full depth and the well materials have been removed, pump plugging materials through the hollow stem as the augers are withdrawn.

NOTE 14—Local regulations may allow leaving the PVC casing in place, if a good annular seal exists, or just removing blank casing if the integrity of the annular seal can be documented. It is generally difficult to document a good annular seal (tight fit, no fractures or channels) without the use of a cement bond log or similar method. A cement bond log cannot be run in small diameter wells (less than 2.5 in. (6.35 cm) in diameter) because a small diameter tool is not currently available. Also, this method is not reliable for PVC casings.

7.3.8.7 After removal of the casing, decommissioning can be completed in accordance with 7.3.6.

[6] Baker, Robert, Personal Communication, Layne Environmental, 1990.

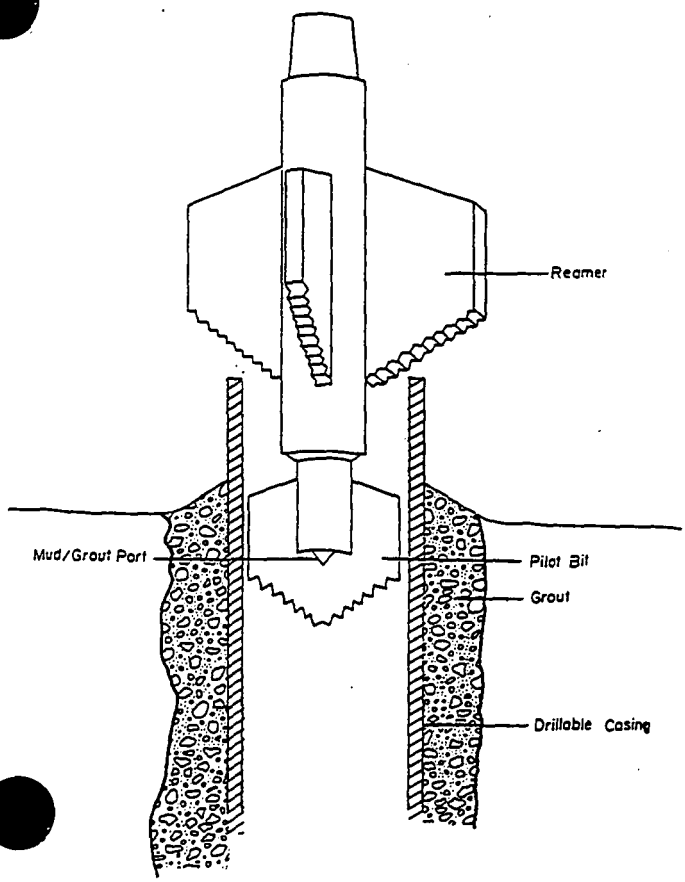


FIG. 3 Over Drilling by Mud Rotary Procedure

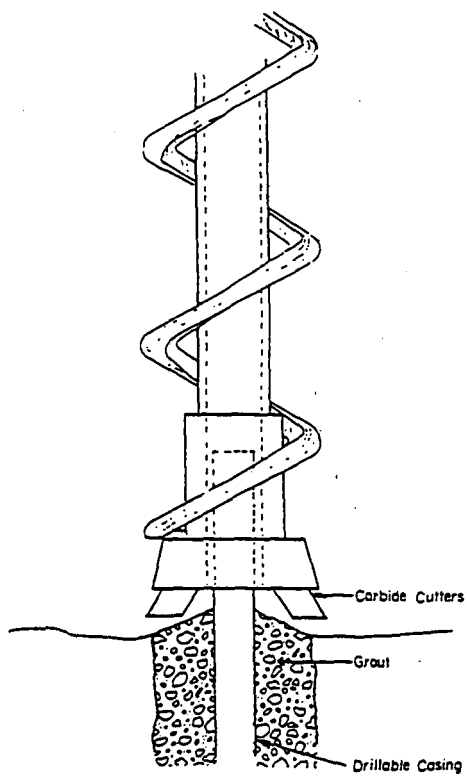


FIG. 4 Over Drilling by Hollow Stem Auger Procedure

000454

NOTE 15—Wells with a maximum depth of 10 to 15 ft (3 to 4.6 m) can be removed by overdrilling, or when possible by pulling the casing out of the ground. The open hole is then filled with grout or other suitable plugging materials. A tamping rod can be used to tamp the material into place.

7.4 *Decontamination of Downhole Equipment:*

7.4.1 If hazardous waste or other contaminants occur at the site, decontaminate all tools placed into the borehole or well prior to entry (see Practice D 5088). Follow state and local regulations, if applicable. A hot water pressure wash or steam cleaning are examples of two typical decontamination methods. Other methods such as the use of solvents followed by rinsing with clean tap water and allowing equipment to air dry may also be acceptable. Also contain water and other materials used for decontamination for chemical analysis to determine proper disposal methods.

7.4.2 Do not flush grout pipes out with water while in or above the hole. Conduct all cleaning operations aboveground and manage appropriately as a hazardous or nonhazardous situation depending upon chemical analytical data on the site.

7.5 *Documentation:*

7.5.1 *Inspection Records*—The primary purpose of records of field work is to provide that appropriate measures have been taken so that the borehole or monitoring well is permanently decommissioned in a manner that minimizes it from being a conduit for fluid, water, or vapor migration. Properly decommissioned boreholes and wells should have no adverse influence on the local environment than the original geological setting.

7.5.2 *Narrative Report*—Maintain the narrative report of activities as a permanent record of the decommissioning activities and include the full set of field activities including:

7.5.2.1 Decommissioning date,

7.5.2.2 Personnel (with listing of company representation, including phone number and address),

7.5.2.3 Source of decommissioning method,

7.5.2.4 Step-by-step procedures used in the field,

7.5.2.5 Record of all measurements made, depths encountered, types and volume of fluids pumped and photographs before and after, and

7.5.2.6 All other pertinent information that is required based on site conditions or regulatory requirements. Any problems encountered should also be documented in detail.

8. Report

8.1 At the completion of field work, present a formal report to document the entire procedure used in the decommissioning process for the borehole or well. Additional information or requirements may be specified in government regulations and should also be included in this report. Report in detail the following items as a minimum:

8.1.1 *Background Information:*

8.1.1.1 Location of the borehole/well,

8.1.1.2 Purpose of the borehole/well,

8.1.1.3 History of the borehole/well,

8.1.1.4 Chemical parameters and concentrations present during the active life of the well and at the time of plugging; and

8.1.1.5 Information collected prior to the inspection record.

8.1.2 *Testing Prior to Decommissioning:*

8.1.2.1 Site characterization (if applicable),

8.1.2.2 Physical testing (depth, structural condition, etc.),

8.1.2.3 Chemical testing results (last chemical analysis for record), and

8.1.2.4 Geophysical logging results (if any).

8.1.3 *Decommissioning Design Procedure:*

8.1.3.1 Rationale for selection of method used, and

8.1.3.2 Presentation of a decommissioning plan.

8.1.4 *Field Implementation:*

8.1.4.1 Description of activities,

8.1.4.2 Variance from plan, and

8.1.4.3 Result of testing and measurements.

8.1.5 *Confirmation*—Statement of regulatory compliance.

9. Keywords

9.1 abandonment; decommissioning; ground water monitoring wells; hazardous waste; plugging

APPENDIX

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. EXAMPLES OF SUCCESSFUL MONITORING WELL DECOMMISSIONING PRACTICES

X1.1 This appendix covers a general discussion of field procedures that have been used to decommission monitoring wells. These procedures are presented to provide technical guidance to assist in the development of decommissioning wells or boreholes. Local regulations may not allow implementation of some procedures. Two subsets of procedures are outlined, one for rigid steel casing and the second for lower tensile strength casing materials (plastic).

X1.2 *Steel Casing:*

X1.2.1 *Condition*—Properly grouted steel casing and screen, difficult to pull casing:

X1.2.1.1 *Suggestion*—Pressure pump plugging materials into well to above aquifer, place 3-ft (.91-mm) plug of plastic material (bentonite plug) above rigid plug then complete with rigid plugging material to surface. Place a PVC or neoprene plug or packer, located at the base of the rigid (cement) material to reduce the co-mingling of fluids due to different specific gravities. Complete decommissioning at surface according to local regulations.

X1.2.1.2 *Alternative*—Perforate steel casing and screen to allow plugging material to come into contact with the annular space and formation.

X1.2.1.3 *Advantage*—If (when) casing material corrodes, the continually plastic bentonite plug will continue to provide a suitable sealing zone.

000455

X1.2.2 *Condition*—Steel well materials, that are removable:

X1.2.2.1 *Suggestion*—Pull screen and casing, then redrill borehole to original depth using slightly larger diameter drill bit than the borehole. Complete closure by pressure sealing the borehole by grout pipe from bottom to top.

X1.2.2.2 *Advantage*—Casing and annular materials are completely removed and replaced with sealing material of equal or lower permeability (saturated zone) than the native geologic materials.

X1.2.3 *Condition*—Shallow screened well completed into permeable sand or gravel aquifer:

X1.2.3.1 *Suggestion*—Pull the casing and screen (grout also, if possible) then redrill the borehole to original depth. Completion should be by pressure sealing to the surface.

X1.2.3.2 *Advantage*—The possibility of hydraulic connections with the surface is greatly reduced.

X1.2.4 *Condition*—Steel casing and screen set into highly permeable formation (such as fractured limestone) that results in lost fluid circulation during drilling or decommissioning procedures:

X1.2.4.1 *Suggestion*—Fill highly permeable section with quick setting cement grout (addition of calcium chloride), or coarse gravel to base of casing, or hang "cement basket" at base of casing. Complete decommissioning with plugging materials pumped into place, including at least one section of permanent plastic seal.

X1.2.4.2 *Advantage*—Extremely permeable or highly cavernous materials may not be able to be filled sufficiently to allow closure similar to other cases. In such situations, prevention of vertical migration of fluids to or from that zone is the primary purpose of decommissioning.

X1.3 *Low-Tensile Strength Materials (that is, PVC, ABS, PTFE):*

X1.3.1 *Condition*—Properly constructed well that has a sealed annulus from the surface to the top of screen:

X1.3.1.1 *Suggestions*—Pressure grout in place after perforating the entire casing so that the screen and gravel pack are filled with grout; or over-ream the well using a drill bit diameter that is a minimum or slightly larger than the diameter of the annular space.

X1.3.2 *Condition*—Annulus is not permanently sealed and casing/screen cannot be pulled:

X1.3.2.1 *Suggestion*—Overdrill casing, screen and filter pack with a hollow stemmed auger or other suitable drilling method. Remove casing from bottom to top as augers are removed.

X1.3.2.2 *Advantage*—Complete well structure is removed. Grouting materials provide no avenue of fluid or gas migration after decommissioning.

X1.3.3 *Condition*—Annulus seal questionable; casing screen cannot be pulled:

X1.3.3.1 *Suggestion*—Use rotary tools equipped with pilot bit. Large portion of bit must be equal to or larger than diameter of original borehole. Drill out casing, annular material, to depth of well. Pressure seal after tools are removed.

X1.3.3.2 *Advantage*—Complete well structure is removed. Grouting materials do not provide pathways for fluid or gas migration after decommissioning.

X1.3.4 *Condition*—Annulus seal questionable, casing and screen may be pulled from firm clay soils:

X1.3.4.1 *Suggestion*—Use pulling rig equipped with down hole casing latch tool. Anchor tool at bottom of well and lift casing and screen. Pressure grout open hole from bottom to top. (This method may have applicability for shallow wells.)

X1.3.4.2 *Advantage*—This method is often possible in firm clay soils. Requires less expensive equipment than other procedures.

X1.3.5 *Condition*—Vadose zone monitoring devices such as lysimeters, tensiometers, neutron access holes, and similar devices installed vertically:

X1.3.5.1 *Suggestion*—Drill out the device and backfill as suggested in 7.3.8.5 and 7.3.8.6. (See also Note 15 in the text.)

X1.3.5.2 *Advantage*—The device and materials used to construct the device are removed reducing the potential for fluid movement from the surface to underlying materials and ground water.

REFERENCES

(1) Gaber, M. S., and Fisher, B., *Michigan Water Well Grouting Manual*, Michigan Department of Public Health, Lansing, MI, 1988, pp. 83.

(2) Roscoe Moss Company, *Handbook of Ground Water Development, Chapter 12, Water Well Cementing*, John Wiley, New York, NY 1990, pp. 232–252.

(3) Dowell Division of Dow Chemical, U.S.A., *Engineer's Handbook*, Houston, 1983, p. 77.027.

(4) Williams, Camila, and Evans, L., "Guide to the Selection of Cement, Bentonite, and Other Additives for Use in Monitor Well Construction," *First National Outdoor Action Conference on Aquifer Restoration, Monitoring and Geophysical Methods*, NWWA, Las Vegas, NV, 1987, pp. 325–343.

(5) George, Charles, and Bruce, T., "Cementing to Achieve Zone Isolation in Disposal Wells," in *International Symposium Subsurface Inspection of Liquid Wastes*, NWWA, New Orleans, LA, March 3–6, 1986, pp. 77–89.

(6) Anonymous, "Special Cements and Their Uses," *Concrete Construction*, Vol 18, No. 1, January, 1973, pp. 3–7.

(7) Berry, E., and Malhortra, V., "Fly Ash for Use in Concrete—A Critical Review," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Vol 77, No. 2, 1980, pp. 57–73.

(8) Coleman, R. J., and Corrigan, G., "Fineness and Water-to-Cement Ratio in Relation to Volume and Permeability of Cement," *Petroleum Technology, Technical Publication No. 1266*, 1941, pp. 1–11.

(9) Dowell Schumberger, *Cementing Technology*, Nova Communications Ltd., New York, 1984.

(10) Creech, John, 1986, "Class I Injection Well Design Considerations Using Fiberglass Tubular and Epoxy Cement," *Proceedings of International Symposium Subsurface Injections of Liquid Wastes*, New Orleans, LA, March 3–5, 1986.

(11) Cole, Robert C., "Epoxy Sealant for Combating Well Corrosion," *International Symposium on Oilfield and Geothermal Chemistry*, SPE of AIME, Houston, 1979.

(12) Jeffries, S. A., "Bentonite-Cement Slurries for Hydraulic Cut-Offs," *Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering*, Tenth International Congress, Vol 1, Stockholm, 1981, pp. 435–440.

000456

(13) Herndon, Joe, and Smith, Dwight K., "Settling Downhole Plugs: A State-of-the-Art," *Petroleum Engineer International*, Vol 50, No. 4, April 1978, p. 56.
(14) Smith, D. K., Cementing, "Society of Petroleum Engineers Monograp Series," Vol 4, *Society of Petroleum Engineers of AIME*, 1976.
(15) U.S. EPA, "Construction Requirements for Wells Authorized b Rule," 40 CRF 147.2912b(1), (*Subpart GGG, Osage Miner Reserve, Class II Wells*), 1988.
(16) Portland Cement Association, *Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures*, Skokie, IL, 1979.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000457

Designation: D 5312 – 92

Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Freezing and Thawing Conditions[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 5312; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the procedures for evaluating the durability of rock for erosion control when exposed to freezing and thawing conditions.

1.2 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 4992 Practice for Evaluation of Rock to Be Used for Erosion Control[2]

D 5121 Practice for the Preparation of Rock Slabs for Durability Testing[2]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Rock used for erosion control may consist of several types, depending on potential use. One type may be armor stone weighing from one to three tons or breakwater stone weighing three to twenty tons placed along shorelines or in jetties to protect the shoreline from erosion due to the action of large waves. Another type may be riprap usually weighing less than one ton and placed along river banks or on the slopes of dams to prevent erosion due to run-off, wave action, or stream-flow. A third type may be gabion-fill weighing less than 50 lb and placed in baskets of wire or other suitable materials. These baskets are then tied together to form an integral structure designed to resist erosion along stream banks and around bridge piers. No matter what form it takes, rock for erosion control consists of individual pieces of natural stone. The ability of these individual pieces of stone to resist deterioration due to weathering action affects the stability of the integral placement of rock for erosion control and hence, the stability of construction projects, shorelines, and streambanks.

3.2 This test method is designed to determine the effects of freezing and thawing action on the individual pieces of rock for erosion control and the resistance of the rock to deterioration. This test method was developed to be used in conjunction with additional test methods listed in Practice D 4992. This test method does not provide an absolute value but rather an indication of the resistance to freezing and thawing; therefore, the results of this test method are not to be used as the sole basis for the determination of rock durability.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Circular Diamond Saw*, 14-in. diameter, capable of sawing rock, of the type required for Practice D 5121.

4.2 *Freeze-Thaw Chamber or Home Freezer:*

4.2.1 A timer-controlled freeze-thaw chamber specifically designed for timed cycling of 16 h of freezing at −18 ± 2.5°C (0 ± 5°F) followed by a minimum of 8 h of thawing at 32 ± 2.5°C (90 ± 5°F) on a daily basis is the most desirable option. This type of apparatus can be obtained commercially and allows for the completion of one freeze-thaw cycle every day including weekends and holidays.

4.2.2 If a freeze-thaw chamber is not available, a standard chest-type home freezer capable of reaching the minimum temperatures in accordance with 4.2.1 may be used. The limitations associated with this option are related to the fact that the freeze-thaw cycling must be accomplished manually. The freezing portion of the cycle will begin when the test specimens are manually placed in the freezer at the end of the workday. The test specimens must be removed at the beginning of the workday to begin the thawing portion of the cycle. In addition, only four cycles of freezing and thawing may be accomplished during a normal work week since the 16 h of freezing may be accomplished only on the first through the fourth nights of the workweek (the fifth night of the workweek would go into the weekend). Thawing will then take place from Friday morning to Monday evening. This thawing cycle will not require the use of an oven.

4.3 *Oven*, (if option 4.2.2 is used), capable of holding the test specimen and its container and of maintaining a constant temperature of 32 ± 2.5°C required for the three thawing cycles during the workweek.

4.4 *Oven*, capable of drying the specimen to a constant mass at a temperature of 110 ± 5°C.

4.5 *Containers*, to hold the specimens partially immersed in an alcohol/water solution, These containers may be stainless steel or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) and may be obtained from a restaurant supply company.

4.6 *Balance*, capable of determining the mass of the specimen to the nearest 0.1 % of the total mass.

4.7 *Camera*, capable of producing good quality, color photographs for "before" and "after" photographs.

4.8 *Stereomicroscope*, or other suitable magnifying device, capable of at least 20× magnification for examination of the specimen prior to and after testing.

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.17 on Rock for Erosion Control.

Current edition approved Oct. 15, 1992. Published December 1992.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000458

5. Special Solutions

5.1 The special solution required for this test method consists of a 0.5 % isopropyl alcohol/water solution. This solution may be mixed and stored ahead of time. It will be used to replenish the solution as the test proceeds. Commercially available isopropyl alcohol as opposed to reagent grade is suitable.

6. Sampling

6.1 The number and variety of samples from a source will be dependent on the geological complexity of that source and will be left to the judgment of the individual (familiar with test specimen selection) doing the sampling; however, in no case shall the sample consist of less than five pieces per lithologic (rock) unit. Each piece will be of a size such that testing may proceed without further mechanical crushing; however, the pieces chosen shall be as large as the testing laboratory can handle but in no case shall the specimen be less than 125 mm (5 in.) on a side. In all cases, the sample will be representative of the various rock types found at the source.

7. Preparation of Test Specimens

7.1 Saw each test specimen in accordance with Practice D 5121. Cut each specimen (64 ± 6 mm (2.5 ± 0.25 in.) thick) normal to bedding or any potential planes of weakness which may be observed in the samples. In no case will the size of the slab be less than 125 mm (5 in.) on a side, excluding the thickness. Prepare a separate test specimen for each orientation of the various planes of weakness unless all such planes can be intersected with one orientation. Include planes of weakness in each sample such that a determination may be made as to the durability of the various planes of weakness and their effect on the overall durability of a rock mass which would contain these planes of weakness.

NOTE 1—Test specimens may also be prepared by cutting a 64-mm (2.5-in.) thick slab from a 6-in. diameter diamond drill core such that any apparent zones of weakness are included.

NOTE 2—The best estimates of rock durability are those estimates that are based on the results of tests performed on the largest possible slabs of rock.

8. Procedure

8.1 Examine each slab both macroscopically and microscopically using a minimum of 20× magnification. Note the presence of bedding planes, microfractures, and other planes of weakness and their condition. Describe each slab in accordance with Practice D 5121.

8.2 Label each test specimen with a suitable marker. Photograph each test specimen using color film and in such a way that the test specimen covers most of the photograph (wet or partially wet test specimens usually show more detail). Include a scale in all photographs.

8.3 Dry each slab in an oven to a constant mass (±0.1 % of total mass) at 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F) and record. The time interval between weighings shall be a minimum of 4 h.

8.4 Place each test specimen, sawed side down, in a container on a piece of scrap carpeting (synthetic fiber preferred). Add enough of the alcohol/water solution to the container such that the solution covers the test specimen and let stand for a minimum of 12 h.

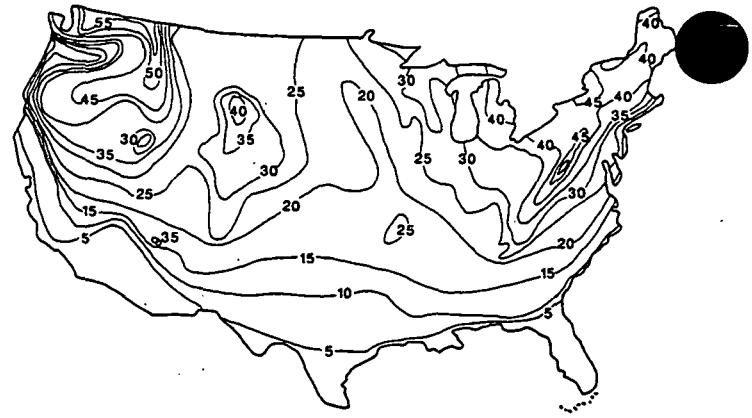


FIG. 1 Isoline Map of the Freeze-Thaw Severity Index

8.5 Decant enough liquid such that the scrap carpeting is just immersed.

8.6 Place the container and test specimen in the freeze-thaw chamber or freezer and subject the specimen to a freezing temperature of −18°C (0°F) for a minimum of 12 h (there is no upper limit for storage during freezing). Upon completing the required time for freezing, subject the container and specimen to complete thawing at a temperature of 32°C (90°F) for a minimum of 8 h but no more than 12 h. The required thawing may be accomplished either in the freeze-thaw chamber or in an oven; however, the test specimen must be left in its container during the entire thawing process. Replenish the alcohol/water solution to maintain coverage of the scrap carpeting.

8.7 Repeat the process of freezing and thawing for a total number of cycles equivalent to the index number rounded to the nearest five cycles of the geographic area of intended use as determined by Fig. 1.[3]

NOTE 3—Figure 1 is an index map based on National Oceanic and Atmospheric Agency (NOAA) climatic data and was developed to determine the geographic distribution of the severity of freeze-thaw cycles. The figure not only takes into account the annual number of freeze-thaw cycles, but also the amount of moisture associated with each cycle and the temperature extremes of the freeze-thaw cycle. The index number, therefore, is not a prediction of the annual number of freeze-thaw cycles, but rather, is an indicator of the severity of the freeze-thaw process by geographic area. Since the freeze-thaw severity varies from one geographic location to another, it is not possible to provide a reliable indication of the serviceability of rock for erosion control for a given locality unless the test procedure is customized for that locality. The freeze-thaw severity index allows for this type of customization.

8.8 Examine the test specimen every few days for any changes in the test specimen's condition and photograph as needed.

9. Calculation

9.1 *Quantitative Examination*—For each slab perform the following calculation:

$$\% \text{ loss} = (A - B)/A \times 100$$

[3] Lienhart, D. A., "The Geographic Distribution of Intensity and Frequency of Freeze-Thaw Cycles," *Bulletin of the Association of Engineering Geologists*, Vol XXV, No. 4, 1988, pp. 465–471.

000459

where:

A = oven-dried mass of the specimen prior to testing, and

B = oven-dried mass of the largest remaining piece of each slab after testing.

10. Qualitative Examination

10.1 Every five cycles, visually examine the slab for any changes that have taken placed over the duration of the test and describe the changes. Identify the type of deterioration (spalling, splitting, disintegration, and other types of deterioration). Note and describe any changes to previously noted planes of weakness.

10.2 Take color photographs of each slab at the completion of testing. Provide close-ups of any unusual features. Include a scale with all photographs.

11. Report

11.1 Report the following information:

11.1.1 Identification number,

11.1.2 Sample source location,

11.1.3 Location of intended use,

11.1.4 Rock type,

11.1.5 The results of the quantitative examination required in 9.1 and reported to the nearest 0.1 %,

11.1.6 A written description of the qualitative examination and the findings of this exam, and

11.1.7 "Before" and "after" color photographs.

11.2 The following items are optional for the report:

11.2.1 Geological formation name, and

11.2.2 Geological setting of the source with pertinent information on planes of weakness noted in the field.

12. Precision and Bias

12.1 *Precision*—Due to the nature of the rock materials tested by this test method, it is, at this time, either not feasible or too costly to produce multiple test specimens that have uniform physical properties. Since test specimens that would yield the same test results cannot be tested, Subcommittee D18.17 cannot determine the variation between tests since any variation observed is just as likely to be due to test specimen variation as to operator or laboratory testing variation. Subcommittee D18.17 welcomes proposals to resolve this problem that would allow for the development of a valid precision statement.

12.2 *Bias*—There is no accepted reference value for this test method; therefore, bias cannot be determined.

13. Keywords

13.1 armor stone; breakwater stone; climatic setting; erosion control; freeze-thaw; gabion-fill; laboratory testing; riprap; rock; rock material properties.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000460

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Designation: D 5313 – 92

Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Durability of Rock for Erosion Control Under Wetting and Drying Conditions[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 5313; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers procedures for evaluating the durability of rock for erosion control when exposed to wetting and drying conditions.

1.2 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard.

1.3 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 4992 Practice for Evaluation of Rock to be Used for Erosion Control[2]

D 5121 Practice for the Preparation of Rock Slabs for Durability Testing[2]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 Rock used for erosion control may consist of several types, depending on potential use. One type may be armor stone weighing from one to three tons or breakwater stone weighing three to twenty tons placed along shorelines or in jetties to protect the shoreline from erosion due to the action of large waves. Another type may be riprap usually weighing less than a ton and placed along river banks or on the slopes of dams to prevent erosion due to run-off, wave action or stream-flow. A third type may be gabion-fill weighing less than fifty pounds and placed in baskets of wire or other suitable material. These baskets are then tied together to form an integral structure designed to resist erosion along stream banks and around bridge piers. No matter what form it takes, rock for erosion control consists of individual pieces of natural stone. The ability of these individual pieces of stone to resist deterioration due to weathering action affects the stability of the integral placement of rock for erosion control and hence, the stability of construction projects, shorelines, and streambanks.

3.2 This test method is designed to determine the effects on the individual pieces of rock for erosion control of wetting and drying action and the resistance of the rock to deterioration. This test method was developed to be used in conjunction with additional test methods listed in Practice D 4992. This test method does not provide an absolute value but rather an indication of the resistance to wetting and drying; therefore, the results of this test method are not to be used as the sole basis for the determination of rock durability.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Diameter Circular Diamond Saw*, 14 in. (355.60 mm) capable of sawing rock, of the type required for Practice D 5121.

4.2 *Containers*, to hold the specimens fully immersed in potable water. These containers must be non-reactive and unbreakable.

4.3 *Oven*, capable of drying the specimen to a constant mass at a temperature of 110 ± 5°C.

4.4 *Drying Apparatus*, such as infra-red heat lamps (150 W) or oven set at 65 ± 5°C.

4.5 *Stereomicroscope*, or other suitable magnifying device capable of at least 20× magnification will be required for examination of the specimen prior to and after testing.

4.6 *Balance*, capable of determining the mass of the specimen to the nearest 0.1 % of the total mass will be required.

4.7 *Camera*, capable of producing good quality, color photographs will be required for "before" and "after" photographs.

5. Sampling, Test Specimens, and Test Units

5.1 The number and variety of samples from a source will be dependent on the geological complexity of that source and will be left to the judgment of the individual doing the sampling; however, in no case shall the number of samples be less than five per lithologic (rock) unit. Each piece will be of a size such that testing may proceed without further mechanical crushing; however, the pieces chosen shall be as large as the testing laboratory can handle but in no case shall the specimen be less than 125 mm (5 in.) on a side. In all cases, the sample will be representative of the various rock types found at the source.

6. Preparation of Test Specimens

6.1 Saw each specimen in accordance with Practice D 5121. Each specimen will be 64 ± 6 mm (2.5 ± 0.25 in.) thick and cut normal to bedding or any potential planes of weakness that may be observed in the samples. In no case will the size of the slab be less than 125 mm (5 in.) on a side, excluding the thickness. Prepare a separate specimen for each orientation of the various planes of weakness unless all such planes can be intersected with one orientation. Planes of weakness will be included in each sample such that a

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.17 on Rock for Erosion Control.

Current edition approved Nov. 15, 1992. Published January 1993.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

000462

determination may be made as to the durability of the various planes of weakness and their effect on the overall durability of a rock mass that would contain these planes of weakness.

NOTE 1—Test specimens may also be prepared by cutting a 64 mm (2.5 in.) thick slab from a 6-in. (152.40 mm) diameter diamond drill core such that any apparent zones of weakness are included.

NOTE 2—The best estimates of rock durability are the result of tests performed on the largest possible slabs of rock.

7. Procedure

7.1 Examine each slab macroscopically and under a minimum of 20× magnification. Note the presence of bedding planes, microfractures, and other planes of weakness and their condition. Describe each slab as indicated in Practice D 5121.

7.2 Label each specimen with a suitable marker. Photograph each test specimen using color film and in such a way that the specimen covers most of the photograph (wet or partially wet specimens usually show more detail). A scale will be included in all photographs.

7.3 Dry each slab in an oven to a constant mass (± 0.1 % of the total mass) at 110 ± 5°C (230 ± 9°F) and record.

7.4 Place each specimen (sawed surface down) in a container on a thin layer (6 mm (¼ in.)) of plus No. 8 size sand. Add enough potable water to the container such that the specimen is fully immersed and let stand for a minimum of 12 h.

7.5 Decant the water and place the container under an infrared heat lamp such that the rock surface is between 40 and 50 cm (16 to 20 in.) from the lamp. As an alternative, the sample may be dried in an oven at a temperature of 60 to 70°C (140 to 160°F). Thoroughly dry the specimen for a minimum of 6 h. At the end of the workday once again fill the container with potable water and allow the specimen to soak overnight.

7.6 Repeat the process of setting and drying for a total of 80 cycles.

7.7 Examine the specimen every few days for any changes in the specimen's condition and photograph as needed.

8. Quantitative Examination

8.1 For each slab perform the following calculation:

$$percent\ loss = (A - B)/A \times 100$$

where:

A = oven dried mass of the specimen prior to testing, and

B = oven dried mass of the largest remaining piece of each slab after testing.

9. Qualitative Examination

9.1 Visually examine the slab every six cycles for any changes that have taken place over the duration of the test and describe the changes. Identify the type of deterioration (spalling, splitting, disintegration, slaking, and other types of deterioration). Note and describe any changes to previously noted planes of weakness.

9.2 Take color photographs of each slab at the completion of testing. Provide close-ups of any unusual features. Include a scale for all photographs.

10. Report

10.1 Report in writing the following information:

10.1.1 Identification number,

10.1.2 Sample source location,

10.1.3 Location of intended use,

10.1.4 Rock type.

10.1.5 The results of the quantitative examination required in 8.1, and reported to the nearest 0.1 percent,

10.1.6 A written description of the qualitative examination and the findings of this exam, and

10.1.7 "Before" and "After" color photographs.

10.2 The following items are optional for the report:

10.2.1 Geological formation name, and

10.2.2 Geological setting of the source with pertinent information on planes of weakness noted in the field.

11. Precision and Bias

11.1 *Precision*—Due to the nature of the rock material tested by this test method, it is, at this time, either not feasible or too costly to produce multiple specimens that have uniform physical properties. Since specimens that would yield the same test results cannot be tested, Subcommittee D18.17 cannot determine the variation between tests since any variation observed is just as likely to be due to specimen variation as to operator or laboratory testing variation. Subcommittee D18.17 welcomes proposals to resolve this problem that would allow for the development of a valid precision statement.

11.2 *Bias*—There is no accepted reference value for this test method; therefore, bias cannot be determined.

12. Keywords

12.1 armor stone; breakwater stone; climatic setting; erosion control; gabion-fill; laboratory testing; riprap; rock; rock material properties; wetting-drying

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

000463

APPENDIX J

OEPA APPROVED POLICY FOR MANAGEMENT OF AQUEOUS INVESTIGATION DERIVED WASTE

Post-it™ brand fax transmittal memo 7671 | # of pages ▸ 2

To Terry Hagen	From Tom Schneider
Co. FERMCO	Co. OEPA-OFFO
Dept.	Phone #
Fax # (513) 738-6236	Fax #

OhioEPA
State of Ohio Environmental Protection Agency
thwest District Office
East Fifth Street
Dayton, Ohio 45402-2911
(513) 285-6357
FAX (513) 285-6249

George V. Voinovich
Governor

March 31, 1995

RE: DOE FEMP
MSL #531-0297
HAMILTON COUNTY
AQUEOUS IDW POLICY-
APPROVAL

Mr. Jack Craig
Director
U.S. DOE FEMP
P.O. Box 398705
Cincinnati, OH 45329-8705

Dear Mr. Craig:

This letter provides Ohio EPA's approval of DOE's "Request for Approval of Policy for Management of Aqueous Investigation Derived Waste" submitted to Ohio EPA on March 24, 1995.

If you should have any questions, please contact me.

Sincerely,

Thomas A. Schneider
Fernald Project Manager
Office of Federal Facilities Oversight

cc: Jim Saric U.S. EPA
Terry Hagen, FERMCO
Ruth Vandegrift, ODH
Manager TPSSU, DERR/CO
Jean Michaels, PRC
Paul Pardi, DHWM/SWDO
Lisa August, GeoTrans

000465

Printed on recycled paper

Department of Energy
Fernald Environmental Management Project
P. O. Box 538705
Cincinnati, Ohio 45253-8705
(513) 648-3155

344

MAR 2 3 1995

DOE-0711-95

Mr. James A. Saric, Remedial Project Manager
U. S. Environmental Protection Agency
Region V-5HRE-8J
77 W. Jackson Blvd
Chicago, Illinois 60604-3590

Mr. Tom Schneider, Project Manager
Southwest District Office
Ohio Environmental Protection Agency
401 East Fifth Street
Dayton, Ohio 45402-2086

Dear Mr. Saric and Mr. Schneider:

REQUEST FOR APPROVAL OF POLICY FOR MANAGEMENT OF AQUEOUS INVESTIGATION DERIVED WASTE

This letter requests your formal approval of the Fernald Environmental Management Project (FEMP) policy for management of aqueous Investigation Derived Waste (IDW). IDW to be managed under this policy includes purge water and development water from FEMP groundwater monitoring wells, as well as, wastewater generated by decontaminating sampling equipment. The inventory of backlog aqueous IDW currently in storage at the FEMP is also included. Unused sample fractions, extracts and other residues from laboratory analyses will be managed under a separate policy currently being developed; these materials are not addressed in this proposed policy.

The aqueous IDW policy previously presented for your review has been modified to take into account the treatment provided by the Advanced Wastewater Treatment (AWWT) facility, which began operation January 27, 1995. This modified proposal is based upon the fact that all IDW, regardless of its source, will be treated through the AWWT facility. The AWWT facility currently treats all FEMP stormwater and process wastewater, along with a portion of the South Plume groundwater. As illustrated in the attached schematic, the AWWT includes carbon filters upstream of the ion exchange beds. The carbon filters were included in the design to protect the ion exchange resin from possible damage caused by incidental Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) contamination. These carbon filters accomplish the same level of VOC removal provided by the Granular Activated Carbon (GAC) filters in the Plant 8 VOC system.

Recycled and Recyclable

Since all process wastewater and stormwater is now subjected to adequate VOC treatment, pretreatment based upon a threshold level of VOC contamination is no longer necessary, except for instances where VOC contamination is known to originate from listed waste. The Fire Training Facility and the Sewage Treatment Plant Sludge Drying Beds are potential sources of known listed hazardous constituents. Since these units are isolated from other potential sources of VOC contamination, VOCs encountered in perched water beneath these two units will be considered to potentially originate from listed waste. IDW from the vicinity of these two units which exhibits detectable levels of a "listed" VOC will be treated through the Plant 8 GAC system to remove the listed RCRA constituent to below the analytical detection limit before being sent to the AWWT via the General Sump.

All other aqueous IDW will be discharged to the wastewater treatment system at the location that most efficiently provides direct access to AWWT treatment. Purge water and well development water from wells in Operable Unit 2 (OU2) and Operable Unit 5 (OU5) will be collected in a truck-mounted tank, transported to the Stormwater Retention Basin (SWRB), and discharged directly to whichever of the two basins is being pumped to the AWWT at that time. Discharging purge water from these two areas to the SWRB avoids the need to transport the material through the production area and, as illustrated in the attached flow diagram, provides direct access to the AWWT. All other IDW streams will be discharged to the General Sump for subsequent treatment at the AWWT.

If you have any questions or comments, please contact Pete Yerace at (513)648-3161 or John Sattler at (513)648-3145.

Sincerely,

for Jack R. Craig
Fernald Remedial Action
Project Manager

FN:Yerace

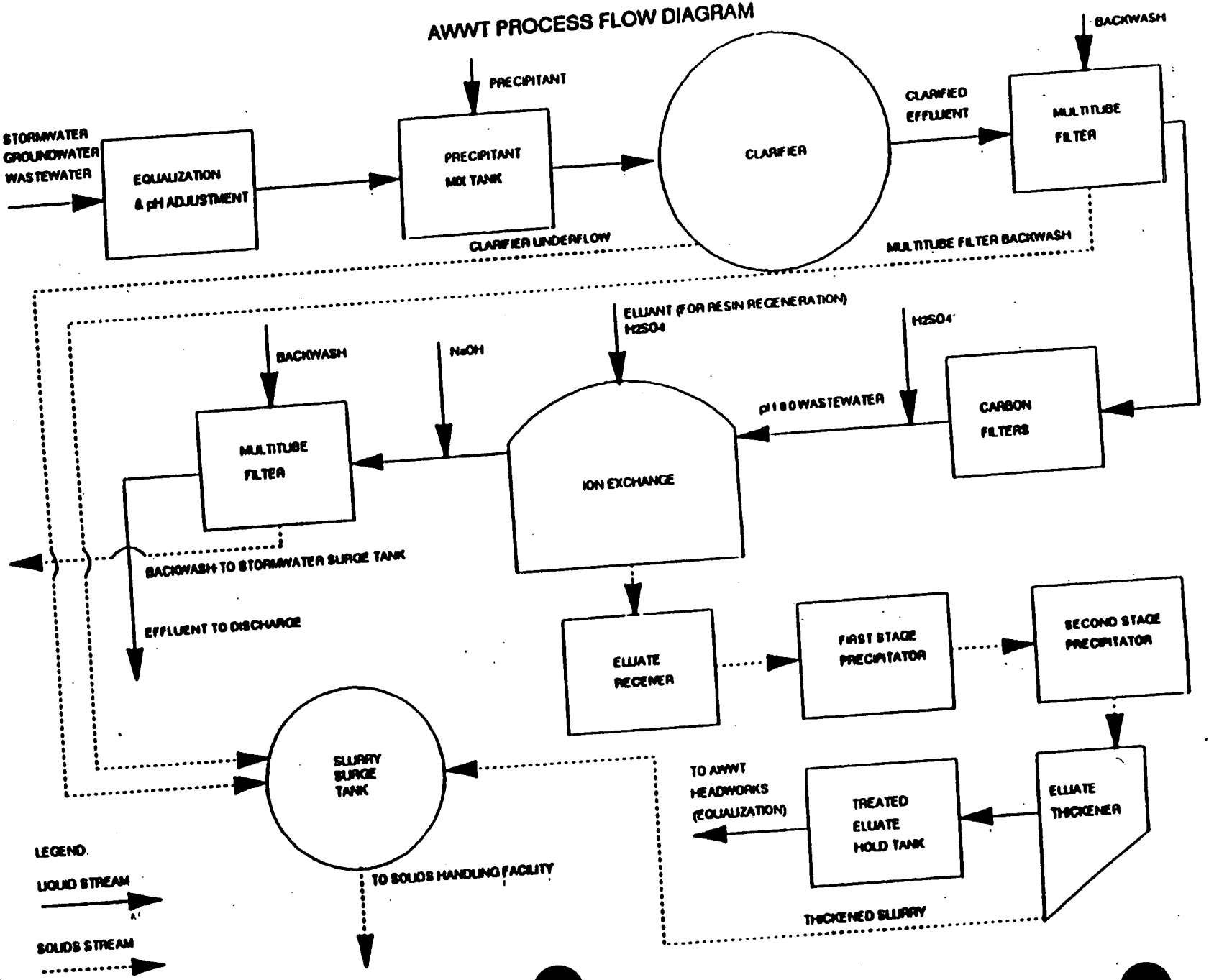
REGULATORY PROGRAMS
REGULATORY TECHNIC
SUPPORT DEPA

R 23 10 37 AM '95

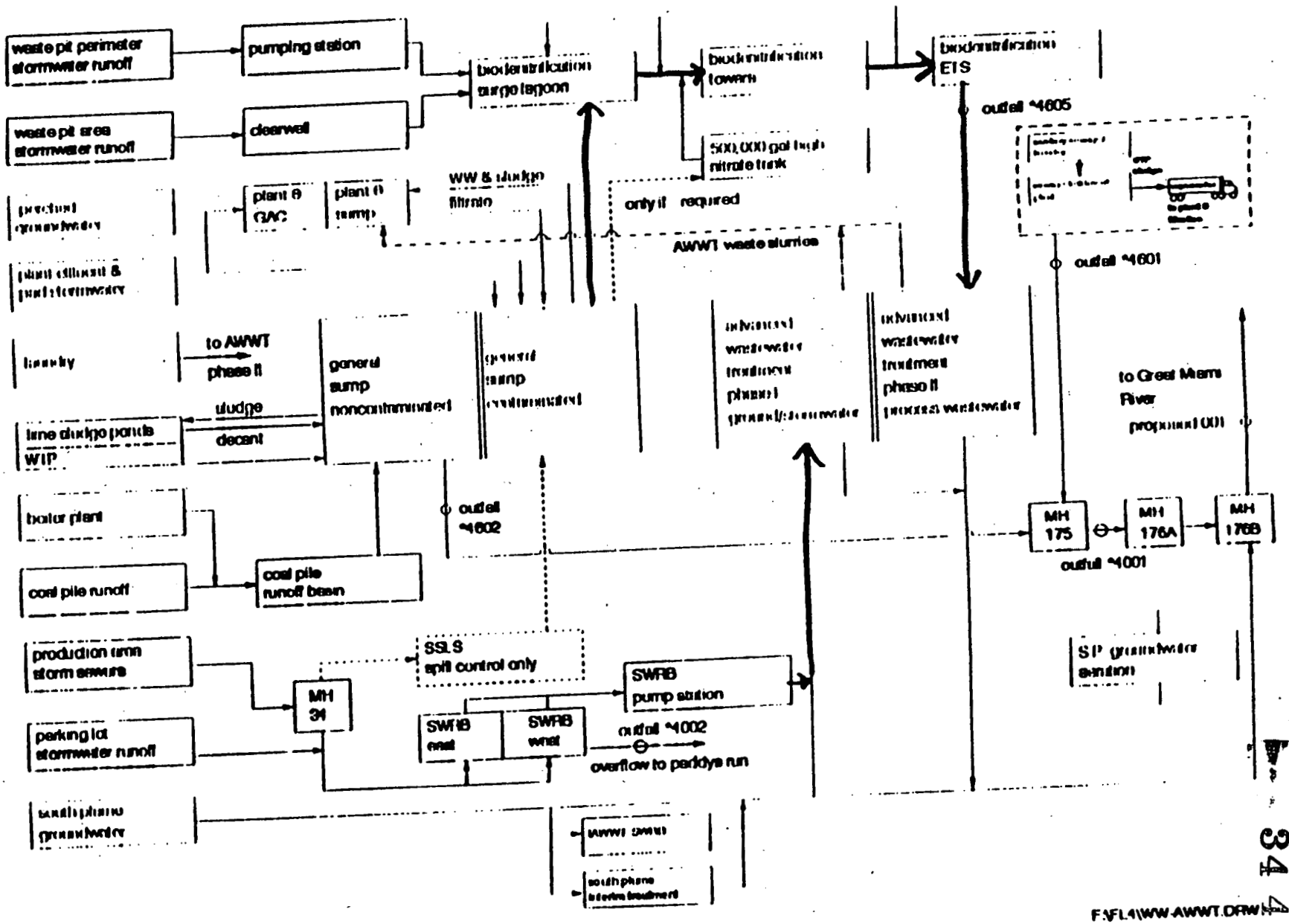
cc:

K. H. Chaney, EM-423/QO
D. R. Kozlowski, EM-423/QO
G. Jablonowski, USEPA-V, HRE-8J
J. Kwasniewski, OEPA-Columbus
P. Harris, OEPA-Dayton
G. E. Mitchell, OEPA-SWDO
P. E. Pardi, OEPA-SWDO
M. Proffitt, OEPA-Dayton
S. McClellan, PRC
R. Cohen, GeoTrans
F. Bell, ATSDR
R. Owen, ODOH
K. A. Nickel, DOE-FN
S. M. Beckman, FERMCO/MS65-2
T. Hagen, FERMCO/65-2
E. M. Dupuis-Nouille, FERMCO/MS52-5
R. D. George, FERMCO/52-2
J. Thiesing, FERMCO
M. Yates, FERMCO/9
AR Coordinator, FERMCO

AWWT PROCESS FLOW DIAGRAM



WASTEWATER FLOW DIAGRAM - AWWT OPERATIONAL



F:\FL4\WW-AWWT.DRW

025000

APPENDIX K

MATERIAL TESTING METHODS

SULFATE (TURBIDIMETRIC)

1.0 SCOPE AND APPLICATION

1.1 This method is applicable to ground water, drinking and surface waters, and domestic and industrial wastes.

1.2 This method is suitable for all concentration ranges of sulfate (SO_4^{-2}); however, in order to obtain reliable readings, use a sample aliquot containing not more than 40 mg/L of SO_4^{-2}.

1.3 The minimum detectable limit is approximately 1 mg/L of SO_4^{-2}.

2.0 SUMMARY OF METHOD

2.1 Sulfate ion is converted to a barium sulfate suspension under controlled conditions. The resulting turbidity is determined by a nephelometer, filter photometer, or spectrophotometer and compared with a curve prepared from standard sulfate solution.

3.0 INTERFERENCES

3.1 Color and turbidity due to the sample matrix can cause positive interferences which must be accounted for by use of blanks.

3.2 Silica in concentrations over 500 mg/L will interfere.

4.0 APPARATUS AND MATERIALS

4.1 Magnetic stirrer: Variable speed so that it can be held constant just below splashing. Use identical shapes and sizes of magnetic stirring bars.

4.2 Photometer (one of the following, given in order of preference):

4.2.1 Nephelometer.

4.2.2 Spectrophotometer: For use at 420 nm with light path of 4 to 5 cm.

4.2.3 Filter photometer: With a violet filter having a maximum near 420 nm and a light path of 4 to 5 cm.

4.3 Stopwatch: If the magnetic stirrer is not equipped with an accurate timer.

4.4 Measuring spoon: Capacity 0.2 to 0.3 mL.

5.0 REAGENTS

5.1 ASTM Type II water (ASTM D1193): Water should be monitored for impurities.

5.2 Conditioning reagent: Slowly add 30 mL concentrated HCl to 300 mL Type II water, 100 mL 95% ethanol or isopropanol, and 75 g NaCl in solution in a container. Add 50 mL glycerol and mix.b

5.3 Barium chloride ($BaCl_2$): Crystals, 20 to 30 mesh.

5.4 Sodium carbonate solution: (approximately 0.05 N): Dry 3 to 5 g primary standard Na_2CO_3 at 250°C for 4 hr and cool in a desiccator. Weigh 2.5 ± 0.2 g (to the nearest mg), transfer to a 1-liter volumetric flask, and fill to the mark with Type II water.

5.5 Proprietary reagents: Such as Hach Sulfaver or equivalent, are acceptable.

5.6 Standard sulfate solution (1.00 mL = 100 ug SO_4^{-2}): Prepare by Paragraph 5.6.1 or 5.6.2.

5.6.1 Standard sulfate solution from H_2SO_4:

5.6.1.1 Standard sulfuric acid, 0.1 N: Dilute 3.0 mL concentrated H_2SO_4 to 1 liter with Type II water. Standardize against 40.0 mL of 0.05 N Na_2CO_3 solution (Paragraph 5.4) with about 60 mL Type II water by titrating potentiometrically to a pH of about 5. Lift electrodes and rinse into beaker. Boil gently for 3 to 5 min under a watch glass cover. Cool to room temperature. Rinse cover glass into beaker. Continue titration to the pH inflection point. Calculate the normality of H_2SO_4 using:

$$N = \frac{A \times B}{53.00 \times C}$$

where:

A = g Na_2CO_3 weighed into 1 liter flask (Paragraph 5.4);

B = mL Na_2CO_3 solution used in the standardization;

C = mL acid used in titration;

5.6.1.2 Standard acid, 0.02 N: Dilute appropriate amount of standard acid, 0.1 N (Paragraph 5.6.1.1) to 1 liter (use 200.00 mL standard acid if normality is 0.1000 N). Check by standardization against 15 mL of 0.05 N Na_2CO_3 solution (Paragraph 5.4).

5.6.1.3 Place 10 mL standard sulfuric acid, 0.02 N (Paragraph 5.6.1.2) in a 100-mL volumetric flask and dilute to the mark.

5.6.2 Standard sulfate solution from Na_2SO_4: Dissolve 147.9 mg anhydrous Na_2SO_4 in Type II water in a 1-liter volumetric flask and dilute to the mark with Type II water.

6.0 SAMPLE COLLECTION, PRESERVATION, AND HANDLING

6.1 All samples must have been collected using a sampling plan that addresses the considerations discussed in Chapter Nine of this manual.

6.2 Preserve by refrigerating at 4°C.

7.0 PROCEDURE

7.1 Formation of barium sulfate turbidity:

7.1.1 Place a 100-mL sample, or a suitable portion diluted to 100 mL, into a 250-mL Erlenmeyer flask.

7.1.2 Add exactly 5.0 mL conditioning reagent (Paragraph 5.2).

7.1.3 Mix in the stirring apparatus.

7.1.4 While the solution is being stirred, add a measured spoonful of $BaCl_2$ crystals (Paragraph 5.3) and begin timing immediately.

7.1.5 Stir exactly 1.0 min at constant speed.

7.2 Measurement of barium sulfate turbidity:

7.2.1 Immediately after the stirring period has ended, pour solution into absorbance cell.

7.2.2 Measure turbidity at 30-sec intervals for 4 min.

7.2.3 Record the maximum reading obtained in the 4-min period.

7.3 Preparation of calibration curve:

7.3.1 Prepare calibration curve using standard sulfate solution (Paragraph 5.6).

7.3.2 Space standards at 5-mg/L increments in the 0-40 mg/L sulfate range.

7.3.3 Above 50 mg/L the accuracy decreases and the suspensions lose stability.

7.3.4 Check reliability of calibration curve by running a standard with every three or four samples.

7.4 Correction for sample color and turbidity:

7.4.1 Run a sample blank using steps 7.1 and 7.2, without the addition of barium chloride (Paragraph 7.1.4).

7.5 Calculation:

7.5.1 Read mg SO_4^{-2} from linear calibration curve:

$$\text{mg } SO_4^{-2}/L = \frac{\text{mg } SO_4^{-2} \times 1{,}000}{\text{mL sample}}$$

8.0 QUALITY CONTROL

8.1 All quality control data should be maintained and available for easy reference or inspection.

8.2 Calibration curves must be composed of a minimum of a blank and three standards. A calibration curve should be made for every hour of continuous sample analysis.

8.3 Dilute samples if they are more concentrated than the highest standard or if they fall on the plateau of a calibration curve.

8.4 Employ a minimum of one blank per sample batch to determine if contamination has occurred.

8.5 Verify calibration with an independently prepared check standard every 15 samples.

8.6 Run one spike duplicate sample for every 10 samples. A spike duplicate sample is a sample brought through the whole sample preparation and analytical process.

9.0 METHOD PERFORMANCE

9.1 Thirty-four analysts in 16 laboratories analyzed six synthetic water samples containing exact increments of inorganic sulfate with the following results:

Increment as Sulfate (mg/L)	Precision as Standard Deviation (mg/L)	Accuracy as Bias (%)	Accuracy as Bias (mg/L)
8.6	2.30	-3.72	-0.3
9.2	1.78	-8.26	-0.8
110	7.86	-3.01	-3.3
122	7.50	-3.37	-4.1
188	9.58	+0.04	+0.1
199	11.8	-1.70	-3.4

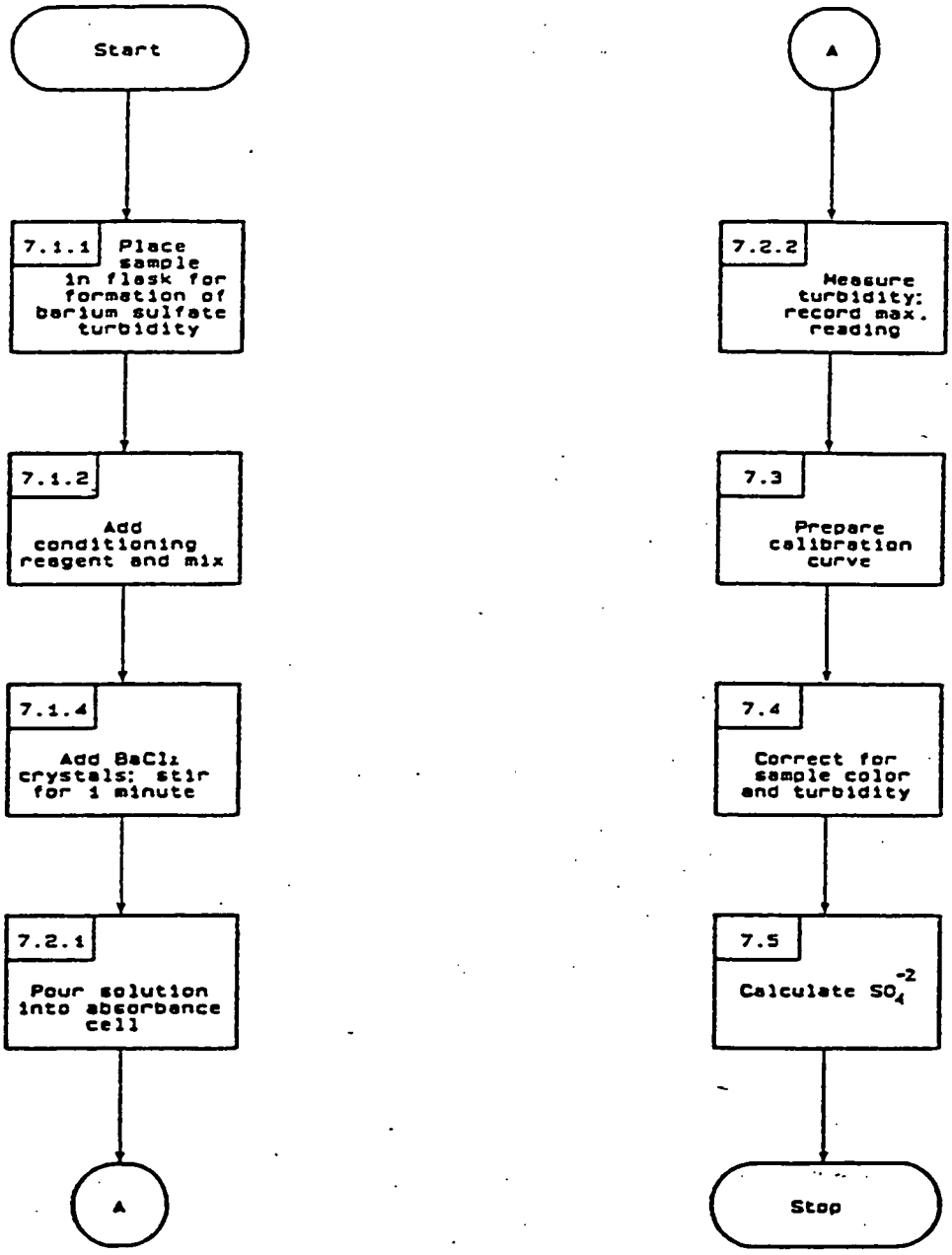
(Data from: FWPCA Method Study 1, Mineral and Physical Analyses.)

9.2 A synthetic unknown sample containing 259 mg/L sulfate, 108 mg/L Ca, 82 mg/L Mg, 3.1 mg/L K, 19.9 mg/L Na, 241 mg/L chloride, 0.250 mg/L nitrite N, 1.1 mg/L nitrate N, and 42.5 mg/L total alkalinity (contributed by $NaHCO_3$), was analyzed in 19 laboratories by the turbidimetric method, with a relative standard deviation of 9.1% and a relative error of 1.2%.

10.0 REFERENCES

1. Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Part 31, "Water," Standard D516-68, Method B, p. 430 (1976).

2. Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, 14th ed., p. 496, Method 427C, (1975).


Start
7.1.1 Place sample in flask for formation of barium sulfate turbidity
7.1.2 Add conditioning reagent and mix
7.1.4 Add BaCl2 crystals; stir for 1 minute
7.2.1 Pour solution into absorbance cell
A
A
7.2.2 Measure turbidity; record max. reading
7.3 Prepare calibration curve
7.4 Correct for sample color and turbidity
7.5 Calculate SO_4^{-2}
Stop

000477

CHLORIDE (COLORIMETRIC, AUTOMATED FERRICYANIDE AAII)

1.0 SCOPE AND APPLICATION

1.1 This automated method is applicable to ground water, drinking, surface, and saline waters, and domestic and industrial wastes. The applicable range is 1-200 mg Cl^- per liter of sample.

2.0 SUMMARY OF METHOD

2.1 Thiocyanate ion (SCN) is liberated from mercuric thiocyanate through sequestration of mercury by chloride ion to form un-ionized mercuric chloride. In the presence of ferric ion, the liberated SCN forms highly colored ferric thiocyanate in a concentration proportional to the original chloride concentration.

3.0 INTERFERENCES

3.1 No significant interferences.

4.0 APPARATUS AND MATERIALS

4.1 Automated continuous-flow analytical instrument:

4.1.1 Sampler I.

4.1.2 Analytical cartridge.

4.1.3 Proportioning pump.

4.1.4 Colorimeter: Equipped with 15-mm tubular flowcell and 480-nm filters.

4.1.5 Recorder.

4.1.6 Digital printer (optional).

5.0 REAGENTS

5.1 ASTM Type II water (ASTM D1193): Water should be monitored for impurities.

5.2 Mercuric thiocyanate solution: Dissolve 4.17 g of $Hg(SCN)_2$ in 500 mL methanol. Dilute to 1 liter with methanol, mix, and filter through filter paper.

5.3 Ferric nitrate solution, 20.2%: Dissolve 202 g of $Fe(NO_3)_3 \cdot 9H_2O$ in 500 mL of Type II water. Add 31.5 mL concentrated nitric acid, mix, and dilute to 1 liter with Type II water.

5.4 Color reagent: Add 150 mL of mercuric thiocyanate solution (Paragraph 5.2) to 150 mL of ferric nitrate solution (Paragraph 5.3), mix, and dilute to 1 liter with Type II water. A combined color reagent is commercially available.

5.5 Sodium chloride stock solution (0.0141 N NaCl): Dissolve 0.8241 g of pre-dried (140°C) NaCl in Type II water. Dilute to 1 liter in a volumetric flask (1 mL = 0.5 mg Cl^-).

5.5.1 Prepare a series of standards by diluting suitable volumes of stock solution to 100.0 mL with Type II water. The following dilutions are suggested:

Stock Solution (mL)	Concentration (mg/L)
1.0	5.0
2.0	10.0
4.0	20.0
8.0	40.0
15.0	75.0
20.0	100.0
30.0	150.0
40.0	200.0

Choose three of the nine standard concentrations in such a way that the chosen standards will bracket the expected concentration range of the sample.

6.0 SAMPLE COLLECTION, PRESERVATION, AND HANDLING

6.1 All samples must have been collected using a sampling plan that addresses the considerations discussed in Chapter Nine of this manual.

6.2 No special requirements for preservation.

7.0 PROCEDURE

7.1 When particulate matter is present, the sample must be filtered prior to the determination. The sample may be centrifuged in place of filtration. Set up the manifold, as shown in Figure 1.

000479

JUL-20-95 THU 10:34 PARSONS COMPANY FAX NO. 5138700444 P. 03/06

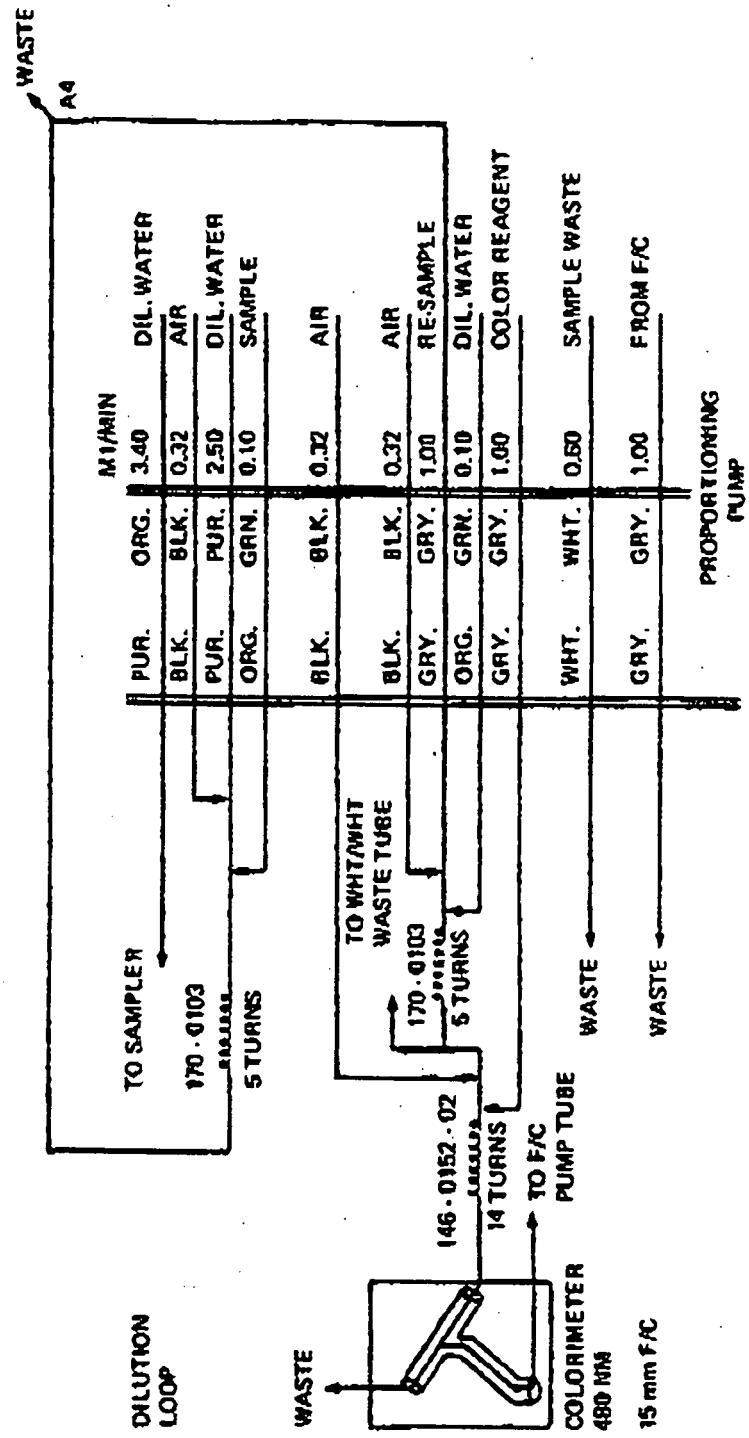


Figure 1. Chloride Manifold AA II 0-200 mg C1/L.

Revision 0
Date September 1986

000480

JUL-20-95 THU 10:34 PARSONS COMPANY FAX NO. 5138700444 P. 04/06

7.2 Allow both colorimeter and recorder to warm up for 30 min. Run a baseline with all reagents, feeding Type II water through the sample line.

7.3 Place working standards in sampler in order of decreasing concentrations. Complete filling of sampler tray with unknown samples.

7.4 When a stable baseline has been obtained, start the sampler.

7.5 Calculation: Prepare standard curve by plotting peak heights of processed standards against known concentrations. Compute concentration of samples by comparing sample peak heights with standard curve. Note that this is not a linear curve, but a second order curve. (See Paragraph 8.2.)

8.0 QUALITY CONTROL

8.1 All quality control data should be maintained and available for easy reference or inspection.

8.2 Calibration curves must be composed of a minimum of a blank and three standards. Employ a minimum of one blank per sample batch to determine if contamination has occurred.

8.3 Dilute samples if they are more concentrated than the highest standard or if they fall on the plateau of a calibration curve.

8.4 Verify calibration with an independently prepared check standard every 15 samples.

8.5 Run one spike duplicate sample for every 10 samples. A duplicate sample is a sample brought through the whole sample preparation an analytical process.

9.0 METHOD PERFORMANCE

9.1 Precision and accuracy data are not available at this time.

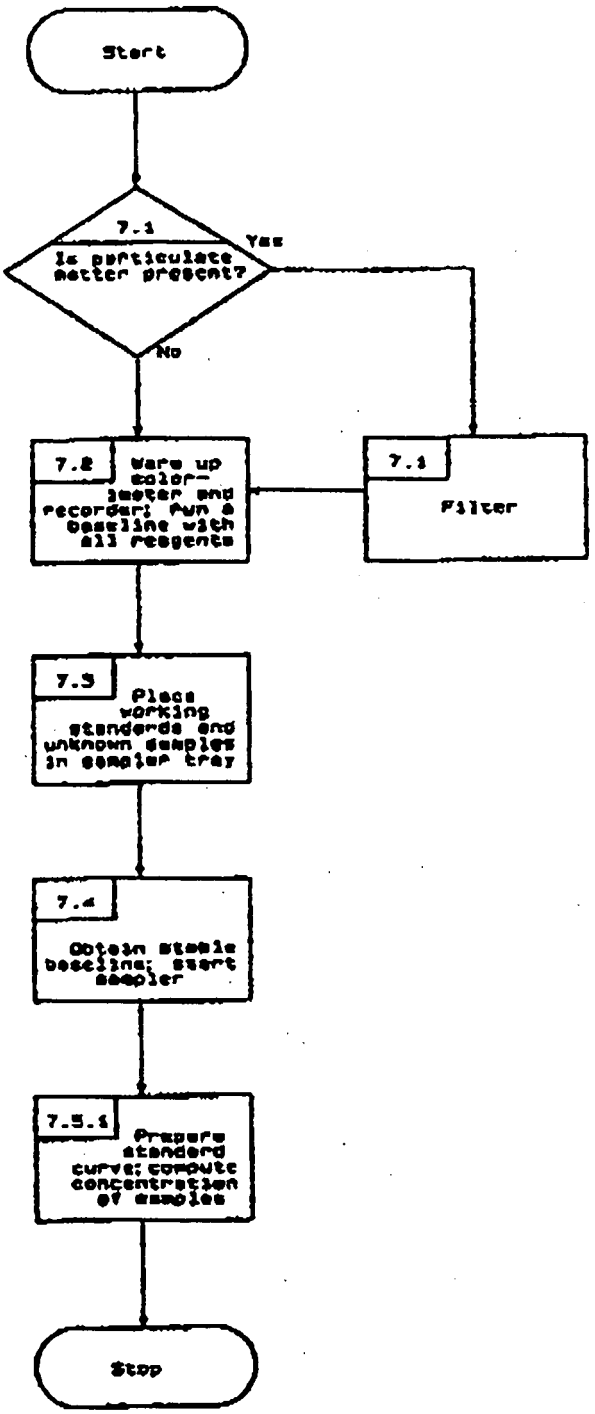
10.0 REFERENCES

1. O'Brien, J.E., "Automatic Analysis of Chlorides in Sewage," Waste Engr., 33, 670-672 (Dec. 1962).

2. Technicon AutoAnalyzer II, Industrial Method No. 99-70W, Technicon Industrial Systems, Tarrytown, New York, 10591 (Sept. 1973).

000481

JUL-20-95 THU 10:35 PARSONS COMPANY FAX NO. 5138700444 P. 05/06



JUL-20-95 THU 10:35 PARSONS COMPANY FAX NO. 5138700444 P. 06/06

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

METHODS OF SOIL ANALYSIS

Part 2

Chemical and Microbiological Properties

Second Edition

A. L. Page, *Editor*

R. H. Miller, *Associate Editor*

D. R. Keeney, *Associate Editor*

Editorial Committee

A. L. Page	D. R. Keeney
D. E. Baker	R. H. Miller
Roscoe Ellis, Jr.	J. D. Rhoades

Managing Editor: RICHARD C. DINAUER

Assistant Editor: KRISTINE E. GATES

Editor-in-Chief ASA Publications: DWAYNE R. BUXTON

Number 9 (Part 2) in the series

AGRONOMY

American Society of Agronomy, Inc.
Soil Science Society of America, Inc.
Publisher
Madison, Wisconsin USA

1982

04/21/95 09:46 ACCU-LABS RESEARCH INC. → NO.141 P002

344

000484

various methods minimizes need for sample collection and chemical analysis, especially when monitoring salinity changes with time and characterizing large field or project situations. For the latter, use of EM and four-probe techniques are recommended with supplemental use of the other methods as needed. Only methods for obtaining aqueous extracts of soil samples are dealt with in this section.

The following sections describe methods for determining soluble salts in water and soils using various methods and procedures for obtaining aqueous extracts of soil samples.

10-2 SATURATION EXTRACT AND OTHER AQUEOUS EXTRACTS

10-2.1 Principles

For some needs, knowing the composition of solutes in soil water at field water contents is desirable. However, present methods of obtaining soil water samples at usual field water contents are not practical for routine purposes. Thus, soil solution extracts often must be made at higher than normal water contents. Because the absolute and relative amounts of various solutes are influenced by the soil/water ratio at which the extract is made (Reitemeier, 1946), the ratio must be standardized to obtain results that can be applied and interpreted universally. Soil salinity is conventionally defined and measured on aqueous extracts of saturated soil pastes (U.S. Salinity Laboratory Staff, 1954). This soil/water ratio is used because it is the lowest reproducible ratio for which enough extract for analysis can be readily removed from the soil with pressure or vacuum and because it is often related in a predictable manner to field soil water contents. For these reasons, crop tolerance to salinity is often related to the electrical conductivity, or total electrolyte concentration, of the saturation extract (U.S. Salinity Laboratory, 1954).

Other extraction ratios, 1:1, 1:5, etc., are easier to use than that of saturation, but they are not so well related to field soil water contents. Errors from peptization, hydrolysis, cation exchange, and mineral dissolution also become greater for such extracts. As a compromise, Sonnevelt and van den Ende (1971) recommended a 1:2 volume extract. When relative changes rather than absolute solute concentrations are monitored, these wider extraction ratios may be used to advantage.

Once soil extract samples are obtained, laboratory chemical analyses are carried out to determine the electrical conductivity of the extract (σ_e) and the concentrations of major solutes (section 10-3).

10-2.2 Reagent

1. Sodium hexametaphosphate [$(NaPO_3)_6$] solutions, 0.1%: Dissolve 0.1 g $(NaPO_3)_6$ in water, and dilute the solution to 100 ml.

10-2.3 Procedure

10-2.3.1 SATURATION EXTRACT

Weigh 200 to 400 g of air-dry soil of known water content into a plastic container having a snaptight lid. Weigh the container plus contents. Add distilled water to the soil with stirring until it is nearly saturated. Allow the mixture to stand covered for several hours to permit the soil to imbibe the water, and then add more water to achieve a uniformly saturated soil-water paste. At this point, which is generally reproducible to within ± 5%, the soil paste glistens as it reflects light, flows slightly when the container is tipped, slides freely and cleanly off a spatula, and consolidates easily by tapping or jarring the container after a trench is formed in the paste with the side of the spatula. After mixing, allow the sample to stand (preferably overnight, but at least 4 hours), and then recheck the criteria for saturation. Free water should not collect on the soil surface, nor should the paste stiffen markedly or lose its glisten. If the paste is too wet, add additional dry soil to the paste mixture. Upon attainment of saturation, reweigh the container plus contents. Record the increase in weight, which is the amount of water added. Calculate the saturation water percentage from the weight of oven-dry soil and the sum of the weights of water added and that initially present in the air-dry sample. After allowing the saturated soil paste to stand 4 or more hours, transfer it to a Büchner or Richards (1949) filter funnel fitted with highly retentive filter paper. Apply vacuum, and collect the filtrate in a test tube or bottle. If the initial filtrate is turbid, refilter or discard it. Terminate the filtration when air begins to pass through the filter. Add 1 drop of 0.1% $(NaPO_3)_6$ solution for each 25 ml of extract.

10-2.3.2 EXTRACTS AT SOIL/WATER RATIOS OF 1:1 AND 1:5

Weigh a sample of air-dry soil of appropriate size, and transfer it to a flask or bottle. Add the required amount of distilled water, stopper the container, and shake it in a mechanical shaker for 1 hour. If a mechanical shaker is not available, shake the container vigorously by hand for 1 min at least 4 times at 30-min intervals. Filter the suspension using highly retentive filter paper. (Discard or refilter the initial filtrate if it is turbid.) Add 0.1% $(NaPO_3)_6$ solution at the rate of 1 drop/25 ml of extract.

10-2.4 Comments

The weight of soil required will depend on the number and kind of determinations to be made on the extract, the analytical methods employed, and the salt content of the soil. In general, from one fourth to one third of the water in saturated soil pastes can be removed by vacuum filtration.

Soil samples should not be oven-dried before extracting for determination of soluble salts, because heating to 105°C converts at least a part of the gypsum ($CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$) to plaster of paris ($CaSO_4 \cdot 1/2H_2O$) [illegible] latter hydrate has a higher solubility in water than does the former.

0004853
04/21/95 09:46 ACCU-LABS RESEARCH INC. → NO.141 P003

In determinations of extract water contents when a low ratio of soil to water is used, it is desirable to correct for the water content of the air-dry soil. For example, an air-dry sample containing 2% water on an oven-dry basis can be adjusted to a soil/water ratio of 1:1 by adding 98 ml of water to 102 g of air-dry soil. At soil/water ratios of 1:5 or greater, no correction is ordinarily made for water in the air-dry sample.

Special precautions should be taken in preparing a saturated soil paste with peat and muck soils or very fine or very coarse-textured soils. If possible, peat and muck soils should not be allowed to dry following collection because their saturation water content changes. Peat and muck, especially if coarse or woody, require an overnight imbibition period to obtain a definite endpoint for the saturation point. After the first wetting, pastes of these soils usually stiffen upon standing. Adding water and remixing then give a mixture that usually retains the characteristics of a saturated paste. With fine-textured soils, enough water should be added immediately, with a minimum of mixing, to bring the sample nearly to saturation. This minimizes the formation of clumps of soil during stirring, speeds the mixing process, and helps attain a more definite endpoint. Care should also be taken not to overwet coarse-textured soils. The presence of free water on the surface of the paste after standing is a very important indication of oversaturation in the case of coarse-textured soils. Even small amounts of free water can lead to appreciable errors in saturation paste water contents for these materials.

Sodium hexametaphosphate is added to the extract to prevent the precipitation of $CaCO_3$ from the extract upon standing. The quantity of $(NaPO_3)_6$ solution added increases the Na concentration ~0.5 ppm, or 0.02 meq/liter, which is inconsequential compared with the possible loss of $CaCO_3$. Alternatively, a subsample of the extract could be immediately diluted twofold and used for the Ca and alkalinity determinations.

Alternative methods of preparing the saturated soil paste have been described by Longenecker and Lyerly (1964), who proposed wetting the soil sample on a capillary saturation table, Beatty and Loveday (1974) and Loveday (1972), who recommended predetermining the amount of water at saturation on a separate soil sample using a capillary wetting technique, and Allison (1973), who recommended slowly adding soil to water (oversaturation method). Similar results are obtained with these methods. The choice of method is primarily one of personal preference.

Thymol can be added to the paste to minimize the effect of microbial activity on saturation extract composition during equilibration (Carlson et al., 1971).

The extracts should be stored at ~4°C until analyzed.

10-3 SOLUBLE CONSTITUENTS IN SOIL WATERS AND AQUEOUS EXTRACTS

The major solutes of interest found in soil waters and aqueous extracts of salt-affected soils are Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, Na^{+}, K^{+}, CO_3^{2-}, HCO_3^{-}, SO_4^{2-}, Cl^{-}, NO_3^{-}, and H_3BO_3. There are many satisfactory analytical methods for determining these solutes. These methods range from wholly automated to manual. The choice of which to use is usually determined by the number of samples being processed and the availability of analysts, automated equipment, or both. The methods described here are those in common use in laboratories having typical modern but not fully automated instrumentation. Methodology more suited to laboratories without such conveniences was given previously by Bower and Wilcox (1965).

10-3.1 Sequence of Analyses

Alkalinity and pH determinations should be made immediately on fresh extracts or on the solutions treated with hexametaphosphate. Next, electrical conductivity, σ, should be determined; it is a useful means of estimating total salt concentration (meq/liter $\cong 10\ \sigma$, in deci-Siemens per meter, dS/m). The cations can be determined in any sequence. After any three of the four major cations have been determined, the appropriate aliquot for the remaining cation can be estimated by deducting the sum of the three concentrations, in milliequivalents per liter, from 10 σ, in deci-Siemens per meter. Among the anions, NO_3^- and Cl^- determinations are normally made after alkalinity since they are simpler to measure than SO_4^{2-}. After that, SO_4^{2-} is determined; the appropriate aliquot is estimated from the difference between ($Ca^{2+} + Mg^{2+} + Na^{+} + K^{+}$) and (alkalinity + NO_3^- + Cl^-). Finally, B is determined. Concentration of this solute is negligible compared with that of the major cations and anions, but it is still extremely important because of its pronounced toxicity even in small concentrations to many plants.

10-3.2 pH and Alkalinity

10-3.2.1 APPARATUS

1. Automatic potentiometric titrator.
2. Single probe combination pH electrode.

10-3.2.2 REAGENTS

1. Standard buffer solutions, pH 4.00 and 7.00.
2. Standard hydrochloric acid (HCl), approximately 0.0200*N*.

10-3.2.3 PROCEDURE

With electrode immersed in standard pH buffer, set the potentiometer to the pH (7.00) of the first buffer solution. Rinse electrode, and repeat calibration using the second pH buffer. Rinse electrode, immerse in 1 to 20 ml of sample solution (contained in a 50-ml plastic beaker along with a microsize, Teflon-coated magnetic stirring bar), and initiate the automatic titration operation using the full titration curve display mode. The initial potential recorded on the strip chart gives the sample pH. The volumes of titrant delivered to produce inflection points for CO_3^{2-} and HCO_3^- are ob-

04/21/95 09:46 ACCU-LABS RESEARCH INC. → NO.141 P.004
000486
34 4

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX L

WASTE UNIT GEOLOGICAL CROSS SECTIONS

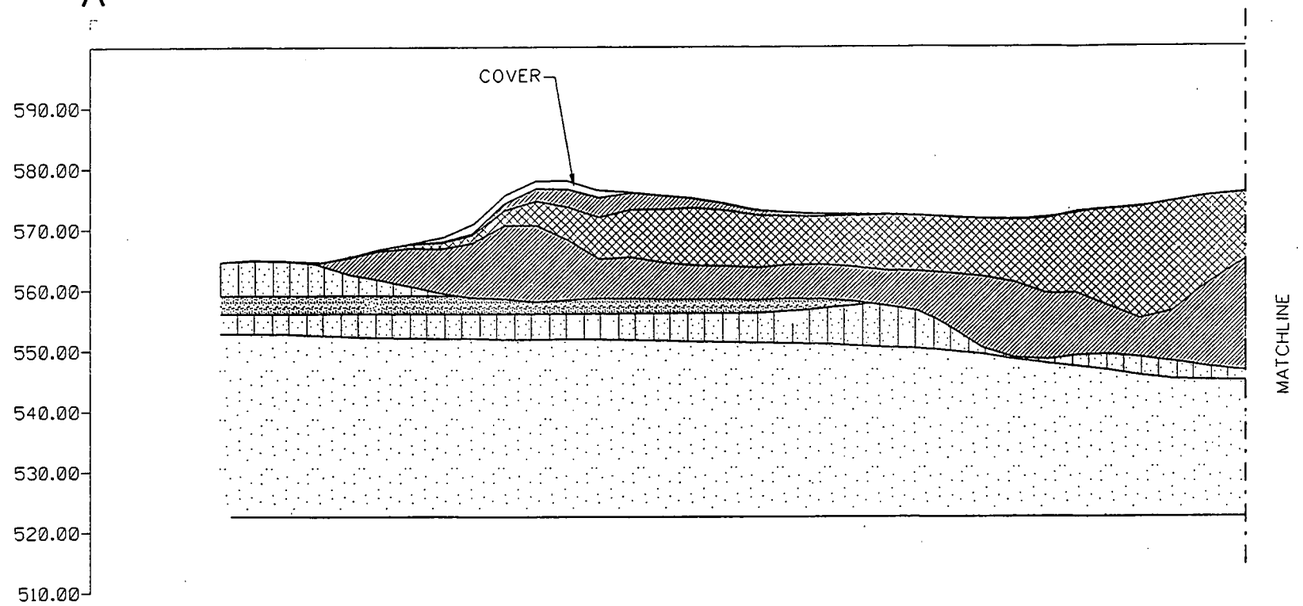
APPENDIX L
LIST OF FIGURES

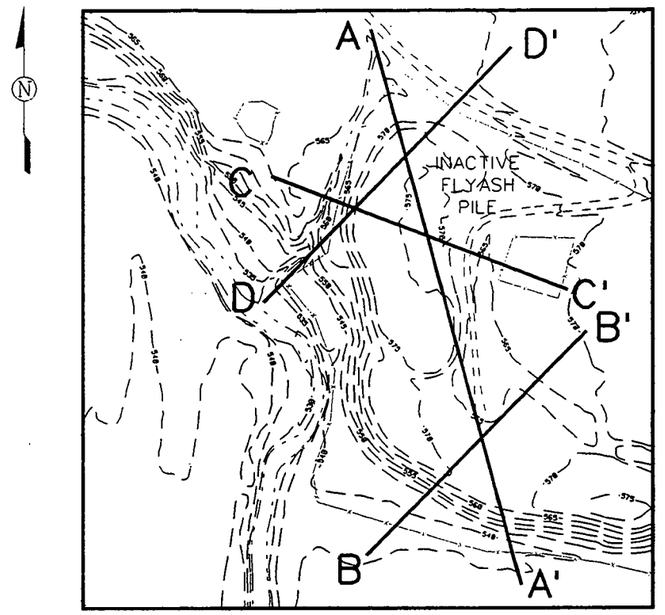
FIGURE	TITLE
L-1	Geologic Cross Sections Inactive Flyash Pile Sheet 1 of 3
L-2	Geologic Cross Sections Inactive Flyash Pile Sheet 2 of 3
L-3	Geologic Cross Sections Inactive Flyash Pile Sheet 3 of 3
L-4	Geologic Cross Sections South Field Disposal Area Sheet 1 of 5
L-5	Geologic Cross Sections South Field Disposal Area Sheet 2 of 5
L-6	Geologic Cross Sections South Field Disposal Area Sheet 3 of 5
L-7	Geologic Cross Sections South Field Disposal Area Sheet 4 of 5
L-8	Geologic Cross Sections South Field Disposal Area Sheet 5 of 5
L-9	Geologic Cross Section Active Flyash Pile Sheet 1 of 2
L-10	Geologic Cross Section Active Flyash Pile Sheet 2 of 2

N 478322, E 1378937

380 ft

A



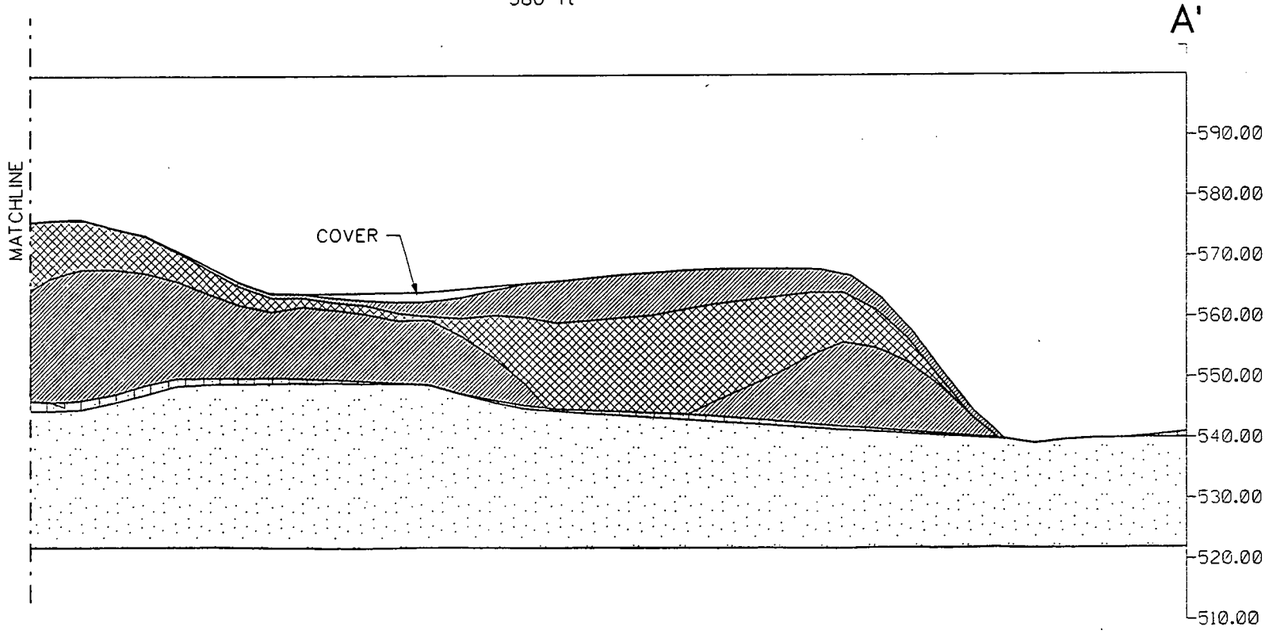


LOCATION KEY (1" = 200')

380 ft

N 477587, E 1379131

A'



NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

LEGEND

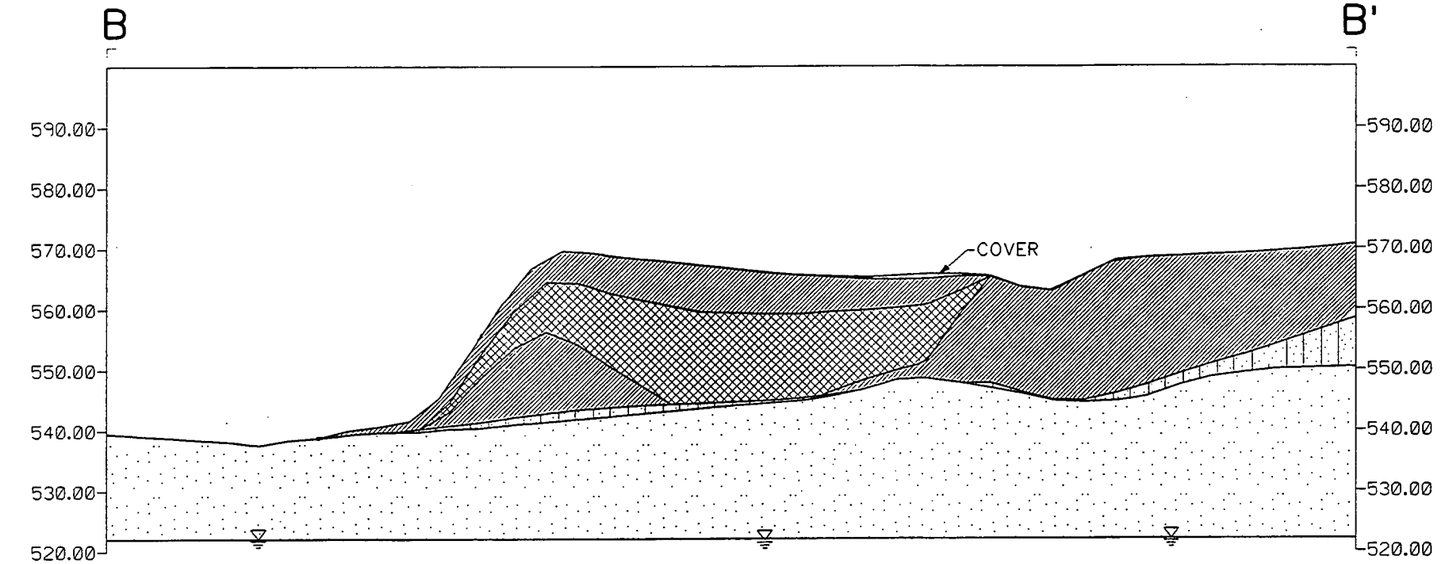
- 575 — ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- RAILROAD
- FILL/DEBRIS
- FLYASH
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

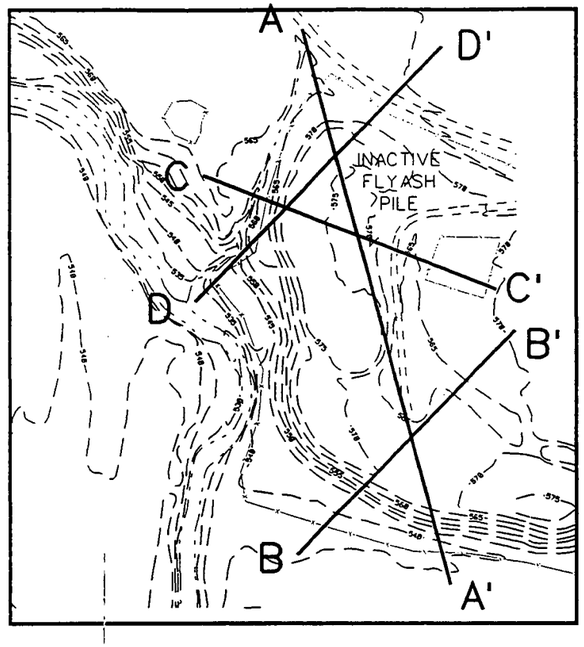
SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1"= 50'
VERTICAL 1"= 25'

0 25 50 100 FEET

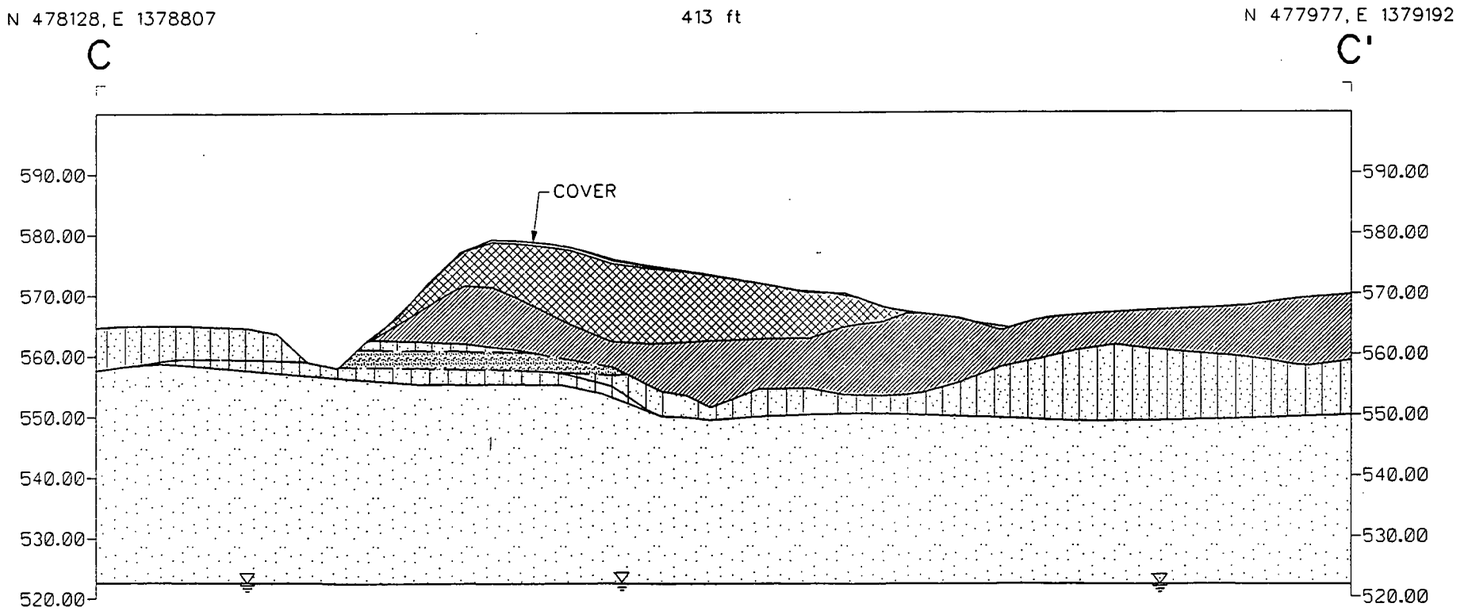
/usr/ermal/cru2/dgn/fs2/fig_a.dgn

FIGURE L-1
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
INACTIVE FLYASH PILE
SHEET 1 OF 3





LOCATION KEY (1" = 200')



SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1"= 50'
VERTICAL 1"= 25'

0 25 50 100 FEET

LEGEND

- 575 — ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- RAILROAD
- FILL/DEBRIS
- FLYASH
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

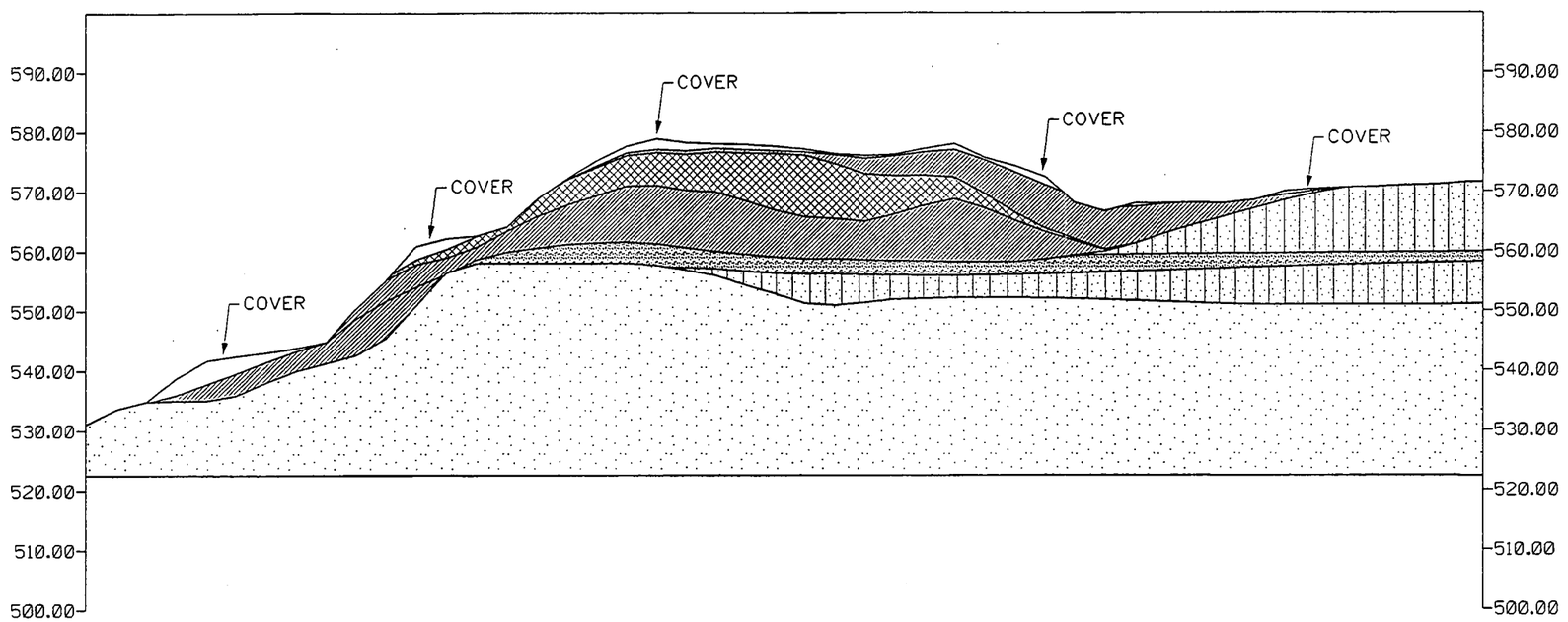
FIGURE L-2
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
INACTIVE FLYASH PILE
SHEET 2 OF 3

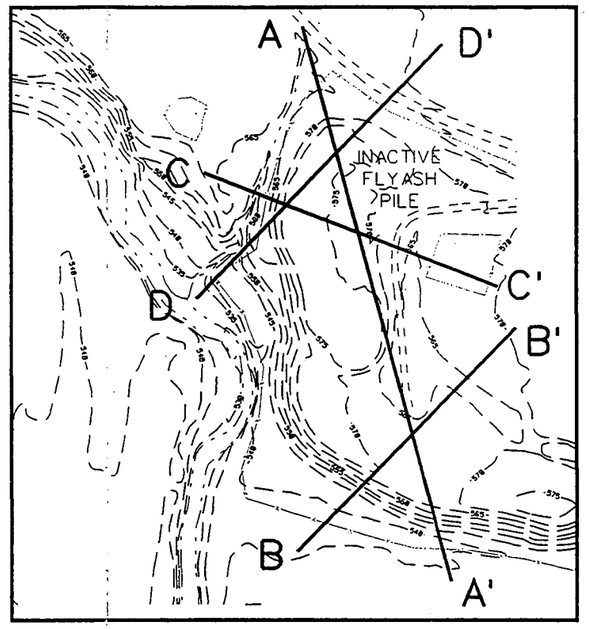
/usr/ermol/cru2/dgn/ts2/fig_b.dgn

N 477961 , E 1378798

465 ft

N 478298 , E 1379119





LOCATION KEY (1" = 200')

LEGEND

- ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- RAILROAD
- FILL/DEBRIS
- FLYASH
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

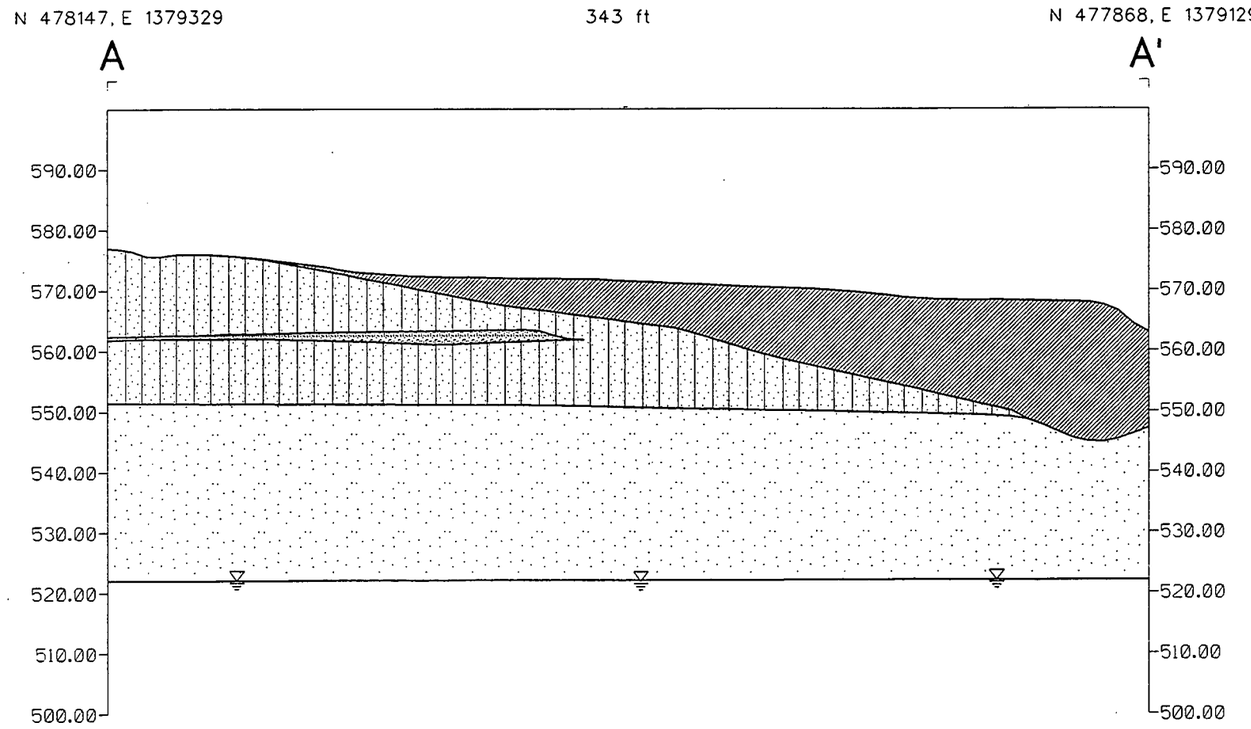
SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1"= 50'
VERTICAL 1"= 25'

0 25 50 100 FEET

/usr/ermal/cru2/dgn/ls2/fig_c.dgn

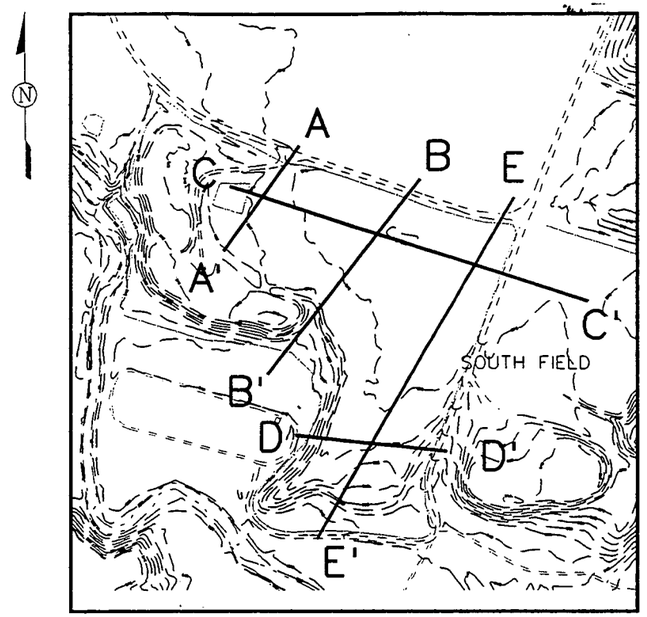
FIGURE L-3
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
INACTIVE FLYASH PILE
SHEET 3 OF 3

000492



SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1" = 50'
VERTICAL 1" = 25'

0 25 50 100 FEET



LOCATION KEY (1" = 400')

LEGEND
- 575 ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- RAILROAD
- FILL/DEBRIS
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

FIGURE L-4
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
SOUTH FIELD DISPOSAL AREA
SHEET 1 OF 5

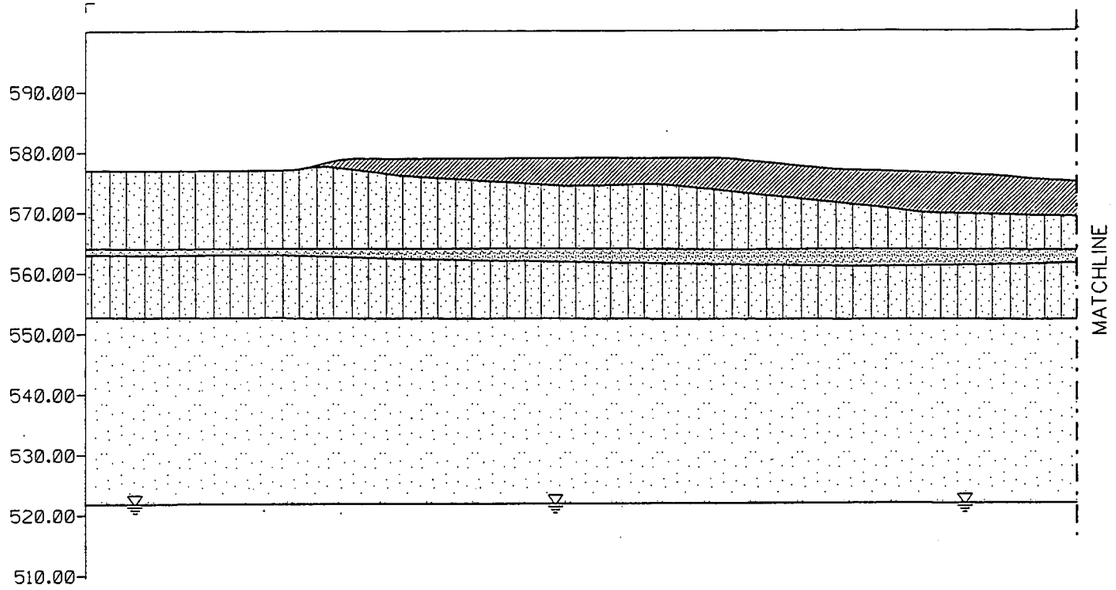
000493

/usr/ermol/cru2/dgn/ts2/fig_d.dgn

N 478060, E 1379644

327 ft

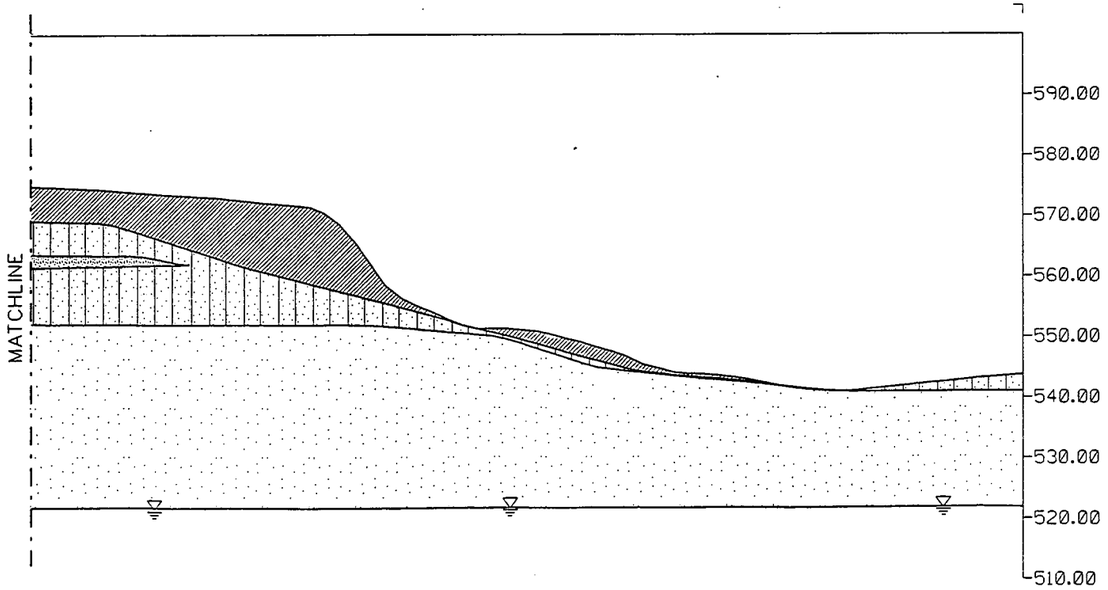
B



327 ft

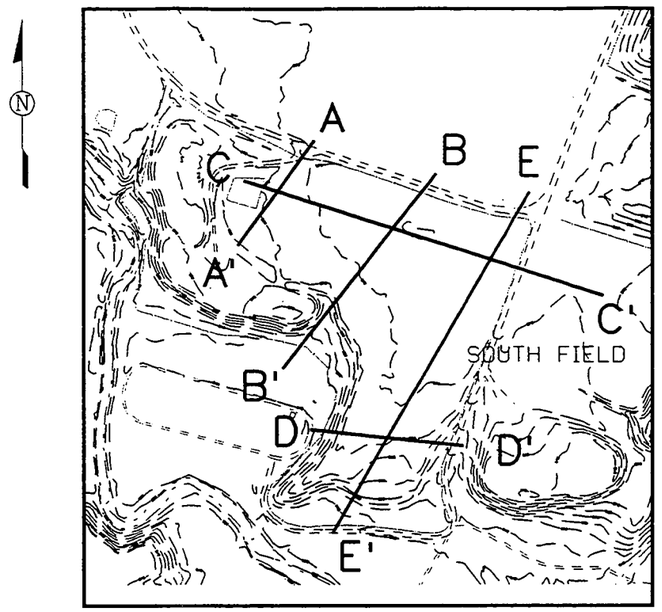
N 477543, E 1379244

B'



SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1" = 50'
VERTICAL 1" = 25'

0 25 50 100 FEET



LOCATION KEY (1" = 400')

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

LEGEND

- 575 — ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- RAILROAD
- FILL/DEBRIS
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

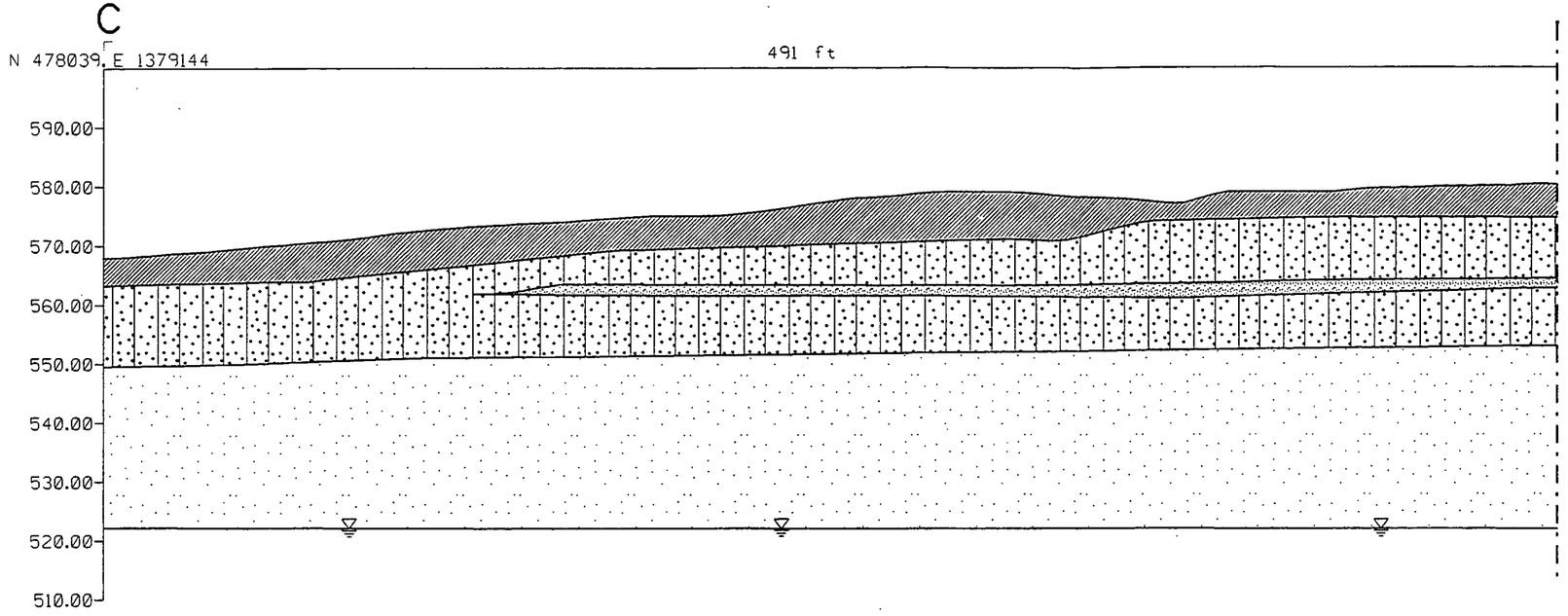
FIGURE L-5
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
SOUTH FIELD DISPOSAL AREA
SHEET 2 OF 5

/usr/ermal/cru2/dgn/ls2/fig_e.dgn

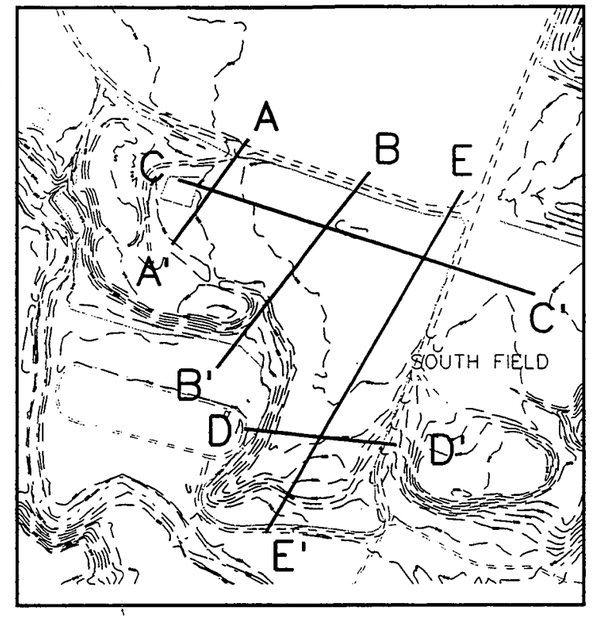
C

N 478039, E 1379144

491 ft



MATCHLINE

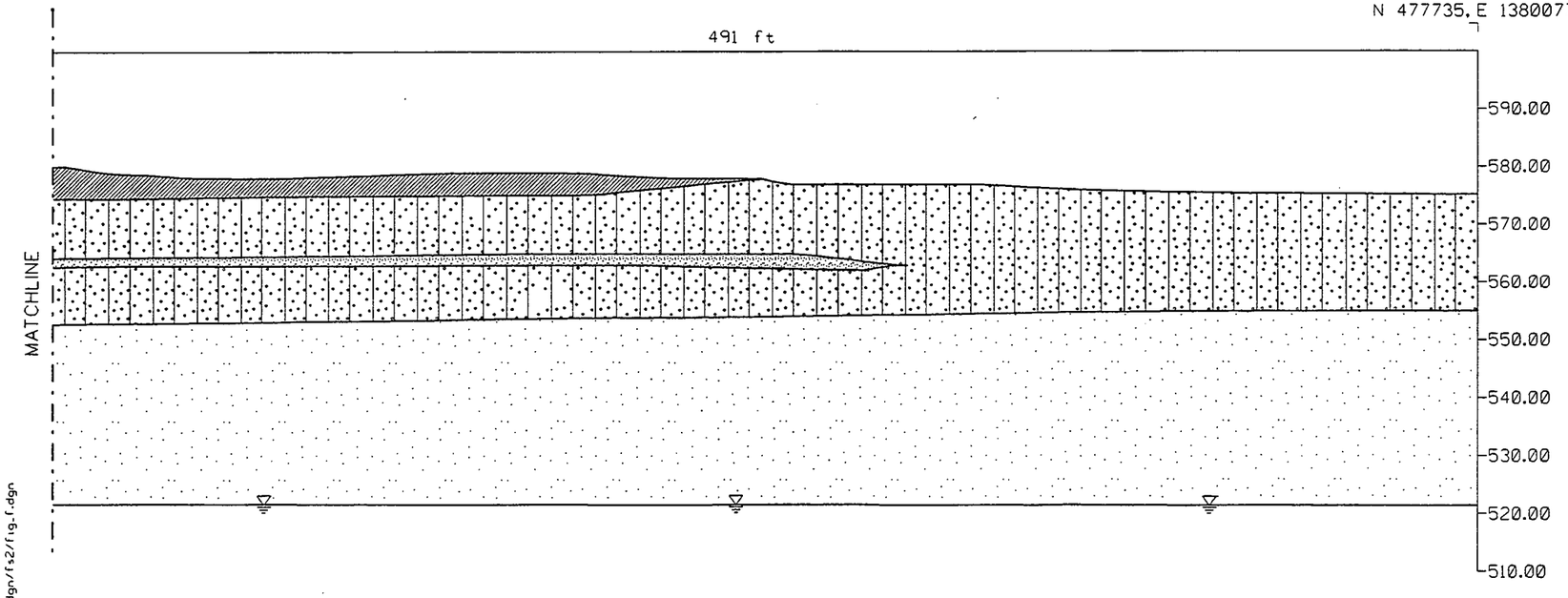


LOCATION KEY (1" = 400')

C'

N 477735, E 1380077

491 ft



MATCHLINE

LEGEND

- 575 — ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- FILL/DEBRIS
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

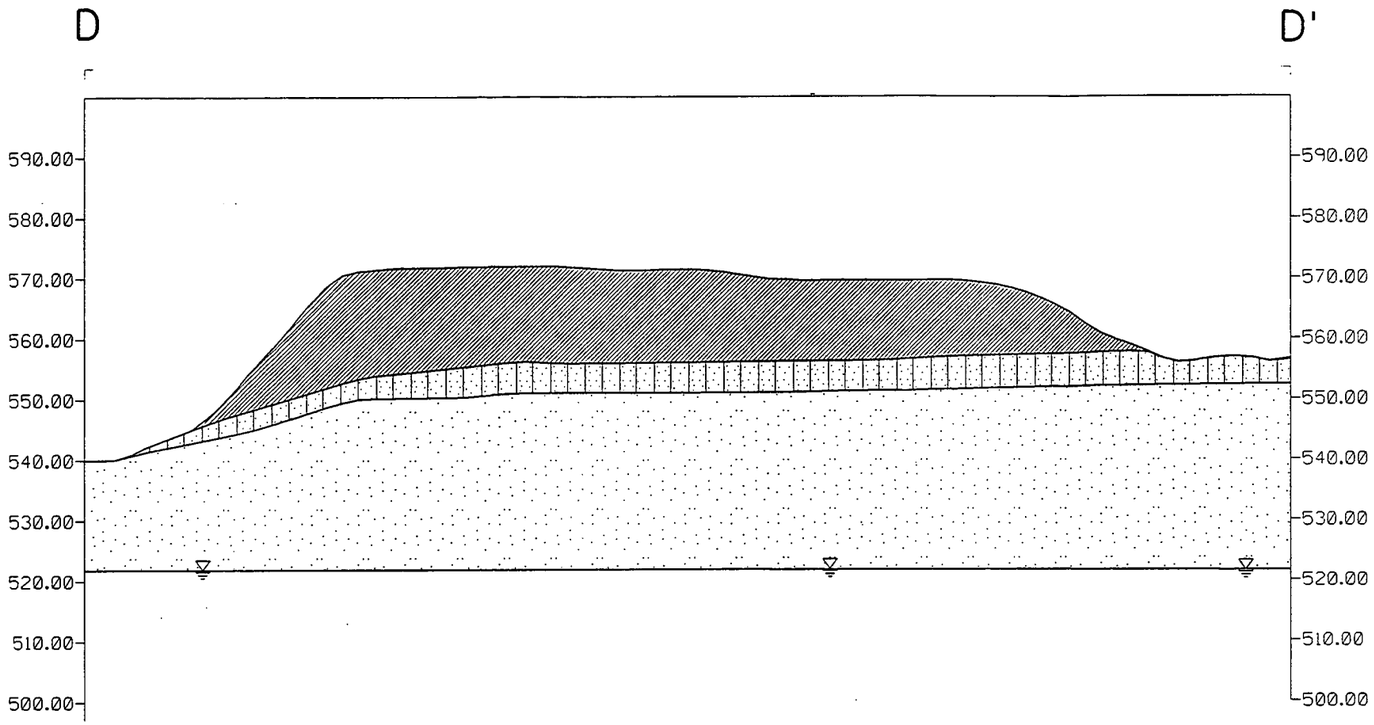
SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1" = 50'
VERTICAL 1" = 25'

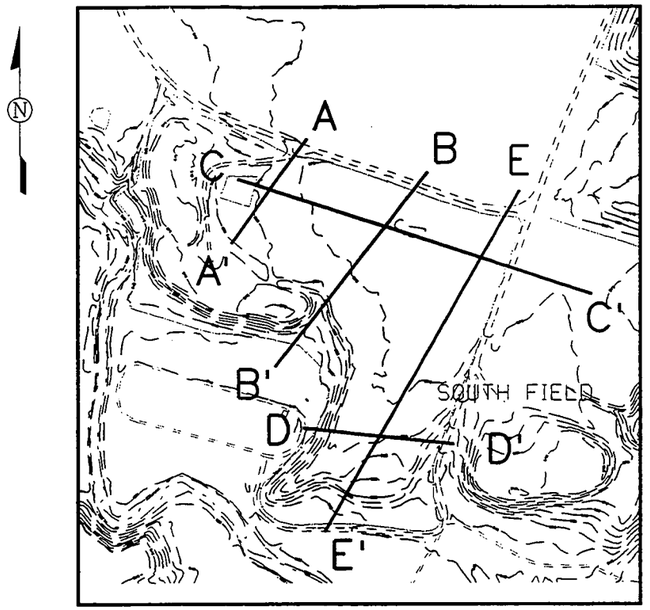
0 25 50 100 FEET

/usr/ermal/cru2/dgn/fs2/fig1.dgn

FIGURE L-6
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
SOUTH FIELD DISPOSAL AREA
SHEET 3 OF 5

N 477373. E 1379397 — 398 ft — N 477330. E 1379793





LOCATION KEY (1" = 400')

LEGEND

- ELEVATION CONTOURS (575)
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- FILL/DEBRIS
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1" = 50'
VERTICAL 1" = 25'

0 25 50 100

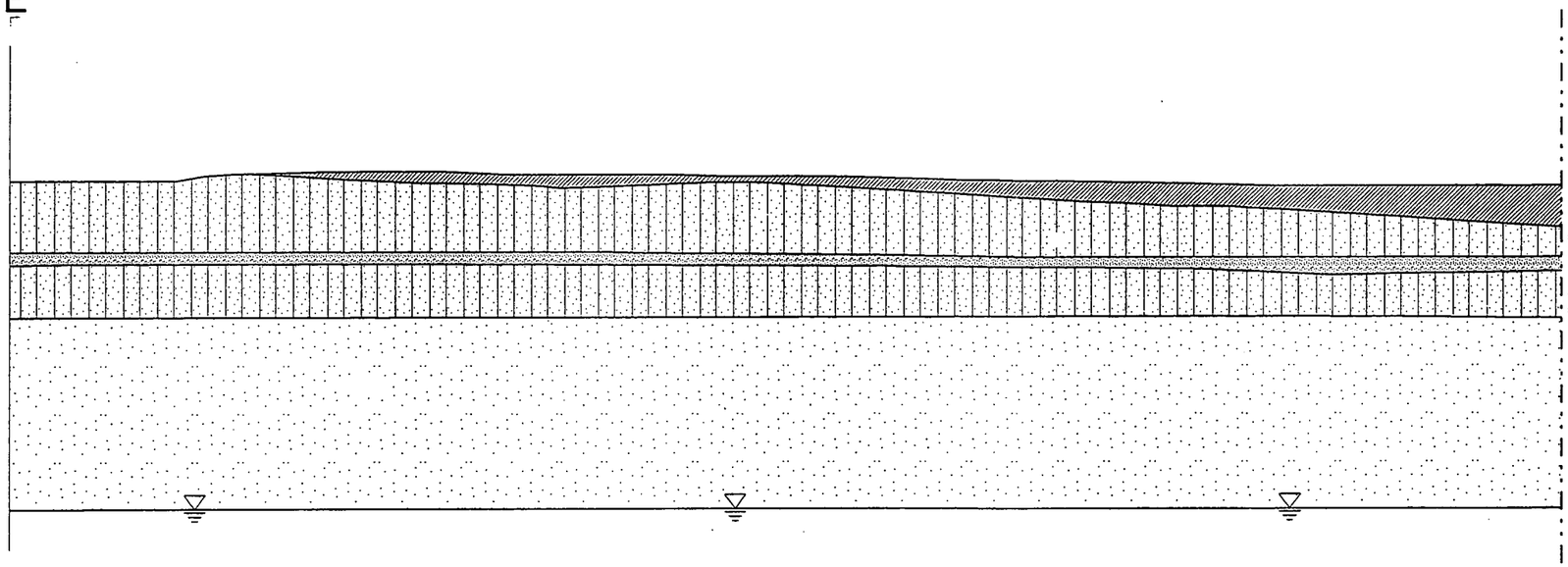
/usr/ernal/cru2/dgn/ts2/fig_g.dgn

FIGURE L-7
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
SOUTH FIELD DISPOSAL AREA
SHEET 4 OF 5

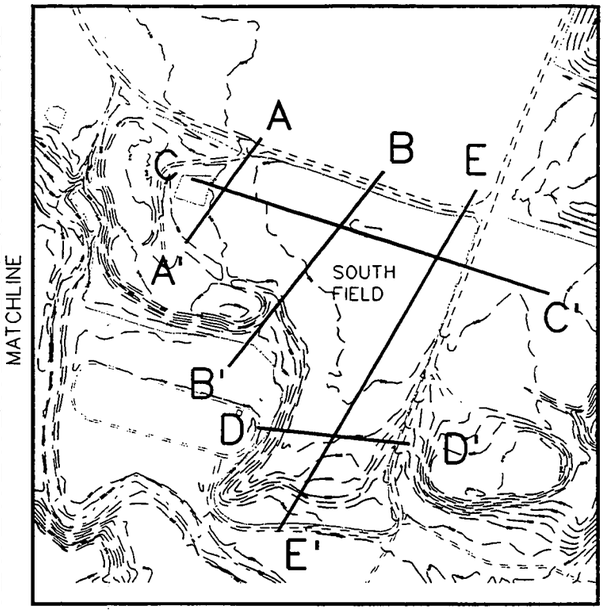
N 477947, E 1379914

516 ft

E



MATCHLINE

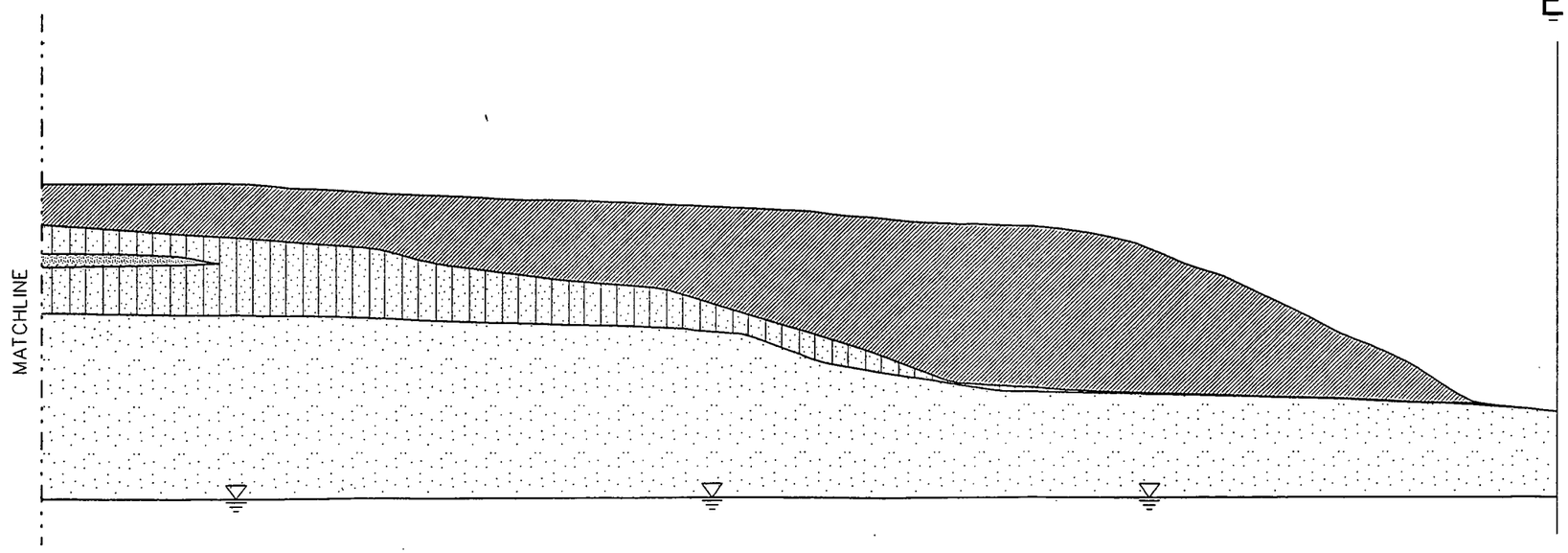


LOCATION KEY (1" = 400')

519 ft

N 477146, E 1379252

E'



MATCHLINE

N

LEGEND

- 575 — ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- RAILROAD
- FILL/DEBRIS
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

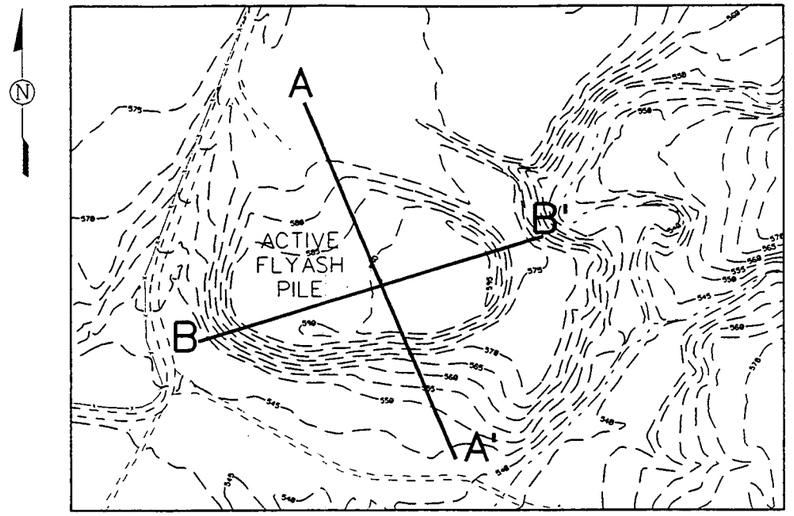
NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1" = 50'
VERTICAL 1" = 25'

0 25 50 100 FEET

/usr/ormsl/cru2/dgn/fs2/fig-h.dgn

FIGURE L-8
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTIONS
SOUTH FIELD DISPOSAL AREA
SHEET 5 OF 5

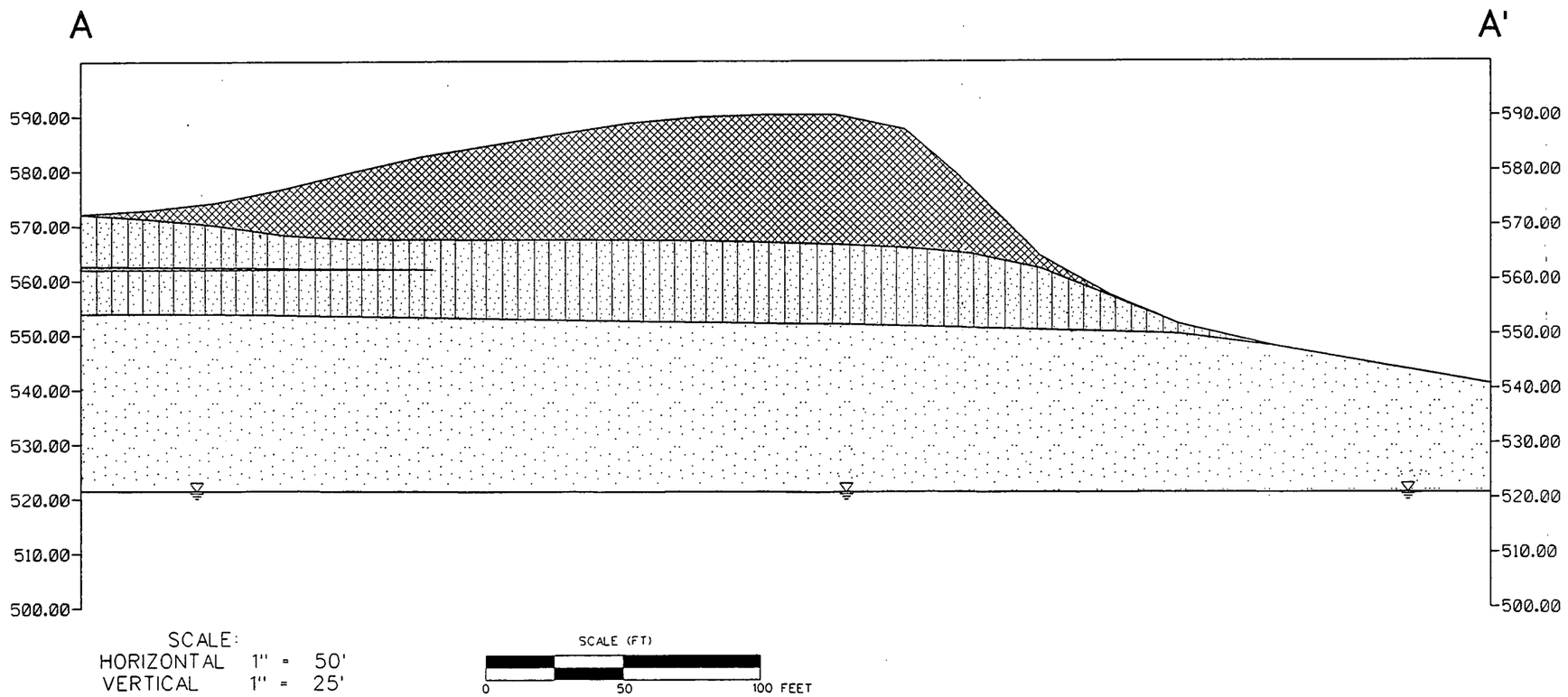


LOCATION KEY (1" = 200')

1379864.477485

513 ft

1380065.477013



LEGEND

- 575 — ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- FLYASH
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

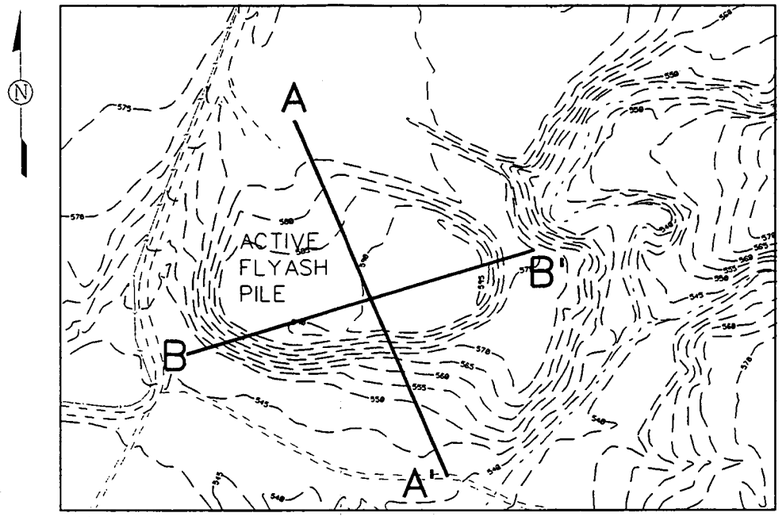
NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1" = 50'
VERTICAL 1" = 25'

SCALE (FT)
0 50 100 FEET

/usr/ermal/cru2/dgn/fs2/fig1.dgn

FIGURE L-9
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTION
ACTIVE FLYASH PILE
SHEET 1 OF 2



LOCATION KEY (1" = 200')

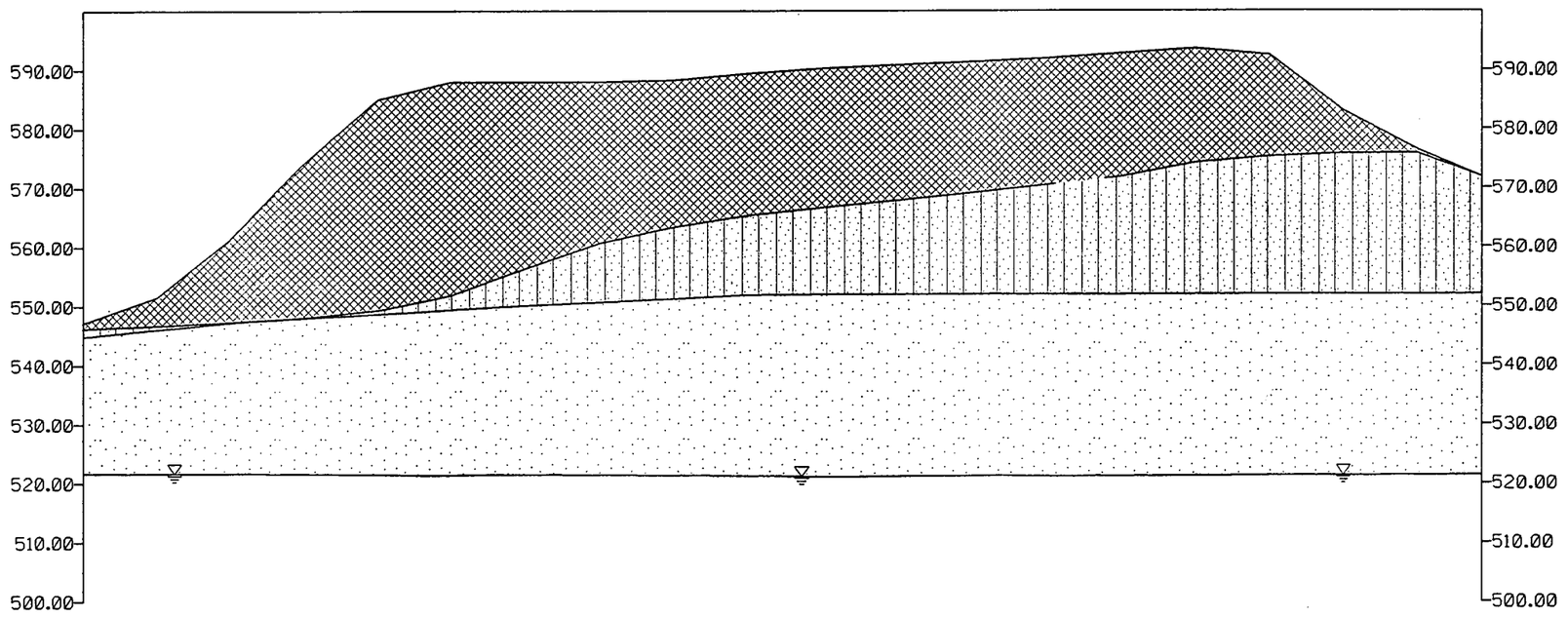
N 477176, E 1379726

B

472 ft

N 477314, E 1380177

B'



SCALE:
HORIZONTAL 1" = 50'
VERTICAL 1" = 25'

SCALE (FT)
0 50 100 FEET

LEGEND

- ELEVATION CONTOURS
- ROADS
- STREAM
- FENCE
- FLYASH
- GLACIAL OVERBURDEN/TILL
- SAND/GRAVEL
- GREAT MIAMI AQUIFER

NOTE:
Coordinates are in State Planar NAD 1927.
Surface contours based on 1992 flyover.

/usr/ormsl/cru2/dgn/fs2/fig_1.dgn

FIGURE L-10
GEOLOGIC CROSS SECTION
ACTIVE FLYASH PILE
SHEET 2 OF 2

APPENDIX M

SCOPE FOR COLLECTION AND ANALYSES

OF

URANIUM CONTAMINATED PERCHED GROUNDWATER

SCOPE OF WORK
FOR THE
COLLECTION AND ANALYSES
OF
URANIUM CONTAMINATED PERCHED GROUNDWATER

1.0 INTRODUCTION

According to Revision 1 of the Draft Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan for On-Site Clay Borrow Areas, Off-Site Material Sources, and Operable Unit 2 Waste Units, hydraulic conductivity testing will be performed to define the permeability characteristics of clay used in the construction of the on-site disposal facility's liner and cap. Hydraulic conductivity testing requires the use of a permeant liquid to permeate the test specimen and to backpressure the specimen during testing. According to ASTM D5084, chemical interactions between a permeant liquid and the porous material may lead to variations in hydraulic conductivity of clayey soils; therefore, some of the hydraulic conductivity testing will use a permeant liquid consisting of uranium contaminated leachate to represent potential chemical conditions within the disposal facility.

To obtain a uranium contaminated leachate that represents potential future conditions within the disposal facility, approximately fifty gallons of uranium contaminated perched groundwater will be collected during the field activities related to the geotechnical investigation of the on-site clay borrow areas.

2.0 SCOPE OF WORK

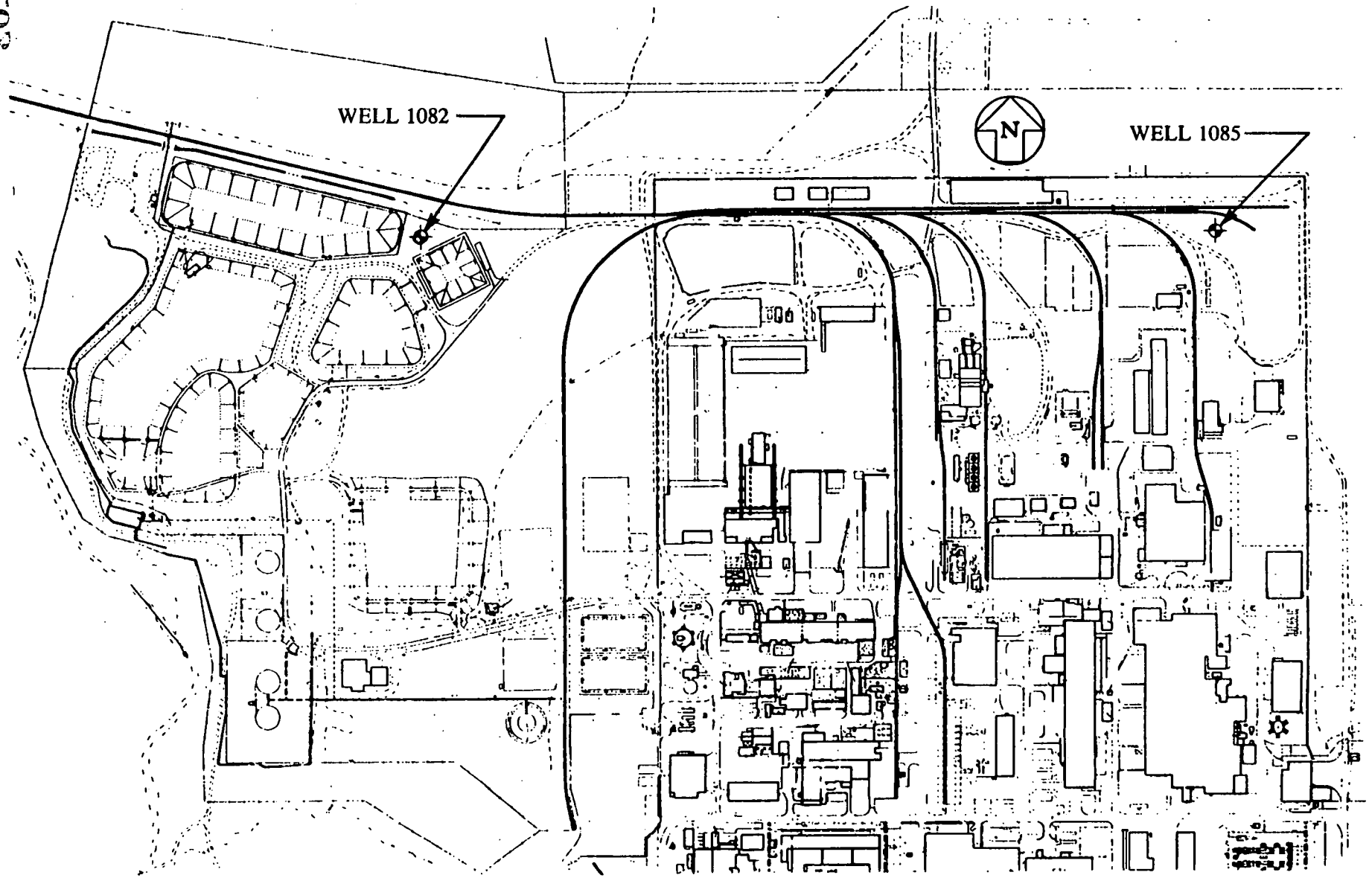
2.1 FIELD PROGRAMS

Uranium contaminated perched groundwater will be collected from Wells 1082 and 1085 (see Figure M-1) to support geotechnical hydraulic conductivity testing of clay to be used in the construction of the on-site disposal facility, and to perform chemical and radiological analyses to define the composition of the uranium contaminated perched groundwater (permeant water). Perched groundwater sampled for laboratory chemical analyses and collected for hydraulic conductivity testing will be mixed together form the two wells to have a uranium concentration approaching 3.3 ppm. Approximately 25 gallons of water will be collected from each well for a total of approximately 50 gallons. The wells will not be purged prior to sampling and the water will not be analyzed for the general field parameters during sampling.

JURE M-1

LOCATION OF WELLS
1082 AND 1085

000502



M-2

The water will be collected in five gallon plastic containers (a total of ten containers) with the appropriate labeling designation from which well the water was collected. The 5-gallon containers will be stored in the On-Site Treatability Laboratory. Water will be collected from each container and analyzed for total uranium [KPA (laser) method] by the on-site laboratory to ASL B. From the total uranium results, CRU2 will calculate the mixing ratios from the 5-gallon sample containers to achieve a total uranium concentration appropriating 3.3 ppm. The perched groundwater from the 5-gallon containers will be mixed in the On-Site Treatability Laboratory in a 55-gallon plastic bung-type drum in accordance with the calculated mixing ratios. A sample will be taken from the 55-gallon drum and analyzed for total uranium. If the total uranium results from the mixed permeant water are not within a $\pm$ 15 percent tolerance, then the permeant water will be adjusted accordingly and tested again for total uranium.

Note: If the uranium concentration cannot be mixed to approach 3.3 ppm, then a calculation will be made to maximize the uranium concentration in approximately 50 gallons of the collected perched groundwater. Then a laboratory uranium spike will be added to the sampled volume to obtain the uranium concentration approaching 3.3 ppm.

Once the total uranium is analzyed to be within the 15% tolerance, chemical and radiological samples will be taken from the 55-gallon drum in accordance with the analyses listed in Table 1 for both the permeant sample, and one duplicate sample. In addition, a field blank will also be prepared. Field measurements of pH, dissolved oxygen, and specific conductance will be performed on the permeant water in accordance with Appendix K (Subsection K.4.1) of the SCQ. The remaining permeant water will be shipped to the off-site geotechnical testing laboratory in a 55-gallon bung-type drum for use in support of the hydraulic conductivity testing.

In order that the results of the chemical and radiological analyses are representative for the water used in the hydraulic conductivity testing, holding times will begin when the permeant water is sampled for the analytical suite shown in Table 1.

The final volume of permeant water intended for use in the hydraulic conductivity tests will be less than the 50 gallons collected (estimated 30 gallons), but will be more than sufficient for the hydraulic conductivity testing. The final mixture of water will be analyzed for HSL semi-volatiles, HSL Inorganics, general water chemistry, and various radiolnuclides. These analyses will be conducted by off-site contract radiological and chemical analytical laboratories.

TABLE 1

SAMPLE VOLUME, CONTAINERS, AND PRESERVATION - GROUNDWATER SAMPLES

(PERMEANT AND DUPLICATE SAMPLES)

PARAMETER	ASL LEVEL	CONTAINER[a]	PRESERVATION
Semi-VOC (SVOC)	C	1 x 2 L amber glass	4°C
Inorganics (metals)	C	1 x 1 L plastic	4°C/HNO_3/pH<2
Phenols	B	1 x 1 L amber glass	4°C/H_2SO_4/pH<2
Nitrates	B	1 x 1 L amber glass	4°C/H_2SO_4/pH<2
Ammonia, TON, Total Phosphorous	B	1 x 1 L plastic	4°C/H_2SO_4/pH<2
Chloride, Fluoride, Sulfate	B	1 x 1 L plastic	4°C
Sulfide	B	1 x 1 L amber glass	4°C/NaOH/Zn/Acetate/pH>9
TOC	B	1 x 500 ml amber glass (Zero Head Space)	4°C/H_2SO_4/pH<2
TOX Analysis	B	2 x 250 ml amber glass (Zero Head Space)	4°C/H_2SO_4/pH<2
Radioisotopes (Full Radioisotope)	C	6 x 4 L plastic[b]	HNO_3/pH<2
Eh (Redox Potential)	—	3[c] x 500 ml amber glass	4°C
Specific Conductance, Total Dissolved Solids, pH, and E_h (Redox Potential)	—	3[c] x 500 ml amber glass	4°C

(a) All samples will be composited from Wells 1082 and 1085 to produce a uranium concentration approaching 3.3 ppm.

(b) Only 8 liters are required for analysis of the duplicate and field blank radiological samples.

(c) On-Site Analyses (Three samples are to be tested for each parameter)

See Appendix P for Data Quality Objectives for the Analysis and Establishment of the Concentration for the Permeant that will be used in Conducting Hydraulic Conductivity Tests on Recompacted Soils from a Potential On-Site Borrow Source.

000504

The work shall be performed in accordance with the Documents referenced in Table 3.

TABLE 3

REFERENCE DOCUMENTS

Field Procedures	Reference Documents
QA/QC	SCQ Sections 4, 5, 10, and 11; Appendix A/Table 2-2; Appendix D; Appendix J
Chain of Custody	SCQ Volume I, Sections 7.1; RI/FS Fernald Project Policy Manual, FPP-401, Section 5.1.12
Decontamination	SCQ Appendix K, Subsection K.11
Health and Safety	GWM-HSP-1001, Programmatic Health and Saftey Plan for Groundwater Monitoring Section-Routing Monitoring, Sampling, and Well Maintenance Activities
Field Analytical Methods	SCQ Volume I, Subsection 6.2; Appendix K, Subsection K4.1

2.2 Waste Handling/Disposal

Investigation derived wastewater (IDW) generated from sampling and testing of perched groundwater (including unused sample fractions, extracts, and residue) will be treated through the Granular Activated Carbon filters located in the Plant 8 VOC system before being sent to the Advanced Wastewater Treatment Plant via the General Sump. Contact wastes (PPE, wipes, etc.) will be handled in accordance with site procedures.

2.3 Sample Equipment and Materials

All groundwater samples will be collected with equipment which is functional, designed for the specific purposes of the sampling event, and properly decontaminated. Sampling will be accomplished with equipment which is constructed of nonreactive materials.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX N

MODAL DIAMETER TESTING

FIELD PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF MODAL DIAMETER TESTING*

1. Expose each soil sample as received from the field to air at room temperature until dried thoroughly, but no more than seven (7) days. Lightly break up the aggregations in a mortar with a rubber-covered pestle **(DO NOT GRIND SAMPLE)**. Remove any rocks larger than about 1 cm in average physical diameter.

2. Prepare a nest of sieves with the following openings: 4 mm, 2 mm, 1 mm, 0.5 mm, and 0.25 mm. Place a collector pan below the bottom sieve (0.25 mm opening). Determine the mass of each sieve and the pan prior to preparing the nest of sieves.

3. Determine the original mass of the sample.

4. Pour the sample into the top sieve (4 mm opening), and place a lid on the top.

5. Rotate the covered sieve/pan unit by hand using broad sweeping arm motions in the horizontal plane. Complete 20 rotations at a speed just necessary to achieve some relative horizontal motion between the sieve and the particles.

6. Determine the mass of each fraction. The sum of the masses retained on all the sieves used should equal closely the original mass of the quantity sieved.

Note: Use a balance sensitive to at least 0.01 g for determining the mass of each sieve, pan, and sample fraction.

* Adapted from a field procedure published in the EPA document (EPA/600/8-85/002), "Rapid Assessment of Exposure to Particulate Emissions from Surface Contamination Sites" (page 23).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX O

INTERFACE FRICTION SHEAR TESTING

SCOPE OF WORK
FOR SAMPLING TO SUPPORT
INTERFACE FRICTION SHEAR TESTING

Purpose

Shallow borings will be completed within the northern area of the On-Site Disposal Facility and within the East Field Borrow Area for the purpose of collecting bulk soil samples to facilitate additional engineering/geotechnical soil testing. Interface Friction Shear Testing will be performed to determine the shear resistance of various geosynthetics against soil likely to be used in the construction of the disposal facility cap. A seperate work plan will be developed for DOE and OEPA approval detailing the testing program. This information is necessary in order to perform the detailed design of the on-site disposal facility and to determine the stability of the cap.

Scope of Work

A van-mounted geoprobe will be used to collect disturbed soil samples from 2 shallow boring locations from within both the On-Site Disposal Facility (see Figure O-1) and the East Field Borrow Area (see Figure O-2). The planned depths, type, and corresponding geotechnical testing required from each location are identified in Table O-1.

TABLE O-1
GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
(INTERFACE FRICTION SHEAR TESTING)

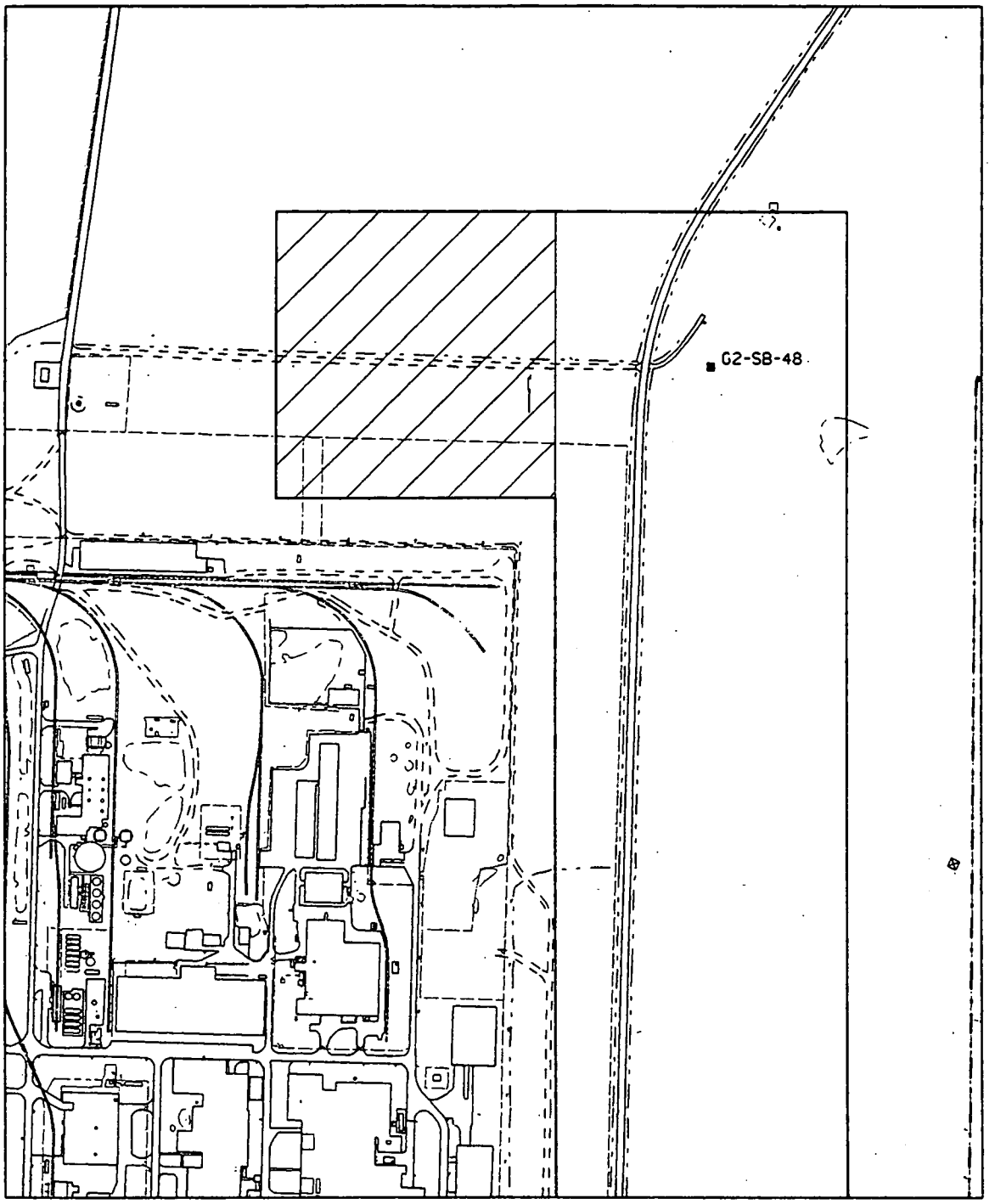
Shallow Boring Number	Planned Depth (ft)	Soil Type	Sample Depth (ft)	Geotechnical testing
G2-SB-48	7.5	Brown Clay	2.5 - 7.5	IFS
G2-SB-49	7.5	Brown Clay	2.5 - 7.5	IFS

IFS = Interface Friction Shear Testing on various geosynthetic/soil combinations.

Twenty gallons are to be collected from each sample location in four 5-gallon containers and sent to:

Robert H. Swan, Jr. [Laboratory Manager]
Soil-Geosynthetic Interaction Testing Laboratory
5775 Peachtree Dunwoody Road, Suite 11D
Atlanta, Georgia 30342

The Geosynthetic Interaction Testing Laboratory does not have an NRC-license and cannot accept radiologically contaminated materials. All material will be returned to the FEMP for disposition in accordance with standards.



FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION

FERMCO

Fernald Environmental Management Project

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

LOCATION OF INTERFACE FRICTION SHEAR TESTING WITHIN THE ON-SITE DISPOSAL FACILITY BOUNDARIES

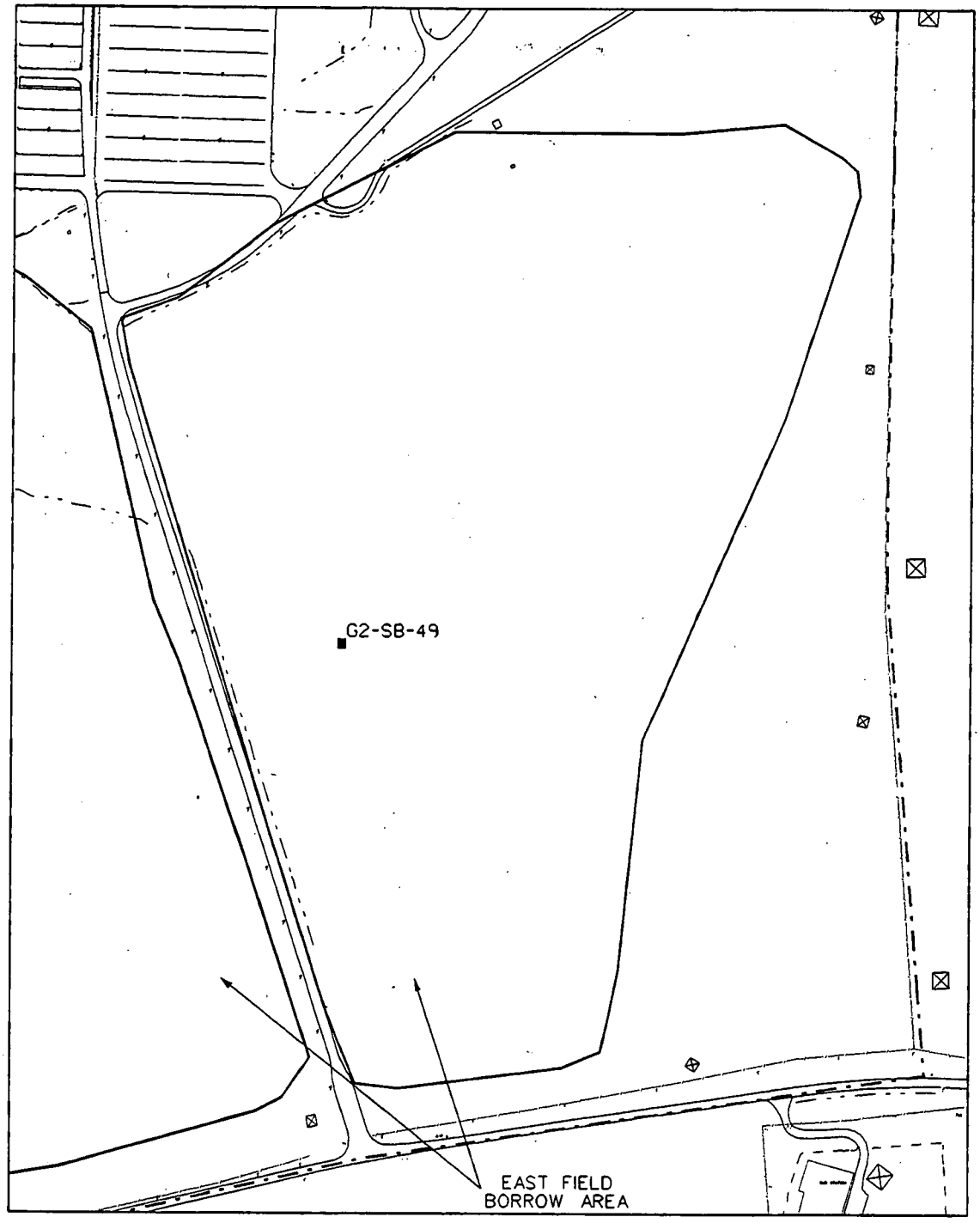
DATE 10/13/95

DRAWN

FIGURE O-1

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig7_e.dgn

000512



■ SHALLOW BORING

SCALE IN FEET
0 200 400 800

NOTE: COORDINATES ARE IN STATE PLANAR NAD 1927

FERNALD ENVIRONMENTAL RESTORATION MANAGEMENT CORPORATION
FERMCO
Fernald
Environmental Management Project
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

LOCATION OF INTERFACE FRICTION SHEAR TESTING WITHIN THE EAST FIELD BORROW AREA

DATE 10/13/95
DRAWN

FIGURE 0-2

FILE NAME: /usr/erma5/2cgs1/dgn/fig7_f.dgn

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX P

DATA QUALITY OBJECTIVES ADDENDUM

NON-CONTROLLED COPY

Fernald Environmental Management Project

Data Quality Objectives

Title: Analysis and Establishment of the Concentration for the Permeant that will be used in Conducting Hydraulic Conductivity Tests on Recompacted Soils from a Potential On-Site Borrow Source

Number: GW-020

Revision: 0

Effective Date: 9/13/95

Contact Name: Patrick Riley

Approval: Richard Fiske **Date** 9-13-95
DQO Coordinator

Rev. #	0				
Date	9/13/95				

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

DATA QUALITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE ANALYSIS AND ESTABLISHMENT OF THE CONCENTRATION FOR THE PERMEANT THAT WILL BE USED IN CONDUCTING HYDRAULIC CONDUCTIVITY TESTS ON RECOMPACTED SOILS FROM A POTENTIAL ON-SITE BORROW SOURCE

1. State the Problem or the Situation to be Resolved

The selected remedy for the Operable Unit 2 Record of Decision is to consolidate waste materials in an on-site, engineered waste disposal facility. A Predesign and Site Selection Investigation has been completed which selected a location for the On-Site Disposal Facility east of the production area. Currently, preliminary design activity is being conducted which includes a geotechnical borrow study for the material intended for use in the liner and cap of the disposal facility. The borrow study includes conducting hydraulic conductivity tests with permeant containing known concentrations of specified analytes in accordance with ASTM D5084. The chemical makeup of the permeant water used in these tests may impact the hydraulic conductivity of the recompacted borrow soil used in the tests. This DQO will address the perched groundwater sampling and analysis of the perched groundwater that will be used as the permeant water in the hydraulic conductivity tests.

2. Identify the Decisions to be Made that Affect the Situation

The perched groundwater shall be collected for use as the permeant for the hydraulic conductivity tests. Approximately 50 gallons of perched groundwater will be collected from two wells. Groundwater from each well will be sampled periodically during collection of the permeant to determine the total uranium concentrations. Groundwater mixture volume ratios necessary to obtain approximately 3.3 parts per million (ppm) total uranium will be determined from the groundwater total uranium concentrations. This total uranium concentration of 3.3 ppm is a representation of the potential anticipated leachate concentration for the disposal facility. A sample of the final mixture will be analyzed for radionuclides, metals, and semi-volatiles.

The decision to be resolved by this sampling is whether the chemical composition of the mixture of perched groundwater, which has the characteristics of the potential anticipated leachate from the disposal facility, will effect the hydraulic conductivity of the recompacted borrow material.

3. Identify Inputs that Affect the Decision

The baseline total uranium concentrations of perched groundwater in the two wells have been determined; however, because the concentrations within the two wells vary over time, it may be difficult to collect perched water with the required concentrations, at the time of sampling, to exactly obtain the 3.3 ppm total uranium permeant concentration. Therefore, a tolerance of plus or minus 15 percent for total uranium concentration for the final permeant concentration is considered acceptable.

Approximately 25 gallons of water will be collected from each well for a total of 50 gallons. The wells will not be purged prior to sampling and the water will not be

analyzed for the water quality field parameters. The water will be stored in 5 gallon containers, a total of ten containers, labeled with the appropriate sample location and all other pertinent information. A sample of water will be collected from each container and analyzed for total uranium by the on-site laboratory. This will allow a more precise determination for mixing the appropriate volumes and concentrations to obtain the desired permeant concentration of 3.3 ppm total uranium.

The final volume of permeant water intended for use in the hydraulic conductivity tests will be less than the 50 gallons collected (estimated 30 gallons), but will be more than sufficient for the hydraulic conductivity testing. The final mixture of water will be analyzed for radionuclides, semi-volatiles, and metals. This analysis will be conducted by an off-site contract laboratory.

4. Define the Boundaries of the Situation

Water samples will be collected from Wells 1082 and 1085, which are located in the former FEMP Production Area. Approximately 25 gallons of water will be collected from each well for a total of 50 gallons. The water collected will be an approximate representation of contaminated perched groundwater and will also be considered as a typical anticipated leachate concentration in the disposal facility.

This sampling will be completed within the 120 day period following the initiation of the field activities.

5. Develop a Logic Statement

Information obtained from the analysis will be used to develop the baseline concentrations of the permeant used for the hydraulic conductivity tests.

6. Establish Constraints on the Uncertainty of the Decision

A false negative error is obtaining analytical results for the permeant with total uranium concentration not within the allowable plus or minus 15 percent margin of error, when it actually is within the margin of error; thereby, resulting in an inaccurate baseline concentration analysis and evaluation.

A false positive error is obtaining analytical results for the permeant with total uranium concentration within the allowable plus or minus 15 percent margin of error, when it actually is outside the margin of error; thereby, resulting in an inaccurate baseline concentration analysis and evaluation.

No regulatory action levels are applicable to this activity; therefore, standard calculations cannot be used to quantify acceptable percent errors. Laboratory and field quality control measures shall be instituted to minimize errors.

7. Optimize a Design for Obtaining Quality Data

Data quality will be optimized by stringently following the Sitewide CERCLA Quality Assurance Plan (SCQ) and referenced documents when pertinent.

Groundwater samples for total uranium prior to mixing will be analyzed and reported at Analytical Support Level (ASL) B. All samples collected for the permeant, which is the

water after the mixing, will be analyzed and reported at ASL C.

Sampling errors will be controlled through review of the sampling plan with sampling technicians and technical guidance will be provided by Operable Unit 2 technical staff during sampling and mixing.

Field Quality Control (QC) for the permeant sample will consist of a duplicate and a field blank. The field blank for this sampling will be exposed in the laboratory during the mixing and the sampling of the permeant.

Laboratory QC samples for ASL B and C will follow prescribed levels in the Sitewide CERCLA Quality Assurance Project Plan. All raw data will be included in the deliverable.

1.A. Task/Description: CRU #: 2

1.B. Project Phase: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

RI ☐ FS ☐ RD ☐ RA ☐ R,A ☐ OTHER ☒ Specify: Design 1.C. DQO No.: GW-020 DQO Reference No.: _____

2. Media Characterization: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

Air ☐ Biological ☐ Groundwater ☒ Sediment ☐ Soil ☐

Waste ☐ Wastewater ☐ Surface water ☐ Other (specify) Permeant

3. Data Use with Analytical Support Level (A-E): (Put an X in the appropriate Analytical Support Level selection(s) beside each applicable Data Use.)

Site Characterization A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐	Risk Assessment A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐
Evaluation of Alternatives A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐	Engineering Design A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐
Monitoring during remediation activities A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐	Other (Explain) Baseline A ☐ B ☒ C ☒ D ☐ E ☐

4.A. Drivers: ASTM D5084

4.B. Objective: Establishing the specifications for the permeant liquid.

5. Site Information (Description):
Wells 1082 and 1085 are located in radiologically controlled areas. Well 1082 is located approximately 40 feet northwest of Waste Pit 6, and 1085 is located approximately 120 feet northeast of the old decontamination facility (Building 69).

6.A. Data Types with appropriate Analytical Support Level Equipment Selection and SCQ Reference: (Place an "X" to the right of the appropriate box or boxes selecting the type of analysis or analyses required. Then select the type of equipment to perform the analysis if appropriate. Please include a reference to the SCQ Section.)

1. pH	☐	2. Uranium	☒	3. BTX	☐
Temperature	☐	Full Radiologic	☒	TPH	☐
Specific Conductance	☐	Metals	☒	Oil/Grease	☐
Dissolved Oxygen	☐	Cyanide	☐		
		Silica	☐		

4. Cations	☐	5. VOA	☐	6. Other (specify)	
Anions	☐	ABN	☐	_____	
TOC	☐	Pesticides	☐		
TCLP	☐	PCB	☐		
CEC	☐				
COD	☐				

6.B. Equipment Selection and SCQ Reference:

Equipment Selection — Refer to SCQ Section

ASL A _____ SCQ Section: _____

ASL B Laboratory Instrumentation SCQ Section: Appendix G

ASL C Laboratory Instrumentation SCQ Section: Appendix G

ASL D _____ SCQ Section: _____

ASL E _____ SCQ Section: _____

7.A. Sampling Methods: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

Biased	☒	Composite	☐	Environmental	☐	Grab	☒	Grid	☐
Intrusive	☐	Non-Intrusive	☐	Phased	☐	Source	☐		

Other (specify): _____

7.B. Sample Work Plan Reference: (List the samples required. Reference the work plan or sampling plan guiding the sampling activity, as appropriate.)

Background samples: See Appendix A of PSP for Phase I and II of the Operable Unit 2 Predesign Field Investigation

7.C. Sample Collection Reference: (Please provide a specific reference to the SCQ Section and subsection guiding sampling collection procedures.)

Sample Collection Reference: _____

8. Quality Control Samples: (Place an "X" in the appropriate selection box.)

8.A. Field Quality Control Samples:

Trip Blanks	☐	Container Blanks	☐
Field Blanks	☒	Duplicate Samples	☒
Equipment Rinsate Samples	☐	Split Samples	☐
Preservative Blanks	☐	Performance Evaluation Samples	☐

Other (specify) _____

8.B. Laboratory Quality Control Samples:

Method Blank	☒	Matrix Duplicate/Replicate	☒
Matrix Spike	☒	Surrogate Spikes	☐

Other (specify) _____

9. Other: Please provide any other germane information that may impact the data quality or gathering of this particular objective, task or data use.

Fernald Environmental Management Project

Data Quality Objectives

Title: GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION FOR MODAL DIAMETER TESTING TO SUPPORT THE DESIGN OF THE FEMP ON-SITE DISPOSAL FACILITY

Number: SL-022

Revision: 0

Effective Date: 11/30/95

Contact Name: Tony Snider

Approval: Stephen T. Snider Date: 11/30/95
Project Manager

Approval: Richard L. Fiske Date: 11/30/95
DQO Coordinator

Rev. #	0				
Date	11/30/95				

DATA QUALITY OBJECTIVE LOGIC FLOW GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION FOR MODAL DIAMETER TESTING TO SUPPORT THE DESIGN OF THE FEMP ON-SITE DISPOSAL FACILITY

1 Problem Statement

The preferred remedial alternative for Operable Unit 2 includes on-site disposal of remediation material. The design of a disposal facility is required as part of Operable Unit 2 remediation action plans and the Record of Decision. Also, the design will include accepting waste materials generated from other on-site remediation.
A predesign field investigation was initiated to define the most suitable on-site location for the disposal facility and was performed in the Identified Best Area located on the east side of the Fernald Environmental Management Project (FEMP).

This Predesign investigation was performed in a phased approach. The first phase included preliminary cone penetrometer testing (CPT) and water level measurements of existing wells. This information was used to obtain an enhanced understanding of the existing lithology and to optimize the sampling locations during the second phase. The second phase included the installation and sampling of wells, borings, and lysimeters. Data obtained and analyzed from the second phase was used to confirm the thickness of the underlying gray clay, rule out the presence of extensive interbedded course granular materials, verify the protectiveness of human health and environment, and obtain preliminary geotechnical information for the design of the disposal facility. The third phase of the investigation included the installation and sampling of wells, and shallow and deep borings. The objective of the Phase III field investigation is to obtain engineering and geotechnical data from soil borings and monitoring well necessary for the design of the disposal facility. Phase III geotechnical testing is currently underway.

This DQO describes supplemental geotechnical sampling and testing which will provide information for the design of the On-Site Disposal Facility.

Based on information obtained from the predesign field investigation, estimates of waste volumes for on-site disposal, and preliminary disposal facility design, the proposed location of the on-site disposal facility has been identified in the "Predesign Investigation and Site Selection Report for the On-Site Disposal Facility (Volumes 1 through 3), DOE June 1995." The proposed location measures approximately 800 feet by 3700 feet, is on the eastern portion of the FEMP property, and provides suitable space for the disposal of the anticipated volume of 2.5 million cubic yards of waste material.

In support of the design and construction of the on-site disposal facility, geotechnical investigations are required to obtain engineering and geotechnical data on soils from the

potential borrow sources. This DQO addresses supplemental testing to provide modal diameter testing of waste materials.

Based on conceptual design estimates, approximately 1,300,000 cubic yards of soil (mostly in the form of clay) will be needed for the construction of the on-site disposal facility. Of this volume, approximately 450,000 to 550,000 cubic yards of clay within the footprint of the disposal facility will be excavated for liner construction; however, an additional 750,000 to 850,000 cubic yards of soil is estimated to be needed for the construction of the cap and berm.

A primary location for the clay borrow area (known as the East Field Borrow Area) with a potential to provide an estimated 960,000 cubic yards of usable soils has been identified. The South Field Borrow Area willbe evaluated as a secondary borrow source. The location of these Borrow Areas was chosen based on the following:

- o Proximity to the On-Site Disposal Facility
- o Availability of Large Volumes of Non-Contaminated Clays
- o Availability of Existing Geotechnical Data

2 Identification of a Decision that Addresses the Problem

The information generated by this geotechnical investigation is essential in determining the geotechnical properties (including the wind dispersal potential) of materials used to construct the disposal facility liner, and cap and to determine the dust generating properties of the On-site Disposal Facility fillmaterials. Grain-size analyses willbe used to develop diameter distribution curves for conditions when soils are disturbed/uncrusted. Modal diameter testing willbe used to develop diameter distribution curves for conditions when soils are undisturbed/crusted. The data obtained through this investigation will support engineering analyses for the disposal facility design.

3 Identification of Inputs that Affect the Decision

To evaluate dust emission and dispersion during remedial activities, additional geotechnical properties of borrowed and waste fillmaterials need to be known. Based on review of existing geotechnical data and engineering judgement, it has been determined that additional samples should be taken in the East and South Field Borrow Areas and the Operable Unit 2 Waste Units to perform modal diameter testing.

These samples are needed in order to develop the required geotechnical data to evaluate potential dust emissions and routine construction activities for soil remediation activities.

These tests will provide sufficient information, when used in conjunction with existing information, to determine modal particle size of the FEMP soils for detailed design purposes.

The soil borings are intended to provide disturbed samples for laboratory testing from drill cuttings at various depths. The following table indicates the number of samples and the sampling intervals and locations for performing the modal diameter testing:

MODEL DIAMETER TESTING
NUMBER OF SAMPLES AND SAMPLING INTERVALS/LOCATIONS

SAMPLE AREA	SAMPLE DEPTH INTERVALS	NUMBER OF SAMPLES
East Field Borrow Area	2'-6' 6'-10' 10'-14'	4 4 4
	1.5'-5.0'	2
South Field Borrow Area	2'-6' 6'-10' 10'-14'	2 2 2
South Field Waste Unit	2'-6' 6'-10' 10'-14'	2 2 2

The planned depth of each shallow borings/excavations along with tentative sampling depths and laboratory tests are provided in the Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan (GSTP) of the On-Site Clay Borrow Area, Off-Site Material Sources, and Operable Unit 2 Waste Units, Revision 2. Sampling depths are representative of maximum planned excavation depths for borrow clays (approximately 18 feet). The approximate sample locations are shown in the GSTP.

From past investigations, it has been determined that the FEMP has similar geological characteristics over most of the site consisting of layers of glacial tilloverlying the Great Miami Aquifer (sands and gravel). Due to this relative uniformity, fourteen clay samples (from glacial till) taken at various depths from the East Field Borrow Area, eight clay samples taken at various depths from the South Field Borrow Area, and eight clay samples taken from the South Field Waste Unit will be sufficient to represent soil conditions for developing parameters for input into the wind dispersion model for disturbed/uncrusted and undisturbed/crusted conditions.

The following table identifies the test method to be used for modal diameter testing.

GEOTECHNICAL LABORATORY TESTING PROGRAM
FINE AGGREGATE SOURCES

TEST METHOD	TEST
Modified EPA EM/600/885/002	Modified Modal Diameter Test *

* Adapted from a field procedure published in the EPA document (EPA/600/8-85/002), "Rapid Assessment of Exposure to Particulate Emissions from Surface Contaminated Sites" (page 23). -- (See Attachments I and II)

Four modifications were made to the field procedure, as follows:

i) Delete step number 2 "Collect a sample representing the surface layer..." from the EPA procedure. The EPA procedure is written to make field determinations of threshold friction velocity for loose particles of surface layer material. This test has been modified to address future surface soils (materials that will become surface layers during excavation of the clay borrow areas and operable unit 2 waste units, and during the placement of borrow and waste fillmaterials at the on-site disposal facility). Step number 2 does not allow for the sampling and testing of subsurface soils and had to be deleted to allow the appropriate materials to be tested.

ii) Modify step number 5 from a subjective visual inspection of particle size distribution to a quantitative mass measurement of particle size distribution.

iii) Add a step to air dry the samples and lightly break up aggregation prior to testing. The EPA procedure allows for real time testing to determine threshold friction velocity under field conditions; however, page 22 of (EPA/600/8-85/002), "Rapid Assessment of Exposure to Particulate Emissions from Surface Contaminated Sites" states the following:

> "For uncrusted surfaces, the threshold friction velocity is best estimated from the dry aggregate structure of the soil..."

Since the results of the tests governed by this DQO are not being performed using current field conditions but are being performed using dry soil conditions, a step to dry and lightly break up the material was added to assure that the samples would be representative of conditions when wind erosion control system would be needed.

iv) The name of the test was changed from Threshold Friction Velocity to Modal Diameter Testing.

The Texas Tech air emission equation willbe used to model the air emission potential of soil particles during disturbed/uncrusted and undisturbed/crusted soil conditions. Disturbed/uncrusted soil conditions reflect situations where soils are loose and more susceptible to wind erosion (this generally willbe representative of soils during excavation, transportation, placement, and compaction when the soils are being mechanically agitated). Undisturbed/crusted soil conditions reflect situations where soils are not loose on the surface and are more resistant to wind erosion (this generally willbe representative of soils prior to excavation and after compaction). Since the on-site disposal facility will be built in lifts, each lift will effectively go through phases where the soils will be disturbed/uncrusted and phases where the soils will be undisturbed/crusted. The mechanical operations used to excavate, transport, place, and compact soils willresult in conditions where soils are temporarily loose and uncrusted.

There are four major input parameters into the Texas Tech air emission equation:

- o Diameter Distribution Curve
- o Surface Soil Coverage/Conditions
- o Moisture Content
- o Design Wind Pattern

For the disturbed/uncrusted scenario, aggressive mechanical sieve analysis (grain-size analysis) willbe used to determine the diameter distribution curve. Approximately 160 mechanical sieve analyses have been performed for soils in the East and South Field Borrow Areas. In addition, over 100 mechanical sieve analyses have been performed in the Inactive Flyash Pile, South Field, and Active Flyash Pile waste units.

For the undisturbed/crusted scenario, a less aggressive hand sieve test (Modal Diameter Test) willbe used to determine the diameter distribution curve (see previously shown table (Model Diameter Testing Number of Samples and Sampling Intervals/Locations) for modal diameter sampling information). Note, the soil particle diameter distribution curve for the undisturbed/crusted scenario is <u>not</u> performed on undisturbed samples, but rather performed on modestly disturbed samples that have not been highly agitated. Twenty six modal diameter tests are planned.

Since sands do not generally form crusts, no samples of sandy soils willbe tested for the undisturbed/crusted soil conditions.

4 Specification of the Domain of the Decision

The soil sampling willoccur in the East and South Field Borrow Areas, and the South Field waste unit. These are the areas from where borrow and waste soils willcome.

5 Development of Logic Statements

The result of the geotechnical sampling and testing willbe reported to FERMCO. The information obtained from this investigation willassist CRU2 in detailed disposal facility design. The primary objectives of the geotechnical sampling and testing is as follows:

- To provide geotechnical particle size properties and parameters for wind dispersion modeling using undisturbed/crusted soil conditions. This modeling using both undisturbed/crusted and disturbed/uncrusted soil conditions will assist in the design of dust control systems for the Disposal Facility.

6 Establishment of Constraints on Uncertainty

An error in the measurement of particle size distribution would cause either an over design or an under design of the disposal facility dust control system. An under design of the disposal facility dust control system could have an ecological and human exposure impact due to the potential off-site migration of contaminants from the waste fillmaterials prior to being covered.

To minimize the possibility of errors, all of the procedures willbe conducted by qualified personnel. The required ASLs for this study are level B.

7 Development of a Cost-Effective Design for Obtaining Data

Geotechnical sampling was performed in accordance with the SCQ and geotechnical testing willbe performed according to the attached modified EPA field procedure. The ASL for all geotechnical testing willbe ASL B. Alldata willbe checked by the engineer in accordance with approved design procedures. Records documenting geotechnical laboratory equipment calibration will be maintained by the test laboratory. Observed variability of results may result in a raise in the factor of safety in accordance with engineering practices.

8 Summary

The primary objective of this sampling and testing effort is to support the design of the wind erosion control system of the on-site disposal facility. The Texas Tech air emission equation will be used to model the wind dispersion at the disposal facility using both disturbed/uncrusted and undisturbed/crusted soil conditions. Model Diameter Testing will be performed to develop inputs to the model using undisturbed/crusted soil conditions.

(ATTACHMENT I)

FIELD PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF THRESHOLD FRICTION VELOCITY*

1. Prepare a nest of sieves with the following openings: 4 mm, 2 mm, 1 mm, 0.5 mm, 0.25 mm. Place a collector pan below the bottom sieve (0.25 mm opening).

2. Collect a sample representing the surface layer of loose particles (approximately 1 cm in depth for an uncrusted surface), removing any rocks larger than about 1 cm in average physical diameter. The area to be sampled should not be less than 30 cm x 30 cm.

3. Pour the sample into the top sieve (4 mm opening), and place a lid on the top.

4. Rotate the covered sieve/pan unit by hand using broad sweeping arm motions in the horizontal plane. Complete 20 rotations at a speed just necessary to achieve some relative horizontal motion between the sieve and the particles.

5. Inspect the relative quantities of catch within each sieve and determine where the mode in the aggregate size distribution lies, i.e., between the opening size of the sieve with the largest catch and the opening size of the next largest sieve.

* Adapted from a laboratory procedure published by W. S. Chepil (1952).

(ATTACHMENT II)

FIELD PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF MODAL DIAMETER TESTING*

1. Expose each soil sample as received from the field to air at room temperature until dried thoroughly, but no more than seven (7) days. Lightly break up the aggregations in a mortar with a rubber-covered pestle (DO NOT GRIND SAMPLE). Remove any rocks larger than about 1 cm in average physical diameter.

2. Prepare a nest of sieves with the following openings: 4 mm, 2 mm, 1 mm, 0.5 mm, and 0.25 mm. Place a collector pan below the bottom sieve (0.25 mm opening). Determine the mass of each sieve and the pan prior to preparing the nest of sieves.

3. Determine the original mass of the sample.

4. Pour the sample into the top sieve (4 mm opening), and place a lid on the top.

5. Rotate the covered sieve/pan unit by hand using broad sweeping arm motions in the horizontal plane. Complete 20 rotations at a speed just necessary to achieve some relative horizontal motion between the sieve and the particles.

6. Determine the mass of each fraction. The sum of the masses retained on all the sieves used should equal closely the original mass of the quantity sieved.

Note: Use a balance sensitive to at least 0.01 g for determining the mass of each sieve, pan, and sample fraction.

DQO #: SL-022
Effective Date: 11/30/95

1.A. Task/Description: CRU #: 2

**DATA QUALITY OBJECTIVE
GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION FOR MODAL DIAMETER TESTING
TO SUPPORT THE DESIGN OF THE FEMP
ON-SITE DISPOSAL FACILITY**

1.B. Project Phase: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

RI ☐ FS ☐ RD ☒ RA ☐ RA ☐ OTHER ☐ Specify:

1.C. DQO No.:_____ DQO Reference No.: _____

---

2. Media Characterization: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

Air ☐ Biological ☐ Groundwater ☐ Sediment ☐ Soil ☒ Waste ☐
Wastewater ☐ Surface water ☐ Other (specify)

---

3. Data Use with Analytical Support Level (A-E): (Put an X in the appropriate Analytical Support Level selection(s) beside each applicable Data Use.)

Site Characterization
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Risk Assessment
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Evaluation of Alternatives
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Engineering Design
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☒

Monitoring during remediation activities
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

Other (Explain)
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐ E ☐

4.A. Drivers:

"Conceptual Design Report for the Engineered Waste Management Facility", "On-Site Waste Disposal Cell Pre-Design Activities Engineering Report and Supplemental Report", "Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project", Final Feasibility Study Report for Operable Unit 2, Fernald Environmental Management Project", "Final Remedial Investigation Report for Operable Unit 5, Fernald Environmental Management Project", and "Predesign Investigation and Site Selection Report for the On-Site Disposal Facility".

4.B. Objective:

The information generated by this supplemental geotechnical testing along with the available data will be used to perform the detailed design including the stability and anticipated performance evaluation of the FEMP clay borrow materials which are pivotal to the construction of the On-Site Disposal Facility.

---

5. Site Information (Description):

The soil sampling will occur in the following areas:

o The East and South Field Borrow Areas and the South Field Waste Unit.

DQO Number: _____

6.A. Data Types with appropriate Analytical Support Level Equipment Selection and SCQ Reference: ☐

Documentation and reporting shall meet all requirements of ASTM D422.

6.B. Equipment Selection and SCQ Reference:

Apparatus shall meet all requirements of ASTM D422.

7.A. Sampling Methods: (Put an X in the appropriate selection.)

Biased	☒	Composite	☐	Environmental	☐	Grab	☐
Grid	☐	Intrusive	☒	Non-Intrusive	☐	Phased	☐
Source	☐						

Other (specify): _____

DQO Number: _____

7.B. Sample Work Plan Reference: (List the samples required. Reference Draft Geotechnical Sampling and Testing Plan for On-Site Clay Borrow Areas, Off-Site Material Sources, and Operable Unit 2 Waste Units, Revision 2.

Background samples: Samples have been previously collected from the on-site area.

7.C. Sample Collection Reference: (Please provide a specific reference to the SCQ Section and subsection guiding sampling collection procedures.)

Sample Collection Reference: Appendix K of GSTP